To Paola, Andrea, Pietro, Mamma, and Papá,

For giving me the serenity, love, and strength at home now, then, and in the future to fulfill my dreams and spend my talents as best as possible.

To all those who loved the first and second editions

To my mentors and to my mentees who have been so passionate and supportive about these books

To the health of mothers and babies

And—as I often toast—to the next generation!
# Contents

Introduction ................................................................................................................................. x  
How to “Read” This Book ........................................................................................................... xiii  
List of Abbreviations .................................................................................................................. xiv  
Contributors ............................................................................................................................... xx  

1. Hypertensive disorders .............................................................................................................. 1  
   Amanda Roman  

2. Cardiac disease ....................................................................................................................... 24  
   Meredith Birsner and Sharon Rubin  

3. Obesity ................................................................................................................................... 32  
   Kathryn Shaia and Maria Teresa Mella  

4. Pregestational diabetes .......................................................................................................... 50  
   A. Dhanya Mackeen and Michael J. Paglia  

5. Gestational diabetes ................................................................................................................. 59  
   A. Dhanya Mackeen and Melisa Lott  

6. Hypothyroidism ....................................................................................................................... 73  
   Sushma Jwala  

7. Hyperthyroidism ..................................................................................................................... 80  
   Sushma Jwala  

8. Prolactinoma ............................................................................................................................ 86  
   Katherine Husk  

9. Nausea/vomiting of pregnancy and hyperemesis gravidarum ............................................... 92  
   Rupsa C. Boelig  

10. Intrahepatic cholestasis of pregnancy .................................................................................. 103  
    Giuliana Simonazzi and Steven K. Herrine  

11. Inflammatory bowel disease ................................................................................................ 110  
    Priyadarshini Koduri  

12. Gallbladder disease ................................................................................................................. 119  
    Priyadarshini Koduri  

13. Pregnancy after liver and other transplantation .................................................................... 124  
    Ignazio R. Marino, Lucio Mandalà, and Augusto Lauro  

14. Maternal anemia ..................................................................................................................... 131  
    Marcela C. Smid and Robert A. Strauss  

15. Sickle cell disease .................................................................................................................. 139  
    Mariam Naqvi and Jeffrey Ecker  

16. von Willebrand disease ......................................................................................................... 145  
    Dawnette Lewis and Srikanth Nagalla  

17. Renal disease ......................................................................................................................... 150  
    Rebekah McCurdy  

18. Headache ................................................................................................................................ 162  
    Stephen Silberstein and Shuhan Zhu
19. Seizures .................................................................................................................................... 167
Sally Mathias and Meriem K. Bensalem-Owen

20. Spinal cord injury ..................................................................................................................173
Megan Gooding and Leonardo Pereira

21. Mood disorders .......................................................................................................................177
Madeleine A. Becker, Tal E. Weinberger, Ann Chandy, Nazanin E. Silver,
and Elisabeth J. S. Kunkel

22. Smoking ................................................................................................................................... 196
Jorge E. Tolosa and David M. Stamilo

23. Drug abuse ................................................................................................................................ 206
Neil S. Seligman

24. Respiratory diseases: asthma, pneumonia, influenza, and tuberculosis .................. 225
Lauren A. Plante and Ryan K. Brannon

25. Systemic lupus erythematosus ............................................................................................246
Maria A. Giraldo-Isaza

26. Antiphospholipid syndrome .................................................................................................254
Tracy A. Manuck

27. Inherited thrombophilia ........................................................................................................260
Robert M. Silver and James A. Airoldi

28. Venous thromboembolism and anticoagulation .................................................................269
Melissa Chu Lam and James A. Airoldi

29. Hepatitis A ............................................................................................................................... 283
Neil Silverman and Steven K. Herrine

30. Hepatitis B ............................................................................................................................... 285
Neil Silverman and Steven K. Herrine

31. Hepatitis C ............................................................................................................................... 291
Neil Silverman, Raja Dhanekula, and Jonathan M. Fenkel

32. HIV ........................................................................................................................................... 297
William R. Short

33. Gonorrhea ................................................................................................................................ 305
A. Marie O’Neill

34. Chlamydia ............................................................................................................................... 310
Rebecca J. Mercier

35. Syphilis ..................................................................................................................................... 315
A. Marie O’Neill

36. Trichomoniasis ..........................................................................................................................322
Tino Tran

37. Group B Streptococcus ............................................................................................................325
Laura Carlson and M. Kathryn Menard

38. Vaccination ...............................................................................................................................332
Amber S. Maratas, Edward M. Buchanan, and Joshua H. Barash

39. Trauma ................................................................................................................................... 339
Lauren A. Plante

40. Critical care ...............................................................................................................................349
Lauren A. Plante

41. Amniotic fluid embolism ..........................................................................................................365
Antonio F. Saad and Luis D. Pacheco
42. Cancer ........................................................................................................373
   Elyce Cardonick

43. Dermatoses of pregnancy ................................................................. 386
   Dana Correale, Joya Sahu, and Jason B. Lee

44. Multiple gestations ...........................................................................398
   Edward J. Hayes and Michelle R. Hayes

45. Fetal growth restriction ................................................................. 412
   Shane Reeves and Henry L. Galan

46. Fetal macrosomia .............................................................................432
   Oscar A. Viteri and Suneet P. Chauhan

47. Cytomegalovirus ............................................................................. 436
   Timothy J. Rafael

48. Toxoplasmosis ................................................................................ 442
   Corina N. Schoen and Timothy J. Rafael

49. Parvovirus ........................................................................................ 447
   Timothy J. Rafael

50. Herpes ................................................................................................ 451
   Timothy J. Rafael

51. Varicella .......................................................................................... 456
   Timothy J. Rafael

52. Fetal and neonatal alloimmune thrombocytopenia ....................... 460
   Kelly M. Orzechowski

53. Hemolytic disease of the fetus/neonate ........................................... 467
   Danielle L. Tate, Jacques E. Samson, and Giancarlo Mari

54. Nonimmune hydrops fetalis ........................................................... 477
   Katherine Connolly and Joanne Stone

55. Fetal death ....................................................................................... 488
   Nahida Chakhtoura and Uma M. Reddy

56. Antepartum testing .......................................................................... 496
   Nora Graham and Christopher R. Harman

57. Sonographic assessment of amniotic fluid: oligohydramnios and polyhydramnios ................................................................. 513
   Ibrahim A. Hammad and Suneet P. Chauhan

58. Fetal maturity testing ....................................................................... 521
   Paniz Heidari and Sarah Poggi

Index ........................................................................................................ 526
Introduction

Welcome to the third edition of our evidence-based books on obstetrics and maternal-fetal medicine! I am indebted for your support! I can't believe how much praise we have gotten for these companion volumes. Your words of encouragement have kept me and all the collaborators, past and present, going now for well over a decade (we are indebted to contributors to previous editions of this text for their work). It has been extremely worthwhile and fulfilling. You are making me happy! In return, I hope we are helping you and your patients toward ever better evidence-based care of pregnant women and their babies and, therefore, better outcomes. Indeed, maternal and perinatal morbidities and mortalities throughout the world are improving.

To me, pregnancy has always been the most fascinating and exciting area of interest as care involves not one, but at least two persons—the mother and the fetus—and leads to the miracle of a new life. I was a third-year medical student when, during a lecture, a resident said, “I went into obstetrics because this is the easiest medical field. Pregnancy is a physiologic process, and there isn’t much to know. It is simple.” I knew from my “classical” background that “obstetrics” means to “stand by, stay near,” and that indeed pregnancy used to receive no medical support at all.

After more than 25 years of practicing obstetrics, I now know that although physiologic and, at times, simple, obstetrics and maternal-fetal medicine can be the most complex of the medical fields: Pregnancy is based on a different physiology than for nonpregnant women, can include any medical disease, require surgery, etc. It is not so simple. In fact, ignorance can kill—in this case, with the health of the woman and her baby both at risk. Too often, I have gone to a lecture, journal club, rounds, or other didactic event to hear presented only one or a few articles regarding the subject without the presenter reviewing the pertinent best review of the total literature and data. It is increasingly difficult to read and acquire knowledge of all that is published, even just in obstetrics, with about 3000 scientific manuscripts published monthly on this subject. Some residents or even authorities would state at times that “there is no evidence” on a topic. We indeed used to be the field with the worst use of randomized trials [1]. As the best way to find something is to look for it, my coauthors and I searched for the best evidence. On careful investigation, indeed there are data on almost everything we do in obstetrics, especially on our interventions. Indeed, our field is now the pioneer for numbers of meta-analyses and extension of work for evidence-based reviews [2]. Obstetricians are now blessed with lots of data and should make the best use of it.

The aims of this book are to summarize the best evidence available in the obstetrics and maternal-fetal medicine literature and make the results of randomized controlled trials (RCTs) and meta-analyses of RCTs easily accessible to guide clinical care. The intent is to bridge the gap between knowledge (the evidence) and its easy application. To reach these goals, we reviewed all trials on effectiveness of interventions in obstetrics. Millions of pregnant women have participated in thousands of properly conducted RCTs. The efforts and sacrifice of mothers and their fetuses for science should be recognized at least by the physicians’ awareness and understanding of these studies. Some of the trials have been summarized in more than 600 Cochrane reviews with hundreds of other meta-analyses also published on obstetrical topics (Table 1). All of the Cochrane reviews, as well as other meta-analyses and trials in obstetrics and maternal-fetal medicine, were reviewed and referenced. The material presented in single trials or meta-analyses is too detailed to be readily translated to advice for the busy clinician who needs to make dozens of clinical decisions a day. Even the Cochrane Library, the undisputed leader for evidence-based medicine efforts, has been criticized for its lack of flexibility and relevance in failing to be more easily understandable and clinically readily usable [3]. It is the gap between research and clinicians that needed to be filled, making sure that proven interventions are clearly highlighted and are included in today’s care. Just as all pilots fly planes under similar rules to maximize safety, all obstetricians should manage all aspects of pregnancy with similar, evidenced-based rules. Indeed, only interventions that have been proven to provide benefit should be used routinely. On the other hand, primum non nocere: interventions that have clearly been shown to be not helpful or indeed harmful to mother and/or baby should be avoided.
Another aim of this book is to make sure the pregnant woman and her unborn child are not marginalized by the medical community. In most circumstances, medical disorders of pregnant women can be treated as in nonpregnant adults. Moreover, there are several effective interventions for preventing or treating specific pregnancy disorders.

Evidence-based medicine is the concept of treating patients according to the best available evidence. Although George Bernard Shaw said, “I have my own opinion, do not confuse me with the facts,” this can be a deadly approach, especially in medicine, and compromise two or more lives at the same time in obstetrics and maternal-fetal medicine. What should be the basis for our interventions in medicine? Meta-analyses of RCTs provide a comprehensive summary of the best research data available. As such, they provide the best guidance for “effective” clinical care [4]. It is unscientific and unethical to practice medicine, teach, or conduct research without first knowing all that has already been proven [4]. In the absence of trials or meta-analyses, lower-level evidence is reviewed. This book aims at providing a current systematic review of all the best evidence so that current practice and education as well as future research can be based on the full story from the best-conducted research, not just the latest data or someone’s opinion (Table 2).

These evidence-based guidelines cannot be used as a “cookbook” or a document dictating the best care. The knowledge from the best evidence presented in the guidelines needs to be integrated with other knowledge gained from clinical judgment, individual patient circumstances, and patient preferences to lead to best medical practice. These are guidelines, not rules. Even the best scientific studies are not always perfectly related to any given individual, and clinical judgment must still be applied to allow the best “particularization” of the best knowledge for the individual, unique patient. Evidence-based medicine informs clinical judgment but does not substitute it. It is important to understand, however, that greater clinical experience by the physician actually correlates with inferior quality of care if not integrated with knowledge of the best evidence [5]. The appropriate treatment is given in only 50% of visits to general physicians [5]. At times, limitations in resources may also limit the applicability of the guidelines but should not limit the physician’s knowledge. Guidelines and clinical pathways based on evidence not only point to the right management, but also can decrease medicolegal risk [6]. We aimed for brevity and clarity. Suggested management of the healthy or sick mother and child is stated as straightforwardly as possible for everyone to easily understand and implement (Table 3). If you find the Cochrane reviews, scientific manuscripts, and other publications difficult to “translate” into care of your patients, this book is for you. We wanted to prevent information overload.

**Table 1** Obstetrical Evidence

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>More than 600 current Cochrane reviews</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hundreds of other current meta-analyses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>More than 1000 RCTs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Millions of pregnant women randomized</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Table 2** Aims of This Book

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Improve the health of women and their children</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>“Make it easy to do it right”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Implement the best clinical care based on science</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(evidence), not opinion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Education</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Develop lectures</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Decrease disease, use of detrimental interventions, and therefore costs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Reduce medicolegal risks</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Table 3** This Book Is For

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Obstetricians</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Midwives</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Family medicine and others (practicing obstetrics)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Residents</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Nurses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Medical students</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Maternal-fetal medicine attendings</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Maternal-fetal medicine fellows</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Other consultants on pregnancy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Lay persons who want to know “the evidence”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Politicians responsible for health care</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
On the other hand, “everything should be made as simple as possible, but not simpler” (A. Einstein). Key management points are highlighted at the beginning of each guideline and in bold in the text. The chapters are divided into two volumes, one on obstetrics and one on maternal-fetal medicine; cross-references to chapters in Obstetric Evidence Based Guidelines have been noted in the text where applicable. Please contact us (vincenzo.berghella@jefferson.edu) for any comments, criticisms, corrections, missing evidence, etc.

I have the most fun discovering the best ways to alleviate discomfort and disease. The search for the best evidence for these guidelines has been a wonderful, stimulating journey. Keeping up with evidence-based medicine is exciting. The most rewarding part, as a teacher, is the dissemination of knowledge. I hope, truly, that this effort will be helpful to you, too.

REFERENCES


5. Arky RA. The family business—To educate. NEJM 2006; 354: 1922–6. [Review]

How to “Read” This Book

The knowledge from RCTs and meta-analyses of RCTs is summarized and easily available for clinical implementation. Relative risks and 95% confidence intervals from studies are quoted sparingly. Instead, the straight recommendation for care is made if one intervention is superior to the other with the percentage improvement often quoted to assess degree of benefit. If there is insufficient evidence to compare to interventions or managements, this is clearly stated.

References: Cochrane reviews with 0 RCT are not referenced, and instead of referencing a meta-analysis with only one RCT, the actual RCT is usually referenced. RCTs that are already included in meta-analyses are not referenced for brevity and because they can be easily accessed by reviewing the meta-analysis. If new RCTs are not included in meta-analysis, they are obviously referenced. Each reference was reviewed and evaluated for quality according to a modified method as outlined by the U.S. Preventive Services Task Force (http:/www.ahrq.gov):

I Evidence obtained from at least one properly designed randomized controlled trial.

II-1 Evidence obtained from well-designed controlled trials without randomization.

II-2 Evidence obtained from well-designed cohort or case-control analytic studies, preferably from more than one center or research group.

II-3 Evidence obtained from multiple time series with or without the intervention. Dramatic results in uncontrolled experiments could also be regarded as this type of evidence.

III (Review) Opinions of respected authorities, based on clinical experience, descriptive studies, or reports of expert committees.

These levels are quoted after each reference. For RCTs and meta-analyses, the number of subjects studied is stated, and, sometimes, more details are provided to aid the reader to understand the study better.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Abbreviation</th>
<th>Full Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AA</td>
<td>artery-to-artery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AAN</td>
<td>American Academy of Neurology</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AAP</td>
<td>American Academy of Pediatrics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AASLD</td>
<td>American Association for the Study of Liver Diseases</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab</td>
<td>antibody</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AC</td>
<td>abdominal circumference</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ACA</td>
<td>anticardiolipin antibody</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ACCM</td>
<td>American College of Critical Care Medicine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ACE</td>
<td>angiotensin-converting enzyme</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ACOG</td>
<td>American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ACR</td>
<td>acute cellular rejection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ACR</td>
<td>American College of Rheumatology</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ACS</td>
<td>acute chest syndrome</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ADHD</td>
<td>attention deficit hyperactivity disorder</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ADP</td>
<td>atopic dermatitis of pregnancy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ADR</td>
<td>autonomic dysreflexia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AED</td>
<td>antiepileptic drug</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AEP</td>
<td>atomic eruption of pregnancy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AF</td>
<td>amniotic fluid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AFE</td>
<td>amniotic fluid embolism</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AFI</td>
<td>amniotic fluid index</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AFP</td>
<td>alpha-fetoprotein</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AFV</td>
<td>amniotic fluid volume</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ag</td>
<td>antigen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AGA</td>
<td>appropriate for gestational age</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AHA</td>
<td>American Heart Association</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aHR</td>
<td>adjusted hazard ratio</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AIDS</td>
<td>acquired immune deficiency syndrome</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AII</td>
<td>angiotensin type II</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AIT</td>
<td>alloimmune thrombocytopenia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ALI</td>
<td>acute lung injury</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ALT</td>
<td>alanine aminotransferase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ANA</td>
<td>antinuclear antibodies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>APA</td>
<td>American Psychiatric Association</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>APS</td>
<td>antiphospholipid syndrome</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aPT</td>
<td>activated prothrombin time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aPTT</td>
<td>activated partial thromboplastin time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ARDS</td>
<td>adult respiratory distress syndrome</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AROM</td>
<td>artificial rupture of membranes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ARPV</td>
<td>airway pressure release</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ART</td>
<td>antiretroviral therapy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ART</td>
<td>assisted reproductive technologies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ASA</td>
<td>aspirin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ASD</td>
<td>atrial septal defect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ASD</td>
<td>autism spectrum disorder</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AST</td>
<td>aspartate aminotransferase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ATIII</td>
<td>antithrombin III</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ATLS</td>
<td>Advanced Trauma Life Support</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ATS</td>
<td>American Thoracic Society</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AV</td>
<td>artery-to-vein</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AVD</td>
<td>assisted vaginal delivery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AZT</td>
<td>azidovudine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BAD</td>
<td>bipolar disorder</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BCG</td>
<td>bacille Calmette-Guerin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BHI</td>
<td>biphasic human insulin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIAsp</td>
<td>biphasic insulin aspart</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bid</td>
<td>“bis in die,” i.e., twice per day</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BMI</td>
<td>body mass index</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BP</td>
<td>blood pressure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BPD</td>
<td>biparietal diameter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BPD</td>
<td>bronchopulmonary dysplasia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bpm</td>
<td>beats per minute</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BPP</td>
<td>biophysical profile</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BPS</td>
<td>biophysical profile score</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BUN</td>
<td>blood urea nitrogen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CBC</td>
<td>complete blood count</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CCAM</td>
<td>congenital cystic adenomatoide malformation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CAP</td>
<td>community-acquired pneumonia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CCTG</td>
<td>computerized cardiotocography</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CD</td>
<td>cesarean delivery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CD</td>
<td>Crohn’s disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CDC</td>
<td>Centers for Disease Control</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CDH</td>
<td>congenital diaphragmatic hernia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CF</td>
<td>cystic fibrosis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CFC</td>
<td>chlorofluorocarbon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CFU</td>
<td>colony-forming unit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cGH</td>
<td>comparative genomic hybridization</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CGRP</td>
<td>calcitonin gene-related peptide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHB</td>
<td>congenital heart block</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHD</td>
<td>congenital heart defect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHF</td>
<td>congestive heart failure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHIPS</td>
<td>Control of Hypertension in Pregnancy Study</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHTN</td>
<td>chronic hypertension</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CL</td>
<td>cervical length</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abbreviation</td>
<td>Full Form</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>-----------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CLIA</td>
<td>Clinical Laboratory Improvement Amendments</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CMV</td>
<td>cytomegalovirus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CNS</td>
<td>central nervous system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CPAM</td>
<td>congenital pulmonary airway malformation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CPAP</td>
<td>continuous positive airway pressure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CPR</td>
<td>cardiopulmonary resuscitation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CPS</td>
<td>capsular polysaccharide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CRF</td>
<td>chronic renal failure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CRI</td>
<td>chronic renal insufficiency</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CRL</td>
<td>crown-rump length</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CS</td>
<td>corticosteroid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CSD</td>
<td>cortical spreading depression</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CSE</td>
<td>combined spinal epidural</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CSF</td>
<td>cerebrospinal fluid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CSII</td>
<td>continuous subcutaneous insulin infusion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CST</td>
<td>contraction stress test</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CT</td>
<td>computerized tomography</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CTG</td>
<td>cardiotocography</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CTPA</td>
<td>computed tomography pulmonary angiography</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CTZ</td>
<td>chemo-receptor trigger zone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CVS</td>
<td>congenital varicella syndrome</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D&amp;E</td>
<td>dilation and evacuation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DAA</td>
<td>direct-acting antiviral agent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DBP</td>
<td>diastolic blood pressure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DC/DA</td>
<td>dichorionic/diamniotic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DES</td>
<td>diethylstilbestrol</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DHHS</td>
<td>Department of Health and Human Services</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DIC</td>
<td>disseminated intravascular coagulation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DIF</td>
<td>direct immunofluorescence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DM</td>
<td>diabetes mellitus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DMPA</td>
<td>depot medroxyprogesterone acetate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DNA</td>
<td>deoxyribonucleic acid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DNS</td>
<td>dysplastic nevus syndrome</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DPI</td>
<td>dry powder inhaler</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DPL</td>
<td>diagnostic peritoneal lavage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DRV VT</td>
<td>dilute Russell's viper venom time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DV</td>
<td>ductus venous</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DVP</td>
<td>deepest vertical pocket</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DVT</td>
<td>deep vein thrombosis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DZ</td>
<td>dizygotic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EASL</td>
<td>European Association for the Study of the Liver</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EBV</td>
<td>Epstein-Barr virus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ECDC</td>
<td>European Centre for Disease Prevention and Control</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ECMO</td>
<td>extracorporeal membrane oxygenation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EC-MPS</td>
<td>enteric-coated mycophenolate sodium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ECT</td>
<td>electroconvulsive therapy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ECV</td>
<td>external cephalic version</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ED</td>
<td>emergency department</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EDC</td>
<td>estimated date of confinement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EDD</td>
<td>estimated date of delivery (synonym of EDC)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EDF</td>
<td>end-diastolic flow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EFW</td>
<td>estimated fetal weight</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EIAT</td>
<td>enzyme immunoassay</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EKG</td>
<td>electrocardiogram</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ELISA</td>
<td>enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EM</td>
<td>electron microscopy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EN</td>
<td>enteral nutrition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EPCOT</td>
<td>European Prospective Cohort on Thrombophilia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EPDS</td>
<td>Edinburgh Postnatal Depression Scale</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EPS</td>
<td>extrapyramidal symptom</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EPT</td>
<td>expedited partner therapy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ERCP</td>
<td>endoscopic retrograde cholangiopancreatography</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ESLD</td>
<td>end-stage liver disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ESRD</td>
<td>end-stage renal disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FAST</td>
<td>focused abdominal sonogram for trauma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FBS</td>
<td>fetal blood sampling</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FD</td>
<td>fetal distress</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FDA</td>
<td>Food and Drug Administration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FDC</td>
<td>fixed-dose combination</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FEV1</td>
<td>forced expiratory volume in one second</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FGR</td>
<td>fetal growth restriction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FHM</td>
<td>familial hemiplegic migraine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FHR</td>
<td>fetal heart rate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FHT</td>
<td>fetal heart tracing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FISH</td>
<td>fluorescent in situ hybridization</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FKCG</td>
<td>fetal kinetocardiogram/tissue Doppler echocardiography</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FLM</td>
<td>fetal lung maturity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FMAIT</td>
<td>fetal maternal alloimmune thrombocytopenia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FNAIT</td>
<td>fetal and neonatal alloimmune thrombocytopenia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FOB</td>
<td>fasting plasma glucose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FPR</td>
<td>false positive rate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FSBS</td>
<td>fetal scalp blood sampling</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FSE</td>
<td>fetal scalp electrode</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FSI</td>
<td>foam stability index</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FTS</td>
<td>first-trimester screening</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FVC</td>
<td>forced vital capacity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FVL</td>
<td>factor V Leiden</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>g</td>
<td>grams</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GA</td>
<td>gestational age</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GBS</td>
<td>group B streptococcus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GBS</td>
<td>Guillain–Barré syndrome</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GDM</td>
<td>gestational diabetes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GERD</td>
<td>gastroesophageal reflux disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GFR</td>
<td>glomerular filtration rate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GHB</td>
<td>gamma-hydroxybutyrate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abbreviation</td>
<td>Definition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GHTN</td>
<td>gestational hypertension</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GI</td>
<td>gastrointestinal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GISP</td>
<td>Gonococcal Isolate Surveillance Project</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GTC</td>
<td>generalized tonic clonic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GTT</td>
<td>glucose tolerance test</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GWG</td>
<td>gestational weight gain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HAA</td>
<td>T ART</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HAV</td>
<td>hepatitis A virus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HBsAg</td>
<td>hepatitis B surface antigen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HBV</td>
<td>hepatitis B virus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HC</td>
<td>head circumference</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HCG</td>
<td>human chorionic gonadotropin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hct</td>
<td>hematocrit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HCV</td>
<td>hepatitis C virus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HD</td>
<td>hemodialysis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HD</td>
<td>Hodgkin's disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HDU</td>
<td>high-dependency unit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HELLP</td>
<td>hemolysis, elevated liver enzymes, and low platelet count</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HES</td>
<td>hydroxyethyl starch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HFA</td>
<td>hydrofluoroalkane</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HG</td>
<td>hyperemesis gravidarum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hgb</td>
<td>hemoglobin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HIE</td>
<td>hypoxic-ischemic encephalopathy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HIT</td>
<td>heparin-induced thrombocytopenia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HIV</td>
<td>human immunodeficiency virus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HLA</td>
<td>human leukocyte antigen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HPA</td>
<td>hypothalamic–pituitary–adrenal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HPA</td>
<td>human platelet antigen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HR</td>
<td>heart rate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HSV</td>
<td>herpes simplex virus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HTN</td>
<td>hypertension</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IAAT</td>
<td>immunosorbent agglutination assay test</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IALE</td>
<td>International League Against Epilepsy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IBD</td>
<td>inflammatory bowel disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IBW</td>
<td>ideal body weight</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ICH</td>
<td>intracranial hemorrhage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ICP</td>
<td>intrahepatic cholestasis of pregnancy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ICS</td>
<td>immunochromatographic strip</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ICU</td>
<td>intensive care unit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IDSA</td>
<td>Infectious Diseases Society of America</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IGRA</td>
<td>interferon gamma-release assay</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IH</td>
<td>impetigo herpetiformis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IM</td>
<td>intramuscular</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INR</td>
<td>international normalized ratio</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IOL</td>
<td>induction of labor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IPAA</td>
<td>ileal pouch–anal anastomosis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IPV</td>
<td>inactivated polio vaccine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ISS</td>
<td>injury severity score</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IUD</td>
<td>intrauterine device</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IUF</td>
<td>intrauterine fetal demise</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IUGR</td>
<td>intrauterine growth restriction (synonym of FGR)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IUPC</td>
<td>intrauterine pressure catheter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV</td>
<td>intravenous</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IVC</td>
<td>inferior vena cava</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IVDU</td>
<td>intravenous drug use</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IVF</td>
<td>intravenous fluids</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IVH</td>
<td>intraventricular</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L&amp;D</td>
<td>labor and delivery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L/S</td>
<td>lecithin/sphingomyelin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LA</td>
<td>lupus anticoagulant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LABA</td>
<td>long-acting β-agonist</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LAGB</td>
<td>laparoscopic adjustable gastric baning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LB</td>
<td>lamellar body</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LBW</td>
<td>low birth weight</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LBW</td>
<td>low birth weight (infants)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LCR</td>
<td>ligase chain reaction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LFT</td>
<td>liver function tests</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LGA</td>
<td>large for gestational age</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LGV</td>
<td>lymphogranuloma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LMP</td>
<td>last menstrual period</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LMW</td>
<td>low molecular weight</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LMWH</td>
<td>low-molecular-weight heparin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LR</td>
<td>likelihood ratio</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LSD</td>
<td>lysergic acid diethylamide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LSD</td>
<td>lysosomal storage disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LTRA</td>
<td>leukotriene receptor antagonist</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MA/MC</td>
<td>monoamniotic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MAC</td>
<td>mycobacterium avium complex</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MAOI</td>
<td>monoamine oxidase inhibitor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MAA</td>
<td>meconium aspiration syndrome</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MC/DA</td>
<td>monochorionic diamniotic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MCA</td>
<td>middle cerebral artery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MCV</td>
<td>mean corpuscular volume</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MD</td>
<td>mean difference</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MDD</td>
<td>major depressive disorder</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MDI</td>
<td>metered-dose inhaler</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MDI</td>
<td>multiple-dose insulin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MDQ</td>
<td>Mood Disorders Questionnaire</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MDR</td>
<td>multidrug-resistant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MFM</td>
<td>maternal–fetal medicine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MHC</td>
<td>major histocompatibility complex</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MI</td>
<td>myocardial infarction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MM</td>
<td>malignant melanoma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MMF</td>
<td>myco-phenolate mofetil</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MMR</td>
<td>measles–mumps–rubella</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MOM</td>
<td>multiple of the median</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MPA</td>
<td>mycophenolic acid products</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MRCP</td>
<td>magnetic resonance cholangiopancreatography</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MRI</td>
<td>magnetic resonance imaging</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MRU</td>
<td>magnetic resonance urography</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MSAFP</td>
<td>maternal serum alphafetoprotein</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MSH</td>
<td>melanocyte-stimulating hormone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abbreviation</td>
<td>Full Form</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MTHFR</td>
<td>methylenetetrahydrofolate reductase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MTX</td>
<td>methotrexate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MVI</td>
<td>prenatal multivitamin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MVP</td>
<td>maximum vertical pocket</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MZ</td>
<td>monozygotic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n/v</td>
<td>nausea and/or vomiting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NA</td>
<td>not available</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NA-ACCORD</td>
<td>North American AIDS Cohort Collaboration on</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NAAED</td>
<td>North American Antiepileptic Drug</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NAAT</td>
<td>nucleic acid amplification test</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NAEPP</td>
<td>National Asthma Education and Prevention</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NAIT</td>
<td>neonatal alloimmune thrombocytopenia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NAS</td>
<td>neonatal abstinence syndrome</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NBPP</td>
<td>neonatal brachial plexus palsy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NCHS</td>
<td>National Center for Health Statistics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NEC</td>
<td>necrotizing enterocolitis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NG</td>
<td>nasogastric</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NHL</td>
<td>Non–Hodgkin’s lymphoma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NICU</td>
<td>neonatal intensive care unit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NIH</td>
<td>National Institutes of Health</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NIH</td>
<td>nonimmune hydrops</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NIS</td>
<td>National Inpatient Sample</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NNRTI</td>
<td>non-nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NODM</td>
<td>new-onset diabetes mellitus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NOTES</td>
<td>natural orifice transluminal endoscopic surgery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NPH</td>
<td>neutral protamine Hagedorn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NRFHR</td>
<td>nonreassuring fetal heart rate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NRFHT</td>
<td>nonreassuring fetal heart testing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NRFS</td>
<td>nonreassuring fetal status</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NRI</td>
<td>norepinephrine reuptake inhibitor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NRT</td>
<td>nicotine replacement therapy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NRTI</td>
<td>nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NS</td>
<td>nephrotic syndrome</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NS</td>
<td>normal saline</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NSAIDS</td>
<td>nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NSCIA</td>
<td>National Spinal Cord Injury Association</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NST</td>
<td>nonstress test</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NSVD</td>
<td>normal spontaneous vaginal delivery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NT</td>
<td>nuchal translucency</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NTD</td>
<td>neural tube defect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NTDB</td>
<td>National Trauma Data Banks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NTPR</td>
<td>National Transplantation Pregnancy Registry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NVP</td>
<td>nausea and vomiting of pregnancy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OB</td>
<td>obstetrician</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OCT</td>
<td>oxytocin challenge test</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OGTt</td>
<td>oral glucose tolerance test</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OPV</td>
<td>oral live polio vaccine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OR</td>
<td>odds ratio</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OR</td>
<td>operating room</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OSA</td>
<td>obstructive sleep apnea</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OTC</td>
<td>over the counter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PAPP-A</td>
<td>pregnancy-associated plasma protein-A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PC</td>
<td>platelet count</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PCA</td>
<td>patient-controlled analgesia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PE</td>
<td>pulmonary embolus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PEA</td>
<td>pulseless electrical activity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PEFR</td>
<td>peak expiratory flow rate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PEP</td>
<td>polymorphic eruption of pregnancy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PCR</td>
<td>polymerase chain reaction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PCWP</td>
<td>pulmonary capillary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PD</td>
<td>peritoneal dialysis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PDA</td>
<td>patent ductus arteriosus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PE</td>
<td>pulmonary embolus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PGA</td>
<td>pemphigoid gestationis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PG</td>
<td>phosphatidylglycerol</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PG</td>
<td>plasma glucose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PGL</td>
<td>persistent generalized lymphadenopathy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PGM</td>
<td>prothrombin gene mutation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHT</td>
<td>pulmonary function tests</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PFT</td>
<td>pemphigoid gestationis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PG</td>
<td>phosphatidylglycerol</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PE</td>
<td>pulmonary embolus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PER</td>
<td>prophylaxis effective rate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PET</td>
<td>positron emission</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PK</td>
<td>pharmacokinetic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PL</td>
<td>pregnancy loss</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PI</td>
<td>pulsatility index</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PICC</td>
<td>peripherally inserted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PID</td>
<td>pelvic inflammatory disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PMCD</td>
<td>perimortem cesarean delivery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PP</td>
<td>prurigo of pregnancy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PP-13</td>
<td>placental protein-13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PP</td>
<td>purified protein derivative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PPH</td>
<td>postpartum hemorrhage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PPHN</td>
<td>persistent pulmonary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PPI</td>
<td>proton-pump inhibitor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PPROM</td>
<td>preterm premature</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PM</td>
<td>rupture of membranes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abbreviation</td>
<td>Full Form</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>-----------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PR</td>
<td>per rectum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pRBC</td>
<td>packed red blood cells</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PRCD</td>
<td>planned repeat cesarean delivery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PROM</td>
<td>preterm rupture of membranes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PS</td>
<td>protein S</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PSR</td>
<td>pulmonic stenosis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PSIC</td>
<td>Pneumonia Severity Index</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PSV</td>
<td>peak systolic velocity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PT</td>
<td>prothrombin time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PTB</td>
<td>preterm birth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PTL</td>
<td>preterm labor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PTT</td>
<td>partial thromboplastin time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PTU</td>
<td>propylthiouracil</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PUBS</td>
<td>percutaneous umbilical blood sampling</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PUZZ</td>
<td>pruritic urticarial papules and plaques of pregnancy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PUQE</td>
<td>pregnancy-unique quantification of emesis/nausea</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PVR</td>
<td>pulmonary vascular resistance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PW</td>
<td>pulsed wave</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>qd</td>
<td>once a day</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>qhs</td>
<td>four times per day</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>QS</td>
<td>quadruple screen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RBC</td>
<td>red blood cell</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RCT</td>
<td>randomized controlled study</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RCVS</td>
<td>reversible cerebral vasoconstriction syndrome</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RDS</td>
<td>respiratory distress syndrome</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RDW</td>
<td>red blood cell distribution width</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>REDF</td>
<td>reverse end-diastolic flow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RI</td>
<td>resistive index</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RNA</td>
<td>ribonucleic acid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ROM</td>
<td>rupture of membranes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ROSC</td>
<td>return of spontaneous circulation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RPR</td>
<td>rapid plasma reagin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RR</td>
<td>relative risk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RR</td>
<td>respiratory rate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RR</td>
<td>risk ratio</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rx</td>
<td>treatment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S/D</td>
<td>systolic/diastolic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SAB</td>
<td>spontaneous abortion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SABA</td>
<td>short-acting β-agonist</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SBP</td>
<td>systolic blood pressure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SC</td>
<td>subcutaneous</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SCI</td>
<td>spinal cord injury</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SCRN</td>
<td>Stillbirth Collaborative Research Network</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SD</td>
<td>striae distensae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SDA</td>
<td>strand-displacement amplification</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SDP</td>
<td>single deepest pocket</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SEE</td>
<td>Syphilis Elimination Effort</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SFDT</td>
<td>Sabin–Feldman dye test</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SG</td>
<td>striae gravidarum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SGA</td>
<td>small for gestational age</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SIDS</td>
<td>sudden infant death syndrome</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SJS</td>
<td>Stevens–Johnson syndrome</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SLE</td>
<td>systemic lupus erythematosus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SLICC</td>
<td>Systemic Lupus International Collaborating Clinics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SNRI</td>
<td>serotonin-norepinephrine reuptake inhibitor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SPTB</td>
<td>spontaneous preterm birth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SQ</td>
<td>subcutaneous</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SSC</td>
<td>Surviving Sepsis Campaign</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SSKI</td>
<td>saturated solution of potassium iodide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SSRI</td>
<td>selective serotonin reuptake inhibitor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STS</td>
<td>second-trimester screening</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SUDEP</td>
<td>sudden unexpected death in epilepsy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SVC</td>
<td>superior vena cava</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SVR</td>
<td>systemic vascular resistance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TAC</td>
<td>tricyclic antidepressant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TDD</td>
<td>total daily dose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TG</td>
<td>Toxoplasma gondii</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TH</td>
<td>therapeutic hypothermia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>THC</td>
<td>tetrahydrocannabinol</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TID</td>
<td>three times per day</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TIV</td>
<td>trivalent inactivated vaccine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TMAT</td>
<td>transcription-mediated amplification</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TNSF</td>
<td>tumor necrosis factor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TOL</td>
<td>trial of labor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TOLAC</td>
<td>trial of labor after cesarean</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TPO</td>
<td>thyroid peroxidase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TRAb</td>
<td>TSH receptor antibody</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TRALI</td>
<td>transfusion-related acute lung injury</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TRAP</td>
<td>twin reversal arterial perfusion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TRS</td>
<td>thyroid-stimulating hormone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TSI</td>
<td>thyroid-stimulating immune globulins</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TST</td>
<td>tuberculin skin testing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TTTS</td>
<td>twin–twin transfusion syndrome</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TVU</td>
<td>transvaginal ultrasound</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>U/S (or u/s)</td>
<td>ultrasound</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UA</td>
<td>umbilical artery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UC</td>
<td>ulcerative colitis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UDCA</td>
<td>ursodeoxycholic acid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UFH</td>
<td>unfractionated heparin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UPC</td>
<td>urinary protein creatinine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>USPSTF</td>
<td>U.S. Preventative Services Task Force</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UTI</td>
<td>urinary tract infection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V/Q</td>
<td>ventilation/perfusion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abbreviation</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VAS</td>
<td>vibroacoustic stimulation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VBAC</td>
<td>vaginal birth after cesarean</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VC</td>
<td>vital capacity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VDRL</td>
<td>venereal disease research laboratory</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VEGF</td>
<td>vascular endothelial growth factor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VIG</td>
<td>vaccinia immune globulin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VKA</td>
<td>vitamin K antagonist</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VL</td>
<td>viral load</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VPA</td>
<td>valproic acid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VSD</td>
<td>ventricular septal defect</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Contributors

James A. Airoldi  Department of Obstetrics and Gynecology, Division of Maternal-Fetal Medicine, St Luke’s University Health Network, Bethlehem, Pennsylvania

Joshua H. Barash  Department of Family and Community Medicine, Thomas Jefferson University Hospital, Philadelphia, Pennsylvania

Madeleine A. Becker  Department of Psychiatry and Human Behavior, Division of Consultation-Liaison Psychiatry, Psychosomatic Medicine Fellowship, Thomas Jefferson University Hospital, Philadelphia, Pennsylvania

Meriem K. Bensalem-Owen  University of Kentucky, Lexington, Kentucky

Vincenzo Berghella  Department of Obstetrics and Gynecology, Division of Maternal-Fetal Medicine, Sidney Kimmel Medical College of Thomas Jefferson University, Philadelphia, Pennsylvania

Meredith Birsner  Department of Obstetrics and Gynecology, Division of Maternal-Fetal Medicine, Sidney Kimmel Medical College of Thomas Jefferson University, Philadelphia, Pennsylvania

Rupsa C. Boelig  Department of Obstetrics and Gynecology, Division of Maternal-Fetal Medicine, Sidney Kimmel Medical College of Thomas Jefferson University, Philadelphia, Pennsylvania

Ryan K. Brannon  Drexel University College of Medicine, Philadelphia, Pennsylvania

Edward M. Buchanan  Department of Family and Community Medicine, Thomas Jefferson University Hospital, Philadelphia, Pennsylvania

Elyce Cardonick  Division of Maternal-Fetal Medicine, Robert Wood Johnson Medical School New Brunswick, New Jersey

Laura Carlson  Department of Obstetrics and Gynecology, Division of Maternal-Fetal Medicine, University of North Carolina School of Medicine, Chapel Hill, North Carolina

Nahida Chakhtoura  Eunice Kennedy Shriver National Institute of Child Health and Human Development, Bethesda, Maryland

Ann Chandy  Department of Psychiatry and Human Behavior, Thomas Jefferson University Hospital, Philadelphia, Pennsylvania

Suneet P. Chauhan  Eunice Kennedy Shriver NICHD Maternal-Fetal Medicine Units Network, Bethesda, Maryland and McGovern Medical School, University of Texas Health Science Center, Houston, Texas

Melissa Chu Lam  Department of Obstetrics and Gynecology, St. Luke’s University Health Network, Bethlehem, Pennsylvania

Katherine Connolly  Department of Obstetrics, Gynecology and Reproductive Sciences, Division of Maternal Fetal Medicine, Icahn School of Medicine at Mount Sinai, New York, New York
Contributors

Dana Correale Private Practice, Cheshire Dermatology, Cheshire, Connecticut

Raja Dhanekula Department of Medicine, Division of Gastroenterology, Sidney Kimmel Medical College, Thomas Jefferson University, Philadelphia, Pennsylvania

Jeffrey Ecker Department of Obstetrics and Gynecology, Division of Maternal Fetal Medicine, Massachusetts General Hospital, Boston, Massachusetts

Jonathan M. Fenkel Department of Medicine, Division of Gastroenterology, Sidney Kimmel Medical College, Thomas Jefferson University, Philadelphia, Pennsylvania

Henry L. Galan Department of Obstetrics and Gynecology, Division of Maternal-Fetal Medicine, Colorado Institute for Maternal and Fetal Health, University of Colorado Hospital, Aurora, Colorado

Maria A. Giraldo-Isaza Florida Perinatal Associates, Obstetric Medical Group, Inc, Tampa, Florida

Megan Gooding College of Health and Human Services, George Mason University, Fairfax, Virginia

Nora Graham Department of Obstetrics and Gynecology, Thomas Jefferson University Hospital, Philadelphia, Pennsylvania

Ibrahim A. Hammad Department of Obstetrics and Gynecology, Division of Maternal Fetal Medicine, University of Utah Health Sciences Center, Salt Lake City, Utah

Christopher R. Harman Department of Obstetrics, Gynecology and Reproductive Sciences, University of Maryland Medical Center, Baltimore, Maryland

Edward J. Hayes Department of Obstetrics and Gynecology, Division of Maternal-Fetal Medicine, Aurora Baycare Medical Center, Greenbay, Wisconsin

Michelle R. Hayes Department of Obstetrics and Gynecology, Division of Maternal-Fetal Medicine, Aurora Baycare Medical Center, Greenbay, Wisconsin

Paniz Heidari Department of Obstetrics and Gynecology, Sidney Kimmel Medical College of Thomas Jefferson University, Philadelphia, Pennsylvania

Steven K. Herrine Division of Gastroenterology and Hepatology, Thomas Jefferson University, Philadelphia, Pennsylvania

Katherine Husk Department of Urogynecology and Reconstructive Pelvic Surgery, University of North Carolina, Chapel Hill, North Carolina

Sushma Jwala Department of Obstetrics and Gynecology, Division of Maternal-Fetal Medicine, Obstetric Medical Group of Washington, Seattle, Washington

Priyadarshini Koduri Division of Maternal-Fetal Medicine, Antenatal Resource Center, Advocate Illinois Masonic Medical Center, Chicago, Illinois

Elisabeth J. S. Kunkel Division Consultation-Liaison Psychiatry, Department of Psychiatry and Human Behavior, Thomas Jefferson University, Philadelphia, Pennsylvania

Augusto Lauro Liver and Multiorgan Transplant Unit, St. Orsola University Hospital, Bologna, Italy

Jason B. Lee Department of Dermatology and Cutaneous Biology, Sidney Kimmel Medical College, Thomas Jefferson University, Philadelphia, Pennsylvania

Dawnette Lewis Division of Maternal-Fetal Medicine, Department of Obstetrics and Gynecology, Mount Sinai St. Luke’s Hospital, New York
Contributors

Melisa Lott Division of Maternal-Fetal Medicine, Women’s and Children’s Institute, Geisinger Health System, Danville, Pennsylvania

A. Dhanya Mackeen Division of Maternal-Fetal Medicine, Women’s and Children’s Institute, Geisinger Health System, Danville, Pennsylvania

Lucio Mandalà HPB Unit, La Maddalena Cancer Center, Palermo, Italy

Tracy A. Manuck Department of Obstetrics and Gynecology, Division of Maternal-Fetal Medicine, University of North Carolina, Chapel Hill, North Carolina

Amber S. Maratas Department of Family and Community Medicine, Thomas Jefferson University Hospital, Philadelphia, Pennsylvania

Giancarlo Mari Department of Obstetrics and Gynecology, University of Tennessee Health Science Center, Memphis, Tennessee

Ignazio R. Marino Department of Surgery, Sidney Kimmel Medical College, Thomas Jefferson University, Philadelphia, Pennsylvania

Sally Mathias Department of Neurology, University of Kentucky, Lexington, Kentucky

Rebekah McCurdy Department of Obstetrics and Gynecology, Division of Maternal-Fetal Medicine, Sidney Kimmel Medical College, Thomas Jefferson University, Philadelphia, Pennsylvania

Maria Teresa Mella Department of Obstetrics, Gynecology and Reproductive Sciences, Division of Maternal Fetal Medicine, Icahn School of Medicine at Mount Sinai, New York

M. Kathryn Menard Department of Obstetrics and Gynecology, Division of Maternal-Fetal Medicine, University of North Carolina School of Medicine, Chapel Hill, North Carolina

Rebecca J. Mercier Department of Obstetrics and Gynecology, Division of General Obstetrics and Gynecology, Sidney Kimmel Medical College Thomas Jefferson University, Philadelphia, Pennsylvania

Srikanth Nagalla Department of Medicine, Division of Hematology/Oncology, UT Southwestern Medical Center, Dallas, Texas

Mariam Naqvi Department of Obstetrics and Gynecology, Division of Maternal Fetal Medicine, Massachusetts General Hospital, Boston, Massachusetts

A. Marie O’Neill Rowan University School of Osteopathic Medicine, Stratford, New Jersey

Kelly M. Orzechowski Department of Obstetrics and Gynecology, Division of Maternal Fetal Medicine, Virginia Hospital Center, Arlington, Virginia

Luis D. Pacheco Department of Obstetrics/Gynecology, Division of Maternal Fetal Medicine and Department of Anesthesiology, Division of Surgical Critical Care, The University of Texas Medical Branch, Galveston, Texas

Michael J. Paglia Division of Maternal-Fetal Medicine, Women’s and Children’s Institute, Geisinger Health System, Danville, Pennsylvania

Leonardo Pereira Department of Obstetrics and Gynecology, Division of Maternal-Fetal Medicine, Oregon Health and Science University, Portland, Oregon

Lauren A. Plante Department of Obstetrics and Gynecology, Division of Maternal-Fetal Medicine and Department of Anesthesiology, Drexel University College of Medicine, Philadelphia, Pennsylvania

Sarah Poggi The Brock Perinatal Diagnostic Center Alexandria, Virginia
Timothy J. Rafael  Division of Maternal-Fetal Medicine, Department of Obstetrics and Gynecology, Mount Sinai Beth Israel Hospital, New York

Uma M. Reddy  Eunice Kennedy Shriver National Institute of Child Health and Human Development, Bethesda, Maryland

Shane Reeves  Division of Maternal-Fetal Medicine, Colorado Institute for Maternal and Fetal Health, University of Colorado, Aurora, Colorado

Amanda Roman  Department of Obstetrics and Gynecology, Division of Maternal-Fetal Medicine, Sidney Kimmel Medical College, Thomas Jefferson University, Philadelphia, Pennsylvania

Sharon Rubin  Department of Internal Medicine, Division of Cardiology, Pennsylvania Hospital, University of Pennsylvania, Philadelphia, Pennsylvania

Antonio F. Saad  Department of Obstetrics/Gynecology, Division of Maternal Fetal Medicine, The University of Texas Medical Branch, Galveston, Texas

Joya Sahu  Department of Dermatology and Cutaneous Biology, Sidney Kimmel Medical College, Thomas Jefferson University, Philadelphia, Pennsylvania

Jacques E. Samson  Department of Obstetrics and Gynecology, University of Tennessee Health Science Center, Memphis, Tennessee

Corina N. Schoen  Department of Obstetrics and Gynecology, Division of Maternal Fetal Medicine, Baystate Medical Center, Springfield, Massachusetts

Neil S. Seligman  Division of Maternal Fetal Medicine, Strong Memorial Hospital, University of Rochester, Rochester, New York

Kathryn Shaia  Department of Obstetrics, Gynecology and Reproductive Sciences, Icahn School of Medicine at Mount Sinai, New York

William R. Short  Division of Infectious Diseases, Perelman School of Medicine, University of Pennsylvania, Philadelphia, Pennsylvania

Stephen Silberstein  Jefferson Headache Center, Thomas Jefferson University, Philadelphia, Pennsylvania

Nazanin E. Silver  Department of Psychiatry and Human Behavior, Thomas Jefferson University Hospital, Philadelphia, Pennsylvania

Robert M. Silver  Department of Obstetrics and Gynecology, University of Utah, Salt Lake City, Utah

Neil Silverman  Department of Obstetrics and Gynecology, Division of Maternal-Fetal Medicine, David Geffen School of Medicine at UCLA, Los Angeles, California

Giuliana Simonazzi  Department of Medical and Surgical Sciences, Division of Obstetrics and Prenatal Medicine, St. Orsola Malpighi Hospital, University of Bologna, Bologna, Italy

Marcela C. Smid  Department of Obstetrics and Gynecology, Division of Maternal-Fetal Medicine, University of North Carolina, Chapel Hill, North Carolina

David M. Stamilio  Department of Obstetrics and Gynecology, Division of Maternal Fetal Medicine, University of North Carolina, Chapel Hill, North Carolina

Joanne Stone  Department of Obstetrics, Gynecology and Reproductive Sciences, Division of Maternal Fetal Medicine, Icahn School of Medicine at Mount Sinai, New York, New York
**CONTRIBUTORS**

**Robert A. Strauss** Department of Obstetrics and Gynecology, Division of Maternal-Fetal Medicine, University of North Carolina, Chapel Hill, North Carolina

**Danielle L. Tate** Department of Obstetrics and Gynecology, University of Tennessee Health Science Center, Memphis, Tennessee

**Jorge E. Tolosa** Department of Obstetrics and Gynecology, Division of Maternal-Fetal Medicine, Oregon Health and Science University, Portland, Oregon and Departamento de Obstetricia y Ginecologia, Centro Nacer, Salud Sexual y Reproductiva, Facultad de Medicina, Universidad de Antioquia, Medellín, Colombia

**Tino Tran** Department of Obstetrics and Gynecology, Crozer-Keystone Medical Center, Chester, Pennsylvania

**Oscar A. Viteri** Department of Obstetrics, Gynecology and Reproductive Sciences, Division of Maternal-Fetal Medicine, McGovern Medical School, University of Texas Health Science Center, Houston, Texas

**Tal E. Weinberger** Thomas Jefferson University Hospital, Philadelphia, Pennsylvania

**Shuhan Zhu** Department of Neurology, Boston University School of Medicine, Boston, Massachusetts
Hypertensive disorders*

Amanda Roman

CHRONIC HYPERTENSION

Key Points

- Chronic hypertension (CHTN) is defined as either a history of hypertension preceding the pregnancy or a blood pressure (BP) ≥140/90 prior to 20 weeks gestation.
- Severe CHTN has been defined as systolic blood pressure (SBP) ≥160 mmHg or diastolic blood pressure (DBP) ≥110 mmHg.
- High-risk CHTN has been defined in pregnancy as that associated with secondary hypertension, target organ damage (left ventricular dysfunction, retinopathy, dyslipidemia, microvascular disease, prior stroke), maternal age >40, previous pregnancy loss, SBP ≥180, or DBP ≥110 mmHg.
- Maternal complications of CHTN include worsening HTN, superimposed preeclampsia, severe preeclampsia, eclampsia, HELLP (Hemolysis, Elevated Liver enzymes, and Low Platelet count) syndrome, cesarean delivery, and (uncommonly) pulmonary edema, hypertensive encephalopathy, retinopathy, cerebral hemorrhage, and acute renal failure.
- Fetal complications of CHTN: fetal growth restriction (FGR), oligohydramnios, placental abruption, preterm birth (PTB), and perinatal death.
- Prevention (mostly preconception) consists of exercise, weight reduction, proper diet, and restriction of sodium intake.
- In addition to history and physical examination, initial evaluation may include liver function tests (LFTs), platelet count, creatinine, urine analysis, and 24-hour urine for total protein (and creatinine clearance). Women with high-risk, severe, or long-standing HTN may need an electrocardiogram (EKG) and echocardiogram as well. If hypertension is newly diagnosed and has not been evaluated previously, a medical consult may be indicated to assess for possible etiologic factors (renal artery stenosis, pheochromocytoma, hyperaldosteronism, etc.).
- There is insufficient evidence to assess bed rest for managing CHTN in pregnancy.
- Blood pressure decreases physiologically in the first and second trimester in pregnancy, especially in women with CHTN. As blood pressure is usually <140/90 mmHg at the first visit for hypertensive women, often antihypertensive drugs do not need to be increased. BP will usually increase again in the third trimester, leading to a workup for preeclampsia and, if absent, restarting of antihypertensive drugs.

- Antihypertensive medications in pregnancy are recommended in cases with severe HTN: SBP ≥160 or DBP ≥100 on two occasions. The goal is usually to maintain a BP of around 140–150/90–100 mmHg. With end-organ damage, such as renal disease, diabetes with vascular disease, or left ventricular dysfunction, these thresholds should probably be lowered to <140/90.
- On the basis of limited trial data, labetalol and nifedipine are the current antihypertensive drugs most used by experts. Labetalol dosing can start at 100 mg twice a day with a maximum dose of 2400 mg a day. Nifedipine is started at 10 mg twice a day or 30 mg XL once a day with a maximum dose of 120 mg/day. Angiotensin-converting enzyme (ACE) inhibitors are contraindicated in pregnancy.

Diagnosis/Definition (Table 1.1)

Chronic hypertension in pregnancy (CHTN) is defined as either a history of hypertension preceding the pregnancy or a blood pressure ≥140/90 prior to 20 weeks gestation. Though controversial, the 5th Korotkoff sound is used for the diastolic reading. Blood pressure measurements can be obtained using a manual or an automated cuff with the patient in the sitting position. Severe CHTN is defined as SBP ≥160 mmHg or DBP ≥110 mmHg. In non-pregnant adults, BP <120/80 mmHg is normal, BP 120–139/80–89 mmHg is prehypertension, BP 140–159/90–99 is stage 1 hypertension, and BP ≥160/100 mmHg is stage 2 hypertension.

Epidemiology/Incidence

CHTN occurs in about 1% to 5% of pregnant women. CHTN in pregnancy is the second leading cause of maternal mortality in the United States, accounting for about 15% of such deaths. Hypertensive disorders, such as CHTN, gestational hypertension, preeclampsia with or without severe features, or HELLP syndrome, occur in 12% to 22% of pregnancies.

Etiology/Basic Pathophysiology

CHTN mostly develops as a complex quantitative trait affected by both genetic and environmental factors. Most women have essential or primary hypertension, and around 10% may have underlying renal or endocrine disease.

Classification

Severe CHTN has been defined as SBP ≥160 mmHg or DBP ≥110 mmHg [1]. High-risk CHTN has been defined in pregnancy as that associated with secondary hypertension, target organ damage (left ventricular dysfunction, retinopathy, dyslipidemia, maternal age >40 years, microvascular...
disease, prior stroke), previous loss, SBP ≥180 mmHg or DBP ≥110 mmHg or other maternal diseases, such as obesity [2] and/or diabetes mellitus. For gestational HTN, see below.

**Risk Factors/Associations**

Renal disease (the most common cause of secondary CHTN); collagen vascular disease; antiphospholipid syndrome; diabetes; and other disorders such as thyrotoxicosis, Cushing’s disease, hyperaldosteronism, pheochromocytoma, or coarctation of the aorta.

### Table 1.1 Definitions and Diagnostic Criteria for Hypertensive Disorders of Pregnancy

**Chronic hypertension in pregnancy**

Either a history of hypertension (HTN) preceding the pregnancy with or without antihypertensive medication or a blood pressure ≥140/90 prior to 20 weeks gestation.

**Gestational Hypertension**

Sustained (on at least two occasions, six hours apart) BP ≥140/90 after 20 weeks without proteinuria, other signs or symptoms of preeclampsia, or a prior history of HTN.

**Preeclampsia without severe features (“mild preeclampsia”)**

Sustained (at least twice, six hours but not >7 days apart) BP ≥140/90 mmHg and proteinuria (≥300 mg in 24 hours in a woman without prior proteinuria) after 20 weeks of gestation in a woman with previously normal blood pressure.

**Superimposed preeclampsia**

One or more of the following criteria:

- New onset of proteinuria (≥300 mg in 24 hours without prior proteinuria) after 20 weeks in a woman with chronic HTN or sudden increase in proteinuria in a woman with known proteinuria before or early in pregnancy
- A sudden increase in hypertension previously well controlled or escalation of antihypertensive medication to control BP

**Superimposed preeclampsia with severe features**

Superimposed preeclampsia and one or more of the following criteria:

- Severe range of BP (≥160/110 mmHg) despite escalation of antihypertensive medication
- Platelet count <100,000/mm³
- Increased hepatic transaminases (AST and/or ALT) two times the upper limit of normal concentration for the particular laboratory
- New onset or worsening renal insufficiency (creatinine ≥1.1 mg/dL or a doubling of the serum creatinine)
- Pulmonary edema
- Persistent neurological symptoms (e.g., headache, visual changes)

**Preeclampsia with severe features (“severe preeclampsia”)**

Preeclampsia with any one of the following criteria:

- BP ≥160/110 mmHg (two occasions, >4 hours apart)
- Thrombocytopenia (platelets <100,000/mm³) and/or evidence of microangiopathic hemolytic anemia
- Increased hepatic transaminases (AST and/or ALT) two times the upper limit of normal concentration for the particular laboratory
- Progressive renal insufficiency (creatinine ≥1.1 mg/dL or a doubling of the serum creatinine or oliguria (<500 mL urine in 24 hours)) in absence of other renal disease
- Persistent headache or other cerebral or visual disturbances (including grand mal seizures)
- Persistent epigastric (or right upper quadrant) pain
- Pulmonary edema or cyanosis

**HELLP syndrome**

Tennessee Classification (most commonly used)

- **Hemolysis** as evidenced by an abnormal peripheral smear in addition to either serum LDH >600 IU/L or total bilirubin ≥1.2 mg/dL (≥20.52 μmol/L)
- **Elevated liver enzymes** as evidenced by an AST or ALT two times the upper limit of normal concentration at a particular laboratory
- **Platelets <100,000 cells/mm³**.

If all the criteria are met, the syndrome is defined “complete”; if only one or two criteria are present, the term “partial HELLP” is preferred.

**Subclassification: Mississippi HELLP Classification System**

- **Class 1**: HELLP syndrome (severe thrombocytopenia): platelet count ≤50,000 cells/mm³ + LDH >600 IU/L and AST or ALT ≥70 IU/L
- **Class 2**: HELLP syndrome (moderate thrombocytopenia): platelet count >50,000 but ≤100,000 cells/mm³ + LDH >600 IU/L and AST or ALT ≥70 IU/L
- **Class 3**: HELLP syndrome (mild thrombocytopenia): platelet count >100,000 but ≤150,000 cells/mm³ + LDH >600 IU/L and AST or ALT ≥40 IU/L

**Eclampsia**

- Seizures (grand mal) in the presence of preeclampsia and/or HELLP syndrome.

---

### Complications

**Maternal**

Worsening CHTN, superimposed preeclampsia (20%) with or without severe features, eclampsia, HELLP syndrome, and cesarean delivery. Pulmonary edema, hypertensive encephalopathy, retinopathy, cerebral hemorrhage, and acute renal failure are uncommon but are more common with severe CHTN [3].

**Fetal**

Growth restriction (8%–15%); oligohydramnios, placental abruption (0.7%–1.5%, about a twofold increase), PTB
(12%-34%), and perinatal death (two- to fourfold increase). All of these complications have higher incidences with severe or high-risk CHTN.

Management

Principles

Pregnancy is characterized by increased blood volume, decreased colloid oncotic pressure (see also Chapter 3 in Obstetric Evidence Based Guidelines). Physiologic BP decreasing in the first and second trimester may mask CHTN.

Initial Evaluation/Workup

History. Antihypertensive drugs, prior workup, end-organ damage, prior obstetrical history, family history of renal or cardiac disease.

Physical examination. Blood pressure, cardiac murmurs, edema.

Laboratory tests. Baseline values may be useful to be able to compare in cases of possible later preeclampsia, liver function test (LFT), platelets, creatinine, urine analysis, 24-hour urine for total protein (and creatinine clearance) (see also Chapter 23). An early glucose challenge test may be indicated. Coagulation studies (especially fibrinogen) are usually not indicated except in specific severe cases. Creatinine clearance (mL/min) is calculated as follows:

\[
\text{Urine creatinine (mg/dL) \times Total urine volume (mL)} / \text{Serum (mg/dL) \times 1440 minutes}
\]

Other tests. Maternal EKG, echocardiogram, and ophthalmological examination are suggested, especially in women with long-standing, high-risk, or severe hypertension. Renal ultrasound to rule out polycystic kidney disease or obstructive disease causing renal failure may be considered in cases of suspected obstructive uropathy or strong family history of kidney disease.

Workup

It is important to identify cardiovascular risk factors or any reversible cause of hypertension and assess for target organ damage or cardiovascular disease. Reversible causes include chronic kidney disease, coarctation of the aorta, Cushing’s syndrome, drug-induced/related causes, pheochromocytoma, hyperaldosteronism, renovascular hypertension (renal artery stenosis), thyroid/parathyroid disease, and sleep apnea. If hypertension is newly diagnosed and has not been evaluated previously, a medical consult may be indicated to assess for any of these factors. Secondary hypertension, target organ damage (left ventricular dysfunction, retinopathy, dyslipidemia, renal disease, microvascular disease, prior stroke), maternal age ≥40 years, previous loss, SBP ≥180 or DBP ≥110 mmHg are associated with higher risks in pregnancy.

Prevention

A baby aspirin is recommended starting at 12 week or at least before 24 week to decrease the incidence of preeclampsia. In women with mild hypertension, gestational hypertensive disorders, or a family history of hypertensive disorders, 30 minutes of exercise three times a week may decrease DBP, as per a very small trial [4]. Maintaining ideal body weight and preconception weight reduction is recommended for overweight or obese women. A proper diet should be rich in fruits, vegetables, and low-fat dairy foods with reduced saturated and total fats. Restriction of sodium intake to <2.4 g sodium daily intake, recommended for essential hypertension, is beneficial in nonpregnant adults. Use of alcohol and tobacco is strongly discouraged.

Screening/Diagnosis

Initial BP evaluation may help to identify women with chronic hypertension, and third-trimester blood pressure readings aid in preeclampsia screening. A BP of ≥120/80 mmHg in the first or second trimester is not normal and associated with later risks of preeclampsia. Blood pressure should be taken properly. Appropriate measurement of BP includes using Korotkoff phase V, appropriate cuff size (length 1.5 x upper-arm circumference, or a cuff with a bladder that encircles ≥80% of the arm), and position so that the woman's arm is at the level of the heart (sitting up) at rest.

Preconception Counseling

There are significant risks associated with hypertension and preeclampsia in pregnancy. All women should be counseled appropriately regarding the possible complications and preventive and management strategies for hypertensive disorders in pregnancy. ACE inhibitors and angiotensin type II (AI) receptor antagonists should be discontinued. A complete evaluation and workup, as described above, should be done, especially if she has a several-year history of hypertension and/or hypertension never fully evaluated. Baseline tests can also be obtained for later comparison. Abnormalities should be addressed and managed appropriately (see specific chapters). If, for example, serum creatinine (Cr) is >1.4 mg/dL, the woman should be aware of increased risks in pregnancy (pregnancy/fetal loss, reduced birth weight, preterm delivery, and accelerated deterioration of maternal renal disease). Even mild renal disease (Cr = 1.1-1.4 mg/dL) with uncontrolled HTN is associated with 10 times higher risk of fetal loss (see Chapter 17).

Prenatal Care

Often BP monitoring at home is suggested in pregnancies with CHTN. At present, the possible advantages and risks of ambulatory blood pressure monitoring during pregnancy, in particular in hypertensive pregnant women, cannot be defined because there is no randomized controlled trial (RCT) evidence to support the use of ambulatory BP monitoring during pregnancy [5].

Therapy

Lifestyle changes and bed rest. There are no trials to assess lifestyle changes other than bed rest in pregnancy. Weight reduction is not recommended. The diet should be rich in fruits, vegetables, and low-fat dairy foods with reduced saturated and total fats and with sodium intake restricted to <2.4 g sodium daily.

There is insufficient evidence to demonstrate any differences between bed rest (in or out of the hospital) for reported outcomes overall. Compared with routine activity at home, some bed rest in the hospital for nonproteinuric hypertension is associated with a 42% reduced risk of severe hypertension and a borderline 47% reduction in risk of PTB in one trial [6]. The trial did not address possible adverse effects of bed rest. Three times more women in the bed rest group opted not to have the same management in future pregnancies, if the choice is given. There are no significant differences for any other outcomes [6].
Antihypertensive drugs

Common types

- **Labetalol (alpha- and beta-blocker):** On the basis of limited trial data (see below), labetalol is the current drug of choice of many experts [1,17]. It has a rapid onset of action (within two hours). Dosing can start at 100 mg twice a day with maximum dose of 2400 mg a day. As with other drugs, generally a different agent should not be added until maximum doses of the first drug are achieved. Labetalol has been associated with elevated liver enzymes in rare cases (which may be confused with HELLP syndrome) as well as lethargy, fatigue, sleep disorders, and bronchoconstriction. Labetalol should be avoided in women with asthma, heart disease, or congestive heart failure.

- **Calcium channel blockers:** Calcium channel blockers are frequently used as first or second option for CHTN in pregnancy. There is no known association with birth defects with reassuring long-term follow-up of babies up to 1.5 years. Nifedipine is not associated with adverse perinatal outcome [8]. Nifedipine can be started at 10 mg twice a day with a maximum dose of 120 mg/day. Long-acting nifedipine XL can be started at 30 mg with 120 mg as a maximum dose. Very rare cases of neuromuscular blockade have been reported when nifedipine is used simultaneously with magnesium sulfate. This blockade is reversible with 10% solution of calcium gluconate. Although amlodipine is widely used in nonpregnant individuals with hypertension, there are sparse data of its use in pregnancy [9]. Other calcium antagonists, such as verapamil and diltiazem, have been used.

- **Beta-blockers:** The safety of beta-adrenergic blockers is somewhat controversial due to reports of premature labor, FGR, neonatal anemia, bradycardia, and hypoglycemia in pregnancy compared to placebo and with higher mortality in nonpregnant adults compared to other agents and should probably be avoided. There is insufficient evidence to assess if other drugs in this class (or even other classes) are associated with the same effect (see below).

- **Diuretics:** Women who use diuretics from early in pregnancy do not have the physiologic increase in plasma volume, which poses a theoretical concern because pre-eclampsia is associated with reduced plasma volume. Nonetheless, the reduction in plasma volume associated with diuretics has not been associated with adverse effects on outcomes. Diuretics are not contraindicated in pregnancy except in settings in which uteroplacental perfusion is already reduced (i.e., preeclampsia and FGR). This is usually the drug of first choice for some nonpregnant adults and should be considered as a secondary option in pregnant women. The initial dose of hydrochlorothiazide is usually 12.5 mg twice a day with a maximum dose of 50 mg/day. Dose should be adjusted to prevent hypokalemia.

- **ACE inhibitor (or All receptor antagonists):** These drugs are contraindicated in the first trimester because they might be associated with a twofold increase in malformations and are contraindicated also later in pregnancy because they are associated with FGR, oligohydramnios, neonatal renal failure, and neonatal death. Postpartum complications include oliguria and anuria.

- **Methyldopa (Aldomet):** This drug was the preferred first-line agent historically because it is associated with stable uteroplacental blood flow and fetal hemodynamics, and no long-term adverse effects are seen in exposed children (up to 7.5 years; best documentation of fetal safety of any antihypertensive drug). It is a mild antihypertensive agent and has a slow onset of action (three to six hours). Liver disease is a contraindication. Initial dose is usually 250 mg two to three times a day with the highest dose 500 mg four times a day (2 g/day). Side effects include dry mouth and drowsiness/somnolence.

Effectiveness

**Mild-to-moderate HTN.** Mild-to-moderate HTN is usually defined in trials as a SBP of 140 to 159 mmHg or a DBP of 90 to 109 mmHg. A Cochrane review published in 2014 included 49 trials (4723 women) to evaluate the management in pregnant women with **mild-to-moderate hypertension** (all diagnoses included). Antihypertensive drugs vs. placebo were associated with a 50% reduction in the risk of developing severe hypertension but no differences in the risk of developing preeclampsia, PTB, small for gestational age (SGA), perinatal death, or any other outcomes [10]. Of the included studies, only six had dedicated inclusion of women with CHTN: Similar to the overall findings, in this subgroup of women, there was a 43% reduction in the risk of developing severe hypertension but no changes in other maternal or perinatal outcome. Beta-blockers and calcium channel blockers used together instead of methyldopa have a 46% reduction in the risk of severe hypertension and a 27% overall risk of developing proteinuria/preeclampsia. However, there is insufficient evidence to conclude that one antihypertensive is better than another [10]. Other meta-analyses have suggested that women receiving **beta-blockers** had a significant 38% increase risk in SGA and a threefold increase in birth weight <5th percentile [11–13] A recent multicenter international RCT compared “less tight control” to “tight control” of BP for pregnant women with mild-to-moderate hypertension [14]. The study reported outcomes for 987 women who were enrolled at 14–33 weeks of gestation; participants had either chronic (75%) or gestational (25%) nonproteinuric hypertension. Women were randomized to either less tight control (target DBP 100 mmHg) or tight control (target DBP 85 mmHg) during pregnancy. The primary outcome of pregnancy loss or need for high-level neonatal care for ≥48 hours did not differ between groups (31.4% vs. 30.7%). The frequency of severe hypertension was higher with less-tight control but was not associated with any adverse pregnancy outcome, such as preeclampsia, abortion, or composite of “serious maternal complications.” The overall risk of SGA (<10th percentile) was not different between groups, aOR:0.78; (0.56–1.08). In the subgroup with chronic hypertension, the risk of SGA was 34% lower with less-tight control (13.9% vs. 19.7%; aOR:0.66; 95% CI 0.44–1.00) although this study was underpowered to examine subgroup differences [14]. In the absence of strong evidence of benefits and risks of pharmacologic treatment and SGA, management of pregnant women with mild-to-moderate chronic hypertension remains uncertain [1,7].

The task force of hypertension in pregnancy recommends that women with mild to moderate hypertension (SBP ≥140 mmHg but <160 mmHg or DBP ≥90 mmHg but <110 mmHg) without end-organ damage should not be treated with pharmacologic agents [1].

In women with known CHTN well controlled on antihypertensive medications, discontinuation of the medication during the first trimester is a reasonable alternative as blood
pressure is usually <140/90 at the first visit. Often BP will increase again in the third trimester, leading to a workup for preeclampsia, and if preeclampsia is absent, antihypertensive drugs can be restarted.

For women with CHTN and end-organ damage (renal disease, diabetes with vascular disease, or left ventricular dysfunction), these thresholds should probably be lowered to <140/90 mmHg to avoid progression of the disease during pregnancy and associated complications. Severe HTN. Severe HTN is defined as SBP ≥160 mmHg or DBP ≥110 mmHg [1]. There is insufficient evidence to assess the benefits and risks of different antihypertensive drugs for severe CHTN as most studies that address this question have not been limited to women with CHTN and also have included gestational HTN and preeclampsia. A Cochrane systematic review of 35 trials, 3573 women, evaluated the drug treatment for severe HTN during pregnancy [15]. Drug therapy was initiated for DBP ≥100–110 mmHg mostly during the third trimester. They included a few women with CHTN, but subgroup analysis was not performed. The task force on hypertension in pregnancy recommends starting antihypertensive therapy at SBP >160 mmHg or DBP >105 mmHg on at least two occasions with a goal of SBP between 120 and 160 mmHg and DBP between 80 and 105 mmHg, avoiding overly aggressive BP lowering due to concerns of decreased utero-placental blood flow [1]. This is to decrease the risk of cerebrovascular accidents and cardiovascular (e.g., congestive heart failure) and renal complications. The goal is to maintain BP around 140–150/90–100 mmHg.

There are two indications of antihypertensive medications for women with CHTN: 1) acute lowering of severe HTN in the hospital (Table 1.3), or 2) chronic treatment in an outpatient setting (Table 1.4). Based on findings of the Cochrane systematic review [15], there is no clear evidence that one antihypertensive is preferable to the others for improving outcomes for women with very high blood pressure during pregnancy. Therefore, the choice of antihypertensive should depend on the experience and familiarity of an individual clinician with a particular drug and on what is known about adverse maternal and fetal side effects. Three drugs—high-dose diazoxide [16], ketanserin, and nimodipine—have serious disadvantages and so should probably be avoided for women with very high blood pressure during pregnancy.

**Antepartum Testing**

Increased perinatal morbidity and mortality is mainly attributed to severe CHTN and high-risk CHTN with end-organ damage or secondary HTN. The risk of FGR with uncomplicated CHTN is 8% to 15%, and with severe and high-risk CHTN, the risk increases up to 40%. Early detection of FGR can decrease the risk of stillbirth by 20% [17], and the addition of umbilical artery Doppler on those with suspected FGR decreases perinatal mortality by 29% [18]. Initial dating ultrasound, preferably in the first trimester (FTS at 11–14 weeks), anatomy ultrasound at around 18 to 20 weeks, and ultrasound for growth at 28 to 32 weeks are suggested for women with uncomplicated CHTN and every month after anatomy ultrasound on those with severe and high-risk CHTN (see also Chapter 4 in Obstetric Evidence Based Guidelines).

Antenatal testing (usually with weekly nonstress tests) is suggested starting around 32 weeks, especially if poorly controlled, severe HTN, high-risk CHTN, FGR, or superimposed preeclampsia is indicated. Umbilical artery Doppler is recommended in cases of FGR (see Chapter 44). For uterine artery Doppler, see the section titled “Preeclampsia.”

**Delivery**

Often PTB (either spontaneous or iatrogenic) occurs because of complications. In the uncomplicated pregnancy with CHTN, the pregnancy should probably be delivered by the estimated date of confinement (EDC). Unfortunately, there are no RCTs evaluating timing of delivery for women with chronic HTN. In a large population-based cohort study, among women with otherwise uncomplicated chronic hypertension, delivery at 38 or 39 weeks appears to provide the optimal trade-off between the risk of adverse fetal and adverse neonatal outcomes. The risk of stillbirth is significantly higher at 41 weeks [19].

**Anesthesia**

See the section titled “Preeclampsia” and also Chapter 11 in Obstetric Evidence Based Guidelines.

**Postpartum/Breast-Feeding**

Methyldopa, labetalol, beta-blockers, calcium channel blockers, and most other agents are safe with breast-feeding, with the possible exception of ACE inhibitors, because even low concentrations in breast milk could affect neonatal renal function.

**GESTATIONAL HYPERTENSION**

**Definition (Table 1.1)**

Gestational hypertension (GHTN), formerly known as pregnancy-induced hypertension, is defined as sustained over 140/90 mmHg after 20 weeks, without proteinuria, other signs or symptoms of pre-eclampsia. Severe GHTN is defined similarly except that the cutoffs are ≥160/110 mmHg.

**Incidence**

About 6% to 17% healthy nulliparous women.

**Risk Factors**

Most risk factors are similar to preeclampsia (Table 1.2).

**Complications**

Progression to preeclampsia usually is seen in 1–3 weeks. Severe GHTN is associated with higher morbidities than mild preeclampsia with incidences of abruption, PTB, and SGA, similar to severe preeclampsia. If GHTN develops before 30 weeks or is severe, there is a high (50%) rate of progression to preeclampsia.

**Antenatal Management**

GHTN is usually associated with good outcomes, similar to low-risk pregnant women [20], so that close surveillance for development of preeclampsia but no other intervention is usually needed. Before 37 weeks, in the absence of severe GHTN, preeclampsia with severe features or preterm labor and in the presence of reassuring fetal testing, expectant management is suggested. Outpatient management with close surveillance of maternal symptoms, BP (suggest daily as outpatient with personal BP cuff), proteinuria, and laboratory
tests is suggested. Antihypertensive medications for BP <160/110 mmHg or bed rest are not recommended. Antepartum surveillance also should include daily fetal kick counts, ultrasonographic fetal growth assessment every 3–4 weeks, BPP or modified BPP every week starting at the onset of diagnosis.

Severe GHTN usually requires admission to the hospital at diagnosis to increase maternal fetal surveillance. Antihypertensive medications are recommended in women with SBPs ≥160 mmHg or DBPs ≥110 mmHg to avoid maternal complications (stroke, cardiac failure, pulmonary edema, renal impairment, and death). Drugs of choice for both oral or intravenous administration, and doses, are described in Table 1.3 and Table 1.4 (same recommendations as above in CHTN section).

Delivery

For women at or beyond 37 weeks with GHTN, delivery is recommended rather than continued observation. Compared to expectant management, induction of labor in women with mostly (about 66%) gestational hypertension (or pre-eclampsia without severe features) at 36 to 41 weeks gestation is associated with a trend for lower incidence of maternal complications (e.g., HELLP, severe HTN, and pulmonary edema) (RR 0.81, 95% CI 0.63–1.03), and lower incidence of neonatal pH <7.05 with induction of labor ≥37 weeks [21]. Trends were seen for benefit of induction associated with less cesarean delivery and maternal ICU admission. Magnesium sulfate for seizure prophylaxis is not indicated in GHTN. There is no strict recommendation of when to deliver women with severe GHTN in absence of severe features. If any of the criteria for severe features of preeclampsia are present, delivery is indicated at 34 weeks or after (see below).

Postpartum management of women with GHTN requires continued observation of BPs for 72 hours postpartum and outpatient follow up in 7–10 days as there is an increased risk of postpartum preeclampsia/eclampsia and CHTN in these women [1].

PREECLAMPSIA

Key Points

- Preeclampsia is defined as sustained (at least twice, 6 hours but not >7 days apart) new onset of SBP ≥140 mmHg or DBP ≥90 mmHg and new onset of proteinuria (≥300 mg in 24 hours or protein creatinine ratio ≥0.3 or dipstick reading of more than +1 only if other methods are not available), after 20 weeks of gestation in a woman with previously normal blood pressure.

- Preeclampsia can be diagnosed as well if there is new onset of SBP ≥140 mmHg or DBP ≥90 mmHg in absence of hypertension in pregnancy.

Table 1.2 Selected Clinical Risk Factors for Preeclampsia

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Risk Factor</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Primiparity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Primipaternity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Previous preeclamptic pregnancy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chronic hypertension</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chronic renal disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>History of thrombophilia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In vitro fertilization</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Family history of preeclampsia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pregestational diabetes mellitus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Obesity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Systemic lupus erythematosus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Advanced maternal age (&gt;40 years)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


Abbreviations: IM: intramuscular; IV, intravenous.

Table 1.3 Antihypertensive Medications for Urgent Blood Pressure Control in the Hospital

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Drug</th>
<th>Dose</th>
<th>Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Labetalol</td>
<td>10–20 mg IV, then 20–80 mg every 20–30 minutes to a maximum dose of 300 mg or constant infusion 1–2 mg/min IV</td>
<td>Considered first-line agent Tachycardia is less common and fewer adverse effects Contraindicated in patients with asthma, heart disease, or congestive heart failure Higher or frequent dosage associated with maternal hypotension, headaches, and fetal distress—maybe more common than other agents</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hydralazine</td>
<td>5 mg IV or IM, then 5–10 mg IV every 20–40 minutes to maximum dose of 30 mg or constant infusion 0.5–10 mg/h</td>
<td>May observe tachycardia and headaches</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nifedipine</td>
<td>10–20 mg orally, repeat in 30 minutes if needed; then 10–20 mg every 2–6 hours</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


Table 1.4 Oral Antihypertensive Medications in Pregnant Patients (Outpatient)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Drug</th>
<th>Dosage</th>
<th>Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Labetalol</td>
<td>200–2400 mg/d orally in two or three divided doses</td>
<td>Well tolerated Partial broncho-constrictive effects Avoid in patients with asthma and congestive heart failure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nifedipine</td>
<td>30–120 mg/day orally in two to three divided doses</td>
<td>Do not use sublingual form</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Methyldopa</td>
<td>0.5–3 g/day</td>
<td>Childhood safety data up to 7 years of age May not be as effective in control of severe hypertension Not first line agent Risk of hypokalemia Associated with fetal anomalies Contraindicated in pregnancy and preconception period Postpartum oliguria and anuria</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Angiotensin-converting enzyme inhibitors/angiotensin receptor blockers</td>
<td>Depends on the agent</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

of proteinuria but with new onset of any of the following: platelets <100,000/mm³, serum creatinine level ≥1.1 mg/dL or doubling of the previous creatinine level in absence of other renal disease, elevated aspartate aminotransferase (AST) and/or alanine aminotransferase (ALT) twice the reference level, pulmonary edema or persistent headache or other cerebral or visual disturbances.

- Superimposed preeclampsia (in a woman with known well-controlled CHTN) is defined as the new onset of proteinuria (≥300 mg in 24 hours or protein/creatinine ratio ≥0.3) after 20 weeks or significant increase in pre-existing proteinuria or sudden exacerbation of BP's or worsening HTN requiring increased dose of antihypertensive medications on more than two occasions.

- Preeclampsia with severe features ("severe preeclampsia") is defined as preeclampsia with any of the following: SBP ≥160 mmHg or DBP ≥110 mmHg or higher in two occasions at least 4 hours apart while on bed rest, platelets <100,000/mm³, progressive renal disease as diagnosed by elevated serum creatinine level ≥1.1 mg/dL or doubling of the previous creatinine level in absence of other renal disease, impaired liver function as indicated by elevated AST and/or ALT twice the reference level, severe right upper quadrant or epigastric pain not accounted for by other etiologies, pulmonary edema or new onset of persistent headache, or other cerebral or visual disturbances.

- HELLP syndrome is defined as hemolysis, elevated liver enzymes (AST or ALT) twice the reference level, and platelets <100,000/mm³.

- Eclampsia is defined as new onset of grand mal seizures in the presence of preeclampsia and/or HELLP syndrome. Eclampsia can occur before, during, and after labor.

- Maternal complications of preeclampsia include (maternal) HELLP syndrome, disseminated intravascular coagulation (DIC), pulmonary edema, abruptio placentae, renal failure, cardiac failure, seizures (eclampsia), cerebral hemorrhage, liver hemorrhage, and maternal death.

- Fetal complications of preeclampsia include FGR, PTB, perinatal death, hypoxemia, or neurologic injury.

- Low-dose aspirin (75–150 mg/day) given to women with risk factors for preeclampsia is associated with a 17% reduction in the risk of preeclampsia, a small (8%) reduction in the risk of PTB <37 weeks, a 10% reduction in SGA babies, and a 14% reduction in perinatal deaths.

- If low-dose aspirin is given anyway because of a history of preeclampsia, then uterine artery Doppler screening may not be necessary or beneficial. It is recommended to start low-dose aspirin early (≤16 weeks) in women with high risk for preeclampsia as it is associated with a 90% reduction in severe preeclampsia, a 69% reduction in gestational hypertension, and a 49% reduction in intraterine growth restriction (IUGR).

- Calcium supplementation is associated with a 35% reduction in the incidence of high blood pressure and a 55% reduction in the risk of preeclampsia. This effect is greatest in women with low baseline calcium intake or high risk of preeclampsia, in which calcium supplementation (1.5–2 g/day) may be indicated.

- Antioxidant therapy with vitamin C 1000 mg/day and vitamin E 400 IU/day starting in the early second trimester is not associated with a reduction in the risk of preeclampsia. Antioxidant therapy is not recommended for prevention of preeclampsia.

- Diuretics or dietary salt restriction during pregnancy are not associated with reduction in the incidence of preeclampsia.

- Bed rest or the restriction of other physical activity should not be used for the primary prevention of preeclampsia and its complications.

- In women with risk factors for preeclampsia, the baseline values should be obtained at first prenatal visit: complete history and physical examination (BP), AST and ALT, platelets, creatinine, 24-hour urine for total protein (and creatinine clearance), and/or protein/creatinine ratio.

- Indications for delivery: Preeclampsia without severe features at ≤37 weeks. Preeclampsia with severe features (severe preeclampsia) at ≥34 weeks warrants expeditious delivery after maternal stabilization. Before 34 weeks, delivery within 48 hours after completion of corticosteroid administration is suggested for uncontrolled BP in spite of continuing increase in antihypertensive drugs, persistent headache and/or visual/ CNS symptoms, epigastric pain, vaginal bleeding, persistent oliguria, preterm labor, premature rupture of membranes (PPROM), platelets <100,000/mm³ or elevated liver enzymes (partial or complete liver failure), decreasing fetal heart rate, or reversed umbilical artery end-diastolic flow ≥32 weeks. Immediate delivery even before completion of steroids is recommended in case of eclampsia, pulmonary edema, acute renal failure, DIC, suspected abruptio placentae, or nonreassuring fetal status.

- Magnesium is the drug of choice for prevention of eclampsia, as it is superior to phenytoin and diazepam. Magnesium is associated with a 59% reduction in the risk of eclampsia, a 36% reduction in abortion, and a nonstatistically significant but clinically important 46% reduction in maternal death. The reduction is similar regardless of severity of preeclampsia with about 400 women who need magnesium, a 36% reduction in abortion, a 46% reduction in maternal death, and a 36% reduction in severe preeclampsia, and 36 for preeclampsia with central nervous system (CNS) symptoms.

- Magnesium is recommended in women with preeclampsia with severe features. The intravenous route is recommended, initiating with a loading dose of 4–6 g followed by maintenance dose of 1–2 g/hr, usually given at least in active labor and 24 hours postpartum without mandatory serum monitoring. When cesarean delivery is indicated, it is recommended to continue magnesium during the procedure as discontinuing magnesium may increase the risk of postpartum eclampsia.

- Antihypertensive drugs for the treatment of preeclampsia with severe HTN (SBP ≥160 and/or DBP ≥110) are usually labetalol, nifedipine, or hydralazine.

- Antihypertensive therapy may decrease progression to severe hypertension by 50%, but there is no effect on the risk of developing severe preeclampsia and it may also be associated with impairment of fetal growth.

- There is insufficient evidence to recommend the use of dexamethasone or other steroids for therapy specific for HELLP syndrome.

- In about 15% of cases, hypertension or proteinuria may be absent before eclampsia. A high index of suspicion for eclampsia should be maintained in all cases of hypertensive disorders in pregnancy, in particular those with CNS symptoms (e.g., headache and visual disturbances).
In eclampsia (see below), the first priorities are airway, breathing, and circulation.

Women with prior preeclampsia or its complications are not only at increased risk of recurrence, but also at increased risk of cardiovascular disease in the future.

Diagnoses/Definitions (Table 1.1)

Preeclampsia

Sustained (at least twice, 6 hours but not >7 days apart) BP ≥140 or ≥90 mmHg and new onset of proteinuria (≥300 mg in 24 hours or urinary protein creatinine ratio [UPC] ≥0.3) after 20 weeks of gestation in a woman with previously normal blood pressure and normal protein in the urine [1,22,23]. BP should be measured with adequate cuff size, position of the heart at arm level, and with calibrated equipment. The accuracy of dipstick urinalysis with a 1+ (0.1 g/L) threshold in the prediction of significant proteinuria by 24-hour urine is poor [24]. Preeclampsia without severe features (“mild preeclampsia”) is usually defined as preeclampsia not meeting severe criteria (see below). “Toxemia” is a lay term. The “30–15 rule” and edema have been eliminated as criteria to diagnose preeclampsia [23].

Superimposed Preeclampsia

One or more of the following criteria:

- New onset of proteinuria (≥300 mg in 24 hours without prior proteinuria) after 20 weeks in a woman with chronic HTN or sudden increase in proteinuria in a woman with known proteinuria before or early in pregnancy.
- A sudden increase in hypertension previously well controlled or escalation of antihypertensive medication to control BP.

Superimposed preeclampsia with severe features

One or more of the following are present:

- Severe range of BP (≥160/110 mmHg) despite escalation of antihypertensive medication
- Platelet count <100,000/mm^3
- Increased hepatic transaminases (AST and/or ALT) two times of the upper limit of normal concentration at a particular laboratory
- New onset or worsening renal insufficiency (creatinine ≥1.1 mg/dL or a doubling of the serum creatinine)
- Pulmonary edema
- Persistent neurological symptoms (e.g., headache, visual changes)

Severe preeclampsia or preeclampsia with severe features

Any of the following criteria:

- BP ≥160/110 mmHg (two occasions, ≥4 hours apart)
- Thrombocytopenia, Platelets <100,000/mm^3 (and/or evidence of microangiopathic hemolytic anemia)
- Increased hepatic transaminases (AST and/or ALT) two times of the upper limit of normal concentration at a particular laboratory
- Progressive renal insufficiency (creatinine ≥1.1 mg/dL or a doubling of the serum creatinine or oliguria (≤500 mL urine in 24 hours) in absence of other renal disease
- Persistent headache or other cerebral or visual disturbances (including grand mal seizures)
- Persistent epigastric (or right upper quadrant) pain
- Pulmonary edema or cyanosis

Proteinuria ≥5 g/24 hours was removed as criteria of severe preeclampsia as expectant management was not associated with worsening maternal or neonatal outcome, and resolution of renal dysfunction occurred in all women after delivery [25,26].

HELLP Syndrome

HELLP syndrome can have an antepartum or postpartum onset, and it is associated with increased maternal morbidity and mortality. For HELLP syndrome to be diagnosed, there must be micro-angiopathic hemolysis, thrombocytopenia, and abnormalities of liver function. There is no consensus, however, on the classification criteria and the specific thresholds of hematologic and biochemical values to use in establishing the diagnosis of HELLP syndrome. The following criteria are most commonly used (Tennessee Classification): hemolysis as evidenced by an abnormal peripheral smear in addition to either serum lactate dehydrogenase (LDH) >600 IU/L or total bilirubin ≥1.2 mg/dL (≥20.52 μmol/L); elevated liver enzymes, (AST and/or ALT) two times of the upper limit of normal concentration at a particular laboratory, and platelets <100,000 cells/mm^3 [27]. If all the criteria are met, the syndrome can be also called “complete”; if only one or two criteria are present, the term “partial HELLP” is preferred.

Eclampsia

New onset of grand mal seizures in the presence of preeclampsia and/or HELLP syndrome.

Symptoms

Persistent headache or other cerebral or visual disturbances, altered mental status (including grand mal seizures), persistent epigastric (or right upper quadrant) pain, severe range of BPs. Massive proteinuria and/or edema may be present.

Epidemiology/Incidence

In healthy nulliparous women, about 7% (most occur at term and are mild).

Etiology/Basic Pathophysiology

Preeclampsia is a systemic disease of unknown etiology. It is associated with endothelial disease with vasospasm and sympathetic overactivity. Trophoblastic invasion by the placenta into the spiral arteries of the uterus is incomplete, resulting in reduced perfusion. Hypoxia, free radicals, oxidative stress, and activation of endothelium are characteristic. Thromboxane (which is associated with vasoconstriction, platelet aggregation, and decreased uteroplacental blood flow) is increased, and prostacyclin (which has opposite effects) is decreased. FGR is also theorized to develop as a result of defective placentation and the imbalance between prostacyclin and thromboxane.

Alterations of the immune response.

- **Vascular**: vasospasm and subsequent hemoconcentration are associated with contraction of intravascular space; capillary leak and decreased colloid oncotic pressure may predispose to pulmonary edema.
- **Cardiac**: usually reduced cardiac output, decreased plasma volume, increased systemic vascular resistance.
• Hematological: thrombocytopenia and hemolysis with HELLP syndrome (also elevated LDH), disseminated intravascular coagulation (DIC).

• Hepatic: elevated AST, ALT; subcapsular hematoma and liver rupture.

• CNS: eclampsia, intracranial hemorrhage, headache, blurred vision, scotoma, hyperreflexia, temporary blindness.

• Renal: vasospasm, hemoconcentration, and decreased renal blood flow resulting in oliguria (rarely leading to acute tubular necrosis, possibly leading to acute renal failure), proteinuria, and hematuria.

• Fetal: impaired uteroplacental blood flow (FGR, oligohydramnios), abortion, and nonreassuring fetal heart rate testing (NRFHT).

Classification
See without severe features (“mild”) versus with severe features (“severe”), discussed above.

Risk Factors/Associations
Nulliparity, limited sperm exposure, primipaternity, “dangerous father” (for preeclampsia), donor eggs and/or sperm, multifetal gestation, prior preeclampsia, chronic HTN, diabetes, vascular and connective tissue disease, nephropathy, antiphospholipid syndrome (APS), obesity, insulin resistance, young maternal age or advanced maternal age, African-American race, family history of preeclampsia, maternal low birth weight, low socioeconomic status, increased soluble fms-like tyrosine kinase 1 (sFlt-1), reduced placental growth factor, and higher fetal cells in maternal circulation (Table 1.2). A change in partner is usually associated with a protective effect if prior pregnancy had preeclampsia. Previous pregnancy with the same partner seems to be protective, albeit for a short (one to three years) time. Smoking is associated with decreased incidence of preeclampsia. The presence of inherited thrombophilias, such as factor V Leiden, prothrombin 20210, and Methylene tetrahydrofolate reductase (MTHFR), has not been associated with preeclampsia when the best studies (prospective, large, etc.) are evaluated (see Chapter 27 and Table 27.3). Although antiphospholipid antibodies, in particular ACA, are associated with an increased risk of preeclampsia, screening is not suggested as no therapy has been evaluated in these cases (see Chapter 26).

Prediction
Despite the variety of methods studied, there are still no sensitive prediction tests for preeclampsia shown to alter outcome. No single test or combination of tests reliably predicts preeclampsia, early onset of preeclampsia, or progression of GHTN or mild preeclampsia into severe preeclampsia.

Uterine artery Doppler velocimetry has been studied, especially in pregnant women who are at high risk for preeclampsia [28]. Abnormal uterine artery Doppler findings in the second trimester have a sensitivity of 20% to 60% and a positive predictive value of 6% to 40%, depending on prevalence of preeclampsia. According to recent meta-analyses, an increased pulsatility index alone or combined with notchting is the best predictor of preeclampsia in women with risk factors (positive likelihood ratios = 21.0 in high-risk women), but it is not so predictive in low-risk populations (positive likelihood ratio = 7.5) [29]. Uterine artery Doppler evaluation alone has a low predictive value for the development of early onset of preeclampsia. Furthermore, the studies included in the meta-analysis are heterogeneous in severity of disease and outcomes, timing of uterine artery Doppler assessment, and inclusion of other screening tests.

A variety of blood tests to predict the risk of preeclampsia have been studied. Some of the metabolites that have been proposed as early biochemical markers of preeclampsia are beta-human chorionic gonadotropin (β-hCG), α-fetoprotein; first-trimester serum levels of the biomarkers placental protein-13 (PP-13), pregnancy-associated plasma protein-A (PAPP-A), soluble Flt-1 (soluble vascular endothelial growth factor receptor-1), placental growth factor (PIGF), vascular endothelial growth factor (VEGF), and soluble endoglin. Some of these markers are altered 4–5 weeks prior to the onset of preeclampsia and cannot be detected earlier in pregnancy. An algorithm developed by logistic regression that combined the logs of uterine artery pulsatility index, mean arterial pressure, PAPP-A, serum-free PIGF, body mass index, and presence of nulliparity or previous preeclampsia revealed that at a 5% false positive rate, the detection rate for early preeclampsia was 93.1%; more impressively, the positive LR was 16.5, and the negative LR was 0.06 [30]. However, none of these studies have demonstrated improvement in maternal or fetal outcome or both in women who had undergone uterine artery Doppler assessment or biomarker testing or both. Some of these biomarkers are not approved in the United States by the Food and Drugs Administration (FDA), and they are not endorsed by ACOG [31].

Currently, there is no reliable predictive test for preeclampsia. Further research is needed to identify the ideal timing of uterine artery Doppler and the possible combination with other predictors of preeclampsia, such as measurement of maternal serum biomarkers, to improve perinatal outcomes. A complete medical history and physical exam to evaluate for risk factors and strict surveillance and education are currently the only strategies for clinical prediction.

Complications
Complications depend on gestational age at time of diagnosis, severity of disease, presence of other medical conditions, and, of course, management. Most cases of mild preeclampsia, at term, do not convey significant risks. Rates of complications for severe preeclampsia are given in the following subsections in the parentheses [32].

Maternal
HELLP syndrome (20%), DIC (10%), pulmonary edema (2%–5%), abruptio placenta (1%–4%), renal failure (1%–2%), seizures (eclampsia, <1%), cerebral hemorrhage (<1%), liver hemorrhage (<1%), death (rare).

Fetal/Neonatal
PTB (15%–60%), FGR (10%–25%), perinatal death (1%–2%), hypoxemia-neurologic injury (<1%), long-term cardiovascular morbidity (rate unknown—fetal origin of adult disease).

Management
(Figures 1.1 and 1.2) [32–35]

Principles
Preeclampsia is one of the most common and perhaps most typical obstetric complications. The only interventions associated with significant prevention of preeclampsia are
antiplatelet agents, primarily low-dose aspirin, and calcium supplementation. It is important to understand that preeclampsia's only cure is delivery. As such, preeclampsia is a temporary disease, which resolves usually 24 to 48 hours after delivery. Remember that there are two patients: delivery is always good for the mother but not always for the baby, especially if very premature. In general, most patients with preeclampsia are otherwise healthy.

Prevention

Aspirin. Aspirin acts to inhibit thromboxane synthesis while maintaining vascular wall prostacyclin synthesis, which could theoretically improve uteroplacental blood flow and fetal growth.

Compared to placebo or no treatment, antiplatelet agents, such as low-dose aspirin (75–150 mg/day), given to women with risk factors for preeclampsia (especially early onset or severe preeclampsia in previous pregnancies) are associated with a 17% reduction in the risk of preeclampsia [36]. Low-dose aspirin is also associated with a small (8%) reduction in the risk of PTB <37 weeks, a 10% reduction in SGA babies, and a 14% reduction in perinatal deaths [36].

Compared with trials using 75 mg or less of aspirin, there is a significant reduction in the risk of preeclampsia in trials using higher doses (e.g., 150 mg). Although there is evidence that higher doses of aspirin may be more effective, this requires careful evaluation as risks may also be increased [36]. Low-dose aspirin use has been shown to be safe for the fetus even in the first trimester [37].

There is some evidence that the earlier low-dose aspirin is started in pregnancy, the greater the benefits are, as shown in a meta-analysis of 34 RCTs [38]. Low-dose aspirin initiated before 16 weeks is associated with a significant decrease in the incidence of gestational hypertension (69%), preeclampsia (53%), severe preeclampsia (90%), IUGR (54%), and PTB (78%) in women identified to be at risk for preeclampsia; therefore, it is recommended to start prior to 16 weeks of gestation. However, other two meta-analyses (Cochrane [36] and USPSTF [39]) found no difference in outcome when the gestational age at the initiation of ASA was evaluated. There is still benefit when ASA is started later in pregnancy. According to ACOG and the United States Preventive service task Force (USPSTF), indications for low-dose aspirin include women with a history of preeclampsia, multifetal gestation, CHTN, Type I or II diabetes mellitus, renal disease, and autoimmune disease (antiphospholipid syndrome, systemic lupus erythematosus). The American Heart Association and American Stroke Association for women recommend low-dose aspirin >12th week of gestation until delivery to women with CHTN or history of preeclampsia [40].

Low-dose aspirin appears to be of little or no benefit in women who already have developed preeclampsia [41–43]. Aspirin does not prevent progression to severe features and may increase the risk of bleeding in patients with HELLP syndrome.

Aspirin prophylaxis should be discontinued before delivery by 37 to 38 weeks.

Prevention with abnormal uterine Doppler ultrasound. Impedance to flow in the uterine arteries normally decreases as pregnancy progresses. Increased impedance for gestational age reflects high downstream resistance due to defective differentiation of trophoblast, leading to preeclampsia and placental insufficiency. Abnormal uterine artery Doppler in the second trimester has been associated with an increased risk of preeclampsia. The only intervention studied if this screening test is abnormal is low-dose aspirin. If low-dose aspirin is given anyway because of a history of preeclampsia or other indications (see above), then uterine artery Doppler screening may not be necessary or beneficial.

A meta-analysis of nine RCTs (n = 1317) comparing low-dose (50–150 mg/day) aspirin to placebo or no treatment in women with abnormal uterine Doppler ultrasound at 14 to 24 weeks reveals that preeclampsia is decreased by 52% when aspirin treatment starts before 16 weeks with no significant reduction when started later in pregnancy. Early start of the treatment in women with abnormal uterine Doppler also significantly reduces the incidence of severe preeclampsia by 90%, gestational hypertension by 69%, and IUGR by 49% [44]. There are insufficient data to assess other important outcomes, such as abruption and perinatal death.

The combination of abnormal uterine artery Doppler at 22 and 24 weeks of gestation and low dose aspirin in nulliparous women without risk factors for preeclampsia versus no Doppler and placebo was evaluated in a large French trial [45] trying to assess this intervention with a different study design from the others; this trial is not included in the meta-analysis. Women in this trial were randomized to having the uterine Doppler examination between 22 and 24 week of gestation and always getting aspirin if abnormal or not receiving the Doppler screening. This trial confirmed the predictive value of uterine artery Doppler for preeclampsia but failed to demonstrate the value of routine screening followed by low-dose aspirin therapy for a positive test compared to routine prenatal care [45]. The late initiation of treatment reported in this trial may explain the negative results obtained, confirming that aspirin treatment may not be effective in preventing preeclampsia if started late in pregnancy. A meta-analysis including only women with abnormal uterine artery Doppler at first trimester who were randomized to low-dose aspirin vs. placebo at or before 16 weeks of gestation (three trials, 346 women) showed that aspirin reduced the risk of preeclampsia by 40% and severe preeclampsia by 70% [46]. These data require further investigation as the sample sizes were small, and they included some women with increased risk for preeclampsia as CHTN, pregestational diabetes, etc.

Heparin. A meta-analysis including eight studies comparing heparin (alone or in combination with dipyridamole or low-dose aspirin) versus no treatment showed no significant differences in the risk of developing preeclampsia in women at risk of placental dysfunction. The use of heparin was associated with 60% reduction in risk of perinatal mortality; 54% and 28% reduction in preterm birth before 34 and 37 weeks gestation, respectively; and 50% reduction in SGA. However, there is no information regarding serious adverse events in infants and long-term childhood outcomes [47]. Further trials are needed to evaluate the potential benefits of heparin in preventing preeclampsia. Therefore, LMWH is not recommended at this time as a prophylaxis for recurrence for women with a history of preeclampsia [48,49].

Calcium. Compared with placebo or no treatment, calcium supplementation is associated with a 35% reduction in the incidence of high blood pressure and a 55% reduction in the risk of preeclampsia as shown in a meta-analysis of 13 studies, 15,730 women [50]. The reduction is greater among women at high risk of developing hypertension (78%) and in those with low baseline calcium intake (64%). Although the risk of preeclampsia is reduced, this is not clearly reflected in any reduction in severe preeclampsia, eclampsia, or
admission to intensive care. One of the largest trials reported no reduction in the rate or severity of preeclampsia and no delay in its onset [51]. Optimum dosage and the effect on some substantive outcomes require further investigation.

Calcium supplementation is also associated with a 24% reduction in the risk of PTB overall and by 55% in women at high risk of preeclampsia. There is no evidence of any effect on admission to NICU, fetal death, or death before discharge from the hospital. The risk ratio of the composite outcome “maternal death or severe morbidity” is reduced by 20% for women receiving calcium supplementation. Maternal death alone was not significantly different. In one study, childhood systolic blood pressure >95th percentile is reduced by 41%.

Overall, these results support the use of calcium supplementation during pregnancy, especially for women at high risk of developing preeclampsia and for those with low dietary intake [50]. For most studies, the intervention was 1.5 to 2 g/day of calcium. Nonetheless, some experts still doubt calcium benefit in these settings as the data and the selection factors are not homogeneous (e.g., several different risk factors for preeclampsia included), and final results are mostly due to the influence of smaller and lower quality studies [52].

Antioxidant therapy. Preeclampsia has been associated in some studies (but not in others) with oxidative stress. Antioxidative therapy (in particular vitamins C and E) has been tested as a preventative intervention. Evidence from a meta-analysis of 10 trials does not support routine antioxidant supplementation during pregnancy to reduce the risk of preeclampsia and its complications [53]. Comparing antioxidant use with placebo or no treatment, there is no significant difference in the risk of preeclampsia, PTB, SGA infants, or fetal or neonatal death. Two more recent meta-analyses confirmed previous results [54–56], which do not show any maternal or fetal benefit, including no reduction in preeclampsia, eclampsia, or gestational hypertension among high- and low-risk women receiving daily supplementation with 1000 mg of vitamin C and 400 IU of vitamin E, starting in the early second trimester. In one of the trials [56], the intervention is associated with an increased risk of fetal loss or perinatal death, PROM, and PPROM (an increased risk of PPROM is observed in another previous trial) [57]. Given these results, antioxidant therapy should not be recommended for prevention of preeclampsia. In two studies in which women already had preeclampsia [58,59], antioxidants were not associated with any clinical benefit.

Magnesium. There is insufficient evidence to assess magnesium as a preventive intervention for preeclampsia.

Diuretics. There is insufficient evidence to support the use of diuretics on prevention of preeclampsia and its complications. Diuretics for preventing preeclampsia are not associated with benefits but have adverse effects, and so their use for this purpose cannot be recommended [60].

Salt intake. Compared to advice to continue a normal diet, advice to reduce dietary salt intake is associated with similar outcomes, including incidence of preeclampsia [61]. In the absence of evidence that advice to alter salt intake during pregnancy has any beneficial effect for prevention of preeclampsia or any other outcome, either reliance on the nonpregnancy data on a beneficial salt-restricted diet or personal preference can guide salt intake.

Fish oil. The use of omega-3 fatty acids contained in fish oil is not associated with significant prevention of preeclampsia in a meta-analysis of four studies [62].

Garlic. There is not enough evidence to recommend increased garlic intake for preventing preeclampsia and its complications [63].

Rest/exercise. There is insufficient evidence to support recommending rest or reduced activity to women for preventing preeclampsia and its complications [64]. It has been suggested that exercise may help prevent preeclampsia in women at moderate-to-high risk, but current evidence is insufficient to draw reliable conclusions about this effect [65].

Progesterone. There is insufficient evidence for reliable conclusions about the effects of progesterone for preventing preeclampsia and its complications. Therefore, progesterone should not be used for this purpose in clinical practice at present [66].

Nitric oxide. There is insufficient evidence to draw reliable conclusions about whether nitric oxide donors and precursors prevent preeclampsia or its complications [67].

Preconception Counseling
Preventive measures are as per chronic hypertension, identification of secondary CHTN, decrease weight as described above, plus avoidance of risk factors if feasible.

Diagnosis
Diagnosis is described above (see Table 1.1).

History

Physical Examination
Vital signs (BP, HR, RR, O2 saturation, urinary output), auscultate lungs: look for pulmonary edema, RUQ tenderness, edema (especially in hands, face, lower abdomen; excessive quick weight gain), increased reflexes. Period when hypertension is first documented (before or after 20 weeks) is important.

Workup
Laboratory tests: CBC (hemocoagulation/hemolysis, platelet count), AST and ALT, creatinine, 24-hour urine for total protein (and creatinine clearance). It is important to know the baseline values of these tests in the woman when either not pregnant or at least in the beginning of the pregnancy to be able to compare in women being evaluated for preeclampsia or its complications. Therefore, these tests should be obtained at first prenatal visit in women with significant risk factors (e.g., chronic hypertension, diabetes, renal disease, collagen disorders, APS, prior preeclampsia, and HELLP). Coagulation studies (especially fibrinogen) can be obtained only in severe cases. Uric acid is neither sensitive nor specific and has not been shown to be helpful in management. Repeat laboratory tests can be performed at least once a week or as clinically indicated. Fetal assessment: dating ultrasound, biometry (to rule out IUGR); if IUGR is diagnosed, include umbilical artery Doppler, amniotic fluid, nonstress test, biophysical profile as needed.

Evaluate for symptoms and laboratory tests to distinguish preeclampsia from superimposed preeclampsia in patients with chronic HTN and to assess disease progression and severity.

Counseling
Delivery (the only definite treatment) is always appropriate for the mother but may not be so for the fetus. The woman
should be instructed on the signs and symptoms of pre-eclampsia and severe preeclampsia. The management plan should always consider gestational age, maternal and fetal status, and presence of labor or PPROM. Expectant management aims to palliate the maternal condition to allow fetal maturation and cervical ripening. Consider corticosteroid administration to accelerate fetal lung maturity between 24 and 33 6/7 weeks. BP (several times a day), urine for protein, fluid input and output, weight, laboratory tests (as above), and fetal status should be closely monitored.

**Admission**

Management of gestational hypertension or preeclampsia without severe features (proteinuric and nonproteinuric hypertension) in day care units has similar clinical outcomes and costs but greater maternal satisfaction compared to hospital admission [68–70]. Admission for 24 hours observation is acceptable to establish diagnosis and rule out severe features. Hospitalization may be indicated in cases in which the woman is unreliable. Admission is indicated in cases of pre-eclampsia with severe features (Figure 1.2).

**Magnesium Prophylaxis**

Magnesium is the drug of choice for prevention of eclampsia; it is superior to phenytoin and diazepam. Compared with placebo or no anticonvulsant, magnesium sulfate is associated with a 59% reduction in the risk of eclampsia (number needed to treat for an additional beneficial outcome: 100), a 36% reduction in abortion, and a nonstatistically significant but clinically important 46% reduction in maternal death [71].

The reduction of the risk of eclampsia is consistent across the subgroups. In particular, the reduction is similar regardless of severity of preeclampsia. As eclampsia is more common among women with severe preeclampsia than among those with mild preeclampsia, the number of women who would need to be treated to prevent one case of eclampsia is greater for (mild) preeclampsia without severe features (i.e., 400 for mild preeclampsia, 71 for severe preeclampsia, and 36 in those with CNS symptoms) [72]. In women with mild preeclampsia, the incidence of eclampsia may be only <1/200, and magnesium has not been shown to affect perinatal outcome, possibly because too few (n = 357) women with mild preeclampsia have been enrolled in the two specific trials [72]. In women with severe preeclampsia, the incidence of eclampsia decreases 61%, from 2% in the placebo group to 0.6% in the magnesium group (four trials) [71,72].

Magnesium is also associated with a trend for a 33% decrease in abortion in women with severe preeclampsia. Women allocated to magnesium sulfate have a small increase (5%) in the risk of cesarean section. There is no overall difference in the risk of fetal or neonatal death.

Side effects, in particular flushing, occur in 24% of women on magnesium, compared to 5% of controls. Almost all the data on side effects and safety come from studies that used either the intramuscular (IM) regimen for maintenance therapy or the intravenous (IV) route with 1 g/hr and for around 24 hours. One trial compared a low-dose regimen with a standard-dose regimen over 24 hours. This study was too small for any reliable conclusions about the comparative effects [73]. Other toxicities and their associated magnesium serum levels are shown in Table 1.5.

**Intravenous administration is preferable,** where there are appropriate resources, as side effects and injection site problems are lower. Magnesium is recommended in women with preeclampsia with severe features and usually given at least in active labor, initiating with a loading dose of 4–6 g followed by a maintenance dose of 1–2 g/hr and for 12 to 24 hours postpartum but can be given for a shorter or longer period depending on the severity of preeclampsia (maintenance dose depends on renal function and maternal urine output). Three trials compared short maintenance regimens postpartum (e.g., 12 hours), continuing for 24 hours after the birth, but even taken together, these trials were too small for any reliable conclusions [73]. Most trials managed magnesium without serum monitoring but with clinical monitoring of respiration, tendon reflexes, and urine output. If serum levels are used, Table 1.5 shows the correlations with side effects. Monitoring of patellar reflexes can be used to avoid toxicity. The use of higher doses and longer duration cannot be supported by trial data. Magnesium sulfate for preeclampsia prophylaxis does not significantly affect labor but is associated with higher use of oxytocin [74].

Compared to phenytoin, magnesium sulfate is associated with a 92% better reduction in the risk of eclampsia with a 21% increased risk of cesarean section [71]. Compared to nimodipine, magnesium sulfate is associated with a 67% better reduction in the risk of eclampsia. There is insufficient evidence on other agents, such as diazepam or methyl-dopa [71].

Magnesium sulfate does not appear to affect blood loss intrapartum and postpartum in women with preeclampsia. A recent meta-analysis including five trials showed that the incidence of postpartum hemorrhage was similar between the two groups (magnesium sulfate: 17% vs. no magnesium sulfate: 18%, RR 0.97, 95% CI 0.88–1.06). There was no statistical difference between any of the other blood loss outcomes reported in the included studies. The rate of eclampsia with magnesium sulfate was decreased by 60% when compared to placebo. Magnesium sulfate, therefore, should be continued during CD, given the benefit of seizure prophylaxis without any increased risk of hemorrhage [75].

**Plasma Volume Expansion**

Blood plasma volume increases gradually in women during pregnancy. The increase is usually greater for women with multiple pregnancies and less for those with small babies. Plasma volume is reduced in women with preeclampsia. There is insufficient data to assess any effect of plasma volume expansion on outcomes in women with preeclampsia. Three small trials compared a colloid solution with no plasma volume expansion. For every outcome reported, the confidence intervals are very wide and cross the no-effect line [76].

**Antihypertensive Therapy**

Patients with SBP consistently ≥160 mmHg and/or DBP ≥110 (severe HTN) should be placed on antihypertensive medication; this includes those women with preeclampsia or its complications (HELLP, etc.). As stated above, it is appropriate

| Table 1.5 | Maternal Serum Magnesium Concentrations Associated with Toxicity |
|-----------|-------------------|---------------|---------------|
|           | mmol/L | mEq/L | mg/dL |
| Loss of patellar reflexes | 3.5–5 | 7–10 | 8.5–12 |
| Respiratory depression | 5–6.5 | 10–13 | 12–16 |
| Altered cardiac conduction | >75 | >15 | >18 |
| Cardiac arrest | >12.5 | >25 | >30 |
to initiate therapy at lower blood pressures in patients with evidence of end-organ damage (renal, cardiovascular, etc.) and diabetes. Target BP should be 140–150 mmHg systolic and about 90 mmHg diastolic. ACE inhibitors are contraindicated in pregnancy. Any patient requiring antihypertensive agents may be placed on home BP monitoring if managed as an outpatient. There are no trials on this intervention in preeclampsia.

Most antihypertensive drugs are effective at reducing blood pressure with little evidence that one is any better or worse than another [15,77]. Types of medications for acute management of hypertension include the following: (Table 1.3)

- **Labetalol**: 20-mg IV bolus, then 40, 80, 80 mg as needed, every 10 minutes (maximum 220 mg total dose).
- **Hydralazine**: 5 to 10 mg IV (or IM) every 20 minutes. Change to another drug if no success by 30 mg (maximum dose). Hydralazine may be associated with more maternal side effects and NRFHGT than IV labetalol or oral nifedipine [78].
- **Nifedipine**: 10 to 20 mg orally, may repeat in 30 minutes. This drug is associated with diuresis when used postpartum. Nifedipine and magnesium sulfate can probably be used simultaneously.
- **Sodium nitroprusside** (rarely needed): start at 0.25 μg/kg/min to a maximum of 5 μg/kg/min.

### Antiplatelet Agents

Five trials compared antiplatelet agents with placebo or no antiplatelet agent for the treatment of preeclampsia. There are insufficient data for any firm conclusions about the possible effects of these agents when used for treatment of preeclampsia [79] (meta-analysis, now withdrawn).

### Antepartum Testing

Antenatal testing (usually with nonstress tests) is done at diagnosis and repeated once or twice weekly; twice weekly for FGR or oligohydramnios. Umbilical artery Doppler ultrasound is recommended at least weekly if FGR is present. Ultrasound for fetal growth and amniotic fluid assessment should be performed at diagnosis and every three weeks if still pregnant.

### Anesthesia

(See also Chapter 11 of Obstetric Evidence Based Guidelines.) Regional anesthesia is preferred but contraindicated with coagulopathy or platelets <75,000/mm³. Patients with hypertension may benefit from epidural analgesia as it may improve uterine perfusion through several pathways (localized neuroaxial vasodilatory effect, reduced catecholamine release). **Epidural analgesia is the analgesia of choice in hypertensive pregnant women.** Patients with hypertension, preeclampsia, and eclampsia are at increased risk for hemodynamic instability during both labor and surgical anesthesia. Some, but not all studies, have found a higher incidence of hypotension in parturients receiving a spinal versus epidural anesthesia. Methods to prevent hypotension should be employed. The prevention, rather than treatment, of hypotension has been associated with better outcomes for the fetus. In women with severe preeclampsia, a careful approach is necessary for either regional or general anesthesia. Provided this is followed, they are associated with similar good outcomes in a small trial [80]. Women with severe preeclampsia who must undergo general anesthesia are at risk for an extremely exaggerated hypertensive response to intubation and often benefit from pretreatment with an antihypertensive, such as labetalol, immediately prior to induction. Prophylaxis with magnesium sulfate for preeclampsia/eclampsia can potentiate neuromuscular blockade in patients receiving general anesthesia, so care must be taken in using intermediate- to long-acting nondepolarizing muscle relaxants.

### Delivery (Figures 1.1 and 1.2)

#### Timing

Before 37 weeks, in the absence of severe criteria or preterm labor and in the presence of reassuring fetal testing, expectant management is suggested with delivery for development of any severe criteria (see below).

Compared to expectant management, induction of labor in women with gestational hypertension or mild preeclampsia at 36 to 41 weeks gestation is associated with a 29% reduction in composite maternal outcome (e.g., HELLP, severe HTN, severe preeclampsia, eclampsia, abruptio placentae, and pulmonary edema) and lower incidence of neonatal pH <7.05 with induction of labor ≥37 weeks but no differences in rates of neonatal complications or cesarean delivery [21].

Therefore, even with gestational hypertension and “mild” preeclampsia, delivery (usually by induction) at ≥37 weeks is recommended.

#### Mode

**Vaginal delivery is preferred** with induction of labor if necessary [81]. Women with GHTN or preeclampsia without severe features benefit most from induction if the cervix is unfavorable [82]. With severe preeclampsia, the chances of a successful induction vary from 34% to more than 90% in different studies [83–89]. Table 1.6 shows the rate of cesarean delivery in induced labors at different gestational ages and should be helpful with counseling and management. If the woman is stable and accepts a low incidence of success, induction may be reasonable, especially in a woman desiring a large family.

#### Hemodynamic Monitoring

Invasive hemodynamic monitoring in preeclamptic women, even with severe cardiac disease, renal disease, refractory HTN, pulmonary edema, or unexplained oliguria, is usually unnecessary, especially because Swan–Ganz catheters have been associated with complications and no improvements in outcomes in nonpregnant critically ill adults (see Chapter 40).

There are no trials on this intervention in pregnancy.

### Table 1.6 Rate of Cesarean Delivery in Induced Labors in Women With Severe Preeclampsia at 24 to 34 Weeks Gestation

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Author</th>
<th>24–28 Weeks % (n)</th>
<th>28–32 Weeks % (n)</th>
<th>32–34 Weeks % (n)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nassar [64]</td>
<td>68 (13/19)</td>
<td>55 (47/86)</td>
<td>38 (15/40)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Blackwell [61]</td>
<td>96 (26/27)</td>
<td>63 (33/51)</td>
<td>31 (23/73)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alanis [58]</td>
<td>93 (14/15)</td>
<td>53 (84/158)</td>
<td>31 (34/109)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mashiloane [63]</td>
<td>35 (14/40)</td>
<td>53 (178/335)</td>
<td>32 (72/222)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Overall</strong></td>
<td><strong>87 (53/61)</strong></td>
<td><strong>53 (178/335)</strong></td>
<td><strong>32 (72/222)</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
PREECLAMPSIA COMPLICATIONS
Superimposed Preeclampsia
Prognosis may be much worse for mother and fetus than with either diagnosis (chronic hypertension or preeclampsia) alone. Complications are similar to preeclampsia but more common and severe (e.g., PTB 50%–60%, FGR 15%, abruption 2%–5%, perinatal death 5%). There are no specific trials to guide management; therefore, management should follow as per preeclampsia (Figures 1.1 and 1.2) with even more caution given the higher morbidity and mortality [90,91].

Management [1]
CHTN with superimposed preeclampsia without severe features
- Antihypertensive medications for SBP >160 mmHg or >105 mmHg
- Maintain BPs between >120/80 mmHg and <160/105 mmHg
- Consider outpatient management in selected populations with easy access to the health system [90]
- Home BP measurement
- Close follow-up in clinic every week with NST
- Fetal growth evaluation every 3 weeks
- Delivery no less than 37 weeks
- Close postpartum BP surveillance for first 72 hours
- Close follow-up 7–10 days after delivery

CHTN with superimposed preeclampsia with severe features
- Admission to the hospital for evaluation
- Antihypertensive medications for SBP >160 mmHg or >105 mmHg
- Magnesium sulfate for maternal seizure prevention
- Expectant management until no more than 34 weeks
- Delivery by 34 weeks
- Close postpartum BP surveillance for first 72 hours
- Close follow-up 7–10 days after delivery

Preeclampsia with Severe Features
See also the section titled “Preeclampsia.”

---

**Figure 1.1** Suggested management of gestational hypertension and preeclampsia without severe features. *Developing any of the severe features. (Adapted from American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, Task Force on Hypertension in Pregnancy. Obstet Gynecol, 122, 5, 1122–31, 2013.)"
Diagnostic Criteria (Table 1.1)
If one or more of the following are present: (1) BP ≥160/110 mm on two occasions at least four hours apart while the patient is on bed rest (unless antihypertensive therapy is initiated before this time); (2) thrombocytopenia <100,000 platelets/mL; (3) impaired liver function AST or ALT twice normal concentration, severe persistent right upper quadrant or epigastric pain unresponsive to medication and not accounted for by alternative diagnoses or both; (4) progressive renal insufficiency (serum creatinine concentration >1.1 mg/dL or a doubling of the serum creatinine concentration in the absence of other renal disease); (5) pulmonary edema; and (6) cerebral or visual disturbances.

Severe proteinuria (>5 g) has been eliminated from the consideration of preeclampsia as severe feature as several studies indicated that expectant management was not associated with worse maternal or fetal outcome [92–94]. As fetal growth restriction is managed similarly in pregnant women with and without preeclampsia, it has been removed as well as criteria of severe features of preeclampsia.

Management (Figure 1.2)
Magnesium sulfate. See section titled “Preeclampsia.”

Plasma volume expansion. The addition of plasma volume expansion as a temporizing treatment does not improve...
maternal or fetal outcome in women with early preterm severe preeclampsia [95].

Timing of delivery (Figure 1.2). In the presence of preeclampsia with severe features at ≥34 weeks, expeditious delivery is recommended given the high maternal incidence of complications with expectant management. Timing the delivery of a very premature infant <34 weeks in the presence of severe preeclampsia is a difficult clinical decision. When the mother’s life is in danger, there is no doubt that delivery is the only correct course of action. This situation is rare. More usually, the risks of maternal morbidity if the pregnancy is continued have to be constantly balanced against the hazards of prematurity to the fetus if it is delivered too early. The options are expeditious delivery, delivery after completion of corticosteroids, or expectant management to improve perinatal outcome, but there are only three trials comparing these approaches at 28 to 32–34 weeks [96–98]. In general, an interventionist approach with immediate delivery before 48 hours and before completion of corticosteroid administration (“aggressive management”) is suggested with eclampsia, pulmonary edema, DIC, abruptio placentae, abnormal fetal testing, uncontrollable BP in spite of continuing increase in antihypertensive drugs, fetal demise, or nonviable fetus. Delivery after 48 hours after completion of corticosteroids is suggested in women with persistent headache and/or visual/CNS symptoms, epigastric pain, renal dysfunction (Cr >1.1, double creatinine value or persistent oliguria), preterm labor, PROM, AST/ALT more than twofold normal value, platelets <100,000/mm³ (partial or complete HELLP syndrome), severe oligohydramnios, or reversed umbilical artery end-diastolic flow ≥32 weeks [33,99].

There are insufficient data for reliable conclusions comparing these policies for outcome for the mother. For the baby, there is insufficient evidence for reliable conclusions about the effects on fetal or neonatal death. Babies whose mothers are allocated to an interventionist group have 2.3-fold more hyaline membrane disease and 5.5-fold more necrotizing enterocolitis and are 32% more likely to need admission to neonatal intensive care unit (NICU) than those allocated to an expectant policy [99]. Nevertheless, babies allocated to the interventionist policy are 64% less likely to be SGA. There are no statistically significant differences between the two strategies for any other outcomes.

In observational studies, expectant care of severe preeclampsia <34 weeks is associated with pregnancy prolongation of 7 to 14 days and few serious maternal complications (<5%), similar to interventionist care [100].

Expectant management. Expectant management (prolonging pregnancy beyond 48 hours) is possible only if none of the conditions described above is present. At any time during expectant management, the development of any sign described above necessitates delivery (Figure 1.2) [33]. Expectant management is not recommended beyond 34 weeks because maternal risks outweigh perinatal benefits. Expectant management of severe preeclampsia remote from term warrants hospitalization at a tertiary facility [101], daily antenatal testing, and laboratory studies at frequent intervals with the decision to prolong pregnancy determined day to day. Expectant management was associated with increased risk of abruptio and SGA in an RCT from Latin America [98].

In cases of severe HTN, such as those with severe preeclampsia, in which expectant management is appropriate, we suggest adding labetalol 200 to 800 mg orally every eight hours to the antihypertensive therapy described above. An alternative is nifedipine 10 to 20 mg orally every four to six hours (Table 1.4).

Women with renal disease, systemic lupus erythematosus, insulin-dependent diabetes, or multiple gestations require very careful management if expectantly managed. Massive proteinuria, even >10 g in 24 hours, is not associated per se with worse maternal or neonatal outcomes compared with proteinuria of <10 or even <5 g and so should probably not be a criterion for delivery by itself. The presence of FGR requires even closer monitoring and is associated with worse outcomes but is usually not in itself a criterion for delivery [102,103].

HELLP Syndrome

Epidemiology

HELLP syndrome is a severe manifestation of preeclampsia and complicates approximately 0.5% to 0.9% of all pregnancies and 10% to 20% of cases with severe preeclampsia [104]. Approximately 72% of cases are diagnosed antepartum and 28% postpartum (of which 80% <48 hours and 20% ≥48 hours postpartum). Of the antepartum cases, about 70% occur at 28 to 36 weeks, 20% >37 weeks, and about 10% <28 weeks. HELLP syndrome detected before fetal viability may identify a pregnancy complicated by partial mole/triploidy, trisomy 13, antiphospholipid syndrome, autoantibodies to angiotensin AT(1)-receptor or severe preterm preeclampsia with “mirror” syndrome [27].

Diagnosis

See above and Table 1.1. Patients presumptively diagnosed with HELLP syndrome can have other disorders concurrent with HELLP syndrome or other disorders altogether. The diseases that may imitate HELLP syndrome and that have to be considered in the differential diagnosis are shown in Table 1.7 [27].

Signs and Symptoms

The presenting symptoms are usually right upper abdominal quadrant or epigastric pain, nausea, and vomiting. Headache and visual symptoms can occur. Malaise or viral syndrome-like symptoms may be present with advanced HELLP syndrome. It is important to note that 15% have no hypertension and 13% no proteinuria (Table 1.8) [105].

Complications

Complications (Table 1.9) of HELLP syndrome are somewhat similar in incidence and severity to those of severe preeclampsia once gestational age is controlled [105]. If profound hypovolemic shock occurs, suspect liver hematoma. If confirmed, liver hematoma is best managed conservatively. Contributing factors to deaths of women with HELLP syndrome are, in order of decreasing frequency, stroke, cardiac arrest, DIC, adult respiratory distress syndrome, renal failure, sepsis, hepatic rupture, hypoxic encephalopathy [27].

Management

See Figure 1.3 for management [106].

Workup. Laboratory tests as per severe preeclampsia, plus peripheral smear evaluation.

Corticosteroids. Eleven trials (550 women) have assessed corticosteroids versus placebo/no treatment for HELLP syndrome and are summarized in a meta-analysis [107]. The dose of dexamethasone was usually 10 mg IV every six to 12 hours for two to three doses, followed by 5 to 6 mg IV six to 12 hours later for two to three more doses. There is no
of hospitalization in the subgroup with class 1 HELLP who received dexamethasone [72].

There is only one randomized placebo-controlled trial evaluating the effect of prolonged administration of high-dose prednisolone in 31 pregnant women with early-onset (<30 weeks) HELLP syndrome during expectant management (mean prolongation of about seven days) [112]. The results show a reduced risk of recurrent HELLP syndrome exacerbations (presence of at least two of the following three criteria: right upper abdominal or epigastrical pain, a platelet count decrease below 100,000/mm³, and an increase of AST/ALT more than twofold normal value) in the prednisolone group as compared to the placebo group (hazard ratio 0.3, 95% CI 0.3–0.9). Nevertheless, expectant management for >48 hours in women with HELLP syndrome, even with early onset, is not recommended.

Given no significant improvements in important maternal and fetal outcomes, there is still insufficient evidence to recommend the routine use of steroids for therapy specific for HELLP syndrome, and this approach should be considered experimental. The use of corticosteroids may be justified in clinical situations in which increased rate of recovery in platelet count is considered clinically worthwhile.

**Anesthesia**

Regional anesthesia is usually allowed by anesthesiologists in cases with platelet counts ≥75,000/mm³. General anesthesia may be safer in cases with lower platelet counts.

**Delivery**

Timing (Figure 1.3). Prompt delivery is indicated if HELLP is diagnosed at ≥34 weeks or even earlier if multiorgan dysfunction, DIC, liver failure or hemorrhage, renal failure, possible abruption, or NRFHT are present. Delivery can only be delayed for a maximum of 48 hours between 24 and 33 6/7 weeks to give steroids for fetal maturity, but even this management is not tested in trials. Although some women may have improvement in laboratory values in these 48 hours, delivery is still indicated in most cases.

Mode. Mode of delivery should generally follow obstetrical indications with HELLP syndrome not being an indication for cesarean per se. No randomized trial compared maternal and neonatal outcome after vaginal delivery or cesarean section in women with HELLP syndrome.
Counseling and management should include the information that the incidence of cesarean delivery in the trial of labor with HELLP at <30 weeks is high.

With platelet count <100,000/mm³, a drain may be indicated under and/or over the fascia in cases of cesarean delivery.

**Eclampsia**

**Incidence**
The incidence is about two to three cases per 10,000 births in Europe and other developed countries and 16 to 69 cases per 10,000 births in developing countries [113]. The onset can be antepartum (40%–50%), intrapartum (20%–35%), or postpartum (10%–40%). Late postpartum eclampsia (>48 hours after delivery) is rare but can occur.

**Definition**
Eclampsia is the occurrence of new onset of ≥1 grand mal seizure(s) in association with preeclampsia.

**Complications**
The risk of maternal death is around 1% to 2% in the developed world and up to 10% in developing countries. An estimated 50,000 women die each year worldwide having had an eclamptic convulsion. Perinatal mortality is 6% to 12% in the developed world and up to 25% in developing countries. Other complications are similar and possibly more severe than severe preeclampsia cases (maternal abruptio 7%–10%, DIC 7%–11%, HELLP 10%–15%, pulmonary edema 3%–5%, renal failure 5%–9%, aspiration pneumonia 2%–3%, cardiopulmonary arrest 2%–5%; perinatal PTB 50%) [72].

**Management**

**Principles.** In about 15% of cases, hypertension or proteinuria may be absent before eclampsia. A high index of suspicion for eclampsia should be maintained in all cases of hypertensive disorders in pregnancy, in particular those with CNS symptoms (headache, visual disturbances). Up to 50% or more of cases of eclampsia, occurring in women with

---

![Diagram](image-url)  
**Figure 1.3** Suggested management of HELLP syndrome. (Adapted from Sibai BM. Obstet Gynecol, 103, 5 Pt. 1, 981–91, 2004.)
no diagnosis of preeclampsia or only mild disease preterm or before hospitalization, may not be preventable.

The first priorities are airway, breathing, and circulation. Multidisciplinary care is essential as several people are needed for immediate stabilization. Interventions include airway assessment and placing the patient in the lateral decubitus position (to avoid aspiration). Maintain oxygenation with supplemental oxygen via 8 to 10 L/min mask. Obtain vital signs and assess pulse oximetry. Supportive care includes inserting a tongue blade between the teeth (avoiding inducing a gag reflex) and preventing maternal injury.

Workup. Cerebral imaging is usually not necessary for the diagnosis and management of most women with eclampsia. It might be helpful in cases complicated by neurologic deficits, coma, refractory to magnesium, or seizures >48 hours after delivery.

Therapy. Magnesium sulfate is the drug of choice to treat eclampsia and prevent recurrent convulsions as it is associated with maternal and fetal/neonatal benefits compared to all interventions against which it has been tested. The standard intravenous regimen widely used in many countries consists of a loading dose of 4 g, followed by an infusion of 1 g/hr [73]. Increasing the loading dose to 6 g and the infusion rate to 2 g/hr has also been suggested [72].

Trials comparing alternative treatment regimens (loading dose alone vs. loading dose plus maintenance therapy for 24 hours or low-dose regimen vs. a standard-dose regimen over 24 hours) are too small for reliable conclusions [73].

Serum monitoring of magnesium levels is not absolutely necessary. The effectiveness and safety of magnesium sulfate has been demonstrated with clinical monitoring alone [73].

Trials comparing magnesium sulfate with other anticonvulsants for treating eclampsia demonstrate that it is more effective than diazepam, phenytoin, or lytic cocktail [114–116].

Magnesium vs. diazepam. Compared with diazepam, magnesium sulfate is associated with reductions in maternal death by 41%, in further convulsions from eclampsia by 57%, in Apgar scores <7 at five minutes by 30%, in the need of intubation at the place of birth by 33%, and in length of stay in special care baby unit >7 days by 34% [114]. There was no clear difference in perinatal deaths.

Magnesium vs. phenytoin. Compared with phenytoin, magnesium sulfate is associated with reduction in maternal complications, such as the recurrence of convulsions by 66%, maternal death by 50% (nonsignificant because of small numbers: RR 0.50, 95% CI 0.24 to 1.05), pneumonia by 56%, ventilation by 32%, and admission to the intensive care unit by 33%. For the baby, magnesium sulfate is associated with 27% fewer admissions to a special care baby unit and 23% fewer babies who died or were in special baby care unit for >7 days [115].

Magnesium vs. lytic cocktail. Lytic cocktail is usually a mixture of Thorazine (chlorpromazine), Phenergan (promethazine), and Demerol (meperidine). Compared to a lytic cocktail, magnesium sulfate is associated with an 86% reduction in maternal death and a 94% reduction in subsequent convulsions. Magnesium sulfate is also associated with 88% less maternal respiratory depression and 94% less coma without any clear difference in the risk of neonatal death [116].

Other issues About 10% of women will have a second seizure even after receiving magnesium sulfate. In that case, another bolus of 2 g of magnesium sulfate can be then given intravenously over three to five minutes, and, rarely, if another convolution occurs, sodium amobarbital 250 mg IV over three to five minutes is necessary [72].

Blood pressure should be maintained at about 140–150/90–109 by antihypertensive agents as described for preeclampsia.

Antepartum Testing NRFHT occurs in many cases of eclampsia, but it usually resolves spontaneously in three to 10 minutes by fetal utero resuscitation with maternal support. Therefore, NRFHT is not an indication for immediate cesarean delivery in case of eclampsia unless it continues >10 to 15 minutes despite normal maternal oxygenation.

Delivery. Delivery should occur expeditiously, but only when the mother is stable. This requires a multidisciplinary, efficient, and timely effort.

Postpartum Management

Eclampsia prophylaxis. Magnesium should be continued for at least 12 hours and often for about 24 hours or at least improvement in maternal urinary output (e.g., >100 mL/hr). In some cases of severe preeclampsia, eclampsia, HELLP or continuing oliguria, or other complications, magnesium may need to be continued for >24 hours. Preeclampsia can worsen postpartum. Edema always worsens, and the woman should be aware of this. Eclampsia can still occur, especially in the first 48 hours post-delivery and even up to >14 days postpartum.

Management of hypertension. There are no reliable data to guide management of women who are hypertensive postpartum or at increased risk of becoming so. Women should be informed that they will require long-term surveillance (and possible therapy) for hypertension at their postpartum visit.

For prevention in women who had antenatal preeclampsia, there is insufficient data to assess outcomes comparing furosemide or nifedipine with placebo/no therapy [117]. Compared to no therapy, postpartum furosemide 20 mg orally for five days does not affect any outcomes in women with mild or superimposed preeclampsia [118]. In women with severe preeclampsia, this intervention normalizes blood pressure more rapidly and reduces the need for antihypertensive therapy but does not affect the incidence of delayed complications or the length of hospitalization [118].

L-Arginine therapy does hasten recovery in postpartum preeclampsia [119]. Therefore, for women with antenatal hypertension, even that of preeclampsia, it is unclear whether or not they should routinely receive postpartum antihypertensive therapy. Although blood pressure peaks on days 3 to 6 postpartum, whether or not routine postpartum treatment can prevent transient severe maternal hypertension and/or prolongation of the maternal hospital stay has not been established [117].

For treatment, there is insufficient data to assess the antihypertensives studied: these are oral timolol or hydralazine compared with oral methyldopa for treatment of mild-to-moderate postpartum hypertension, and oral hydralazine plus sublingual nifedipine compared with sublingual nifedipine [117]. Oral nifedipine (10 mg every eight hours short-acting or 30 mg daily long-acting; maximum dose 120 mg/day) is a reasonable choice, with ACE inhibitors for women with diabetes or nephropathy. If a clinician feels that
hypertension is severe enough to treat, the agent used should be based on his or her familiarity with the drug.

Long-Term Counseling

Because a history of early-onset hypertensive disorders of pregnancy increases the risk of recurrence in subsequent pregnancies, long-term counseling should involve review of recurrence and preventive measures (see above). The risk of complications in the subsequent pregnancy depends on how early in gestation and how severe the complications were, other underlying medical conditions, age of the woman at future pregnancy, same versus different partner, and many other variables (see section titled “Risk Factors” above). Several studies tried to identify prediction tests for recurrent hypertensive disease in pregnancy, but there is insufficient evidence to assess the clinical usefulness of these tests [120].

In a large cohort study, the recurrence risk of preeclampsia is around 15% in the second pregnancy for women who had preeclampsia in their first pregnancy and 30% for women who had preeclampsia in the previous two pregnancies [121,122]. In a systematic review of seven studies, the pooled risk of recurrence of hypertension, preeclampsia, or HELLP syndrome resulting in a delivery before 34 weeks is 7.8% [123]. In two recent large cohort studies, the recurrence rate of preeclampsia associated with delivery before 34 weeks’ gestation is 6.8% and 17%, respectively [122,124].

Women with a history of the HELLP syndrome have an increased risk of at least 20% (range 5%–52%) that some form of hypertension will recur in a subsequent gestation [104], about 5% for recurrence of HELLP, 30% to 40% of PTB, 25% of SGA, and up to 5% to 10% of perinatal death [125].

Moreover, women with prior preeclampsia and related hypertensive disorders are at increased risk of cardiovascular disease in the future, even premenopause if the preeclampsia occurred early in pregnancy, is recurrent, associated with IUGR, as a multipara, or in menopause if it happened at term in a primipara. These cardiovascular risks equal the risk associated with obesity or smoking. In 2011, the American Heart Association added preeclampsia to risk factors to cardiovascular disease. For prevention of this cardiovascular disease and its complications, early intervention is suggested [126].

REFERENCES

10. Abalos E, Duley L, Steyn DW. Antihypertensive drug therapy for mild to moderate hypertension during pregnancy. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2014; 2: CD002252. [Meta-analysis; 46 RCTs, n = 4282; 28 of which compared an antihypertensive drug with placebo/no antihypertensive drug (n = 3200); I]


42. Schiff E, Barkai G, Ben-Baruch G, Meshiach S. Low-dose aspirin does not influence the clinical course of women with mild pregnancy-induced hypertension. *Obstet Gynecol* 1990; 76 (5 Pt 1): 742. PMID 2216216. [I]


51. Sibai BM. Calcium supplementation during pregnancy reduces risk of high blood pressure, pre-eclampsia and premature birth compared with placebo? *Evid Based Med* 2011; 16(2): 40–1. [Review; III]


62. Makrides M, Duley L, Olsen SF. Marine oil, and other prostaglandin precursor, supplementation for pregnancy uncomplicated by pre-eclampsia or intrauterine growth restriction. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2006; 3: CD003402. [Meta-analysis; 6 RCTs, n = 2783; I]


65. Meher S, Duley L. Exercise or other physical activity for preventing pre-eclampsia and its complications. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2006; (2): CD005942. [Meta-analysis; 2 RCTs, n = 45]


70. Turnbull DA, Wilkinson C, Gerhard K. Clinical, psychosocial, and economic effects of antenatal day care units for acute-onset, severe hypertension during pregnancy and the postpartum period. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2006; 3: CD003402. [Meta-analysis; 6 RCTs, n = 893; of which eight compared hydralazine with nifedipine and five with labetalol; I]


87. Ganzwevoort W, Rep A, Bonsel GJ. A randomised controlled trial comparing two temporising management strategies, one with and one without plasma volume expansion, for severe and early onset pre-eclampsia. *BJOG* 2005; 112(10): 1358–68. [Meta-analysis; 2 RCTs, n = 216; I]


104. Sibai BM. A practical plan to detect and manage HELLP syndrome. OB/G Management 2005; 4: 52–69. [Review; III]


120. Van Oostwaard MF, Langenveld J, Schiut E et al. Recurrence of hypertensive disorders of pregnancy: An individual patient data meta-analysis. AJOG 2015; 212: 624.e1-17. [II-1]


123. Langenveld J, Buttenger A, van der Post J. Recurrence risk and prediction of a delivery under 34 weeks of gestation after a history of a severe hypertensive disorder. BJOG 2011; 118(5): 589–95. [Cohort analytic study, n = 211; II-2]


Cardiac disease
Meredith Birsner and Sharon Rubin

KEY POINTS

- Normal pregnancy physiology—particularly increased intravascular volume, hypercoagulability, and decreased systemic vascular resistance—can severely exacerbate cardiac disease during pregnancy.
- For many cardiac conditions, especially pulmonary hypertension and aortic stenosis, relative hypervolemia, rather than fluid restriction, and avoidance of hypotension are the key intrapartum management principles. Mitral stenosis and some cases of cardiomyopathy are the main exceptions to this principle.
- Women with congenital heart disease should have a fetal echocardiogram at around 22 weeks.
- Most cardiac diseases in pregnancy do not benefit from cesarean delivery, and this can be reserved for usual obstetrical indications.
- Pulmonary hypertension, Marfan syndrome with aortic root >4 cm, and severe cardiomyopathy are associated with high maternal mortality, and should be counseled prepregnancy of this risk and provided alternatives to their own pregnancy.

BACKGROUND

For “cardiac disease in pregnancy,” this guideline reviews maternal cardiac disease. These women are at higher risk for cardiovascular complications, neonatal complications, and even maternal death [1,2]. Concern for cardiac decompensation occurs when the heart, either from acquired or congenital physiologic or structural defects, is unable to accommodate pregnancy physiology or dynamics of parturition. There are no trials of intervention specific for cardiac disease in pregnancy.

SYMPTOMS/SIGNS

Symptoms can include fatigue, limitation of physical activity, palpitations, tachycardia, shortness of breath, chest pain, dyspnea on exertion, and cyanosis. These symptoms and signs of cardiac disease can often be confused with common pregnancy complaints.

EPIDEMIOLOGY/INCIDENCE

Cardiac disease complicates 1% to 4% of pregnancies, but accounts for 10% to 25% of maternal mortality [3–5]. Cardiac disease is a leading cause of ICU admission in the obstetric population [6]. In the United States, congenital heart defect (CHD) is more common than rheumatic heart disease as a result of medical care and surgical advances. Despite significant medical and surgical advances over the past two decades, cardiac disease remains a significant cause of maternal mortality.

GENETICS

When the mother has a congenital heart defect, the fetus is at increased risk for a congenital heart defect (generally 3%–5%, but ranges from 1% to 15%). Therefore, fetal echocardiography (best if done at around 22 weeks) is recommended. DiGeorge syndrome (chromosomal deletion in 22q11), Marfan syndrome, and hypertrophic obstructive cardiomyopathy are all autosomal dominant.

ETIOLOGY/BASIC PATHOPHYSIOLOGY/ PREGNANCY CONSIDERATIONS

The main function of the heart is to provide oxygen (and other nutrients) and remove carbon dioxide (and other wastes) to and from all end organs of the body, which include the uterus and fetus during pregnancy. The chief determinants of oxygen delivery include the amount carried by the blood (determined by the amount of hemoglobin and degree of saturation) and the delivery of that blood: primarily cardiac output (determined by preload, afterload, cardiac contractility, and heart rate). Any disease process or pregnancy physiology that interferes with this main function of the heart can result in maternal and fetal morbidity and mortality.

Five principal physiologic changes of pregnancy can complicate cardiac disease during pregnancy. See also Chapter 3 of Obstetric Evidence Based Guidelines [7]:

1. Decreased systemic vascular resistance (SVR). For example, ventricular septal defects (VSDs) result in the shunting of blood from the left ventricle to the right ventricle because the systemic blood pressure is greater than the pulmonary blood pressure. Over time, this will result in pulmonary hypertension that can approach systemic blood pressures. Pregnancy, with its associated 20% decrease in SVR, can allow pulmonary pressures to equal or exceed systemic pressures resulting in a reversal or right to left shunting of blood. This would result in deoxygenated right ventricular blood entering the left ventricle, resulting in decreased oxygen delivery to the body and even cyanosis and death [8].

2. Increase in intravascular volume. This occurs throughout pregnancy (50% increase), and is maximal by 32 weeks gestation. Women with severe myocardial dysfunction, such as cardiomyopathy, may not be able to accommodate this physiologic demand and may experience congestive heart failure and pulmonary edema.

3. Postpartum increase in intravascular volume from “autotransfusion” of blood from the contracted uterus and mobilization of third spaced fluid. Women with mitral stenosis have restricted left ventricular filling. This postpartum vascular load could result in pulmonary edema [9].

4. Hypercoagulability. This well-characterized pregnancy adaptation can dramatically heighten the risk for thromboembolism in at-risk patients. Pregnant women with
artificial mechanical heart valves, for example, can develop fatal thromboses despite adequate anticoagulation as a result of this physiology [10,11].

5. Marked increase in cardiac output during parturition [12]. This increase occurs during pregnancy and is both necessary for and partly “worsened” by labor and delivery and the postpartum volume shift described above. In women whose cardiac output is fixed and very dependent on preload, such as aortic stenosis, these volume shifts are poorly tolerated. A negative volume shift from postpartum hemorrhage can result in a precipitous drop in cardiac output and lead to inadequate coronary and cerebral perfusion [13].

Understanding these pathophysiologic interactions forms the basis for understanding, anticipating, and managing patients with cardiac disease during pregnancy.

CLASSIFICATION

Patients with heart disease are symptomatically classified by their clinical functional class (New York Heart Association [NYHA] system). Women who have prepregnant NYHA III or IV functional capacity tend to tolerate pregnancy poorly, but even less symptomatic women are at risk during pregnancy because up to 40% of those who develop congestive heart failure during gestation begin their pregnancy without symptoms (class I) [14] (Table 2.1), and 15% to 55% of pregnant women with heart disease show deterioration by this system.

RISK FACTORS

Predictors of maternal complications include prior cardiac events, NYHA class III or IV (Table 2.1), left heart obstruction (mitral stenosis, aortic stenosis), mechanical heart valve, Marfan syndrome, atrial root dilatation, and significant left ventricular systolic dysfunction [15–17]. The modified WHO classification (Table 2.2) [18] is the best available assessment model for estimating cardiovascular risk in pregnant women with congenital heart disease; this model integrates all knowledge about maternal risk, including known contraindications for pregnancy that are not addressed in other risk scores as well as known predictors found in other studies, underlying heart disease, and other morphological and clinical variables [19].

Table 2.1 New York Heart Association Classification

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class</th>
<th>No symptoms or limitations. Ordinary physical activity does not cause undue fatigue, dyspnea, or palpitations.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class II</td>
<td>Slight limitation of physical activity. Comfortable at rest. Ordinary physical activity (e.g., carrying heavy packages) may result in fatigue, palpitations, or dyspnea.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Class III</td>
<td>Marked limitation of physical activity. Comfortable at rest. Less than ordinary physical activity (e.g., getting dressed) leads to symptoms.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Class IV</td>
<td>Severe limitation of physical activity. Symptoms of heart failure or angina are present at rest and worsen with any activity.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Expert knowledge is sometimes required for use of this model, especially when choosing between WHO class II and III.

COMPLICATIONS

Today, with proper management, maternal mortality is predominantly restricted to patients with severe pulmonary hypertension, coronary artery disease (CAD), cardiomyopathy, endocarditis, and sudden arrhythmia [4,20]. These groups can be used to determine general treatment principles. Neonatal complications mostly derive from preterm birth, miscarriage, and growth restriction.

MANAGEMENT

Preconception Counseling

Women with cardiac diseases that can be ameliorated (invasively or noninvasively) should be advised to do so before pregnancy to decrease their pregnancy-related morbidity and mortality. These include severe mitral, aortic, or pulmonic stenosis; uncorrected tetralogy of Fallot; CAD; coarctation of the aorta; large intracardiac shunt from atrial septal defect (ASD); or VSD with mild or moderate pulmonary hypertension [21]. Coexisting disorders, such as anemia, thyroid disease, or hypertension, should be treated and controlled before pregnancy.

On the other hand, certain women should be advised to complete their childbearing before their cardiac condition requires repair, which could further complicate pregnancy management. For example, a woman with moderately severe valvular disease may ultimately require a prosthetic valve in the future. During pregnancy, some of these valves carry very high thromboembolic and anticoagulant risk [10,11].

Counseling should include diet and activity modifications, infection prevention and control, and review of prognosis, possible complications, and management in a future pregnancy. Patients with group III lesions or significant dilated cardiomyopathy (including peripartum cardiomyopathy with residual left ventricular dysfunction) should be advised not to conceive because they have an increased risk of mortality. Contraception and sterilization counseling should be offered. If such patients present postconception, pregnancy termination should be offered [21].

Prenatal Care/Antepartum Testing

The patient should be questioned and examined during frequent prenatal visits for cardiac failure. Maternal echocardiogram allows assessment of heart function. Pulmonary hypertension is often unreliable when estimated invasively by echocardiogram and may need to be confirmed by cardiac catheterization. EKG shows physiologic changes such as QRS axis shift to left (because of elevated diaphragm), and minor ST and T-wave changes in lead III. Fetal growth ultrasounds should be performed every four to six weeks when there is concern for developing intrauterine growth restriction. This can be coupled with serial antenatal testing at 34 weeks [22]. Finally, future contraceptive plans, including sterilization, should be reviewed [23,24].

General Management

Certain general principles apply to most women with cardiac disease:

1. Antepartum activity restriction. This can be used to minimize maternal exertion and oxygen demand in the
26

**Table 2.2** Maternal Risk Associated with Pregnancy: Modified WHO Classification (see further ref. [18])

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>WHO I</th>
<th>WHO II</th>
<th>WHO II–III</th>
<th>WHO III</th>
<th>WHO IV</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Caveat if otherwise well and uncomplicated, no detectable increase in morbidity.</td>
<td>If otherwise well and uncomplicated, small increased risk of maternal mortality or moderate increase in morbidity.</td>
<td>Depending on individual</td>
<td>Significantly increased risk of maternal mortality or severe morbidity; expert counseling required. If pregnancy is decided upon, intensive specialist care by multiple specialists needed throughout pregnancy, childbirth, and the puerperium.</td>
<td>Extremely high risk of maternal mortality or severe morbidity; pregnancy is contraindicated. If pregnancy occurs, termination should be discussed. If pregnancy continues, care as for class III.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| Conditions | Uncomplicated, small or mild: Pulmonary stenosis Patent ductus arteriosus Mitral valve prolapse Successfully repaired simple lesions (atrial or ventricular septal defect, patent ductus arteriosus, anomalous pulmonary venous drainage) Atrial or ventricular ectopic beats, isolated | Unoperated atrial or ventricular septal defect Repaired tetralogy of Fallot Most arrhythmias | Mild left ventricular impairment Hypertrophic cardiomyopathy Native or tissue valvular heart disease not considered WHO I or IV Marfan syndrome without aortic dilatation Aorta <45 mm in aortic disease associated with bicuspid aortic valve Repaird coarctation | Mechanical valve Sytemic right ventricle Fontan circulation Cyanotic heart disease (unrepaired) Other complex congenital heart disease Aortic dilatation 40–45 mm in Marfan syndrome Aortic dilatation 45–50 mm in aortic disease associated with bicuspid aortic valve | Pulmonary arterial hypertension of any cause Severe systemic ventricular dysfunction (LVEF <30%, NYHA III–IV) Previous peripartum cardiomyopathy with any residual impairment of left ventricular function Severe mitral stenosis, severe symptomatic aortic stenosis Marfan syndrome with aorta dilated >45 mm Aortic dilatation >50 mm in aortic disease associated with bicuspid aortic valve Native severe coarctation |

Pregnant patient with limited cardiac output or cyanotic heart disease [24]. Strict bed rest should be avoided to prevent thromboembolism.

2. **Treat coexisting medical conditions.** The morbidity of cardiac disease can be compounded by medical conditions such as anemia, hypertension, or thyroid disease. Therefore, these conditions should be optimized to minimize their comorbidity [21].

3. **Collaborative care by multiple specialists.** Pregnant patients with cardiac disease are very complex, and should be managed by a multidisciplinary team of specialists from a variety of areas, including obstetrics, maternal-fetal medicine, cardiology, and anesthesiology [25].

4. **Labor in the lateral decubitus position.** This maximizes blood return to the heart by decreasing vena caval compression by the gravid uterus and, therefore, maximizes cardiac output [26,27]. This preload preservation can be critical to women with cardiac compromise [23,24].

5. **Epidural anesthesia.** This minimizes pain, sympathetic stress, oxygen utilization, and fluctuations in cardiac output. Sometimes “just” a narcotic epidural should be used, avoiding the sympathetic blockade (and consequent hypotension) of local anesthetics. Spinal anesthesia should be avoided, and epidural should be dosed slowly with adequate prehydration (intravenous fluids) to minimize risk of hypotension and its consequent drop in preload leading to decreased cardiac output [24,28–30].

6. **Oxygen, particularly during labor and delivery, as necessary.** Keeping maternal PaO₂ ≥70 mmHg allows for adequate maternal and fetal hemoglobin oxygen saturation [23,30].

7. **Bacterial endocarditis prophylaxis.** **Antibiotics are recommended only for those patients deemed to be at highest risk for infective endocarditis: prosthetic heart valve, prior infective endocarditis, un repaired CHD, repaired CHD with prosthetic material during the first six months after the procedure (during endothelialization), and repaired CHD with residual defects** (Table 2.3) [31]. Some experts have even suggested that no prophylaxis is needed at all [32]. The usual recommended antibiotic regimen for cardiac prophylaxis is a single dose of
Pregnancy outcome is usually good. Rule out pulmonary hypertension by echocardiogram as up to 30% of women with this diagnosis (pulmonary artery systolic pressure >30–40 mmHg) by echocardiography have normal pulmonary pressures by pulmonary artery catheterization.

Over time, in women with unrepaird VSD, ASD, or patent ductus arteriosus (PDA), congenital left to right shunt leads to pulmonary hypertension, right to left shunt, and consequently decreased pulmonary perfusion and hypoxia. Although recent data suggests improved outcomes [40], even with modern management, a high risk of maternal death remains [41]. Some of this mortality is secondary to thromboembolic events [42]. Delayed postpartum death can be seen four to six weeks after delivery, possibly secondary to loss of pregnancy-associated hormones and increased pulmonary vascular resistance (PVR) [24,42].

The main physiologic difficulty in pulmonary hypertension is maintenance of adequate pulmonary blood flow. Any situation that decreases venous return to the heart decreases right ventricular preload and consequently pulmonary blood flow. Therefore, as hypovolemia and hypertension can fatally precipitate decreased pulmonary perfusion and oxygenation (and reverse the left to right cardiac shunt in cases of Eisenmenger’s syndrome; see section titled “Etiology/Basic Pathophysiology/Pregnancy Considerations”), leading to sudden death, it must be avoided. Such situations are common intrapartum (vasodilation from regional anesthesia or pooling of blood in the lower extremities from vena caval compression) and sometimes unanticipated (hemorrhage). As such, patients are better managed on the “wet” side even at the expense of mild pulmonary edema. This allows a margin of safety against unexpected hemorrhage or drug-induced hypotension [42]. Pulmonary artery catheterization may be useful in this regard [24]. Avoid increase in PVR and myocardial depressants. Anticoagulant prophylaxis may be useful in preventing thromboembolic risk, and intravenous prostacyclin (or its analogues) or inhaled nitric oxide may be helpful in reducing PVR while sparing the SVR [43,44].

Route of delivery for women with severe pulmonary hypertension remains controversial. Although vaginal delivery is associated with less risk of hemorrhage, infection, and venous thromboembolism, emergency cesarean without proper cardiac anesthesia personnel or maternal hemodynamic monitoring is associated with an increased risk of complications; scheduled cesarean can allow optimization of delivery conditions with multidisciplinary team involvement and resources [45].

Pulmonary Hypertension

It is important to avoid false positive diagnosis of pulmonary hypertension by echocardiogram as up to 30% of women with this diagnosis (pulmonary artery systolic pressure >30–40 mmHg) by echocardiography have normal pulmonary pressures by pulmonary artery catheterization.

Preoperative evaluation includes the presence of an echocardiogram or magnetic resonance imaging to rule out significant cardiac lesions.

Contraindications to trial of labor to be considered are high risk of maternal hypertension, severe right ventricular failure, pulmonary hypertension, and hypoxia. The risk of cesarean delivery is usually reserved for obstetrical indications. Operative delivery is associated with greater blood loss, increased pain, thromboembolism, and prolonged bed rest compared to vaginal delivery and therefore can complicate the gravida with heart disease. Although labor induction and/or assisted second stage may be necessary for certain maternal or fetal indications, cesarean delivery should be used for usual obstetrical reasons [22,23,29].

Contraindications to trial of labor to be considered are Marfan syndrome with root >4 cm, aortopathy, and maternal therapeutic anticoagulation with warfarin that cannot be interrupted.

Invasive hemodynamic monitoring with a pulmonary artery catheter. Although the safety and utility of pulmonary artery catheters in critically ill nonpregnant patients have been questioned [34–36], they may be helpful in managing certain high-risk conditions that are preload dependent, such as critical aortic stenosis or pulmonary hypertension [23,24].

Most patients benefit from avoiding hypotension during labor and delivery. Although not true for all patients, most with group II and III cardiac lesions will benefit from avoiding hypotension or hypovolemia. To avoid hypotension, keep the woman on the “wetter” side, avoid hemorrhage, replenish blood loss adequately, avoid spinal anesthesia, hydrate at least 1 L of intravenous fluids before “slow” epidural, and avoid supine hypotension.

Postpartum contraceptive management is imperative. Many women with cardiac disease use inadequate or inappropriate contraception [37]. The widely available Medical Eligibility Criteria for Contraceptive Use document from the World Health Organization can assist in reproductive planning [38].

Pregnancy Management of Specific Diseases

Palpitations

Workup should be similar to the nonpregnant patient and include thyroid function and ruling out drugs, alcohol, caffeine, or smoking as well as an EKG and echocardiogram. The woman can be counseled that premature atrial and ventricular contractions are increased in pregnancy and usually benign.

VSD

Pregnancy outcome is usually good. Rule out pulmonary hypertension, especially in large, long-standing cases. In the absence of pulmonary hypertension, mortality is unlikely [39]. Intrapartum, avoid fluid overload [24].

Coarctation of the Aorta

If surgically corrected, maternal outcome is good. Women with smaller aortic dimensions are more likely to experience hypertensive complications related to pregnancy, and conversely, those with larger aortic dimensions have a lower risk of adverse cardiovascular, obstetric, and fetal/neonatal events; cardiovascular magnetic resonance imaging can aid in risk stratification [46]. There is increased risk for maternal mortality when associated with aneurysmal dilation or associated cardiac lesions (VSD, PDA) [47]. Avoid hypotension, myocardial depression, and bradycardia [48].

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table 2.3 Cardiac Conditions for Which Antibiotic Prophylaxis for Bacterial Endocarditis is Reasonable (see further ref. [31])</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Prosthetic cardiac valve or prosthetic material used for cardiac valve repair</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Previous infective endocarditis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Congenital heart defect (CHD):</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unrepaired cyanotic CHD, including palliative shunts and conduits</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Completely repaired CHD with prosthetic material or conduits (where placed by surgery or catheter intervention within six months of procedure)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Incompletely repaired CHD with residual defects at or near the site of prosthetic patch or device</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ampicillin 2.0 g IV preprocedure. Cefazolin, ceftriaxone, or clindamycin can be substituted in the penicillin-allergic patient [33].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. Cesarean delivery is usually reserved for obstetrical indications. Operative delivery is associated with greater blood loss, increased pain, thromboembolism, and prolonged bed rest compared to vaginal delivery and therefore can complicate the gravida with heart disease. Although labor induction and/or assisted second stage may be necessary for certain maternal or fetal indications, cesarean delivery should be used for usual obstetrical reasons [22,23,29].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. Invasive hemodynamic monitoring with a pulmonary artery catheter. Although the safety and utility of pulmonary artery catheters in critically ill nonpregnant patients have been questioned [34–36], they may be helpful in managing certain high-risk conditions that are preload dependent, such as critical aortic stenosis or pulmonary hypertension [23,24].</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. Most patients benefit from avoiding hypotension during labor and delivery. Although not true for all patients, most with group II and III cardiac lesions will benefit from avoiding hypotension or hypovolemia. To avoid hypotension, keep the woman on the “wetter” side, avoid hemorrhage, replenish blood loss adequately, avoid spinal anesthesia, hydrate at least 1 L of intravenous fluids before “slow” epidural, and avoid supine hypotension.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11. Postpartum contraceptive management is imperative. Many women with cardiac disease use inadequate or inappropriate contraception [37]. The widely available Medical Eligibility Criteria for Contraceptive Use document from the World Health Organization can assist in reproductive planning [38].</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Tetralogy of Fallot
It consists of VSD, pulmonary stenosis, hypertrophy of right ventricle, and overriding aorta. Corrected lesions do well, but uncorrected ones are still associated with high maternal mortality [49]. Because of the VSD-associated shunting in uncorrected cases, hypotension, myocardial depressants, and bradycardia should be avoided [24].

Mitral Stenosis
Women with >1.5 cm² mitral valve area usually have good outcomes. When significant (valve area <1.5 cm²) mitral stenosis is present, left ventricular filling is limited, which leads to fixed cardiac output. If the pregnant patient is unable to accommodate the volume shifts that occur during gestation and puerperium, pulmonary edema can result (see pathophysiology above). Antenatally, this risk is greatest at 30 to 32 weeks when maternal blood volume peaks. In that scenario, percutaneous balloon valvuloplasty may be relatively safely performed in certain patients [50]. Although it appears safer for the fetus than open mitral commissurotomy, it should be reserved for women who are unresponsive to aggressive medical therapy [51,52]. As cardiac output is dependent on adequate diastolic filling time, tachycardia can result in hemodynamic decompensation (hypotension and fall in cardiac output) and should be avoided. Intrapartum, therefore, short-acting beta-blockers should be considered when pulse exceeds 90 to 100 bpm [24,53]. Although inadequate preload will decrease cardiac output, too much will result in pulmonary edema, particularly postpartum when pulmonary capillary wedge pressure (PCWP) can rise up to 16 mmHg [9]. Invasive hemodynamic monitoring via pulmonary artery catheterization with cautious, individualized intrapartum diuresis to a predelivery target of 14 mmHg (although normal is 6 to 9 mmHg, mitral stenosis patients often need elevated wedge pressures to maintain left ventricular filling) may be desirable in some patients [24]. Patients with moderate stenosis with only mild fluid overload can often be managed with just fluid restriction to complement their insensible loss during labor [24]. Avoid decrease in SVR and increase in PVR.

Aortic Stenosis
The major issue is fixed and limited cardiac output through a restricted valve area. Mortality is related to degree of stenosis with >100 mmHg of mean shunt gradient associated with 15% to 20% mortality. Congestive heart failure (CHF), syncope, and previous cardiac arrest are other contraindications to pregnancy. Hypotension and decreased preload can lead to a precipitous drop in cardiac output. Consequently, hypotension should be avoided [54]. Intrapartum, invasive hemodynamic monitoring may be helpful to increase the PCWP to the range of 15 to 17 mmHg to maintain a margin of safety against unexpected blood loss or hypotension (although the data is insufficient for an evidence-based recommendation) [23,24]. This range of PCWP minimizes risk of frank pulmonary edema even with normal postpartum fluid shifts, and furthermore, hypovolemia is potentially more dangerous in these patients than pulmonary edema. Avoid decrease in venous return and tachycardia.

Pulmonic Stenosis
Congenital pulmonic stenosis (PS) is a lesion for which survival to adulthood is high. It is generally well tolerated during pregnancy. Balloon valvuloplasty should be considered prior to conception in patients with asymptomatic severe PS (peak gradient >60 mmHg) or symptomatic patients with peak gradient >50 mmHg (in association with less than moderate pulmonic regurgitation) [55]. In patients with functional capacity NYHA class I–II, pulmonic stenosis does not appear to adversely affect maternal outcomes [56]. Adequate preload is needed to maintain right ventricular cardiac output. Very severe PS (>80 mmHg) may be associated with maternal and fetal complications, including hypertension-related disorders, preterm delivery, and offspring mortality [57]. Percutaneous pulmonary valvuloplasty has been successfully performed in cases of severe symptomatic obstruction during pregnancy.

Mitral and Aortic Insufficiency
These lesions are usually well tolerated in pregnancy unless associated with NYHA III or IV symptoms at baseline. Avoid arrhythmia, bradycardia, increase in SVR, and myocardial depressants.

Mechanical Heart Valves
Women with mechanical heart valves are at increased risk of adverse outcomes in pregnancy, including valve thrombosis (4.7%), hemorrhage (23.1%), and death (1.4%), making pre-pregnancy counseling and care imperative [58]. Those women who anticipate ultimately needing valve replacement surgery should be encouraged to complete childbearing before valve replacement. For women with mechanical heart valves, optimal anticoagulation during pregnancy is controversial. The highest risk is with first-generation mechanical valves (Starr–Edwards, Bjork–Shiley) in the mitral position, followed by second-generation valves (St. Jude) in the aortic position. These women need to be therapeutically anticoagulated throughout pregnancy and postpartum with blood levels frequently (usually weekly) checked to ensure therapeutic levels of anticoagulation. The 2012 CHEST Guidelines [59] indicate, “For pregnant women with mechanical heart valves, the decision regarding the choice of anticoagulant regimen is so value- and preference-dependent (risk of thrombosis vs. risk of fetal abnormalities) that we consider this decision to be completely individualized.” Women of childbearing age and pregnant women with mechanical valves should be counseled about potential maternal and fetal risks associated with various anticoagulant regimens. The Guidelines specify one of the following regimens over no anticoagulation for pregnant women with mechanical valves:

1. Adjusted-dose bid low-molecular weight heparin (LMWH) throughout pregnancy with dose adjusted to achieve peak anti-Xa four hours postinjection.
2. Adjusted-dose unfractionated heparin (UFH) throughout pregnancy administered subcutaneously every 12 hours in doses adjusted to keep the mid-interval aPTT at least twice control or attain an anti-XA heparin level of 0.35–0.70 units/mL.
3. UFH or LMWH (as above) until the 13th week with substitution by vitamin K antagonists until close to delivery when UFH or LMWH is resumed.

In women judged to be at very high risk of thromboembolism in whom concerns exist about the efficacy and safety of UFH or LMWH as dosed above (e.g., older generation prosthesis in the mitral position or history of thromboembolism), the Guidelines suggest vitamin K antagonists throughout pregnancy with replacement by UFH or LMWH (as above) until the 13th week with substitution by vitamin K antagonists until close to delivery when UFH or LMWH is resumed.

In women judged to be at very high risk of thromboembolism in whom concerns exist about the efficacy and safety of UFH or LMWH as dosed above (e.g., older generation prosthesis in the mitral position or history of thromboembolism), the Guidelines suggest vitamin K antagonists throughout pregnancy with replacement by UFH or LMWH (as above) until the 13th week with substitution by vitamin K antagonists until close to delivery when UFH or LMWH is resumed.

In women judged to be at very high risk of thromboembolism in whom concerns exist about the efficacy and safety of UFH or LMWH as dosed above (e.g., older generation prosthesis in the mitral position or history of thromboembolism), the Guidelines suggest vitamin K antagonists throughout pregnancy with replacement by UFH or LMWH (as above) until the 13th week with substitution by vitamin K antagonists until close to delivery when UFH or LMWH is resumed.

In women judged to be at very high risk of thromboembolism in whom concerns exist about the efficacy and safety of UFH or LMWH as dosed above (e.g., older generation prosthesis in the mitral position or history of thromboembolism), the Guidelines suggest vitamin K antagonists throughout pregnancy with replacement by UFH or LMWH (as above) until the 13th week with substitution by vitamin K antagonists until close to delivery when UFH or LMWH is resumed.
on avoiding maternal complications (e.g., catastrophic valve thrombosis) are likely to choose LMWH or UFH over vitamin K antagonists. Warfarin throughout pregnancy and postpartum may be the regimen associated with the least maternal risks of thromboembolism, but in the first trimester, warfarin is associated with a 10% to 15% teratogenic risk (nasal hypoplasia, optic atrophy, digital anomalies, mental impairment). On the other hand, UFH throughout can be ineffective [10,11]. Regarding delivery, therapeutic anticoagulation should be stopped during active labor and for delivery, with therapeutic heparin restarted about 6 to 12 hours after delivery when adequate hemostasis is assured, and warfarin restarted in an overlapping fashion (to avoid paradoxical thrombosis) 24 to 36 hours after delivery. Last, for pregnant women with prosthetic valves at high risk of thromboembolism, the addition of low-dose aspirin, 75 to 100 mg/day, is suggested.

**Marfan Syndrome**

Marfan syndrome is an autosomal-dominant generalized connective tissue disorder with 80% of affected women having a family history of this condition. Its main risk in pregnancy is aortic aneurysm, leading to rupture and dissection. Women with personal or family history of Marfan syndrome should have an echocardiogram, possibly a slit lamp examination to look for ectopia lentis, and genetic counseling. Prognosis is reasonable when there is no aortic root involvement (<5% mortality) although mortality can still occur. There is a risk of aortic rupture, dissection, and mortality (up to 50%) in pregnancy when the aortic root is dilated beyond 4 cm, such that pregnancy is contraindicated in these women before repair. This may result from the “shearing force” of normal pregnancy because of increase in blood volume and cardiac output [60–62]. Prenatally, serial maternal echocardiograms to follow the cardiac root should be performed [61]. **Hypertension should be avoided,** and beta-blockade therapy should be considered. Although pregnancy data are limited for this last recommendation, long-term use in nonpregnant patients has been shown to slow the progression of aortic root dilation [63]. Avoid positive inotropic drugs, and plan epidural (watch for dural ectasia, present in about 90% of patients with Marfan syndrome) to reduce cardiovascular stress. If cesarean delivery is required, retention sutures should be considered because of generalized connective tissue weakness [24].

**Hypertrophic Cardiomyopathy**

(Previously called idiopathic hypertrophic subaortic stenosis.) It can be inherited as autosomal dominant with variable penetrance. It can result in left ventricular hypertrophy, leading to obstruction of the left ventricular outflow. The decrease in SVR of pregnancy can worsen outflow obstruction. Also, tachycardia decreases diastolic filling time, compromising cardiac output. Peripartum management focuses on avoiding tachycardia (treatment with beta-blockade), hypovolemia, and hypotension [64,65].

**Dilated Cardiomyopathy**

Patients with preexisting dilated cardiomyopathy with symptomatic, moderate to severe left ventricular dysfunction (ejection fraction <45%) have an increased risk of cardiovascular events during pregnancy and postpartum. Therefore pre-pregnancy counseling is imperative. Additionally, pregnancy may negatively impact ventricular function possible due to the hemodynamic burden of pregnancy or discontinuation of medical therapy during pregnancy [66].

Peripartum Cardiomyopathy

This is defined as cardiomyopathy (with EF <45%) occurring during last four weeks of pregnancy or within five months postpartum (peaks at 2 months postpartum) without other cause. The incidence is 1/3000 to 4000 live births. Risk factors are older maternal age, multiparity, African-American race, multiple gestations, and hypertensive disorders of pregnancy. Serial echocardiography, medical management (digoxin, diuretics, afterload reduction—hydralazine and/or beta-blockers in pregnancy, ACE inhibitors postpartum), anticoagulation if EF is <35%, and possible intrapartum PAC in severely decompensated patients may be needed for management [24,67–70]. The addition of bromocriptine to standard heart failure therapy appears to improve left ventricular EF and a composite clinical outcome in women with acute severe peripartum cardiomyopathy, but the number of patients studied was too small to make any recommendation [71].

The majority of patients with peripartum cardiomyopathy have favorable outcomes. Severity of left ventricular dysfunction and the degree of left ventricular enlargement at presentation are associated with less likelihood of recovery of ventricular function [72].

Regarding future pregnancies after a diagnosis of peripartum cardiomyopathy, persistent dilated cardiomyopathy with abnormal EF predicts a high risk (19%) of mortality and symptoms of cardiac failure (44%) with subsequent gestation and should be discouraged. Of women with EF <25%, 57% require a cardiac transplant or are on a transplant list because of progressive symptoms of heart failure at a mean of 3.4 years of follow-up postpartum [73]. Even women with “normal” echocardiograms (EF ≥45%–50%) after recovering from peripartum cardiomyopathy can have persistent “subclinical” low contractile reserve [68] with up to 21% risk of developing symptoms of CHF but no mortality reported in one study [70].

**Coronary Artery Disease**

Underlying risks factors, such as diabetes, obesity, hypercholesterolemia, smoking, hypertension, and stress, should be individually addressed and treated, ideally before conception. Women with pre-established coronary artery disease or an acute coronary syndrome/myocardial infarction prior to pregnancy are at risk for serious adverse maternal cardiac events (10%) during pregnancy; the highest rates of nonfatal ischemic cardiac complications during pregnancy occur in women with atherosclerotic coronary disease [74]. Stable angina can be treated with nitrates, calcium channel blockers, and/or beta-blockers in pregnancy. With unstable angina, the woman should be counseled regarding severe risks and offered termination if early enough in pregnancy. Myocardial infarction (MI) is rare in reproductive-age women with a 1/10,000 incidence in pregnancy. When it occurs in the third trimester or within two weeks of labor, there is a high (20%) maternal mortality risk [75]. Women with prior MI with recovered heart function and optimally controlled coronary artery disease can anticipate a successful pregnancy [76]. Management of MI during pregnancy is similar to management principles in nonpregnant patients, including percutaneous coronary intervention (PCI) with placement of coronary stents or coronary angioplasty; thrombolytic therapy is a relative contraindication [23,75,77] but may be used in hospitals with no PCI capability [78]. Heparin and beta-blockers are recommended. If labor occurs within four days of an MI, cesarean delivery is often advocated [79]. Women with a prior MI should wait at least one year and ensure normal
CONCLUSION
With medical and surgical advances and advancing maternal age, heart disease complicating pregnancy is increasingly common. Understanding the physiologic changes of pregnancy and their effect on specific cardiac conditions forms the basis for management during pregnancy. Prepregnant cardiovascular assessment and counseling should be a primary goal. Heightened awareness to optimize cardiac status, close perinatal surveillance, and a coordinated management team are critical to improve maternal and fetal outcome.

REFERENCES
1. Siu S, Colman J, Sorenson S. Adverse neonatal and cardiac outcomes are more common in pregnant women with cardiac disease. Circulation 2002; 105: 2179. [II-3]


Obesity
Kathryn Shaia and Maria Teresa Mella

KEY POINTS

- The preconception visit may be the single most important health care visit when viewed in the context of its effect on pregnancy. Height in meters and weight in kilograms should be recorded for all women at each doctor visit to allow for calculation of BMI. The BMI category should be reviewed with the patient, making sure she understands that her category is not normal.
- Obesity is a risk factor for cardiovascular disease; diabetes; hypertension; stroke; osteoarthritis; gall stones; increased incidence of endometrial, breast, or colon cancer; cardiomyopathy; fatty liver; obstructive sleep apnea; urinary tract infections; other complications; and, most importantly, mortality. Prepregnancy obesity and excessive gestational weight gain are associated with increased risk of childhood obesity.
- Preconception weight loss with diet, exercise, behavior change, and, if necessary, pharmacotherapy is recommended. Weight loss of at least 5% to 10% will help reduce the incidence of obesity-related comorbidities.
- Preconception (and at first prenatal visit), check BP with a large cuff, fasting lipid profile and blood sugar, thyroid function tests, and overnight polysonogram. In obese patients with chronic hypertension or type 2 diabetes, it is advisable to obtain an EKG and an echocardiogram.
- Women with BMI ≥40 kg/m² or ≥35 kg/m² with comorbidities are candidates for bariatric surgery in the preconception or interconception period. Incidences of gestational diabetes and hypertension are reduced after gastric bypass surgery, especially if BMI is back to less than obese levels. Pregnant patients with bariatric surgery can be started on vitamin B12, folate, iron, and calcium if deficient.
- Obesity is strongly correlated with impaired fertility, miscarriage, congenital malformations, gestational diabetes, hypertension, preclampsia, stillbirth, cesarean birth, labor abnormalities, macrosomia, anesthesia complications, wound infection, and thrombembolism.
- Discussion and education about obesity and its comorbidities and poor perinatal outcomes are recommended.
- Optimal gestational weight gain in the obese remains unclear. Some data suggest no weight gain or even some weight loss in obese (especially class III obesity) gravidas for optimal obstetric outcomes.
- Serial fetal growth ultrasounds should be performed starting at 28 to 32 weeks.
- Obese women with a BMI >35 kg/m² should undergo a screening fetal echo between 20 and 24 weeks.
- At cesarean, the subcutaneous layer should be closed with sutures if depth is >2 cm, and the subcuticular layer should be closed with suture in order to reduce wound infection and separation.
- Early mobilization after delivery and graduated compression stockings during and after cesarean are recommended.
- Postpartum, women should be strongly encouraged and helped to return to a normal BMI through counseling, diet, exercise, and breast-feeding.

DEFINITION AND CLASSIFICATION

Obesity is defined as BMI ≥30 kg/m², and extreme obesity is defined as BMI ≥40.0 kg/m² (Table 3.1) [1]. Super obesity is a term originally used by bariatric surgeons to describe patients with BMIs of ≥50 kg/m² or more than 225% above ideal body weight [2]. BMI is defined as weight in kilograms divided by height in meters squared. BMI correlates best with body fat mass. It is a simple clinical tool with online calculators available (http://www.nhlbi.gov/bmi/). Increasing severity of class of obesity in pregnancy is associated with greater risks of adverse perinatal outcomes (Table 3.2) [3–67] and other health risks (Table 3.3) [4]. A waist circumference >88 cm or 35 inches measured at the level of the iliac crest in expiration is an indicator of central obesity that identifies obese women at higher risk for cardiovascular disease and metabolic disorders.

EPIDEMIOLOGY/INCIDENCE

WHO describes obesity as “one of the most blatantly visible, yet neglected, public-health problems that threatens to overwhelm both more and less developed countries.” As of 2014, the WHO estimates that more than 1.9 billion adults are overweight, including 600 million who are obese [68]. By 2030, more than 2.16 billion people worldwide are projected to be overweight with an additional 1.12 billion people projected to be obese [69,70]. In 2008, obesity-related health care utilization cost an estimated $147 billion. Medical costs for obese patients were $1429 higher than those of normal weight [71]. At all ages and throughout the world, women are generally found to have higher mean BMI and higher rates of obesity than men [72]. These numbers are increasing as the obesity epidemic explodes on the public health stage.

The prevalence of overweight, obese, and extremely obese women aged 20–74 has continued to increase since 1960. As of 2012, the prevalence of obesity and extreme obesity in women was 36.6% and 8.6%, respectively, compared to 15.8% and 1.4% in 1960 [73]. Population data indicates that 50% of women are overweight or obese at the start of pregnancy [74]. The incidence of super obesity is estimated to be 1.8%–2.2% in the obstetric population [2,75,76].

There are racial differences with non-Hispanic black women having the highest prevalence of obesity (56.6%) when compared to Hispanic (44.4%), non-Hispanic white (32.8%), and non-Hispanic Asian (11.4%) women [73].
growth aberrations [87]. It could result in low implantation rates, birth defects, and fetal stage, alteration in very early metabolism of the embryo, and age [85,86]. Epigenetic modification in the preimplantation alpha tumor necrosis factor, that lead to a chronic inflammation of cytokines, such as interleukin-6, interleukin-1, and beta-adaptin. This increased level stimulates the increased production of leptin (98%) produced by the placenta is released into maternal circulation. This increased level stimulates the increased production of leptin to maintain fat mass. The majority of leptin levels are a marker for fetal fat mass. The majority of leptin is produced in the adipose tissue. Conversely, adiponectin levels appear to decrease from six weeks onward and decrease rapidly after parturition. Endometrium and ovarian follicles also have leptin receptors. Adiponectin is an endogenous insulin sensitizing hormone that acts as a satiety factor, inducing a reduction in food intake and an increase in energy utilization [83]. Leptin is produced by the adipocytes, placenta, and fetal adipose tissue. Adiponectin and ovarian follicles also have leptin receptors. Adiponectin is an endogenous insulin sensitizing hormone that is present in lower circulating concentrations in obesity [83].

Maternal leptin levels increase throughout pregnancy from six weeks onward and decrease rapidly after parturition. Conversely, adiponectin levels appear to decrease throughout pregnancy and are especially low in patients with prepregnancy obesity [83]. High levels of serum leptin in pregnancy are similar to that seen in obesity [84]. Leptin appears to be an independent regulator of fetal growth, and leptin levels are a marker for fetal fat mass. The majority of leptin (98%) produced by the placenta is released into maternal circulation. This increased level stimulates increased production of cytokines, such as interleukin-6, interleukin-1, and alpha tumor necrosis factor, that lead to a chronic inflammatory state, further resulting in structural and vascular damage [85,86]. Epigenetic modification in the preimplantation stage, alteration in very early metabolism of the embryo, and endometrial abnormalities seen on biopsy in obese patients could result in low implantation rates, birth defects, and fetal growth aberrations [87].

### Table 3.1  The International Classification of Adult Underweight, Overweight, and Obesity According to BMI, WHO

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Classification</th>
<th>BMI (kg/m²)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Underweight</td>
<td>&lt;18.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Normal range</td>
<td>18.5–24.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Overweight</td>
<td>25.0–29.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Obese</td>
<td>≥30.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Obese class I</td>
<td>30.0–34.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Obese class II</td>
<td>35.0–39.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Obese class III</td>
<td>≥40.0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


### GENETICS

A heritability of about 50% to 90% has been shown in adoptive and biological relationships [77]. Role of chromosome 2 p 21 with serum leptin levels in human pregnancies has been identified in some ethnic groups [77]. The risk of childhood obesity is significantly increased if one parent is obese, but the risk is even higher if both parents are affected (adjusted odds ratio [aOR] 10.4, 95% confidence interval [CI] 5.1–21.3) [78]. Many other single mutations in different genes have been identified [79–81]. Maternal obesity results in a utero programming and childhood obesity due to the effects of a maternal high-fat diet leading to insulin resistance, hyperinsulinemia, and increased fat accumulation in the offspring. Additionally, environmental factors, such as diet, play a role in obesity [79].

### ETIOLOGY/BASIC PATHOPHYSIOLOGY

White adipose tissue produces proteins with endocrine function called adipokines. A state of relative hypoxia occurs in the adipocytes in obesity, which sets a chronic inflammatory response, causing the release of adipokines. Leptin, adiponectin, resistin, and ghrelin are the most studied adipokines [82].

The name “leptin” is derived from the Greek, which means the “thinning factor.” Leptin is a neuroendocrine hormone that acts as a satiety factor, inducing a reduction in food intake and an increase in energy utilization [83]. Leptin is produced by the adipocytes, placenta, and fetal adipose tissue. Endometrium and ovarian follicles also have leptin receptors. Adiponectin is an endogenous insulin sensitizing hormone that is present in lower circulating concentrations in obesity [83].

Maternal leptin levels increase throughout pregnancy from six weeks onward and decrease rapidly after parturition. Conversely, adiponectin levels appear to decrease throughout pregnancy and are especially low in patients with prepregnancy obesity [83]. High levels of serum leptin in pregnancy are similar to that seen in obesity [84]. Leptin appears to be an independent regulator of fetal growth, and leptin levels are a marker for fetal fat mass. The majority of leptin (98%) produced by the placenta is released into maternal circulation. This increased level stimulates increased production of cytokines, such as interleukin-6, interleukin-1, and alpha tumor necrosis factor, that lead to a chronic inflammatory state, further resulting in structural and vascular damage [85,86]. Epigenetic modification in the preimplantation stage, alteration in very early metabolism of the embryo, and endometrial abnormalities seen on biopsy in obese patients could result in low implantation rates, birth defects, and fetal growth aberrations [87].

### RISK FACTORS

Older, multiparous women from lower socioeconomic backgrounds, limited resource environments especially for good nutrition, unsafe neighborhoods for unrestricted physical activity, lack of access to medical care, minority status, and family history, all are risk factors for obesity in general and for its associated complications in pregnancy [86].

### PREGNANCY COMPLICATIONS

Table 3.2 summarizes the long list of pregnancy complications associated with obesity in pregnancy. The higher the patient’s BMI, the greater the chance of complications.

Obesity is associated with an increased risk of congenital anomalies. Maternal obesity is an independent risk factor for congenital heart defects (CHD) with an aOR of 1.16 (95% CI 1.05–1.29), 1.15 (95% CI 1.00–1.32), and 1.31 (95% CI 1.11–1.56) for overweight, obese, and morbidly obese (>35 kg/m²) patients, respectively [34,88]. Prepregnancy BMI >25 kg/m² and increasing levels of obesity are associated with several phenotypes of CHD, such as conotruncal defects, total anomalous pulmonary venous return, hypoplastic left heart syndrome, right ventricular outflow tract defects, and septal defects [34,35]. Maternal obesity (BMI >30 kg/m²) also increases the risk for other congenital anomalies including neural tube defects (NTD) (OR 4.08; 95% CI 1.87–7.75), hydrocephaly, orofacial clefts (OR 1.90; 95% CI 1.27–2.86), anal atresia, hypospadias, cystic kidney, talipes, omphalocele, and diaphragmatic hernia [37,89]. Neural tube defects may be due to folate deficiency or local endometrial and placental factors, leading to altered angiogenesis related to leptin or altered carbohydrate metabolism with undetected hyperglycemia. This higher rate of anomalies persists in obese women even after controlling for diabetes.

Excluding women with hypertension, the risk of preeclampsia is doubled with each 5 to 7 kg/m² increase in prepregnancy BMI [12]. When compared to a BMI of 21 kg/m², the risk is doubled with a BMI of 26 kg/m² and almost tripled when the BMI is >30 kg/m² [90,91]. Women with class III obesity had a higher incidence of preeclampsia, antepartum stillbirth, cesarean delivery, instrumental delivery, shoulder dystocia, meconium aspiration, fetal distress, early neonatal death, and large babies as compared to normal-weight women [13,90,91].

Increased BMI is a risk factor for impairment of carbohydrate tolerance. Fasting and postprandial plasma insulin concentrations are higher in obese pregnant women than in those who are not obese.

Each 1-unit increase in pregravid BMI (5 lb) increases the risk of cesarean delivery by about 7% [92]. Success rates of vaginal birth are low in the obese population and infectious morbidity, such as chorioamnionitis, is increased particularly after labor [29,30,93]. Antepartum complications of obesity largely account for this higher cesarean delivery rate as well as macrosomia-associated cephalopelvic disproportion, nonreassuring fetal testing, and failed induction.

Operative risks are also high in obese patients, including increased total operative time, blood loss, endometritis, and wound disruptions and infections [94]. Fetal deaths are mostly unexplained and are thought to be secondary to placental dysfunction and related comorbidities [40,41]. Suggested pathophysiological mechanisms include placental dysfunction, placental inflammation, impaired glucose tolerance and insulin resistance, and excessive hyperlipidemia.
### Table 3.2 Complications of Obesity Related to Pregnancy (see also text) [4–67]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Risk (%) or OR</th>
<th>Comments</th>
<th>Ref.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Infertility</strong></td>
<td>OR 1.7–2</td>
<td>Smoking is a risk factor in the obese</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Miscarriage rates</td>
<td>OR 1.31</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Recurrent miscarriage</td>
<td>OR 1.71</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Prenatal/medical</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chronic hypertension</td>
<td>OR 2–3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gestational hypertension</td>
<td>OR 2.5–3.2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Preeclampsia</td>
<td>OR 1.44–14.14</td>
<td>Risk increases with increasing class of obesity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gestational diabetes</td>
<td>OR 1.4–20</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Venous thromboembolism</td>
<td>OR 1.30–2.65</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Obstructive sleep apnea</td>
<td>OR 1.12</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Respiratory issues (e.g., asthma exacerbations)</td>
<td>OR 1.3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Depression</td>
<td>OR 1.12</td>
<td>OR 4.9 class III</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Urinary tract infections</td>
<td>OR 1.4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Obstetric</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spontaneous pregnancy loss</td>
<td>OR 1.7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indicated preterm birth</td>
<td>OR 1.3</td>
<td>Includes overweight</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spontaneous preterm birth</td>
<td>OR 1.24</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lower accuracy of ultrasound</td>
<td>25%–48% detection</td>
<td>Residual anomaly risk after ultrasound in obese 1%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Difficulty with fetal testing (e.g., FH monitoring)</td>
<td>OR 2.6</td>
<td>No definite recommendation for invasive monitoring</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Failure to progress</td>
<td>OR 2.2</td>
<td>Class II</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Induction of labor</td>
<td>OR 1.3</td>
<td>Class II (BMI &gt;35)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fetal distress</td>
<td>OR 0.53–2.0</td>
<td>Excessive weight gain lowers success—Class III</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lower success of TOLAC</td>
<td>OR 5.6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rupture/dehiscence after TOLAC</td>
<td>OR 1.7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Post-term birth (less likely to go into spontaneous labor)</td>
<td>OR 2.6</td>
<td>Class III</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lower rates of breast-feeding (Failure to start and sustain)</td>
<td>OR 1.56</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Late prenatal care</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Fetus/neonate</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Congenital fetal defects</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NTD</td>
<td>OR 1.7–2.8</td>
<td>OR 3–4 class II–III</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHD</td>
<td>OR 1.3–1.5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cleft lip/palate</td>
<td>OR 1.2–1.9</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anorectal atresia</td>
<td>OR 1.5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hydrocephalus</td>
<td>OR 1.7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Limb reduction defects</td>
<td>OR 1.3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Down syndrome</td>
<td>1.12–1.56</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IUGR</td>
<td>2.1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gastroschisis</td>
<td>OR 0.17</td>
<td>Reduced risk in the obese</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Macrosomia (&gt;4000 g)</td>
<td>OR 1.7–2.36</td>
<td>Associated most with macrosomia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Birth injury, shoulder dystocia</td>
<td>OR 1.51–3.1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Low Apgar scores</td>
<td>OR 1.4–13.4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fetal death</td>
<td>OR 2.0–3.6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neonatal mortality</td>
<td>OR 1.15–1.3</td>
<td>OR 3.4 class III</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Childhood obesity BMI &gt;95th percentile and metabolic syndrome</td>
<td>OR 1.62–2.2</td>
<td>Increases with increasing levels of obesity and GWG</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NICU admission</td>
<td>OR 1.28–1.34</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Intrapartum</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Earlier admission</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Longer labor</td>
<td>7 hours (obese) vs. 5.4 hours (normal)</td>
<td>Slow labor to 7 cm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anesthesia complications</td>
<td>8.4% composite morbidity</td>
<td>6/8 maternal deaths were in obese gravida</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Difficult regional anesthesia placement</td>
<td>OR 19.4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Difficult intubations (general anesthesia)</td>
<td>OR 2.1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(Continued)
Table 3.2 (Continued) Complications of Obesity Related to Pregnancy (see also text) [4–67]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Risk (%) or OR</th>
<th>Comments</th>
<th>Ref.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Need for cesarean delivery</td>
<td>OR 1.46–3.0</td>
<td>47% in class II–III (especially failure to progress)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Increase operative time &gt;60 minutes;</td>
<td>OR 9.3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Emergency cesarean</td>
<td>OR 4.7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wound infections/disruptions</td>
<td>OR 2.24–3.4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hemorrhage</td>
<td>OR 5.2</td>
<td>Morbid obesity &gt;300 lb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Postpartum hemorrhage</td>
<td>OR 1.4–2.11</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Longer hospitalization</td>
<td>OR 1.48</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ICU admissions</td>
<td>OR 3.8</td>
<td>BMI &gt;50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hormonal contraceptive failure</td>
<td>OR 1.91</td>
<td>BMI &gt;25; limited studies, may still be the best if used properly</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Abbreviations: BMI, body mass index; CHD, congenital heart disease; GWG, gestational weight gain; NTD, neural tube defect; OR, odds ratio; TOLAC, trial of labor after cesarean.

Table 3.3 Health Risks Associated with Obesity

- Premature death
- Type 2 diabetes
- Metabolic syndrome
- Heart disease
- Stroke
- Hypertension
- Gallbladder disease
- Sleep apnea
- Depression
- Cancer
- High cholesterol
- Hirsutism
- Stress incontinence
- Surgical risk
- Osteoarthritis
- Asthma
- Social stigma


Prepregnancy obesity and excessive gestational weight gain are associated with indicated preterm birth, and obesity seems to protect against spontaneous preterm birth [25,31,95–100]. Nulligravid obese women are likely at greater risk than the multiparous women.

Obstructive sleep apnea (OSA) has a higher incidence in obese women, especially with neck circumference >38 cm. OSA has been associated with preeclampsia, gestational diabetes, and pulmonary hypertension [101–103]. It is also associated with fetal heart rate decelerations during periods of maternal hypoxia. Lower Apgar scores, low birth weight, and increased admission to neonatal intensive care units are seen in infants of obese women with OSA [102,104]. OSA may complicate anesthesia and postoperative care [18–20]. Continuous positive airway pressure (CPAP) has been shown to improve blood pressure control in pregnant women with chronic hypertension [105].

Prepregnancy obesity is an independent risk factor for large for gestational age (LGA) fetuses and macrosomia and is correlated with increasing categories of obesity and gestational weight gain. Maternal excess weight with BMI >25 kg/m² before pregnancy has been shown to be a determinant of fetal macrosomia (OR 2.0; 95% CI 1.72, 2.32) [106]. Macrosomic fetuses are at high risk for childhood obesity and adult metabolic syndrome. Excessive weight gain during pregnancy can increase the risk of macrosomia by 30%. The incidence of shoulder dystocia remains undefined with some reporting a higher incidence and others no difference in the obese population versus the nonobese. Shoulder dystocia is associated with birth weight rather than increasing levels of obesity [38,39].

Obesity is associated with greater health care usage with more prenatal visits with physicians, fetal testing, obstetrical ultrasound, medications, telephone calls, longer length of stay, increased cesarean deliveries, and medical conditions associated with obesity [69]. It is estimated that 5.7% of the total U.S. health expenditure is from obesity-related illness [70]. Close to 300,000 deaths annually are attributed to a diagnosis of obesity [2]. About 24% deaths in adult women aged 25 to 64 years are due to obesity [71].

PRECONCEPTION CARE/PREVENTION

Preconception Evaluation

The preconception visit may be the single most important health care visit when viewed in the context of its effect on pregnancy (Chapter 1 of Obstetric Evidence Based Guidelines). Height in meters and weight in kilograms should be recorded for all women at each doctor visit to allow for calculation of BMI (http://www.nhlbisupport.com/bmi) (Figure 3.1). Identification and awareness by both the patient and health care worker of obesity is the first step in prevention of complications and appropriate management. The BMI category should be reviewed with the patient, making sure she understands that her category is not normal (Table 3.1).

Once obesity is confirmed, a waist circumference can be measured at the end of expiration at the level of the iliac crest. This, as well as the exact BMI, should be documented. A risk assessment of cardiovascular disease by taking BP with a large cuff, dyslipidemia by obtaining a fasting lipid profile and diabetes evaluation with a fasting blood sugar, thyroid disease with thyroid function tests, and OSA requiring a standard overnight polysomnogram should be initiated. In obese patients with chronic hypertension or type 2 diabetes, it is advisable to obtain an EKG and an echocardiogram [107]. Obese women are more likely to experience congestive heart failure and cardiomyopathy. Family history should be elicited. History of weight cycling is important and indicates poor compliance and may be associated with an increased risk of comorbidities.

Discussion and education about obesity and its comorbidities and poor perinatal outcomes should be provided (e.g., give a copy of Tables 3.2 and 3.3). An assessment should be made to see if the patient is ready for intervention with diet and exercise. Motivational interviewing is defined as a “directive, client-centered counseling style for eliciting behavior change by helping clients explore and resolve ambivalence” (Table 3.4) [108,109].
Women with increased BMI are known to have a three-fold greater risk of infertility due to disturbances in the hypothalamic-pituitary axis, menstrual cycle alterations, and anovulation [110]. An abnormal BMI is associated with significantly reduced live-birth rate and increased miscarriage rate after IVF treatment [110]. Fertilization rates and clinical pregnancy rates are reported to be lower in obese women [111]. The most effective intervention in the adult obese population is diet, physical activity, and behavior modification (http://www.nhlbi.nih.gov/guidelines/obesity/ob_home.htm). The most important interventions in the management of obesity in reproductive-age women are weight reduction prior to conception and prevention of excessive gestational weight gain (Table 3.5) [38,112].

**Figure 3.1** Algorithm.

**Table 3.4** Stages of Change Model to Assess Readiness for Weight Loss

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stage</th>
<th>Characteristic</th>
<th>Appropriate Intervention</th>
<th>Sample Dialogue</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Precontemplation</td>
<td>Unaware of problem, no interest in change</td>
<td>Provide information about health risks and benefit of weight loss</td>
<td>“Would you like to read some information about the health aspects of obesity?”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contemplation</td>
<td>Aware of problem, beginning to think of changing</td>
<td>Help resolve ambivalence; discuss barriers</td>
<td>“Let’s look at the benefits of weight loss as well as what you may need to change.”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Preparation</td>
<td>Realizes benefits of making changes and thinking about how to change</td>
<td>Teach behavior modification; provide education</td>
<td>“Let’s take a closer look at how you can reduce some of the calories you eat and how to increase your activity during the day.”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Action</td>
<td>Actively taking steps toward change</td>
<td>Provide support and guidance with a focus on the long term</td>
<td>“It’s terrific that you are working so hard. What problems have you had? How have you solved them?”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maintenance</td>
<td>Initial treatment goals reached</td>
<td>Relapse control</td>
<td>“What situations continue to tempt you to overeat? What can be helpful for the next time you face the situation?”</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 3.5  Suggested Management of the Obese Gravida

Preconception
Calculate and record BMI and category
Review history and comorbidities
Counseling of pregnancy complications (show, review, and give a copy of Table 3.2)
Counseling of medical long-term complications (show, review, and give a copy of Table 3.3)
Glucose screen with 2-hour glucose tolerance test or hemoglobin A1c
Consider lipid screening
Counsel and plan regarding weight loss and exercise before considering pregnancy—behavior modification
Nutrition counseling
Exercise counseling
Document blood pressure
Baseline 24-hour urine for proteinuria; LFTs, platelets
Evaluation for possible long-term complications
(epecially if BMI >35)
  Echocardiogram
  EKG
  Sleep apnea evaluation
Consider referral to bariatric surgery program

Pregnancy
First trimester
  All recommendations as Preconception except weight loss
  Confirm pregnancy with first-trimester ultrasound for dating
  Nuchal translucency and serum screening for chromosomal abnormalities
  Early 1-hour glucose screen
  Review weight gain goals (Table 3.7) and address throughout prenatal care
Second/third trimester
  Counsel regarding limitations of fetal ultrasound
  Fetal echocardiogram, if pregestational diabetes or BMI >35
  Consider fetal growth ultrasound in third trimester (e.g., 32 weeks)
  Repeat as needed if suspected macrosomia
  Repeat 1-hour glucose screen if negative in first trimester
  Begin antepartum testing ≥32 weeks
  Anesthesia consult in third trimester

Intrapartum
Secure early venous access
Ultrasound to confirm fetal presentation
Early placement of regional anesthesia with extra-long spinal/epidural needles and fiberoptic bronchoscope
Cross for appropriate blood products
Consider AROM and IUPC to assess contractions
Early application of FSE if unable to evaluate FHT externally
Large blood pressure cuff
Large speculums
OR tables that accommodate ≥160 kg (standard OR tables support 130–160 kg)
Lithotomy stirrups with capacity of 230 kg (i.e., Yellofins® Stirrups and Yellofins Elite®, respectively, Allen Medical Systems, Acton, MA, USA)
Large instrument tray
Closure of subcutaneous fat ≥2 cm with sutures during cesarean
Closure of subcuticular layer with stitches
Appropriately sized graduated compression stockings
Extra staffing to assist with patient transfer
Labor beds and stretchers rated for morbidly obese patients
Bariatric wheelchairs

Postpartum
Incentive spirometry
Graduated compression stockings and prophylactic heparin until ambulation
Early mobilization and hydration
Compression boots and/or prophylactic heparin during prolonged bed rest
75-mg, 2-hour glucose challenge test >6 weeks postpartum
Referral to nutritional and behavioral counselors for weight loss
Contraceptive counseling
Encourage breast-feeding
Establish a plan for postpartum weight loss

Note: Routine screening offered to all pregnant women (e.g., sequential screening) not included.
Abbreviations: AROM, artificial rupture of membranes; BMI, body mass index; DM, diabetes mellitus; FHT, fetal heart tracing; FSE, fetal scalp electrode; IUPC, intrauterine pressure catheter; LFT, liver function test.
Prepregnancy Weight Reduction

Diet
Use of a low-calorie diet that creates a deficit of 500 to 1000 kcal/day will cause a weight loss of 1 to 2 lb/week and a 10% weight loss over six months [108]. There is good evidence that such a weight loss can be sustained over long periods of time, at least one year. This level of weight loss will improve the BP, lipid profile, and blood glucose levels. Patients can be referred to a nutritionist or can visit websites such as http://www.my pyramid.gov.

Physical Activity
Exercise contributes only modestly to weight loss, but it may decrease visceral fat; it increases cardiorespiratory fitness and helps with all weight loss maintenance programs. Moderate exercise for 30 to 45 minutes for at least three to five days initially and followed by accumulation of at least 30 minutes daily on most days should be an integral part of weight loss and weight maintenance [108].

Behavior Therapy
Specific strategies include self-monitoring of eating habits and physical activity, stress management, stimulus control, problem solving, contingency management, cognitive restructuring, and social support [108].

Pharmacotherapy
Weight loss drugs should only be used when concomitant lifestyle modifications have not obtained sufficient results. Orlistat (Xenical) and Chitosin are two drugs currently marketed for weight loss with questionable efficacy [113–115]. Indications for use are BMI >30 kg/m² or BMI >27 kg/m² with comorbidities despite maximal efforts at diet, exercise, and behavior therapy. Weight loss produced by antiobesity drugs has not been shown to be any better than weight loss through lifestyle modification in reducing related comorbidities. However, weight loss pharmacotherapy is contraindicated in pregnancy.

Bariatric Surgery
Women with BMI >40 kg/m² or BMI >35 kg/m² with comorbidities are candidates for bariatric surgery when diet, physical activity, and behavior modification (and possible drug therapy) have failed (Table 3.6). The weight loss following surgery is in the range of 10 to 105 kg and is sustained for as long as eight years. Approximately 80% of bariatric surgery recipients are of reproductive age [116].

Bariatric surgery procedures are generally categorized into three groups: 1) restrictive procedures, 2) malabsorptive procedures, and 3) restrictive and malabsorptive procedures. Restrictive procedures (e.g., laparoscopic adjustable gastric banding [LAGB], sleeve gastrectomy) reduce gastric capacity, which consequently restricts energy intake [117–119]. Malabsorptive procedures (e.g., biliopancreatic diversion, jejunoileal bypass) cause weight loss by restricting absorption of nutrients; however, these procedures are rarely performed as they have been associated with long-term complications such as hepatic failure [120,121]. Last, malabsorptive and restrictive procedures (e.g., Roux-en-Y gastric bypass) reduce stomach capacity causing malabsorption and a restriction of food intake. Intragastric balloon appears to have little benefit in weight loss therapy over diet, behavior modification, and pharmacotherapy [122]. Adjustable gastric band management during pregnancy is not well defined, but almost 20% may need adjustment or removal of band for nausea and vomiting [123].

A weight maintenance program consisting of diet, physical activity, and behavior therapy should be a priority after the initial 6 to 12 months of weight loss therapy. Lifelong medical surveillance after surgical therapy is a necessity. Almost 20% of patients who undergo bariatric surgery experience some complication although they are usually minor, and the postoperative mortality is <1%. There is a 5% failure rate from use of OCP following bariatric surgery [124]. After the surgical procedure, there is typically a rapid weight loss in the first 6–18 months [125]. Thus, pregnancy during this period may be complicated by nutritional deficiencies that could be detrimental to the growing fetus [126–129]. Patients should be advised to delay pregnancy for at least 12 months [16,130]. There is little evidence to support the duration of delay for conception with regard to birth weight, cesarean delivery, or congenital malformation. Weight loss usually plateaus after 12 to 18 months.

Table 3.6 Special Considerations for Preconception and Prenatal Care after Bariatric Surgery

Preconception
- Fertility often resumes after bariatric surgery
- Bariatric surgery should not be considered a treatment for infertility
- Oral contraception is often ineffective because of potential malabsorption; consider injectable forms of hormonal contraception as needed. Use reliable contraception until period of maximal weight loss (at least 12 months) is over
- Consider waiting 12 months or more after bariatric surgery before conception
- Evaluate and treat comorbidities

Prenatal
- Monitor for nutritional deficiencies (especially after Roux-en-Y) such as
  - Vitamin B12 (if needed, 500–1000 µg daily)
  - Folate (up to 5 mg daily)
  - Iron (check ferritin; if needed, ferrous fumarate)
  - Vitamin D (if needed, do not exceed pregnancy RDA of 400 IU maximum)
  - Calcium (if needed, 1200 mg calcium citrate)
- Be aware that nausea, vomiting, abdominal pain, etc., may be signs of bariatric surgery complications, such as intestinal obstruction, GI hemorrhage, anastomotic leaks, hernias, band erosions and migrations, and even maternal death. Early consultation with bariatric surgeon is suggested.
- Avoid glucola screening given risk of dumping syndrome. Use fasting and 2-hour postprandial blood sugar monitoring as an alternative.
- If BMI is still 30 kg/m², risks remain as in Tables 3.2 and 3.3, and management in general as in Table 3.5.
- Bariatric surgery is not an indication for cesarean delivery.

Motivation [122]. Adjustable gastric band management during pregnancy is not well defined, but almost 20% may need adjustment or removal of band for nausea and vomiting [123].
Nutritional supplementation should be recommended because there is good evidence of increased incidences of maternal and neonatal deficiencies of vitamin B12, vitamin D, iron, and calcium in women post bariatric surgery [134] (Table 3.6). Preconception issues mentioned above should be reviewed, including an increased likelihood of small-for-gestational age newborns among bariatric surgery recipients (OR 2.16; 95% CI 1.28–3.66) [117,131,132] as well as possible increased risk of stillbirth or neonatal death [131] (Table 3.6). Patients with bariatric surgery should be started on vitamin B12, folate, iron, and calcium if deficient [130]. Vitamin D supplement 10 mg daily during pregnancy and breast-feeding can be recommended as per the Royal College of Obstetricians and Gynaecologists (RCOG) guidelines [135]. A bariatric surgeon should be involved during prenatal care should the gastric band need some adjustments. Seemingly insignificant or normal prenatal complaints warrant attention as patients who have had bariatric surgery are at risk for postoperative complications. During pregnancy, patients who present with signs and symptoms of intestinal obstruction, perforation, or hemorrhage should have a CT scan done to establish diagnosis because this can be associated with 20% maternal mortality.

Folic Acid Supplementation and Other Necessary Vitamins
Proper general preconception care should be provided (Chapter 1 of Obstetric Evidence Based Guidelines). Because almost 50% of pregnancies are unplanned, all patients capable of childbearing should be placed on folic acid 0.4 to 0.8 mg (400–800 μg) supplementation at least one month before conception and continue daily supplements through the first two to three months of pregnancy [136]. Folate levels have been noted to be low in the obese population [137]. Although obesity is considered a risk factor for a NTD, the folic acid supplementation in the United States has remained the same [136]. However, both the RCOG [135] and the Society of Obstetricians and Gynaecologists of Canada (SOGC) [27] have recommended a dose of 5 mg daily for the obese population (BMI >35 kg/m²) starting from one to three months preconception through the first trimester. The use of periconception multivitamins has not been associated with reduction of the increased risk of CHD in the overweight and obese population [13]. Drug history should be reviewed to identify any potential teratogens.

PRENATAL CARE
Preconception management, except for large weight loss, should be followed (Table 3.5) [112,138].

Ideal Weight Gain
There is lots of evidence to make recommendations regarding weight changes in the obese gravida. One should remember that the total weight of an average fetus, placenta, and amniotic fluid at term is about 4 to 5 kg. In the last 20 years, both the Institute of Medicine (IOM) and American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (ACOG) have suggested 5 to 9 kg (11–20 lb) as total weight gain in pregnancy for obese women [139]. This suggestion does not account for differences in class of obesity. Significant weight loss during pregnancy is not recommended by ACOG and IOM.

More recent data suggest that lower weight gain in the obese gravida is associated with maternal and fetal benefits [38,140–144]. For obese women, weight gain has no benefit. The lowest risks for mother and baby seem to occur with weight gain of 0 to 9 lb for class II obese women (or even some minimal weight loss), and weight loss of 0 to 9 lb for class III obese women [14,28,140,142,145]. On the basis of these data, new guidelines should be considered for obese women (Table 3.7).

Nutritional consult may be sought to prevent excessive gestational weight gain. Charts to outline the patient’s progress should be a permanent part of the prenatal record. Excessive weight retention self-perpetuates the obesity cycle for subsequent pregnancies [38]. Almost three fourths of all women will weigh more at a subsequent pregnancy [146]. Excessive gestational weight gain is associated with childhood obesity [147].

Diet
A balanced diet, rich in high fiber and complex carbohydrates with low glycemic intake, is suggested. Up to 5 mg of folic acid should be continued from the prepregnancy period until at least 10 weeks gestation [27,135]. Education about weight gain, healthy eating, and exercise decreases the percentage of women who exceed weight gain recommendations [148]. The evidence for antenatal dietary and lifestyle interventions in overweight and obese pregnant women to decrease complications is still insufficient to make recommendations [149].

Exercise
Physical activity during pregnancy is successful in restricting gestational weight gain [150]. Physical activity intervention assessed by pedometer is associated with lower gestational weight gain compared to controls [151]. Physical activity should be encouraged as per ACOG recommendations [152]. During pregnancy, women can be encouraged to maintain an active lifestyle as long as there are no risks to the pregnancy. Class III obesity is considered a relative contraindication to aerobic exercise during pregnancy [152].

Table 3.7 Weight Gain Suggestions for Overweight and Obese Women

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Prepregnancy Weight Category</th>
<th>Our Suggested Total Weight Gain Range (Lb)</th>
<th>IOM Recommendations (Lb)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Overweight (BMI 25–29.9 kg/m²)</td>
<td>6–20 (2.7–9.0 kg)</td>
<td>15–25 (6.8–11.4 kg)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Class I Obesity (BMI 30–34.9 kg/m²)</td>
<td>5–15 (2.3–6.8 kg)</td>
<td>11–20 (5–9.1 kg)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Class II Obesity (BMI 35–39.9 kg/m²)</td>
<td>–9 to 9 (–4.0 to 4.0 kg)</td>
<td>11–20 (5–9.1 kg)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Class III Obesity (BMI &gt;40 kg/m²)</td>
<td>–15 to 0 (–6.8 to 0 kg)</td>
<td>11–20 (5–9.1 kg)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

General Issues
Diabetic screening should be done at the first visit. If this is negative, it should be repeated at 24 to 28 weeks [153]. Baseline data to evaluate renal function and liver status, such as liver function tests (LFTs), 24-hour urine for protein and creatinine clearance can be obtained. Reassessment of risk and the need for EKG and echocardiogram can be made. Excess weight has an effect on biochemical serum aminolipid screening, so adjustment has to be made according to maternal weight to achieve similar detection rates as in other women.

Equipment in the office or clinic to accommodate the needs of this population, such as wide chairs, sit-on weighing scales, tables, and large BP cuffs, should be available. The professional team should undertake a discussion of pregnancy and maternal and fetal outcomes. Educational materials should be provided. Pharmacotherapy for obesity is contraindicated in pregnancy. Although the RCOG recommends more frequent prenatal visits every 3 weeks from 24 to 32 weeks and then every 2 weeks until delivery, there is insufficient level I data to make this an evidence-based recommendation [154].

Fetal Ultrasound
Gestational age should be established with early (e.g., first trimester is optimal) ultrasound (Chapter 4 of Obstetric Evidence Based Guidelines).

Data from the FaSTER trial found that the ability to obtain a nuchal translucency (NT) is significantly decreased with increasing BMI. In women with Class II obesity, the failure rate for NT is 7.8% compared to 1.0% in normal weight gravida [155]. Multiple techniques can be used by the ultrasonographer to improve visualization, including changing ultrasound probes to improve resolution and penetration, adjusting the tissue harmonics index and frequency, increasing the gain, elevating the patient’s pannus, placing the patient on their side, or scanning through the umbilicus [156].

A detailed fetal survey is recommended between 20 and 24 weeks to rule out any fetal anomalies. Ultrasound detection of fetal abnormalities is limited in obese women because of the increased depth of abdominal adipose tissue and increased angle of insonation [157–159]. This leads to lower prenatal detection of fetal anomalies via ultrasonography (aOR 0.77; 95% CI 0.60–0.99) [33,160]. For normal BMI; overweight; and class I, II, and III obesity, detection with standard ultrasonography was 66%, 49%, 48%, 42%, and 25%, respectively, and with targeted ultrasonography 97%, 91%, 75%, 88%, and 75%, respectively [26]. Obese gravida should also be counseled that the ultrasound duration will be longer with a high likelihood of having to return for repeat ultrasounds [155]. Women with a BMI >35 kg/m² should undergo a screening fetal echo between 20 and 24 weeks.

Because obese gravidas are at an increased risk for LGA infants, and fetal growth is difficult to assess clinically, ultrasounds are recommended every 4 weeks from 28 to 36 weeks to assess fetal growth and amniotic fluid [161].

Antepartum Fetal Testing
There is insufficient evidence that fetal heart rate testing would benefit the perinatal outcomes in the obese population; however, because the risk of fetal demise is high, antepartum testing may be considered. Fetal kick counts are also encouraged.

INTRAPARTUM CARE
A multidisciplinary approach to the intrapartum management of an obese gravida should be undertaken. The RCOG recommends that women with a prepregnancy BMI of ≥30 kg/m² have an informed and clearly documented discussion about the possible complications that can occur as a result of obesity [162]. The hospital facility should be notified so that appropriate equipment, pneumatic compression devices, beds, transfer equipment, hoists, wide corridors, and stretchers are available. Early venous access is suggested. The obese gravida is at an increased risk for induction of labor (26.2% in normal weight and 34.4% in obese women), failed induction (13% in normal weight vs. 29% in obese women), prolonged first stage of labor (up to 5 hour difference while second stage length is not dependent on BMI), greater oxytocin requirements, operative vaginal deliveries, failed anesthesia, and postpartum hemorrhage (two- to threefold increase) [67,163–171]. There may be limitations to monitoring uterine contractions and fetal heart rate in labor. Invasive toco-monitoring may become necessary if there are no other contraindications. Active management of the third stage would help reduce the incidence of postpartum hemorrhage.

For the neonate, there is an increased risk of shoulder dystocia (two- to threefold increase), malpresentation, lower Apgar scores, and greater risk of NICU admission [27,172].

Vaginal birth after cesarean (VBAC) section rates are also lower in obese women with a failure rate of 45% compared to 30% in nonobese gravida with a greater risk of uterine rupture [30,173]. A planned cesarean section in the morbidly obese does not decrease maternal or neonatal morbidity and is not recommended [174]. A scheduled cesarean at 39 weeks, however, should be planned if the estimated fetal weight is >4500 g in a diabetic patient and >5000 g in a nonobese diabetic patient [16].

ANESTHESIA
If an anesthesia consult was not obtained antepartum, then it should be obtained early in labor. Regional anesthesia is the anesthetic of choice. A combined spinal epidural is preferred. Distorted anatomic landmarks, difficult maternal positioning, and excessive layers of adipose tissue make regional anesthesia more challenging. Obesity is associated with increased regional anesthesia failure rates, higher incidences of dural puncture, and greater need for general anesthesia [175]. More attempts at placement of epidural or spinal anesthesia have to be made in the obese population as compared to the nonobese. The initial failure rate of epidural catheter placement can be as high as 42% in the morbidly obese. Obese women can be a challenge because of related OSA and asthma. Positioning and placement of the panniculus can impair respiratory function [45]. In a morbidly obese patient (BMI >40 kg/m²) undergoing a planned cesarean delivery, the overall conductive anesthesia complication rate is about 8%. General anesthesia in the obese pregnant woman also poses its own challenges including difficult endotracheal intubation due to excessive tissue and difficult intraoperative respiratory events from failed or difficult intubation [176]. General anesthesia is used more frequently in morbidity obese patients and intraoperative hypotension can be a problem [46]. Of about 1% maternal deaths that were
anesthesia related, 75% were noted to be obese [47]. The incidence of partially obliterated oropharyngeal anatomy among obese parturients is double that among nonobese parturients. This leads to an increased risk of difficult intubations, gastric aspiration, and difficulty in maintaining adequate mask ventilation [45]. Mask ventilation tends to be difficult because of low chest wall compliance and increased intra-abdominal pressure. The anesthesiologist should have long epidural needles and equipment such as a laryngeal mask ventilation or ultrasound available for these challenging cases [16,177].

Cesarean Delivery
Obesity is a risk factor for complications from cesarean section. As BMI increases, the time from incision to delivery and total operative time (43 vs. 48 and 55 minutes in normal weight, obese, and morbidly obese, respectively, p < 0.001) also increases. Increased operative time leads to worse outcomes [66,178]. Wound complications (separation and infection) are as high as 30% in obese women compared to a 3%–17% overall population risk with the vast majority occurring 8–10 days post cesarean section [179]. Tissue oxygenation is poor in the obese population. Increased oxygen supplementation perioperatively may enhance wound healing, as per non-pregnancy data, but there is insufficient evidence to recommend it in the obese obstetric population [180–183]. (See also Chapter 13 in Obstetric Evidence Based Guidelines.)

Surgical techniques that have been proven to reduce wound infection and separation include closure of the subcutaneous layer with suture if the depth is >2 cm and subcuticular closure with suture over staples [184–186]. A more controversial recommendation includes placement of the skin incision either vertically or transverse although the literature states that a transverse skin incision is likely preferred and associated with less morbidity [179,187–190]. This decision should be individualized as this may differ depending on the category and type (e.g., central) of obesity. Placing the incision above the panniculus, which at times means above the umbilicus, may be necessary in the woman with extreme obesity [185].

Prophylactic antibiotics should be administered (e.g., with cefazolin 2 g IV) at least 30 minutes prior to the skin incision. Some studies suggest that 4 g of IV cefazolin leads to higher tissue concentrations than 2 g, which may result in decreased surgical site infections and endometritis [191–193]. A recently published double-blind RCT demonstrated that although 3 g of cefazolin administered preoperatively results in significantly higher adipose tissue concentrations at the time of hysterotomy and fascial closure and greater umbilical cord blood concentrations compared to 2 g, both doses achieved sufficient adipose tissue concentrations to provide prophylaxis against Gram-positive and Gram-negative bacteria [194]. Other recent studies have produced conflicting data in regards to reaching adequate adipose tissue concentrations with higher doses of prophylactic cefazolin (2 g vs. 3 g) in obese women [195,196]. Further studies are needed to evaluate alterations in maternal dosing before changing the currently recommended dose of 2 g.

POSTPARTUM Venous Thromboembolism
Obese women have an up to fourfold increased risk of venous thromboembolism compared to normal-weight women [197]. Because of this increased risk, ACOG recommends early mobilization and placement of pneumatic compression devices before surgery in all cases of anticipated prolonged labor and then continued until ambulation is established postpartum [16,198,199]. More recently, non-RCT evidence supports the use of pharmacologic thromboprophylaxis for seven days postpartum in obese women with additional risk factors for thromboembolism (age>35, weight>80 kg, ≥para 4, preeclampsia, immobility>4 days prior to surgery, major illness, emergency cesarean section, current infection, antiphospholipid syndrome, prior thromboembolic event, or family history of thromboembolism) or in all women who are morbidly obese (BMI >40 kg/m²) [200–202]. One study suggests that weight-based dosing of low-dose heparin, e.g., enoxaparin (0.5 mg/kg SQ every 12 hours) to be better than traditional prophylactic dosing (40 mg SQ daily); however, this has not been sufficiently studied [203]. Women who meet criteria for pharmacologic prophylaxis should at the very least be started on enoxaparin (lovenox) 40 mg SQ daily for 1 week postpartum although weight-based dosing is also acceptable.

Other Complications
In the postpartum period, obese women are also at a greater risk of requiring longer hospital stays, resulting in increased medical costs, maternal ICU admissions (OR 3.50; 95% CI 2.72–4.51), wound infections (OR 3.4; 95% CI 1.4–1.8), postpartum endometritis, emergency department visits (aOR 2.2; 95% CI 1.03–4.9), and maternal death (OR 2.9; 95% CI 1.1–8.1) [15,66,166,177,204]. Specifically, one study found that for every 9091 obese pregnant patients, one patient will experience death at delivery hospitalization. About 24% of deaths in adult women aged 25 to 64 years are due to obesity [205]. Because of these increased postpartum risks, special care should be given to the postpartum obese patient by experienced physicians and nursing staff.

Psychological Implications: Compared to normal-weight women, obese gravida are at an increased risk of depression during pregnancy and postpartum (OR 1.43; 95% CI 1.27–1.61 and OR 1.30; 95% CI 1.20–1.42, respectively). They are also at an increased risk for anxiety (OR 1.68; 95% CI 1.34–2.12) [206]. Eating disorders and arthritic pain together with psychosocial factors (e.g., social stigmatization) could account for this increase [23]. The patient should be provided with resources for counseling and social work prior to discharge home with consideration to have them return sooner than the routine six-week postpartum visit.

Breast-Feeding
Women should be strongly encouraged and helped to return to a normal BMI through counseling, diet, exercise, and breast-feeding. Breast-feeding is encouraged because it benefits both the mother and infant. In particular, it helps accelerate the return to prepregnancy weight and decreases the risk of chronic diseases such as type 2 diabetes and breast and ovarian cancer. For the infant, breast-feeding reduces the risk of obesity [207,208]. Obese women are less likely to initiate breast-feeding or exclusively breast-feed compared to normal-weight women. In order to increase the rates of breast-feeding, obese women would benefit from consultation with a lactation specialist [209].
CONTRACEPTION
The contraceptive intrauterine device (IUD), implant, ring, depot medroxyprogesterone acetate injectable contraception, and the progestin-only contraceptive pill appear to be as effective in obese and nonobese women and should be encouraged for postpartum use. Some studies indicate that oral hormonal contraception may not be as effective as in the nonobese [49,210]. Oral contraceptives may also not be as effective in women who undergo bariatric surgery because of the malabsorptive effects. Pregnancy rates are high after weight loss surgery; therefore, effective contraception should be discussed prior to the procedure [211]. Additionally, body weight >90 kg is a risk factor for failure of the contraceptive patch and should thus not be offered [212].

LONG-TERM MATERNAL AND OFFSPRING RISKS
Obesity during pregnancy is an independent risk factor for long-term cardiovascular morbidity (aHR 2.6; 95% CI 2.0–3.4), specifically ischemic stroke (aHR 2.63; 95% CI 1.41–1.91) and myocardial infarction (aHR 1.89; 95% CI 1.25–2.84). So too, there is a greater risk of all-cause mortality in obese women (HR 1.35; 95% CI 1.02–1.77) compared to women of normal pregnancy BMI [213–216].

Offspring of obese mothers are at increased risk for significant health conditions later in life as a result of in utero programming, which may work through environmental, genetic, and epigenetic mechanisms. The biggest risks include obesity, lower childhood cognitive scores, autism (OR 1.58; 95% CI 1.26–1.98), type 2 diabetes mellitus, cancer, and cardiovascular disease [217–221]. The key is to identify and intervene early and to potentially reverse the known future adverse consequences associated with maternal obesity.

FUTURE
Future research should assess the degree of intensiveness and contact with a health care provider during management with diet and exercise, drug therapy to target different biological pathways to obesity, the mechanisms of fetal macrosomia, fetal demise secondary to obesity, and childhood obesity, among many others. Controlling maternal prepregnancy obesity and excessive gestational weight retention will help control the obesity epidemic. Food industry companies, insurance companies, public education, school education, tax breaks, premium breaks, fitness programs, and many others should work together to end this vicious cycle, leading to now earlier mortality than previous generations because of obesity.

REFERENCES


44

MATERNAL-FETAL EVIDENCE BASED GUIDELINES


51. Athukorala C, Rumbold A, Wilson K et al. The risk of adverse pregnancy outcomes in women who are overweight or obese. BMC Pregnancy and Childbirth 2010; 10–56. [I: Australian Collaborative Trial of Supplements, secondary analysis n = 1661; BMI ≥25 kg/m², n = 446; BMI ≥30 kg/m², n = 272]


53. Hyperglycaemia and Adverse Pregnancy Outcome (HAPO) study: Associations with maternal body mass index. BJOG 2010; 117(5): 573e84. [II-2: Observational cohort study, 15 centers, 9 countries, n = 23,316]


56. Knight M. Antenatal pulmonary embolism: Risk factors, management and outcomes. BJOG 2008; 115(4): 453e61. [II-2: Case-control study, UK Obstetric Surveillance System, n = 143 cases of pulmonary embolism matched with 259 controls, BMI >30 kg/m²]


59. Catalano PM, McIntyre HD, Cruickshank JK et al. The hyperglycaemia and adverse pregnancy outcome study: Associations of GDM and obesity with pregnancy outcomes. Catalano PM, McIntyre HD, Cruickshank JK et al. The hyperglycaemia and adverse pregnancy outcome study: Associations of GDM and obesity with pregnancy outcomes. JAMA 2014; 311(15): 1536e46. [II-3: Meta-analysis: 38 studies, n = 10,147 fetal deaths, n = 16,274 stillbirths, n = 4311 perinatal deaths, n = 11,294 neonatal deaths, and n = 4983 infant deaths were included]


75. Willer CJ, Speliotes EK, Loos RJ, for the Genetic Investigation of Anthropometric Traits Consortium et al. Six new loci associated with body mass index highlight a neuronal influence on body weight regulation. Nat Genet 2009; 41: 25–34. [II-3: Meta-analysis: 15 genome-wide association studies for BMI (n > 32,000) and followed up top signals in 14 additional cohorts (n > 59,000)]


101. Yiron D, Lowenstein L. Pre-eclampsia is associated with sleep-disordered breathing and endothelial dysfunction. Eur Respir J 2006; 27(20): 328–33. [II-2: Case-control study, single center, n = 17 women with preeclampsia]


106. Gaudet L, Ferraro ZM, Wen SW, Walker M. Maternal obesity and occurrence of fetal macrosomia: A systematic review and meta-analysis. BioMed Research International [II-3: Meta-analysis: 30 studies, multicentric, multicountry review, n = 162,183 obese patients versus normal or underweight control group n = 1,072,397]


111. Vural F, Vural B, Çakıröğlu Y. The role of overweight and obesity in in vitro fertilization outcomes of poor ovarian responders. BioMed Research International 2013; 2013: 781543. doi:10.1155/2013/781543. [II-2: Retrospective cohort study; Single center design, normal weight (18.5–24.9 kg/m², n = 96); Group 2 was overweight (25.0–29.9 kg/m², n = 52); and Group 3 was obese (≥30.0 kg/m², n = 40)]


132. Adams T, Hammoud A, Davidson L et al. Maternal and neonatal outcomes for pregnancies before and after gastric bypass surgery. Int J Obes (Lond) 2015; 39(4): 686–94. [II-2: Retrospective matched-control cohort study, RYGB (group 1; n = 295 matches) and women with pregnancies after RYGB (group 2; n = 764 matches)]


143. Nohr EA, Vaeth M, Baker JL et al. Pregnancy outcomes related to gestational weight gain in women defined by their body mass index, parity, height, and smoking status. Am J Clin Nutr 2009; 90: 1288–94. [II-2: Danish population based observational study, n = 59,147]


145. Kominarek MA, Seligman NS, Dolin C et al. Gestational weight gain and obesity: Is 20 pounds too much? Obest Gynecol 2013; 209: e1–11. [II-1: Prospective cohort study, high weight gain was associated with increased large for gestational age infants (class I OR, 2.4; 95% CI, 1.9–2.9; class II OR, 1.7; 95% CI, 1.3–2.1; class III OR, 1.6; 95% CI, 1.3–2.1) n = 20,950]


169. Vinayagam D, Chandrarahen E. Clinical study: The adverse impact of maternal obesity on intrapartum and perinatal outcomes. International Scholarly Research Network. Obstet Gynecol 2012. Article ID 939762. [II-2: Retrospective case-control analysis, the study group (BMI >40 kg/m²) n = 100 women and a control group (BMI 20–25 kg/m²) n = 100]


204. Campbell KH, Savitz D, Werner EF, Pettker CM et al. Maternal morbidity and risk of death at delivery hospitalization. *Obstet Gynecol* 2013; 122(3): 627–33. [II-2: Retrospective cohort, Birth certificate data and statewide planning and research cooperative system database, n = 1,084,862 live singleton births and n = 132 maternal deaths]


Pregestational diabetes
A. Dhanya Mackeen and Michael J. Paglia

KEY POINTS
- Poorly controlled diabetes in pregnancy is associated with increased risks of first-trimester miscarriage, congenital malformations (especially cardiac defects and CNS anomalies), fetal death, preterm birth, preeclampsia, ketoacidosis, polyhydramnios, macrosomia, operative (both vaginal and cesarean) delivery, birth injury (including brachial plexus), delayed lung maturity, respiratory distress syndrome, jaundice, hypoglycemia, hypocalcemia, and perinatal mortality as well as long-term consequences for the children, such as obesity, type II diabetes, and lower IQ.
- Preconception counseling should include weight loss, exercise, appropriate diet, and optimization of blood sugar control. Normalization of glucose levels (hemoglobin A1c <6%) prevents most, if not all, of the complications of diabetes in pregnancy.
- In pregestational diabetics, fasting glucose ≤95 mg/dL and two-hour postprandial ≤120 mg/dL (or one-hour postprandial ≤140 mg/dL) should be achieved and maintained at all times with diet, exercise, and insulin therapy as necessary.
- There is insufficient evidence to assess the efficacy of oral hypoglycemic agents in pregestational diabetes.
- Diabetic ketoacidosis is treated with aggressive hydration and intravenous insulin.
- In pregestational diabetics with good glycemic control, timing of delivery should occur between 39 0/7–39 6/7 weeks; cesarean delivery should be offered if estimated fetal weight is ≥4500 g.

Diagnosis/Definition
Diabetes mellitus (DM) is defined as a metabolic abnormality characterized by elevated circulating glucose. The diagnoses of diabetes and impaired glucose tolerance outside of pregnancy are established on the basis of formal laboratory criteria (Table 4.1) [1–4]. As different countries use either mmol/L or mg/dL for glucose values, a comparison is provided (Table 4.2).

Symptoms
Often asymptomatic, but classic symptoms of uncontrolled diabetes are polydipsia, polyuria, and polyphagia.

Epidemiology/Incidence
Though the prevalence of pregestational DM continues to increase in many high-income countries, specific incidence is difficult to calculate due to the inconsistent inclusion of gestational diabetes. Diabetes was noted to complicate 6% of all pregnancies in the United States in 2013 although the majority of these are likely gestational [5,6].

Basic Pathophysiology
The etiology of the disease varies and includes a primary insulin production defect, insulin receptor abnormalities, end-organ insulin resistance, and diabetes secondary to another disease process, such as cystic fibrosis [3]. Type I diabetics are insulin deficient secondary to the autoimmune destruction of the pancreatic islet beta cells [3]. These individuals develop disease early in life, require insulin replacement, and become acutely symptomatic with ketoacidosis if no therapy is initiated. In contrast type II diabetics continue to produce insulin, but do so at diminished levels. They are often hyperinsulinemic, at least in the early stages; relative hypo-insulinemia may (or may not) develop later [3]. Insulin resistance is the cardinal feature of type II diabetics and many exhibit insulin resistance at the level of the end-organ receptor. The onset of disease is usually later in life, the course is gradual but progressive, and the disease is linked to obesity [3]. The onset of disease is rapidly changing: type II diabetes is now being seen at earlier ages, including childhood and adolescence. Both groups can be further subclassified on the basis of the presence of vascular complications, such as hypertension, renal disease, and retinopathy. The same physiologic changes of pregnancy that cause gestational diabetes (see Chapter 5) also complicate the achievement of optimal glucose control in the pregestational diabetic. In a meta-analysis, women with type II diabetes had a 1.5 times increased risk of perinatal mortality, decreased risk of diabetic ketoacidosis, and decreased cesarean delivery rate as compared to those with type I diabetes; however, there were no significant differences between the two groups in the frequency of major congenital malformation, stillbirth, or neonatal mortality [7].

Classification
To facilitate the management of these patients, the classification of diabetes has undergone recent revisions to reflect the physiology and implications of the disease process. Classification as type I and type II diabetes (as defined above) is still commonly used, especially in nonpregnant patients. Presence of vascular disease, defined as chronic hypertension (HTN), renal insufficiency, retinopathy, coronary artery disease, or prior cerebrovascular accident, is a better predictor of adverse pregnancy outcome than is White's classification [8,9]. Therefore, the White's classification is no longer recommended for management.

Risk Factors/Associations
Obesity, hypertension, advanced maternal age, non-white race, family history (type II diabetes), metabolic syndrome, among others.
Complications
Incidence of complications is **inversely proportional to glucose control** with minimal complications if glucose control is optimal [10]. Pedersen first proposed that the exaggerated fetal response to insulin is provoked by fetal hyperglycemia that results from maternal hyperglycemia [11]. Poorly controlled DM is associated with increased risks of the following: first-trimester miscarriage; congenital malformations [12] (most common malformations are cardiac defects and CNS anomalies, especially neural tube defects [13]; most pathognomonic are sacral agenesis/caudal regression; intrauterine fetal demise; preterm birth (both iatrogenic and spontaneous); preeclampsia; ketoacidosis; polyhydramnios; macrosomia (increased fetal insulin acts as growth factor; the degree of macrosomia is correlated with fasting and postprandial blood glucose values outside of the suggested parameters); operative delivery (both vaginal and cesarean) and birth jaundice (because of polycythemia, hypoglycemia, hypocalcemia and polyglobulia in the neonate, all related to elevated glucose levels and consequent hyperinsulinemia antenatally; and perinatal mortality [14,15]. Long-term follow-up has shown higher rates of obesity, type II DM, and lower IQ in children of mothers with poorly controlled DM in pregnancy [14–18].

**Pregnancy Considerations**
It is always important to consider the effect of maternal disease on pregnancy and, conversely, the effect of pregnancy on maternal end organs (Table 4.3), especially because pregestational diabetes affects the micro- and macrovascular systems.

**Diabetic retinopathy** is the leading cause of blindness in reproductive years. Background retinopathy is characterized by retinal microaneurysms and dot-blot hemorrhages and proliferative retinopathy by neovascularization. Proliferative diabetic retinopathy may progress as tightened glycemic control is achieved [19]. However, clinicians should not be deterred from achieving optimal glucose control as the risk of subsequent progression of retinopathy is overall decreased as compared to patients not managed with intensive therapy [19]. Diabetic **nephropathy** occurs in 5% to 10% of pregestational diabetics and can progress to end-stage renal disease, especially in women with creatinine of ≥1.4 mg/dL or 24-hour proteinuria of ≥3 g (see Chapter 17). Proteinuria increases in diabetic patients as they approach term, particularly in those who have baseline nephropathy. Women with baseline nephropathy are at increased risk of iatrogenic preterm birth and uteroplacental insufficiency. Progression of renal insufficiency is not clearly linked to the physiologically increased glomerular filtration rate of pregnancy although those with nephrotic range proteinuria and moderate-to-severe renal insufficiency may progress to end-stage renal disease [20,21]. Diabetic **neuropathy** is not worsened, per se, in pregnancy although decreased gastrointestinal motility related to progesterone and mechanical factors may exacerbate underlying gastroparesis [21]. The presence of **hypertension** (in 5%–10% of women with pregestational DM) further increases the risks of preeclampsia, fetal growth restriction, and fetal death [20]. Progression of **cardiovascular disease** in the diabetic pregnant patient has not been reported, but symptomatic coronary artery disease is a contraindication to pregnancy in these diabetic women [21].

---

**Table 4.1** Criteria for the Diagnosis of Diabetes Mellitus in the Nonpregnant State

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Normal Values</th>
<th>Impaired Fasting Glucose or Impaired Glucose Tolerance</th>
<th>Diabetic Mellitus</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>FPG: &lt;100 mg/dL</td>
<td>FPG: 100–125 mg/dL</td>
<td>FPG: ≥126 mg/dL (7.0 mmol/L)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>75 g, 2-hour OGGTT: 2-hour PG</td>
<td>75 g, 2-hour OGGTT: 2-hour PG</td>
<td>75 g, 2-hour OGGTT: 2-hour PG</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;140 mg/dL</td>
<td>140–199 mg/dL</td>
<td>≥200 mg/dL (11.1 mmol/L)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hemoglobin A1c 5.7%–6.4%</td>
<td>Symptoms of hyperglycemia and PG</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Table 4.2** Glucose Equivalents

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>mmol/L</th>
<th>mg/dL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>5.9</td>
<td>105</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.7</td>
<td>120</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.8</td>
<td>140</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.0</td>
<td>144</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.0</td>
<td>198</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Table 4.3** Diabetes Workup in Pregnancy

**Workup**
- Careful history (review of glucose control and therapy; history of end-organ disease)
- Laboratory tests (preconception or first trimester if feasible):
  - Hemoglobin A1c
  - Metabolic profile (glucose, creatinine)
  - Urine culture: repeat each trimester
  - 24-hour urine collection for protein and creatinine clearance
- TSH for type I diabetics
- Consider EKG, especially if concomitant hypertension
- Consider ophthalmologic consult to assess for any retinopathy, especially if long-standing or poorly controlled diabetes mellitus

**Abbreviation:** EKG, electrocardiogram.
Management (Table 4.4)

**Principles**
Strict glycemic control, aiming for HgbA1c of <7%.

**Workup**
See Table 4.3.

### Table 4.4 Management of the Pregestational Diabetic

#### Preconception counseling
- Weight loss
- Exercise
- Glucose testing
- Treatment of hyperglycemia as appropriate
- Strict glucose control

#### Preconception evaluation (Table 4.5)
- Normalization of the hemoglobin A1c to within 1% of normal (<7%)
- Evaluate the presence of vascular disease
- Ophthalmologic exam with retinal evaluation
- 24-hour urine for protein and creatinine clearance
- EKG
- Nutritional counseling (Table 4.7)
- 30–35 kcal/kg/day if normal weight
- Institute glucose testing to include fasting and postprandial values (Table 4.8)
- Incorporate exercise regimen
- Start or refine insulin regimen (Figures 5.1 and 5.2)

#### Antepartum management
- Insulin therapy adjusted by weight and pregnancy trimester as guided by glucose monitoring (Tables 4.8 and 5.4; Figures 5.1 and 5.2)
- Viability/dating scan
- Fetal surveillance and antepartum testing (Table 4.11)
  - Alpha-fetoprotein screening at 16–20 weeks
  - Detailed anatomic survey at 18–20 weeks
  - Fetal echocardiogram (at 14–16 weeks especially if hemoglobin A1c >8%) and at 20–22 weeks
  - Serial ultrasounds for growth in the second and third trimester
  - Antenatal assessments with NST or BPP weekly or twice weekly from 32 to 35 6/7 weeks, then twice weekly until delivery
  - Start at 28 weeks if diabetes is poorly controlled

#### Intrapartum management (Figure 4.1)
- Trial of labor unless clinical or ultrasound estimated fetal weight greater than 4500 g
- Delivery at: 39 0/7–39 6/7 weeks if pregestational diabetes is well controlled; 37 0/7–39 6/7 weeks if pregestational diabetes is complicated by vascular disease; 34 0/7–39 6/7 weeks (individualized to situation) if diabetes is poorly controlled [22]
- IV insulin therapy to maintain blood sugar between 70 and 110 mg/dL
- IV dextrose solution if blood sugars fall <70 mg/dL or with development of ketonuria
- For scheduled cesarean section, administer the dose of long-acting insulin in p.m. and withhold the a.m. short-acting dose
- Monitor blood glucose hourly

#### Postpartum management
- Reduce the antepartum insulin dose by half and administer it with the resumption of oral intake
- Supplement breast-feeding mothers with extra 500 kcal compared to nonpregnant levels

**Abbreviations:** BPP, biophysical profile; EKG, electrocardiogram; IV, intravenous; NST, nonstress test.

---

### Table 4.5 The Objectives of Diabetes Prepregnancy Care

- Patient education
- Assessment of patient's medical condition
- Optimize glycemic control (hemoglobin A1c <6% prior to conception)
- Folic acid supplementation (at least 400 μg) for at least one month prior to conception

### Table 4.6 Risk of Congenital Malformations Based on Hemoglobin A1c

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>HbA1c (%)</th>
<th>Risk</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>&lt;7</td>
<td>No increased risk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7–10</td>
<td>3%–7%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10–11</td>
<td>8%–10%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>≥11</td>
<td>10%–20% or more</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


---

Prevention
Weight loss, exercise, and optimization of blood sugar control can prevent most, if not all, of the complications of DM in pregnancy.

### Preconception Counseling

The care of the pregestational diabetic is best instituted in the preconception period. The objectives of prepregnancy care are shown in Table 4.5. The frequency of maternal hospitalizations, length of NICU admission, congenital malformations, and perinatal mortality are reduced in women with DM who seek consultation in preparation for pregnancy; unfortunately, only about one third of these women receive such consultation [23].

The evaluation should emphasize the importance of tight glycemic control with normalization of the hemoglobin A1c (aim for at least <7%) (Tables 4.4, 4.5, and 4.6) [8,24,25]. Decreased spontaneous miscarriage, congenital anomalies, and other complications have been demonstrated in multiple studies, including RCTs, when optimal glucose control is attained via multiple daily insulin doses adjusted to glucose monitoring ≥4 times per day [26,27]. Optimal glucose control also prevents future obesity, DM, and its complications in the offspring. In addition to advocating the use of at least 400 micrograms of folic acid for at least one month prior to conception, this consultation affords the opportunity to screen for end-organ damage (Table 4.3). Ophthalmologic evaluation, EKG, and renal evaluation via a 24-hour urine collection for total protein and creatinine clearance will ascertain end-organ damage and determine ancillary pregnancy risks. As 40% of young women with type I diabetes have hypothyroidism, thyroid-stimulating hormone (TSH) should be checked. Proliferative retinopathy should be treated with laser before pregnancy. Women compliant with insulin pumps may continue this regimen. Sexually active diabetic adolescents benefit from preconception counseling [28,29].

### Prenatal Care

Optimizing health outcomes can be achieved by a combination of diet, exercise, glucose monitoring, and insulin therapy. Women with type I DM and glucose levels of >200 mg/dL...
should check their urine ketones and immediately alert their health care provider if positive [8]. A glass of milk is preferable to juice for hypoglycemia. Glucagon should be immediately available.

Diet
Nutritional requirements are adjusted on the basis of maternal body mass index (BMI); women with normal BMI require 30 to 35 kcal/kg/day (Table 4.7) [8]. Individuals <90% of their ideal body weight (IBW) may increase this by an additional 5 kcal/kg/day, and those >120% of their IBW should decrease this value to 24 kcal/kg/day [8]. The content should be distributed as 45% complex, high-fiber carbohydrates, 20% protein, and 35% primarily unsaturated fats (Table 4.7) [8,23]. The calories are distributed over three meals and three snacks with breakfast receiving the smallest allotment at 15%, and the other two meals receiving near equal distribution. Saccharin, aspartame, acesulfame-K, maltodextrin, and sucralose may be used safely in moderate amounts. Carbohydrate counting and the assistance of a registered dietitian may provide benefit, but these two interventions have been insufficiently studied in pregnancy [30].

Exercise
Moderate exercise decreases the need for insulin therapy in type II diabetics by increasing the glucose uptake in skeletal muscle and, therefore, should be strongly encouraged for diabetic patients although it is important to take into consideration any preexisting comorbidities, including class III obesity [31].

Glucose Monitoring
Frequent home glucose monitoring, both pre- and postprandially, has been associated with enhanced glucose control and shorter interval to achieve target blood sugars. Capillary blood glucose (“finger stick”) measurements using a glucometer should be obtained at least four times a day—fasting and two hours (or one hour) postprandial [32,33]. The calories are distributed over three meals and three snacks with breakfast receiving the smallest allotment at 15%, and the other two meals receiving near equal distribution. Saccharin, aspartame, acesulfame-K, maltodextrin, and sucralose may be used safely in moderate amounts. Carbohydrate counting and the assistance of a registered dietitian may provide benefit, but these two interventions have been insufficiently studied in pregnancy [30].

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table 4.7 Diabetic Diet</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>30–35 kcal/kg/day (usually 2000–2400 kcal/day)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 meals, 3 snacks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Composition</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carbohydrate (complex)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Protein</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fat (&lt;10% saturated)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table 4.8 Target Venous Plasma Glucose Levels</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Timing of Measurement</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fasting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Preprandial</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>One-hour postprandial</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Two-hour postprandial</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 a.m.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


Table 4.9 Types of Insulin and Their Pharmacokinetics
[see further Ref. 47]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Onset</th>
<th>Peak</th>
<th>Duration</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lispro/ aspart</td>
<td>15–30 minutes</td>
<td>0.5–3 hours</td>
<td>≤5 hours</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Regular</td>
<td>30 minutes</td>
<td>2.5–5 hours</td>
<td>4–12 hours</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NPH</td>
<td>1–2 hours</td>
<td>4–12 hours</td>
<td>14–24 hours</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Detemir</td>
<td>3–4 hours</td>
<td>3–9 hours</td>
<td>6–23 hours (dose dependent)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Glargine</td>
<td>3–4 hours</td>
<td>none</td>
<td>24 hours</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Oral Hypoglycemic Agents**
Although overall considered safe to use in pregnancy [41,42], there is insufficient evidence to assess the effectiveness of oral hypoglycemic agents in women with pregestational diabetes. Therefore, even in women on oral hypoglycemic control before pregnancy, insulin therapy is suggested for glucose control. Occasionally, a woman well controlled on either glyburide or metformin prepregnancy and with a normal hemoglobin A1c can be managed by continuing these medications as long as glycemic control remains optimal [27,41,43]; although newer evidence suggests that metformin is preferred over glyburide when oral hypoglycemic agents are employed (at least for GDM management) [44]. Improved maternal glycemic control and reduced neonatal hypoglycemia, respiratory distress syndrome, and NICU admission were noted when metformin was added to an insulin regimen in women with poor control despite daily insulin dose of ≥1.12 units/kg [45].

**Insulin**
Multiple-dose insulin (MDI) injection therapy is the mainstay in the management of pregestational diabetes. All subcutaneous insulin types have been approved during pregnancy.

A review of the types of insulin, their onset, and duration of action are listed in Table 4.9. Human insulin is preferred to animal insulin [46]. Women, particularly those new to insulin therapy, need to be counseled about the differences in the various insulins in order to use them to their greatest efficacy. Close monitoring with at least weekly contact with a provider is suggested to maximize insulin adjustment. The goals of therapy are shown in Table 4.8 [34]. Some women will require another assessment at 3 a.m. for prevention of hypoglycemic episodes.

Glycosylated hemoglobin A1c <6% is normal [35]. Hemoglobin A1c of 6% reflects a mean glucose level of 120 mg/dL; each 1% increment in hemoglobin A1c is equal to a change in mean glucose level of 30 mg/dL. There is evidence that blood sugars (and hemoglobin A1c measurements) should be maintained within normal limits throughout gestation and not just in a particular trimester to decrease the risk of poor pregnancy outcomes [36]. Although earlier studies [37,38] suggested some benefit to continuous glucose monitoring, more recent studies showed no improvement in glycemic control or in maternal/fetal outcomes in women using continuous (measurements every 10 seconds for up to 288 measurements daily) glucose monitoring intermittently (for six days at various time points in pregnancy) versus routine monitoring [39] or constant continuous monitoring [40].
macrosomia, especially elevated postprandials (see Chapter 5) [48,49]. Hypoglycemia can cause significant maternal morbidities but has not been associated with embryopathy [50]. Glucagon should be available for home use in emergency situations.

Although satisfactory glucose control may be obtained solely with an intermediate-acting insulin rather than a short-acting insulin [51], we suggest optimizing metabolic control with one evening injection of long-acting insulin (e.g., insulin glargine) and meal-time (three daily) injections of short-acting insulin (e.g., lispro or aspart) (Figures 5.1 and 5.2). Glargine cannot be mixed in the same syringe with other insulins. Intermediate-acting insulin (e.g., neutral protamine Hagedorn [NPH]) twice daily can also be used instead of insulin glargine. Studies have shown that short-acting insulin is as effective as regular insulin and may result in improved postprandial glucose control and less preterm deliveries [52,53]. Insulin lispro should be given immediately before eating. As compared to two daily insulin injections, additional doses are associated with improved glycemic control [54]. A meta-analysis of cohort studies comparing insulin glargine to NPH did not reveal any significant differences in outcomes, including infant birth weight, congenital anomalies, and respiratory distress [55]. A large randomized trial, including 310 pregnancies compared insulin detemir with NPH and found no differences between maternal HgA1c, the frequency of major hypoglycemic episodes [56], early fetal loss, congenital anomalies or adverse events [57].

**Subcutaneous insulin pump therapy** (continuous subcutaneous insulin infusion therapy [CSII]) may been continued in women already compliant with this mode of therapy. In nonpregnant adults, women compliant with insulin pumps have increased satisfaction, decreased episodes of severe hypoglycemia, and better control of hyperglycemia [8]. Basal infusion rates tend to increase, and carbohydrate-to-insulin ratios decrease during the course of pregnancy [58]. There is currently insufficient evidence to recommend CSII versus MDI in pregnancy not already on pumps [59,60]. Inhaled insulin has been tested in nonpregnant adults, but there are yet insufficient data for pregnancy management [61].

Carbohydrate counting and the use of an insulin-to-carbohydrate ratio of 1 unit of insulin for every 15 g of carbohydrate in early gestation can allow for greater flexibility in eating but has not been studied in a trial. As pregnancy advances with its concomitant increased insulin resistance, an increased ratio is required with 1 unit covering a lower amount of carbohydrates, for example, 1 unit/3 g of carbohydrate [58].

Useful sample calculations for the total daily insulin requirement and insulin regimen are in Table 5.4 and Figures 5.1 and 5.2.

**Very Tight vs. Tight Control**

There are limited data to assess the effect of moderately tight versus very tight glycemic control in women with type I pregestational diabetes, but there is some evidence to suggest very tight control (either fasting, and 2 hour pp <5.6 mmol/L or fasting <4.4 mmol/L and 1.5 hour pp <6.7 mmol/L) improves neonatal metabolic outcomes including hypoglycemia [62]. Loose control (fasting blood glucose above 7.0 mmol/L) is associated with increased incidences of preeclampsia, cesarean deliveries, and infants that were large for gestational age [63]. There are no data to assess the clinical impact for prevention of significant long-term neonatal morbidity. Patients with type I diabetes may be at increased susceptibility to hypoglycemia during pregnancy than in the prepregnant state; early pregnancy hypoglycemia was not associated with an increased risk of early pregnancy loss or malformations, which is consistent with other studies [50].

**Diabetic Ketoacidosis**

Diabetic ketoacidosis occurs in 5% to 10% of pregnant women with pregestational type I diabetes. It is defined by elevated glucose (usually >250 mg/dL), positive serum ketones, and acidosis. Risk factors include type I diabetes, new onset diabetes, infections (e.g., urinary or respiratory tract infections), poor compliance, insulin pump failure, and treatment with beta-mimetics or steroids [8]. Symptoms include abdominal pain, nausea, vomiting, and altered sensorium. Laboratory tests should include an arterial blood gas (pH <7.3), electrolytes (serum bicarbonate <15 mEq/L and elevated anion gap), serum and urinary ketones (elevated). **Aggressive hydration, intravenous insulin, and correction of the underlying etiology are the most important interventions**, with close electrolyte (especially glucose and potassium) monitoring (Table 4.10) [8,64,65]. Fetal mortality may be up to 10%, even with aggressive management.

**Table 4.10 Management of Diabetic Ketoacidosis in Pregnancy**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>IV hydration: Use isotonic saline (0.9% NS)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>First hour: Give 1 L NS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hours 2–4: 0.5–1 L NS/hour</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thereafter (24 hours): Give 250 mL/hour 0.45% NS until 80% deficit corrected</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Body water deficit = [(0.6 body weight [kg]) + [1–(140/80% deficit corrected] = 100 mL deficit/kg body weight</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Insulin: Mix 50 units of regular insulin in 500 mL of NS and flush IV tubing prior to infusion**

| Loading: 0.2–0.4 units/kg |
| Maintenance: 2–10 units/hour |
| Continue insulin therapy until bicarbonate and anion gap normalize |

**Potassium replacement: Maintain serum K+ at 4–5 mEq/L**

- If K+ is initially normal or reduced, consider an infusion of up to 15–20 mEq/hour
- If K+ is elevated, do not add supplemental potassium until levels are within normal range, then add 20–30 mEq/L

**Phosphate: Consider replacement if serum phosphate <1.0 mg/dL or if cardiac dysfunction present or patient obtunded**

**Bicarbonate: If pH is <7.1, add one ampule (44 mEq) of bicarbonate to 1 L of 0.45% NS**

**Laboratory tests: Check arterial blood gas on admission; check serum glucose, ketones, and electrolytes one to two hours until normal**

- Consider doubling insulin infusion rate if serum glucose does not decrease by 20% within the first two hours
- When blood glucose reaches 250 mg/dL, change IVF to D5NS
- Continue insulin drip until ketosis resolves and the first subcutaneous dose of insulin is administered


Abbreviations: IVF, intravenous fluids; kg, kilograms; K+, potassium; NS, normal saline.
**Antepartum Testing**

Fetal surveillance is required to determine whether congenital anomalies are present and to minimize perinatal mortality (Table 4.11). The nature of this surveillance is by convention and expert consensus rather than supported by well-performed trials. Because of the increased risk of birth defects, particularly cardiac and neural tube defects, patients should be offered alpha-fetoprotein screening at 16 to 18 weeks gestation, targeted ultrasonography at 18 to 20 weeks, and **fetal echocardiography at 20 to 22 weeks**. Some suggest an earlier first anatomic fetal sonographic survey at around 14 to 16 weeks as well as early fetal echocardiography at this time, especially in women with poor glycemic control in the first trimester (e.g., hemoglobin A1c >10 mg/dL). Serial ultrasounds in the third trimester to evaluate fetal growth and frequent prenatal visits to review glucose control are also advocated. The use of fetal surveillance with nonstress test (NST) and/or biophysical profile is recommended by expert opinion [23], but the frequency and nature of the testing cannot be determined, since there is no randomized trial to direct effective screening. For women with good glycemic control, antepartum testing can start at 32 weeks with once or twice weekly NSTs, increased to twice weekly at 36 weeks, and continued until delivery [8]. For women with poor glycemic control, antepartum testing may need to begin earlier [8].

**Delivery**

**Timing**

Timing of delivery in women with pregestational DM in good control is usually at about 39 0/7–39 6/7 weeks (unless maternal or fetal factors dictate earlier intervention) as perinatal mortality increases after 40 weeks. In general, indicated delivery before 39 weeks, if truly indicated, should not require assessment of fetal maturity. If assessment of fetal maturity is done, laboratory tests are interpreted as in non-pregnant women. The use of fetal surveillance with nonstress test (NST) and/or biophysical profile is recommended by expert opinion [23], but the frequency and nature of the testing cannot be determined, since there is no randomized trial to direct effective screening. For women with good glycemic control, antepartum testing can start at 32 weeks with once or twice weekly NSTs, increased to twice weekly at 36 weeks, and continued until delivery [8]. For women with poor glycemic control, antepartum testing may need to begin earlier [8].

**Table 4.11 Antepartum Testing**

| A. Assessment of viability and exact GA: first-trimester ultrasound |
| B. Detection of congenital malformations |
| 1. If hemoglobin A1c is elevated, consider transvaginal ultrasound at about 14 weeks to rule out structural defects, including cardiac |
| 2. Maternal serum alpha-fetoprotein level at 16 weeks |
| 3. Level II ultrasound at 18–20 weeks |
| 4. Fetal echocardiogram at 20–22 weeks |
| C. Assessment of fetal growth |
| 1. Serial growth ultrasounds in third trimester every 3–4 weeks |
| D. Assessment of fetal well-being |
| 1. Maternal assessment of fetal activity (“fetal kick counts”) |
| 2. Once or twice weekly NSTs/BPPs starting at 32 weeks until 36 weeks, then twice weekly until delivery. Begin at 32 weeks if maternal glycemic control is satisfactory, fetal growth is appropriate, and there are no coexisting maternal medical or obstetric complications. Begin earlier (~28 weeks) with increased frequency if the above conditions are not met |

**Abbreviations:** BPP, biophysical profile; NST, nonstress tests.

should be cautioned that a positive test does not preclude infant morbidity (see Chapter 57). Compared to expectant management until 42 weeks, induction of labor at 38 completed weeks in women with insulin-dependent diabetes (of which >90% were gestational) is associated with reduced incidences of macrosomia [66,67]. However, the sample size was too small to evaluate the impact on perinatal mortality, which is a concern in women with diabetes who are delivered prior to 39 weeks [66].

**Mode**

Mode of delivery is generally vaginal. **Cesarean** is indicated if estimated **fetal weight** is ≥4500 g (see Chapter 45) [8]. The diagnosis of macrosomia is inexact by ultrasound and clinical estimation, confounding the ability to make a clear recommendation. Induction for macrosomia is not recommended due to lack of evidence for benefit [68,69].

**Intrapartum Glucose Management**

The usual subcutaneous long-acting (e.g., glargine) or intermediate-acting insulin (e.g., NPH) is given at bedtime the evening before delivery, and the usual subcutaneous morning insulin is withheld on the day of delivery. **Intrapartum management** (Figure 4.1) [34] is targeted to maintain maternal glucose levels between 70 and 110 mg/dL. Often the insulin requirement is decreased because of the energy requirements of labor. Intravenous insulin, dextrose solution, frequent (usually every hour) glucose monitoring, and evaluation of urinary ketones are required to prevent a catabolic state and the development of ketoacidosis. Once active labor begins or glucose is <70 mg/dL, IV 5% dextrose at 125 cc/hour can be started. Once glucose level is ≥100 mg/dL, short-acting (e.g., lispro or regular) IV insulin should be started. IV 5% dextrose and insulin infusions should be separate and often should occur at the same time to prevent ketonuria. Adjustments to the basal infusion rates are based on hourly finger stick blood sugars while in labor. The use of the insulin pump, maintaining the basal rate, rather than using an IV insulin infusion, is an accepted alternative. A small, randomized controlled trial did not show any benefit to using real-time continuous glucose monitoring versus hourly monitoring during labor to reduce the likelihood of neonatal hypoglycemia [70].

With cesarean delivery, use of a single injection of long-acting insulin, an IV insulin infusion, or subcutaneous pump at a low basal rate are equal alternatives until oral intake is assured and more standard dosing can be reinstituted. Insulin requirements are diminished postpartum and are generally half of the antepartum requirement.

**Anesthesia**

No specific adjustments necessary.

**Postpartum/Breast-Feeding**

Usual diabetic diet should be restarted after delivery with one half of the predelivery dose or the full prepregnancy dose (if this achieved euglycemia) restarted [34]. If food intake cannot be restarted soon, then glucose levels of >140 mg/dL should be treated with proper coverage. Breast-feeding has increased maternal caloric demands and an additional 500 kcal/day needs to be added to the diet to avoid hypoglycemia. All
forms of contraception are available to diabetics, providing they have no contraindications, such as hypertension or vascular disease (see Chapter 27 of Obstetrics Evidence Based Guidelines).

Future

New therapeutic approaches include pancreatic islet cell transplant.

REFERENCES

37. Murphy HR, Rayman G, Lewis K et al. Effectiveness of continuous glucose monitoring in pregnant women with diabetes: A systematic review and randomised clinical trial. *BMJ* 2008; 337: a1680. [RCT, n = 71]
KEY POINTS

- Poorly controlled gestational diabetes (GDM) in pregnancy is associated with increased risks of fetal death, preterm birth, preeclampsia, polyhydramnios, macrosomia, operative (both vaginal and cesarean) delivery and birth injury (including brachial plexus), delayed lung maturity, respiratory distress syndrome, jaundice, hypoglycemia, hypocalcemia, and perinatal mortality.

- Prevention of GDM can be achieved with optimization of maternal health and body mass index prior to pregnancy, which often involves weight loss by proper diet and exercise.

- Optimization of blood glucose control with diet and insulin to achieve fasting glucose ≤95 mg/dL and two-hour postprandial ≤120 mg/dL (or one-hour postprandial ≤140 mg/dL) is associated with reduced macrosomia, perinatal morbidity, and maternal comorbidities, including preeclampsia and depression.

- Insulin is superior to glyburide as it results in less fetal macrosomia and less neonatal hypoglycemia. Compared to glyburide, metformin is preferred given lower maternal weight gain and neonatal birth weight.

- In GDM, exercise is associated with a similar rate of macrosomia as compared to insulin, improvement in glycemic control when done in combination with diet as compared to diet alone, and improvement in cardiovascular fitness.

- Women with GDM should be screened for diabetes six to eight weeks postpartum.

SCREENING/DIAGNOSIS

The term “gestational” before “diabetes” means that the hyperglycemia is first recognized or diagnosed during pregnancy [1]. If hyperglycemia is detected before 20 weeks, pregestational diabetes is probably present. The importance of screening for GDM and treatment to optimize glycemic control to reduce hyperglycemia-associated complications has been established [2–7]. Who, when, and how to screen, and the diagnostic glucose cutoffs to establish the diagnosis of GDM are controversial.

Who to Screen

The population that should be offered screening has not been uniformly identified. Low-risk women in whom screening may not be necessary (selective screening) must meet all of the following criteria: age <25 years; ethnic origin of low risk (not Hispanic, African, native American, south or east Asian, or Pacific Islander); BMI <25; no previous personal or family history of impaired glucose tolerance; no previous history of adverse obstetric outcomes associated with GDM [1–6,8]. However, universal screening is most commonly adopted and is endorsed by USPSTF [9]. The risk of developing GDM is directly associated with prepregnancy BMI [10].

When to Screen

To balance sensitivity and specificity with adequate treatment duration, screen women at 24 to 28 weeks. However, the incidence of GDM (related to placental mass and hormone production) increases with gestational age. Women with risk factors (Table 5.1) should be screened preconception or at first prenatal visit. About 5% to 10% of women with these risk factors will have early GDM, and these represent 40% of all GDM diagnosed later at 24 to 28 weeks [11]. If the early screen is negative, a repeat screen should be performed at 24 to 28 weeks gestation. Typically, if a patient fails the early one-hour glucose screen and passes the early three-hour glucose tolerance test, the three-hour test should be repeated at 24–28 weeks.

How to Screen

Screening for GDM is somewhat controversial and can be performed either with a one-step or two-step process. One large trial has shown that two-step screening is more cost-effective than the one-step screening [12,13].

One-Step Process

The International Association of Diabetes and Pregnancy Study Groups (IADPSG) recommends using the 75-gram, one-step screening test at 24–28 weeks gestation for all women not known to have diabetes. The finding of one abnormal value is diagnostic of GDM: fasting ≥92 mg/dL (5.1 mmol/L), one hour ≥180 mg/dL (10.0 mmol/L) or two hour ≥153 mg/dL (8.5 mmol/L) [5]. This approach diagnoses twice as many women as having GDM than the two-step process generally employed in North America [14,15].

These recommendations were based on the finding of a multicenter study of 23,316 women that revealed an increased incidence of large for gestational age (LGA) infants, premature delivery, shoulder dystocia/birth injury, NICU admission, hyperbilirubinemia, and preeclampsia in women with glucose levels >75 mg/dL (fasting), 133 mg/dL (one hour), or 109 mg/dL (two hours) [16]. On the basis of the HAPO study [16], the IADPSG developed diagnostic cutoffs for the 75 g glucose load at the level shown to increase the odds of adverse outcomes by at least 1.75 as compared to the women with mean glucose measurements, i.e., fasting, 1 and 2 hour postprandials greater than or equal to 92, 180 and 153 mg/dL respectively. However, these have not been systematically reviewed [5,17]. No trial has evaluated the efficacy of any therapy based on these new values, and so they cannot be used yet for clinical care.

Gestational diabetes

A. Dhanya Mackeen and Melisa Lott
Table 5.1 Risk Factors for GDM

- Prior unexplained stillbirth
- Prior infant with congenital anomaly (if not screened in that pregnancy)
- Prior macrosomic infant
- History of gestational diabetes
- Family history of diabetes
- Obesity
- Chronic use of steroids
- Age >35 years
- Glycosuria
- Known impaired glucose metabolism

Two-Step Process
The first (screening) step involves a 50-g, one-hour oral glucose load (glucose challenge test), applied in the nonfasting state [18] with a venous glucose value obtained one hour after consumption. Glucose polymer solutions are better tolerated than monomeric solutions [19]. Jelly beans have not been sufficiently tested to be a valid alternative [20]. Candy twists have recently been studied and may prove to be an option; however, data is currently insufficient to support its use [21]. Although studies have compared different GDM screening approaches including glucose polymer, glucose monomer, candy bars, and food, there is insufficient evidence to compare the effects of these different ways to glucose load and the subsequent management of GDM thereafter [12].

A positive result on the first part of the screening test is defined as 130, 135, or 140 mg/dL. The lower threshold identifies 90% of gestational diabetics but subjects 20% to 25% of those screened to the second diagnostic test. In contrast, the higher value has a lower sensitivity of 80%, but subjects fewer women, 14% to 18%, to further testing. ACOG recommends choosing 135 mg/dL or 140 mg/dL as the cutoff [1]. More than 80% of women with values ≥200 mg/dL will fail the three-hour glucose tolerance test (GTT), so many use this cutoff as meeting the diagnosis of GDM [22].

Definitive diagnosis of GDM is then made on the basis of the results of a 100-g, three-hour oral GTT (administered after an overnight fast [8–14 hours], ideally following three days of unrestricted diet [including carbohydrate loading] and activity) while the patient remains seated and refrains from smoking.

Unfortunately, the criteria to establish diagnosis by this test are not universally accepted. The two competing criteria and their diagnostic levels are listed in Table 5.2. Two or more abnormal values on these tests establish the diagnosis of GDM. The Carpenter–Coustan stricter criteria increase by about 50% the number of women with a diagnosis of GDM compared to the NDDG criteria, and these pregnancies have elevated incidences of macrosomia and neonatal insulinemia [23]. Therefore, we suggest using Carpenter–Coustan criteria as opposed to those of NDDG. In fact, there is evidence to suggest that hyperglycemia below the cutoff of even the Carpenter–Coustan criteria result in poor outcomes [16,24].

If GDM is diagnosed <20 weeks, counseling and management should be as for pregestational diabetes. The presence or absence of fasting hyperglycemia further subdivides this category.

If one abnormal value in the three-hour GTT is present, the patient should be counseled to avoid excess glucose consumption. Studies have shown that in these women better glycemic control, achieved with either diet + insulin or even just nutritional counseling, was associated with fewer neonatal complications and decreased incidence of LGA and cesarean when compared with no such therapies [25–29].

Incidence
There is an overall 7% incidence of GDM [30] using two-step screening and Carper–Coustan criteria in the United States, representing one of the most common medical complications facing obstetricians. Of cases of DM in pregnancy, 88% are GDM [1,31]. Incidence obviously depends on the screening strategy used with some suggesting that stricter criteria would result in 18% of pregnant women being diagnosed with GDM [16,17].

Pathophysiology
The pathophysiology of GDM is insulin resistance caused by circulating hormonal factors: increased maternal and placental production of human placental lactogen, progesterone, growth hormone, cortisol, and prolactin. Increased body weight and caloric intake also contribute to the insulin resistance associated with pregnancy and may offset the normally increased insulin production in the pregnant woman [31]. Women with GDM have been found to have lower basal islet cell function in addition to insulin resistance when compared to a nondiabetic cohort. The combination of the two factors contributes to the development of GDM. This insulin resistance and decreased insulin production persists in the postpartum state and leads to the development of type II diabetes in this population. Low adiponectin levels may be a predictive biomarker for the development of GDM in obese women, but further studies are needed to ascertain the utility of this before clinical application [32]. Specific genes related to GDM and response to therapy are under investigation [33,34].

Risk Factors/Associations
Pregnancy, obesity, hypertension, age greater than or equal to 35 years at delivery, metabolic syndrome, family history of type II DM, nonwhite ethnicity, previous macrosomia.

Complications
Incidence of complications is inversely proportional to glucose control. In poorly controlled DM, increased glucose in the mother causes abnormal metabolism while in the fetus it causes hyperinsulinemia and its consequences. However, treatment of even mild GDM reduced birth weight percentiles and neonatal fat mass [35]. Other complications are hypertensive disorders and preeclampsia, macrosomia, congenital malformations (OR 1.2–1.4) [36], operative delivery, and birth injury (confounded by maternal obesity; both related to macrosomia) [6,16,37]. Apart from transient

Table 5.2 Criteria for Standard 100-g Glucose Load to Diagnose Gestational Diabetes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>National Diabetes Data Group</th>
<th>Carpenter–Coustan Criteria</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>mg/dL</td>
<td>mmol/L</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fasting</td>
<td>105</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 hour</td>
<td>190</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 hours</td>
<td>165</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 hours</td>
<td>145</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
neonatal hypoglycemia, no other metabolic derangement has been reported in the infant of the GDM mother. Long-term adult disorders, such as glucose intolerance and obesity, have been postulated to occur as frequently in these neonates as in neonates of women with pregestational diabetes, but this has not been verified by observational studies [38]. Elevated fasting glucose is associated with fetal macrosomia and with elevated C-peptide (which is correlated with increased fetal fat deposition) [39]. Approximately 50% of women identified as having GDM will develop frank diabetes within 10 years if followed longitudinally [40].

PREVENTION

Low-glycemic diet [41], a diet with adequate (not excessive) caloric intake, and achieving and maintaining a normal BMI are probably beneficial, especially preconception, in preventing GDM, but have been insufficiently studied in RCTs so far. Structured moderate physical exercise programs during pregnancy decrease the risk of GDM and diminish maternal weight gain [42,43].

Myo-inositol has also been shown to be safe and effective in preventing GDM. Myo-inositol (2 grams bid) improves insulin resistance [44] and reduces the incidence of GDM in nonobese Caucasian Italians [45], obese Italians [46], and in women with fasting glucose 92–126 mg/dL and BMI ≤35 [47]. Further studies are needed to determine safety regarding neonatal outcomes, efficacy in a diverse patient population, and whether there are increases in the diagnosis of GDM later in gestation.

TREATMENT OF GDM (TABLES 5.3 AND 5.4)

Treatment of GDM consists of diet, exercise, and glucose monitoring; medications, such as oral hypoglycemic agents and/or insulin are reserved for use when glycemic control is not achieved with diet and exercise.

Compared to usual prenatal care, treatment as described above is associated with significantly decreased incidences of birth weight >4000 g, perinatal morbidity (death, shoulder dystocia, bone fracture, and nerve palsy), and preeclampsia in women with GDM [3,48–50]. Incidence of CD is not significantly affected [3].

Diet

Dietary therapy consists of approximately 30 kcal/kg/day for the average patient and ±5 kcal/kg/day for underweight and overweight women, respectively [22]. Calories should be divided between three meals and three snacks: 45% carbohydrate, 20% protein, and 35% unsaturated fat. Because about 30% to 40% of gestational diabetics fail to achieve glucose control with diet alone, other interventions may be necessary.

If two glucose levels are >99 mg/dL (fasting) or ≥126 at ≤35 weeks or ≥144 after 35 weeks (two-hour postprandial) or ever ≥162 mg/dL (two-hour postprandial), despite diet and exercise, medical therapy should be considered [6].

Dietary counseling has been shown to improve dietary intake in patients at risk for GDM [51] and may result in lower neonatal birth weight (133 g) and decreased incidence of LGA [52]. Although a diet with a low-glycemic index (e.g., decreased consumption of white bread, processed cereals, and potatoes) was felt to decrease the need for insulin in women with GDM [53], this recommendation was recently challenged by a larger study which showed no benefit [54]. There is no difference in neonatal and adverse pregnancy outcomes for women on a low glycemic index diet versus a high fiber diet [55], and a low glycemic index diet compared to healthy eating did not show differences in birth weight, fetal percentile, or ponderal index [56]. A DASH diet has demonstrated improved glucose tolerance, lipid profiles, diastolic blood pressures, and serum insulin levels and decreased insulin requirement in small RCTs; however, large trials are needed to further assess effectiveness [57–59]. An oil-rich diet (45–50 g sunflower oil daily) versus a low-oil diet (20 g daily) needed to further assess effectiveness [57–59]. An oil-rich diet (45–50 g sunflower oil daily) versus a low-oil diet (20 g daily) did not have an effect on pregnancy outcomes [60].

Exercise

Exercising three times a week for 20 to 45 minutes is beneficial for women with GDM and those at risk for GDM [61]. In small RCTs, in women with GDM, exercise (as defined by 30 minutes of non-weight-bearing activity at 50% of aerobic capacity) has been associated with less gestational weight gain in obese gravidas [62], a similar rate of macrosomia compared to insulin [63], improvement in glycemic control when done in conjunction with diet compared to diet alone [64,65], and improvement in cardiovascular fitness [66]. Although exercise later in pregnancy did not decrease the risk of developing GDM, it did reduce the GDM-related risk of neonatal macrosomia [61]. Improvement in maternal triglycerides [67,68], insulin sensitivity [67], and postprandial

Table 5.3 Management of the Gestational Diabetic Gravida

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Preconception prevention</th>
<th>Antepartum management</th>
<th>Intrapartum management (see Figure 4.1)</th>
<th>Postpartum management</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• Weight loss</td>
<td>• Nutritional counseling for dietary control</td>
<td>• Induction of labor</td>
<td>• Standard 75-g glucose challenge test at 6 weeks postpartum visit (see Figure 5.3 and Table 4.1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Exercise</td>
<td>• Finger stick blood sugar assessments: fasting values should be &lt;95 mg/dL and two-hour postprandial values should be ≤120 mg/dL (or one-hour postprandial values should be ≤140 mg/dL)</td>
<td>• Diet controlled: at 41 weeks</td>
<td>Abbreviations: EFW, estimated fetal weight; IV, intravenous; NSTs, nonstress tests.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Exercise program</td>
<td>• Medication controlled: between 39 0/7 and 39 6/7 weeks</td>
<td>• Cesarean delivery if EFW ≥4500 g</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Insulin or oral hypoglycemic agent if diet not sufficient to optimize blood sugars</td>
<td>• Every one hour if required medication</td>
<td>• Frequent glucose assessment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Fetal surveillance</td>
<td>• Every four hours if diet controlled</td>
<td>• Every hour if ketonuria</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Target blood sugars 70–110 mg/dL</td>
<td>• IV insulin therapy if blood sugars greater than target blood sugars or with ketonuria</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• IV saline infusion at 125 cc/hour unless ketonuric, then add 5% dextrose solution at rate to keep blood sugar in target range</td>
<td>• IV saline infusion at 125 cc/hour unless ketonuric, then add 5% dextrose solution at rate to keep blood sugar in target range</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Abbreviations: EFW, estimated fetal weight; IV, intravenous; NSTs, nonstress tests.
Table 5.4  Randomized Controlled Trials of Medication for Treatment of Gestational Diabetes Mellitus

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Study</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Testing</th>
<th>Intervention</th>
<th>Control</th>
<th>Outcomes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Casey</strong> [86]</td>
<td>$n = 375$ GA: 24–30</td>
<td><strong>Screening test:</strong> 50 g 1-hour test $\geq 140$ mg/dL</td>
<td>(n = 189) Glyburide 2.5 mg daily titrated to a maximum dose of 20 mg daily Insulin initiated to achieve euglycemia if needed</td>
<td>(n = 186) Placebo All women with mild GDM received nutritional education and dietary counselling</td>
<td><strong>Primary:</strong> 200-g birth weight decrement in neonates of mothers treated with glyburide was not found. <strong>Secondary:</strong> No difference in gestational hypertension, chorioamnionitis, shoulder dystocia, operative delivery, or third- or fourth-degree lacerations. Neonatal hyperbilirubinemia and hypoglycemia were uncommon. Glyburide in addition to diet improves glycemic control as compared to diet plus placebo. <strong>Primary:</strong> Those treated with insulin were more likely to achieve proper glycemic control. <strong>Secondary:</strong> As compared to increasing the insulin dose, the addition of metformin was associated with reductions in hospitalization rates, treatment cost, and frequency of maternal and neonatal hypoglycemia, NICU admission, and neonatal RDS. There were no differences in mode of delivery, fetal macrosomia, gestational age at delivery, or birth weight. Obesity negatively affected achievement of euglycemia with metformin. <strong>Primary:</strong> No differences in birth weight. <strong>Secondary:</strong> No differences in macrosomia, LGA, or neonatal complications. Patients whose OGTT was performed earlier, who were older, and required oral medication earlier in pregnancy were more likely to need supplemental insulin in addition to metformin therapy.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Ibrahim</strong> [96]</td>
<td>$n = 90$ GA: 20–34</td>
<td><strong>Screening test:</strong> none</td>
<td>(n = 46) Oral metformin without increasing insulin dose If glycemic control not achieved then patient switched to conventional insulin dose-raising regimen</td>
<td>(n = 44) Oral metformin with increasing insulin dose</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Tertti</strong> [95]</td>
<td>$n = 217$ GA: 22–34</td>
<td><strong>Screening test:</strong> 75-g OGTT diagnostic cutoff values of plasma glucose up to December 2008 were the following: fasting $\geq 4.8$ mmol/L, 1 h $\geq 10.0$ mmol/L and 2 h $\geq 8.7$ mmol/L, and thereafter $\geq 5.3$, $\geq 10.0$, and $\geq 8.6$ mmol/L, respectively</td>
<td>(n = 111) Metformin 500 mg daily to maximum 1000 mg twice daily Insulin added if necessary for glycemic control</td>
<td>(n = 107) Insulin treatment was initiated using NPH insulin Protaphane®, and/or rapid-acting insulin lispro (Humalog®) or insulin aspart (Novorapid®)</td>
<td><strong>Primary:</strong> No differences in birth weight. <strong>Secondary:</strong> No differences in macrosomia, LGA, or neonatal complications. Patients whose OGTT was performed earlier, who were older, and required oral medication earlier in pregnancy were more likely to need supplemental insulin in addition to metformin therapy.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| **Spaulonci** [105] | $n = 92$ GA: any | **Screening test:** none | (n = 46) Metformin Initial dose 1700 mg daily increased to 2550 mg daily Supplemental insulin added if needed for glycemic control All patients received nutritional counseling and daily caloric intake of 25–35 kcal/kg (based on BMI) was recommended | (n = 46) Insulin Human NPH insulin starting dose was 0.4 u/kg/day, with 1/2 dose before breakfast, 1/4 dose before lunch, and 1/4 dose at 10 p.m. Regular insulin was added for elevated postprandial values | **Primary:** Mean glucose levels were higher in the insulin group. **Secondary:** Patients in the metformin group gained less weight than those in the insulin group; there was no difference in frequency of preeclampsia, prematurity, or cesarean delivery; there was more neonatal hypoglycemia in those treated with insulin; no significant differences between the two groups were observed regarding neonatal outcomes, including gestational age at birth, Apgar scores, umbilical artery pH, or newborn weight. Supplemental insulin was required in 12 women (26%) in the metformin group. (Continued)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Study</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Testing</th>
<th>Intervention</th>
<th>Control</th>
<th>Outcomes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Tempe</strong> [85]</td>
<td>$n = 64$, GA: 0–28</td>
<td>Screening test: 50-g 1-hour test $\geq 130$ mg/dL</td>
<td>Glyburide 2.5 mg titrated to maximum dose 20 mg daily Switched to insulin if needed for glycemic control</td>
<td>Insulin treatment 2/3 of the total dose administered in the morning and 1/3 at night; Lente and plain insulin were administered at a ratio of 2:1 in the morning and 2:1 or 1:1 at night</td>
<td>Primary: No difference in glycemic control. Secondary: No difference in maternal or neonatal complications.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Diagnostic test: 100-g 3-hour with two or more abnormal values and cutoff: fasting $\geq 95$ mg/dL, 1-h $\geq 180$ mg/dL, 2-h $\geq 155$ mg/dL, 3-h $\geq 140$ mg/dL</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Screening test: 50-g 1-hour test $\geq 130$ mg/dL</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Waheed</strong> [106]</td>
<td>$n = 68$, GA: &gt;14</td>
<td>Screening test: none Diagnostic test: Fasting blood sugar $&gt;100$ mg and random blood sugar $&gt;140$ mg</td>
<td>Metformin 500 mg daily up to 1500 mg maximum daily dose</td>
<td>Insulin (dosage and insulin type not specified)</td>
<td>Primary: No differences in glycemic control</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Hickman</strong> [91]</td>
<td>$n = 28$, GA: &lt;20</td>
<td>Screening: not applicable Inclusion: pregestational diabetes mellitus type 2 on an oral hypoglycemic agent or GDMA2 diagnosed prior to 20 weeks</td>
<td>Metformin 500 mg once or twice per day Insulin initiated to achieve euglycemia if needed after maximum dose of metformin (2500 mg) attained</td>
<td>Insulin (dosage and insulin type not specified)</td>
<td>Primary: No difference in average fasting glucose levels between groups. Secondary: Women managed with metformin required less insulin for euglycemia and had less hypoglycemic events; metformin was preferred by participants; there were no complications of shoulder dystocia, postpartum hemorrhage, stillbirths, or major congenital malformations. Supplemental insulin was required in six women (43%) in the metformin group.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Diagnostic test: 100-g 3-hour with two or more abnormal values and cutoff: fasting $\geq 95$ mg/dL, 1-h $\geq 180$ mg/dL, 2-h $\geq 155$ mg/dL, 3-h $\geq 140$ mg/dL</td>
<td>Metformin 500 mg twice daily increased by 500–1000 mg one or two weeks to a maximum daily dose of 2500 mg, divided with each meal Insulin was needed if glycemic control was not achieved despite maximum metformin dose</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Niromanesh</strong> [107]</td>
<td>$n = 160$, GA: 20–34</td>
<td>Screening test: 50-g 1-hour test $\geq 130$ mg/dL</td>
<td>Metformin 500 mg twice daily increased by 500–1000 mg one or two weeks to a maximum daily dose of 2500 mg, divided with each meal Insulin was needed if glycemic control was not achieved despite maximum metformin dose</td>
<td>Insulin. NPH insulin with regular insulin as needed for elevated postprandial levels titrated to individual need All women were given counseling on diet and regular physical exercise.</td>
<td>Primary: No differences in maternal glycemic control; neonates born to mothers in the metformin group had lower birth weight than those in the insulin group. Secondary: Neonates from the metformin group had significantly lower anthropometric measurements (including head, arm, and chest circumference) and less LGA as compared to insulin group; there was no difference in incidence of birth defects, neonatal hypoglycemia, hyperbilirubinemia, or need for phototherapy; metformin was associated with less maternal weight gain compared to insulin. Supplemental insulin was required in 11 women (14%) in the metformin group.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Diagnostic test: 100-g 3-hour with two or more abnormal values and cutoff: fasting $\geq 95$ mg/dL, 1-h $\geq 180$ mg/dL, 2-h $\geq 155$ mg/dL, 3-h $\geq 140$ mg/dL</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Study</td>
<td>Details</td>
<td>Testing</td>
<td>Intervention</td>
<td>Control</td>
<td>Outcomes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>---------</td>
<td>---------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Balaji [108]</strong></td>
<td>$n = 320$ GA: 12–28</td>
<td><strong>Screening test:</strong> 75 g OGTT with diagnosis when 2-hour glucose $\geq 140$ mg/dL. <strong>Diagnostic test:</strong> Inability to maintain euglycemia 2 weeks after medical nutritional therapy</td>
<td>$n = 163$ BIAsp 30 six units before breakfast and adjusted as needed. Biphasic insulin aspart (BIAsp) 30 contains 30% rapid-acting insulin aspart with 70% protamine crystallized insulin aspart to be used up to three times daily</td>
<td>$n = 157$ BHI30 six units before breakfast and adjusted as needed. Biphasic human insulin (BHI) 30 contains 30% short-acting and 70% intermediate acting neutral protamine hagedorn (NPH), to be used up to twice daily</td>
<td><strong>Primary:</strong> No differences in LGA. <strong>Secondary:</strong> No differences in overall glycemic control between groups (fasting and 2-hour postprandial, hgb A1c). The final mean insulin dose was significantly lower for BIAsp30 than BHI30.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Ijas [94]</strong></td>
<td>$n = 97$ GA: 12–34</td>
<td><strong>Diagnostic test:</strong> 75-g OGTT with one or more abnormal and cutoff values fasting 5.3 mmol/L, 11.0 mmol/L; 9.6 mmol/L</td>
<td>$n = 47$ Metformin 750 mg once daily for first week, twice daily for second week, and three times daily from third week onward. Discontinued if significant side effect such as diarrhea. Supplemental insulin added if needed.</td>
<td>(n = 50) Insulin with long-acting insulin (Protaphan) and rapid-acting (Humalog)</td>
<td><strong>Primary:</strong> No differences in macrosomia or LGA. <strong>Secondary:</strong> No differences in NICU admissions, neonatal hypoglycemia, phototherapy treatment, or birth injuries; mean maternal weight gain, preeclampsia, and preterm delivery were not different between groups. In the metformin group, there was a higher incidence of vacuum extraction and cesarean deliveries as compared to the insulin group. Women that required additional insulin had higher BMI, higher fasting glucose, and required medication earlier in gestation than those controlled with metformin alone. Supplemental insulin was required in 15 women (32%) in the metformin group.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Moore [109]</strong></td>
<td>$n = 149$ GA: 11–33</td>
<td><strong>Screening test:</strong> 50-g 1-hour test $\geq 130$ mg/dL. <strong>Diagnostic test:</strong> 100 g 3-hour test with cutoff of fasting $\geq 95$ mg/dL, 1-h $\geq 180$ mg/dL, 2-h $\geq 155$ mg/dL, 3-h $\geq 140$ mg/dL with two or more abnormal values</td>
<td>(n = 74) Glyburide 2.5 mg twice daily initial dose titrated to maximum 20 mg daily dose. Daily caloric intake of 25 to 30 kcal/kg (depending on BMI) was recommended.</td>
<td>(n = 75) Metformin 500 mg per day in divided doses to maximum dose of 2000 mg per day if failure to control glucose in either group, oral medication was discontinued and insulin was initiated.</td>
<td><strong>Primary:</strong> Metformin had a failure rate 2.1 times higher than glyburide. <strong>Secondary:</strong> No differences in macrosomia, NICU admission, birth trauma, five minute Apgar score, preeclampsia, maternal or neonatal hypoglycemia, and route of delivery. Mean birth weight was lower in those treated with metformin as compared to glyburide. Metformin was associated with a higher rate of cesarean delivery compared to glyburide.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Rowan [110]</strong></td>
<td>$n = 733$ GA: 20–33</td>
<td>Diagnosis of gestational diabetes mellitus according to the criteria of the Australasian Diabetes in Pregnancy Society (ADIPS)</td>
<td>(n = 363) Metformin + insulin. Metformin 500 mg once or twice daily with food and titrated to maximum dose 2500 mg. If blood glucose not controlled insulin was added</td>
<td>(n = 370)</td>
<td><strong>Primary:</strong> No difference in composite neonatal complications. <strong>Secondary:</strong> Neonatal anthropometric measures and umbilical-cord serum insulin concentrations were not different between the groups. Severe neonatal hypoglycemia occurred less often in the metformin group, although the rates of neonatal hypoglycemia were similar. Preterm birth was more common in the metformin group. Metformin was preferred by the participants. Supplemental insulin was required in 168 women (46%) in the metformin group.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Table 5.4 (Continued) Randomized Controlled Trials of Medication for Treatment of Gestational Diabetes Mellitus

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Study</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Testing</th>
<th>Intervention</th>
<th>Control</th>
<th>Outcomes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Di Cianni [111] | $n = 96$ GA: not specified | **Screening test:** unclear  
**Diagnostic test:** 100-g glucose tolerance test with two or more abnormal values with cutoff: fasting $\geq 95 \text{ mg/dL}$, 1-h $\geq 180 \text{ mg/dL}$, 2-h $\geq 155 \text{ mg/dL}$, 3-h $\geq 140 \text{ mg/dL}$ | Insulin aspart (ASP) $n = 31$  
Insulin lispro (LIS) $n = 33$ | Human regular insulin (HI)  
$n = 32$  
Bedtime NPH insulin added if elevated fasting glucose values | **Primary:** Short-acting insulin may be associated with better glycemic control and newborn anthropometric measures than regular insulin.  
**Secondary:** There were no hypoglycemic episodes in any of the groups; there were no differences in insulin dose, duration of insulin therapy, fasting glucose, hgb A1c or maternal weight gain.  
Higher one-hour postprandial glucose levels were noted in HI group compared to ASP and LIS groups after patients were provided a standardized breakfast.  
LIS and ASP patients had lower birth weights compared to HI. The rates of macrosomia were not different between the two groups. Anthropometric measurements to evaluate for disproportionate growth were lower in the HI group.  
**Primary:** No difference in glycemic control  
**Secondary:** No differences in perinatal outcomes including LGA, fetal macrosomia, neonatal respiratory distress, hyperbilirubinemia, hypocalcemia, hypoglycemia, or need for IV glucose therapy.  
Cord serum analysis did not demonstrate the presence of glyburide in any of the infants’ samples. |
| Langer [84] | $n = 404$ GA: 11–33 | **Screening test:** 50-g 1-hour test $\geq 130 \text{ mg/dL}$  
**Diagnostic test:** 100-g 3-hour with cutoff of 2 or more abnormal values: fasting $\geq 95 \text{ mg/dL}$, 1-h $\geq 180 \text{ mg/dL}$, 2-h $\geq 155 \text{ mg/dL}$, 3-h $\geq 140 \text{ mg/dL}$ | (n = 201) Glyburide 2.5 mg titrated to maximum 20 mg daily dose  
(n = 203) Insulin starting dose 0.7 unit/kg of actual body weight and increased as necessary |                          | |

**Abbreviations:** BMI, body mass index; GA, gestational age (weeks); GDM, gestational diabetes mellitus; GDMA2, gestational diabetes mellitus – medication controlled; IUGR, intrauterine growth restriction; IV, intravenous; LGA, large for gestational age; n, sample size; NICU, neonatal intensive care unit; NPH, neutral protamine Hagedorn; OGTT, oral glucose tolerance test; RDS, respiratory distress syndrome.
Glucose [68] have been demonstrated with exercise in pregnancy. Diet or exercise, or both, during pregnancy can reduce the risk of excessive gestational weight gain and decreases maternal hypertension [69]. The combined interventions have been shown to decrease neonatal respiratory morbidity. The amount and safety of exercise requires further research for the creation of safe guidelines [69]. If an exercise program is to be prescribed, early counseling regarding frequency and healthy practices is important to combat declining physical activity as pregnancy progresses [70–72]. Due to low compliance with exercise programs [73,74], the evidence supporting the beneficial effects of exercise in women with GDM with regards to maternal and neonatal outcome varies [4]. However, data seems to show that overall exercise is beneficial in this population although the frequency and intensity of the regimen must be individualized, taking into consideration the patient’s comorbidities.

Glucose Monitoring
With a glucometer, fasting and two-hour (or one-hour) postprandial glucose levels should be followed daily. Although not in widespread use, studies have shown that continuous glucose monitoring may reveal more postprandial hyperglycemia than is detected by checking two-hour postprandial values [75,76]. Compared to preprandial monitoring, postprandial monitoring is associated with improvement in glycated hemoglobin, less CD for dystocia, smaller birth weights, and less neonatal hypoglycemia [77]. Because the risk of macrosomia appears to be linked with postprandial hyperglycemia, following these values appears to be reasonable and is what trials have tested [6,25,78,79]. Target goals (euglycemia) are fasting glucose between 60 and 95 mg/dL and two-hour postprandial ≤120 mg/dL (or one-hour postprandial ≤140 mg/dL). Fasting glucose ≤90 mg/dL in the third trimester may be associated with a lower risk of macrosomia, but trials were overall not high quality [80]. Achieving euglycemia decreases neonatal complications. If all values are within normal limits for extended periods, less frequent monitoring can be considered. Electronically reminding patients to transmit their blood glucose log data to their physicians did not influence maternal glucose values or infant birth weight, but did increase maternal reporting of blood sugars; however, sample size may have been too small to truly determine efficacy of these reminders [81].

Oral Hypoglycemic Agents
Oral hypoglycemic agents are safe in pregnancy. The second-generation sulfonylurea agents have been demonstrated to have low transplacental passage in both in vitro and in vivo models although glyburide has been detected in cord blood [82].

Glyburide
Although glyburide used to be considered equally efficacious to insulin with regards to pregnancy outcomes [83–86], recent evidence suggests that insulin is superior to glyburide with a lower neonatal birth weight (109 g), less fetal macrosomia (RR 0.38), and less neonatal hypoglycemia (RR 0.49) [87,88]. Approximately 10% to 20% of women on this regimen do not achieve euglycemia, especially women with a BMI >30. Obese women with GDM requiring medication to achieve euglycemia should probably be treated with insulin rather than with oral agents [89]. If an oral hypoglycemic agent is chosen, metformin is preferred to glyburide [87]. If used, glyburide is started at 2.5 mg orally in the morning with a maximum dose of 20 mg daily.

Metformin
Metformin (Glucophage) is commonly used in women with polycystic ovarian syndrome to treat infertility related to anovulation. The incidence of miscarriage is decreased in women who are continued on this therapy throughout pregnancy [90], and there is evidence to suggest a decreased risk of GDM when metformin is continued [90]; however, this outcome is misleading as the medication may be masking the disease. No attributable birth defects or adverse outcomes in this patient population have been reported [1].

Compared to insulin therapy, metformin (+ insulin if necessary) is associated with less maternal hypoglycemia [91], more preterm births (RR 1.5), less gestational hypertension (RR 0.53), less severe neonatal hypoglycemia (RR 0.62), and nonclinically significant differences of less maternal weight gain (1 kg) and lower gestational age at delivery (0.16 weeks) [87,92]. About one-third of patients failed metformin treatment. Metformin has no added benefit for postpartum weight loss [93]. Women with GDM who are obese, have a high fasting glucose, or need pharmacologic therapy early (e.g., <24 weeks) in pregnancy may be more suitable for insulin therapy or may require insulin as an adjunct to metformin therapy [94,95]. In women whose total insulin dose is ≥1.2 IU/kg, the addition of metformin has been shown to improve glycemic control, decrease maternal hypoglycemia, reduce neonatal hypoglycemia and decrease NICU admission [96]. Vitamin B12 stores are not affected by metformin [97].

Compared to glyburide, those treated with metformin had less maternal weight gain (2 kg), lower neonatal birth weights (206 g), less macrosomia, and fewer LGA infants [87].

In summary, insulin is overall superior to oral glycemic agents for prevention of the complications of GDM. If an oral hypoglycemic agent is chosen, it appears that metformin may be preferred over glyburide. Additionally, consideration can be given to the addition of metformin to an insulin regimen rather than continued increase of insulin dose.

Insulin
Useful sample calculations for the total daily insulin requirement and insulin regimen are in Table 5.5 [98–100] and Figures 5.1 and 5.2.

As with pregestational DM, insulin glargine, neutral protamine Hagedorn (NPH), and insulin lispro can be used

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Trimester</th>
<th>Units/kg/day</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>0.7–0.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>0.8–1.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>0.9–1.2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


Note: Patients with multifetal gestations or who have received steroids or betamimetics often require higher doses.
for glucose control. Compared to regular insulin, insulin lispro is associated with a lower incidence of maternal hypoglycemic episodes in women with GDM [101]. Although early studies did not demonstrate benefit [102], it has been clearly established that in women with GDM, compared to no treatment or diet only, diet and glucose monitoring with insulin, if needed, are associated with reduced macrosomia [103] and shoulder dystocia; similar incidences of cesarean, NICU admission, and neonatal hypoglycemia [104]; and no birth trauma (bone fracture, nerve palsy) (vs. 1%) or perinatal death (vs. 1%) [3,6]. Mood and quality of life are improved, and the incidence of depression decreases with the above interventions and the optimization of glycemic control [6].

Table 5.5 shows characteristics of randomized trials comparing treatment of GDM with metformin, glyburide, and insulin.

**Nutritional Supplementation**
Calcium with vitamin D may have beneficial effects on glucose metabolism, lipid profiles [112,113], and biomarkers of oxidative stress [112], although the effect on blood glucose levels has been disputed [114]. Probiotic treatment (capsules or yogurt) [59,115,116] and DHEA supplementation [117,118] have not been shown to be beneficial.

**Antepartum Testing**
Antepartum fetal testing and ultrasound evaluations have not been standardly applied to the management of gestational diabetics as there is no clear literature to provide direction.

- **Euglycemia with diet only**: Although there is limited data, no testing seems to be necessary. Consider weekly or twice weekly nonstress tests (NSTs) starting at 40 weeks.
- **Hyperglycemia or medication necessary**: Consider management similar to pregestational diabetics: weekly or twice weekly NSTs from 32 to 35 6/7 weeks, then twice weekly NSTs from 36 weeks until delivery, which is usually accomplished between 39 and 40 weeks (see Chapter 4).

Ultrasound assessment of fetal weight is commonly employed, but because of the inherent inaccuracy of predicting macrosomia, it has not been supported by any studies, despite application of customized or normalized population growth curves [119].

**Delivery**
**Timing, Mode, and Lung Maturity**
There is insufficient evidence to assess the timing and mode of delivery in gestational diabetics. Compared to expectant management until 41–42 weeks, induction of labor at 38 weeks in women with insulin-dependent diabetes (of which >90% were gestational) is associated with reduced incidences of macrosomia [2,120]. However, the sample size was too small to evaluate the impact on perinatal mortality, which is a concern in women with diabetes who are delivered prior to 39 weeks [2]. A secondary analysis of an RCT on those with mild gestational diabetes supports IOL prior to EDC as it reduces the risk of CD [121].

In women requiring medication, management is usually similar to that of the pregestational diabetic, and delivery is advocated at around 39 0/7–39 6/7 weeks. In general, indicated delivery before 39 weeks, if truly indicated, should not require assessment of fetal maturity. If assessment of fetal lung maturity is done, laboratory tests are interpreted as in nondiabetic patients with phosphatidylglycerol ≥3% accepted by most authorities as the lab value indicating the least risk for fetal respiratory insufficiency in diabetic women; patients should be cautioned that a positive test does not preclude infant morbidity (see Chapter 57). While recognizing that macrosomia remains a difficult antenatal diagnosis both clinically and by ultrasound, delivery via cesarean is suggested for fetuses estimated to be ≥4500 g [1] (see Chapter 45). Operative deliveries should be avoided in women with fetuses estimated to be >4000 g and prolonged second stage of labor.

**Intrapartum Glucose Management**
Intrapartum management requires frequent assessment of blood glucose levels during labor (see Figure 4.1). For patients who have required insulin therapy, perform hourly assessments of blood sugars to maintain them between 70 and 120 mg/dL. Intravenous insulin may be necessary to maintain the above glucose levels, but is seldom required in these patients. Patients managed with diet alone may not need as frequent evaluations during labor and can have assessments every four hours.

**Anesthesia**
No specific adjustments necessary unless woman is obese.
Postpartum/Breast-Feeding
In the postpartum period, women with GDM do not, in general, require medication to control their blood sugars. Checking a fasting and postprandial value prior to discharge can be employed, especially if pregestational diabetes is suspected. Because these women have an increased risk of developing frank diabetes, screening with a 75-g glucose challenge or other nonpregnant tests (see Table 4.1) is advocated when the woman is six to eight weeks postpartum (Figure 5.3) [1] and every two to three years thereafter [40,122–124]. This can be accomplished by either the obstetrician with referral if values are abnormal or by referral for the screening to a medicine specialist. Breast-feeding, diet, and exercise should be encouraged in these women, particularly if they are obese. All forms of contraception are available to diabetics, providing they have no contraindications, such as hypertension or vascular disease.

Patients should be informed that they are at increased risk for developing diabetes during their lifetime, up to 50% over the next 10 years [40]. Women who are obese, diagnosed with GDM early in gestation, and have significantly abnormal screening results during and after pregnancy have the highest chance of adult onset diabetes. Prepregnancy obesity and fasting glucose >100 mg/dL (from 100-g glucose tolerance test) are associated with increased risks of development of metabolic syndrome [125]. Some suggest that women with an abnormal one-hour result are also at increased risk of metabolic derangements later in life despite a normal three-hour GTT [126]. Counseling regarding diet and exercise, maintenance of normal BMI, and surveillance with periodic screening are indicated. Cesarean delivery and gestational weight gain were associated with increases in depressive symptoms at six weeks postpartum [127].

REFERENCES
7. Bancroft K, Tuffnell DJ, Mason GC, Rogerson LJ, Mansfield M. A randomised controlled pilot study of the management of gestational impaired glucose tolerance. BJOG 2000; 107(8): 959–63. [RCT, n = 68. Impaired glucose tolerance (defined following 75-gm OGTT as fasting 7.0 mmol/L in one week), serial ultrasound for growth and amniotic fluid, Doppler studies, CTG monitoring, unmonitored group received dietary advice, HbA1c monthly but no capillary glucose measurements]


Crowther CA, Hiller JE, Moss JR, McPhee AJ, Jeffries WS, Robinson JV. Effect of treatment of gestational diabetes mellitus on pregnancy outcomes. *NEJM* 2005; 352: 2477–86. [RCT, n = 1000. Impaired glucose tolerance (defined following 75 gm OGTT as fasting <7.0 mmol/L, two-hour between 7.8 mmol/L and 11.0 mmol/L). *Diabetes monitoring, and insulin as needed vs. routine care*]


Muktabhant B, Lawrie TA, Lambigannon P, Laopaiboon M. Diet or exercise, or both, for preventing excessive weight gain in pregnancy. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2013; 6. [Meta-analysis, 49 RCTs, n = 11,444]


Oostdam N, van Poppen NM, Wouters MG et al. No effect of the FIt2or2 exercise programme on blood glucose, insulin sensitivity, and birth weight in pregnant women who were overweight and at risk for gestational diabetes: Results of a randomised controlled trial. *BJOG* 2012; 119(9): 1098–107. [RCT, n = 121]


Bancroft K, Tuffnell DJ, Mason GC, Rogerson LJ, Mansfield M. A randomised controlled pilot study of the management of gestational impaired glucose tolerance. *BJOG* 2000; 107(8): 959–63. [RCT, n = 68. Impaired glucose tolerance (defined following 75 gm OGTT as fasting <7.0 mmol/L, two-hour between 7.8 mmol/L and 11.0 mmol/L same as Crowther). Monitored
group was given standard dietary advice, glucose metabolism was monitored by capillary glucose series five days a week, HbA1c was measured monthly (insulin was introduced if used in the presence of more than 3 capillary glucose levels above 8 mmol/L in one week), serial ultrasound for growth and amniotic fluid, Doppler studies, CTG monitoring. Unmonitored group received dietary advice, HbA1c monthly but no capillary glucose measurements.

79. Ford FA, Bruce CB, Fraser RB. Preliminary report of a randomised trial of dietary advice in women with mild abnormalities of glucose tolerance in pregnancy. Personal communication 1997. [RCT, n = 29. Impaired glucose tolerance (defined following a 75-g OGTT as two-hour plasma glucose level between 8 mmol/L and 11 mmol/L) compared with Crowther. Dietary treatment group was given specific diabetic type advice (i.e., “high fiber, high carbohydrate, low fat, and appropriate energy”). No mention of insulin therapy. The control group received no specific dietary advice. Both groups attended clinic weekly and performed plasma glucose profiles]


82. Hebert ME, Ma X, Naraharisetti SB et al. Are we optimizing gestational diabetes treatment with glyburide? The pharmacologic basis for better clinical practice. Clin Pharmacol Ther 2009; 85(6): 607–14. [Assessed steady-state PK of glyburide, insulin sensitivity, and β-cell responsivity after a mixed-meal tolerance test in women with GDM (n = 40), healthy pregnant women (n = 40), and nonpregnant women with DM (n = 26)]


Hypothyroidism
Sushma Jwala

KEY POINTS

- **Hypothyroidism** is characterized by inadequate thyroid hormone production and usually requires for diagnosis elevated thyroid-stimulating hormone (TSH) and low free thyroxine (FT4) (or free triiodothyronine [FT3]).
- Subclinical hypothyroidism requires for diagnosis an elevated TSH but normal FT4.
- Hashimoto's thyroiditis is the most common cause of hypothyroidism in pregnancy with thyroid peroxidase antibodies in >90% of these women.
- Untreated or partially treated hypothyroidism is associated with increased risk of preeclampsia, abortion, preterm birth, low birth weight, fetal death, and long-term impaired psychomotor function.
- All physiologic changes and placental transfer should be known by the physician caring for thyroid disease in pregnancy (Table 6.1).
- Women at high risk for hypothyroidism (Table 6.3) should be screened with TSH and FT4.
- Goal of levothyroxine treatment in pregnancy is maternal serum TSH 0.5 to 2.0 μIU/L, and FT4 in upper third of normal range. Most women with hypothyroidism need an increase in thyroxine replacement dose.
- In women with overt hypothyroidism, TSH and FT4 levels should be checked preconceptionally, at first prenatal visit in the first trimester, four weeks after altering the doses (therefore, every four weeks until TSH is normal, especially in the first 20 weeks), and at least every trimester in pregnancy.
- Iodine supplementation in a population with high levels of endemic cretinism results in a reduction in deaths during infancy and early childhood with decreased endemic cretinism at four years of age and better psychomotor development scores between four and 25 months of age.
- There is no evidence that screening and treatment of subclinical hypothyroidism during pregnancy improves maternal or fetal outcomes.
- Screening and treating for hypothyroxinemia is also unnecessary as it is not associated with any maternal or child benefits.
- Every woman with a thyroid nodule should have fine-needle aspiration and TSH checked.

CLINICAL HYPOTHYROIDISM Definitions (Figure 6.1)

- Clinical (or overt) hypothyroidism: Inadequate thyroid hormone production of any cause. Usually requires elevated TSH and low FT4 (or FT3).
- Subclinical hypothyroidism: Elevated TSH and normal FT4. Elevated TSH reflects the sensitivity of the hypothalamic-pituitary axis to small decreases in thyroid hormone; as the thyroid gland fails, the TSH level may rise above the upper limit of normal while the FT4 is still within the normal range.
- Hypothyroxinemia: Normal TSH and low FT4.
- TSH is also called thyrotropin, T4 is also called thyroxine, T3 is also called triiodothyronine; FT4 stands for free T4 and FT3 stands for free T3.

Incidence

1% in general population; about 0.3% in pregnant women [1,2]. General screening of obstetric patients reveals an incidence of 2.5% of elevated serum TSH [2]. There is an increased incidence with concurrent autoimmune disease, that is, 5% to 8% incidence in patients with type I diabetes [3]. Up to 25% of patients with type I diabetes develop postpartum thyroid dysfunction [3]. In the United States, 10% to 15% of pregnant women are iodine deficient (urinary iodine concentration <5 μg/dL) [4].

Signs/Symptoms

Thyroid disease may be masked by a hypermetabolic state of pregnancy. The most common signs include dry skin, weakness, facial puffiness, and mild-to-moderate weight gain [5]. Fatigue, constipation, cold intolerance, muscle cramps, insomnia, hair loss, goiter, prolonged relaxation phase of deep tendon reflexes, carpal tunnel syndrome, intellectual slowness, voice changes, myxedema, and (extremely rarely) coma are less common.

Pathophysiology

The thyroid maintains the metabolism in cells by stimulating transcription and translation. It also stimulates oxygen consumption and regulates lipid and carbohydrate metabolism and is necessary for normal growth and maturation. The thyroid is under the control of TSH from the anterior pituitary. TSH induces thyroid growth, differentiation, and iodine metabolism.

A majority (>99%) of cases of hypothyroidism are due to primary thyroid abnormality. Secondary hypothyroidism is pituitary in origin following irradiation or hypophysectomy or Sheehan's syndrome (postpartum pituitary necrosis). Tertiary hypothyroidism (hypothalamic) is rare.

Hashimoto's thyroiditis is the most common cause of hypothyroidism in pregnancy. It is a chronic autoimmune lymphocytic thyroiditis, characterized by antithyroid antibodies (thyroid peroxidase [TPO] antibodies 90%, thyroid globulin antibodies 20%–50%), and usually firm, painless goiter as a presenting symptom [6]. TPO antibodies are present in 8% of the general population. Less common causes are subacute viral thyroiditis, iodine deficiency (median urinary
iodine level <100 μg/L: “burned-out” Graves’ disease, after radiodine therapy, thyroidecotomy, or antithyroid drugs; other head and neck surgery; other radiation therapy to the head, neck, or chest area; medications—lithium, iodine, amiodarone; rarely hypothalamic dysfunction, that is, Sheehan’s syndrome.

Complications
Untreated or partially treated clinical hypothyroidism is associated with increased risk of infertility, miscarriage, preeclampsia (44%), abrupton (19%), preterm birth, low birth weight (31%), or fetal death (12%) [7–9]. Fetal goiter does not develop in women with hypothyroidism unless they had previous hyperthyroidism and thyroid-stimulating immunoglobulins (TSIs) are still >200%. Infants whose mothers had serum FT4 below the 10th percentile may have a high incidence of impaired psychomotor function [10].

Management

Prevention
Recently, trace element selenium has been shown to reduce the incidence of hypothyroidism during pregnancy and postpartum periods [11]. Selenoproteins act as antioxidants and decrease thyroid inflammation in autoimmune thyroiditis by reducing TPO antibody titers. Up to 30% of women with TPO antibodies develop permanent hypothyroidism following postpartum thyroid dysfunction [12]. This may suggest a preventive role of selenomethionine supplementation in autoimmune thyroid dysfunction.

Preconception
In a small RCT, it was shown that preconception adjustment with increased dosage of levothyroxine supplementation in hypothyroid women of reproductive age results in better control by TSH and FT4 at first prenatal visit [13].

Pregnancy Considerations

Anatomy/Radiology
In pregnancy, moderate glandular hyperplasia and increased vascularity in the thyroid are physiologic. Thyroid volume by ultrasound increases a mean of 18% during pregnancy and returns to normal size in the postpartum period [4,14]. Any significant goiter should be worked up.

Maternal physiology
Several changes occur as shown in Table 6.1 (Chapter 3 of Obstetric Evidence Based Guidelines). Thyroid-binding globulin (TBG) increases about 200% secondary to estrogen-stimulated hepatocyte production and altered glycosylation, which inhibits degradation. High levels of HCG, which peak at 10 to 12 weeks, have some TSH-like activity and stimulate thyroid hormone secretion, which in turn suppresses TSH. Normal TSH levels in pregnancy are shown in Table 6.2. TSH suppression is even more marked for twins [15]. Peripheral metabolism of thyroid hormones is also altered by placental deiodinases, more in the second half of pregnancy [16].

Throughout pregnancy, there is an approximately 30% to 50% increase in T4 requirement [17,18]. Plasma iodide levels decrease during pregnancy because of fetal use of iodide and increased maternal renal clearance of iodide [19]. Pregnancy does not appear to alter the course of thyroid cancer [20].

Fetal Thyroid Physiology
In the fetus, the small amount of thyroxine that crosses the placenta provides all the thyroid hormone until 10 to 12 weeks. Before 12 weeks (time period for initiation of fetal brain development), the fetus is entirely dependent on maternal transfer of thyroid hormones. Upon beginning of activation of the fetal hypothalamic/pituitary–thyroid axis at this gestational age, the fetal thyroid begins to concentrate iodine and synthesize iodothyronines. At 18 to 20 weeks, the fetal thyroid is controlled by fetal pituitary TSH and mature hormone synthesis begins. TSH, T4, and T3 all begin to increase throughout gestation as there seems to be minimal negative feedback mechanism [19].

Placenta Physiology
It is important to be aware of which molecules cross the placenta and can affect the fetus. FT4, FT3, thyrotropin-releasing
HYPOTHYROIDISM

Table 6.2 Thyroid-Stimulating Hormone Percentiles According to Gestational Age in Singleton Pregnancies

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Gestational Age (Weeks)</th>
<th>2.5th Percentile</th>
<th>50th Percentile</th>
<th>97.5th Percentile</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>0.23</td>
<td>1.36</td>
<td>4.94</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>0.14</td>
<td>1.21</td>
<td>5.09</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>0.09</td>
<td>1.01</td>
<td>4.93</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>0.03</td>
<td>0.84</td>
<td>4.04</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>0.02</td>
<td>0.74</td>
<td>3.12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>0.01</td>
<td>0.76</td>
<td>3.65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>0.01</td>
<td>0.79</td>
<td>3.32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>0.01</td>
<td>0.79</td>
<td>4.03</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>0.01</td>
<td>0.85</td>
<td>3.33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>0.02</td>
<td>0.92</td>
<td>3.40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>0.04</td>
<td>0.92</td>
<td>2.74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>0.02</td>
<td>0.98</td>
<td>3.32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>0.17</td>
<td>1.07</td>
<td>3.48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>0.22</td>
<td>1.07</td>
<td>3.03</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>0.25</td>
<td>1.11</td>
<td>3.20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>0.28</td>
<td>1.21</td>
<td>3.04</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>0.26</td>
<td>1.15</td>
<td>4.09</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23</td>
<td>0.25</td>
<td>1.08</td>
<td>3.02</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24</td>
<td>0.34</td>
<td>1.13</td>
<td>2.99</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25</td>
<td>0.30</td>
<td>1.11</td>
<td>2.82</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>0.20</td>
<td>1.07</td>
<td>2.89</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27</td>
<td>0.36</td>
<td>1.11</td>
<td>2.84</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28</td>
<td>0.30</td>
<td>1.03</td>
<td>2.78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29</td>
<td>0.31</td>
<td>1.07</td>
<td>3.14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>0.20</td>
<td>1.07</td>
<td>3.27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31</td>
<td>0.23</td>
<td>1.06</td>
<td>2.81</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32</td>
<td>0.31</td>
<td>1.07</td>
<td>2.98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33</td>
<td>0.31</td>
<td>1.20</td>
<td>5.25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34</td>
<td>0.20</td>
<td>1.18</td>
<td>3.18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35</td>
<td>0.30</td>
<td>1.20</td>
<td>3.41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36</td>
<td>0.33</td>
<td>1.31</td>
<td>4.59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>37</td>
<td>0.37</td>
<td>1.35</td>
<td>6.40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>38</td>
<td>0.23</td>
<td>1.16</td>
<td>4.33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39</td>
<td>0.57</td>
<td>1.59</td>
<td>5.14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>≥40</td>
<td>0.38</td>
<td>1.68</td>
<td>5.43</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


Table 6.3 Screening for Hypothyroidism in Pregnancy

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Symptomatic (see signs/symptoms)</th>
<th>Previous therapy for hyperthyroidism</th>
<th>History of high-dose neck irradiation</th>
<th>Goiter/palpable thyroid nodules</th>
<th>Family history of thyroid disease</th>
<th>Suspected hypopituitarism</th>
<th>Type I DM [3]</th>
<th>Hyperlipidemia</th>
<th>Medications (iodine, amiodarone, lithium, dilantin, rifampin)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>


Table 6.4 Primary vs. Secondary Hypothyroidism

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Primary hypothyroidism</th>
<th>TSH</th>
<th>FT4</th>
<th>Antithyroglobulin</th>
<th>Antithyroid peroxidase</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>↑</td>
<td></td>
<td>+/-</td>
<td>+/−</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Secondary hypothyroidism</th>
<th>TSH</th>
<th>FT4</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>↓</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Abbreviations: FT4, free thyroxine; TSH, thyroid-stimulating hormone.

[28,29] and FT4. Elevated TSH and either low FT4 or low FT3 are consistent with clinical hypothyroidism (Table 6.4; Figure 6.1). In the first trimester, even a TSH level >2.5 is abnormal. Hypothyroidism in pregnancy is mainly (>99%) primary. Elevated TSH and normal FT4 are consistent with subclinical hypothyroidism (see below).

TPO antibody is present in not only 90% women with Hashimoto’s thyroiditis, but also 10% of women with euthyroid at 12 weeks. It crosses the placenta, may increase incidence of spontaneous abortion [30], and increases the incidence of postpartum thyroid dysfunction [31]. TPO antibody levels >50 IU/mL have been shown to be associated with increased risk of abortion [32]. Measuring TPO or thyroglobulin antibodies is important for diagnosis, but serial levels are usually not indicated because treatment does not alter them. At present, routine testing of TPO antibodies during pregnancy is not recommended (see below).

Treatment

Goal

Maternal serum TSH 0.5 to 2.0 μU/L, and FT4 in upper third of normal range. Interestingly, there are really no RCTs on treatment of overt hypothyroidism in pregnancy. Two trials of 30 and 48 hypothyroid women, respectively, compared levothyroxine doses, but both trials reported only biochemical outcomes [33].

Thyroxine Replacement: Dose

Preexisting hypothyroidism. Approximately 45% to 85% of hypothyroid women need up to 45% increase in thyroxine replacement dose during pregnancy because of increased metabolism of thyroxine, weight gain, increased T4 pool, high serum TBG, placental deiodinase activity, and transfer of T4 to fetus [34,35]. Some advocate increasing thyroxine replacement dose during pregnancy because of preexisting disease.

Ferrous sulfate and calcium carbonate interfere with T4 absorption and should be taken at a different time of day from thyroxine therapy [36]. Therefore, pregnant women should space their levothyroxine and prenatal vitamins by at least two to three hours. Carbamazepine, phenytoin, and rifampin can increase the clearance of T4. It takes approximately four weeks for thyroxine therapy to alter TSH level. Not only under-replacement (see above) but also over-replacement (pregnancy loss, low birth weight) should be avoided [37].
Thyroxine Replacement: Type

Levothyroxine. Levothyroxine is the recommended thyroid replacement. Desiccated thyroid preparation, such as Armour Thyroid, at 30 mg/day initial dose, then increased incrementally by 15 mg every one to three weeks until maintenance dose of 60 to 120 mg/day, is an alternative if levothyroxine is unavailable.

Iodine supplement. Iodine supplementation in a population with high levels of endemic cretinism results in a reduction of the condition with no apparent adverse effects [38]. Iodine supplementation is associated with a reduction in deaths during infancy and early childhood with decreased endemic cretinism at four years of age and better psychomotor development scores between four and 25 months of age. About 10% to 15% of the U.S. population has iodine deficiency, which can manifest as subclinical hypothyroidism or with normal TSH and low T4. A daily dose of 250 μg of iodine is recommended during pregnancy and breast-feeding [39].

Antepartum Management

• TSH and FT4 levels should be checked preconception, at first prenatal visit in first trimester, four weeks after altering the doses (therefore, every four weeks until TSH is normal, especially in first 20 weeks), and at least every trimester in pregnancy.
• Fetal heart rate should be assessed at each visit by dopson to rule out fetal bradycardia <120.
• Antepartum testing is not recommended if euthyroid; weekly nonstress tests beginning at about 32 weeks can be considered for clinically hypothyroid patients.
• Ultrasound is not recommended if euthyroid; monthly ultrasound can be considered for fetal growth, thyroid circumference [40], and fetal heart rate if clinically hypothyroid.
• Important to inform pediatrician at time of delivery.

Postpartum

Immediately post-delivery, the dosage of levothyroxine should be reduced to the prepregnancy dose, and TSH levels should be measured six to eight weeks postpartum with follow-up with medical doctor/endocrinologist.

Neonatal

The incidence of iodine-deficient congenital hypothyroidism is 1/4000 births, 5% identified at birth by clinical symptoms, others by newborn screening. The United States screens all newborns. If discovered and treated in first few weeks of life, near-normal growth and intelligence are expected [41,42]. The majority of cases are due to agenesis/dysgenesis of fetal thyroid, dyshormonogenesis, or iodine deficiency. Fetuses are protected in utero by a small quantity of maternal T4 that crosses the placenta. Neonatal issues include neuropsychological abnormalities, deafness, respiratory difficulties, growth failure, lethargy, and hypotonia and myxedema of the larynx and epiglottis.

HYPOTHYROXINEMIA

Incidence

1.3% [48].

Diagnosis

Normal TSH and low FT4.

Screening and Management

There are at least two large RCTs showing no benefit from screening and treating hypothyroxinemia. In a RCT, levothyroxine supplementation given to asymptomatic women screened and identified to have a free T4 below the 2.5th percentile was associated with a similar IQ and cognitive outcomes in their children at three years of age, compared to placebo [48]. In another RCT, levothyroxine supplementation given to asymptomatic women screened and identified to have a TSH ≥97.5th percentile was associated with a similar IQ and cognitive outcomes in their children at five years of age compared to placebo [49]. Therefore, currently, there is no evidence that screening and treatment of subclinical hypothyroidism during pregnancy improves maternal or fetal outcomes [22,26,49].

Women with subclinical hypothyroidism and thyroid antibodies (e.g., TPO) frequently progress to overt hypothyroidism and may develop hyperlipidemia and atherosclerotic heart disease [50].

SUBCLINICAL HYPOTHYROIDISM

Incidence

2%–5% [43–45].

TPO-ANTIBODIES ONLY

Some women are euthyroid but have been identified to have TPO antibodies. In a RCT of euthyroid pregnant women with
thyroid peroxidase antibodies, levothyroxine therapy significantly reduced the rate of PTB by 72% compared to placebo (RR 0.28; 95% CI 0.10–0.80), and the incidence of preeclampsia was similar (RR 0.61; 95% CI 0.11 to 3.48) [33,35]. Routine thyroid screening and/or treatment for TPO in asymptomatic euthyroid women is not suggested as a possible intervention for PTB prevention in absence of a clinical thyroid disease until further confirmed additional studies.

A trial of 169 TOP-positive, euthyroid women compared the trace element selenomethionine (selenium) with placebo and no significant differences were seen for either preeclampsia (RR 1.44; 95% CI 0.25 to 8.38) or preterm birth (RR 0.96; 95% CI 0.20 to 4.61) [33], but there was an improvement (decrease) in postpartum thyroiditis [11].

**THYROID NODULE**

**Incidence**
5% to 10% of thyroid tumors are neoplastic. Thyroid cancer occurs in 1/1000 pregnant women with palpable thyroid nodule.

**Diagnosis**
Ultrasound to define dominant nodule, followed by fine-needle aspiration for nodules >1 cm, which has a 95% diagnostic accuracy in pregnancy [52]. Radioisotope scanning is contraindicated in pregnancy. Serum TSH and FT4 should be checked.

**Thyroid Surgery**
For malignancy diagnosed on fine-needle aspiration, neck exploration should be performed ideally either in the second trimester or postpartum [52]. Neck irradiation for malignancy should be deferred until after pregnancy.

**POSTPARTUM THYROIDITIS**

**Definition**
Autoimmune inflammation of the thyroid gland that presents as new-onset painless hypothyroidism, transient thyrotoxicosis, or thyrotoxicosis followed by hypothyroidism within one year postpartum.

**Incidence**
Occurs in 5% of women in United States who do not have a history of thyroid disease [53] and may occur after delivery or pregnancy loss.

**Risk Factors**
Postpartum depression, high serum TPO antibody concentration, history of Graves’s disease, or type I diabetes.

**Etiology**
Subacute lymphocytic thyroiditis or postpartum exacerbation of chronic lymphocytic thyroiditis.

**Diagnosis**
Documentation of new-onset abnormal levels of TSH and/or FT4 within the first postpartum year. All women with symptoms of thyroid dysfunction or who develop a goiter postpartum should be evaluated with TSH, FT4. If the diagnosis is unclear, an anti-TPO antibody level should be measured. Women with highest levels of TSH and anti-TPO antibodies have the highest risk for developing permanent hypothyroidism [54].

**Three Clinical Presentations**
1. Transient hyperthyroidism followed by recovery: 28%
2. Transient hyperthyroidism, followed by transient or rarely permanent hypothyroidism: 28%
3. Transient or permanent hypothyroidism: 44%

**Management**
Most women do not require treatment. Treatment is based on symptoms.

If symptomatic, thyrotoxicosis should be treated with a beta-adrenergic antagonist drug. Transient hypothyroidism is treated with thyroxine (25–75 mcg/day) for 6–12 months [22].

**Recurrence Risk**
Risk of recurrence is 70% [55].

Risk of developing permanent primary hypothyroidism in the five- to 10-year period following an episode of postpartum thyroiditis is markedly increased. Annual TSH level should be performed in them [56].

**REFERENCES**
20. Moosa M, Mazaferri EL. Outcome of differentiated thyroid cancer diagnosed in pregnant women. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 1997; 82(9): 2862–6. [II-3]
49. Casey B. Effect of maternal subclinical hypothyroidism or hypothyroxemia on IQ in offspring. *AJOG* 2016; 214(Suppl.): S2. [RCT, n = 677 for subclinical hypothyroidism; n = 526 for hypothyroxinemia]


Hyperthyroidism
Sushma Jwala

KEY POINTS
- Hyperthyroidism occurs in 0.1% to 0.4% of pregnancies.
- Graves’ disease accounts for 95% of women with hyperthyroidism.
- Untreated hyperthyroidism is associated with increased risks of spontaneous pregnancy loss, preterm birth, preeclampsia, fetal death, abruption, fetal growth restriction (FGR), and neonatal Graves’ disease as well as maternal congestive heart failure and thyroid storm.
- Hyperemesis gravidarum (HG) can be associated with gestational transient biochemical thyrotoxicosis (low, usually undetectable thyroid-stimulating hormone [TSH], and/or elevated T4), but this biochemical change always resolves spontaneously. Therefore, there should be no testing, follow-up, or treatment for biochemical thyrotoxicosis in women with HG.
- Clinical hyperthyroidism is diagnosed by suppressed TSH and elevated serum free thyroxine (FT4). Thyroid-stimulating immunoglobulin (TSI) can be obtained as positive TSI is consistent with Graves’ disease, and values >200% to 500% indicate higher risk for fetal/neonatal hyperthyroidism.
- Goal of treatment is to keep FT4 in high normal range. Measure TSH and FT4 every four weeks until FT4 is consistently in the high normal range and then every trimester.
- Main treatment is with either propylthiouracil (PTU) or methimazole. Because of the very rare teratogenic effects of methimazole and the hepatotoxicity of PTU, PTU can be used during the first trimester followed by switching over to methimazole in the second trimester and continuing it for the rest of the pregnancy.
- Thyroid storm is initially diagnosed clinically and treated aggressively with PTU, saturated solution of potassium iodide (SSKI), dexamethasone, and propranolol.

DEFINITIONS
Hyperthyroidism
Hyperfunctioning thyroid gland resulting in thyrotoxicosis. It usually implies low TSH and high FT4 (or FT3).

Graves’ Disease
An autoimmune disease causing hyperthyroidism, characterized by production of thyroid-stimulating immunoglobulins (TSIs) or thyroid-stimulating hormone-binding inhibitory immunoglobulins (TBIIs). TSIs coexist with TBIIs 30% of the time [1]. TSIs stimulate thyrotropin receptors. Instead, TBIIs can stimulate or inhibit TSH receptors [2].

TBIIs are seen in 30% of patients with Graves’ disease and in 10% of patients with autoimmune Hashimoto’s thyroiditis. TBIIs disappear, and patients achieve euthyroidism in 40% of the cases. Therefore, TBI assays have not been developed for clinical use because of higher costs involved in developing TBI assays as compared to the number of patients who would benefit from them.

TRAbs (TSH receptor antibodies) is a broader term used to include both TSIs and TBIIs. TRAb assays, in general, measure TSIs as TBI assays have not been established so far [3].

Thyrotoxicosis
Clinical and biochemical state that results from an excess production or exposure to thyroid hormone from any etiology.

Gestational Thyrotoxicosis
Biochemical tests consistent with hyperthyroidism during pregnancy but not a disease.

Thyroid Storm
Severe, acute, life-threatening exacerbation of the signs/symptoms of hyperthyroidism.

Subclinical Hyperthyroidism
Sustained TSH <0.1 mU/L with normal FT4 and free triiodothyronine (FT3) in the absence of nonthyroidal illness.

SIGNS/SYMPTOMS
Symptoms (may mimic hypermetabolic state of pregnancy): nervousness, tremor, frequent stools, excessive sweating, heat intolerance, insomnia, palpitations, decreased appetite, pruritus, decreased exercise tolerance, shortness of breath, eye symptoms of frequent lacrimation, double vision, and retroorbital pain.

Physical Examination
Hypertension, goiter, tachycardia (>100 bpm, which does not decrease with Valsalva), wide pulse pressure, weight loss, ophthalmopathy (lid lag, lid retraction), and dermopathy (localized, pretibial myxedema). Goiter occurs only with iodine deficiency or thyroid disease and must be considered pathological.

INCIDENCE
0.1% to 0.4% of pregnancies [4,5].
ETIOLOGY
Graves’ disease accounts for 95% of women with hyperthyroidism. It can be associated with diffuse thyromegaly or infiltrative ophthalmopathy. Non-Graves’ hyperthyroidism accounts for 5% of women with hyperthyroidism and can be associated with gestational trophoblastic neoplasia [4,6], toxic nodular and multinodular goiter [5], hyperfunctioning thyroid adenoma, subacute thyroiditis, extra thyroid source of thyroid hormone (e.g., struma ovarii), iodine-induced hyperthyroidism, thyrotropin receptor activation [7], or viral thyroiditis.

Of women with hydatidiform mole or choriocarcinoma, 50% to 60% may have severe hyperthyroidism, which is primarily treated with evacuation of the mole or therapy directed against the choriocarcinoma.

BASIC PHYSIOLOGY/PATHOPHYSIOLOGY
See also hypothyroid guideline (see Chapter 6). Ninety-five percent of cases are due to TSIs [7] stimulating excess thyroid hormone production from the thyroid gland (Graves’ disease). These IgG antibodies bind to and activate the G-protein-coupled thyrotropin receptor, which then stimulates follicular hyperplasia and hyperplasia as well as increases thyroid hormone production, T3 more than T4 [2]. Of women with Graves’ disease, 40% to 50% have remission of the disease in 12 to 18 months [8].

COMPLICATIONS
Untreated hyperthyroidism preconception or in pregnancy is associated with increased risks of spontaneous pregnancy loss, preterm birth, preeclampsia, abruptio, fetal death, FGR, low birth weight, maternal congestive heart failure, and thyroid storm [4,5,7,9–13]. Neonatal Graves’ disease can affect neonates of women with Graves’ disease. Fetal thyrotoxicosis is a possibility in women with Graves’ disease. Long-term uncontrolled hyperthyroidism, even subclinical, is associated with increased maternal risk for atrial fibrillation, dementia, Alzheimer’s, and hip fractures.

MANAGEMENT
Pregnancy Considerations
See also hypothyroid guideline in Chapter 6, including tables. High levels of HCG, which peak at 10 to 12 weeks, have some TSH-like activity and stimulate thyroid hormone secretion, which, in turn, suppresses TSH. Normal TSH levels in pregnancy are shown in Table 6.2. TSH suppression is even more marked for twins. Because of pregnancy physiologic changes, hyperthyroidism typically ameliorates during the third trimester but may worsen postpartum.

Hyperemesis gravidarum (HG) is diagnosed by severe nausea and vomiting associated with ketonuria and 5% weight loss (see Chapter 9). Gestational transient biochemical thyrotoxicosis (low, usually undetectable TSH, and/or elevated T4) may be related to high serum HCG and can occur in 3% to 11% of normal pregnancies especially during the period of highest serum HCG concentrations (10–12 weeks) [14]. Therefore, no testing, follow-up, or treatment for thyroid disease in women with HG should be initiated because there is no true thyroid disease, and the biochemical hyperthyroidism always spontaneously resolves [9]. Women with signs or symptoms of hyperthyroidism from before pregnancy can be tested regardless of HG.

Women of childbearing age should have an average iodine intake of 150 μg/day. During pregnancy and breastfeeding, women should increase their daily iodine intake to 250 μg on average [15–17]. Most prenatal vitamins have at least 200 μg in them. In the United States, 10% to 15% of pregnant women are iodine deficient.

SCREENING/DIAGNOSIS
Women with signs/symptoms consistent with hyperthyroidism should be screened with serum TSH and FT4 [18,19]. Clinical hyperthyroidism is diagnosed by suppressed TSH and elevated serum FT4. FT3 is measured in thyrotoxic patients with suppressed TSH but normal FT4 measurements (5% of hyperthyroid women). FT3 elevation indicates T3 thyrotoxicosis.

TSI can be obtained in women with clinical hyperthyroidism at the first visit and/or at 28 to 30 weeks [15–21]. A positive TSI is consistent with Graves’ disease. Values ≥200% to 300% indicate higher risk for fetal/neonatal hyperthyroidism and can help fetal and neonatal management. Unfortunately, there is no standard test for TSI, often making comparisons between different laboratories or studies impossible. Presence of TSI differentiates Graves’ disease from gestational thyrotoxicosis (biochemical tests consistent with hyperthyroidism during pregnancy, but no disease) and HG [5,10,12,22–24]. In patients with HG, routine measurements of thyroid function are not recommended unless other overt signs of hyperthyroidism are evident (see Chapter 9).

Women with thyroid surgery/ablation in the past who continue to produce antibodies (i.e., TSI) warrant assessment of maternal TSI level as these antibodies are associated with fetal/neonatal Graves’ disease [20].

TREATMENT
There are no randomized controlled trials (RCTs) regarding management of hyperthyroidism in pregnancy [25]. The goal is to control symptoms of hyperthyroidism without causing fetal hypothyroidism, keeping FT4 in the high normal range and TSH in the low normal range with the lowest possible dose of thionamide. Propylthiouracil (PTU) >200 mg/day may result in fetal goiter [26], and keeping the FT4 in the upper nonpregnant reference range [27,28] minimizes the risk of fetal hypothyroidism. It may be helpful to measure TSH and FT4 every four weeks until FT4 is consistently in the high normal range. Then measurements every trimester may be obtained. Dosing may need to be decreased as pregnancy advances, and about 30% can discontinue antithyroid therapy and still remain euthyroid.

Pregnancy outcomes have not been shown to improve with treatment of maternal subclinical hyperthyroidism and may result in unnecessary exposure of the fetus to antithyroid drugs [4,22,29]. Identification and treatment of subclinical hyperthyroidism during pregnancy are unwarranted [29].

Thionamides
Propylthiouracil
PTU can be started at 100 mg every eight hours, and dose adjusted according to laboratory values and symptoms. It
might take six to eight weeks to get adequate effect with initial clinical response in as little as two to three weeks. Usual doses are 50 to 150 mg every eight hours with requirements usually inversely proportional to gestational age (decrease as pregnancy advances) [30].

**Methimazole**

Can be started at 20 mg once a day and modified as needed according to laboratory values and symptoms. It is an acceptable alternative as it is equally effective. In fact, in nonpregnant women, methimazole is often preferred to PTU as the longer half-life often allows once-daily dosing (compared to three times a day for PTU). Efficacy of methimazole may be superior to PTU with fewer side effects [2]. The teratologic risks of aplasia cutis and esophageal and choanal atresia (nine cases in literature) are extremely rare [4,8,31–36]. There is no significant difference between PTU and methimazole in normalizing maternal TSH or on neonatal thyroid function, which might imply that transplacental transfer is similar [32]. Because of the very rare teratogenic effects of methimazole and the dual mechanism of action of PTU, some authors have recommended PTU as the thionamide of choice in pregnancy [8]. There is no trial comparing the two in pregnancy, and methimazole may be preferred because of once-daily dosing. Methimazole is a very reasonable alternative and can also be used when there is an allergic reaction to PTU. In 2009, the U.S. FDA had issued a safety alert on hepatotoxicity associated with PTU. Therefore, in order to balance methimazole embroyopathy with PTU-induced hepatotoxicity, societies have recommended that PTU be used during the first trimester followed by switching over to methimazole in the second trimester [30,37] for the rest of the pregnancy.

**Mode of Action**

Both PTU and methimazole compete for peroxidase, blocking organification of iodide and so decreasing thyroid hormone synthesis. PTU also inhibits peripheral T4 to T3 conversion and is therefore thought to work faster with less transplacental crossing than methimazole [2].

**Side Effects**

*Material.* Agranulocytosis (granulocytes <250/mL) is the most serious side effect and occurs in 0.1% to 0.4% of cases. Risk factors are older gravidas and higher doses. It presents with fever, sore throat, malaise, and gingivitis. If hyperthyroid women treated with thionamides present with sore throat and fever, discontinue therapy and check a white blood count [8]. Other side effects (all with incidence of <5%) are thrombocytopenia, hepatitis, lupus-like syndrome, vasculitis, rash, hives, pruritus, nausea, vomiting, arthritis, anorexia, drug fever, and loss of taste or smell [8,38].

*Fetal/neonatal.* As PTU and methimazole both cross the placenta, they may cause fetal hypothyroidism. Transient hypothyroidism may cause goiter secondary to suppression of fetal pituitary–thyroid axis. This, however, rarely requires therapy. IQ scores of children exposed to thionamide in utero are normal compared to nonexposed siblings [39,40].

**Radioiodine**

Radioiodine therapy is often used in the United States as the first- or second-line (after thionamides) therapy. The goal of radioiodine therapy is induced hypothyroidism in order to prevent a recurrence of Graves’ disease. This goal is achieved in about 80% of patients [2]. All women of reproductive age should have a pregnancy test immediately before this treatment. It is generally recommended that women do not attempt conception for 6 to 12 months after radioiodine treatment [2]. As the half-life for radioiodine is eight days, reassurance can be provided to women who present with conception more than four weeks from therapy.

This therapy is absolutely contraindicated in pregnancy. Fetal thyroid tissue will be ablated after 10 weeks. If given after 10 weeks, termination should be presented as an option. If given prior to 10 weeks, radioiodine does not appear to cause congenital hypothyroidism [41–43]. Breastfeeding should be avoided for 120 days after this therapy.

**Beta-Blocker**

Propranolol 20 to 40 mg orally every eight to 12 hours or atenolol 50 to 100 mg orally once a day are useful for rapid control of adrenergic symptoms of thyrotoxicosis until thionamide takes effect (four to six weeks). This therapy does not alter synthesis or secretion of the thyroid hormone. The goal is to keep the maternal heart rate at 80 to 90 bpm without palpitations. Prolonged therapy can lead to fetal side effects, such as FGR, fetal bradycardia, hypoglycemia, and subnormal response to hypoxemic stress.

**Surgery**

This is the least-often used treatment. Thyroidectomy may be indicated for women who [1] cannot tolerate thionamide, [2] need persistently high doses of antithyroid drugs, [3] are noncompliant with antithyroid drugs, [4] have goiter resulting in compressive symptoms, or [5] have other indications similar to nonpregnant women. The second trimester is the optimal time for surgery [44–46].

**Iodine**

Short-term use is safe for symptomatic relief [47]; however, use for longer than two weeks may cause fetal goiter [48].

**ANTEPARTUM TESTING**

- The **fetal heart rate** can be assessed for at least one minute at each visit by doppler to rule out fetal tachycardia >180.
- Thyroid function testing with TSH and FT4 should be performed at least every trimester.
- Weekly NSTs can begin at 32 to 34 weeks, especially in women with uncontrolled hyperthyroidism or elevated TSIs.
- Ultrasound can assess fetal heart rate, thyroid (for goiter), and growth. If clinically hyperthyroid, ultrasounds every four weeks for growth may be indicated. If FGR or fetal tachycardia is present, fetal thyroid circumference can be assessed [49]. The sensitivity and specificity of fetal thyroid ultrasound at 32 weeks are 92% and 100%, respectively, for the diagnosis of clinically relevant fetal thyroid dysfunction [50].
- The fetus is at risk from either hypothyroidism from transplacental passage of antithyroid drugs or from hyperthyroidism from TSI. The presence of a fetal goiter
would point to fetal thyroid dysfunction but not distinguish between these two possibilities. Fetal blood sampling is rarely indicated but can be considered if high maternal TSI (200%–500% normal), and there are fetal signs suggestive of severe thyroid disease, that is, fetal hydrops, goiter, tachycardia, cardiomegaly, FGR, or history of prior fetus with hyperthyroidism [51,52]. Fetal hyperthyroidism should not be feared or tested for if TSIs are <130% (normal range). If the fetus is hyperthyroid, injection of thyroxine in amniotic fluid is a possible intervention [53]. If fetus is hyperthyroid, maternal treatment with thionamide to prevent fetal effects may be indicated even if maternal T4 is low or normal [54].

- It is important to inform pediatrician at time of delivery of maternal diagnosis and drug therapy.

NEONATE
Neonates born to mothers with Graves’ disease should be followed closely by a pediatrician for the possibility of transient neonatal hyperthyroidism [50,55,56]. Neonatal Graves’ disease can affect 2% to 5% neonates of women with Graves’ unrelated to maternal thyroid function and secondary to transplacental transfer of TSI or TBII. The risk is high if the TSI index is ≥5 or ≥200% to 500% [57]. Signs are tachycardia (>160 bpm), goiter, FGR, advanced bone age, craniosynostosis, hydrops, later motor difficulties, hyperactivity, or failure to thrive [57]. Neonates of women who have been treated surgically or with radioactive iodine before pregnancy and still gave TSI are at highest risk for neonatal Graves’ disease because thionamide therapy is not present to counteract this effect. On the other hand, fetal and neonatal complications can also arise from thionamide treatment of the disease as, when this is excessive, signs of hyperthyroidism can occur.

POSTPARTUM
Both PTU and methimazole are considered safe [58]. Only small amounts of PTU cross into breast milk although higher amounts of methimazole are present in breast milk [37,59]. Of pregnant patients in remission from Graves’ disease, 75% will either relapse postpartum or develop postpartum thyroiditis [8].

TSH should be performed three and six months postpartum in women known to have thyroid peroxidase antibodies (TPO-Ab) [60,61]. Annual TSH level should be performed in women with a history of postpartum thyroiditis as they have a markedly increased risk of developing permanent primary hypothyroidism in the next five- to 10-year period following the episode of postpartum thyroiditis [62–65].

THYROID NODULE
Incidence of thyroid nodules in reproductive-aged women in 1%–2% [66]. Evaluation of thyroid nodule in pregnancy includes obtaining complete history and physical, TSH and neck ultrasound. If there is sonographic evidence of hypoechoic pattern, irregular margins, or micro calcifications, malignancy should be suspected [67]. If there is suspicion for malignancy, fine-needle aspiration and histologic evaluation for malignancy should be performed [68]. For thyroid cancer in pregnancy, see Chapter 42.

THYROID STORM
Incidence
Rare hypermetabolic, acute life-threatening condition in pregnancy, which occurs in 1% of hyperthyroid women.

Precipitating Factors
Labor, infection, preeclampsia, severe anemia, surgery.

Signs/Symptoms
Fever, tachycardia disproportionate to fever, mental status change, vomiting, diarrhea, dehydration, cardiac arrhythmia, congestive heart failure [5,69], and rarely seizures, shock, stupor, and coma.

Diagnosis
It initially should be made clinically with a combination of signs and symptoms. Confirmatory labs include increased FT4 (or increased FT3) and very low TSH.

Treatment
PTU, SSKI, dexamethasone, and propranolol should be given as shown in Table 7.1 [37]. The saturated solution of potassium iodide and sodium iodide block the release of thyroid hormone from the gland. Dexamethasone decreases thyroid hormone release and peripheral conversion of T4 to T3. Propranolol inhibits the adrenergic effects of excessive thyroid hormone. Supportive measures include IV fluids with glucose, acetaminophen (as antipyretic), and oxygen as needed. Fetal monitoring and maternal cardiac monitoring are recommended [21]. Delivery in the presence of thyroid storm should be avoided if possible, with maternal treatment leading to in utero fetal resuscitation. The underlying cause, for example, infection, should be treated.

Table 7.1  Suggested Possible Treatment of Thyroid Storm in Pregnant Women

1. Propylthiouracil (PTU), 600–800 mg orally, immediately, even before laboratory tests are back; then 150–200 mg orally every four to six hours. If oral administration is not possible, use methimazole rectal suppositories.
2. Starting one to two hours after PTU administration, saturated solution of potassium iodide (SSKI), two to five drops orally every eight hours; sodium iodide, 0.5–1.0 g intravenously every eight hours; Lugol’s solution, eight drops every six hours; or lithium carbonate, 300 mg orally every six hours.
3. Consider dexamethasone, 2 mg intravenously or intramuscularly every six hours for four doses.
4. Propranolol, 20–80 mg orally every four to six hours or propranolol, 1–2 mg intravenously every five minutes for a total of 6 mg, then 1–10 mg intravenously every four hours.
5. If the patient has a history of severe bronchospasm, consider the following: Reserpine, 1–5 mg intramuscularly every four to six hours Guanethidine, 1 mg/kg orally every 12 hours Diltiazem, 60 mg orally every six to eight hours
6. Phenobarbital, 30–60 mg orally every six to eight hours as needed for extreme restlessness.

REFERENCES

Prolactinoma
Katherine Husk

KEY POINTS
• Diagnosis: elevated prolactin and MRI-proven pituitary adenoma.
• Preconception: treat with dopamine agonist (bromocriptine or cabergoline) aiming to normalize prolactin and decrease size of adenoma, continuing therapy up to positive pregnancy test. Discourage pregnancy until those aims have been achieved and any neurologic or visual symptoms or suprasellar involvement have been resolved.
• Maternal risk is adenoma enlargement; this occurs in pregnancy in 1% to 5% of microadenomas and about 15% to 36% of macroadenomas.
• Bromocriptine and cabergoline have been shown to be safe for the fetus.
• Compared to cabergoline, bromocriptine has the following advantages: cheaper, more pregnancy safety data, no association with cardiac valve disease, but its disadvantages include twice daily (versus twice weekly) dosing and more side effects.
• Management depends on the size of adenoma:
  • Microadenoma (<1 cm): Consider stopping dopamine agonist in pregnancy, especially if normal prepregnancy prolactin and stable microadenoma >2 years. During the pregnancy, the woman should be asked about headaches and changes in vision at each visit (at least every three months). The decision to treat with dopamine agonist is based on symptoms (e.g., headache) and signs (e.g., abnormal visual field examination) only. Prolactin levels should not be checked because they physiologically (tenfold) increase in pregnancy.
  • Macroadenoma (>1 cm): Dopamine agonist should be continued. Monitoring as per microadenoma, plus formal visual field testing every three months. Transsphenoidal surgery is suggested usually only if maximal dopamine agonist therapy is ineffective.
• Postpartum: Continue dopamine agonist therapy in those with macroadenomas. A prolactin level and MRI six to eight weeks postpartum can be performed to assess for regression/remission although prolactin levels may not normalize until six months postpartum. Continue dopamine agonist in women with microadenomas and elevated prolactin. Consider stopping therapy in women with microadenomas, stable >2 years, normal prolactin, and on low-dose therapy. If on dopamine agonist therapy, women should be advised against breast-feeding.

DIAGNOSIS/DEFINITION
Pituitary adenomas producing prolactin (prolactinomas or lactotroph adenomas) are diagnosed by sustained nonpregnant elevation of serum prolactin (usually >40 μg/L × 2; normal prolactin nonpregnant: <20 μg/L) and radiographic (best is MRI) evidence of pituitary adenoma. Rule out other causes of prolactinemia [1].

SYMPTOMS
Before pregnancy, galactorrhea in 80% of women and irregular menses (e.g., oligomenorrhea).

EPIDEMIOLOGY/INCIDENCE
Prolactinomas account for about 40% of pituitary tumors. They are the most common type of secretory pituitary tumor.

ETIOLOGY/BASIC PATHOPHYSIOLOGY
These adenomas produce prolactin. Outside of pregnancy, prolactin levels parallel tumor size fairly closely. Increased prolactin usually causes infertility because of the inhibitory effect of prolactin on secretion of GNRH, which in turn inhibits the release of LH and FSH, thus impairing gonadal steroidogenesis and ovulation and thereby conception. Sometimes the mass effect of a macroadenoma can also lead to infertility. Prolactinomas are usually benign and nonhereditary.

CLASSIFICATION
Microadenoma: <10 mm; macroadenoma: ≥10 mm.

COMPLICATIONS
Mother
The principal risk is the increase in adenoma size sufficient to cause neurologic symptoms, most importantly visual impairment or also headaches. In women with lactotroph adenomas who become pregnant, the hyperestrogenemia of pregnancy may increase the size of the adenoma. This should be distinguished from increase in pituitary (overall) size, which is physiologic in pregnancy. The risk that the adenoma increase will be clinically important depends on the size of the adenoma before pregnancy. The risk of a clinically important increase in the size of a lactotroph microadenoma during pregnancy is small. Because of enlargement, about 1% to 5% of pregnant women with microadenomas develop neurologic symptoms, such as headaches and/or a visual field abnormality and about 1% diabetes insipidus. With macroadenomas, neurologic symptoms occur in about 15% to 36% or higher of pregnant women and diabetes insipidus in about 1% to 2% [2–4]. Long-term hyperprolactinemia may lead to decrease in bone density, which again increases (not back to normal levels) after normal prolactin levels are reestablished [1].

Fetus
The main potential risk to the fetus is from dopamine agonist treatment of hyperprolactinemia. As dopaminergic neurons
form early in fetal development, dopamine represents a key component of motor and cognitive development, and both bromocriptine and cabergoline cross the placenta [5,6]. Administration of bromocriptine during the first months of pregnancy does not harm the fetus (more than 6000 pregnancies reported) [7–9]. Data available about the use of bromocriptine later in pregnancy are less, but no adverse events have been reported. Cabergoline use in pregnancy is probably safe as well (more than 900 pregnancies reported), but less experience is reported in comparison to bromocriptine [5,6,9–13]. Because of the long half-life of cabergoline, concerns were raised about use in pregnancy induction (i.e., achieving pregnancy in a previously infertile woman) [5]; however, use of cabergoline in early pregnancy has not been associated with negative outcomes and thus far there is no evidence to suggest an increased risk of major malformations beyond the baseline risk [5,6,9,12,13]. There are, however, limited data available about use of cabergoline throughout pregnancy [5].

**PREGNANCY CONSIDERATIONS**

The ability to treat prolactinomas successfully with dopamine agonists in >90% of patients allows most women with this disorder to become pregnant. The theoretical basis for an increase in size of the pituitary during pregnancy is that hyperestrogenemia causes lactotroph hyperplasia. Secondary to estrogen causing lactotroph hyperplasia, there is a progressive increase in pituitary size throughout pregnancy, as assessed by MR imaging, so that the volume during the third trimester is more than double of that in nonpregnant women [14].

**PREGNANCY-RELATED MANAGEMENT**

**Principles**

**Effect of Pregnancy on Disease**

The whole pituitary enlarges in pregnancy, and the prolactinoma itself can enlarge. **Prolactin levels are physiologically elevated in pregnancy and cannot be used for management.** Serum levels of prolactin in nonpregnant patients with prolactinomas are usually proportional to the tumor mass, but this relationship is lost in pregnancy, particularly if dopamine agonists are discontinued early in pregnancy [9,15]. Prolactin levels do not correlate well with symptoms in both nonpregnant and pregnant patients with prolactinomas [16].

**Effect of Disease on Pregnancy**

No obstetrical effects unless major surgery is needed.

**Workup**

**In Pregnancy (Figure 8.1)**

- **Prolactin** levels are not helpful in pregnancy.
- **MRI** is more effective in revealing small tumors and the extension of large tumors compared to CT scan [1].
- **Visual field testing** is indicated in women with macroadenomas.

---

**Figure 8.1** Management of prolactinoma in pregnancy (see also Table 8.2).
Table 8.1 Dose and Side Effect Profiles for Dopamine Agonists Approved for Use in the United States

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Medication</th>
<th>Dose</th>
<th>Side Effects of Both Drugs&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Bromocriptine</td>
<td>Initial: 0.625–1.25 mg daily; usual range for maintenance dose: 2.5–10.0 mg daily</td>
<td>Nausea, headaches, dizziness (postural hypotension), nasal congestion, constipation. Infrequent: fatigue, anxiety, depression, alcohol intolerance. Rare: cold-sensitive vasospasm, psychosis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cabergoline</td>
<td>Initial: 0.25–0.5 mg weekly; usual range for maintenance dose: 0.25–3.0 mg weekly</td>
<td>Possible: cardiac valve abnormalities (reported with cabergoline)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<sup>a</sup> More common with bromocriptine.


In Nonpregnant Women
If an elevated prolactin is detected, this should be repeated. If still elevated, then a head MRI is performed even in cases of mild hyperprolactinemia. At initial diagnosis, thyroid-stimulating hormone and free T4, renal and hepatic function should be assessed [16].

Treatment (Figure 8.1; Tables 8.1 and 8.2)
The primary therapy for all prolactinomas is a dopamine agonist. The dopamine agonists approved in the United States are bromocriptine and cabergoline. Dose recommendations and side effects are listed in Table 8.1 [16].

Bromocriptine (Parlodel)
**Dose:** Started at 0.625 mg po qhs with a snack for one week. Then add 1.25 mg qam for one week and increase by 1.25 mg. So at four weeks, a total of 5 mg total dose (split 2.5 mg q12h) is reached and prolactin rechecked. Usually a total of 5 to 75 mg (split q12h) total dose is required. It can also be used intravaginally (same dose, less side effects, minimal vaginal irritation).

**Mechanism of Action:** Dopamine agonist (dopamine inhibits lactotroph receptors, so less prolactin is produced, and the size of tumors is decreased); ergot derivative.

**Evidence for effectiveness:** See below.

**Safety in pregnancy:** Safe (FDA category B); breast-feeding is contraindicated.

**Side effects:** Nausea, hypotension, and depression (less if therapy initiated at night).

Cabergoline (Dostinex)
**Dose:** Start at 0.25 mg twice weekly and increase monthly to normal prolactin. Usual required dose is 0.25 to 0.5 mg twice weekly; maximum dose should be 1 mg twice weekly.

**Mechanism of action:** Dopamine agonist (see above), non-ergot, high affinity for lactotroph dopamine receptors.

Preconception Counseling
Treatment of women with lactotroph adenomas outside of pregnancy is based on the size of the tumor, presence or absence of gonadal dysfunction, and the woman's desire regarding fertility [1]. Indications for therapy in patients with prolactinomas are listed in Table 8.2 [16].

Treatment should begin before conception with advice to the woman and her partner about the risks of pregnancy to her and the fetus. When a dopamine agonist is needed to lower the serum prolactin concentration to permit ovulation, counseling should include the fact that bromocriptine has larger safety data although cabergoline (Dostinex) has less data in pregnancy (although all reassuring thus far). Bromocriptine normalizes prolactin levels in >80% of women with microadenomas, restoring menses and fertility in >90%. Compared to cabergoline, bromocriptine has the following advantages: it is cheaper, there are more pregnancy safety data, and there is no association with heart valve disease, but its disadvantages include twice daily (vs. twice weekly) dosing, it is less effective at normalizing prolactin levels, and has more side effects [16]. If a woman cannot tolerate bromocriptine, cabergoline should be recommended; 70% of patients who do not have a response to bromocriptine respond to cabergoline. Overall, cabergoline is effective in inducing pregnancy at a high rate even in cases that have been traditionally considered difficult to treat, such as those with large tumor size, bromocriptine resistance, or bromocriptine intolerance [17]. There are, however, substantial numbers of women (approximately 18%), who are resistant to cabergoline and will require higher doses to achieve normalzation of prolactin levels and to ovulate [9]. Quinagolide (Pergolide) should not be recommended because it is not FDA approved to treat hyperprolactinemia, has not been well studied during pregnancy, and has been associated with cardiac valvular defects [18]. In nonpregnant adults with prolactinomas, prolactin levels and MRI should be checked after diagnosis and stabilization once a year for three years and then about every two years if the patient’s condition is stable. In patients with normal prolactin for ≥2 years on low-dose therapy, some consider stopping the dopamine agonist therapy. The risk of enlargement over time in untreated patients is about 20% [16].

Microadenomas
A woman who has a lactotroph microadenoma should be told that the risk of clinically important enlargement of her

---

Table 8.2 Indications for Therapy in Patients with Prolactinomas

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Main indication in pregnancy</th>
<th>Macroadenoma</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pregnant and nonpregnant</strong></td>
<td>Enlarging microadenoma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Bothersome galactorrhea</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Gynecomastia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Nonpregnant</strong></td>
<td>Infertility</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Oligomenorrhea or amenorrhea</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

adenoma during pregnancy is very small (1%–5%) and that it should not be a deterrent to becoming pregnant. She should also be told that bromocriptine or cabergoline will likely be effective if symptoms do occur. If she is willing to take this small risk of enlargement, she should be given bromocriptine or cabergoline before pregnancy in whatever dosage is necessary to lower her serum prolactin concentration to normal. Bromocriptine is the drug associated with the greater experience. When the serum prolactin concentration is normal and menses have occurred regularly for a few months, the woman can attempt to become pregnant. Before pregnancy, the dopamine agonist should be tapered to the lowest effective dose and can be discontinued before pregnancy if used for >24 months with normal prolactin levels as about 25% of patients maintain normal levels even off of medication although most need to restart it.

**Macroadenomas**

A woman who has a lactotroph macroadenoma should be advised of the relatively higher risk of clinically important tumor enlargement during pregnancy [2–4]. A macroadenoma is an absolute indication for therapy (dopamine agonist, followed together with an endocrinologist) in non-pregnant or pregnant women. Doses of dopamine agonists sufficient to control the macroadenoma are usually higher (bromocriptine 7.5–10 mg/daily; cabergoline 0.5–1 mg twice weekly) than with microadenomas. The goals of treatment are to decrease prolactin levels and symptoms, to decrease and stabilize the tumor mass, and to prevent headaches and cranial nerve compression [16]. Before pregnancy, the dopamine agonist should be carefully tapered to lowest effective dose. This may take weeks to years. Advice and monitoring depend on the size of the adenoma.

- **If the macroadenoma does not elevate the optic chiasm or extend behind the sella, treatment with bromocriptine or cabergoline** for a sufficient period to shrink it substantially should reduce the chance of clinically important enlargement during pregnancy [2,19]. As with treatment with dopamine agonists, this risk is likely only somewhat increased compared with microadenomas [9]. Once sufficient decrease in size has occurred, the woman can attempt to become pregnant.

- **If the adenoma is very large or elevates the optic chiasm**, pregnancy should be strongly discouraged until the adenoma has been adequately treated. Despite ongoing treatment with dopamine agonists, large macroadenomas, particularly those with extension beyond the sella, have a 23% risk of undergoing a clinically significant increase in size during pregnancy [9]. If the macroadenoma extends behind the sella, the woman should undergo visual field examination and testing of anterior pituitary function. Transsphenoidal surgery may be necessary and perhaps postoperative radiation. Postoperative treatment with bromocriptine or cabergoline may also be helpful in reducing adenoma size further and lowering the serum prolactin concentration to normal. Such a regimen reduces the chance that symptomatic expansion will occur during pregnancy [2,3], but it may still occur. New evidence suggests that cabergoline has the potential for use as the primary therapeutic agent for macroadenomas, even those that extend beyond the sella, and may prevent the need for traditional combination therapy with surgery, radiotherapy, and bromocriptine, but further studies are warranted [17].

- **Pregnancy should be discouraged in a woman whose macroadenoma is unresponsive to bromocriptine and cabergoline** even if it is not elevating the optic chiasm until the size has been greatly reduced by transsphenoidal surgery because medical treatment would not likely be effective if the adenoma enlarges during pregnancy.

**Prenatal Care**

See also section titled “Preconception Counseling.”

**Microadenoma**

Bromocriptine and probably cabergoline are safe in pregnancy. They can be discontinued as soon as pregnancy has been confirmed if the patient who has a normal prolactin and a recent reassuring (adenoma <1 cm) MRI so desires. The risk of clinically significant tumor enlargement during pregnancy is about 3% for microprolactinomas [16].

During the pregnancy, the woman should be asked about headaches and changes in vision at each visit (or at least every three months). A formal visual field test every three months can be performed but is not absolutely necessary. The decision to treat with a dopamine agonist is based on symptoms (e.g., headache) and signs (e.g., abnormal visual field examination) only. It should not be based on prolactin levels. In fact, prolactin levels should not be checked because they physiologically increase (about tenfold) in pregnancy. If no symptoms occur, serum prolactin can be measured about two months after delivery or cessation of nursing, and if it is similar to the pretreatment value, the drug can be resumed.

**Macroadenoma**

The dopamine agonist should be continued during pregnancy in most cases. In these patients, discontinuation of the drug usually leads to expansion of the adenoma [1]. Monitoring during pregnancy should be similar to that described above for women with microadenomas except for the fact that formal visual field testing every three months should be performed. The risk of clinically significant tumor enlargement during pregnancy is about 30% for macroprolactinomas [16].

A perceived change in vision should be assessed by a neuro-ophthalmologist, and an MRI (gadolinium-enhanced; more effective than CT scan) [1] should be performed if an abnormality consistent with a pituitary adenoma is confirmed. If the adenoma has enlarged to a degree that could account for the symptoms, the woman should be treated with higher doses of bromocriptine throughout the remainder of the pregnancy, which will usually decrease the size of the adenoma and alleviate the symptoms [20,21]. If the adenoma does not respond to bromocriptine, cabergoline may be successful [22]. If cabergoline is not successful, transsphenoidal surgery could be considered in the second trimester if vision is severely compromised; in comparison, surgery for persistent visual symptoms in the third trimester should be deferred until delivery if possible. Surgery is recommended only if medical therapy is ineffective. Indication for neurosurgery in patients with prolactinomas are listed in Table 8.3 [16].
Table 8.3 Indication for Neurosurgery in Patients with Prolactinomas

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pregnant or nonpregnant</th>
<th>Infertility patient</th>
<th>ANTEPARTUM TESTING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Increasing tumor size despite optimal medical therapy</td>
<td>Dopamine agonist-resistant microadenoma</td>
<td>None needed (except if other indications present).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pituitary apoplexy</td>
<td>Inability to tolerate necessary dopamine agonist therapy</td>
<td>DELIVERY</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inability to tolerate necessary dopamine agonist therapy</td>
<td>Persistent chiasmal compression despite optimal medical therapy</td>
<td>No special precautions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Medically unresponsive cystic prolactinoma</td>
<td>Cerebrospinal fluid leak during administration of dopamine agonist</td>
<td>ANESTHESIA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Macroadenoma in a patient with a psychiatric condition for which dopamine agonists are contraindicated</td>
<td>Macroadenoma in proximity to optic chiasm despite optimal medical therapy (prepregnancy debulking recommended)</td>
<td>No special precautions.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Surgical cure rates are <50% with macroadenomas with up to 80% of these patients experiencing recurrent hyperprolactinemia [16].

REFERENCES

2. Gemzell C, Wang CF. Outcome of pregnancy in women with pituitary adenoma. Fertil Steril 1979; 31: 363. [A survey of 25 physicians in 1979 revealed that they had seen a total of 91 pregnancies in 85 women with lactotroph microadenomas and 46 women with lactotroph macroadenomas were followed during 56 pregnancies].
7. Turkalj I, Braun P, Krupp P. Surveillance of bromocriptine in pregnancy. JAMA 1982; 247: 1389. [The manufacturer of bromocriptine surveyed physicians known to prescribe bromocriptine. The survey evaluated 1410 pregnancies in 1335 women who took the drug during pregnancy, primarily during the first month [5]. The incidence of spontaneous abortions (11.1%) and major (1%) and minor (2.5%) congenital malformations was similar to that in the general population. Only eight women had taken bromocriptine after the second month of pregnancy]


Nausea/vomiting of pregnancy and hyperemesis gravidarum

Rupsa C. Boelig

KEY POINTS

1. Diagnosis of hyperemesis gravidarum is nausea and vomiting ≥3 times a day with large ketones in urine or acetone in blood (dehydration, fluid, and electrolyte changes) and weight loss of >3 kg or >5% prepregnancy weight, having excluded other diagnoses.

2. Do not test for thyroid-stimulating hormone (TSH) in women with nausea/vomiting or hyperemesis gravidarum unless they have preexisting history/symptoms of hyperthyroidism.

3. For prevention, start prenatal vitamins before conception.

4. Start treating nausea and vomiting early to prevent hyperemesis gravidarum.

5. Therapies proven to improve nausea and vomiting of pregnancy and/or hyperemesis gravidarum are the following (in approximate order of increasing risk/invasiveness/potency) (Figure 9.1):
   - Acupressure
   - Ginger capsules
   - Vitamin B6 with doxylamine
   - Metoclopramide
   - Ondansetron
   - Promethazine

GENETICS

More common in first-degree relatives (daughters, sisters, monozygotic more than dizygotic twins). Daughters born to mothers with HG have a three times higher risk of future development [5].

ETIOLOGY

Hypotheses:

1. Gastrointestinal (GI) motility decreases in pregnancy because of increasing levels of progesterone (but not particularly in HG; probably secondary phenomenon).

2. Hormones (hCG, thyroxine, cortisol, etc.) trigger the chemoreceptor trigger zone (CTZ) in the brainstem-vomiting center.

3. CTZ more sensitive to hormones.

4. Abnormailties in vestibulo-ocular reflex pathway [6].

5. N/v correlates with the rise and fall of hCG. It has been theorized that hCG stimulates the ovary to produce more estrogen, which is known to increase n/v [3].

6. Helicobacter pylori (IgG 90.5% in HG patients, 47.5% in controls [7]; no randomized controlled trials (RCTs) exist for treatment of H. pylori in HG) [2,7].

7. Possible psychologic predisposition, associated with unwanted, unplanned pregnancies or excessive life stressors (and conversion disorder) [4,8]. Of women with HG report, 85% have poor support by partner.

8. Some have also postulated that n/v is evolutionary to protect the fetus from teratogenic exposures because the time frame correlates with the period of organogenesis [4].

9. There is likely a strong genetic component involved in HG as the recurrence risk is significantly greater in women with a history of HG; however, the influence of paternity remains controversial [9–11].

CLASSIFICATION

A pregnancy-unique quantification of emesis/nausea (PUQE) index has been proposed, validated, and recently slightly modified, but it is seldom used clinically [12–14]. Management is based on clinical severity as well as a woman’s perception of severity and desire for treatment.

RISK FACTORS/ASSOCIATIONS

Risk factors include young maternal age, nulliparity, prior HG (recurrence in about 67%), prior molar pregnancy, obesity, African-American race, female fetus, history of motion sickness, migraines, or psychiatric illness; preexisting

DIAGNOSIS/DEFINITION

Nausea and vomiting of pregnancy (NVP) can be quite variable, and symptoms can range from mild to severe (hyperemesis gravidarum, HG). Mild symptoms include intermittent nausea, odor and food aversion, retching, and vomiting.

Hyperemesis gravidarum (HG) or severe nausea/vomiting is generally defined as intractable n/v ≥3 times a day with signs of dehydration (large ketonuria, high urine specific gravity, or electrolyte imbalance) and weight loss of >3 kg or >5% prepregnancy weight, having excluded other diagnoses (Table 9.1).

EPIDEMIOLOGY/INCIDENCE

Nausea and vomiting are common in early pregnancy; approximately 50%–80% will experience nausea and 50% vomiting. HG, in contrast, affects only 0.3%–1% of pregnancies [1–3]. The onset is about four to six weeks, peak eight to 12 weeks, resolution <20 weeks. HG is the most common indication for hospital admission in the first trimester of pregnancy and second to preterm labor throughout the entire pregnancy. Of the cases, 60% resolve by the end of the first trimester, and 91% have complete resolution by 20 weeks [3]. For symptoms presenting after nine weeks, alternative diagnoses should be carefully considered (Table 9.1) [4].
hyperthyroidism, diabetes, GI disorders, or asthma; conditions associated with high hCG levels (larger placental mass as in multiple pregnancy, molar pregnancy, Trisomy 21); and high estradiol levels. Women who experienced n/v related to estrogen exposure (i.e., oral contraceptive pill) outside pregnancy were more likely to experience NVP [4]. Smoking has been associated with a lower incidence of HG, possibly because it is associated with lower levels of hCG and estradiol [4,15,16].

A related condition symptomatically is ptyalism, defined by sialorrhea or excessive salivation although little is known about this condition. Diagnosis: salivation >1900 mL/day. Etiologic hypothesis: stimulation by starch (possibly pica). It is characterized by an inability to swallow rather than excessive production of saliva. No therapy (gum, lozenges, small meals, anticholinergics, ganglion-blocking agents, oxyphenonium bromide, etc.) has been studied appropriately or shown to be efficacious in pregnancy. Check hydration, nutrition, psychologic status, and other issues as per NVP [17].

**COMPLICATIONS**

**Maternal**

Mild cases are not associated with significant complications. For moderate-to-severe cases or HG, some women may experience significant psychosocial morbidity resulting in depression or decision to terminate (2.9% incidence of termination with HG in Sweden) [4,15,18]. Moderate-to-severe cases are also associated with higher health care costs and economic burden from time lost from work and need for hospitalization [4]. Rare complications include Wernicke’s encephalopathy (vitamin B1 deficiency; permanent neurologic disability, or maternal death), peripheral neuropathies (vitamin B6 and B12 deficiency), central pontine myelinolysis, splenic avulsion, esophageal rupture, pneumothorax, or acute tubular necrosis. In extreme and very rare cases of HG, maternal death can occur [4].

**Fetal/Neonatal**

Minimal complications (e.g., no increase in FGR) are found in NVP [4]. HG, however, is associated with a higher incidence of fetal growth restriction (especially if severe HG), low birth weight, small for gestational age, gestational hypertension, and preterm delivery [16,19]. HG is not associated with an increased risk of congenital malformation, and fetal death is very rare [4,19].

NVP and HG are also associated with lower incidence of pregnancy loss thought to be secondary to robust placental synthesis.

**PREGNANCY MANAGEMENT**

**Principles**

*Prevention* is better than treatment; that is, intervening early in nausea/vomiting is helpful in preventing worsening symptoms [20]. HG is a diagnosis of exclusion: see Table 9.1.
Gastrointestinal conditions
- Gastroparesis/leus
- Gastroenteritis
- Cyclic vomiting syndrome
- Achalasia
- Biliary tract disease
- Hepatitis
- Intestinal obstruction
- Peptic ulcer disease/H. pylori
- Pancreatitis
- Appendicitis
- Inflammatory bowel disease

Genitourinary tract conditions
- Pyelonephritis
- Uremia
- Ovarian torsion
- Kidney stones
- Degenerating uterine fibroids

Metabolic diseases
- Diabetic ketoacidosis
- Porphyria
- Addison’s disease
- Hyperthyroidism
- Hyperparathyroidism

Neurologic disorders
- Pseudotumor cerebi
- Vestibular lesions
- Migraines
- Tumors of the central nervous system
- Lymphocytic hypophysitis

Miscellaneous
- Drug toxicity or intolerance
- Psychologic

Pregnancy-related conditions
- Acute fatty livery of pregnancy
- Preeclampsia
- Trophoblastic disease

Table 9.1  Differential Diagnosis of Nausea and Vomiting of Pregnancy

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Gastrointestinal conditions</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gastroparesis/leus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gastroenteritis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cyclic vomiting syndrome</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Achalasia</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Biliary tract disease</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hepatitis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Intestinal obstruction</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Peptic ulcer disease/H. pylori</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pancreatitis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Appendicitis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inflammatory bowel disease</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Genitourinary tract conditions</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pyelonephritis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Uremia</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ovarian torsion</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kidney stones</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Degenerating uterine fibroids</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Metabolic diseases</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Diabetic ketoacidosis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Porphyria</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Addison’s disease</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hyperthyroidism</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hyperparathyroidism</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Neurologic disorders</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pseudotumor cerebi</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vestibular lesions</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Migraines</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tumors of the central nervous system</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lymphocytic hypophysitis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Miscellaneous</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Drug toxicity or intolerance</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psychologic</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pregnancy-related conditions</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Acute fatty livery of pregnancy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Preeclampsia</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trophoblastic disease</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


Differential diagnosis. N/v tends to be undertreated by both some physicians and some patients although safe and effective therapies exist. Approximately 10% of patients with n/v during pregnancy will require medication [3].

Workup
Differential diagnostic possibilities should be ruled out, especially prior to the diagnosis of HG: see Table 9.1 [4].

History and Review of Systems
Special attention to severity of n/v, weight loss, prior GI diagnosis, and stressors—dietary, physical, and psychologic. Abdominal pain, fever, headache/migraine are atypical complaints of a patient with n/v of pregnancy.

Physical Exam
Special attention to vital signs, signs of dehydration, goiter, and abdominal and neurologic examinations.

Labs
- Serum (especially for severe cases): Electrolytes, BUN, creatinine, glucose, LFTs, amylase, lipase, acetone (quantitative hCG not helpful in management)
- Urine: ketones, specific gravity

- Thyroid-stimulating hormone (TSH): No need to send TSH (60%–70% of HG have “transient biochemical hyperthyroidism of pregnancy” with decreased TSH and increased free thyroid index; this is secondary to hCG-stimulating thyroxine synthesis from pituitary; always resolves spontaneously in 1 to 10 weeks [21,22]; only test if pregnant woman has a history of thyroid disease or goiter).

Radiologic
Fetal ultrasound (to assess for molar pregnancy, multiple gestation, etc.).

Treatment
Figure 9.1 illustrates a suggested stepwise approach to the management of NVP and HG. Several interventions are available for treatment of n/v and HG [1,2] (Table 9.2). It is suggested to intervene early on n/v. A combination of interventions is often necessary. For HG, consider starting at least at step 3, but still consider implementing steps 1 and 2 as appropriate. Any underlying/concomitant GI disorder (reflux, ulcer, anorexia, etc.) should be treated appropriately.

Consults
For refractory cases consider nutrition, gastroenterology, and/or psychiatry consultation depending on history.

TREATMENT
Suggested Stepwise Therapeutic Approach (Figure 9.1).

Step 1: Prevention
Prenatal Multivitamin (MVI) before/at Conception
Vitamin B6 found in MVI has been shown to reduce the incidence of n/v [23], and the early use (prior to six weeks) of prenatal vitamin was associated with a decreased rate of vomiting [24].

Doxylamine/Vitamin B6
One randomized controlled trial (RCT) found that in women with a history of HG, preemptive therapy with 10 mg doxylamine with 10 mg pyridoxine (Diclectin, delayed release) up to four tabs daily resulted in a significant decrease in recurrence of HG [25].

Step 2a: Nonpharmacologic Interventions
Lifestyle/Dietary Changes
Avoid odor/food triggers. Stop medications (e.g., iron, large vitamins) producing n/v. Counsel regarding safety and efficacy of treatment; provide reassurance regarding outcomes (see above). There is no evidence that rest improves n/v. Diet includes frequent, small meals: eat only one spoonful, wait, eat again, and so on; avoid an empty stomach; eat crackers in the morning upon waking; avoid fatty, greasy, spicy foods; ginger ale; prefer protein. One small nonrandomized prospective study found that protein-predominant meals produced decreased nausea compared to carbohydrate or fat predominant meals [26] but a prolonged high-protein diet is associated with higher incidences of preterm birth and fetal death.

Acupressure Wrist Bands
In the treatment of NVP, acupressure at the P6 “Neiguan” point [27–34] (Brands: Seaband, Bioband) has been associated with
### Table 9.2  Selected Pharmacologic Treatment of NVP and HG

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Agent</th>
<th>Dose</th>
<th>Side Effects</th>
<th>FDA Category</th>
<th>Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Ginger extract</strong></td>
<td>125–250 mg tid/qid, po</td>
<td>Reflux, heartburn</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>Step 2a; OTC availability, food supplement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Vitamin B₆ (pyridoxine)</strong></td>
<td>10–25 mg q8h po, do not exceed 100 mg qd</td>
<td></td>
<td>A</td>
<td>Step 2b; recommended as first-line pharmacologic intervention</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Vitamin B₆–doxylamine</strong></td>
<td>Pyridoxine, 10–25 mg q8h, po; doxylamine, 25 mg qhs, 12.5 mg bid prn, po; Diclegis (10 mg/10 mg) start 2–4 tabs qd-tid</td>
<td>Sedation</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>Step 1, 2b; Recommended as first line pharmacologic intervention. May be taken prophylactically if history of HG</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other Antihistamines</td>
<td></td>
<td>Sedation, dizziness, drowsiness, anticholinergic effects</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>May be helpful for relief of vestibular-type symptoms</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(H₁-receptor antagonists)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Diphenhydramine (Benadryl)</td>
<td>25–50 mg q4–6h prn; po, IM</td>
<td></td>
<td>B</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Meclizine (Bonine, Antivert)</td>
<td>25–50 mg q6h, po; maximum: 100 mg/24 hr</td>
<td></td>
<td>B</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Hydroxyzine (Atarax, Vistaril)</td>
<td>25–100 mg q6–8h prn, po/IM; maximum: 600 mg/24 h</td>
<td></td>
<td>C</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Dimenhydrinate (Dramamine)</td>
<td>50–100 mg q4–6h, po/pr/IM or 50 mg (in 50 cc saline over 20 min) q4–6h IV (not to exceed 400 mg/day, or 200 mg/day if also doxylamine)</td>
<td></td>
<td>B</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>H₂ receptor antagonists</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>B</td>
<td>Step 2b; for patients with reflux, H. pylori</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Cimetidine (Tagamet)</td>
<td>1600 mg qd divided bid/qid</td>
<td></td>
<td>B</td>
<td>Step 2b; Second line for reflux symptoms</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Famotidine (Pepcid)</td>
<td>20–40 mg bid, po/IV</td>
<td></td>
<td>B</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Ranitidine (Zantac)</td>
<td>75–150 mg prn, po (maximum 2 tabs/24 hr); 50 mg q6h IM/IV</td>
<td></td>
<td>B</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Proton pump inhibitors (PPIs)</strong></td>
<td>20–40 mg qd, po (maximum 80 mg/day)</td>
<td></td>
<td>B</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Omeprazole (Prilosec)</td>
<td>40 mg bid, po</td>
<td></td>
<td>B</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Pantoprazole (Protonix)</td>
<td>20–40 mg qd, po/NG/IV (maximum: 80 mg/day)</td>
<td></td>
<td>B</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Lansoprazole (Prevacid)</td>
<td>15–30 mg qd, po</td>
<td></td>
<td>B</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Dopamine₂ antagonists</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>B</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Metoclopramide (Reglan)</td>
<td>10–20 mg q6–8 h, po/IM/V; 1–2 mg/kg IV</td>
<td>Sedation, anticholinergic effects</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>Step 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Trimethobenzamide (Tigan)</td>
<td>300 mg tid/qid, po; 200 mg tid/qid, IM</td>
<td></td>
<td>C</td>
<td>Dopamine antagonist directly to emetic center CTZ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Droperidol (Inapsine)</td>
<td>0.625–2.5 mg over 15 min, then 1.25 or 2.5 mg IM q3–4h prn, IM or continuous IV at 1–1.25 mg/hr (maximum: 2.5 mg/dose, slow push over 2–5 min, repeat doses with caution)</td>
<td>Black box warning of torsades</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>Give with benadryl to prevent extrapyramidal symptoms</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>5-HT3 (Serotonin) receptor antagonist</strong></td>
<td>4–8 mg tid/qid po; 4–8 mg over 15 min q6–8h IV; or 1 mg/hr continuous for 24 h</td>
<td>Constipation, diarrhea, headache, fatigue, mild sedation</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>Also available as an oral dissolving tablet and as a subcutaneous pump; benefit of pump therapy is questionable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Continued)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 9.2 (Continued)  Selected Pharmacologic Treatment of NVP and HG

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Agent</th>
<th>Dose</th>
<th>Side Effects</th>
<th>FDA Category</th>
<th>Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Phenothiazines (D₂ receptor antagonists)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Promethazine (Phenergan)</td>
<td>12.5–25 mg q4–6h, po/pr/IM/IV (maximum: 50 mg/dose po/IM; 25 mg/dose IV)</td>
<td>Severe tissue injury with undiluted IV use</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>May have similar or reduced efficacy with more side effects compared to ondansetron and metoclopramide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Prochlorperazine maleate (Compazine; Bukatel)</td>
<td>5–10 mg q4–6h; po/IM/IV/ buccal, 10–25 mg q8h pr (maximum: 10 mg/dose, 40 mg/day)</td>
<td>D/c if unexplained decrease in WBCs</td>
<td>C</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Glucocorticoids</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Methylprednisolone</td>
<td>16 mg PO TID</td>
<td>Increased risk of cleft lip if used before 10 weeks gestation</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>Step 4: for HG refractory to other medications. RCTs with mixed data on benefit. May be useful in refractory cases and decrease rate of readmission. Initial therapy for three days; if successful, may be tapered over one to two weeks, or for recurrent symptoms continued for maximum of six weeks for maximum duration with tapered dose if possible. If no improvement after 72 hours, discontinue.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Prednisolone</td>
<td>5–20 mg PO qd-TID PO</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Methylprednisolone</td>
<td>125 mg IV x 1 followed by oral taper</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Hydrocortisone</td>
<td>300 mg IV qd</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes: Bold: therapies consistently demonstrating efficacy in RCTs in pregnancy; italics: therapies with efficacy demonstrated in at least one RCT in pregnancy although results may be mixed. Therapies listed without bold or italics have no RCTs proving efficacy in pregnancy. Food and Drug Administration (FDA) categories are as follows: A, controlled studies show no risk; B, no evidence of risk in humans; C, risk cannot be ruled out; D, positive evidence of risk; and X, contraindicated in pregnancy (http://www.fda.gov/).

Abbreviations: bid, twice a day; BP, blood pressure; CTZ, chemoreceptor trigger zone; d/c, discontinue; GI, gastrointestinal; HG, hyperemesis gravidarum; IM, intramuscular; IV, intravenous; min, minute; NG, nasogastric; NVP, nausea and vomiting of pregnancy; OTC, over the counter medication; PO, per os; PR, per rectum; prn, pro re nata or take as needed; qd, once daily; qhs, quaque hora somni or given at bedtime; q4 times a day; q‘X’h, given every ‘X’ hours; RTC, randomized controlled trial; SubQ, subcutaneous; tid, three times a day; WBCs, white blood cells.
improved nausea or symptom relief in one RCT and with no improvement in others when compared to placebo [1]. An RCT showed no significant difference between P6 acupressure versus vitamin B6 therapy in nausea/vomiting of pregnancy [33].

In the treatment of HG, there are three RCTs, one with crossover design, comparing acupressure versus placebo. The results could not be combined for meta-analysis; however, the individual studies demonstrated improved nausea and decreased number of anitemics required [2,36–39]. There are no pregnancy safety or breast-feeding concerns [2]. This intervention therefore can be considered either prior to (in mild cases) or as an adjunct to pharmaceutical interventions.

**Acustimulation Wrist Bands**

Acustimulation at the P6 Neiguan point [40,41] (Brand: Relief Band Device, Woodside Biomedical—http://www.reliefband.com). This device for noninvasive nerve electric stimulation was associated with less n/v and higher weight gain compared to placebo [40,41], but in the largest RCT, the assessment of the outcomes was not blinded, and the study was industry-sponsored by the makers of the device [41]. There are limited pregnancy safety or breast-feeding concerns.

**Auricular Acupressure**

One randomized controlled trial on the use of auricular acupressure found no significant benefit in either symptom improvement or number of antiemetic drugs needed as compared to controls [42]. There are no pregnancy safety or breast-feeding concerns.

**Acupuncture**

In the treatment of NVP, one trial found acupuncture to be equivalent to a sham procedure in the treatment of nausea of pregnancy [43]. Another trial found benefit of acupuncture compared to control in improvement of nausea but not vomiting although the sham procedure had some beneficial effect as well [44]. In the condition of HG, acupuncture was found to be as similar to metoclopramide in the reduction of nausea and vomiting [45]. There does not appear to be a benefit with the use of acupuncture in the treatment of NVP or HG in pregnancy [1,2].

**Ginger**

Ginger use has been suggested as early therapy in outpatients [4,46]. Side effects include reflux and heartburn. There have been several RCTs examining ginger for the treatment of NVP. A Cochrane review demonstrated benefit of ginger compared to placebo [1]. Although individual studies have demonstrated benefit in nausea reduction compared to vitamin B6, a meta-analysis found no significant difference in symptom relief [1,47–50]. One RCT examined ginger versus doxylamine plus B6 and found no difference in perceived severity of nausea and vomiting [51].

Regarding HG, one RCT found benefit with the use of ginger in HG; however, it was small (30 women) and crossover design [52].

Comparing it to other individual therapies, there was not found to be a significant difference in benefit with ginger vs. chamomile, dimenhydrinate, or metoclopramide [1,47,53,54].

**Other Nonpharmacologic Interventions**

Regarding other nonpharmacologic interventions for n/v, there were two studies on oils versus placebo in NVP. One study on mint oil found no significant difference in severity of nausea and vomiting, and one study on lemon oil found no difference in overall PUQE score but did show a significant reduction of symptoms from baseline to day three [55,56]. One study on chamomile found that it improved symptoms after one week [47].

In the setting of HG, progressive muscle relaxation with pharmacotherapy versus pharmacotherapy alone had better global improvement scores [57]. Midwife-led outpatient care had similar clinical outcomes but with decreased hours of hospital admission [58]. A holistic care plan versus standard medical therapy alone had a shorter length of hospital stay but no significant improvement in quality of life measures, nausea and vomiting severity, or cost [59].

There are no RCTs on hypnosis although there are case reports of some benefit [4,60]. There is insufficient evidence of benefit to suggest this as a therapy for NVP or HG.

In summary, ginger may be considered as an effective nonpharmacologic intervention in the setting of mild nausea and vomiting. Acupressure (by wristband and other means) may also be a beneficial adjunct. Intensive outpatient care may reduce inpatient hospitalization time. Acupuncture does not appear to be beneficial, and there is limited data to support the use of other nonpharmacologic interventions, such as nerve stimulation, muscle relaxation, hypnotherapy, and other dietary supplements.

**Step 2b: Pharmacologic Interventions**

**Vitamin B6**

In the treatment of NVP, B6 has been associated with a decrease in nausea, not in vomiting [1,61,62]. However, when used in women hospitalized for HG, it does not seem to affect n/v by itself [63].

**Doxylamine and Vitamin B6**

Doxylamine is an antihistamine that has been studied in combination with vitamin B6. This combination (formerly known as Bendectin and now available as Diclegis in the United States, Diclectin in Canada, and Debindox in the United Kingdom) is safe with no evidence of teratogenicity (proven with more than 200,000 exposures, by far the most for any other drug in pregnancy), and effective (>70% decrease in n/v) [3,4]. Doxylamine and vitamin B6 are associated with decrease in both n/v when used together compared to no therapy or placebo [64–67]. A double-blind RCT showed Diclectin (a doxylamine–pyridoxine delayed-release preparation available) to significantly improve n/v and quality of life compared to placebo [67].

**Other Antihistamines (Histamine-1 Receptor Antagonists)**

Other antihistamines are generally safe and used mostly for the relief of vestibular-like symptoms. There may be an increased relative risk, but small absolute risk, of septal defects [68–70]. These include diphenhydramine, meclizine, hydroxyzine, and dimenhydrinate. An RCT showed that dimenhydrinate is as effective as ginger in the treatment of n/v with fewer side effects [53], and another demonstrated the benefit of hydroxyzine over placebo for nausea relief [71]. No RCTs exist for the other histamine-1 receptor antagonists (H1RAs) to assess their effectiveness for n/v in pregnancy or HG.

**Histamine-2 Receptor Antagonists**

Cimetidine, famotidine, ranitidine, and nizatidine are approved for use in pregnancy to treat symptoms of heartburn, acid reflux, and H. pylori, which can exacerbate n/v. They may be added if symptoms are present. No RCTs exist
regarding their effectiveness for NVP or HG. A meta-analysis showed no increased risk of congenital malformations, risk of spontaneous abortions, or preterm delivery compared to controls [72]. In intractable cases of n/v with positive H. pylori serology, a nonrandomized study suggested benefit with triple therapy with ranitidineflagylampicillin [73].

Proton-Pump Inhibitor
Common proton-pump inhibitors (PPIs) used in pregnancy are omeprazole, pantoprazole, esomeprazole, and lansoprazole. These can be used in conjunction with or separately from histamine-2 receptor antagonists (H2RAs) for heartburn and reflux and H. pylori infections. A recent review [74], a meta-analysis [75], and a cohort study [76] showed that there is no evidence to suggest that the use of PPIs anytime during pregnancy increases the overall risk of birth defects, preterm delivery, or spontaneous abortion. There are no RCTs on this intervention for NVP or HG.

In summary, given its well-demonstrated safety and efficacy, vitamin B6 with doxylamine should be considered first-line pharmacotherapy for the treatment of NVP [4,46]. If symptoms of reflux, heartburn, or H. pylori are present, H2RAs and PPIs can also be considered.

Step 3: Antiemetic Therapy
Of the three commonly prescribed antiemetics, metoclopramide, promethazine, and ondansetron, only metoclopramide was studied in a placebo-controlled RCT; the remainder were studied in RCTs comparing one therapy with another. Less commonly used and much less studied, thioethylperazine and fluphenazine–pyridoxine were also studied in placebo-controlled trials [1,2].

Metoclopramide (Dopamine-2 Antagonist)
Metoclopramide (Reglan) is safe in pregnancy without increased risk of teratogenicity, preterm birth, low birth weight, or perinatal mortality [77–79]. In the setting of NVP, an RCT comparing metoclopramide to placebo found improved n/v [54]. An RCT showed that metoclopramide (with one IM shot of 50 mg of pyridoxine) is superior in decreasing vomiting and subjective improvement compared to monotherapy with either prochlorperazine or promethazine [80]. Compared with ondansetron, there was similar improvement in nausea but worse with vomiting [81].

Two recent RCTs compared metoclopramide and ondansetron in the setting of HG, and one found similar improvement in symptoms but did find that there was an increased rate of drowsiness and dry mouth in the metoclopramide group; the other found improved vomiting with ondansetron [82,83]. A recent RCT of inpatient HG patients showed that metoclopramide 10 mg IV q8h had similar efficacy and decreased drowsiness, dizziness, and dystonia when compared to IV promethazine [84].

A subcutaneous Reglan pump is an alternative mode of administering the drug, not yet tested in any pregnancy RCT. It is not necessarily cost-effective compared to inpatient management or home care and may have significant side effects, and thus it is not recommended for routine use in the management of NVP or HG [4,85,86].

Ondansetron (5-HT3 Receptor Antagonist)
Ondansetron (Zofran) is a serotonin 5-hydroxytryptamine-3 receptor antagonist. Although one study found an association between first trimester ondansetron use and cardiac anomalies, especially septal defects, and another with cleft palate, the absolute risk was still quite low; other much larger studies have demonstrated its safety in pregnancy [87–90]. It must be prescribed with care as there is a risk of QT prolongation that could lead to potentially fatal arrhythmias. As such, the FDA has recommended it not be prescribed in IV doses >16 mg, and care should be taken to avoid other QT prolonging medications [4].

In the treatment of NVP, women treated with ondansetron versus metoclopramide had similar levels of nausea but had reduced vomiting [81]. Ondansetron was found to be superior to pyridoxine and doxylamine in improvement of n/v [91].

In the setting of HG, there was no significant difference when compared with promethazine in reduction of nausea or in adverse effects [92]. There are two RCTs comparing ondansetron and metoclopramide in the setting of HG. One study found similar efficacy in control of nausea with improved vomiting with ondansetron [83]; the other found similar effects on n/v but with reduced side effects with ondansetron [82]. There is limited evidence to support the use of a subcutaneous pump of ondansetron. There are no RCTs comparing subcutaneous with oral or IV administration. Although there may be some symptom improvement with a subcutaneous pump, a significant number of women experience complications with 25% stopping treatment related to complications [85,86]. Given the limited data on benefit and the significant side effects, the use of subcutaneous pumps is not recommended [4].

Promethazine (Phenothiazines)
Phenothiazines [prochlorperazine (Compazine), promethazine (Phenergan)] appear to be safe in pregnancy. A case-control study of promethazine showed no evidence of increased risk or rate of congenital anomalies in humans [89,93]. Phenothiazines are often used in addition to or instead of antihistamines. The level 1 evidence for effectiveness is limited. As said above, metoclopramide (with one IM shot of 50 mg of pyridoxine) is superior in decreasing vomiting and subjective improvement compared to monotherapy with either prochlorperazine or promethazine in NVP [80] and had similar efficacy with reduced side effects in HG [84]. Compared to ondansetron, there was no difference in severity of nausea in the setting of HG [92]. Two studies compared promethazine and corticosteroids in patients with HG. One study [94] found a decreased rate of hospital readmission with corticosteroids; the other study [95] found increased n/v at 48 hours but not after 17 days with prednisolone [2].

Other phenothiazines have been studied in the setting of NVP although they are not commonly used and their safety is not established. Thiethylperazine demonstrated improved symptoms compared to placebo, and fluphenazine–pyridoxine was not statistically significantly better than placebo in another [1,96,97].

In summary, if n/v persists despite steps 1 to 2, consider adding metoclopramide or ondansetron. Phenothiazine (promethazine) therapy may be added as well although it may not be as effective and has more side effects.

Step 4: Inpatient Assessment and Treatment

Inpatient Management
Admit if HG diagnosis is confirmed, woman is not tolerating oral intake, and failed outpatient management. Some
suggest just brief ER visits for severe cases needing emergent hydration. Home infusion services should be used as much as safely possible. Admission by itself does not improve HG, and should be limited. Other etiologies of n/v should be ruled out (Table 9.1), and work up should be initiated as described in “Pregnancy Management” above.

**Intravenous Fluid (IVF) Hydration**

IVF can be used if dehydration is present. Volume should be adequate to replenish loss and ongoing loss through vomiting. IV rehydration may be done with normal saline, lactated ringers, or dextrose normal saline along with electrolytes as needed. In severe cases, thiamine should be repleted to prevent the development of Wernicke’s encephalopathy. Add thiamine 100 mg qd for two to three days, then multivitamins to IV fluids. Hypertonic solutions should be avoided; rapid overcorrection of hyponatremia may cause central pontine myelinolysis.

One RCT compared dextrose saline with normal saline and found that although there was improved nausea at hours 8 and 16 after treatment with dextrose saline, 24 hours there was no difference in nausea score, quality of life, or length of hospital stay [98].

**Additional Pharmacologic Therapy**

**Corticosteroids.** Safety data on corticosteroids include possible increased incidence of oral cleft if used <10 weeks [4].

RCTs on the use of corticosteroids in the treatment of HG have had mixed results. A meta-analysis on this was limited by the difference in inclusion criteria and definition of HG. Compared with placebo, the additon of corticosteroids to other antiemetic therapy does not appear to improve symptoms, but may reduce hospital readmission rate [2]. One small RCT found decreased episodes of emesis compared to metoclopramide [99]. Two RCTs compared steroids with promethazine and one found increased side effects and delayed response compared to promethazine [95], and the other found decreased readmission associated with corticosteroids [94]. Adrenocorticoticotropin hormone (ACTH) is not beneficial [100]. **Corticosteroids are not recommended for the treatment of NVP but may be considered for a short course (up to three days) in refractory cases of HG after 10 weeks gestation.**

Usual dosing is methylprednisolone 16 mg po/IV tid, prednisolone 20 mg po bid, or hydrocortisone 300 mg IV qd. For patients who do respond, this three-day course may be followed with a one to two week taper. ACOG suggests that patients who initially responded and then develop recurrent vomiting after the taper may be continued on an effective dose for up to 6 weeks although this is not based on any specific trial data [4].

**Benzodiazepines**

Do not use diazepam, a category D drug, because of possible fetal effects, despite one trial on its efficacy [101].

**Clonidine**

Clonidine is a centrally acting alpha-2 adrenergic agonist commonly used as an antihypertensive agent. It has been studied in the prevention of postoperative nausea and vomiting. One small crossover design RCT (n = 12) evaluated transdermal clonidine in addition to other antiemetic therapy for the treatment of refractory HG and found subjective and objective improvement in measures of nausea and vomiting; of note, this small study also reported one patient whose pregnancy course was complicated by central venous catheter associated sepsis [102]. Given this small limited study, there is insufficient data on safety or efficacy to recommend clonidine for the treatment of NVP or HG.

In summary, for patients with dehydration, weight loss, and inability to tolerate PO, consider admission for IV rehydration, beginning treatment with the IV formulation of the antiemetics in step 3. Multiple combinations and dosing can be used. In the rare cases in which these are not successful, one may proceed with a short course of corticosteroids. Benzodiazepines are not recommended because of adverse fetal effects and limited data on benefit. Clonidine may be effective but is not recommended given the limited data on its benefits and safety.

**Step 5: Nutritional Supplementation**

If persistent weight loss or dehydration (e.g., more than five to seven days despite aggressive inpatient therapy), consider consulting gastroenterology and possibly psychiatry as well. In addition, supplement with either enteral (EN) or parenteral nutrition (PN) in conjunction with a nutrition consult.

**Enteral Nutrition**

Enteral nutrition requires a nasogastric (NG) tube. There are several types (e.g., 8 French Dobbhoff) of NG tubes with insufficient evidence to assess effectiveness of one versus the other. This intervention is best used for persistent n/v with no response to antiemetic therapy. There are no RCTs comparing NG tube or PN. One large retrospective cohort study compared EN with IVF and PN. They found the EN resulted in similar weight gain and pregnancy outcomes despite the fact that they had significantly greater weight loss on admission [103]. Because PN is associated with several possible complications, an NG tube should be tried first as tolerated [4]. A small case series of three patients demonstrated the feasibility and safety of endoscopically placed jejunostomy tubes in the setting of refractory HG, and this may be an area for further study [104]. Enteral nutrition may be poorly tolerated and complicated by tube dislodgement requiring replacement.

Nutritional goals should be developed in conjunction with a nutrition consult. Specific nutritional requirement will depend on individual factors, such as degree of weight loss and severity of nausea and vomiting. In general, the Harris-Benedict equation for women may be used to calculate basal energy expenditure with an additional 300 calories added to meet the additional demands in pregnancy [105]. The weight used in the calculation may be current weight or prepregnancy weight depending on the degree of weight loss.

**Nutrition (Harris–Benedict Equation)**

- Basal Metabolic Rate = 655.1 + (9.56 × wt[kg]) + (1.85 × ht[cm]) – (4.68 × age[yr])
- Activity Factor: 1.2 to 1.9 (for sedentary activity level to extremely demanding activity level)
- (Basal Metabolic Rate × Activity Factor) × 300 = Daily caloric requirement in pregnancy
- Start at 25 mL/hr, increase by 25 mL/hr until goal. Then consolidate to give over eight to 12 hours overnight rather than continuously over 24 hours.

**Parenteral Nutrition**

Several catheters and regimens are possible (peripherally inserted central catheter [PICC], midline IV, etc.). As with EN, PN should be managed in conjunction with a nutrition consult. Generally PN is associated with high incidence of
catheter complications, for example, infection, leading to sepsis (about 25%), thrombosis/occlusion, and dislodgement/mechanical failure with mixed reports on maternal or neonatal benefit and no RCTs assessing its efficacy [106–110]. Peripheral catheters have high morbidity and central catheters have central access complications. Other complications include pneumothorax, cholestasis, preterm birth, and fetal death. This is an expensive therapy to be used only when HG is refractory to treatment with significant weight loss (>5%) and failure of enteral nutrition.

In summary, for patients that are admitted with HG refractory to steps 1–4, order a nutrition consult and consider enteral over parenteral nutrition.

OTHER ISSUES
If persistent weight loss or dehydration (e.g., over five to seven days despite aggressive inpatient therapy), consider consulting gastroenterology and either enteral or parental nutrition. Consider a psychiatric consult in severe, refractory-to-therapy cases. Psychotherapy has not been evaluated in any trial. Woman can be discharged home on IV fluids and/or parenteral nutrition (PN) as long as stable, not discharged homeuated in any trial. Woman can be

POSTPARTUM
The risk of recurrence of HG [2,4,9] is about 15% (vs. 0.7% in controls without prior HG). The risk may be reduced by change in paternity [9].

REFERENCES
6. Goodwin TM, Nwankwo OA, O’Leary LD et al. The first demographic and review
56. Kia PY, Safaouj F, Shahnazi M, Nazemiyeh H. The effect of lemon inhalation aromatherapy on nausea and vomiting of pregnancy: A double-blind randomised controlled clinical trial. Unpublished data, reported in Matthew 2014 (ref. 1). [RCT, n = 98; vitamin B6 25 mg orally q8h × 72 hours versus placebo]
Intrahepatic cholestasis of pregnancy

Giuliana Simonazzi and Steven K. Herrine

KEY POINTS

- The diagnosis of intrahepatic cholestasis of pregnancy (ICP) is defined as first onset of pruritus in the second or third trimester, elevated serum bile acids >10 μmol/L, and spontaneous relief of signs and symptoms within four weeks after delivery.
- ICP is diagnosed once all other forms of liver disease and cholestasis have been excluded.
- A total bile acid level of >40 μmol/L represents severe ICP.
- Complications of untreated, usually severe ICP, include spontaneous preterm birth, meconium, non reassuring fetal heart tracing, fetal death, neonatal death, and postpartum hemorrhage. Fetal deaths occur mostly ≥37 weeks, and no increased perinatal deaths have occurred in recent series with ursodeoxycholic acid (UDCA) treatment and delivery by 37 to 38 weeks.
- UDCA is the current treatment of choice for ICP as it is associated with improvements in maternal pruritus, bile acids, and transaminases. UDCA treatment should be recommended for women with ICP and also to improve some fetal outcomes.
- Vitamin K 10 mg by mouth once a day at onset of ICP or 34 weeks has been suggested for prevention of postpartum hemorrhage, but there is insufficient evidence for a strong recommendation.
- There are several reports of sudden fetal death within 24 hours of a reactive nonstress test (NST) and insufficient evidence for a recommended fetal testing protocol.
- Especially in severe cases, delivery should occur at about 37 0/7 to 37 6/7 weeks.

HISTORIC NOTES

Old names such as “benign jaundice of pregnancy” or “idiopathic jaundice of pregnancy” should no longer be used.

DIAGNOSIS/DEFINITION

Intrahepatic cholestasis of pregnancy (ICP) is diagnosed when otherwise unexplained pruritus occurs in pregnancy with elevated bile acids >10 μmol/L (≥14 μmol/L) in >90%, often with elevations in serum alkaline phosphatase and aminotransferases, which all resolve after delivery [1]. In the setting of normal bile acids, some accept the diagnosis of pruritus and abnormal transaminases [14]. Other names used in the literature are gestational cholestasis or obstetric cholestasis. Other causes of pruritus and liver dysfunction should be excluded. Differential diagnosis may include hepatitis A, B, and C; Epstein–Barr and cytomegalovirus; autoimmune liver disease; gall bladder stones; tumors of the hepatobiliary tract; and a number of causes with elevated hepatic enzymes specified to pregnancy (e.g., preeclampsia, HELLP syndrome, and acute fatty liver) [2–5] (Figure 10.1, Table 10.1). Women with persistent unexplained pruritus and normal biochemical tests should have liver function tests repeated every one to two weeks [1].

SYMPTOMS

ICP is characterized by mild to severe pruritus usually starting after 30 weeks, which often resolves within 48 hours following delivery [2]. The pruritus of ICP is typically worse at night, is often widespread throughout the whole body, and may be most severe in the palms of the hands and/or soles of the feet [1,6]. Mild jaundice, if present (incidence of 14%–25%), typically develops one to four weeks after onset of pruritis with mildly elevated serum levels of conjugated bilirubin. Insomnia, fatigue, anorexia, malaise, weight loss, epigastric discomfort, steatorrhea, gallstones, cholecystitis, vitamin K deficiency, and dark urine are other signs and symptoms associated with ICP [2].

INCIDENCE/EPIDEMIOLOGY

Incidence of ICP varies geographically with 0.01% to 0.5% in the United States; 0.5%–1.5% in Europe [7]; 5% Hispanics; 9.2% to 15.6% in South America [8]; and 2.3%–6.0% in China [9]. It commonly occurs in the late second and third trimesters, rapidly resolves within four weeks after delivery, and is associated with adverse pregnancy outcomes [1,8].

GENETICS

About 15% to 30% of women presenting with ICP have a family history of intrahepatic cholestasis (IC), but most cases are not related to known mutations of familial IC. Genetic predisposition is shown in high-prevalence regions, such as Chile and Scandinavia. Family clustering, prevalence of ethnic and geographic variations, and recently demonstrated mutations in gene coding for hepatobiliary transport proteins further indicate a genetic predisposition in ICP. There are many genetic variations described, which occur at different chromosomal locations, ATP8B1 at 18q 21–22, ABCB4 at 7q21, ABCB11 at 2q24 [10]. Genetic predisposition may lead to altered cell membrane composition of bile ducts and hepatocytes as well as the subsequent dysfunction of biliary canalicular transporters. Mutations in the hepatic phospholipid transporter (MDR3/ABCB4), amniophonolipid transporter (ATP8B1/FIC1), and bile salt export pump (BSEP/ABCB1) have been found in patients with ICP [2,6,8]. These genetic mutations are more frequent in women who developed severe ICP [6,8].

ETIOLOGY/BASIC PATHOPHYSIOLOGY

ICP is associated with a rise in conjugated bile salts, particularly the tauroconjugates of cholic and chenodeoxycholic
acid. Bile acids are the end products of hepatic cholesterol metabolism. The metabolic demands of pregnancy increase the demand for and exceed hepatic capacity for cholesterol metabolism in susceptible individuals. Bile acids, such as glycocholic and taurocholic acid, increase in serum and cause itching [6]. Bile acids are inherently cytotoxic, and thus their metabolism is tightly regulated. In ICP, the transport of bile salts from the liver to the gallbladder and intestine is disrupted, leading to compensatory transport of bile salts from hepatocytes into the blood [11].

The underlying mechanisms of obstetric complication (preterm delivery, meconium passage, fetal distress, and fetal death) are poorly understood [12]. First, research in animals has shown a detrimental effect of high bile acid levels on cardiomyocytes, which cause arrhythmias [13]. Such potentially lethal arrhythmias in the fetus could explain the increased incidence of stillbirth. Second, a vasoconstrictive effect of bile acids on human placental chorionic veins has been shown, possibly explaining the occurrence of fetal distress, asphyxia, and death [14]. Finally, several studies have shown bile acid to increase the sensitivity and expression of oxytocin receptors in the human myometrium, possibly clarifying the mechanism behind spontaneous preterm labor in pregnancies that are complicated by ICP [15,16].

**CLASSIFICATION**

A bile acid level of ≥40 μmol represents severe disease. Severe disease represents about 20% of cases of ICP. Complications occur mainly with severe ICP [17,18].

**RISK FACTORS/ASSOCIATIONS**

There is a higher incidence of ICP in women with multiple pregnancies, in women who have conceived after in vitro fertilization (2.7% compared with 2%), and in women older than 35 years of age. Multiparity, family clustering, ICP in previous pregnancy, and a history of oral contraceptive use are also associated with an increased incidence of ICP. Recurrence of ICP has been reported to occur between 40% and 60% with varying intensity in subsequent pregnancies in a random manner. Several environmental factors have been reported to play a role in the etiology of ICP in genetically susceptible individuals: high maternal serum copper and low maternal serum selenium and zinc. Interestingly, ICP is more common in some countries during the winter, when natural selenium levels are lower. Deficiency of vitamin D has been also reported in women with ICP [2,11].

**COMPLICATIONS (WITHOUT TREATMENT)**

Complications of untreated ICP include preterm birth (PTB) (15%–44%), passage of meconium (25% to 45%), nonreassuring fetal heart testing (NRHFT) 5% to 15%, fetal death (2% to 10%), neonatal death (1% to 2%), and postpartum hemorrhage (20% to 22%) [2]. Spontaneous PTB (SPTB) occurs mostly at 32 to 36 weeks as for other causes of SPTB. Fetal deaths occur mostly ≥37 weeks [3]. The etiology of fetal deaths is unclear. A relationship between bile acid levels and fetal death is suspected and remains the focus of much research. For example, a large study demonstrated that fetal compromise increased by 1%–2% for each additional μmol/L of bile acid concentration;
### Table 10.1  Selected Differential Diagnoses of Pregnant Women with Pruritus

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Common trimester presentation</th>
<th>Viral Hepatitis</th>
<th>Primary Sclerosing Cholangitis</th>
<th>Primary Biliary Cirrhosis</th>
<th>Acute Fatty Liver of Pregnancy</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Intrahepatic Cholestasis of Pregnancy</td>
<td>Any</td>
<td>Any</td>
<td>Any</td>
<td>Second, third</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clinical features</td>
<td>Severe pruritis, jaundice</td>
<td>Nausea, vomiting, jaundice, prolonged abdominal pain and fluctuating jaundice and pruritis</td>
<td>Insidious and intermittent jaundice, fatigue, pruritis, abdominal pain</td>
<td>Fatigue, intermittent pruritis, RUQ pain, anorexia, and jaundice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Laboratory findings</td>
<td>Alkpho nl or elevated</td>
<td>Alkpho nl Trans 1000 to 2000 U/L; ALT &gt; AST</td>
<td>Alkpho 3–5 × nl Trans 4–5 × nl</td>
<td>Alkpho 3–4 × nl Trans &lt;3 × nl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Trans elevated, sometimes to 1000 U/L</td>
<td>Bilirubin: nl or mildly elevated</td>
<td>Bilirubin: nl or mildly elevated</td>
<td>Bilirubin: early stage: nl, then increases slowly, may exceed &gt;20 mg/dL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bx: Bland changes typical of cholestasis of liver biopsy</td>
<td>Bx: Marked inflammation</td>
<td>Bx: thickened, fibrotic duct wall</td>
<td>Bx: Ductopenia: absence of interlobular bile ducts &gt;50% portal tracts</td>
<td>Bx: Microvesicular fatty liver disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ursodeoxycholic acid (first-line therapy); SAMe</td>
<td>Supportive measures</td>
<td>Ursodeoxycholic acid, treat underlying, liver transplant</td>
<td>Ursodeoxycholic acid, steroids</td>
<td>Delivery</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


**Abbreviations:** Alkpho, alkaline phosphatase; Bx, biopsy; HTN, hypertension; LCHAD, Long-chain 3-hydroxyacyl CoA dehydrogenase; nl, normal; RUQ, right upper quadrant; SAMe, S-adenosylmethionine; Trans, transaminases.
further statistical analysis suggested that, compared with control pregnancies, these rates increased significantly at bile acid level ≥40 micromoles/L [19]. In a recent multicenter retrospective cohort study, bile acids ≥40 μmol/L were associated with increased risk of meconium-stained amniotic fluid, and bile acids ≥100 μmol/L were associated with increased risk of stillbirth [20]. No increase in perinatal deaths has occurred in recent series with treatment and delivery by 37 to 38 weeks [13,21]. Subclinical steatorrhea may occur along with fat malabsorption. This condition may lead to vitamin K deficiency, resulting in a prolonged prothrombin time and postpartum hemorrhage [8].

PREGNANCY CONSIDERATIONS
Up to 50% of women recall pruritus during pregnancy, but few have elevated bile acids. Bile acids may initially be normal, later increasing at an average of three weeks after symptoms of pruritus. Of ICP diagnoses, 80% to 86% are made after 30 weeks.

PREGNANCY MANAGEMENT/EVALUATION
Principles
Usually only severe ICP is associated with perinatal complications so that the largest series has proposed no intervention for milder cases (i.e., bile acids <40 μmol) [18].

Workup
Laboratory evaluation includes bile acids (with serial measurement if initially negative and high clinical suspicion) and transaminases, such as AST and ALT (which are elevated in approximately 60% of cases). GGT is not necessary but is elevated in 30% of cases. Serum bilirubin is elevated in about 25% of cases of ICP, rarely exceeding 6 mg/dL [2]. Hepatitis C antibody can be checked, especially in the presence of risk factors for the infection, as ICP is more common in these women. In the appropriate clinical setting, right upper quadrant ultrasound can be used to investigate the possibility of biliary obstruction (10% have cholelithiasis) (Figure 10.1, Table 10.1) [2–5]. Postnatal resolution of symptoms and biochemical abnormalities is required to confirm the diagnosis [1].

MANAGEMENT (FIGURE 10.2)
Prevention
No preventive measures have been proposed.

Therapy
Ursodeoxycholic Acid (Ursodiol)
Mechanism of action: Ursodiol is a hydrophilic bile acid that inhibits intestinal absorption of other bile acids, enhances excretory hepatocyte function and cholestatic activity, stabilizes hepatocyte cell membranes and dilutes toxic bile acids in the enterohepatic circulation [13]. Ursodiol may also allow for transport of bile acids out of the fetal compartment.
Safety: FDA pregnancy category B.
Dose: 10 to 25 mg/kg orally divided into two doses daily.
The standard starting dose is 300 mg to 500 mg orally twice a day.

Figure 10.2  Treatment algorithm. Abbreviations: UDCA, ursodeoxycholic acid; SAMe, S-adenosylmethionine. (Adapted from Cappell M. Med Clin North Am, 92, 4, 739–60, 2008; Cappell M. Med Clin North Am, 92, 4, 717–37, 2008; Saleh M, Abdo K. J Womens Health, 16, 6, 833–41, 2007.)
**Side effects:** Headache, diarrhea, and constipation, all reported in less than 25% of patients. UDCA is generally well tolerated by pregnant women [22].

**Effectiveness:** Compared to placebo, UDCA is associated with decreased pruritus, a significantly greater reduction in bile acids and transaminases, and lower incidence of preterm birth [23–26]. When compared to other interventions, UDCA has been shown to have a significant beneficial effect in decreasing pruritus, bile acids, and liver function tests [27–29]. The outcome of fetal death is generally uncommon, but indirect evidence correlates lower bile acids with fewer fetal deaths and other complications. There is insufficient data concerning protection against stillbirth and safety to the fetus or neonate [1]. However, some studies suggested that UDCA therapy might also benefit fetal outcomes [22,30,31]. In a meta-analysis, including both non-RCTs and RCTs, the use of UDCA in the management of ICP was associated with improvement in some maternal outcomes (liver function tests, pruritus) and some fetal and neonatal outcomes (SPTB, neonatal intensive care unit admission). There were also a trend toward increased birth weight and decreased meconium staining associated with use of UDCA [32]. A Cochrane meta-analysis concluded that UDCA improves maternal pruritus in ICP, but cited insufficient evidence to recommend UDCA to improve fetal outcome. The analysis also reported an apparent decrease in fetal/neonatal morbidity associated with UDCA, including lower rates of meconium passage and higher mean gestational age at birth [27].

**S-Adenosylmethionine**

S-adenosylmethionine (SAMe) is a methyl donor that is thought to improve bile flow and biliary lipid metabolism. The dose should be 500 mg orally twice a day or 800 to 900 mg IV infusion once a day. Compared to placebo, one trial showed significantly greater improvements in pruritus, bile salts, and liver enzymes with SAMe [25,26,29,33–35]. Compared to UDCA, SAMe is less effective at improving pruritus, bile acids, transaminases, and bilirubin [25,36–39]. SAMe is not commonly used by itself given the tolerability and therapeutic superiority of UDCA.

**UDCA and SAMe**

Compared to placebo, UDCA and SAMe resulted in greater improvements in pruritus, bile salts, and selected liver function assays; however, combined UDCA and SAMe were no more effective than UDCA alone in regard to improvement in pruritus [26,27,39].

**Other Therapies**

**Dexamethasone.** Compared to dexamethasone, UDCA is associated with a greater reduction in bile acids and liver enzymes with improved pruritus only in women with severe ICP [27]. Dexamethasone should not be the first-line therapy for treatment of ICP nor should it be used outside of a randomized controlled trial without a thorough consultation with the woman [1].

**Cholestyramine.** Cholestyramine is an anion exchange resin that binds to bile acids and decreases their absorption in the ileum. Cholestyramine should not be taken with other medications because of potential interference with their absorption. Safety: FDA pregnancy category C. Dose: 8 g orally once a day. Significant side effects include a decrease in intestinal absorption of fat-soluble vitamins A, D, E, and K, increased intestinal gas, diarrhea, and poor palatability. No studies support the use of vitamin K supplementation to decrease risks associated with deficiency. Compared with UDCA, no significant differences were observed in pruritus, bile salts, or fetal/neonatal outcomes [28].

**Guar gum.** Guar gum is a type of dietary fiber that decreases the bile acid pool by binding to bile acids in the intestinal lumen [6]. Safety: FDA pregnancy category B. Compared to placebo, there are no differences in pruritus, bile salts, or fetal/neonatal outcomes observed in a very small RCT [40].

**Activated charcoal.** Activated charcoal is a porous substance shown to adsorb bile salts, decrease bilirubin levels, and inhibit bile acid absorption [5]. Safety: FDA class C. Compared to no treatment, the reduction in bile salts was greater with charcoal, but there was no difference in pruritus or fetal/neonatal outcomes in a very small RCT [41].

**Hydroxyzine.** Hydroxyzine antagonizes central and peripheral histamine-1 receptors. Safety: FDA pregnancy category C; dose: 25 to 100 mg as needed every six hours orally. Hydroxyzine might improve tolerance to persistent itching, but this is not based on RCT data [8]. Antihistamines may provide some sedation at night but do not have a significant impact on pruritus.

**Vitamin K.** Vitamin K (FDA pregnancy category C) 10 mg once a day at onset of ICP or 34 weeks has been suggested for prevention of postpartum hemorrhage, but there is insufficient evidence for a strong recommendation [5]. Women should be advised that when prothrombin time is prolonged, the use of water-soluble vitamin K (for example, menadiol sodium phosphate) in a dose of 5–10 mg daily may be indicated [2].

**Conclusion**

UDCA monotherapy is the current treatment of choice and should be used as the first-line therapy for ICP. UDCA has been demonstrated to be equal or superior in safety, efficacy, cost-effectiveness, and convenience compared to other therapies. There is insufficient evidence to recommend SAMe, guar gum, activated charcoal, dexamethasone, cholestyramine alone or in combination in the management of women with ICP [27,39].

**ANTEPARTUM TESTING**

No RCT specifically addresses fetal surveillance and its frequency in ICP. No specific method of antenatal fetal monitoring for the prediction of fetal death can be recommended. Even if maternal detection of movements is simple, its role in monitoring pregnancy complicated by ICP has not been assessed. Ultrasound and cardiotocography are not reliable methods for preventing fetal death in ICP. Daily kick counts and nonstress tests (NSTs) once per week starting at diagnosis (usually on or after 32 weeks) have been proposed, but there are several reports of fetal death after reactive NST [42,43]. Despite this, expert opinion suggests that continuous fetal monitoring in labor should be offered [1].

**DELIVERY**

Stillbirths in ICP have been reported across all gestations, but the majority of unexplained fetal deaths occur after
37 weeks [6]. As gestation advances, the risk of delivery (prematurity, respiratory distress) versus the uncertain fetal risk of continuing the pregnancy (stillbirth) may justify offering women induction of labor at 37/0–37 6/7 weeks, especially in severe cases (bile acid level of ≥40 μmol) [6,13,26]. The decision should be made after careful counseling.

REFERENCES

Inflammatory bowel disease

Priyadarshini Koduri

KEY POINTS

• Inflammatory bowel disease (IBD) refers to Crohn’s disease (CD) and ulcerative colitis (UC).
• Pathogenesis of IBD is not well known although both environmental and genetic factors play a role.
• If one parent has UC, the risk of the offspring developing UC is 1.6%; if one parent has CD, risk goes up to as high as 5.2%. With both parents having IBD, the offspring’s risk goes up to 36%.
• Complications from IBD can be from intestinal or extraintestinal manifestations.
• Women with IBD should be encouraged to plan conception when the disease is in remission and when their nutritional status is optimized.
• Smoking cessation is an extremely important factor in keeping women with CD quiescent.
• CD has been associated with first-trimester miscarriage, preterm birth <37 weeks, and low birth weight. It may be associated with stillbirth and SGA infants.
• UC is associated with preterm birth <37 weeks. It may be associated with an increased risk of congenital anomalies, SGA, and stillbirth.
• Even if disease is well controlled, women with IBD remain at risk for adverse pregnancy outcomes.
• The risk of a flare of IBD during pregnancy (33%) is similar to when they are not pregnant.
• Multiple medications are available for management of IBD. Most are considered safe for use in pregnancy and breast-feeding except for methotrexate and thalidomide. Aminosalicylates, such as sulfasalazine or mesalamine, are usually considered first-line therapies.
• Surgical management for UC during pregnancy is only indicated in cases of massive hemorrhage, fulminant colitis unresponsive to medical management, perforation, or strongly suspected/known carcinoma. Colectomy in pregnancy is historically associated with high perinatal mortality.
• Ileal pouch–anal anastomosis does not confer additional maternal or fetal morbidity. Long-term pouch function is not affected by pregnancy or mode of delivery.
• Mode of delivery in IBD remains controversial with no randomized controlled trials available to provide guidance. Limited evidence suggests that in women with IBD, vaginal delivery is appropriate in quiescent or absent perianal disease (abscess/fistula). A cesarean delivery may be performed for women with active perianal disease, such as perianal abscess or fistula.
• Mode of delivery does not impact development of IBD in children.
• Thromboprophylaxis postpartum may be considered, particularly post cesarean section.
• Pregnancy and breast-feeding may have a mitigating effect on the course of IBD in the years following delivery.

BACKGROUND

Inflammatory bowel disease (IBD) refers to Crohn’s disease (CD) and ulcerative colitis (UC). Both are chronic systemic diseases that affect women of reproductive age. They have a protracted relapsing and remitting course that extends over years. Although they share several common features, there are distinct differences between the two conditions summarized in Table 11.1. Differentiating between UC and CD, however, may be impossible in 15% of patients [1].

CROHN’S DISEASE

Definition

CD is a systemic inflammatory disease that mainly manifests as chronic, transmural, granulomatous inflammation of the gastrointestinal system. Any part of the GI tract can be affected. Although it commonly involves the colon and terminal ileum, the rectum may be involved in up to 50% of patients [1].

Diagnosis

Diagnosis is based on history, physical examination, laboratory evaluation and a combination of endoscopic, radiographic, and pathologic findings documenting the focal, asymmetric, and transmural features of the disease (Table 11.1). A diagnosis of CD is rarely made for the first time during pregnancy [2].

Signs/Symptoms

Manifestations of CD in pregnancy are similar to those in the nonpregnant state. Typical symptoms include chronic or intermittent diarrhea, abdominal pain, weight loss, fever, and rectal bleeding. Acute ileitis may mimic appendicitis. Additional clinical features include pallor, anorexia, palpable abdominal mass/tenderness, perianal fissures, fistula, or abscess. Perianal manifestations are unique to CD. Extraintestinal symptoms are not uncommon and may involve a variety of organ systems (Table 11.2). Many of these manifestations are also seen in UC.

Epidemiology/Incidence

The incidence of CD varies by geographical region, but has been rising over the past decade. The incidence of CD in developed Western countries, including the United States, is estimated at seven per 100,000 population [3]. Disease frequency is two to four times higher in Jewish populations. The peak age of onset is in the second and third decades of life. Smoking is associated with a twofold increased risk of CD [1].
20% of the heritability of CD, emphasizing the importance of familial clustering and genetic anticipation have been confirmed [4]. However, these loci only explain approximately 20% of the heritability of CD, emphasizing the importance of other factors. The current hypothesis is that IBD results from a response to environmental triggers (infection, smoking, drugs, or other agents) in genetically susceptible individuals, resulting in a chronic dysregulation of mucosal immune function [5].

Complications
Maternal
Complications from CD may include serosal adhesions, partial and complete small bowel obstruction, fistula formation, perforation with resulting peritonitis, abscess formation, malabsorption, and perianal disease. Also, complications may arise from any extraintestinal manifestations (Table 11.2).

Fetal
The evidence related to fetal and neonatal outcomes remains conflicting and limited to observational studies. Retrospective studies suggest there may be an increased risk of first trimester miscarriage in women with CD when compared to controls [6,7]. However, this association has not been consistently demonstrated in large population-based cohort studies [7–9]. Several population-based studies and two meta-analyses demonstrate an increased risk of preterm birth <37 weeks and low birth weight infants [10–15]. The association with congenital anomalies remains questionable [10,15]. The risk of preterm birth may be higher in women who require oral systemic steroids and they may also be at increased risk for severe preeclampsia [8]. The data regarding the risk of small for gestational age (SGA) infants and stillbirth are inconsistent, but the most recent meta-analysis suggests an increased risk [10,15,16].

Pregnancy Considerations
Effect of Pregnancy on CD
Pregnant women with CD are no more likely to flare compared to nonpregnant women with CD [17]. Pregnancy may in fact have positive effects on disease activity as lower rates of relapse are observed in the three years following pregnancy [18,19]. Lower rates of stenosis and/or resection have also been noted in women with CD who have been pregnant during their disease course [20].

Effect of CD on Pregnancy
Regardless of disease activity, women with CD are at risk for adverse pregnancy outcomes that have been previously outlined [21]. Large population-based studies including women with IBD suggest an increased risk of adverse pregnancy outcomes with increasing disease activity [8,22]. Women with CD are at increased risk of cesarean delivery [10].

Management
Principles
Treatment of CD during pregnancy is similar to therapy in a nonpregnant patient. A multidisciplinary approach by an obstetrician/perinatologist and gastroenterologist is recommended. Most medications used in the management of CD are considered safe for use in pregnancy and have not been shown to be teratogenic. Women maintained in remission should continue their prepregnancy medications throughout their pregnancy unless they are on clearly teratogenic agents. Termination of pregnancy is not a therapeutic option for CD as there is no evidence that termination results in improved disease activity [23].
**Workup**
When a woman presents with symptomatic colitis and relapse is suspected, it is important to rule out infectious causes, including *Clostridium difficile* colitis. *C. difficile* may have a more fulminant course in patients with IBD [24]. Although imaging and colonoscopy/sigmoidoscopy may be indicated in the initial diagnosis of CD, they are often not necessary for workup of a relapse. Colonoscopy and/or flexible sigmoidoscopy may be performed safely during pregnancy.

**Differential Diagnosis**
Infectious colitis (bacterial, fungal, viral, or protozoan), diverticulitis, ischemic colitis, solitary rectal ulcer syndrome, nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drug (NSAID)-related colitis.

**Preconception Counseling**
- A woman with CD should have a detailed discussion with her primary care provider, gastroenterologist, and obstetrician about her illness. Because the clinical course of CD during pregnancy depends on CD activity at the time of conception, it is important to make sure that the disease is in remission before pregnancy is planned. Contraceptive options should be reviewed as part of this discussion. Quiescent disease at the time of conception (either spontaneous or on therapy) typically remains quiescent in two thirds of patients during pregnancy, and active disease remains active in up to 70% of patients. Improvement during pregnancy is only noted in 30% [25]. In a recent meta-analysis, 46% of patients with active disease at time of conception remained active, and only 23% of women who were in remission at the time of conception relapsed [26].
- Women are therefore encouraged to enter pregnancy when the disease is in remission for at least six months and their nutritional status has been optimized. Clinical remission is defined as normal bowel form and number (presence of formed stool and absence of diarrhea) without bleeding or abdominal pain [27].

**Prenatal Care**
Comanagement with a gastroenterologist is recommended to ensure medication safety and appropriate management of any flares. Early evaluation and treatment of anemia, if applicable, is useful. To ensure appropriate weight gain during pregnancy, a nutrition consult may also be helpful. Serial growth surveillance should be considered particularly if a woman has active disease. There is no evidence that antenatal surveillance reduces stillbirth risk but may be considered in women with active disease.

**Table 11.3 Medications Used in IBD**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type of Medication</th>
<th>Drug</th>
<th>Pregnancy Category</th>
<th>Recommendations for Pregnancy</th>
<th>Breast-Feeding</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>5-Aminosalicylic acid drugs</td>
<td>Sulphasalazine</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>First-line therapy; low risk; women should take 2 mg folic acid daily</td>
<td>Likely safe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Mesalamine</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>Low risk</td>
<td>Likely safe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Olsalazine</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>Low risk</td>
<td>Likely safe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Balsalazide</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>Limited information</td>
<td>Limited information</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Immunosuppressive agents</td>
<td>Azathioprine/ 6-mercaptopurine</td>
<td>D</td>
<td>Continue in pregnancy if efficacious; low risk</td>
<td>Likely safe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cyclosporine</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>Moderate risk</td>
<td>Not recommended</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Methotrexate</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>Contraindicated; teratogenic</td>
<td>Contraindicated, teratogenic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anti-TNF-alpha agents</td>
<td>Infliximab</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>Low risk</td>
<td>Likely safe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Adalimumab</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>Limited data; low risk</td>
<td>Safety unknown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Certolizumab</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>Safety unknown</td>
<td>Safety unknown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Corticosteroids</td>
<td>Prednisone</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>Low risk; possible risk of cleft palate. PPROM and GDM</td>
<td>Likely safe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Antibiotics</td>
<td>Metronidazole</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>Low risk</td>
<td>Likely safe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Quinolones</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>Low risk; possible cartilage damage with first-trimester exposure</td>
<td>Likely safe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Miscellaneous</td>
<td>Thalidomide</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>Contraindicated; teratogenic</td>
<td>Contraindicated; teratogenic</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Abbreviations**: GDM, gestational diabetes mellitus; IBD, inflammatory bowel disease; PPROM, premature preterm rupture of membranes; TNF, tumor necrosis factor.
recommendations for commonly used drugs in the therapy of IBD.

**Aminosalicylates.** Sulfasalazine, mesalamine, balsalazine, and olsalazine are in this category. These are usually considered the first-line therapies, both in nonpregnant and pregnant women. Drugs in this category have limited placental transfer and are generally considered safe for use in pregnancy and in breast-feeding. Aminosalicylates have not been shown to be teratogenic in humans [30–34]. They have not been shown to be associated with stillbirth, spontaneous abortion, preterm delivery, or low birth weight [30].

Because of the possible antifolate effects of sulfasalazine, women on sulfasalazine are recommended to take 2 mg folic acid/day in the prenatal period and throughout the pregnancy [16,27].

**Corticosteroids**
Prednisone is generally safe in pregnancy and breast-feeding [23]. Although it does not cross the human placenta, animal studies report an increased risk of cleft palate in the offspring. Women on high doses should avoid breast-feeding within four hours of taking their dose to minimize possible neonatal effects. High-dose prednisone confers risk of diabetes (early glucola is warranted) and PPROM. A steroid taper is recommended when used for more than one week. Stress dose steroids are indicated only in special circumstances (see Chapter 25).

**Antibiotics**
Metronidazole and quinolones have been used in the management of IBD. Metronidazole is considered safe for use in pregnancy and breast-feeding. Quinolones have a high affinity for bone tissue and cartilage. Animal studies show cartilage damage in weight-bearing joints after quinolone exposure. Although risk with exposure is minimal, alternative therapies should be used in pregnancy when available [16]. Augmentin, another antibiotic used commonly in the management of both perianal and luminal CD, can be used safely during pregnancy. Rifamixin is a relatively new antibiotic, pregnancy category C, used in management of CD.

**Immunomodulators/Immunosuppressants**
Azathioprine/6-mercaptopurine. Mercaptopurine and azathioprine are often used to maintain remission in steroid-dependent patients with IBD [35,36]. Multiple case series and cohort studies have not demonstrated an increased risk of congenital anomalies, suggesting that these drugs are safe for use in pregnancy [36–43]. However, a recent meta-analysis demonstrated an increased risk of congenital anomalies in neonates born to women using thiopurines [44]. Nonetheless, women who conceive on these medications should be allowed to remain on them through the pregnancy. They should be counseled not to stop 6-mercaptopurine before conceiving as that may actually increase the risk of fetal loss [45]. Azathioprine and 6-mercaptopurine should ideally not be started for the first time in pregnancy due to response time and the small risk of severe side effects [27]. Several series suggest that breast-feeding on azathioprine/6-mercaptopurine may be safe [46–48].

**Methotrexate.** MTX is clearly teratogenic and use is contraindicated in pregnancy and in women considering pregnancy. Use in pregnancy or during organogenesis (six to eight weeks after conception) is associated with methotrexate embryopathy. Exposure later in pregnancy may be associated with fetal toxicity and/or mortality. Women considering pregnancy should discontinue MTX three to six months before attempting conception [16]. MTX is contraindicated in breast-feeding.

**Cyclosporine.** This drug is typically used in patients with UC who are refractory to steroids. It should be used at the lowest effective dose. Cyclosporine has not been found to be teratogenic in humans [49–51]. It is associated with SGA infants and preterm birth [51]. Hypertension and seizures have also been reported with cyclosporine use. It should preferably not be initiated during pregnancy [38,39]. Breast-feeding is not recommended because of potential neonatal nephrotoxicity and immunosuppression [52,53].

**Infliximab.** Infliximab is a tumor necrosis factor (TNF)-alpha inhibitor used in patients with IBD [54–56]. Several studies and a meta-analysis have documented the safety of infliximab in pregnancy and have shown no increased risk of congenital anomalies or other adverse pregnancy outcomes [57–61]. Nonetheless, there are concerns regarding increased drug transfer across the placenta in the third trimester and newborn drug levels [62,63]. Newborn drug levels may in theory increase the risk of infectious complications in a neonate. This concern has led to a recommendation to avoid live vaccines for the first six months of life [61]. As such, current recommendations suggest that pregnant women should avoid treatment after 30 weeks gestation, and if necessary, the mother can be bridged with steroids to control the disease activity until delivery [63–65]. The final decision whether to discontinue medication should be made in partnership with a gastroenterologist. A neonatologist or pediatric consultation can be offered to address vaccination concerns. The safety of infliximab in breast-feeding remains unknown although case reports of women on infliximab suggest it is safe [59,66].

**Adalimumab.** Adalimumab is an anti-TNF-alpha agent used in the management of CD. Human data on adalimumab use during pregnancy in IBD patients are limited. Case reports and a recent meta-analysis do not show an increased risk of congenital anomalies or other adverse pregnancy outcomes [61,67,68]. Similar to Infliximab, concerns regarding third-trimester use and newborn drug levels exist. There is limited data regarding the safety of Adalimumab in nursing but due to the miniscule amounts found in breast milk it is likely compatible.

**Certolizumab.** Certolizumab is a relatively new drug with decreased placental transfer compared to infliximab and adalimumab. It has not been associated with congenital anomalies or other adverse outcomes [61]. It has not been detected in breast milk, but data regarding safety of use in pregnancy or breast-feeding remains limited.

**Miscellaneous Agents**
**Natalizumab.** This is a humanized IgG4 monoclonal antibody more commonly used in multiple sclerosis patients although it has also been approved for treatment of CD. Data from the Natalizumab Pregnancy Exposure Registry do not show an association with adverse pregnancy outcomes [69]. It does cross the placenta during the third trimester of pregnancy. It is a pregnancy category C drug.

**Thalidomide.** Thalidomide has been successfully used in the treatment of some patients with CD [70]. Use in pregnancy and while breast-feeding is unequivocally contraindicated because of its well-known teratogenic effects.

**Naltrexone.** This is an opioid antagonist typically used in low doses to induce remission. There is insufficient evidence
to determine safety or efficacy in the nonpregnant population and no data yet on use in pregnant women [71].

Antepartum Testing
There is no literature to support the use of routine antenatal testing in patients with CD. However, it may be considered in women with active disease.

Delivery
No randomized controlled trials exist to determine the best form of delivery for women with CD. By current practice, the method of delivery should be dictated by obstetric indications. Vaginal delivery is acceptable for women with quiescent or absent perianal disease, and cesarean delivery should be performed in those women with active perianal disease defined as perianal abscess or fistula [72]. Episiotomy should be avoided as it places women with CD at risk for perineal disease peridelivery [73]. Mode of delivery does not appear to influence the development of IBD in offspring [74].

Women with IBD are considered “intermediate” risk for venous thromboembolism. Thromboprophylaxis (e.g., with low-molecular-weight heparin) should be considered for women postpartum (e.g., up to seven days), particularly for those women undergoing a cesarean delivery [75]. The first dose should be administered no sooner than four hours postoperatively and no later than 24 hours postoperatively.

Postpartum/Breast-Feeding
Breast-feeding is not associated with an increased risk of disease flare and may even be protective against a flare in the year following delivery [76,77].

ULCERATIVE COLITIS
Definition
UC is a chronic idiopathic systemic disease characterized by mucosal inflammation that usually involves the rectum and extends proximally to involve all or part of the colon. Disease is limited to the rectum and rectosigmoid in 40% to 50% of patients, and 30% to 40% have disease extending beyond the sigmoid but not involving the whole colon. In 20% of patients, the entire colon is involved [1].

Diagnosis
A diagnosis of UC is typically suspected on clinical grounds. It is confirmed by proctosigmoidoscopy or colonoscopy, histology of biopsy specimens, and by a negative stool culture for C. difficile [24]. Alternative causes of diarrhea (infectious and noninfectious) should be ruled out before a definitive diagnosis can be made. Table 11.4 outlines criteria used to determine disease severity.

Table 11.4  Montreal Classification of Extent and Severity of Ulcerative Colitis

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Extent</th>
<th>Severity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>E1 (proctitis)</td>
<td>Inflammation limited to the rectum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E2 (left-sided; distal)</td>
<td>Inflammation limited to the splenic flexure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E3 (pancolitis)</td>
<td>Inflammation extends to the proximal splenic flexure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S0 (remission)</td>
<td>No symptoms</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S1 (mild)</td>
<td>Four or less stools per day (with or without blood), absence of systemic symptoms, normal inflammatory markers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S2 (moderate)</td>
<td>Five stools per day, minimum signs of systemic symptoms</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S3 (severe)</td>
<td>Six or more stools per day, pulse rate ≥90 beats per min, Temperature ≥37.5°C, Hemoglobin concentration &lt;105 g/L, ESR ≥30 mm/h</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Stool with blood, pus, and fecal matter may be experienced. Generalized symptoms may include anorexia, nausea, vomiting, fever, and weight loss. On physical examination, a tender anal canal and blood in the rectum may suggest proctitis. Severe pain and bleeding suggests toxic colitis, and tachypnea on abdominal exam suggests megacolon. Signs of peritonitis may suggest perforation [1]. Similar to CD, extraintestinal manifestations are not uncommon (Table 11.2).

Epidemiology/Incidence
The incidence of UC varies by geographical location. It is most common in Western nations and incidence in the United States is estimated at 8–12/100,000 population per year [24]. Ulcerative colitis has a bimodal pattern of incidence with the main peak at 15–30 years of age and a second peak at 50–70 years of age [78]. Unlike CD, the incidence of UC has remained stable over the past several decades [24]. Smoking and even a history of smoking increases the risk of UC. Former smokers have a 1.7-fold increased risk of developing UC compared to nonsmokers [1].

Etiology/Basic Pathophysiology
The etiology of UC remains unknown. The pathogenesis is currently thought to be similar to CD (see section titled “Etiology/Basic Pathophysiology” described earlier for CD).

Complications
Material
Massive hemorrhage typically from erosions in the colon (1%), toxic megacolon (5%), perforation (rare but fatal in 15% of cases), and strictures (5%–10%) [1]. The risk of colon cancer is related to the duration and extent of the disease. After 10 years, the colon cancer risk is estimated at 0.5% to 1% per year, necessitating annual or biannual colonoscopic surveillance [24]. Complications may also arise from any existing extraintestinal manifestations (Table 11.2).

In women with an ileal pouch–anal anastomosis (IPAA), pregnancy is considered safe and is not associated with an increased frequency of maternal morbidity or pouch complications [79]. Pouch complications reported in pregnancy include small bowel obstruction (2.8% antenatally, 6.8% postpartum), pouchitis (1.8%), and perianal abscess (0.4%) [80].
UC is associated with preterm birth <37 weeks [10,15,81]. The risk of preterm birth may be higher in women who require systemic steroids and they may also be at increased risk for severe preeclampsia [8]. Evidence regarding other adverse pregnancy outcomes remains inconsistent. Several studies suggest that UC is not associated with low birth weight, intrauterine growth restriction, SGA infants, or stillbirth [7,10,82,83]. However, a recent meta-analysis shows an increased risk of SGA and stillbirth in patients with IBD [15]. Although some population-based studies and a meta-analysis suggest that UC may be associated with congenital anomalies, specifically limb deficiencies, obstructive urinary abnormalities, and multiple anomalies, these findings have not been replicated in other studies [8,10,82,84]. Similar to Crohn's disease, increased disease activity in pregnancy may be associated with worse pregnancy outcomes [8,22]. The presence of an IPAA does not confer additional fetal morbidity or mortality [79].

**Pregnancy Considerations**

**Effect of Pregnancy on UC**

Pregnant women with UC are just as likely to flare as non-pregnant women [85]. Pregnancy may result in fewer relapses in the years following delivery in women with UC [19,20]. In women with an IPAA, there may be transient worsening of pouch function during the pregnancy, but long-term function is preserved regardless of mode of delivery. Additionally, long-term pouch function in women who have had a vaginal delivery is similar to women who did not have a delivery following IPAA [79,86].

**Effect of UC on Pregnancy**

See section titled “Complications: Fetal.”

**Management**

**General Principles**

Management of a pregnant woman with UC is best done in partnership with a gastroenterologist. The general principles for management of pregnant patients with UC are similar to management principles in women with CD.

**Workup**

See section titled “Workup” described earlier for CD.

**Differential Diagnosis**

Infectious diarrhea (bacterial, fungal, viral, or protozoan), diverticulitis, ischemic colitis, solitary rectal ulcer syndrome, NSAID-related colitis.

**Preconception Counseling**

- Women should be encouraged to optimize their medical management before conception and optimize nutritional status (see section titled “Crohn’s Disease”).
- Discontinue known teratogenic drugs. Women on methotrexate should wait three to six months after discontinuation before attempting pregnancy. Women on sulfasalazine should take 2 mg folic acid daily at least one month prior to conceiving and through the pregnancy.
- Women should be up to date on relevant cancer screening as advised by their gastroenterologist.

**Therapy**

Treatment for ulcerative colitis is individualized based on disease severity and extent of colitic involvement.

**Pharmacological Therapy**

Many of the medications used to maintain remission or treat acute relapses are similar to the medications used in CD. See section titled “Therapy” (under CD) and Table 11.3. A meta-analysis showed Curcumin, an anti-inflammatory agent, to be successful in maintaining remission in nonpregnant patients with UC. Data regarding use and safety in pregnancy is lacking [87].

**Surgery.** Despite medical management, some women, particularly those with severe disease activity, may develop fulminant disease, necessitating operative intervention. The likelihood of colectomy depends on disease severity and presence of deep colonic ulcerations on admission [78]. Urgent or emergent surgery typically involves a subtotal colectomy with a temporary ileostomy without removal of the rectal stump. Subsequent IPAA and ileostomy closure is performed when the patient recovers. Proctocolectomy with IPAA is the standard of care for elective surgery [78]. Even when a surgical intervention for UC is performed in the third trimester, cesarean section should be reserved for obstetric indications [87].

**Colectomy.** Absolute indications for surgery are exan-guinating hemorrhage, perforation, and documented/strongly suspected carcinoma [4,24]. Other indications include severe fulminant colitis with or without toxic megacolon unresponsive to maximal medical therapy [24,78]. There are no prospective randomized trials comparing medical with surgical treatment efficacy for any indication in UC.

Historically, colectomy in pregnancy for fulminant UC has been associated with a high fetal mortality rate (49%) and concerning maternal mortality rate (22%) [88]. However, a more recent case series of women with fulminant UC undergoing total colectomy demonstrated no maternal or fetal mortality, which is consistent with other series published after 1987 [89].

**Ileal Pouch–Anal Anastomosis**

This is the most commonly performed procedure for UC. It involves resection of the large intestine and creation of an ileal J-pouch, which is attached to a rectal muscle cuff. It helps...
patients maintain their quality of life after colectomy because it maintains intestinal continuity and the function of defecation. IPAA is considered curative for UC.

However, recent data suggest that the risk of infertility in women with UC increases threefold after IPAA.

Antepartum Testing

There is no literature to base a recommendation for antenatal testing. However, antenatal testing may be considered in women with active disease.

Delivery

Similar to CD, mode of delivery should be dictated by obstetric indication. A vaginal delivery is considered safe for women with an IPAA [65,79]. As in the case of a woman with CD, thromboprophylaxis (e.g., with low-molecular-weight heparin) should be considered in women with UC.

Postpartum/Breast-Feeding

Breast-feeding may have a protective effect on the disease course of UC [64].

REFERENCES


Gallbladder disease
Priyadarshini Koduri

KEY POINTS
• Symptomatic gallstones are common in pregnant women, but acute cholecystitis is uncommon.
• Pregnancy and the postpartum period increase the risk of gallstones and acute cholecystitis.
• Biliary colic is the most common symptom associated with gallstones.
• Acute cholecystitis can be differentiated from biliary colic based on constant right upper quadrant or epigastric pain, Murphy's sign, and evidence of inflammation with systemic signs.
• Diagnosis of cholelithiasis or acute cholecystitis is based on characteristic signs, symptoms, and ultrasonographic findings.
• Acute cholecystitis is associated with significant maternal and fetal risks.
• In cases of biliary colic and acute cholecystitis failing a brief period (about 24 hours) of conservative management, laparoscopic surgery should not be delayed, following similar management to the nonpregnant adult.
• Of women with acute cholecystitis, 27% fail conservative management and require a cholecystectomy.
• Cholecystectomy is unequivocally recommended in women with sepsis, ileus, or perforation.
• Endoscopic retrograde cholangiopancreatography (ERCP) and magnetic resonance cholangiopancreatography (MRCP) are considered safe in pregnancy. Pregnancy is a risk factor for post-ERCP pancreatitis.
• Maternal and fetal outcomes are similar regardless of surgical approach to cholecystectomy. However, the laparoscopic approach has inherent surgical advantages, specifically shorter operative times, shorter hospital stays, and fewer operative complications. Surgery is best performed in the second trimester to minimize fetal risks.

CHOLELITHIASIS
Diagnosis/Definition
Presence of gallstones in the gallbladder. A diagnosis of cholelithiasis may be incidental or may be suspected on the basis of classic symptoms with confirmation on ultrasound.

Symptoms
Up to 50% of pregnant women with cholelithiasis are asymptomatic [1]. The most common symptom reported is biliary colic—recurrent pain in the right upper quadrant or epigastrium that is sudden in onset and may radiate to the interscapular area or right scapula. Biliary colic results from obstruction of the cystic or common bile duct. The resulting increased intraluminal pressure is unrelieved by repeated gallbladder contractions. Although nausea and vomiting often accompany biliary colic, the common triad of bloating, nausea, and heartburn is only weakly associated with the presence of gallstones [2].

Epidemiology/Incidence
Gallstones are fairly common and are found in up to 20% of women under age 40 in autopsy series [3]. Gallstones have been reported in 7% of nulliparous women and 20% of multiparous women [4]. Biliary sludge, which is a precursor to gallstones, is seen in up to 30% of pregnant women [2]. Gallbladder disease is the second most common indication for nonobstetrical surgery in pregnancy [5]. Increasing physical activity to moderate or vigorous levels did not decrease the incidence of sludge or gallstones in one trial [6].

Etiology/Pathophysiology
Gallstones form by concretion or accretion of normal or abnormal bile constituents. Increased biliary secretion of cholesterol and gallbladder hypomotility contributes to gallstone formation. There are three major types of gallstones: cholesterol, pigment, and mixed. Cholesterol and mixed stones constitute the majority of gallstones seen (80%), and pigment stones constitute the rest [3].

Risk Factors/Associations
Common risk factors for cholelithiasis are listed in Table 12.1. Pregnancy is associated with an increased risk of cholelithiasis likely due to decreased gallbladder motility and increased lithogenicity of bile [1,7]. Increased risk for cholelithiasis may remain up to five years postpartum [8]. Although the incidence of gallstones or sludge may increase with advancing gestation, regression in the postpartum period is not uncommon [9–13].

Differential Diagnosis
Acute cholecystitis (should be suspected if fever, chills, tachycardia, or other systemic signs accompany persistent right upper quadrant/epigastric pain), appendicitis, pancreatitis, peptic ulcer disease, pyelonephritis, HELLP syndrome, acute fatty liver disease, or hepatitis.

Complications
Maternal
Cholecystitis, cholangitis, choledocholithiasis, pancreatitis, or ileus.

Fetal
No reports suggest an increased fetal risk associated with biliary colic or the presence of gallstones.
Management

Principles
Conservative management may be an option at least initially in an attempt to avoid surgery. However, more recent evidence suggests having a lower threshold for surgical intervention given the safety of the laparoscopic approach and potentially improved fetal outcomes particularly in the second trimester [4,14,15]. Retrospective and survey-based studies suggest that conservative management of symptomatic cholelithiasis is associated with an increased symptom recurrence, hospitalizations, and emergency room visits [16–18].

Workup
Laboratory investigations. Blood count, transaminases, total bilirubin, serum amylase, and lipase.

Imaging. Ultrasound is the most useful and sensitive test for detecting sludge and gallstones even as small as 2 mm [3,19]. Classic sonographic findings suggestive of gallstones include acoustic shadowing of opacities in the gallbladder lumen that change with the patient’s position. The false negative and false positive rates for ultrasound in gallstone patients are estimated at 2% to 4% [3].

Therapy
All pregnant women with symptomatic cholelithiasis should be admitted to the hospital for observation. Although it is generally accepted that women without systemic symptoms should be conservatively managed initially in an effort to avoid surgery, this view was challenged in a retrospective review of 58 pregnant women with gallbladder disease, excluding those with acute cholecystitis [20]. Compared to women surgically managed, women who were conservatively managed had twice the rate of obstetric complications. However, this difference was not statistically significant and the obstetric complications were not directly linked to gallbladder disease.

Conservative management should be attempted initially for about 24 hours. This typically includes bowel rest with NPO, intravenous hydration, and use of opioid analgesics. Surgical consultation should be obtained. Indications for surgical management in symptomatic women without acute cholecystitis include worsening of symptoms, inability to tolerate oral intake, increasing abdominal tenderness, and patient preference.

Pregnancy Considerations
Biliary colic alone does not appear to increase the risk of adverse obstetric outcome.

Labor and Delivery Issues
Mode of delivery is not impacted by the presence of gallstones. Cesarean section should be performed for obstetric indications.

ACUTE CHOLECYSTITIS
Diagnosis/Definition
Acute cholecystitis is inflammation of the gallbladder. A diagnosis of acute cholecystitis should be made on the basis of characteristic history and physical examination (Figure 12.1). Murphy’s sign is a physical examination finding of increased abdominal rigidity on inspiration and right upper quadrant tenderness. This sign is pathognomonic for acute cholecystitis but may not always be present on exam, depending on gestational age and body habitus.

Classification
Table 12.2 summarizes criteria used to grade the severity of acute cholecystitis [21].
Table 12.2  Grading Severity of Acute Cholecystitis

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Grade</th>
<th>Criteria</th>
<th>Examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I (mild)</td>
<td>Acute cholecystitis in otherwise healthy patient with mild local inflammatory changes and without organ dysfunction</td>
<td>Criteria for Grade II or III not met</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II (moderate)</td>
<td>any one of the following characteristics</td>
<td>Leukocytosis (&gt;18 cells per mm³)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Palpable, tender mass in right upper quadrant</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Marked local inflammation (gangrenous or emphysematous cholecystitis, pericholecystic or hepatic abscess, biliary peritonitis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III (severe)</td>
<td>organ dysfunction in any one of the following systems</td>
<td>Cardiovascular: Hypotension requiring administration of ≥5 μg/ kg/min of dopamine or any dose of norepinephrine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Neurologic: Decreased level of consciousness</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Respiratory PaO₂:FiO₂ &lt;300</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Renal: Oliguria or Creatinine &gt;2.0 mg/dL</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hematologic: Platelet count &lt;100,000/mm³</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Source: Adapted from Baron TH, Grimm IS, Swanstrom LL. NEJM, 373, 357–65, 2015.

Symptoms
Symptoms suggestive of acute cholecystitis are similar in the pregnant and nonpregnant state. Common signs and symptoms include constant right upper quadrant pain or tenderness, fever, tachycardia, leukocytosis, anorexia, nausea, vomiting, and inability to tolerate oral intake. Jaundice and signs consistent with peritonitis may also be present. In women with superimposed bacterial infection, sepsis may also be apparent.

Epidemiology/Incidence
Although cholelithiasis is fairly common in pregnancy, acute cholecystitis is relatively uncommon. It is estimated to complicate 0.1% of all pregnancies [22].

Risk Factors/Associations
See section titled “Cholelithiasis.”

Complications

Maternal
Sepsis, cholangitis, pancreatitis, empyema of the gallbladder, gangrene and perforation, fistula formation, gallstone ileus, porcelain gallbladder with associated increased risk of gallbladder cancer.

Fetal
Fetal death (7% in women treated conservatively vs. 2% in women treated with laparoscopic cholecystectomy) [14], preterm delivery (3.5% in women treated conservatively vs. 6% in women treated surgically) [23], first-trimester miscarriage.

Etiology/Pathogenesis
The majority of cases of acute cholecystitis result from obstruction of the cystic duct by gallstones [2,24]. Inflammation of the gallbladder results from three factors: mechanical inflammation from increased intraluminal pressure, resulting in ischemia of the gallbladder wall and mucosa; chemical inflammation from release of tissue factors; and bacterial inflammation. Bacterial inflammation may play a role in 20% of all patients with acute cholecystitis [24]. Characteristic bacteria involved include *Escherichia coli*, *Klebsiella*, *Streptococcus faecalis*, *Staphylococcus*, and *Clostridium* [3,24].

Pregnancy Considerations

Principles
The appropriate and optimal management of pregnant women with acute cholecystitis remains controversial. Risks of conservative management include risk to the fetus from recurrent relapses, malnutrition, and other complications that may result from complicated gallbladder disease. However, surgery is not without maternal or fetal risk either. Management decisions for the pregnant woman with acute cholecystitis should be made in conjunction with a general surgeon to ensure optimal management for both mother and fetus.

Workup
Laboratory investigations. Complete blood count, transaminases, total bilirubin, alkaline phosphatase, serum amylase, and lipase.

Imaging. Ultrasound is the image modality of choice in pregnancy for diagnosing cholecystitis. Classic sonographic findings suggestive of acute cholecystitis are similar in pregnant and nonpregnant women. They include a thickened gallbladder wall (>3–5 mm), pericholecystic fluid, gallstones, and a sonographic Murphy’s sign [2,21].

However, ultrasound is insensitive in diagnosing choledocholithiasis (presence of an obstructing gallstone in the common bile duct). If choledocholithiasis is suspected on the basis of a dilated biliary tree, abnormal liver tests or pancreatitis, further diagnostic modalities should be employed, namely MRCP or ERCP.

MRCP: Considering the safety of MRI in pregnancy, MRCP is likely safe in pregnancy. MRCP and ERCP have been shown to have similar diagnostic accuracy for choledocholithiasis in the nonpregnant population [25]. Nonetheless, there are no clear guidelines for use of MRCP in pregnancy. In doses several times the human dose, paramagnetic contrast agents have been associated with fetal abnormalities and increased risk of miscarriage in animals [26,27]. Safety of contrast agents during breast-feeding remains unknown.

ERCP: ERCP followed by sphincterotomy and stone extraction is now the most common treatment modality for symptomatic choledocholithiasis. In cases of acute cholecystitis, a cholecystectomy may be performed after an ERCP to prevent recurrence of obstruction. Several small retrospective studies support the safety of ERCP in pregnancy [28–35]. A large retrospective matched-cohort study showed that ERCP-associated complications of perforation, cholecystitis, and post sphincterotomy hemorrhage were rare in both pregnant and nonpregnant women [36]. However, pregnant women were found to have a significantly higher incidence of post-ERCP pancreatitis compared to nonpregnant women (12% vs. 5%, P < 0.001). Pregnancy complications were rare, and rates of maternal mortality, fetal distress, and fetal loss were comparable to national averages [36]. ERCP is best performed in the second trimester to minimize obstetric risks [29]. Fetal radiation exposure during an ERCP can vary depending on procedure.
time and fluoroscopy time. Although there is a correlation between fluoroscopy time and fetal radiation exposure, this relationship is not entirely linear [34]. In a series of 17 patients undergoing ERCP, fetal radiation doses were <200 mrad when fluoroscopy time was limited to less than one minute [34]. Effort should be made to minimize fluoroscopy time, using shielding under the pelvis and over the lower part of the abdomen. Modifying techniques to minimize fluoroscopy time have successfully been used to decrease fetal radiation exposure to negligible levels [37]. Nonradiation ERCP has been successfully performed during pregnancy without resultant adverse pregnancy outcomes [38–42]. However, the small number of reported procedures limits conclusions regarding safety of the procedure in pregnancy. Fetal monitoring before and after ERCP is recommended.

Management
All women with suspected acute cholecystitis should be hospitalized and a surgical consultation should be obtained. If acute cholecystitis is confirmed, conservative management for about 24 hours is a reasonable initial option to avoid surgery. Conservative therapy typically includes NPO and bowel rest, intravenous hydration, and opioid analgesia. Broad-spectrum antibiotics should be considered in women with systemic symptoms who do not improve in 12 to 24 hours [2].

The safety and possible efficacy of a short course of indomethacin in the second trimester to attempt to reverse the gallbladder inflammation has been reported [22]. Indomethacin use should be avoided after 32 weeks to avoid resultant adverse pregnancy outcomes [23]. However, the small number of reported cases limits conclusions regarding safety of this approach in pregnancy. Fetal monitoring before and after ERCP is recommended.

A majority of patients (40%–70%) who are treated conservatively relapse during the pregnancy [4,14]. Approximately 27% of women will fail conservative management and require cholecystectomy [23]. Definitive surgical therapy is required in pregnant women with sepsis, ileus, or perforation [2]. Pregnant and nonpregnant women appear to have similar risk of major postoperative morbidity [44].

Laparoscopic vs. Open Cholecystectomy
A systematic review did not find any difference in maternal or fetal morbidity when the open laparoscopic approach was compared to the open approach [23]. A more recent study looking at 664 cholecystectomies performed during pregnancy found that the laparoscopic approach was associated with shorter operative times, shorter length of stay, and fewer postoperative complications [45]. The laparoscopic approach has been associated with a risk of bile duct injury, but such injury can be prevented by conversion to an open cholecystectomy if dissection is difficult or unsuccessful or the anatomy is difficult to ascertain [21]. The Society of American Gastrointestinal and Endoscopic Surgeons (SAGES) states that laparoscopic cholecystectomy is the treatment of choice in the pregnant patient with gallbladder disease regardless of trimester [46]. Ideally, surgery in pregnancy should be performed in the second trimester to minimize fetal risk. However, laparoscopic cholecystectomy has been safely performed even in the third trimester [47–50].

Regardless of mode of surgery, the pregnant patient should be placed in the left lateral position to avoid aortocaval compression. Perioperative monitoring should be performed. When the laparoscopic approach is used, care should be taken to avoid high intraperitoneal pressures, using the open technique for umbilical port insertion and using electrocautery away from the uterus. Steroids for fetal lung maturity should be considered between 23 and 33 6/7 weeks. Fetal monitoring before and after surgery is recommended.

Other surgical approaches have been described. There is a more recent technique, called NOTES (natural orifice transluminal endoscopic surgery), in which surgery is performed via a natural occurring orifice. There are no reports of a NOTES cholecystectomy performed during pregnancy. Percutaneous cholecystostomy is an older technique whereby the gallbladder is decompressed with a pigtail catheter placed under ultrasound guidance. It is a helpful management alternative in patients who cannot safely undergo surgery or who have contraindications to anesthesia. However, with the safety and acceptance of laparoscopic cholecystectomy, the role of percutaneous cholecystostomy is not well defined in pregnancy. A case series and observational study suggest that it can be performed safely in all trimesters [51,52]. Peroral endoscopic gallbladder drainage (transmural or transpapillary) has not been described in the pregnant population.

Labor and Delivery Considerations
Acute cholecystitis or history of cholecystectomy during the pregnancy should not impact mode of delivery. Cesarean section should be reserved for obstetric indications.

REFERENCES


25. Kalenthaler EC, Walters SJ, Chilcott J et al. MRCP compared to diagnostic ERCP for diagnosis when biliary obstruction is suspected: A systematic review. *BMC Medical Imaging* 2006; 6: 9. [I]


Pregnancy after liver and other transplantation

Ignazio R. Marino, Lucio Mandalà, and Augusto Lauro

KEY POINTS

- The best outcomes in pregnancy after liver transplant occur in patients with the following:
  - Good general health ≥1 year since transplant
  - Minimal or no proteinuria (<1 g/24 hours)
  - Creatinine <1.5 mg/dL
  - Well-controlled or no hypertension
  - No evidence of recent graft rejection
- Stable immunosuppressive regimen and liver function
- Potential maternal and fetal complications include preterm birth, preeclampsia, fetal growth restriction, and low birth weight.
- Pregnancy in and of itself does not affect previously stable hepatic allograft function.
- The effect of comorbid conditions (i.e., diabetes, hypertension) should be considered and their management optimized.
- Transplant recipients should have their baseline kidney function (creatinine, 24-hour urine collection for total protein) assessed.
- Maintenance of current immunosuppression in pregnancy is usually recommended except for mycophenolic acid products, for which fetal risks should be discussed and alternatives sought.
- Summary of management options in Table 13.4.

PREGNANCY AFTER LIVER TRANSPLANTATION

Introduction and Historic Notes

Since the first human liver transplant performed in 1963 by Thomas Starzl (University of Colorado) [1], many advances in surgical techniques and immunosuppressive therapy have helped to increase the numbers of women who undergo allogenic organ transplantation each year. In 1978, Walcott [2] documented the first known pregnancy in a liver transplant recipient, which resulted in a successful delivery with both mother and infant in excellent health. Many times, a transplanted organ normalizes a woman's hormonal imbalance and restores fertility, thus offering the prospect of pregnancy and providing many women with end-stage organ disease a chance to conceive and bear children. As a result, among liver transplant recipients, a higher survival rate and a return to a good quality of life have been achieved. In 1991, the National Transplantation Pregnancy Registry (NTPR) was established at Thomas Jefferson University in Philadelphia, Pennsylvania, to analyze pregnancy outcomes in solid-organ transplant recipients [3].

Definition/Symptoms and Signs of ESLD

Liver transplantation (LTx): treatment of choice for all non-neoplastic end-stage liver diseases and for selected patients with nonresectable hepatic malignancies.

End-stage liver disease (ESLD): any hepatic disease that jeopardizes the survival or that seriously modifies the quality of life of the patient and for which the transplant is the only therapy because no other medical or surgical treatment exists that is able to provide a reasonable chance of recovery.

Before undergoing LTx, some patients remain in quite good clinical condition. There may be individual variations in terms of hospital care requirements. As the liver disease progresses, symptoms such as encephalopathy, weakness, and lethargy become more frequent. Intractable ascites, GI bleeding, peripheral edema, anorexia, jaundice, pruritus and cholestasis, peritonitis, and pneumonia may also develop. Often the patient is severely malnourished.

Indications

Although chronic hepatitis C infection (HCV) represents the leading indication for LTx in the United States, autoimmune hepatitis is probably the most frequent reason for transplantation among young female recipients who may become pregnant after transplant [4].

Epidemiology

Approximately one third of all patients who have undergone LTx are women, and about 75% of female recipients are of reproductive age [4]. The incidence indicates that more than 14,000 women of reproductive age are living in the United States after liver transplantation (LTx), and another 500 undergo LTx each year [5].

Pathophysiology

Women with decompensated liver disease commonly have menstrual dysfunction: Infertility is common in women with ESLD because of hypothalamic–pituitary–gonadal dysfunction, which decreased ovulation [6,7] and affects up to 50% of these patients. In fact, menstrual abnormalities may be the first signs of liver disease in females with chronic liver disease. In cirrhotic state, hypothalamic–pituitary dysfunction is associated with an inadequate response to the gonadotropin-releasing hormone agonists and clomiphene citrates as well as diminished gonadotrophin release relative to the reduced levels of circulating sex steroids [8]. Furthermore, serum levels of estradiol and testosterone are increased in patients with porto-systemic shunts. Thus pregnancy in decompensated cirrhosis is very uncommon. A successful transplant almost uniformly leads to a prompt return to normal menstrual cycles and to reproductive functions because of the recovery of the gonadotrophic function [8–11]. This is an important component of the restoration of normality of life for patients of childbearing age, and it is evidenced by the increasing number of post-transplantation pregnancies reported worldwide [12–24].
**Preconception Counseling and Timing of Pregnancy**

Pregnancy after liver transplant should be considered as a high-risk pregnancy and monitored closely by a team of transplant hepatologists and experts in obstetrics and maternal-fetal medicine. Female liver transplant recipients who are planning to become pregnant should be counseled on contraception and optimal timing of pregnancy, proper vaccinations, and risks associated with immunosuppressive therapy.

For this reason an appropriate contraceptive plan should be recommended. Oral contraceptives are relatively contraindicated in women with liver transplant because of many theoretical complications, such as the risk of thromboembolism, cholestasis, exacerbated hypertension, and interference in cyclosporin metabolism [7]. Although intrauterine devices may initially increase the risks of infection especially in immunocompromised women, their use is probably safe and should be recommended.

Many medications used for post-transplant immunosuppression have potential effects during pregnancy and breast-feeding. The risks and benefits of each medication should be reviewed with patients contemplating pregnancy, and regimens should be tailored accordingly [see below]. Ideally, patients should be vaccinated prior to transplantation against influenza, pneumococcus, hepatitis B, and tetanus. Alternatively, they should be vaccinated prepregnancy.

The optimal timing of conception post-transplant is controversial, but current recommendations suggest waiting for at least one year after transplantation based on rejection risks and to allow stabilization of allograft function and of immunosuppressive regimen [7–8,20] even though the shortest interval from OLTx to conception reported in the literature is three weeks [24]. Immunosuppressive agents are at their nadir one year post liver transplantation, and thus risk of allograft rejection is low at that time. Furthermore, renal and liver functions tend to stabilize during that period. Thus it is ideal to delay pregnancy until the patient is on a maintenance immunosuppression one to two years after transplantation to minimize fetal exposure to high doses of immunosuppressants. When choosing the timing of pregnancy after OLTx, several factors should be considered:

- a. Good general health ≥1 year since transplant.
  - Risk of acute graft rejection
  - Risk of acute infection that might impact the fetus (cytomegalovirus [CMV] acute infection is most common within 6–12 months post-transplant)
- b. Proteinuria and creatinine level.
  - None or minimal proteinuria (<1 g/24 hours)
  - Serum creatinine <1.5 mg/dL
- c. Rejection and immunosuppression.
  - No evidence of recent graft rejection (in the past year)
  - Stable immunosuppression regimen (stable dosing)
- d. Stable liver function.
  - Patients with stable liver function generally have a low risk for opportunistic infections
- e. Maternal age.
- f. Medical noncompliance.

**Comorbidity and Risk Factors**

The outcome in liver transplant recipients from selected publications is shown in Table 13.1. The main comorbidity, risk factors about patient, graft, and fetus complications described in the English literature are also described below.

**Hepatitis Virus Reactivation**

Even if autoimmune hepatitis is the most frequent reason for transplantation among young female recipients who may become pregnant after transplant, a reactivation of viral hepatitis is considered one of the most serious risks for both mother and child.

For hepatitis B, for example, vertical transmission is reported between 10% and 20% of HBsAg-positive (HBeAg-negative) nontransplant mothers without immunoprophylaxis. It is recommended to vaccinate and give IVlg to all newborns born to HBsAg-positive women within 12 hours of birth as the hepatitis B virus (HBV) neonatal infection risks with these interventions decreases to less than 10% [25] (Chapter 30).

The rate of maternal-fetal HCV transmission in OLTx recipients is still unclear, requiring additional analysis. The vertical infection rate in pregnant HCV RNA-positive subjects is around 3% to 5% (in absence of other viral coinfections) [26]. A well-documented risk factor for HCV vertical transmission is maternal high viral load. Therefore, special attention should be given to patients with high viral load post-transplant (Chapter 31).

**Hypertension and Renal Insufficiency**

The immunosuppression regimen based on calcineurin inhibitors (cyclosporine and tacrolimus) is associated with an increased incidence of hypertension and renal insufficiency in the post-transplantation population. The pathogenesis is related to endothelial cell dysfunction and decreased endogenous nitric oxide production, causing renal dysfunction and hypertension: The side effect for the post-LTx pregnant women is an increased incidence of preeclampsia [6,21]. The same treatment with calcium channel blockers used in the nontransplant population is recommended [27].

**Diabetes**

The incidence of new-onset diabetes mellitus (NODM) is approximately 15% among liver transplant recipients [28]. The immunosuppressive therapy plays an important role even if the impact of steroids is controversial. Most of the authors agree to limit the use of steroids as much as possible and to reduce calcineurin inhibitors at the minimum needed dose. The management of NODM is essentially similar to that of diabetes in the nontransplant population. NODM is associated with obesity, insulin resistance, insulin secretory defect, and subsequent development of type II diabetes in the offspring. Modern treatment protocols during pregnancy include strict glycemic control by a combination of diet and medications (Chapters 4 and 5). Traditionally, insulin therapy has been considered the gold standard for management of diabetes because of its efficacy in achieving better glucose control and the fact that it does not cross the placenta [29].

**CMV Acute Infection**

CMV infection represents one of the most common types of infection within six to 12 months in the post-transplant population, and it is very dangerous in early pregnancy because it is responsible for congenital malformation (microcephaly, cerebral palsy, sensorineural deafness) or congenital liver disease with an incidence of 10% to 15% of infected pregnancies. It is advisable to screen all transplant recipients with CMV IgG and IgM. If IgM positive, avidity testing should
### Table 13.1 Fetal and Maternal Outcomes in Liver Transplant Recipients from Selected Studies

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Author</th>
<th>No. of Pregnancies</th>
<th>Live Birth Rate (%)</th>
<th>Spontaneous Abortions (%)</th>
<th>Preterm (%)</th>
<th>Graft Dysfunction (%)</th>
<th>Cesarean Rate (%)</th>
<th>Birth Weight &lt;2500 g (%)</th>
<th>Maternal Deaths (%)</th>
<th>Neonatal Deaths (%)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Alvaro E</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>66.6</td>
<td>26.6</td>
<td>NA</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>42</td>
<td>NA</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Armenti VT</td>
<td>205</td>
<td>73</td>
<td>19</td>
<td>35</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>35</td>
<td>34</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dashpande NA</td>
<td>450</td>
<td>76.9</td>
<td>6.2</td>
<td>39.4</td>
<td>NA</td>
<td>44.6</td>
<td>NA</td>
<td>NA</td>
<td>NA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Christopher V</td>
<td>71</td>
<td>71</td>
<td>19</td>
<td>NA</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>NA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coffin CS</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>70</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>27</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>38</td>
<td>NA</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dei Malatesta MF</td>
<td>285</td>
<td>78</td>
<td>NA</td>
<td>31</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>43</td>
<td>23</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jabiry-Zieniewicz Z</td>
<td>39</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>31</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>80</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jain AB</td>
<td>49</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>47</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nagy S</td>
<td>38</td>
<td>63</td>
<td>NA</td>
<td>29</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>46</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sibanda N</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>69</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>NA</td>
<td>62</td>
<td>57</td>
<td>NA</td>
<td>NA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Total</strong></td>
<td><strong>1203</strong></td>
<td><strong>76.7</strong></td>
<td><strong>7.95</strong></td>
<td><strong>30.8</strong></td>
<td><strong>12.37</strong></td>
<td><strong>47.76</strong></td>
<td><strong>25.7</strong></td>
<td><strong>4.3</strong></td>
<td><strong>3.1</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

be followed (Chapter 47). The use of antiviral agents in the management of CMV infection during pregnancy remains controversial [8] (Chapter 47).

**Acute Cellular Rejection**
Acute cellular rejection (ACR) rate in the post-LTx pregnancies is reported between 2% and 8% [3,8,23] and occurs during the earlier phases of pregnancy. Immunosuppression therapy should be maintained and monitored during pregnancy by serum levels as a reduction or discontinuation may lead to rejection of the transplanted organ. When acute rejection is suspected, an ultrasound-guided percutaneous liver graft biopsy is strongly recommended and should be associated with a Doppler ultrasound study of the graft in order to exclude anatomic source of graft dysfunction. The ACR treatment includes adjustment of immunosuppressive medications and use of steroids as antirejection therapy.

**Infrarenal Aortic Graft**
One death due to aortic graft clotting by external compression from the gravid uterus has been reported [27]. For this reason, patients with infrarenal aortic graft should be monitored with color Doppler ultrasonography during pregnancy.

**Pregnancy Complications (Table 13.1)**

**Preterm Birth and Low Birth Weight**
The risk of prematurity is up to 50%, and the mean gestational age at delivery ranges between 36 and 37 weeks [3–5,20].

**Intrauterine Growth Restriction**
Intrauterine growth restriction (IUGR) is estimated to occur in about 20% of liver transplant recipients and is associated with perinatal morbidity and mortality (Chapter 45).

### Table 13.2 FDA Classification of Risk of Immunosuppressive Drug in Pregnancy

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Drugs</th>
<th>Pregnancy Category</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Corticosteroids</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cyclosporin</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sirolimus</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tacrolimus</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Azathioprine</td>
<td>D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mycophenolate mofetil</td>
<td>D</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Table 13.3 Selected Immunosuppressive Agents and Their Side Effects

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Immunosuppressant</th>
<th>Side Effect</th>
<th>a</th>
<th>b</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Prednisone</td>
<td>Glucose intolerance</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Azathioprine</td>
<td>Leukopenia</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cyclosporine</td>
<td>Hypertension, nephrotoxicity</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tacrolimus</td>
<td>Hypertension, nephrotoxicity, neurotoxic, glucose intolerance, myocardial hypertrophy</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mycophenolate Mofetil</td>
<td>GI disturbance</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sirolimus</td>
<td>Leukopenia, thrombocytopenia, hyperlipidemia</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>b</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*There have been no known teratogenic effects.
*Follow with blood levels.

**Table 13.4 Pregnancy after Liver Transplantation: Management Options**

**Prepregnancy**
- Patients should defer conception for at least one year after transplantation, with adequate contraception.
- Assessment of graft function (organ specific): Recent liver biopsy, Proteinuria (24-hour collection for total protein), Hepatitis B and C status (HBsAg; Hep. C Antibody), CMV, toxoplasmosis, herpes simplex status (IgG, IgM)
- Maintenance immunosuppression options: Azathioprine, Cyclosporine, Tacrolimus, Corticosteroids, Mycophenolate mofetil (avoid as feasible), Enteric-coated mycophenolate sodium (avoid as feasible), Sirolimus
- The effect of comorbid conditions, (i.e., diabetes, hypertension) should be considered and their management optimized.
- Vaccinations should be given if needed (i.e., rubella, etc.) (Chapter 38).
- Explore etiology of original disease.
- Discuss genetic issues if relevant.
- Discuss the effect of pregnancy on renal allograft function.
- Discuss the risks of intrauterine growth restriction, preterm birth, low birth weight, etc.

**Prenatal**
- Pregnancy in and of itself does not affect previously stable allograft function.
- Accurate early diagnosis and dating of pregnancy.
- Baseline laboratory tests should include:
  a. Liver enzymes (ALT and AST)
  b. Creatinine and bilirubin
  c. Immunosuppression medication (e.g., cyclosporine or tacrolimus) level
  d. 24-hour urinary protein and creatinine clearance
  e. Urine analysis and urine culture
  f. CMV, HSV, and Toxoplasma IgM and IgG
  g. HBsAg, HBsAb, HepCAb
- Timing of repeat laboratory testing of at least tests a–e should be once every trimester until 32 weeks.
  - Fetal surveillance.
  - Monitor for hypertension and nephropathy.
  - Careful surveillance for preeclampsia.
  - Early screening for gestational diabetes.

**Labor and delivery**
- Vaginal delivery is optimal; cesarean delivery for obstetric reasons.

**Post-natal**
- Monitor immunosuppressive drug levels for at least one month postpartum, especially if dosages increased during pregnancy.
- Surveillance for rejection with biopsy if it is suspected.
- Breast-feeding discussion.
- Contraception counseling.

**Preeclampsia**

The incidence of hypertension and preeclampsia is approximately 20% in OLTx recipients and seems to occur mainly in patients taking cyclosporine, probably because of the related endothelial cell dysfunction, and less commonly with tacrolimus [3–6,23,27]. The management of preeclampsia is the same as in the nontransplant population (Chapter 1).
Abnormal Blood Chemistry and Liver Function Tests

In most series, pruritus and cholestasis seem to be the most frequent symptoms described in pregnancies after LTx. Differential diagnosis with ACR should be considered in all cases. HELLP syndrome and anemia have been reported [5].

Immunosuppression Therapy: Drugs and Their Side Effects

There is no consensus on the optimal maintenance regimen for transplant pregnant recipients. The use of immunosuppressive therapy after liver transplantation is unavoidable even taking into consideration the potential risks of the exposure of infants to immunosuppressive medications. All immunosuppressive medications cross the placenta and enter into fetal circulation and could potentially have effects in utero. Despite the fact that immunosuppressive agents such as Azathioprine, Cyclosporine, and Mycophenolic acid were teratogenic in animals, the risk of birth defects was not statistically different between those who received immunosuppressive medications and those who did not. Patients treated with either calcineurin inhibitors (cyclosporine or tacrolimus) should have serial blood tests in pregnancy to follow medication levels and to assess hepatic and renal function while avoiding unnecessary toxicity. Recent studies have reported an association between administration of mycophenolic acid products (MPA) [myco-phenolate mofetil (MMF) and enteric-coated mycopheno-late sodium (EC-MPS)] to transplant recipients and an increased risk of adverse outcomes in pregnancy—like specific pattern of birth defects. In 2007, the package inserts of MMF and EC-MPS included a change from pregnancy category C to category D [30–33]. The warning states that females of potential childbearing age must use contraception while taking MPA because its use during pregnancy is associated with increased rates of pregnancy loss and congenital malformations. Pregnancy outcomes with exposure to sirolimus remain limited: Reported to the NTPR are three liver recipients with three pregnancies (two live births, one spontaneous abortion) [3]. The Food and Drug Administration (FDA) classification of risk medication and their categories in pregnancy is reported in Table 13.2. Selected immunosuppressive drugs and their side effects are reported in Table 13.3.

Workup and Management

A summary of the suggested key points is in Table 13.4. In case of elevations of liver function tests and/or bilirubin, an ACR should be ruled out. Evaluation of rejection includes liver ultrasound with Doppler to exclude anatomic sources of graft dysfunction. Liver biopsy to diagnose rejection is not contraindicated in pregnancy. Because of an increased risk of carbohydrate intolerance caused by the administration of prednisone or tacrolimus, patients should be screened with glucose tolerance tests in the first trimester, followed by routine screening between 24 and 28 weeks.

Antepartum Testing

A dating ultrasound should be performed in the first trimester. Ultrasound study should be performed every trimester with detailed fetus anatomy in the second trimester and serial assessment of fetal growth in the third trimester [3,19,34]. Weekly nonstress tests can begin at 32 weeks unless medical or obstetric complications indicate earlier testing.

### Table 13.5 Pregnancy Outcomes among Solid-Organ Transplant Recipients

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Maternal factors (n = pregnancies)</th>
<th>Kidneya</th>
<th>Pancreas–Kidney</th>
<th>Liver</th>
<th>Heart</th>
<th>Lung</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Mean transplant-to-conception interval (years)</td>
<td>3.6–6.1</td>
<td>3.0–5.5</td>
<td>5.7 ± 4.9</td>
<td>6.0 ± 4.7</td>
<td>3.6 ± 3.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hypertension during pregnancy</td>
<td>56%–65%</td>
<td>28%–95%</td>
<td>32%</td>
<td>39%</td>
<td>53%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diabetes during pregnancy</td>
<td>4%–12%</td>
<td>0%–5%</td>
<td>7%</td>
<td>2%</td>
<td>23%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Infection during pregnancy</td>
<td>19%–23%</td>
<td>23%–62%</td>
<td>26%</td>
<td>13%</td>
<td>21%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Preeclampsia</td>
<td>30%–32%</td>
<td>27%–32%</td>
<td>22%</td>
<td>18%</td>
<td>17%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rejection episode during pregnancy</td>
<td>1%–2%</td>
<td>0%–14%</td>
<td>7%</td>
<td>11%</td>
<td>6%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Graft loss within two years of delivery</td>
<td>8%–10%</td>
<td>18%–19%</td>
<td>7%</td>
<td>4%</td>
<td>14%</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Outcomes (n)</th>
<th>Therapeutic abortions</th>
<th>Spontaneous abortions</th>
<th>Ectopic</th>
<th>Stillborn</th>
<th>Live births</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(1017)</td>
<td>0.8%–8.4%</td>
<td>12%–26%</td>
<td>0.4%–1%</td>
<td>2%–3%</td>
<td>70.8%–76%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(77)</td>
<td>0.4%–5%</td>
<td>9%–28%</td>
<td>0%–3%</td>
<td>0%</td>
<td>69%–86%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(293)</td>
<td>4%</td>
<td>18%</td>
<td>0.3%</td>
<td>1.7%</td>
<td>76%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(106)</td>
<td>5%</td>
<td>30%</td>
<td>2%</td>
<td>1%</td>
<td>62%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(32)</td>
<td>16%</td>
<td>28%</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>56%</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Live births (n)</th>
<th>Mean gestational age (weeks)</th>
<th>Preterm birth (&lt;37 weeks)</th>
<th>Mean birth weight (g)</th>
<th>Low birth weight (&lt;2500 g)</th>
<th>Cesarean section</th>
<th>Neonatal deaths, % (n) (within 30 days of birth)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(762)</td>
<td>35–35.8</td>
<td>34.2–34.8</td>
<td>2470–2547</td>
<td>1934–2263</td>
<td>42%–46%</td>
<td>1%–2%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(58)</td>
<td>34.2–34.8</td>
<td>42%</td>
<td>2674 ± 796</td>
<td>50%–68%</td>
<td>43%</td>
<td>(1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(221)</td>
<td>36.4 ± 3.5</td>
<td>34%</td>
<td>6200 ± 568</td>
<td>34%</td>
<td>41%</td>
<td>(1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(66)</td>
<td>36.8 ± 2.6</td>
<td>39%</td>
<td>2206 ± 936</td>
<td>39%</td>
<td>40%</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(18)</td>
<td>33.9 ± 5.2</td>
<td>61%</td>
<td></td>
<td>61%</td>
<td>31%</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


aRange of incidence due to different immunosuppressants.
bIncludes twins, triplets, quadruplets.
cIncludes one triplet pregnancy: one spontaneous abortion at 14 weeks and two born at 22 weeks and died within 24 hours of birth.
Labor and Delivery Issues
Patients who have received steroids during the antepartum period in the equivalent of more than 20 mg of prednisone for more than three weeks should receive “stress dose” steroids (i.e., hydrocortisone 100 mg IV every eight hours × 24 hours). Cesarean delivery should be performed only for obstetric indications.

Breast-Feeding
Data collected from the NTPR [3] indicated no adverse outcomes in infants who were breast-fed during maternal cyclosporine use. Azathioprine seems also to be safe with breast-feeding. Nevertheless, mothers may be discouraged to breast-feed in the first few months post transplantation when immunosuppressive therapy is at high serum levels. The American Academy of Pediatrics advises that breast-feeding mothers can use prednisone and other glucocorticoids safely. Infant exposure to tacrolimus in milk is very low, and subsequently, maternal tacrolimus therapy may be compatible with breast-feeding.

PREGNANCY AFTER OTHER TRANSPLANTATIONS
For pregnancy after renal transplantation, please see Chapter 17.

Table 13.5 shows pregnancy outcomes in kidney, kidney/pancreas, liver, heart, and lung recipients for comparison [3]. Female heart transplant recipients are able to maintain pregnancy with the majority resulting in a live birth. Not all rejections are treated as some are low-grade. Maternal survival, independent of pregnancy-related events, should be considered as part of pre-pregnancy planning.

By comparison, lung recipients have a higher incidence of more significant rejection as well as graft loss in the peri-partum period with smaller newborns. Successful pregnancy is possible post lung transplantation. Analyses of a larger number of cases may help to identify trends in pregnancy after lung transplantation. Whether long-term maternal survival is impacted by pregnancy warrants further study.

Intestinal transplantation has shown steady improvements in graft and patient survival over the past 20 years and is rapidly becoming more established worldwide [35]. The first pregnancy after intestinal transplantation was described in 2006 [36], followed later by few other reports [37–40] with 100% success rate. Specific to this procedure, there are two factors associated with higher success rate. Specific to this procedure, there are two factors associated with higher success rate.

REFERENCES


Maternal anemia
Marcela C. Smid and Robert A. Strauss

KEY POINTS

- Screening all pregnant women with Hgb and mean corpuscular volume (MCV) for acquired and inherited anemias is recommended.
- Anemia in pregnancy is defined as a hemoglobin (Hgb) <11 g/dL and hematocrit (Hct) <33% in the first or third trimesters and Hgb <10.5 g/dL and Hct <32% in the second trimester. For African American women, recommend lowering cutoffs for Hgb and Hct by 0.8 g/dL and 2%, respectively.
- Key laboratory tests for the workup of anemia in pregnancy include a complete blood count (CBC) with MCV, red blood cell distribution width (RDW), serum ferritin level, and hemoglobin electrophoresis. Workup of anemia in pregnancy is described in Figures 14.1 through 14.3.
- Individuals of African, Mediterranean, and Southeast Asian descent are at increased risk of hemoglobinopathies and/or inherited anemia. All women of African ancestry should have a hemoglobin electrophoresis [1]. Women of Mediterranean and Southeast Asian descent should be screened with CBC and MCV. If abnormal, further workup is recommended.
- The most common cause of anemia in pregnancy is iron deficiency. Iron deficiency anemia in pregnancy is defined as serum ferritin <15 µg/L with a Hgb <11 g/dL and Hct <33%.
- Universal preventative oral iron supplementation during pregnancy, with or without folate, is associated with a reduced risk of maternal anemia and iron deficiency at term.
- Iron deficiency anemia is associated with adverse perinatal outcomes, including preterm birth, low birth weight, and perinatal mortality although the evidence regarding the reduction of adverse outcomes with treatment of iron deficiency anemia in pregnancy are lacking.
- Treatment of iron deficiency anemia with oral iron treatment in pregnancy is associated with a reduction in the number of women with hemoglobin <11 g/dL and a greater mean hemoglobin level, but there are insufficient data to conclude clear improvement in maternal or neonatal outcomes (Figure 14.4).
- Parenteral iron may be considered in patients with severe iron deficiency anemia who cannot tolerate or will not take oral iron.
- Severe anemia from any etiology (Hgb <4–6 mg/dL) is associated with poor perinatal outcomes and increased perinatal and maternal mortality. Transfusion may be considered.

For sickle cell disease, see Chapter 15; for von Willebrand disease, see Chapter 16; for care of Jehovah’s Witness pregnant women, see Chapter 9 in Obstetric Evidence Based Guidelines.

DEFINITION
Hemoglobin (Hgb) <11 g/dL and hematocrit (Hct) <33% in the first or third trimesters and <10.5 g/dL and Hct <32% in the second trimester [1,2]. For African American women, recommend lowering cutoffs for Hgb and Hct by 0.8 g/dL and 2%, respectively [3]. Iron deficiency anemia in pregnancy is defined as serum ferritin <15 µg/L with a Hgb <11 g/dL and Hct <33% [4,5].

SYMPTOMS
Usually asymptomatic unless hemoglobin <6 to 7 g/dL.

PREVALENCE
Worldwide, 38%–42% of pregnant women are anemic with estimates ranging from 22% in high resource areas to 56% in Africa [6,7]. In the United States, 5% of pregnant women are anemic; 18% are iron deficient with prevalence increasing from 7% in the first trimester to 28% in the third trimester. African American women (30%) and Mexican American women (24%) have a higher prevalence of iron deficiency anemia compared to European American (14%) [8].

GENETICS
Worldwide, 7% of the population are carriers for important hemoglobin disorders [9]. In the United States, approximately 1:12 African Americans have sickle cell trait; 1:300 have a form of sickle cell disease, and 1:600 have sickle cell anemia [10].

See Tables 14.1 through 14.3 for types of hemoglobins. Tables 14.4 and 14.5 describe the types of hemoglobinopathies and their clinical significance. Cis-α-thalassemia is common among women of Southeast Asian ancestry; β-thalassemia is common among women of Mediterranean, Asian, Middle Eastern, Hispanic, and West Indian ancestry. However, ethnicity is not a good predictor of risk as ethnic background is often mixed and many women partner outside their ethnic group [2].

ETIOLOGY/PATHOPHYSIOLOGY
Pregnant women undergo normal physiologic hemodynamic changes, which must be understood to correctly identify those who may benefit from additional testing and interventions. Total red blood cell (RBC) mass and plasma both increase; however, the plasma increase (40%–60%) is proportionally greater than the RBC increase (15%–30%), resulting in a lowering of the Hgb concentration compared to
nonpregnant adults. Hgb 11–12 g/dL and Hct 33%–35% are normal pregnancy-related ranges.

Anemia may be inherited or acquired. Table 14.6 describes anemia by its pathophysiological mechanism. Anemia in pregnancy can be caused by decreased red blood cell production (nutritional deficiencies including iron, vitamin B₁₂, folate, decreased absorption, chronic disease, infection, bone marrow suppression, hormonal deficiencies), increased red blood cell destruction (inherited hemolytic anemias, acquired hemolytic anemias), and blood loss.

Although this chapter focuses on anemia, the Centers for Disease Control notes that pregnant women with Hb concentration of greater than 15.0 g/dL or a Hct of greater than 45.0%, particularly in the second trimester, are at increased risk of poor perinatal outcomes (fetal growth restriction, preterm birth, fetal death) [2]. Increased Hb in the second or
Iron Deficiency Anemia

Iron deficiency anemia is the most common cause of anemia during pregnancy due to the nutrient demands required for the fetus and for maternal red blood cell mass expansion. Total iron loss associated with pregnancy and lactation is approximately 1 g. The typical diet in high-resource areas includes 15 mg of elemental iron per day. The recommended daily intake of ferrous iron during pregnancy is 27 mg, which is present in most prenatal vitamins, and 10 mg during lactation [11].

**RISK FACTORS**

Risk factors for iron deficiency or iron deficiency anemia include diet poor in iron-rich food, a diet poor in iron absorption enhancers (vitamin C–rich foods), a diet rich in foods that
possible causes should be considered.

When iron deficiency is recognized during pregnancy, all individuals of African ancestry should have a hemoglobin electrophoresis. See Tables 14.4 and 14.5. Solubility testing is inadequate for screening because it fails to identify other important hemoglobinopathies [2,28]. If documented results from a prior hemoglobin electrophoresis can be obtained, this test should not be repeated.

Microcytic Anemia

- Hgb <10.5–11 g/dL and MCV <80 um\(^3\) represent a microcytic anemia (Figure 14.1).
- Obtain ferritin level, which has the highest sensitivity and specificity for diagnosing iron deficiency in anemic patients [29].
- Obtain Hgb electrophoresis to assess for a hemoglobinopathy (Table 14.4) [30].

## COMPLICATIONS

Observational studies suggest that maternal anemia and iron deficiency anemia are associated with poor perinatal outcomes, including increased risk of **low birth weight, preterm birth, and perinatal death** [12–19]. Maternal anemia in the first trimester is more consistently associated with adverse perinatal outcomes, compared to anemia diagnosed in the third trimester [17,20]. Severe maternal anemia is associated with abnormal fetal cerebral perfusion and decreased amniotic fluid [21]. In low-resource areas, severe maternal anemia (Hgb <6–7 g/dL) is associated with **maternal cardiovascular compromise or death** [22,23]. Maternal anemia may also be associated with postpartum depression [24], impaired maternal postpartum cognition [25], poor mother–infant interaction, and infant cognitive function [26]. However, due to methodological inconsistencies among these studies, data to establish the association between maternal anemia and/or iron deficiency anemia and adverse maternal and perinatal outcomes remains insufficient [27].

## DIAGNOSIS

An approach to determining the cause of maternal anemia is outlined in Figures 14.1 through 14.3. Anemia can be the result of more than one cause, and in such instances, an algorithmic approach to the diagnosis may be incomplete.

### Workup

- **Initial evaluation:** CBC with Hgb/Hct and MCV. This initial anemia screening is recommended for all pregnant women [1] (Figure 14.1).
- **All individuals of African ancestry** should have a hemoglobin electrophoresis. See Tables 14.4 and 14.5. Solubility testing is inadequate for screening because it fails to identify other important hemoglobinopathies [2,28]. If documented results from a prior hemoglobin electrophoresis can be obtained, this test should not be repeated.

**Microcytic Anemia**

- Hgb <10.5–11 g/dL and MCV <80 um\(^3\) represent a microcytic anemia (Figure 14.1).
- Obtain ferritin level, which has the highest sensitivity and specificity for diagnosing iron deficiency in anemic patients [29].
- Obtain Hgb electrophoresis to assess for a hemoglobinopathy (Table 14.4) [30].

### Table 14.2 Types of α-Thalassemia

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Clinical Nomenclature</th>
<th>Genotype</th>
<th>Disease</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Silent carrier</td>
<td>−/α/α/α</td>
<td>Asymptomatic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>α-Thalassemia trait</td>
<td>α−/α− (trans)</td>
<td>Mild anemia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Homozygous α−thalassemia</td>
<td>Similar to β-thalassemia minor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Common among those with black African heritage or −/α α (cis)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Heterozygous α+ thalassemia</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Common among those with Asian heritage</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hemoglobin H disease</td>
<td>α−/α−</td>
<td>Severe HbH hemolytic anemia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(α-Thalassemia major)</td>
<td>α−thalassemia/α−thalassemia</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hydrops fetalis</td>
<td>−/−−</td>
<td>Lethal in utero without transfusions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bart's disease</td>
<td>Homozygous α−thalassemia 80% Hb Bart/20% HbH</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:** Because there are two α-chains on each chromosome 16, the possibility exists for four different disease states (unlike β-thalassemias, with which only two disease states are found).

### Table 14.3 Types of β Thalassemia

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Genotype</th>
<th>Disease</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>α-thalassemia trait: one β chain affected</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cooley anemia: both β chains affected</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>β0 absence of β chain production → causes more severe anemia</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>β+ decrease in β chain production → causes milder anemia</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

diminish iron absorption (dairy, soy products, coffee, spinach), pica (eating nonfood substances, such as clay), gastrointestinal compromise affecting absorption (e.g., celiac disease, Crohn’s disease, bariatric surgery, particularly restrictive surgeries), short pregnancy interval, parity ≥2, multiple gestation, low socioeconomic status, and history of blood loss (heavy menses, postpartum hemorrhage). Although iron deficiency anemia from ongoing blood loss from the gastrointestinal system is less common in women of reproductive age, when iron deficiency is recognized during pregnancy, all possible causes should be considered.

### Table 14.4 Hemoglobin Electrophoresis Patterns in Common Hemoglobinopathies

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Condition</th>
<th>HbA</th>
<th>HbS</th>
<th>HbC</th>
<th>HbF</th>
<th>HbA2</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Normal</td>
<td>95–98(^*)</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>&lt;1</td>
<td>2.5 ± 0.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Beta thalassemia minor</td>
<td>90–95</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1 to 3</td>
<td>&gt;3.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sickle cell trait</td>
<td>50–60</td>
<td>35–45(^a)</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>&lt;2</td>
<td>&lt;3.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sickle-beta(+) thalassemia</td>
<td>5–30</td>
<td>65–90</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>2 to 10</td>
<td>&gt;3.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sickle-beta(0) thalassemia</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>80–92</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>2 to 15</td>
<td>&gt;3.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sickle-HbC disease</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>45–50</td>
<td>45 to 50</td>
<td>1 to 8</td>
<td>&lt;3.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Homozygous sickle cell disease</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>85–95</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>2 to 15</td>
<td>&lt;3.5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*May be as low as 21 with sickle cell trait in presence of alpha thalassemia.

**Abbreviation:** Hb: hemoglobin.

**Source:** Adapted from Schrier SL. Introduction to hemoglobin mutations. In: Post TW, ed. UpToDate, Waltham, MA.
Normocytic Anemia

- If Hgb 10.5–11 g/dL and MCV ≥ 80–100 μm³, obtain reticulocyte count to determine if anemia is secondary to underproduction or hemolysis and obtain a history to identify any evidence of active bleeding, medication exposure, chronic disease, glucose-6-phosphate dehydrogenase (G6PD) deficiency, or a family history of RBC disorders (Figure 14.2).
- Obtain ferritin, vitamin B₁₂, and RBC folate.
- If high reticulocyte counts (≥3), then anemia may be secondary to hemolysis or blood loss. Consider 1) peripheral blood smear and haptoglobin (decreased), 2) direct coombs (suggests autoimmune hemolytic anemia), 3) Hgb electrophoresis to rule out SS or SC disease, and 4) hemoccult or other tests if other sources of blood loss are suggested by history.
- If low reticulocyte count (<3), then anemia is secondary to underproduction. Assess red cell distribution width (RDW) and follow algorithm.

Macrocytic Anemia

- If Hgb 10.5–11 g/dL and MCV >100 μm³, obtain vitamin B₁₂ and RBC folate level [29] (Figure 14.3).
- Anemia of chronic disease is usually associated with normocytic anemia (about 20% are associated with microcytic anemia) (Table 14.7). Causes include chronic liver disease, thyroid disease, uremia, chronic infections, and malignancies. Workup may include liver function tests (LFTs), blood urea nitrogen (BUN) and creatinine, thyroid-stimulating hormone (TSH), and any tests for malignancy or chronic infection indicated by patient history and risk factors. Also check serum iron, serum B₁₂, and RBC folate to rule out combined deficiencies. Normal pregnancy-specific values can be found in Table 14.8.
- A nutrition consult should be obtained for patients with B₁₂, folate, and iron deficiencies.

### Table 14.5 Hematological Studies and Clinical Severity of Thalassemias

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Condition</th>
<th>Hb Level</th>
<th>HbA₂</th>
<th>HbF</th>
<th>Other Hb</th>
<th>Clinical Severity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Homozygotes</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>α-Thalassemia</td>
<td>Severely low</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>80% Hb Bart, remainder HbA</td>
<td>Hydrops fetalis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>β⁺ Thalassemia</td>
<td>Very low</td>
<td>Variable</td>
<td>Variable</td>
<td>Some HbA</td>
<td>Moderately severe Cooley anemia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>β⁰ Thalassemia</td>
<td>Severely low</td>
<td>Variable</td>
<td>High</td>
<td>No HbA</td>
<td>Severe Cooley anemia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>δβ⁰ Thalassemia</td>
<td>Low</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>No HbA</td>
<td>Thalassemia intermedia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Heterozygotes</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>α-Thalassemia silent carrier</td>
<td>Normal</td>
<td>Normal</td>
<td>Normal</td>
<td>1%–2% Hb Bart at birth</td>
<td>Normal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>α-Thalassemia trait</td>
<td>Low to normal</td>
<td>Normal</td>
<td>Normal</td>
<td>5% Hb Bart at birth</td>
<td>Very mild</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HbH disease</td>
<td>Low</td>
<td>Normal</td>
<td>Normal</td>
<td>3%–30% HbH in adult; 35% HbH at birth</td>
<td>Thalassemia intermedia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>β⁺ Thalassemia</td>
<td>Mildly low to low</td>
<td>Elevated</td>
<td>Elevated</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>Mild</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>β⁰ Thalassemia</td>
<td>Mildly low to low</td>
<td>Elevated</td>
<td>Very elevated</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>Mild</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Table 14.6 Anemia Characterized by Mechanism

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Dilutional (expansion of plasma volume)</th>
<th>Pregnancy</th>
<th>Hyperglobinemia</th>
<th>Massive splenomegaly</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Decreased red blood cell production</td>
<td>Iron deficiency</td>
<td>Vitamin B₁₂ deficiency</td>
<td>Folic acid deficiency</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Bone marrow disorder or suppression</td>
<td>Low levels of erythropoietin</td>
<td>Hypothyroidism</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Increased red blood cell destruction</td>
<td>Inherited: sickle cell, thalassemia major, hereditary spherocytosis</td>
<td>Acquired: autoimmune hemolytic, thrombotic thrombocytopenia purpura, hemolytic uremic syndrome, malaria</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Increased loss</td>
<td>Hemorrhage</td>
<td>Gastrointestinal bleed</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Table 14.7 Hematological Studies of Anemias

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Marker</th>
<th>Anemia of Chronic Disease</th>
<th>Iron Deficiency</th>
<th>Thalassemia Alpha/Beta Trait or HbE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Hemoglobin</td>
<td>Normal to decreased</td>
<td>Normal to decreased</td>
<td>Normal to decreased</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MCV</td>
<td>Normal</td>
<td>Decreased</td>
<td>Decreased can be &lt;70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RDW</td>
<td>Normal to increased</td>
<td>Decreased to &gt;15</td>
<td>Normal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transferrin saturation</td>
<td>Decreased</td>
<td>Decreased</td>
<td>Normal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ferritin</td>
<td>No change to increased</td>
<td>Decreased</td>
<td>Normal</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Table 14.8 Trimester-Specific Pregnancy Reference Ranges (2.5th and 97.5th percentile)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>First Trimester</th>
<th>Second Trimester</th>
<th>Third Trimester</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Serum ferritin level (ng/mL)</td>
<td>6–130</td>
<td>2–230</td>
<td>0–116</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total iron-binding capacity μg/dL</td>
<td>278–403</td>
<td>Not reported</td>
<td>359–609</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transferrin saturation (%)</td>
<td>Not reported</td>
<td>10–44</td>
<td>5–37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plasma iron level (μg/dL)</td>
<td>72–113</td>
<td>44–178</td>
<td>30–193</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Folate (RBC) (ng/mL)</td>
<td>137–589</td>
<td>94–828</td>
<td>109–663</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Folate (serum) (ng/mL)</td>
<td>2.5–15.0</td>
<td>0.8–24.0</td>
<td>14–20.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B₁₂ (cobalamin) pg/mL</td>
<td>118–438</td>
<td>130–656</td>
<td>99–526</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MCV μm³</td>
<td>81–96</td>
<td>82–97</td>
<td>81–99</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Abbreviation:** MCV, mean corpuscular volume.
• A genetic consult should be obtained for all patients with inherited disorders. Attempt to obtain a blood sample for hemoglobin electrophoresis from the father of the baby prior to the genetic consult. DNA testing for alpha-globin abnormalities is available.

PREVENTION

Daily and intermittent iron supplementation are associated with prevention of low hemoglobin at term and at six weeks postpartum. Insufficient evidence exists, however, that supplementation results in a significant reduction of adverse perinatal outcomes, including low birth weight, preterm birth, or infection [31,32]. Most of the RCTs provided very limited information about the clinical outcomes for women or their neonates. Intermittent iron supplementation appears to produce similar maternal and neonatal outcomes as daily supplementation with fewer side effects [31–33].

Except in women with hemochromatosis or other genetic disorders, there is little evidence of morbidity associated with iron supplementation. Common side effects of oral supplementation include constipation and gastrointestinal upset. The recommended daily allowance of ferrous iron during pregnancy is 27 mg as present in most prenatal vitamins [1]. Table 14.9 lists elemental iron content of available iron supplements.

Folate supplementation is associated with increased or maintained serum folate levels and red cell folate levels compared to placebo or no supplementation. Folate supplementation is associated with a reduction in the proportion of women with megaloblastic anemia but no difference in predelivery hemoglobin, serum folate, or RBC folate levels. Compared to placebo, folate supplementation is associated with increase in mean birth weight but no difference in preterm birth or stillbirth/neonatal death. Based on available data, there is insufficient evidence to conclude if folate supplementation has any substantial effect on maternal or neonatal outcomes [34].

THERAPY

There is a paucity of quality trials assessing the maternal and neonatal benefits of treatment of iron deficiency anemia in pregnancy [35]. Compared to placebo, oral iron treatment in pregnancy is associated with a reduction in the number of pregnant women with anemia in the second trimester and greater mean hemoglobin and ferritin levels (Figure 14.4). However, there is insufficient evidence to assess change in clinical outcomes, including preterm birth, low birth weight, or maternal morbidity in treatment of anemia [35]. Gastrointestinal side effects (e.g., constipation, nausea, and abdominal cramps) are common with oral iron treatments, and low-dose daily treatment may be effective in treating anemia with decreased side effects. Compared with standard oral preparations, controlled release iron preparations are associated with a diminished frequency of constipation.

Compared to oral administration, intravenous (IV) or intramuscular (IM) routes of administration are associated with better hematologic indices, including higher mean Hgb and/or ferritin levels. Although serious adverse effects of parenteral iron appear uncommon, data are insufficient regarding effects such as venous thrombosis and severe allergic reaction [36–40]. When IV iron preparations are used, the safety profile of different preparations should be considered. Concern for anaphylactic reactions with high molecular weight IV dextran and long infusion times with iron poly-maltose reduces their clinical use, particularly given limited information in pregnancy. Low molecular weight IV iron dextran offers an improved safety profile compared to high molecular weight IV iron dextran. IV sucrose has been shown to be well tolerated and increase hemoglobin and ferritin levels compared to oral iron in pregnant women [40]; however, this IV dosing requires six days of hospital administration. Ferric carboxymaltose offers an alternative. Although there are no RCTs, retrospective and prospective observational studies indicate that is associated with similar increases in mean Hgb and ferritin levels compared to IV iron sucrose and has a comparable safety profile while requiring only one infusion of up to 1000 mg of iron in 15 minutes [41].

There are insufficient data to assess the effects of other forms of prevention or therapy, including self-donation during pregnancy.

Table 14.9 Iron Supplements

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Preparation</th>
<th>Elemental Iron Content</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ferrous fumarate</td>
<td>106 mg per 325 mg tablet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ferrous sulfate</td>
<td>65 mg per 325 mg tablet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ferrous gluconate</td>
<td>34 mg per 300 mg tablet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Iron dextran</td>
<td>50 mg/mL, IM or IV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ferric gluconate</td>
<td>12.5 mg/mL IV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Iron sucrose</td>
<td>20 mg/mL IV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ferric carboxymaltose</td>
<td>750 mg IV, 1500 mg maximum</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Figure 14.4 Treatment of iron deficiency anemia.
**ANTEPARTUM TESTING**
Consider growth ultrasound in the third trimester given association with anemia and low birth weight although there is limited evidence to support this practice.

**DELIVERY AND ANESTHESIA**
Prepare team regarding increased risk in the event of hemorrhage. Consider having blood available for possible transfusion in cases of severe anemia, for example, Hgb <8 g/dL.

**POSTPARTUM/BREAST-FEEDING**
There is limited evidence to assess different therapies for postpartum anemia. Outcome data on clinically relevant criteria are lacking. No effect on need for blood transfusions was apparent although the RCTs may have been of insufficient size to rule out important clinical differences.

Intravenous (IV) iron was compared to oral iron in 10 studies [42]. In two studies, fatigue improved significantly in the IV group although there was no difference at six weeks postpartum. Gastrointestinal symptoms were reduced in the IV iron group compared to oral treatment in eight studies. Three allergic reactions were reported in the IV group, which was not statistically significant when compared to the oral treatment group. One study evaluated red blood cell transfusion versus nonintervention. General fatigue improved significantly more in the transfusion group at three days, but no difference between groups was seen at six weeks. Insufficient evidence exists to assess the safety profile of the IV route, including severe allergic reactions. In a recent RCT, IV ferrous sucre for two days within 48 hours postpartum was not associated with significant benefits compared to placebo [43]. In two RCTs, ferric carboxymaltose compared to oral iron was associated with an earlier increase in hemoglobin postpartum [44,45]. Overall, There is insufficient evidence to conclude that IV iron or blood transfusion significantly benefit women postpartum when compared to the risk of severe allergic reactions with IV iron preparations or maternal immunological sensitization with blood transfusion.

Hematological indices (Hgb and Hct) show some improvement when erythropoietin was compared to iron only or iron and folate but not when compared with placebo [41]. When compared with oral iron therapy only, erythropoietin increases the likelihood of lactation at discharge from hospital in one very small trial.

Given that postpartum anemia is associated with several complications, including decreased ability to fully engage in child care, household tasks, and exercise as well as altered cognition, mood, and productivity, preventive measures for iron deficiency postpartum anemia may be considered although there is insufficient evidence to recommend this approach.

**REFERENCES**
24. Corvin EJ, Murray-Kolb LE, Beard JL. Low hemoglobin level is a risk factor for postpartum depression. J Nutr 2003; 133(12): 4139–42. [III]
30. Schrier SL. Introduction to hemoglobin mutations. In: Post TW, editor. UpToDate, Waltham, MA. [Review]
Sickle cell disease
Mariam Naqvi and Jeffrey Ecker

KEY POINTS
• Sickle cell disease is an autosomal recessive disease resulting from an alteration in the structure of hemoglobin producing hemoglobin S (HbS). It is characterized by chronic hemolytic anemia and vaso-occlusive events.
• Diagnosis is made by hemoglobin electrophoresis.
• Severe complications during pregnancy and adverse pregnancy outcomes are most commonly experienced by women with HbSS and HbSβ0 genotypes, which result in sickle cell anemia.
• Complications may include pregnancy loss, fetal growth restriction, preterm birth, preeclampsia, placental abnormalities, anemia, painful crises, UTI and other infections, thromboembolic events, acute chest syndrome (ACS), alloimmunization, postpartum infections, and maternal mortality.
• Pneumococcal and influenza vaccines are important prevention interventions.
• Painful crises are managed with narcotic (preferably morphine) therapy and IV fluids. Antibiotics should be added if the woman is febrile, has an infection, or has ACS; oxygen should be added if the woman has low oxygen saturation.
• Prophylactic blood transfusions are not beneficial to improve maternal and perinatal outcomes. Blood transfusions are indicated for symptomatic or orthostatic anemia, hemoglobin <6 g/dL or hematocrit <25%, acute stroke, ACS, or multiple organ failure.
• In the 10% of patients with sickle cell disease who develop ACS, a chest X-ray is necessary. Antibiotics (usually cephalosporin and a macrolide) aimed at infectious pathogen(s) in pulmonary tree and bronchodilators are the mainstay of therapy.

HISTORIC NOTES
Sickle cell disease was first described in 1910 by Drs. Irons and Herrick. In 1949, Linus Pauling described the molecular structure of sickle cell hemoglobin by protein electrophoresis.

In 1956, Ingram and Hunt discovered the single amino acid change in sickle cell hemoglobin [1]. In the 1960s, median survival age in the United States for those with sickle cell disease was estimated to be 42 years for men and 48 years for women [2]. During the past two decades, improvements in medical care and earlier detection (especially through newborn screening) have led to better survival rates (lifespan is still about two or three decades shorter), improved quality of life, and better pregnancy outcomes in women with sickle cell disease [3,4].

DEFINITION
Sickle cell disease is an inherited disorder resulting from an alteration in the structure of hemoglobin producing HbS. It is characterized by hemolysis and vaso-occlusive events. Sickle cell disease is associated with a mild to moderate chronic anemia. The term sickle cell disease includes sickle cell anemia (HbSS) (70% of cases), hemoglobin S combined with hemoglobin C (HbSC) (most of the remaining cases), hemoglobin S combined with β-thalassemia (HbSβ+ or HbSβ0), and other double heterozygous conditions causing sickling and thus, clinical disease (e.g., hereditary persistence of fetal hemoglobin, HgS/HPHP), and hemoglobin E (HbE/HbE) [5]. The clinical manifestations vary among these genotypes with HbSβ0 usually with a similar severe phenotype as HbSS; HbSC associated with intermediate disease; and HbSβ+, HbSHPHP, and HbSE with mild or symptom-free disease [1,6]. The term sickle cell anemia includes HbSS and also HbSβ0 (due to its similar phenotype).

DIAGNOSIS
The diagnosis is made by hemoglobin electrophoresis, according to the definition above. In all 50 U.S. states, newborns are screened for sickle cell disease at birth.

EPIDEMIOLOGY/INCIDENCE
Sickle cell disease occurs in about one in 600 African Americans and affects between 70,000 and 100,000 Americans. Sickle cell trait occurs in one in 12 African Americans, resulting in the birth of approximately 1100 infants with sickle cell disease annually in the United States. HbSS accounts for 60% to 70% of sickle cell disease in the United States. The prevalence of sickle cell disease and sickle cell trait is highest in West Africa (25% of the population have one mutation), the Mediterranean, Saudi Arabia, India, South and Central America, and Southeast Asia [1,6].

GENETICS/INHERITANCE
Sickle cell disease is an autosomal recessive disorder characterized by a mutation of a single nucleotide of the β-globin gene on chromosome 11p, changing the sixth amino acid in the β-globin chain from glutamic acid to valine. As noted above, other forms of sickle cell disease result from co-inheritance of HbS with other abnormal b-globin chain variants, the most common forms being sickle hemoglobin C disease (HbSC) and two types of sickle β-thalassemia (HbSβ+ thalassemia and HbSβ0 thalassemia). Inheriting one HbS gene results in sickle cell trait. Inheriting two HbS genes results in sickle cell disease. Concordant with an autosomal recessive pattern of inheritance, if both parents carry one HbS gene, the fetus has a 25% chance of having sickle cell disease, 50% chance of having sickle cell trait, and 25% chance of being unaffected [6].
PATHOPHYSIOLOGY
In most individuals without hemoglobinopathy, 96% to 97% of hemoglobin in humans is Hemoglobin A (which consists of two α- and two β-chains), with small portions of Hemoglobin A2 (two α- and two δ-chains), and at times Hemoglobin F (two α- and two γ-chains). Hemoglobin provides the oxygen carrying capacity of erythrocytes. HbS occurs because of a point mutation in which valine, a hydrophilic amino acid, is substituted for glutamic acid, a hydrophobic amino acid in the β-globin gene. This allows the sickle hemoglobin to polymerize when it is deoxygenated, triggering a cascade of repeated injury to the red cell membrane. As a consequence, these cells become very rigid, assume a characteristic sickle shape, hemolyze, and are unable to pass through small capillaries, leading to vessel occlusion and ischemia. This tissue ischemia leads to acute and chronic pain as well as to end-organ damage. As vaso-occlusion can occur in any vessel, this is a systemic disease that can affect multiple organs. The life span of a sickle cell is about 10 to 20 days compared to the 120-day life span of a normal red blood cell. This chronic hemolysis contributes to the anemia [1,6,7]. Dehydration, infection, decrease in oxygen tension, and acidosis are common triggers of cell sickling and sickle cell crisis. Sickle cell crisis is a term used to label several different and independent acute conditions occurring in patients with sickle cell disease (vaso-occlusive crisis, aplastic crisis, hemolytic crisis).

SYMPTOMS
1. Chronic hemolytic anemia
   - Fatigue, pallor, shortness of breath.
   - Aplastic crisis presents with severe anemia and reticulocytopenia. It is the most common hematologic crisis during pregnancy.
2. Acute vaso-occlusive episodes
   - Pain involving the chest, lower back, abdomen, head, and bones/extremities.
   - Dactylitis (inflammation of fingers and/or toes) often the first symptom of sickle cell disease.
   - Exacerbated by cold, infection, stress, dehydration, alcohol, and fatigue.
3. Infections
   - Urinary tract infections, pneumonia, osteomyelitis, endocarditis.
   - Organisms include Streptococcus pneumoniae, Hemophilus influenza, Staphylococcus, Gram-negative organisms, Salmonella, and mycoplasma.
4. Cardiac
   - Systolic murmur, cardiomegaly, high output failure.
5. Pulmonary
   - ACS presents with chest pain, dyspnea, tachypnea, fever, cough, leukocytosis, and pulmonary infiltrates. It is usually a result of infection, vaso-occlusion, or bone marrow embolization.
6. Gastrointestinal
   - Right upper quadrant syndrome presents with abdominal pain, fever, hepatomegaly, hyperbilirubinemia, and increased liver function tests. Splenomegaly is common.
7. Renal
   - Hematuria, papillary necrosis, nephrotic syndrome, renal infarction, pyelonephritis, hyposthenuria, and renal medullary carcinoma.

8. Neurologic
   - Transient ischemic attacks, cerebrovascular accidents, seizures, coma, hemiparesis, hemianesthesia, visual field changes, and cranial nerve palsy.
   - Moyamoya disease is a progressive occlusive process of the cerebral vasculature that results in the formation of collateral vessels with the appearance of “puffs of smoke” (“Moyamoya” in Japanese) on angiography.

9. Skeletal
   - Avascular necrosis most often occurs in the humeral and femoral heads and is characterized by pain.

COMPLICATIONS
Pregnancy in women with sickle cell disease is complicated by both the underlying disease and the physiologic changes and adaptations of pregnancy, which may compound or exacerbate organ damage. Despite this, most women can achieve a successful pregnancy: The majority tend to deliver beyond 28 weeks gestation with a >80% live birth rate although 50% will require transfusion or medically indicated hospitalization, and 75% will have a pain crisis during the pregnancy [8].

Several complications have been reported: effects of sickle cell disease on pregnancy—Table 15.1 [8–12]; effects of pregnancy on sickle cell disease—Table 15.2 [8,11,12]. Stroke occurs in 24% of women with sickle cell disease by age 45. Venous thromboembolism in 25% of women with sickle cell disease by age 30 [9]. During pregnancy, of women with sickle cell disease, about 50%–70% require hospitalization and 30%–40% blood transfusion [10].

PREGNANCY MANAGEMENT
Principles
Multidisciplinary team approach, involving providers from hematology, blood bank, primary care, obstetrics and/or maternal fetal medicine, and any other involved specialists (e.g., providers from pulmonology, cardiology, pain management, and social services).

Workup
- For diagnosis: Hemoglobin electrophoresis
- For a crisis: Hemoglobin, hemoglobin electrophoresis, urine culture, and culture of any other possible infectious source; blood gas if hypoxia is present

Preventive Care
Pneumococcal and influenza vaccines. Avoid triggers (especially infections). Optimize hemoglobin status by educating on good nutrition and prescribe vitamins/folic acid/iron as needed; establish a plan for the home medication regimen, and educate on analgesia safety in pregnancy.

Preconception
Patients are no longer counseled to avoid pregnancy. Counseling should consist of a review of the effects of sickle cell disease on pregnancy, highlighting an increased risk for hospital admissions, pain crises, infections, severe anemia, maternal mortality, preeclampsia, and other maternal
**Table 15.1** Complications: Effects of Sickle Cell Disease on Pregnancy

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Complication</th>
<th>HBSS</th>
<th>HBSC</th>
<th>HBS[$^0$]</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pregnancy loss (mostly first trimester)</td>
<td>7%–36% [8,11,12]</td>
<td>9% [12]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fetal death</td>
<td>No increase [8,11]</td>
<td>No increase [8,11]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Small for gestational age (SGA)[$^a$]</td>
<td>21% [13]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Urinary tract infections</td>
<td>15% [8]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Preeclampsia</td>
<td>10% [11,14]</td>
<td>3%</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Postpartum infections[$^f$]</td>
<td>1.4 [14]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Note:* % is reported if available in the source study.

[$^a$] Preeclampsia and acute anemia episodes are risk factors for SGA. High hemoglobin F levels are protective for fetal growth [13].

[$^b$] There is no difference in the rate of painful episodes before, during, and after pregnancies [13].

[$^c$] The mean gestational age at delivery is 34 to 37 weeks [11,13].

[$^d$] Percentages reflect women who were not randomized to prophylactic transfusions; there were no differences in alloimmunization among women with HBSS that were randomized to prophylactic transfusions and controls (29% versus 21%). Any woman with sickle cell disease is at increased risk for Rh and other antibodies if she has had blood transfusions in the past.

[$^e$] Because of all the above complications, in particular painful crises, and increased incidences of infections in general, women with sickle cell disease in pregnancy are at increased risk for hospitalization.

[$^f$] More likely to have postpartum infections secondary to endometritis or pyelonephritis. The effect is listed as odds ratio compared to the African American population. No increase risk for postpartum hemorrhage [8,11].

**Table 15.2** Complications: Effects of Pregnancy on Sickle Cell Disease

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Complication</th>
<th>HBSS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Maternal mortality</td>
<td>0.5%–2.1% [8,13,14]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acute chest syndrome</td>
<td>7%–20% [8,13]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thromboembolic events</td>
<td>2.5 [14]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cerebral vein thrombosis</td>
<td>4.9 [14]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pyelonephritis</td>
<td>1.3 [14]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pneumonia</td>
<td>9.8 [14]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sepsis</td>
<td>6.8 [14]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SIRS</td>
<td>12.6 [14]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pulmonary hypertension</td>
<td>6.3 [14]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No. of blood transfusions</td>
<td>22.5 [14]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Postpartum infection</td>
<td>1.4 [14]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Note:* % is reported if available in the source study. Otherwise, the effect is listed as odds ratios or relative risks.

complications (Tables 15.1 and 15.2) [8,11–14]. The discussion should also entail the effects of sickle cell disease on the fetus, which include early pregnancy loss, growth restriction, and perinatal mortality as well as a risk for inherited hemoglobinopathies. Preventive care should be emphasized. Try to optimize hemoglobin status by prescribing up to 4 mg folic acid and a prenatal vitamin [4,15]. Discuss medication use during pregnancy and change/stop teratogenic medications (ACE inhibitors, iron chelators, and possibly hydroxyurea). Hydroxyurea is strongly recommended for adults with three or more crises per year, pain or chronic anemia interfering with daily life, or severe or recurrent episodes of ACS. Vaccinate as needed (see above).

**Genetic counseling** for women with sickle cell disease with possible preimplantation genetic diagnosis for those at risk of having a baby with sickle cell anemia can be offered.

Allogeneic hematopoietic stem cell transplantation has been done with some success, almost exclusively in children, with bone marrow cells from HLA-identical siblings and is associated with a 92%–94% survival and 82%–86% event-free survival [16]. Despite rare reports of successful pregnancies in these women, almost all become infertile after the chemotherapy.

**Prenatal Care**

1. Initial visit: medical (assess for chronic organ damage, especially pulmonary hypertension, renal disease, and congestive heart failure), obstetrical, transfusion, and social history; nutritional assessment; discuss precipitating factors for painful crises and prior successful pain management. Counseling regarding risks (Tables 15.1 and 15.2), nutrition, hydration, and preventative care. Low-dose aspirin may be considered as the U.S. Preventative Services Task Force recommends the use of aspirin 81 mg/day starting early in pregnancy, i.e., in the first trimester, in women who are at high risk for preeclampsia. There are no trials specifically on this preventive intervention in this population, and we do not routinely offer it. Maternal-fetal medicine and hematology consults can be considered.

2. Initial laboratory studies: CBC; reticulocyte count; Hb electrophoresis; ferritin; bilirubin; liver function tests; hepatitis A, B, and C; HIV; BUN; creatinine, urine protein (by protein/creatinine ratio or 24-hour urine); antibody screen; rubella antibody titer; VDRL; tuberculosis skin test; Pap smear as appropriate; and chlamydia and gonorrhea cultures.

3. Offer laboratory evaluation to the father of the baby (CBC, hemoglobin electrophoresis). Offer genetic counseling if the father is positive for HbS. If the father is positive for HbS, offer prenatal diagnosis via chorionic villous sampling or amniocentesis through direct DNA analysis (polymerase chain reaction). Interestingly, the vast majority of women at risk of an affected fetus decline prenatal diagnosis.
4. Serial urine cultures every four to eight weeks.
5. CBC every trimester.
6. **Folate supplementation up to 4 mg daily** plus prenatal vitamin [4,13]. Ferrous sulfate 325 mg only if iron studies suggestive of iron deficiency. Iron overload should be avoided (ferritin >1000 ng/mL suggestive of overload).
7. Pneumococcal, influenza, and meningococcal vaccines.
8. Recommend first-trimester ultrasound for more accurate dating, which will aid in screening for growth restriction later during pregnancy. Ultrasound at 18 to 20 weeks for a detailed anatomy scan and then growth scans starting at 28 to 32 weeks as clinically indicated.
9. Some recommend maternal echocardiogram, especially if signs of pulmonary hypertension [17].
10. For patients with multiple red cell alloantibodies and an anticipated need for a blood transfusion, consider to have phenotypically matched units of PRBC identified.
11. Rescreen for red cell alloantibodies in third trimester [18].

**THERAPY**

1. **Painful crisis** (diagnosis made by history, often no physical or laboratory finding).
   - **Narcotics**: Morphine or hydromorphone are the preferred agents. Consider using a patient-controlled analgesia (PCA) system for severe pain. Oral controlled-release morphine is as effective as intravenous morphine in nonpregnant adults. Ask women regarding which narcotic or other pain medication works best for them and implement as appropriate. After 28 to 32 weeks, avoid NSAIDs, which are safe and effective earlier in pregnancy. Prescribe stool softeners with narcotic use [19].
   - **Intravenous fluids**: Effective in nonpregnant adults. Adequate fluid intake is 60 mL/kg/24 hours in adults [19]. Consider running fluids at a rate of 150 cc/hour. Monitor fluid balance.
   - **Antibiotics**: Broad-spectrum antibiotics should be used if patient is febrile (T >38°C), or if there is evidence of infection. A third-generation cephalosporin is typically given with addition of a macrolide (e.g., azithromycin or erythromycin) if chest symptoms are present [19].
   - **Oxygen**: Use only for ACS or if O2 saturation is less than patient’s known state or <95% [4] (such treatment is ineffective in nonpregnant patients and may be so in pregnant women as well) [19].
   - **Incentive spirometry** should be used by women hospitalized for vaso-occlusive crises.
   - **Labor and delivery**: There is no need to alter general recommendations for labor and delivery in women in sickle cell crisis. A crisis is not an indication for cesarean delivery or other special intervention. Close monitoring of mother and fetus for adequate oxygenation is paramount. Pain during labor can be managed with narcotics, regional anesthesia, or local anesthesia via pudendal block [20]. Pediatricians should be aware of any chronic narcotic use in pregnancy as such is a risk for neonatal withdrawal.

2. **Anemia**
   - **Transfusions**: There is limited evidence to assess the efficacy of prophylactic blood transfusions for pregnant women with sickle cell disease. Compared to transfusion only for Hb <6 g/dL, transfusion (or exchange transfusion) with two units of red cells every week for three weeks or until hemoglobin level is 10 to 11 g/dL or HbS <35% is associated with no significant difference in perinatal outcome [21]. Prophylactic transfusions decreased the number of painful crisis (14% vs. 50%). Disadvantages of prophylactic transfusion include increase in costs, number of hospitalizations, and risk of alloimmunization [21]. Therefore, prophylactic blood transfusions are not indicated universally for pregnant women with sickle cell disease.

   Indications for transfusions are any woman who is symptomatic or orthostatic from anemia and/or with a hemoglobin <6 g/dL or hematocrit <25% or with acute stroke, chest syndrome, or multiple organ failure.

   Sickle cell crisis is not an absolute indication to transfusion. Persistent crises are an indication to transfusion to avoid recurrence. If blood transfusion is indicated, it should always be leukodepleted and matched for Rh and Kell antigens.

   Goal of transfusion is usually hematocrit >35%, HbA2 >40%, and HbS <35%.

   There is insufficient evidence to compare exchange versus regular blood transfusions for sickle cell disease in pregnancy. For a hematocrit <15%, a direct transfusion is always preferable. For hematocrit >15%, an exchange transfusion can be considered.

   A serum ferritin level of >1000 ng/mL is suggestive of iron overload and is a contraindication to iron supplementation.

   - **Iron, folic acid, and multivitamins**: Only prescribe iron if patient is deficient (avoid iron overload).
   - **Hydroxyurea** (hydroxycarbamide): In nonpregnant women, hydroxyurea has been shown to decrease the number and severity of painful crises and to improve overall survival [22]. Data in pregnancy is limited; however, available case reports do not appear to demonstrate an increased risk of congenital malformations [23–25]. *If felt to be beneficial for management, its use could be considered during pregnancy.*

**ALLOIMMUNIZATION**

If the antibody screen is positive as a result of sensitization from past transfusions, follow recommendations in Chapter 52. The antigen status of the father of the pregnancy should be tested as he often does not carry the offending antigen with the maternal antibody usually acquired by prior transfusions. Bilirubin level (Delta OD450) in amniotic fluid of women with sickle cell disease is unreliable for detecting fetal anemia as maternal hemolysis and hyperbilirubinemia increase fetal and AF bilirubin levels. Fetal anemia may be assessed by middle cerebral artery Doppler (see Chapter 52).

**ANTENATAL TESTING**

There are no prospective studies on the use of antepartum testing in sickle cell disease women [10]. Fetal monitoring can be started at 32 weeks with weekly nonstress tests (or biophysical profiles), especially if the fetus is growth restricted [6].
DELLIVERY
It is safe for patients to deliver vaginally. Inductions and cesarean deliveries should be reserved for obstetrical indications [4]. Although some have proposed delivery around 37 weeks [10], there is no strong evidence for delivery before 39 0/7 and 39 6/7 weeks unless complications (e.g., preeclampsia) occur. There is one case report of a sickle cell crisis triggered by induction of labor with a prostaglandin [26]. Some recommend prophylactic transfusion before a cesarean delivery to avoid precipitating a crisis because of blood loss in patients with hemoglobin 7 to 8 g/dL or less [20].

ANESTHESIA
There are no contraindications to anesthesia (IV, regional, or general) [4].

POSTPARTUM
During the postpartum period, early ambulation and adequate hydration is encouraged. Compression boots and incentive spirometry should be used. Guidelines from the Royal College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists recommend administration of prophylactic LMWH for 10 days postpartum in all women with sickle cell disease [27]. Although U.S. guidelines are more lenient, the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists does recommend consideration of pharmacologic prophylaxis in women after cesarean birth if additional risk factors are present; thus, it seems prudent to consider postpartum prophylaxis with LMWH in women with sickle cell disease after cesarean birth or if additional risk factors are present [28]. Decision making regarding VTE prophylaxis in women after a vaginal birth should consider risk factors in addition to sickle cell disease (e.g., age, obesity); those with several risk factors may warrant chemoprophylaxis. Anemia should be assessed and transfusion only if indicated (see above). Breast-feeding is encouraged. About 5%–6% of neonates of mothers with sickle cell disease can have neonatal withdrawal syndrome due to maternal chronic opioid use [29].

CONTRACEPTION
Progestin-containing contraception agents are safe among women with sickle cell disease; these include depot medroxyprogesterone acetate (DMPA) etonogestrel implants and the levonorgestrel intrauterine device [30,31]. The copper intrauterine device system is a safe, effective, and excellent choice in these women. Although these women are at higher risk of VTE and anemia, estrogen-containing contraceptives can be considered if the advantages outweigh the risks for that individual [30].

ACUTE CHEST SYNDROME
Definition
New pulmonary infiltrate of at least one complete lung segment with alveolar consolidation and excluding atelectasis and presence of chest pain, temp $T >38.5°C$, tachypnea, wheezing, or cough. Hypoxia, decreasing hemoglobin levels, and progressive pneumonia are frequent. Mostly associated with pulmonary fat embolism and pulmonary infection with 3% to 10% chance of death related to pulmonary embolism and pneumonia.

Incidence
Acute chest syndrome develops in about 10% of women with sickle cell disease.

Pathophysiology
Cause of ACS remains mainly unknown. Infection leading to sickle crisis, anemia, hypoxia, and vaso-occlusion with ischemic damage are the most common associations.

Symptoms
Chest pain, pain in arms and legs, dyspnea, fever, etc.

Complications
ACS is one of the most common causes of death (3%–10%) among those with sickle cell disease. Neurologic complications, probably secondary to CNS hypoxia, occur in about 20% of patients. Pulmonary emboli and infarction can also occur.

Workup
For ACS, chest X-ray, sputum culture, nasopharyngeal sample, and/or culture of bronchoscopy washings (Chlamydia pneumoniae and Mycoplasma pneumoniae are most common pathogens).

Therapy
Antibiotics (usually cephalosporin and a macrolide) aimed at infectious pathogen(s) in pulmonary tree, and bronchodilators (even if no evidence of reactive airway disease). Blood transfusions (especially in hypoxic and/or anemic women), oxygen (15% need mechanical ventilation), and pain control as needed [31].

SICKLE CELL TRAIT
Pregnant women with sickle cell trait should be screened with a hemoglobin electrophoresis if this has not been done before, and testing of the father and genetic counseling should be offered. They are at increased risk of urinary tract infections and therefore should have a urine culture at the first prenatal visit and in every trimester. Asymptomatic bacteriuria should be treated.

HBSC DISEASE
HbC is due to a single nucleotide substitution (A for G) in the sixth codon of the $\beta$-globin gene (making it a Hb C gene) in chromosome 11, leading to substitution of lysine for glutamic acid on the $\beta$-globin chain, resulting in $\beta'$ globin. Of African Americans, 1% are carriers (trait). Diagnosis is by electrophoresis. No disease with trait only.

HbSC occurs in about 1/833 African Americans. About 40% to 60% have some clinical course as HbSS disease, and others have milder disease. Preventive and prenatal management should be as for HbSS.

HBS-/\beta' THAL
There are two types of sickle cell-beta thalassemia, and they are classified according to the amounts of beta globin chain
present. Women with HbSβ0 have complete absence of beta globin, and are clinically similar to HbSS (hemoglobin electrophoresis: absent HbA; elevated HbA2 and HbF). Women with HbSβ+ have reduced amounts of beta globin (hemoglobin electrophoresis: low HbA; elevated HbA2 and HbF) and are typically managed similar to women with HbSS but tend to have milder disease [32,33].

HEMOGLOBIN E
Prevalent in Southeast Asia. No increase in mortality; may have slight decrease in birth weight and increase in abortion.

REFERENCES
von Willebrand disease

Dawnette Lewis and Srikanth Nagalla

KEY POINTS
• It is difficult to establish a diagnosis of type I von Willebrand disease (vWD) in pregnant women. The diagnostic workup includes 1) prolonged bleeding time, 2) low levels of factor VIII, 3) decreased von Willebrand Factor (vWF) antigen (Ag), and 4) decreased ristocetin cofactor activity. Be aware of physiologic increase of factor VIII and vWF levels in pregnancy.
• Workup therefore includes these key labs: factor VIII, vWF Ag, ristocetin cofactor activity, bleeding time.
• DDAVP responsiveness should be tested preconception or in the second or third trimester.
• Prophylactic therapy for most common type (type I) of vWD if factor VIII <50% of normal is DDAVP.
• Prophylactic therapies for other types of vWD are according to type and include DDAVP, vWF concentrates (Humate P, Alphanate SD/HT), and/or adjuvant therapy (antifibrinolytic amino acids [amniocaproic acid and tranexamic acid], used in conjunction with desmopressin and plasma concentrates).
• If possible, avoid pudendal blocks and operative vaginal deliveries as well as scalp lead and scalp pH given the usually 50% chance of the fetus being affected.

HISTORIC NOTES
von Willebrand disease (vWD) was first described in 1926 by a Finnish pediatrician, Erik von Willebrand. He also reported that the condition was inherited in an autosomal dominant fashion and improved with blood transfusions.

DIAGNOSIS/DEFINITION
Diagnosis of vWD is complex (Table 16.1) [1–7]. vWD is usually associated with prolonged bleeding time with aPT and aPTT frequently normal (aPTT is only prolonged in patients with severe vWD due to decreased Factor VIII level). For type I, the most important laboratory tests are the following:
• Ristocetin cofactor activity [binding of vWF:Ag to the platelet membrane glycoprotein Iba, mediated by the antibiotic ristocetin] (decreased) or von Willebrand activity (this test uses a monoclonal antibody against the GPIb binding site of vWF) (decreased).
• vWF:Ag [von Willebrand factor antigen; an immunoreactive protein] (decreased)
• Factor VIII (decreased)

As a patient progresses through pregnancy, many of the values for diagnosis are normal due to the hormonal effects on the vWF levels, and diagnosis cannot be made reliably. For distinguishing types (Table 16.1), also send multimeric analysis and factor VIII binding assay. Factor VIII levels are best (but not that good) at predicting surgical/soft-tissue bleeding.

SYMPTOMS
Abnormal bleeding symptoms include epistaxis, bleeding from the gums and with dental surgery, ecchymoses, prolonged bleeding after minor cuts, menorrhagia, postpartum hemorrhage, delayed postpartum hemorrhage, and postoperative bleeding. Ask for a detailed personal history (menstruation, injuries, surgeries, etc.) and family history.

EPIDEMIOLOGY/INCIDENCE
Incidence is about 1%–2% in the general population; it is the most common congenital hemorrhagic disease affecting males and females and all ethnic groups.

GENETICS
Usually autosomal dominant (Table 16.2). vWF is a large multimeric glycoprotein encoded on chromosome 12 and is synthesized and released from endothelium and megakaryocytes. There are more than 250 mutations of all types known.

ETIOLOGY/BASIC PATHOPHYSIOLOGY
Decrease (quantitative: types I and III) in von Willebrand factor (vWF; also known as factor VIII cofactor) or (qualitative: type II) its function. This cofactor is critical for normal platelet adhesion at site of vascular injury (Figure 16.1) [1–7].

CLASSIFICATION: TYPES
1. (60%–85%) Autosomal Dominant. Partial quantitative decrease of vWF. Mild-moderate decrease in vWF. Also decreased factor VIII 5–30 (nl 50–150 IU/dL); decreased vWF:Ag, decreased vWF:Ac (tinty)-measured by ristocetin-induced cofactor assay.
2. (10%–30%) Autosomal dominant. Qualitative defect of vWF. Normal vWF but dysfunction:
   A. Decreased vWF function due to decrease in large multimers
   B. Gain of function mutation causing increased binding of vWF to platelets and resulting in moderate thrombocytopenia.
   M and N types are uncommon.
3. (1%–5%) Autosomal recessive. Quantitative decrease. No vWF and very low factor VIII. Severe symptoms do not respond to DDAVP.
   Acquired – during certain disease states.
MATERNAL-FETAL EVIDENCE BASED GUIDELINES

COMPLICATIONS

Intra- and postpartum hemorrhage. Postpartum hemorrhage occurs in 16%–29% of women within 24 hours and delayed (after 24 hours, usually within 2 weeks) in 20%–29% of women. Does not impair fertility or increase pregnancy loss.

PREGNANCY CONSIDERATIONS

Factor VIII and vWF levels rise in pregnancy, so they might be normal at term even with vWD.

PREGNANCY MANAGEMENT

Principles
Treat as you would in nonpregnant adult.

Workup (labs)
See “Diagnosis” above (Tables 16.1 and 16.2).

Management

Preconception counseling: Obtain history, type of vWD, records, etc.; hematology and genetic counseling consult as necessary; baseline laboratory tests (see workup above); hepatitis B vaccine. If vWD type I with factor VIII levels <50 IU/dL, type II or III, or history of severe bleeding, consider care in a high-risk center with close collaboration with hematologist.

Prenatal care: First trimester: See “Preconception counseling” if not done yet. Prenatal diagnosis, including CVS, is possible (give DDAVP or other prophylaxis as appropriate per type—see below); Second/third trimester: Anesthesia consult; test response to DAVVP. Third trimester: monitor laboratory tests; birth plan (anesthesia, DDAVP, etc.). Aim to achieve factor VIII levels of ≥50 mu/dL, associated with very low risk of any bleeding complications [2,6,7].

Therapy: See Table 16.2 and Figure 16.2.

TYPE I

DDAVP (desmopressin, i.e., 1-deamino-8-D-arginine vasopressin; synthetic vasopressin [AntiDiureticHormone] analog)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subtype&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</th>
<th>von Willebrand Factor Antigen</th>
<th>von Willebrand Factor Ristocetin Cofactor Activity</th>
<th>von Willebrand Factor Ristocetin Cofactor Activity/von Willebrand Factor Antigen (ratio)</th>
<th>Factor VIII</th>
<th>Low Dose Ristocetin-Induced Platelet Aggregation</th>
<th>Multimer Assay</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Type 1</td>
<td>Low</td>
<td>Low</td>
<td>&gt;0.5–0.7</td>
<td>Low or normal</td>
<td>No reaction</td>
<td>Normal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type 2A</td>
<td>Low</td>
<td>Low</td>
<td>&lt;0.5–0.7</td>
<td>Low or normal</td>
<td>No reaction</td>
<td>Decrease in large multimers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type 2B</td>
<td>Low</td>
<td>Low</td>
<td>&lt;0.5–0.7</td>
<td>Low or normal</td>
<td>Positive</td>
<td>Decrease in large multimers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type 2M</td>
<td>Low</td>
<td>Low</td>
<td>&lt;0.5–0.7</td>
<td>Low or normal</td>
<td>No reaction</td>
<td>Normal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type 2N</td>
<td>Normal to low</td>
<td>Normal to low</td>
<td>&gt;0.5–0.7</td>
<td>Low</td>
<td>No reaction</td>
<td>Normal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type 3</td>
<td>Absent</td>
<td>Absent</td>
<td>Absent</td>
<td>Low</td>
<td>No reaction</td>
<td>Absent</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


Table 16.1 Common Laboratory Findings in von Willebrand Disease

Table 16.2 Mechanism, Inheritance, and Treatment for the Different Types of von Willebrand Disease

Type Mechanism Inheritance Treatment Second-Line Therapy

1 Quantitative (partial) decrease vWF Autosomal dominant DDAVP Factor VIII/vWF concentrates

2 Qualitative/functional defect vWF Autosomal dominant Factor VIII/vWF concentrates DDAVP

A Platelet-dependent vWF—absence of large or intermediate size multimers Autosomal dominant None

B Large multimers absent (increase in binding with platelets and vWF) Autosomal dominant Factor VIII/vWF concentrates DDAVP

M Autosomal dominant Factor VIII/vWF concentrates DDAVP

N Autosomal dominant None

3 Severe or absent vWF and Factor VIII deficiency Autosomal recessive Factor VIII/vWF concentrates (without alloantibodies) Recombinant factor VIII (with alloantibodies)

Acquired Occurs in disease states, such as cancer, valvular heart disease (AS), thrombocytopenia, autoimmune diseases Increased clearance of vWF from plasma Treatment of underlying condition Desmopressin, plasma concentrates, IVIg

Abbreviations: DDAVP, 1-deamino-8-D-arginine vasopressin; vWF, von Willebrand factor.
Platelet adhesion at site of vascular injury. (a) In the intact vessel wall, endothelial cells hamper the interactions of circulating platelets and their membrane glycoproteins Ibr (GpIbr), nonactivated IIb–IIIa (αIIbβ3), and collagen receptors GpVI and α2β1 with von Willebrand factor and collagen fibrils localized in the subendothelial extracellular matrix. When the vessel wall is intact and blood flow is normal, plasma von Willebrand factor that is present in a coiled structure and platelets coexist in circulating blood with minimal interactions. (b) In the damaged vessel wall, collagen and von Willebrand factor of the subendothelial matrix become exposed to flowing blood and shear forces. Plasma von Willebrand factor efficiently binds to exposed collagen and uncoils its structure, supporting the adhesion of circulating platelets in synergy with collagen. Bound von Willebrand factor interacts, at first, only with the platelet receptor GpIbr and platelet tethering occurs. This interaction has a fast dissociation rate, and platelets tethered to the vessel wall still move in the direction of flow (rolling). In this interaction, collagen receptors GpVI and α2β1 bind to collagen and promote platelet adhesion and activation in synergy with the von Willebrand factor–GpIbr interactions. (b and c) Once platelets are activated (represented by irregular margins), a conformational change of αIIbβ3 enhances its affinity for the ligand von Willebrand factor (receptors are shown as crosses). This event, together with the rolling of platelets due to the von Willebrand factor–GpIbr interaction, allows αIIbβ3 to bind platelets to the vessel wall (c) αIIbβ3 is also responsible for platelet-to-platelet interactions that eventually lead to platelet plug formation mediated by von Willebrand factor and, at slow flow conditions, by fibrinogen (not shown). (From Mannucci P. NEJM, 351, 683–94, 2004. Reprinted with permission.)
0.3 mcg/kg IV over 30 minutes (maximum dose: 25–30 mcg). Works within one hour (peak occurs in 30–90 minutes after the infusion). Also available SQ (0.3 mcg/kg) or nasal inhalation (300 mcg in adults). Mechanism of action is promoting release of vWF and factor VIII from endothelial cells. So increases ristocetin cofactor activity and increases ×3 vWF:Ag level, factor VIII procoagulant level (FVIII:C). Can give test dose and then check Factor VIII and ristocetin cofactor activity at peak—one hour—and clearance—four hours. It lasts up to 10 hours, so repeat every 12 hours, maximum two to four doses. DDAVP is first-line therapy for type I; second line for IIa; and contraindicated for type IIb.

Safe in pregnancy for mother and fetus (does not cross placenta) [2] and during breast-feeding (Category B).

If not responsive to DDAVP: alphanate (factor VIII and vWF mixed). This is better than cryoprecipitate because there are no infectious disease issues. Otherwise use humate-P (purified Factor VIII). Usual loading dose for these 2 vWF concentrates is 40–60 IU/kg. Alternatives, especially more for treatment of hemorrhage more than prophylaxis, are cryoprecipitate (fibrinogen and vWF), FFP (watch volume overload), cryoprecipitate (fibrinogen and vWF), or FFP (watch volume overload). Applies to all above: Safety: limited data, but probably safe. Counsel regarding blood product precautions.

**Type IIa**
Preferred therapy is Factor VIII/vWF concentrates (as alphanate, humate-P, etc.).

**Type IIb**
No specific treatment is available, but can treat as per Figure 16.2.

**Type III**
Without alloantibodies: factor VIII/vWF concentrates; with alloantibodies: recombinant factor VIII.

### Antepartum Testing
Not indicated unless other complications present (no known direct fetal risks).

---

**Type 1 vWD:**
- DDAVP* if FVIII or vWD:RCo <50 IU/dL.
- Follow FVIII and vWF:RCo daily (titrate infusions accordingly).
- Maintain levels of both >50 IU/dL during labor, delivery, and up to five days postpartum.

If prolonged treatment with DDAVP, consider adding vWF concentrates.

**Type 2 vWD:**
- DDAVP* if response documented on test does (mainly 2A).
- vWF concentrates (if FVIII or vWF:RCo <50 IU/dL). Follow FVIII and vWF:RCo daily (titrate infusions accordingly).
- Maintain levels of both >50 IU/dL during labor, delivery, and up to five days postpartum.

Continue close follow-up of FVIII and vWF:RCo levels for up to two weeks postpartum (especially if cesarean section) and provide prophylaxis accordingly to avoid late postpartum hemorrhage.

**Type 3 vWD:**
- vWF concentrates (if FVIII or vWF:RCo <50 IU/dL). Follow FVIII and vWF:RCo daily (titrate infusions accordingly).
- Maintain levels of both >50 IU/dL during labor, delivery, and up to five days postpartum.

---

![Figure 16.2](image-url) Peripartum management of von Willebrand disease. aPTT, activated partial thromboplastin time; CBC, complete blood count; DDAVP, 1-deamino-8-D-arginine vasopressin; vWF, von Willebrand factor; vWF:RCo, von Willebrand factor ristocetin cofactor activity. *Avoid hypotonic solutions at time of delivery if using DDAVP in order to prevent hyponatremia. (Adapted from Pacheco LD, Constantine MM, Saade GR, Mucowski S, Hankins GDV, Sciscione AC. Am J Obstet Gynecol, 203, 194–200, 2010.)
Delivery (Figure 16.2)
Types I and II: Measure 1) bleeding time, 2) factor VIII, 3) vWF Ag, and 4) ristocetin cofactor activity. If vWF activity levels are ≥50 mu/dL, there is very low risk of bleeding with vaginal or cesarean delivery. If lower, prophylactically administer DDAVP (if DDAVP responder) or concentrates/blood products (see above, according to type) at time of delivery (if possible one hour before) and 12 hours thereafter (then as needed).

Type III: Do not measure vWF activity as always low. Treat daily as above starting before delivery.

Oxytocin dose should be carefully monitored because fluid retention can be a side effect of both oxytocin and DDAVP and lead to life-threatening hyponatremia. As fetus has a 50% chance of having von Willebrand disease, scalp lead, scalp pH, and operative vaginal delivery should be avoided.

Anesthesia
Regional anesthesia is safe if normal PTT, factor VIII levels of ≥50 mu/dL and normal ristocetin cofactor activity.

Postpartum/Breast-Feeding
Measure factor VIII one to two weeks postpartum because increased level during pregnancy will again physiologically decrease in vWD disease. Risk of postpartum bleeding in fact continues for about two to four weeks, so that additional doses of DDAVP and close monitoring are required. As the neonate has a 50% chance of having von Willebrand disease, circumcision may need to be delayed until after testing.

FUTURE
vWF produced by recombinant DNA techniques; gene therapy.

RARE/RELATED
Glanzman disease (congenital thromboasthenia): congenital bleeding disorder defined by defective or quantitatively abnormal glycoprotein (GP) IIb/IIIa receptors (Figure 16.1). Diagnosis: bleeding and abnormal platelet aggregation in response to stimuli, prolonged bleeding times, normal platelet counts [3]. Four pregnancies in the world’s literature up to 1978, very few if any after.

REFERENCES
Renal disease
Rebekah McCurdy

KEY POINTS

- The frequency of complications in pregnancies with maternal renal disease is directly proportional to the severity of renal dysfunction, typically correlated with the initial creatinine level.
- Complications include preterm birth, preeclampsia, fetal growth restriction, low birth weight, and perinatal mortality. In women with creatinine ≥1.4 mg/dL, about 10% will have progressive renal deterioration. Creatinine >2.3 mg/dL may be regarded as a contraindication to pregnancy.
- Workup includes serum creatinine, blood urea nitrogen, and electrolytes as well as 24-hour urine collection for protein and creatinine clearance.
- Hypertension is commonly associated with renal disease and should be treated to keep diastolic <90 mmHg.
- Women with end-stage renal disease (ESRD) on dialysis should be counseled preconception that they should receive a renal transplant and then wait one to two years before attempting pregnancy. Women on dialysis or with a recently transplanted kidney should be maintained on effective contraception. If pregnant, counseling should include review of the very high rates of the above complications.
- There is an overall success of pregnancy (live births) in women after renal transplantation of >90%.
- In women with moderate-to-severe renal insufficiency, low-dose aspirin started in early pregnancy may reduce the incidence of preeclampsia.
- Pelvic floor exercises during and after pregnancy decrease the incidence of urinary incontinence in the third trimester and postpartum.
- Asymptomatic bacteriuria should be assessed for at the first prenatal visit and treated promptly as 20%–40% of women will develop pyelonephritis if left untreated.

SYMPTOMS

Include a frequent need to urinate and edema as well as possible anemia, fatigue, weakness, headaches, and loss of appetite. As renal disease progresses, other symptoms, such as nausea, vomiting, bad breath, and pruritus, may develop as toxic metabolites, normally filtered out of the blood by the kidneys, build up to harmful levels.

EPIDEMIOLOGY/INCIDENCE

The overall incidence of renal disease (excluding asymptomatic bacteriuria) in the general obstetric population is 0.03% to 0.2% [4–6].

PHYSIOLOGIC RENAL CHANGES IN PREGNANCY

Pregnancy is marked by vasodilation, occurring soon after conception. This results in a drop in blood pressure, an increase in cardiac output, and an increase in renal blood flow and glomerular filtration rate (GFR). These changes persist until late gestation. Likely causes include increased progesterone, nitric oxide, relaxin, and estrogen. Functionally, there is increased renal plasma flow (peaks 60%–80% in the second trimester, then falls to 50%–60% above baseline during the third trimester). GFR increases 30% during the first trimester and peaks at 50% above prepregnancy values in the second trimester. Creatinine and urea production remains unchanged, resulting in a drop in serum creatinine and urea levels to mean values of 0.6 and 9 mg/dL, respectively. Near term, a 15% to 20% decrease in GFR occurs [7,8] (Chapter 3 of Obstetric Evidence Based Guidelines). Ideally, evaluation of renal function in pregnancy should be based on GFR with creatinine clearance probably the best way to approximate GFR (normal values: Table 17.3) [9]. There is an increase in the size of the kidneys and urinary collecting system. Kidney length increases approximately 1 cm and volume increases 30% [10]. The entire collecting system becomes dilated, which may be confused with an obstructive uropathy. Mild hydronephrosis, particularly common on the right, may be present and physiologic in more than 90% of normal pregnancies [11].

CLASSIFICATION

See Tables 17.1 and 17.2 [1,2].

RISK FACTORS/PRECONCEPTION COUNSELING

As functional loss progresses, the risks to mother and fetus increase substantially [1,12]. The goal is to optimize prepregnancy health.
Table 17.1 Classification of Renal Insufficiency

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Category</th>
<th>Serum Creatininea (µmol/L [mg/dL])</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Preserved</td>
<td>&lt;100 (&lt;1.1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mildly impaired renal function</td>
<td>100–124 (1.1–1.3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Moderate renal insufficiency</td>
<td>125–250 (1.4–2.8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Severe renal insufficiency</td>
<td>&gt;250 (&gt;2.8)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


*In early pregnancy.*

Table 17.2 Stages of Chronic Kidney Diseasea

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stage</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>GFR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Normal kidney function but urine findings or structural abnormalities or genetic trait point to kidney disease</td>
<td>&gt;90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Mildly reduced kidney function, and other findings point to kidney disease</td>
<td>60–89</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Moderately reduced kidney function</td>
<td>30–59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Severely reduced kidney function</td>
<td>15–29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Very severe or end-stage kidney failure</td>
<td>&lt;15 or on dialysis</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


Table 17.3 Normal Ranges of Renal Functions during Pregnancy

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nonpregnant Adult</th>
<th>First Trimester</th>
<th>Second Trimester</th>
<th>Third Trimester</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Creatinine (mg/dL)</td>
<td>0.5–0.9</td>
<td>0.4–0.7</td>
<td>0.4–0.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Glomerular filtration rate (mL/min)</td>
<td>106–132</td>
<td>131–166</td>
<td>135–170</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


Table 17.4 Rate of Complications According to Degree of Renal Insufficiency (%)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Creatinine</th>
<th>PTB</th>
<th>Preeclampsia</th>
<th>HTN</th>
<th>FGR</th>
<th>Perinatal Mortality</th>
<th>Live Birth</th>
<th>Decline in Renal Function</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>&lt;1.4</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>&gt;90</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.4–2.8</td>
<td>36–60</td>
<td>42</td>
<td>56</td>
<td>56</td>
<td>43–57</td>
<td>36</td>
<td>N/A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&gt;2.8</td>
<td>73–86</td>
<td>86</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>50–80</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>40–50</td>
<td>N/A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dialysis</td>
<td>48–84</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>50–80</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>40–50</td>
<td>N/A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Renal transplant</td>
<td>52–75</td>
<td>23–37</td>
<td>47–63</td>
<td>20–66</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>74–90</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


*Abbreviations:* FGR, fetal growth restriction; HTN, hypertension; N/A, not available; PTB, preterm birth.

**Specific Diseases**

- **Vasculopathy:** Patients with vasculopathy from scleroderma and polyarteritis nodosa should be discouraged from pregnancy because of high maternal and fetal morbidity and mortality [1,13,14].
- **Lupus nephritis:** Patients with lupus nephritis do well when the disease is in remission for six months prior to conception with a live birth rate up to 95% [15,16]. Rates of preterm delivery and preeclampsia are based on degree of renal insufficiency. Total live birth rate for all lupus patients is 58% to 95% [15,17]. Low complement levels at conception are predictive of adverse pregnancy outcomes (RR 19), and use of low-dose aspirin during pregnancy is associated with a decrease in adverse outcomes (RR 0.11) [16]. Presence of antiphospholipid antibodies is also associated with increased risk [18]. In addition, the risk of lupus flare is increased in patients with >1 g of proteinuria or GFR <60 mL/min [16] (see Chapter 25).
- **IgA nephropathy:** Women with biopsy-proven IgA nephropathy can be counseled that pregnancy does not appear to impact kidney function [19].
- **Mild renal insufficiency:** Typically successful pregnancy outcomes with no adverse effect on the course of their disease [20].
- **Moderate and severe renal insufficiency:** Prognosis is more guarded. Deterioration in renal function is seen in 43% of which 10% do not improve postpartum [21].

**CHRONIC RENAL INSUFFICIENCY Complications**

Prognosis is directly related to the degree of renal insufficiency (Table 17.4) [14,22–26]. The best outcomes are in women with preconception serum creatinine levels below 2 mg/dL and diastolic blood pressure of 90 mmHg or less although women with only mild renal insufficiency may still be at increased risk for adverse outcomes [1,6,27]. Creatinine clearance below 70 mL/min prior to conception is associated with poor outcomes even when serum creatinine levels are in the minimal dysfunction category [28]. Needing more than one antihypertensive medication for optimal control is associated with a significant decrease in live birth rate [20]. Proteinuria (>1 g/24 hr) and reduced GFR (<40 mL/min) in combination are risk factors for progression of renal disease to end stage.
and also predict a shorter time to dialysis therapy and lower birth weight [29].

- Infertility: Conception with GFR <25 mL/min is rare secondary to alterations in hypothalamic–pituitary–adrenal (HPA) axis [30].
- Hypertension: Incidence of hypertension increases from 28% at baseline to approximately 50% by the third trimester [21].
- Proteinuria: Urinary protein excretion ≥3 g in 24 hours increases from approximately 25% to 41% during pregnancy [21].
- Preeclampsia: Increased incidence. Diagnosis is difficult because of the high frequency of baseline hypertension and proteinuria.
- Preterm labor: Incidence as high as 85% [31].
- Low birth weight: 66% [31].
- Perinatal mortality: 10% to 20% [20,21].
- Cost: Women with chronic renal disease have increased median cost of pregnancy [4].

Pregnancy Considerations

Pregnancy does not appear to adversely affect the natural history of renal disease in women with mild dysfunction. However, 10% with moderate-to-severe disease will suffer irreversible deterioration during pregnancy [5,21,32]. Preconception assessment of renal function should be recommended to all patients with diabetes mellitus seeking pregnancy as adverse outcomes are more common with diabetic nephropathy [33]. Referral to a nephrologist should be considered for all diabetics with a creatinine >1.4 [34].

Workup

Serum creatinine, BUN, and electrolytes as well as 24-hour urine collection for protein and creatinine clearance. A 24-hour urine ≥300 mg protein is considered abnormal and correlates roughly to 1+ proteinuria on a urine dipstick. Urine dipstick should not be the only testing for women with suspected renal disease as this can miss up to one in 11 hypertensive pregnant women with actual proteinuria [35]. A 24-hour urine collection has long been the gold standard although a random protein-creatinine ratio has been shown to accurately predict baseline proteinuria in early pregnancy [36,37]. Renal biopsy should be reserved for those whose diagnosis is in question, particularly in those with sudden deterioration in renal function for no known reason as it may change the management in up to 66% of cases [38]. It is generally recommended only before 32 weeks of pregnancy as delivery after 32 weeks may be accomplished with relatively good outcomes for the neonate after which the biopsy may be performed. Severe renal disease may increase the risk of complications from the renal biopsy. A skilled physician and ultrasound guidance should be used in the performance of a renal biopsy in a pregnant individual [10].

Prevention

Aim to preserve whatever renal function remains. Screen for diabetes and hypertension and arrange for appropriate consultation and treatment so as to prevent end-organ complications. In addition, dose medications appropriately for chronic renal disease so as to avoid acute or chronic kidney injury.

Management

Patients with moderate or severe renal insufficiency should be managed with a multidisciplinary approach in conjunction with a perinatologist, nephrologist, and neonatologist.

Prenatal Care

Prenatal Visits

Women may be seen every two to four weeks until 32 weeks gestation, after which they may need to be seen weekly because of the markedly increased risk for severe preeclampsia. Careful monitoring of blood pressure and proteinuria for early detection of hypertension and superimposed preeclampsia should be performed at every visit.

Laboratory Tests

Evaluation of renal function should include a 24-hour creatinine clearance and protein excretion at least at the first visit in early pregnancy and, depending on severity of renal insufficiency, each trimester. Frequent urine culture should be done for early detection of asymptomatic bacteriuria or confirmation of urinary tract infection. Maternal anemia should be corrected with iron supplementation or erythropoietin if severe. Pregnant women may need higher doses of erythropoietin to maintain hematocrit >35% [39].

Antenatal Testing

- Frequent (e.g., monthly) ultrasound for fetal growth
- Biophysical assessment (e.g., nonstress tests, or biophysical profile scores) of fetal well-being beginning weekly at ≥32 weeks

Patient Education

The symptoms of preterm labor and preeclampsia should be reviewed with women who have chronic renal disease.

Therapy

Hypertension

Hypertension should be treated aggressively in obstetric patients with underlying renal dysfunction to preserve kidney function. The goal is to keep diastolic blood pressure <90 mmHg. Use of antihypertensive medication in pregnancy is discussed in Chapter 1.

Preeclampsia

Magnesium is not contraindicated but should be used with extreme caution begun at 1 to 2 g/hr, possibly without a bolus, or just giving boluses (no continuous infusion rate) as needed. Evaluation for side effects of magnesium should occur at least hourly, and magnesium levels should be checked often (e.g., every two to four hours) in labor to adjust the dose. Calcium gluconate should be available. An alternative is to use phenytoin 15 to 20 mg/kg IV. Low-dose aspirin should be started in the first trimester in women with moderate to severe CRI and in women with a history of lupus nephritis to reduce the incidence of preeclampsia and fetal growth restriction (FGR) [16,40,41].

Preterm Labor

Magnesium and indomethacin should be used with caution as they are renally excreted.
Delivery
Delivery should be performed at a tertiary care center. Mode of delivery should be for standard obstetric indications. Deliberate preterm birth may be necessary in the face of worsening maternal renal function, severe preeclampsia, or worsening fetal status.

Postpartum/Breast-Feeding
Little is known about the quantities of immunosuppressive agents in breast milk. Although small series have shown little toxicity, caution should be used when recommending breast-feeding to patients taking these agents [42].

Long-Term Renal Prognosis
When kidney dysfunction is mild, pregnancy does not appear to adversely alter the natural history with the possible exception of a few disorders [20]. In women with moderate-to-severe renal insufficiency (maternal serum creatinine ≥1.4 mg/dL), 10% of patients will have progressive renal deterioration at 12 months postpartum [21].

NEPHROTIC SYNDROME
Definition
Nephrotic syndrome (NS): Defined by >3.5 g of proteinuria in 24 hours in nonpregnant adults [43]. A condition caused by any disease that damages the kidneys’ filtering system, the glomeruli. Because of the decrease in oncotic pressure in pregnant women, nephrotic syndrome is associated with hypoalbuminemia, edema, venous thromboembolism, and hypercholesterolemia.

General
The most common causes of adult nephrotic syndrome outside of pregnancy are focal glomerulosclerosis, membranous nephropathy, and minimal-change disease [44].

Epidemiology/Incidence
Nephrotic syndrome occurs in 0.012% to 0.025% of all pregnancies [43].

Workup
Newly diagnosed nephrotic syndrome in early pregnancy has been associated with hydatidiform molar pregnancies; therefore, this should be evaluated [37,44,45]. If the diagnosis is made prior to pregnancy, histologic diagnosis can help direct treatment. In most cases of stable disease, renal biopsy can be deferred until postpartum if histologic diagnosis is not already made. Renal biopsy in pregnancy is considered a safe option, especially if the results are expected to potentially change management [46,47]. The presence of proteinuria >1 g in combination with GFR <40 mL/min is predictive of worse prognosis in pregnancy [29]. For this reason, patients with newly diagnosed proteinuria prior to 20 weeks gestation (1+ or greater on urine dipstick on two samples at least six hours but no more than seven days apart [8]) should have a 24-hour urine collection for both protein and creatinine clearance in order to estimate GFR [48]. Testing for proteinuria on urine dipstick is associated with a high false positive rate and contamination (blood, semen, detergents, etc.).

Complications
Nephrotic syndrome rarely causes complications in pregnancy in the absence of hypertension and abnormal renal function. Most of the literature on nephrotic syndrome in pregnancy is based on case reports; therefore, the incidence of specific complications is unknown.

Specific Diseases
Membranous nephropathy is associated with increased fetal demise, preterm delivery (43%), hypertension, and a decline in maternal renal function [49].

Prenatal Care, Fetal Monitoring, and Labor Management
A similar approach to antepartum and intrapartum care can be used to that of patients with chronic renal insufficiency (see preceding section). Patients should be managed with a multidisciplinary approach, in conjunction with a perinatologist, nephrologist, and neonatologist.

Management
It may be necessary to treat nephrotic syndrome with steroids, which requires early and repeat screening for gestational diabetes (GDM). Thromboprophylaxis should be considered for women with proteinuria >5 g/day [34].

Long-Term Prognosis
Relates to the specific diagnosis. Most evidence suggests that pregnancy does not worsen or accelerate the overall disease process in women with primary glomerular disease, at least at five-year follow-up [50]. The exception to this appears to be women with membranous glomerulonephritis, who do worse after experiencing a pregnancy.

DIALYSIS Principles/Counseling
Women with ESRD on dialysis have impaired fertility secondary to suppression of hypothalamic–pituitary–adrenal (HPA) axis function, leading to anovulation and amenorrhea. Fertility rates are improving with advances in dialysis, overall decreased serum creatinine levels, and improvement of azotemia. Published rates of fertility range from 1% to 7%. Dialysis-dependent patients with ESRD should be offered contraception [51].

Women on dialysis should be counseled preconception that they should receive a renal transplant and then wait for one to two years before attempting pregnancy [52]. For successful outcomes in pregnant women on dialysis, the key is coordination of multidisciplinary care to maintain blood pressure control, fluid balance, and adequate nutrition. There is an overall >70% likelihood of fetal survival [53]. Live births in women on dialysis during pregnancy has improved from 23% [54] to about 50% in 1994 [21] to 79% in 1998 [53] and to 92% in 2002 [51].

Of note, in dialysis patients, serum levels of B-human chorionic gonadotropin may be borderline elevated in women who are not pregnant; an ultrasound should be used to confirm the diagnosis of pregnancy [52].
Complications

Stillbirth (8%–50%), neonatal death (9%–25%), preterm delivery (48%–84%), severe preeclampsia (11%) [31,55], polyhydramnios (40%) [25], FGR (50%–80%), hypertension (100%), anemia (100%), and even maternal death despite recent improved overall outcomes [51]. Most of the neonatal morbidity occurs secondary to prematurity. The risk of congenital anomalies does not appear to be increased. Preeclampsia is a poor prognostic factor in these patients, associated with increased rates of stillbirth, low birth weight, and prematurity [25].

Pregnancy Management

- Counseling regarding complications should be reviewed. Because of the high incidence of complications, termination may be discussed as well as the possibility of a better outcome after renal transplant [51].
- Intensive hemodialysis (HD) for patients with ESRD six to seven times a week is recommended. There appears to be a trend toward better fetal survival in women who received dialysis >20 hr/wk [31].
- Plasma urea level appears to be the most important factor influencing pregnancy outcome in dialysis patients. A predialysis urea of 30 to 50 mg/dL (5–8 mmol/L) is associated with improved outcomes [56].
- Prepregnancy dialysis regimen should be increased by approximately 50%.
- HD may be superior to peritoneal dialysis (PD), but this has not been studied in any trial in pregnancy. Older reports have demonstrated more successful pregnancies in women undergoing HD (79%) compared to PD (33%) [51]. Newer small series demonstrate comparable outcomes between HD and PD [57,58], but no clear benefit of PD over HD. For this reason, PD is not recommended in the general pregnant patient population. If patients are already established on PD, there is no compelling evidence to change to HD [31,55]. PD can be complicated by intra-abdominal infection, and this differential should be considered in pregnant patients using PD presenting with abdominal pain.
- Aggressively use HD to decrease azotemia for improving pregnancy outcomes. As a goal, predialysis urea level should be <100 mg/dL and BUN should be low (7–10 mg/dL), so that there is not osmotic diuresis in the fetus.
- Avoid maternal hypotension during HD. Keep BP 130–150/80–90.
- Avoid excessive fluid shifts. Ensure minimal fluctuations and limit volume changes.
- Alter heparin regimen near delivery if possible.
- Use maternal dry weight to base HD volume.
- There are no studies of fetal surveillance during HD.
- Altering HD rates to achieve maximal volume control may decrease incidence of polyhydramnios.
- Obtain a nutritional consult [52].
- Be aware of other metabolic changes:
  - Good general health ≥1 year since transplant.
  - Keep bicarbonate 22 to 26 mEq/L.
  - Keep hemoglobin 11 to 12 mg/dL with erythropoietin (can be given in pregnancy, does not cross the placenta). Because of resistance to erythropoietin in pregnancy, the dose must be increased by as much as 50% to maintain the target hemoglobin [56]. Anemia is associated with worse neonatal outcomes [25].
  - Replace calcium (>2 g/day), phosphorus.
  - Dialysate: may need more potassium, less calcium.
  - Adequate calorie and protein supply needs to be assured.
  - Ensure good blood pressure control.
  - Maintain attention toward signs and symptoms of preterm labor.
  - Maternal serum screening for aneuploidy is unreliable in this group of patients [51,59].
  - Indocin may worsen kidney function. Magnesium should be avoided if possible or used cautiously with frequent levels.
  - Close antepartum fetal surveillance is warranted because of risk of FGR and fetal heart rate abnormalities.
  - Consider delivery at 34 to 36 weeks.
  - There are insufficient data to assess the effects of antenatal steroids and the risk of gestational diabetes mellitus in HD patients.
  - Neonatologists should be available to assess the neonate. Neonates are born with BUN and creatinine levels equal to the mother’s and often experience osmotic diuresis, resulting in volume contraction and electrolyte abnormalities. Intrauterine hypercalcemia may result in postnatal hypocalcemia and tetany [60].
  - Asymptomatic bacteriuria in dialysis and transplant patients should be treated for two weeks, and suppression may be given for the remainder of the pregnancy [52]. Antepartum care should otherwise be similar to those patients with chronic renal disease.

Postpartum

Most women return to prepregnancy dialysis regimens and have uncomplicated postpartum recoveries. Postpartum care must address contraception. A renal transplant should precede future pregnancies.

RENAL TRANSPLANTATION

Principles

Management should be at a center with a transplant nephrologist and requires attention toward serial assessment of renal function, diagnosis and treatment of rejection, blood pressure control, and control of anemia. There is an overall success of pregnancy (live births) in women after renal transplantation of >90% [61]. Fertility can normalize soon after transplantation, so patients should be maintained on contraception until ready to attempt a pregnancy. If graft function is adequate and stable, pregnancy does not cause accelerated graft demise [62]. However, one case-control study suggested that graft function is adversely affected by pregnancy [63]. At 10-year follow-up, graft survival was 69% in pregnant patients and 100% in nonpregnant controls.

Complications

Slightly increased incidences of fetal growth restriction, premature rupture of membranes, preterm delivery, and preeclampsia.

Preconceptual Counseling

Ideal candidate for pregnancy is a woman with the following:

1. Good general health for at least one year post-transplant before attempting conception.
2. Minimal (ideally <300 mg or at least <1000 mg/24 hr) proteinuria.
3. Absence (ideal) or at least good control of hypertension.
4. No evidence of graft rejection.
5. Absence of pelvicaliceal distention on intravenous pyelogram.
6. Stable renal function (maternal serum creatinine <1.4 mg/dL or ideally <1.1 mg/dL). Fetal survival improves from 75% with creatinine >1.4 mg/dL to 95% with normal creatinine.
7. Stable immunosuppressive regimen.
8. If possible, drug therapy should be reduced to maintenance levels: prednisone <15 mg/day, azathioprine <2 mg/kg/day, cyclosporine <5 mg/kg/day [52].
9. Preconception recommendations: discontinue ACE inhibitors and determine immune status for hepatitis B, herpes simplex, CMV, and toxoplasmosis [52].

Table 17.5  Immunosuppressive Agents Commonly Used and Their Side Effects

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Agent → Side effect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Prednisone&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt; → glucose intolerance, neonatal adrenal insufficiency, thymic hypoplasia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Azathioprine&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt; → leukemia (maintain maternal white blood count &gt;7500 pl)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cyclosporine&lt;sup&gt;a,b&lt;/sup&gt; → hypertension, nephrotoxicity (watch for drug interactions—see Table 17.4), intraterone growth retardation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tacrolimus&lt;sup&gt;a,b&lt;/sup&gt; → hypertension, nephrotoxicity, neurotoxicity, glucose intolerance, myocardial hypertrophy, hyperkalemia, neonatal anuria</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sirolimus&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt; → GI disturbance, weakness; animal studies raise concern regarding potential for human fetotoxicity although no teratogenesis is evident.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mycophenolate mofetil → GI disturbance; animal studies raise concern regarding potential for human teratogenicity. At least 12 cases of human deformity associated with mycophenolate mofetil, including microtia (11), auditory canal atresia (8), cleft lip and palate (6), and micrognathia (4).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Prenatal Care**

Attempt to obtain operative records from transplant surgery to identify location of kidney. Be aware of side effects of immunosuppressive agents (Table 17.5) [64]. A common immunosuppressive drug is currently tacrolimus (Prograf). It crosses the placenta but has not been associated with an increase in congenital anomalies. Avoid nephrotoxic drugs. Be aware of significant drug interactions with cyclosporine (Table 17.6) [65].

- **Antenatal visits:** should be every two to four weeks up to 32 weeks and weekly thereafter.
- **Lab work:** includes monthly assessment of CBC, BUN, serum creatinine, electrolytes, serum urate, 24-hour creatinine clearance and protein levels, and urine specimen for culture. Initial labs should also include serum serologies for cytomegalovirus, toxoplasmosis, and herpes simplex virus (IgM and IgG for each) and LFTs. Levels of immunosuppressive agent (tacrolimus, cyclosporine, etc.) should be obtained at least every trimester. If the patient is on prednisone or tacrolimus, obtain a fasting and two-hour postprandial blood sugar upon presentation. If these values are normal, perform a glucose challenge test at 32 weeks and weekly thereafter.

**Table 17.6  Drug Interactions with Cyclosporine**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Drugs that exhibit nephrotoxic synergy</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gentamicin → Cimetidine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tobramycin → Ranitidine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vancomycin → Diclofenac</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amphotericin B → Trimethoprim with sulfamethoxazole</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ketoconazole → Azapropazone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Melphalan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Careful monitoring of renal function should be practiced when Sandimmun&lt;sup&gt;®&lt;/sup&gt; (cyclosporine) is used with nephrotoxic drugs.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Drugs that alter cyclosporine levels**

Cyclosporine is extensively metabolized by the liver. Therefore, circulating cyclosporine levels may be influenced by drugs that affect hepatic microsomal enzymes, particularly the cytochrome P-450 system. Substances known to inhibit these enzymes will decrease hepatic metabolism and increase cyclosporine levels. Substances that are inducers of cytochrome P-450 activity will increase hepatic metabolism and decrease cyclosporine levels. Monitoring of circulating cyclosporine levels and appropriate cyclosporine dosage adjustment are essential when these drugs are used concomitantly.

**Other drug interactions**

Reduced clearance of prednisolone, digoxin, and lovastatin has been observed when these drugs are administered with Sandimmun (cyclosporine). In addition, a decrease in the apparent volume of distribution of digoxin has been reported after cyclosporine administration. Severe digitalis toxicity has been seen within days of starting cyclosporine in several patients taking digoxin. Cyclosporine should not be used with potassium-sparing diuretics because hyperkalemia can occur. During treatment with cyclosporine, vaccination may be less effective; and the use of live vaccines should be avoided. Myositis has occurred with concomitant lovastatin, frequent gingival hyperplasia with nifedipine, and convulsions with high dose methylprednisolone. Further information on drugs that have been reported to interact with cyclosporine is available from Sandoz Pharmaceuticals Corporation (New Jersey, U.S.).

**Labor Management**


<sup>a</sup>These have no known teratogenic effects.
<sup>b</sup>Follow with blood levels.

**Table 17.4  Drug Interactions with Cyclosporine**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Drugs that increase cyclosporine levels</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Diltiazem → Danazol</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nicardipine → Bromocriptine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Verapamil → Metoclopramide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ketoconazole → Erythromycin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fluconazole → Methylprednisolone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Intracondazole</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Drugs that decrease cyclosporine levels</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Rifampin → Phenobarbital</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phenytoin → Carbamazepine</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Source:** Adapted from Physician's Desk Reference. 52nd ed. Montvale, NJ: Thompson PDR; 1998.
Cesarean delivery should be for obstetric indications only. Women who have received steroids for long periods during the antepartum period, i.e., 20 mg or more of prednisone or equivalent for more than 3 weeks, should receive “stress dose” steroids. Notification of the use of immunosuppressants to the pediatrician is important for proper follow-up of the neonate.

Renal Graft Rejection
Occurs in 4% to 9% pregnant allograft recipients and is difficult to diagnose. Factors that increase risk include increased number of episodes of rejection during the year prior to conception, maternal serum creatinine >2 mg/dL, proteinuria >500 mg/dL, and graft dysfunction during pregnancy [45]. Clinical hallmarks include fever, oliguria, deteriorating renal function, renal enlargement, and tenderness. Renal ultrasound and biopsy for diagnosis is necessary before aggressive antirejection therapy is begun.

Postpartum/Breast-Feeding
In general, not enough data are available to make a formal recommendation. However, breast-feeding is contraindicated in patients on cyclosporine.

Resources

URINARY TRACT INFECTIONS
Screening
All pregnant women should be screened at the first prenatal visit for asymptomatic bacteriuria. The prevalence of asymptomatic bacteriuria in pregnancy is comparable to nonpregnant patients, between 2% and 10% [66]. If asymptomatic bacteriuria goes untreated in pregnancy, 20% to 40% of patients will develop pyelonephritis, compared to 3% of women who are treated [66,67]. Women with risk factors for urinary tract infections (UTIs) (DM, GDM, neurogenic bladder, prior frequent UTIs, sickle cell disease or trait) should be screened every trimester. Patients with sickle cell trait are at increased risk for pyelonephritis, but it has not been demonstrated that frequent screening reduces the risk [68].

Complications
Pregnant women with asymptomatic bacteriuria are at increased risk for symptomatic infection and pyelonephritis. There is also a positive relationship between untreated bacteriuria, low birth weight, and preterm birth. Other complications of UTIs or pyelonephritis include fetal mortality, possibly long-term mental retardation, and developmental delay [69], preeclampsia, anemia, and pulmonary and renal insufficiency. Treatment of asymptomatic bacteriuria helps prevent these complications (see Chapters 2 and 16 of Obstetric Evidence Based Guidelines).

Prevention
Daily intake of 10 to 16 oz. of cranberry juice decreases the incidence of recurrent Escherichia coli UTIs. Lactobacillus GG drink does not have any benefit [70].

Diagnosis
A threshold of ≥100,000 colony-forming units (CFUs) of the same bacterial strain on two consecutive voided specimens is the indication for treatment. Additionally, asymptomatic bacteriuria may be defined as >100 colony-forming units per milliliter (CFU/ml) of a single recognized uropathogen when the specimen was obtained with a catheterized specimen [71]. Group B Streptococcus should be appropriately treated at any concentration (see Chapter 16 of Obstetric Evidence Based Guidelines). It is important to avoid contamination by cleansing the perineum and then collecting “midstream” urine.

Treatment
Check allergies and sensitivities. The most effective and safest antibiotic regimen for the initial treatment of asymptomatic bacteriuria in pregnancy is not known. If appropriate, nitrofurantoin 100 mg orally twice per day can be used for seven days. If not effective, oral alternatives are cephalaxin 250 mg every six hours, amoxicillin 250 mg every eight hours, or trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole 160/800 mg orally every 12 hours for 7 days [72]. Nitrofurantoin and sulphonamides should be avoided in the first trimester if other antibiotic alternatives are available; however, if not, they can be used [73]. Given the lack of conclusive evidence, it may be useful for clinicians to consider factors such as cost, local availability, and side effects [74].

Follow-Up
A test of cure is necessary [75]. If positive, give another antibiotic regimen (consider different, sensitive regimen) and assess compliance. Intramuscular treatment can be given if compliance remains an issue. Suppressive therapy (once a day of nitrofurantoin 50 mg, amoxicillin 250 mg, or cephalaxin 250 mg) is indicated after two UTIs or one episode of pyelonephritis.

PYELONEPHRITIS
Incidence
1% to 2% [76].

Diagnosis
Urinary tract infection with costovertebral angle tenderness, usually accompanied by systemic symptoms such as fever and chills. Positive urine culture is necessary for diagnosis.

Management
- Urine culture sensitivity is crucial to assure adequate antibiotic coverage.
- Workup should include CBC, electrolytes, creatinine, and liver function tests. Intravenous fluids. Approximately 15%–20% of pyelonephritis is complicated by bacteraemia; however, more research is needed to recommend routine collection of blood cultures [77].
- Usually inpatient treatment. Outpatient therapy can be considered for uncomplicated compliant women with pyelonephritis after IV ceftriaxone [78,79].
- Intravenous antibiotics for 24 to 48 hours or at least >24 hours afebrile:
  - Drug of choice:
    - Ceftriaxone 1 to 2 g every 24 hours [80,81]
• Alternatives:
  - Ancef 1 to 2 g every six to eight hours [79]
  - Ampicillin 1 to 2 g every six hours with gentamicin 1.5 mg/kg every eight hours
  - Trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole 160/800 mg every 12 hours
• If not afebrile within 48 hours with appropriate regimen or if recurrent pyelonephritis, consider renal ultrasound to rule out renal abscess.
• Once IV therapy completed, oral therapy for 10 to 14 days, followed by suppression and frequent urine cultures (see above) [82,83].

URINARY NEPHROLITHIASIS
Incidence
At least 1/1500 but may occur more commonly [84,85]. Up to 12% of the general population has had a urinary stone during their lifetime with recurrence rates approaching 50% [84]. Nephrolithiasis is also called renal calculi or stones. Given the low incidence, it is unclear if the occurrence of nephrolithiasis is or is not increased in pregnancy with some authors reporting an incidence as high as 1/200.

Risk Factors
More common in Caucasians, second and third trimester, right side [86], recurrent UTIs, gout, prior renal stones or renal disease, family history.

Complications
Possibly increased preterm birth and pyelonephritis [87].

Diagnosis
A typical presentation for renal colic includes nausea, vomiting, hematuria, and flank or abdominal pain. Urinalysis may reveal hematuria, as well as pyuria in up to 42% of patients [88,89]. The best imaging technique in the nonpregnant adult is an unenhanced helical CT scan of the abdomen and pelvis, which has 96% sensitivity and 100% specificity [84]. If CT is unavailable, plain abdominal X-ray should be performed because 75% to 90% of urinary stones are radiopaque. Ultrasonography has a sensitivity of only 11% to 24% with >90% specificity in nonpregnant adults, but because of a sensitivity of about 67% in pregnancy, it is currently the first-line screening test in pregnancy. Doppler ultrasound has been shown to be somewhat useful in distinguishing ureteral obstruction from physiologic hydronephrosis. A difference of >0.04 in the resistive indices of the obstructed and normal kidneys can be used to predict obstruction. In addition, comparison of bilateral ureteral jets on ultrasound can be helpful [90]. If initially the ultrasound is negative, an MRU (magnetic resonance urography) [91] should be considered or, if unavailable, X-ray second and CT third. Renal stones are poorly visualized by MRI alone. It is important to know that mild-to-moderate hydronephrosis is physiologic in pregnancy and is usually worse on the right kidney.

Management
Composition, location, and size of stone should be assessed. Up to 64% to 70% of women can pass stones spontaneously during pregnancy and an additional 50% of the remaining pass the stones in the postpartum period [89]. Most patients with stones will not require intervention; therefore, conservative management with hydration and pain control is the typical first-line management. There are no trials in pregnancy or even in nonpregnant adults. Ketorolac and diclofenac appear to be as effective as narcotics. All can be used acutely intravenously.

Usually increases in fluids and movement are used as initial interventions in pregnancy as well as nonpregnant adults. More than 70% of stones in pregnancy resolve with conservative management. A urinary stone seen by ultrasound (or CT) but not X-ray is probably a uric acid stone; 20 mmol of potassium citrate orally two to three times daily (aim to alkalinate urine to pH 6.5–7.0) can be effective medical therapy for dissolution of this type of stone. Urgent intervention is indicated with obstruction, infected upper urinary tract, impending renal deterioration, intractable pain or vomiting, anuria, or high-grade obstruction of a solitary or transplanted kidney.

If conservative therapy fails, insertion of stents is a safe intervention in pregnancy. Double pigtail stent insertion may be more effective (100%) and have a lower failure rate than conservative management (80% success) but a higher discomfort rate [11]. Fetal risk is low for stent placement. Percutaneous nephrostomy is needed only rarely but is safe in pregnancy. Ureteroscopy has also been shown to be safe and effective in pregnancy with complication rates similar to the nonpregnant patient [84,85]. Shock wave lithotripsy is considered first-line therapy for proximal ureteral stones <1 cm in nonpregnant adults but is seldom used in pregnancy. Even if inadvertent lithotripsy is performed in pregnancy, it is not a cause for concern [89,92].

PREVENTION OF URINARY INCONTINENCE
Incidence
Urinary incontinence has been reported to occur in 5% to 40% of pregnant and postpartum women.

Prevention
Pelvic floor exercises during pregnancy decrease the incidence of urinary incontinence in the third trimester and postpartum up to six months after birth [93–95]. Pelvic floor muscle strength is also significantly higher. Group training with a physiotherapist for 60 minutes once per week and twice daily at home for a period of 12 weeks between 20 and 36 weeks holding the pelvic floor muscle contraction six to eight seconds each time (for ~10 times) with rest periods of six seconds is one accepted and effective intervention [95]. Pelvic floor muscle training after childbirth is effective in prevention and treatment of urinary incontinence [96–100].

POSTPARTUM URINARY RETENTION
Definition
Absence of spontaneous micturition six hours post vaginal delivery or six hours after catheter removal (after cesarean delivery). A residual <50 mL is normal and >200 mL is abnormal [101].

Incidence
0.2% to 3% [102].
Risk Factors
Nulliparity, prolonged stages of labor, epidural anesthesia, operative or cesarean delivery.

Management
There are no trials to assess any intervention. Oral analgesia, standing and walking, warm bath, and/or immersing hands in cold water may help. If bladder volume by ultrasound <400 mL, wait; if >400 mL, intermittent catheterization every four to six hours until the woman is able to void and then the first residual volume is <150 mL is usually recommended and preferable to indwelling catheterization. Pharmacologic treatment should be avoided. If the woman still has retention upon discharge and/or after 48 hours, self-catheterization should be taught. Prophylactic antibiotics are indicated in women who require catheterization. There are no clear long-term sequelae of postpartum urinary retention. Complete resolution of voiding dysfunction is expected within 28 days with no increased risk for long-term voiding abnormalities. Higher post-void residual volumes at 72 hours after delivery are predictive of a longer time to full recovery [102].

Microscopic Hematuria in Pregnancy

Definition
Microscopic hematuria: 5–10 red blood cells per high power field in a spun catheterized specimen.

Incidence
3% during pregnancy, 2%–16% in nonpregnant population [103]

Differential Diagnosis
Pseudohematuria may be present from excessive consumption of beets, berries, rhubarb, or food coloring as well as certain laxatives and medications.

- Acute Renal Disease: Hematuria may be sole presentation; differential diagnosis includes HELLP syndrome, hemolytic uremic syndrome, thrombotic thrombocytopenic purpura, preeclampsia with severe features, renal cortical necrosis, acute pyelonephritis, acute fatty liver of pregnancy, or urinary tract obstruction [103].
- Chronic renal disease: As discussed earlier.
- Infectious renal disease: Pyelonephritis, cystitis, urethritis.
- Trauma in Pregnancy: Hematuria may be the presenting sign in a pregnant patient who is a victim of domestic violence.
- Placental Pathology: If the placenta invades the bladder (placenta percreta), hematuria may result.
- Uncommon causes of hematuria in pregnancy: Youssef syndrome (vesicouterine fistula), hydatidiform mole (either with malignancy or renal failure), hemangiomomas, arteriovenous malformations, renal vein thrombosis, nutcracker syndrome (compression of left renal vein leading to increased pressure gradient and hematuria).

Risk Factors for Significant Disease [101]

- Age >40 years
- Smoking history
- History of gross hematuria
- Occupational exposure to chemicals or dyes (benzenes or aromatic amines)
- Previous urologic disease (e.g., chronic cystitis or bacterial infections)
- History of irritative voiding symptoms
- Analgesic abuse
- History of pelvic irradiation
- Cyclophosphamide exposure

Management
- Repeat dipstick; if negative, no need for further workup.
- Evaluate for vaginal bleeding possibly contaminating urine specimen.
- Send for microscopy; if abnormal casts or dysmorphic RBCs, consider nephrology consultation for glomerular etiology.
- Urine culture; if positive, treat with appropriate antibiotics.
- Urine cytology; if positive, cystoscopy and referral.
- Obtain renal ultrasound to look for pathological basis for hematuria.
- Renal biopsy reserved for sudden deterioration of renal function, relatively safe in pregnancy.

References


64. Merlob P, Stahl B, Klinger G. Tetradra of the possible mycopha


KEY POINTS

- **Most causes of headache in pregnancy** are not due to omenous causes but to migraine or tension-type headache.
- **Migraines affect up to 18% of pregnant women**; this condition frequently is diagnosed before pregnancy.
- **New-onset headache in pregnancy** requires a thorough neurological evaluation that may include neuroradio-graphic studies and/or cerebrospinal fluid (CSF) analysis.
- Some worrisome disorders that cause headache occur more commonly in pregnant women. These include subarachnoid hemorrhage, stroke, pituitary tumor or apoplexy, and cerebral venous thrombosis.
- **Education about avoiding specific foods, caffeine, and alcohol triggers** for migraine may reduce the need for both preventive and acute medications. Pregnant patients with headache should avoid skipping meals, optimize sleep and exercise habits, and consider yoga, meditation, or biofeedback as an adjunctive migraine preventive modality.
- **Certain acute and preventive medication can be used** with caution in pregnancy; most are not absolutely contraindicated.
- **Most patients with migraine without aura** and many with migraine with aura **improve during pregnancy**, particularly during the second and third trimesters.
- Patients who are unknowingly pregnant and who have taken medications in the nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory class or the triptan class early in pregnancy can be reassured that drugs of these classes have not been shown to increase the incidence of teratogenicity.
- **For acute treatment** of primary headache, acetaminophen alone (preferably) or with codeine (for refractory headache) should be the first choice during all trimesters. Naproxen and ibuprofen are safe and well tolerated in pregnancy but should be avoided after 28 weeks. Severe unremitting migraine responds well to parenteral antiemetics, such as metoclopramide and prochlorperazine. Propranolol or metoprolol can be considered as a prophylactic medication for the pregnant patient whose headache frequency requires daily preventive medication, and for whom nonpharmacologic approaches to headache prophylaxis have failed.

BACKGROUND/EPIDEMIOLOGY

The relationship between headache and pregnancy is of concern for two reasons: First, primary headache disorders (migraine or tension-type headaches) are far more common in women than men, and the impact of headache in women is directly affected by reproductive life events. One-year migraine prevalence is 18% in women in the United States. It has a peak incidence following menarche in young girls, is most prevalent in the reproductive age of 20 to 50, is commonly exacerbated by menses, influenced by hormonal contraception and replacement therapy, and is often improved following menopause. Migraine, particularly migraine without aura, generally improves with pregnancy and worsens in the postpartum period.

Pregnancy has been a common exclusion criterion for controlled clinical trials. Therefore, data on the safety of drugs used for primary headache types in pregnant women, such as migraine and tension-type headache, are scant. Yet, in a survey of drug utilization by the World Health Organization, 68% of pregnant women took some form of medication.

Clinicians should be particularly vigilant regarding secondary headaches associated with pregnancy, such as stroke, cerebral venous thrombosis, pituitary apoplexy, and posterior reversible encephalopathy associated with eclampsia [1].

DIAGNOSIS

Diagnostic criteria as per the International Headache Society are shown in Table 18.1 [2].

**Diagnostic Considerations for Headache in Pregnancy**

Some secondary causes of headache (because of another, often ominous, disorder):

- Cortical venous thrombosis or cranial sinus thrombosis
- Subarachnoid hemorrhage
- Preeclampsia or eclampsia associated with elevated blood pressure (associated with reversible cerebral vasocostriction syndrome [RCVS])
- Stroke
- Idiopathic intracranial hypertension (pseudotumor cerebri)
- Pituitary tumor and pituitary apoplexy
- Headache associated with trauma to the head or neck or to infection or disease of the meninges, sinuses, eyes, or ears

Some primary causes of headache:

- Migraine with and without aura
- Tension-type headache
- Trigeminal autonomic cephalgias (cluster headache)
- Cough headache

Red flags suggesting a secondary (ominous) headache:

- Sudden-onset (thunderclap) headache
- Secondary risk factors (HIV, systemic cancer)
- Headache associated with systemic symptoms (fever, weight loss, meningeal signs, papilledema) or focal
pregnancy, but a first migraine can occur, typically in the tension-type headache. Migraine usually improves during women (approximately 40%) suffer from episodic or chronic undiagnosed. It is estimated that an even greater number of migraine and 6% of men had a In the past year, 18% of women EPIDEMIOLOGY/PATHOPHYSIOLOGY

• Tension-type headache
• Migraine with Aura
• Migraine without Aura

Table 18.1 International Headache Society Criteria for the Diagnosis of Migraine

Migraine without Aura
A. At least five attacks fulfilling criteria B–D
B. Headache duration of 4–72 hours (untreated or unsuccessfully treated)
C. Headache with at least two of the following:
   a. Unilateral location
   b. Pulsatile quality
   c. Moderate or severe pain intensity
d. Aggravation by routine physical activity
D. During headache at least one of the following:
   a. Nausea and/or vomiting
   b. Photophobia and phonophobia
E. Not better accounted for by another diagnosis

Migraine with Aura
A. At least two attacks fulfilling criteria B and C
B. One or more of the following fully reversible aura symptoms:
   1. Visual
   2. Sensory
   3. Speech and/or language
   4. Motor
   5. Brainstem
   6. Retinal
C. At least two of the following four characteristics:
   1. At least one aura symptom spreads gradually over ≥5 minutes and/or two or more symptoms occur in succession
   2. Each individual aura symptom lasts 5–60 minutes
   3. At least one aura symptom is unilateral
   4. The aura is accompanied or followed within 60 minutes, by headache
D. Not better accounted for by another diagnosis, and transient ischemic attack has been excluded

Tension-type headache
A. At least 10 episodes occurring on <1 day/month on average and fulfilling criteria B–D
B. Headache lasting from 30 minutes to 7 days
C. Headache that has at least two of the following characteristics:
   1. Bilateral location
   2. Pressing/tightening (nonpulsatile) quality
   3. Mild or moderate intensity
   4. Not aggravated by routine physical activity
D. Both of the following:
   1. No nausea or vomiting
   2. No more than one of photophobia or phonophobia
E. Not better accounted for another diagnosis

Source: Adapted from International Headache Society. Cephalalgia, 33, 9, 629–808, 2013.

neurologic signs (confusion, impaired alertness, or incoordination)
• New, different, or progressively worsening headache
• Positional headache that occurs only in the upright posture and is relieved with recumbency (CSF leak)

GENETICS
Migraine is a group of familial disorders with a genetic component. Familial hemiplegic migraine (FHM) is a group of autosomal dominant disorders associated with attacks of migraine, with and without aura, and hemiparesis [5]. FHM1 accounts for approximately two thirds of cases and is due to at least 10 different missense mutations in the CACNA1A gene, which codes for the α1-subunit of a voltage dependent P/Q Ca2+ channel. FHM2 results from a new mutation in the α2-subunit of the Na/K pump. FHM3 is due to a missense mutation in gene SCN1A (Gln489Lys), which encodes an α1-subunit of a neuronal voltage-gated Na+ channel (Na1.1).

PREGNANCY CONSIDERATIONS
Effect of Pregnancy on the Disorder
Several retrospective studies of the course of migraine in pregnancy have been performed [6]. Most women with migraine improve during pregnancy, women without aura more commonly than women with aura, generally by the second and third trimesters. Women whose migraines
began during the menarche and those with menstruation-associated migraine are more likely to have headaches recede during pregnancy [1]. Large prospective trials are now available. The MIGRA study prospectively reviewed headache and migraine during pregnancy and puerperium. More than 2000 pregnant women with headache participated, with 208 fulfilling IHS criteria for a diagnosis of migraine. There was a significant decrease in the frequency of migraine during pregnancy, specifically during the second and third trimesters [7].

Effect of the Disorder on Pregnancy

Patients with migraine were not believed to have an increased incidence of teratogenicity, toxemia, stillbirths, or miscarriage compared with controls [8]. A recent study from Taiwan found that, compared with unaffected mothers, women with migraines were at increased risk of having low-birth-weight preterm babies, preeclampsia, and delivery by caesarean [9]. A prospective cohort study in Italy found that migraine was a risk factor for subsequent development of hypertensive disorders during pregnancy although there were no significant associations with low birth weight, fetal loss, or premature delivery [10].

MANAGEMENT

Evaluation of Headache in Pregnancy

Headache in pregnancy should be evaluated in the same manner as any other time with the awareness of specific disorders that are more frequent or only occur with pregnancy. The clinician should be alert to the warning signs of ominous headache. Certain conditions that cause worrisome headache are more common in pregnancy. Headache that presents in a sudden (thunderclap) fashion may indicate subarachnoid hemorrhage, particularly if associated with a change in consciousness or focal neurologic signs. Sudden headache can also accompany preeclampsia (consider RCVS) or pituitary apoplexy. Venous or sinus thrombosis, associated with the puerperium, can present with seizure, precipitous change in consciousness or focal neurologic signs. Sudden subarachnoid hemorrhage, particularly if associated with a miscarriage, may be delayed until CT of the brain without contrast is obtained to avoid the risk of herniation if a mass or cerebral edema is suspected.

Whether or not to obtain a CT or an MRI as part of the evaluation of headache in pregnancy depends on the degree of suspicion for an ominous cause of headache. Generally speaking, head CT and MRI are safe in pregnancy although the decision to obtain the study should be based on the risk of missing a structural or serious cause of headache without the study. Gadolinium, used as a contrast agent for MRI scanning, does cross the placenta [11]. However, if an intracerebral bleed, mass lesion, or meningitis is suspected, the benefit of CT, MRI, or MRA far outweighs the potential risks, including the risk of gadolinium. Gadolinium was deemed safe by the European Society of Radiology as after gadolinium contrast media no effect on the fetus has been reported in the literature [12]. Lumbar puncture to diagnose meningitis or hemorrhage may be delayed until CT of the brain without contrast is obtained to avoid the risk of herniation if a mass or cerebral edema is suspected.

Acute Therapy for Headache

Acute migraine treatments in nonpregnant women include, among others, simple analgesics (acetaminophen, aspirin), nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs), opioids, ergot alkaloids, isometheptene caffeine-barbiturate combinations, and triptans (Table 18.2).

Migraine typically improves as pregnancy progresses. However, in the first trimester, when headache often worsens, concern arises as to the potential effect of acute medication on embryogenesis. The situation is particularly poignant as many women, unknowingly pregnant, will have used acute medications to treat migraine or tension-type headache in the very early days or weeks after conception.

Acetaminophen is the drug most commonly taken during pregnancy. There is no evidence of any teratogenic effect (FDA B). Concerns regarding the safety of aspirin arose from early data when used at therapeutic doses for analgesic or antipyretic purposes. These concerns do not appear to apply to low-dose (60–100 mg/day) aspirin (FDA C; D if third trimester). Although aspirin is labeled category C, aspirin is unique in that there are clinical trials that studied aspirin during pregnancy for conditions other than headache, for example, in patients with antiphospholipid antibody

Table 18.2 Proposed Management of Primary Headache in Pregnancy

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nonpharmacologic methods: Optimize sleep, nutrition, exercise, Education, counseling, reassurance</th>
<th>Recommended for all pregnant women</th>
<th>Ideally should be discussed as preconception planning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Analgesic</td>
<td>FDA Cat*</td>
<td>Before 28 Weeks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acetaminophen</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>First line</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ibuprofen</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>Ibuprofen used more commonly, naproxen also consider low risk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Naproxen</td>
<td>B</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Antiemetic</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Metoclopramide</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>Antiemetic class generally safe, effective for nausea and migraine pain, can be given intravenously and in combination with an appropriate analgesic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Promethazine</td>
<td>C</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prochlorperazine</td>
<td>C</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Opioid</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Meperidine</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>Recommend short opiate courses to prevent medication over use headache</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Codeine</td>
<td>C</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Morphine</td>
<td>C</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Others</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Caffeine</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>May be combined appropriate analgesic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prednisone</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>Recommend short courses of steroids, limit to three- to six-day courses to reduce risk of fetal side effects</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dexamethasone</td>
<td>C</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*US Food and Drug Administration Pregnancy Category.
syndrome [13]. Recommended dosing of aspirin is high, at 500 to 1000 mg per attack [8]. Other category B drugs (no evidence of risk in humans but without controlled human studies) include ibuprofen and naproxen in the first two trimesters only; NSAIDs are considered category D during the last trimester due to risk of premature ductus arteriosus closure and neonatal pulmonary hypertension [14]. Caffeine is a category C drug and may be used alone or in combination with NSAID or acetaminophen, depending on the gestational age. The caffeine content of one cup of drip coffee is approximately 100 mg [15]; consumption of up to 200 mg of caffeine a day is generally considered low risk during pregnancy [16,17].

Meperidine (FDA B), codeine (FDA C), and morphine (FDA C) may be used with the caveat that chronic use, particularly during late pregnancy, can result in neonatal withdrawal syndromes [1]. Prednisone or dexamethasone may be used for intractable migraine although chronic exposure can result in fetal adrenal suppression and other complications [1].

Ergotamine and dihydroergotamine are category X and should be avoided in pregnant women. Ergots are abortifacients and have been shown to cause fetal distress and birth defects.

Antiemetic medicines, such as metoclopramide (FDA B), promethazine (FDA C), and prochlorperazine (FDA C), are effective parenterally for the head pain itself in addition to the nausea and vomiting that can accompany migraine. These are generally considered safe for use during pregnancy. Intravenous or intramuscular antiemetics, with fluid replacement, are effective in aborting status migrainosus or severe headache in the emergency room or urgent care center.

The triptans are 5-HT1B/1D receptor agonists effective in treating migraine headache and the accompanying symptoms of photosensitivity, nausea, and vomiting. The data obtained from 12 years of prospective monitoring of pregnancies exposed to sumatriptan and naratriptan failed to show a signal for a substantial increase in the risk of all major birth defects. However, the size of the registry is currently insufficient to evaluate the risk of specific defects or to permit definitive conclusions of the risks associated with sumatriptan or naratriptan [18]. The triptan class is category C and is not recommended for pregnant migraineurs. Nevertheless, on the basis of the pregnancy registry, if a patient has unwittingly taken sumatriptan prior to knowledge of her pregnancy, reassurance is appropriate given the lack of teratogenicity of this drug. It is not known whether this positive outcome may also be extrapolated to other medications in the triptan class.

Headache Prophylaxis in Pregnancy
Clinicians should be encouraged to treat headaches in early pregnancy with acute medications such as acetaminophen or low doses of codeine. Preventive therapy should be reserved for women whose headaches continue to worsen throughout pregnancy. There are no prospective randomized clinical trials of migraine prophylactic drugs in pregnant women. Nonpharmacologic therapies should be initiated first. Relaxation training and thermal biofeedback, combined with relaxation techniques and cognitive behavioral therapies, have been subjected to rigorous, well-designed, randomized clinical trials and show efficacy in migraine prevention [19]. In contradistinction, evidence based therapy recommendations for acupuncture, hypnosis, and chiropractic manipulation for headache prevention are not yet available.

Whenever a second comorbid condition exists with migraine, it is advisable to use one drug to treat both conditions. Examples include migraine and epilepsy, wherein an anticonvulsant may be effective to treat both conditions, and migraine and depression, for which a selective serotonin reuptake inhibitor (SSRI), such as fluoxetine (category B), may similarly permit monotherapy.

Propranolol or metoprolol are the drugs of choice as headache preventive during pregnancy [1]. Verapamil (calcium channel blocker) may also be beneficial [20]. Valproic acid should be avoided for headache prophylaxis because of its potential for causing neural tube defects. The use of topiramate and gabapentin should be restricted for headache prophylaxis in view of their potential association with fetal defects although these drugs can be very effective for non-pregnant migraineurs.

Education about avoiding specific foods, caffeine, and alcohol triggers for migraine may reduce reliance on both preventive and acute medications. Pregnant patients with headache should avoid skipping meals, optimize sleep and exercise habits, and consider meditation or yoga.

REFERENCES
nancy outcomes for woman with migraines: A nationwide
12. Webb J, Thomsen H, Morcos S. The use of iodinated and gado-
13. Vainio M, Kujansuu E, Iso-Mustajärvi M, Mäenpää J. Low dose acetylsalicylic acid in prevention of pregnancy-induced hyper-


Seizures
Sally Mathias and Meriem K. Bensalem-Owen

KEY POINTS

- **Epilepsy** is a chronic neurological condition characterized by recurrent unprovoked seizures. The most important diagnostic tool is the history.
- Approximately 0.3% to 0.5% of all pregnancies are among women with epilepsy.
- For the majority of the patients, seizure frequency remains unchanged during pregnancy. Status epilepticus is rare during pregnancy.
- Fetal loss, perinatal death, congenital anomalies (4%–8% or about twice the baseline risk), low birth weight, prematurity, induction, developmental delay, and childhood epilepsy have been reported in the past to be more frequent, but more recent data do not confirm an increase in these complications.
- **Supplemental folic acid** (0.4 up to 4 mg daily, usually 2–4 mg) may be given to all women of childbearing age taking antiepileptic drugs (AEDs) prior to conception and continued during pregnancy. There is insufficient published information to address the dosing of folic acid.
- **Counsel** women with seizures or epilepsy about the risk of AED-associated teratogenicity and neurodevelopmental delay, folic acid supplementation, possible changes in seizure frequency during pregnancy, importance of medication compliance and AED level monitoring, inheritance risks for seizures, and breast-feeding. Encourage enrollment in a pregnancy registry.
- In general, the best choice for therapy is the AED that best controls the seizures. Monotherapy at the lowest possible dose of the AED most efficient in controlling seizures should be the goal. All treatment decisions involve a discussion of benefits and harms of treatment options.
- **Carbamazepine**, phenobarbital, primidone, phenytoin, valproate, and topiramate are FDA category D drugs and should be avoided if possible.
- Optimize AED therapy and complete AED changes if possible at least six months before planned conception.
- Seizure freedom for at least nine months prior to pregnancy is probably associated with a high likelihood of remaining seizure-free during pregnancy.
- Stopping or changing an AED during pregnancy for the sole purpose of reducing teratogenicity is not advised.
- **Prenatal testing** should include first-trimester ultrasound, alpha-fetoprotein (AFP) levels, anatomy, and echocardiographic ultrasounds and, if needed, amniocentesis for amniotic fluid AFP and acetylcholinesterase.
- As pregnancy progresses, both total and nonprotein-bound plasma concentrations of some AEDs may decline.
- Monitor AED levels through the eighth postpartum week.
- There is insufficient evidence to support or refute a benefit of prenatal vitamin K supplementation for reducing the risk of hemorrhagic complications in the newborns of women with epilepsy.
- There is possibly a substantial increased risk of preterm birth for women with epilepsy who smoke.
- Encourage breast-feeding and monitor for sedation or feeding difficulties, which can be caused by certain AEDs, usually those with low protein binding.
- Emphasize that >90% of women with epilepsy have successful pregnancies and deliver healthy babies.

BACKGROUND

Recommendations and guidelines presented in this chapter are in large part based on the updated three companion Practice Parameters of the Quality Standards Subcommittee and Therapeutics and Technology Assessment Subcommittee of the American Academy of Neurology, American Epilepsy Society, and the updated Epilepsy Quality Measurement Set [1–4].

DIAGNOSES/DEFINITIONS

Seizures result from an abnormal paroxysmal discharge of a group of cerebral neurons. Epilepsy is a chronic neurological condition. Epilepsy is defined as at least two unprovoked (or reflex) seizures occurring greater than 24 hours apart or one unprovoked (or reflex) seizure and a probability of further seizures similar to the general recurrence risk after two unprovoked seizures, occurring over the next 10 years [5]. The most important diagnostic tool is the history. The examination is very often normal unless the patient has a structural brain lesion. The history should include the following information:

- The presence or absence of an aura, which is a recurrent stereotypic abnormal sensation or experience. The aura is a simple partial seizure or focal seizure without impairment of consciousness or awareness according to the newly proposed classification of seizures and epilepsies [6].
- Seizure description by an eyewitness, including duration.
- Postictal phase, description, and duration.
- Exacerbating factors.
- Birth history, especially when the seizure onset is in the neonatal period or early childhood.
- History of febrile convulsions, central nervous system infections, head trauma with loss of consciousness or known structural lesion in the brain.
- Family history.
Ancillary tests include EEG, laboratory tests as indicated by the history, and imaging of the brain. MRI of the head is more sensitive than CT scan for detecting subtle lesions. EEG poses no risk to the fetus, so workup for diagnosis should proceed in pregnancy just as in nonpregnant adults.

SYMPTOMS
In partial onset or focal seizures, some patients may experience a subjective feeling, called an aura. The particular site of the brain affected determines usually the symptomatology and/or the clinical expression of the seizure.

EPIDEMIOLOGY/INCIDENCE
Epilepsy occurs in 0.5% to 0.8% of the general population, with 5% of people reporting a seizure at some time in their life. Approximately one in 26 people will develop epilepsy at some point in their lives [7]. The prevalence of epilepsy in the United States indicates that approximately one half million women with epilepsy are of childbearing age. Approximately 0.3% to 0.5% of all pregnancies are among women with epilepsy [8].

ETIOLOGY/BASIC PATHOPHYSIOLOGY
Paroxysmal discharges of neurons occur when the threshold for firing of neuronal membranes is reduced. The pathophysiology of epileptic disorders is not very well understood. Structural abnormalities of neuronal transmitter receptors, channelopathies, excessive excitatory activity, cortical remodeling, and loss of inhibitory neuronal activity have all been implicated as possible mechanisms.

CLASSIFICATION
The International League Against Epilepsy (ILAE) proposed a new classification for seizures and epilepsies in 2010 [6]. Depending on their onset, seizures are classified as focal, generalized, or unknown. Focal seizures can be further subdivided into seizures with or without impairment of consciousness also known as simple partial or complex partial seizures (CPS). When awareness is preserved, the patient may either experience focal motor manifestations or experience a subjective feeling, called an aura. The prototype for generalized seizures is the generalized tonic clonic (GTC) seizure. Auras can be olfactory, gustatory, sensory, auditory, visual, vertiginous sensations, or psychic experiences (such as “deja vu”). Focal seizures with impairment of consciousness can evolve into bilateral convulsive seizure (also known as secondarily generalized seizure).

RISK FACTORS/ASSOCIATIONS
Risk factors for seizures are numerous and could include malformations of cortical development, head trauma, central nervous system infections, family history, complicated febrile convulsions, and possibly history of difficult birth (anoxia or trauma) or complicated (fetal infections and/or preterm birth) pregnancy.

COMPLICATIONS
Epileptic women of childbearing age should be informed of the risks associated with antiepileptic drug (AED) use prior to conception [3] and that seizures may be harmful to mother and fetus [4]. A recently published retrospective cohort study evaluated the effect of pregnancy planning in women with epilepsy on seizure control during pregnancy and on maternal and neonatal outcomes. Planned pregnancies had a significantly greater portion of patients receiving AED monotherapy and of not using valproic acid. This group also had a lower frequency of seizures during pregnancy as well as a significantly lower likelihood of altering their AED regimen during pregnancy [9].

Maternal Complications
The American Academy of Neurology (AAN) reviewed the scientific literature and published practice parameters in 2009, which stated that probably no substantially increased risk exists of cesarean delivery, late pregnancy bleeding, or preterm labor and delivery in women with epilepsy who are taking antiepileptic drugs [1–3]. There is insufficient evidence to support or refute an increased risk of preeclampsia, gestational hypertension, spontaneous abortion, a change in seizure frequency or an increased risk of status epilepticus in pregnant women with epilepsy. Only class IV studies could be found on this subject. On the basis of class II studies, seizure freedom for at least nine months prior to pregnancy is probably associated with a high likelihood (84%–92%) of remaining seizure-free during pregnancy. Women can injure themselves during convulsive seizures.

Fetal Complications
GTC seizures increase the risk of hypoxia and acidosis as well as injury from blunt trauma. Generalized seizures but not partial seizures occurring during labor can affect fetal heart rate. According to a recent study, women with epilepsy on AED therapy and experiencing more than one GTC seizure during pregnancy had an overall five times higher preterm birth risk, a shorter gestational age, and a reduced birth weight in boys [10]. Fetal loss (1.3%–14%) and perinatal death (1.3%–7.8%), congenital malformation anomalies (4%–8%, or about twice the baseline risk), low birth weight (7%–10%), preterm birth (4%–11%), induction, developmental delay, and childhood epilepsy can be associated with in utero exposure to AEDs. There is insufficient evidence to determine whether the risk of neonatal hemorrhagic complications in the newborns of women with epilepsy taking AEDs is substantially increased. Evidence is inadequate to determine whether prenatal vitamin K in women with epilepsy reduces the risk of hemorrhagic complications in the newborns.

Congenital malformations are more common among offspring of women on AEDs (5%) than among offspring of untreated patients (3%). Major congenital malformations include neural tube defects (NTDs), congenital heart disease, cleft lip/palate, and urogenital defects. Minor congenital malformations include coarse hair, epicanthal folds, small nail beds, and skin tags. Most common congenital malformations, which differ for different AEDs, are cardiac, neural tube, craniofacial, and involving the fingers. Epilepsy and pregnancy registries have been operational for approximately 15 years and were developed in order to better understand the risks of birth defects associated with AED treatment, and more importantly, to systematically study the range of birth defects resulting from use of each AED [11]. Two class I studies, including one from the U.K. Epilepsy and Pregnancy Registry, revealed that exposure
during the first trimester to valproic acid monotherapy is associated with a greater risk for major congenital malformations than carbamazepine monotherapy [12,13]. Valproic acid as part of polytherapy was associated with greater risk than polytherapy without valproic acid [12].

Data from the North American Antiepileptic Drug (NAAED) Pregnancy Registry indicate that the rate of major malformations is 9% with valproate [14], 6% with phenobarbital, 2% with lamotrigine, 2.2% with levetiracetam, 4.3% with topiramate, and 3.1% with carbamazepine. Valproic acid is associated with neural tube defects, oral clefts, hypospadias, poor cognitive outcome, and cardiac malformations. Exposure to phenytoin, carbamazepine, topiramate, and lamotrigine was associated with oral clefts. Avoidance of phenobarbital may reduce the risk of cardiac malformations.

**MANAGEMENT Principles**

*Effect of pregnancy on disease:* Increase in hepatic cytochrome P450 enzyme activity and renal clearance causes the concentration of some AEDs to fall. Decreased protein binding results in higher levels of unbound biologically active AEDs and may cause toxicity (Table 19.1). On the basis of current studies, there is insufficient evidence to support or refute an increased risk of a change in seizure frequency or status epilepticus during pregnancy.

**Preconception Counseling**

Also include in first prenatal visit the following:

a. Conception should be deferred until seizures are well controlled on a minimum dose of medication.

b. Monotherapy is preferable. Good compliance with AEDs is essential to avoid any seizures.

c. Inform women with epilepsy that infants exposed in utero to AED have a 4% to 8% risk of congenital malformation, most notably neural tube defects, cardiac, and craniofacial defects, compared to 2% to 3% for the general population. Epilepsy pregnancy registries have been operational for more than 15 years and have collected an

### Table 19.1 Pharmacokinetic Profile and Adverse Effects of the Most Commonly Used AEDs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>AEDs</th>
<th>Mechanism</th>
<th>Pregnancy Category</th>
<th>Protein Binding (%)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>First-generation AEDs</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phenytoin (Dilantin)</td>
<td>Na</td>
<td>D</td>
<td>90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carbamazepine (Tegretol)</td>
<td>Ca, GABA</td>
<td>D</td>
<td>75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Valproic acid (Depakote, Depakene)</td>
<td>Na, GABA</td>
<td>D</td>
<td>85–95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ethosuximide</td>
<td>T-type Ca</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Second- and third-generation AEDs</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gabapentin (Neurontin)</td>
<td>Ca</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pregabalin (Lyrica)</td>
<td>Ca</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lamotrigine (Lamotrigine)</td>
<td>Na, Glutamate</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Levetiracetam (Keppra)</td>
<td>SV2a</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oxcarbazepine (Oxcarbamazepine)</td>
<td>Na, Ca</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tiagabine (Gabitril)</td>
<td>GABA reuptake</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>96</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Topiramate (Topiramate)</td>
<td>Multiple</td>
<td>D</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zonisamide (Zonegran)</td>
<td>Na, T-Ca</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>40–60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lacosamide (Vimpat)</td>
<td>Na (slow inactivation)</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rufinamide (Banzel)</td>
<td>Na</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vigabatrin (Sabril)</td>
<td>GABA</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eslicarbazepine (Aptiom)</td>
<td>Na</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>&lt;40</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Adverse Effects**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>AEDs</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>First-generation AEDs</strong></td>
<td>Rash, ataxia, hirsutism, gingival hypertrophy, osteoporosis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phenytoin (Dilantin)</td>
<td>Rash, diplopia, sexual dysfunction, osteoporosis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carbamazepine (Tegretol)</td>
<td>Weight gain, tremor, hair loss, encephalopathy, hepatotoxicity, pancreatitis, polycystic ovaries</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Valproic acid (Depakote, Depakene)</td>
<td>Nausea, vomiting, anorexia, rash</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ethosuximide</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Second- and third-generation AEDs</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gabapentin (Neurontin)</td>
<td>Weight gain, edema, myoclonus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pregabalin (Lyrica)</td>
<td>Increased appetite, confusion, somnolence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lamotrigine (Lamotrigine)</td>
<td>Rash, aseptic meningitis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Levetiracetam (Keppra)</td>
<td>Behavioral changes, asthenia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oxcarbazepine (Oxcarbamazepine)</td>
<td>Hyponatremia, diplopia, rash</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tiagabine (Gabitril)</td>
<td>Encephalopathy, status epilepticus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Topiramate (Topiramate)</td>
<td>Renal stones, speech difficulties, paresthesias, weight loss, acidosis, closed-angle glaucoma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zonisamide (Zonegran)</td>
<td>Renal stones, weight loss, paresthesias, contraindicated if history of allergy to sulfonamide drugs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lacosamide (Vimpat)</td>
<td>Dizziness, nausea, vomiting, double vision</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rufinamide (Banzel)</td>
<td>Headaches, drowsiness, dizziness, vomiting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vigabatrin (Sabril)</td>
<td>Visual field loss, somnolence, headaches, dizziness</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eslicarbazepine (Aptiom)</td>
<td>Dizziness, disturbance in gait and coordination</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
impressive amount of data. Carbamazepine, phenobarbital, primidone, phenytoin, valproate, and topiramate are FDA category D drugs and should be avoided if possible at least in the first trimester. Recent pregnancy databases have suggested that valproate is significantly more teratogenic than carbamazepine, and the combination of valproate with lamotrigine and valproate with carbamazepine is particularly teratogenic [15]. If valproate is used, high plasma levels (>70 μg/mL) should be avoided unless necessary to control seizures, and the drug should be given in divided doses three or four times daily. To date, the most comprehensive prospective study of cognitive development reported IQ in children exposed to low dose of valproate comparable to IQ in children exposed to other antiepileptic drugs [16]. Lamotrigine has been associated with facial clefts; however, the lowest rates of MCMs were seen when lamotrigine dose was <300 mg/day [17].

d. Seizure freedom for at least nine months prior to pregnancy is probably associated with a high likelihood of remaining seizure-free during pregnancy.

e. Consider neurological consultation regarding the possibility of tapering off and stopping anticonvulsant medications if the patient has been seizure-free for greater than two years and has a normal EEG. The patient should be observed for six to 12 months off AED before attempting conception.

f. Preconception folic acid supplementation (usually 2–4 mg) may be considered to reduce the risk of major congenital malformations.

g. Driving privileges should be suspended for several months after a seizure; the exact length varies depending on the state [18].

h. Home/work: Avoid baths, take showers instead. Avoid manipulation of heavy machinery or working at heights [18].

i. Enzyme-inducing AEDs (Table 19.1) enhance the metabolism of oral contraceptives, therefore decreasing their efficacy. Pregnancies should be planned.

j. Emphasize that 90% of women with epilepsy have successful pregnancies and deliver healthy babies [19].

Prenatal Counseling
At the first prenatal visit and during pregnancy as necessary, counsel women with seizures or epilepsy regarding all of the above preconception issues. In addition, discuss the following:

* There is a possible change in seizure frequency during pregnancy. A recent prospective study found, however, that pregnancy does not appear to affect seizure frequency in women with epilepsy [20].

* Although no AED is specifically indicated for use in pregnant women, the AED that renders the patient seizure-free and side effect-free should be the drug of choice during pregnancy.

* The risk-to-benefit ratio must be considered when selecting a drug.

* There is a risk of AED-associated teratogenicity and neurodevelopmental delay.

* Importance of medication compliance and AED level monitoring during pregnancy. AED levels decline due to enhanced AED hepatic metabolism, changes in volume distribution, and increase in glomerular filtration rate, which leads to increased renal clearance and decreased protein binding. Therefore, levels should be measured on highly protein bound AEDs (Table 19.1).

* In a retrospective population-based study, a tenfold increase in mortality was noted in pregnancy in women with epilepsy compared to women without epilepsy. Etiology for mortality was not found, thus leaving many questions answered. Most of these deaths were Sudden Unexpected Death in Epilepsy (SUDEP) demonstrating the importance of complete seizure control and a heighten ed clinical attention for these pregnancies [21,22].

* Breast-feeding issues (see below).

* Inheritance risks for seizures.

* Child care issues [23].

* Educate patients about various pregnancy registries and encourage enrollment in a registry. The goal of any registry is to gather and publish information on the rate of major malformations in infants whose mothers had taken AEDs during pregnancy and to determine the safety of seizure medications. The North American Anti-Epileptic Drug Pregnancy Registry enrolls pregnant women with epilepsy from the United States and Canada (http://www.aedpregnancyregistry.org). Likewise, every region has its own pregnancy registry, and newer AED manufacturers have a registry of their own.

Prenatal Care

* Supplemental folic acid (usually 2–4 mg/day) in women with epilepsy before they become pregnant is generally recommended to reduce the risk of major congenital malformations.

* A first-trimester ultrasound is indicated for exact dating. Anatomic ultrasound at 11 to 13 weeks can identify most severe defects, such as anencephaly.

* Prenatal testing for neural tube defects with alpha-fetoprotein levels at 15 to 18 weeks gestation (up to 21 weeks).

* If appropriate, amniocentesis for amniotic fluid alpha-fetoprotein and acetylcholinesterase levels.

* Ultrasound at 16 to 20 weeks gestation can assess anatomic anomalies, such as orofacial clefts, heart defects, and caudal neural tube defects.

* Fetal echocardiogram at about 22 weeks.

* An ultrasound for growth at >32 weeks is not mandatory. Neonates should receive vitamin K, 1 mg IM at birth. The benefit of prenatal maternal vitamin K therapy is unknown with no trial available for assessment.

THERAPY (TABLE 19.1)

* Multidisciplinary communication between the primary care provider, obstetrician, geneticist, and neurologist/epileptologist for counseling and management of seizures and epilepsy during pregnancy is crucial.

* There is no trial that indicates which AED is safest during pregnancy. The best choice is the AED that best controls the seizures. All the AEDs are FDA category C except for the following AEDs that are category D: carbamazepine, phenobarbital, primidone, phenytoin, valproate, and
topiramate (Table 19.1). These six AEDs should therefore be avoided if possible by using a different therapy beginning in the preconception period. Switching and abruptly stopping of AEDs are to be avoided.

- Regarding AED therapy, at the beginning of pregnancy it is recommended that the patient is on monotherapy with the AED of choice for the seizure type, achieving optimal seizure control at the lowest effective dose.

- Monitoring the serum levels of lamotrigine, carbamazepine, and phenytoin during pregnancy should be considered, and monitoring of levetiracetam and oxcarbazepine (as monohydroxy derivative) levels may be considered. Free levels (serum or saliva) are available for carbamazepine, valproic acid, phenobarbital, and phenytoin. Avoid high peak levels by spreading out the total daily dose into multiple smaller doses. Studies provide some evidence supporting active monitoring of AED levels during pregnancy, particularly of lamotrigine, as changes in lamotrigine levels were associated with increased seizure frequency [24]. It seems reasonable to individualize this monitoring for each patient with the aim of maintaining a level close to preconception level, presumably the one at which the woman with epilepsy was doing well with seizure control. One study showed that during pregnancy the clearance of lamotrigine increases with a peak of 94% in the third trimester; hence, frequent adjustments of the dose are required during pregnancy [19].

- AEDs have effects on sodium, potassium, or calcium channels. They also can affect neurotransmitters enhancing the inhibitory neurotransmitter, GABA, or inhibiting the excitatory glutamate.


### DELIVERY

AED medication should be continued in labor and in the immediate postpartum period. Women should be encouraged to bring their own AEDs to the delivery, and medications should be taken at their usual times during labor [25]. Consider intravenous formulations of AEDs if these cannot be taken orally. A recent study found that women with epilepsy on polytherapy versus monotherapy had an increased risk of cesarean section [26]. There is possibly a substantial increased risk of preterm birth or women with epilepsy who smoke [27].

### POSTPARTUM/BREAST-FEEDING

Breast-feeding is not contraindicated. The greater the protein binding of the AED (Table 19.1), the lower is its concentration in breast milk. Breast-feeding is not contraindicated in patients on anticonvulsant medications unless excess neonatal sedation occurs. Monitor newborns or infants for sedation when breast-feeding mothers with seizures take low-protein-bound AEDs. The AED concentration profiled in breast milk follows the plasma concentration curve. The total amount of drug transferred to infants via breast milk is usually much smaller than the amount transferred via the placenta during pregnancy. However, as drug elimination mechanisms are not fully developed in early infancy, repeated administration of a drug via breast milk may lead to accumulation in the infant. Extended release formulations of AEDs should be avoided. It appears that there are no adverse effects of AED exposure via breast milk on cognition and development observed at three years and six years [28].

Valproic acid, phenobarbital, phenytoin, and carbamazepine may be considered as not transferring into breast milk to as great an extent as, for example, levetiracetam, gabapentin, lamotrigine, and topiramate.

For most AEDs, the pharmacokinetics in the mother will return to preconception levels within 10 to 14 days after delivery. Monitor AED levels through the eighth postpartum week and adjust doses accordingly to avoid toxicity. Sleep deprivation may exacerbate seizures, and should therefore be avoided. Women with epilepsy should not bathe their child while they are alone at home and should avoid stair climbing while carrying the baby; a portable changing pad placed on the floor should be used. New mothers should avoid using a carrier in front or on their back. A portable carrier with handles is a safer alternative in the event of a seizure and subsequent fall [23]. Because enzyme-inducing AEDs (Table 19.1) lower estrogen concentrations by 40% to 50%, thereby compromising contraceptive effectiveness, hormonal contraceptives prescribed to women with epilepsy on these AEDs should contain ≤50 μg of ethinyl estradiol [29]. Oral contraceptives induce lamotrigine metabolism, requiring adjustment of its dose [30].

### REFERENCES


Spinal cord injury
Megan Gooding and Leonardo Pereira

KEY POINTS
• Spinal cord injury (SCI) in pregnant women is associated with increased risks of urinary tract infections, preterm birth, and anemia. The most worrisome, potentially fatal complication is autonomic dysreflexia (ADR).
• Antenatal management of women with preexisting SCI includes frequent urinary cultures or antibiotic suppression, stool softeners and a high-fiber diet, routine skin exams, and frequent position changes. In women with lesions above the level of T5, baseline and serial pulmonary function tests can be used to assess vital capacity. There is insufficient data at this time to recommend universal thromboprophylaxis.
• ADR affects up to 85% of women with lesions at or above the level of T6. The most common sign of ADR is systemic hypertension. Symptoms are synchronous with uterine contractions. Prevention involves avoidance of triggers (constipation, catheterization, exams, etc.) and early epidural anesthesia. Antihypertensive therapy for ADR includes nitroprusside, amyl nitrate, trimethaphan, and hydralazine.
• Several prophylactic procedures are necessary for labor and delivery in the SCI woman. Among these, continuous hemodynamic monitoring during labor by maternal electrocardiogram, pulse oximetry, and arterial line should be performed in patients with baseline pulmonary insufficiency.

DIAGNOSIS/DEFINITION
Spinal cord injury (SCI) is diagnosed neurologically. It can occur following trauma to the spinal cord and also because of a variety of pathologies (e.g., neural tube defect, congenital, transverse myelitis, etc.).

EPIDEMIOLOGY/INCIDENCE
About 12,000 new spinal cord injuries per year occur in women of childbearing age in the United States, and each year, about 2000 women with SCI will become pregnant [1]. SCI diagnosed during pregnancy is rare. SCI preexisting pregnancy is relatively more common.

CLASSIFICATION
SCI is classified by its etiology and, especially, by the level of the lesion. The higher the functional level of the lesion, the worse the disease and prognosis.

Complications (for women with preexisting SCI): Asymptomatic bacteriuria, lower urinary tract infections (up to 35% incidence) [2], and pyelonephritis are common. The risk of preterm birth is between 8% and 13% [2-5]. Anemia can occur in 12% of women with SCI, especially with history of chronic pyelonephritis, decubitus, and/or renal failure. The most worrisome, potential fatal complication is autonomic dysreflexia (ADR).

PREGNANCY MANAGEMENT
Preconception Counseling
Women with preexisting SCI who are contemplating pregnancy should be referred for preconception counseling. If the spinal cord lesion is congenital or hereditary in origin then genetic counseling is warranted. Women with congenital spinal lesions, such as meningomyelocle, should be made aware of the increased risk of spinal cord lesions to their offspring and placed on 4 mg/day of folic acid [6]. All other SCI women should take at least 400 mg of folic acid preconception. Women with Klippel–Trenaunay or von Hippel–Lindau syndromes are at risk for epidural or subdural hemangiomas and should undergo MRI to determine the safety of neuraxial anesthesia [7].

Patients with preexisting SCI are probably at no greater risk than the general obstetric population for either congenital malformations or fetal death [8]. In contrast to patients with SCI antecedent to pregnancy, patients who suffer traumatic SCI during pregnancy may be at risk for spontaneous abortion, fetal malformation, abruptio placenta, or direct fetal injury [9]. A fetal malformation rate of 11% has been reported in 45 patients who suffered spinal cord injuries during pregnancy [8].

Prenatal Care
Acute SCI during Pregnancy
Acute SCI results in neurogenic shock or “spinal shock” because of the loss of sympathetic innervation. This typically presents with hypotension, bradycardia, and hypothermia because of parasympathetic effects. Adequate volume resuscitation and pressor support should be administered. Direct measurements of pulmonary capillary wedge pressure with a pulmonary artery catheter will assist clinical management. Internal hemorrhage should be identified and treated with the aid of a trauma surgeon if possible.

In the setting of acute SCI, initial stabilization of the neck and spinal column should occur immediately and airway patency secured. This may require a jaw thrust maneuver, nasal trumpet, or nasal intubation. Administration of methyl-prednisolone within eight hours of SCI may improve neurologic recovery in select cases [10]. The risk of deep venous thrombosis and pulmonary embolism is greatest within eight weeks of traumatic SCI [11]. Prophylactic anticoagulation should be considered during this period.

In rare cases, acute SCI may result from acute hemorrhage, malignancy, or aggressive hemangiomas. In those
cases, embolization or decompressive surgery may be necessary during pregnancy [7,12].

**Antenatal Management of Preexisting SCI**  
**Urinary.** Recurrent UTIs and or sepsis are common complications of SCI. Frequent urinary cultures or antibiotic suppression with nitrofurantoin should be considered [13–15] although there is a paucity of data to guide optimal genitourinary care in pregnancy [16]. Continuous indwelling catheterization appears to have a near 100% incidence of UTI in SCI patients, so self, intermittent catheterization every four to six hours may be preferable.

**Gastrointestinal.** Stool softeners and a high-fiber diet to prevent constipation.

**Dermatology.** Routine skin exams for any evidence of decubitus ulcers at each visit and frequent position changes. Wheelchairs may need to be resized or fitted with extra padding. Supplemental Vitamin D (2000 IU daily) is recommended [17].

**Pulmonary.** In patients with high thoracic or cervical spine lesions, usually above the level of T5, baseline and serial pulmonary function tests to assess vital capacity (VC), and especially if VC <13 mL/kg, possible need for ventilatory assistance in labor are recommended [13,15]. Supine tilted positioning is suggested for labor.

**Thromboembolic.** Despite an incidence of venous thromboembolism reported as high as 8% [18], there are insufficient data at this time to recommend universal administration of heparin during pregnancy. However, range of motion exercises and thrombolytic stockings should be considered for all women, and heparin prophylaxis should be administered to women with additional risk factors (prior VTE or known thrombophilia) [19]. Each case should be addressed individually. Women suffering acute SCI during pregnancy should receive thromboprophylaxis for at least eight weeks post trauma on the basis of the high rate of deep venous thromboses reported in nonpregnant patients during this time period [11].

**Hematology.** Screen for and treat anemia aggressively.

**General support.** Spasticity and muscle contractions frequently complicate SCI. A regular program of range of motion exercises in lower extremities, leg elevation, and exercises to increase upper body strength is recommended, as are social support services [14,20].

**Autonomic dysreflexia.** ADR is the most serious complication impacting obstetric management, affecting about 90% of patients with lesions at or above the level of T6 [3,21] (above sympathetic outflow and above the upper level of greater splanchnic flow). It is potentially fatal. It is attributed to loss of hypothalamic control over sympathetic spinal reflexes of somatic or visceral sensory impulses still active distal to the level of the lesion [22]. The most common sign of ADR is systemic hypertension (vasoconstriction), which is often severe. Maternal clinical manifestations include hyperthermia, piloerection, diaphoresis, increased extremity spasticity, pupil dilation, nasal congestion, respiratory distress, bradycardia (most common) or tachycardia or cardiac arrhythmia, extreme fear and anxiety, headache, loss of consciousness, intracranial bleed, convulsions, and even death. Symptoms are synchronous with uterine contractions. BP rises with contractions, then normalizes in between.

ADR may be mistaken for preeclampsia, but several findings may help differentiate the two conditions (Table 20.1).

**Triggers:** Afferent stimuli (usually distension) from hollow viscus (bladder, bowel, uterus) or skin (irritation or temp change) below level of the spinal cord lesion. These include uterine contractions, cervical manipulation/pelvic examinations, cold stirrups, insertion of speculum, manipulation of urinary catheters, catheter obstruction, constipation, and decubitus ulcers.

Preventive management of ADR in susceptible patients:

1. Routine bladder catheterization with topical anesthetic.
2. Avoidance of constipation with bowel regimen.
3. Pelvic exams: consider pudendal block or topical anesthetic (lidocaine) prior to exams. Avoid cold stirrups or speculums if possible.
4. Prophylactic antihypertensive therapy (as necessary to prevent recurrent ADR) with oral nifedipine (10–20 mg), terazosin (1–10 mg qhs), or clonidine.
5. Epidural anesthesia at the onset of labor.

**Treatment of ADR:**

1. Remove offending stimulus. Expedite delivery if in second stage with forceps or vacuum or perform cesarean delivery (discuss this with patient prior to labor).
2. Positioning: tilt head upward, loosen tight clothing around neck.
3. Antihypertensive therapy—rapid onset [21].
   - **Nitroprusside** (0.5 ug/kg/min intravenously, titrate to BP) or sublingual sodium nitroglycerin (0.3–0.6 mL)
   - **Amyl nitrate** (one capsule crushed for inhalation)
   - Ganglionic blocking agent: trimethaphan (Arfonad), 1 ampule in 500 mL D5W at 3 to 4 mg/min continuously intravenously
   - Prazosin, α-adrenergic blocker: 0.5–1.0 mg PO bid or TID
   - Direct vasodilator: hydralazine, 10 mg orally, or nifedipine bite and swallow tablet 10 to 20 mg
4. Anesthesia—**regional** (preferred) or general anesthesia can treat ADR.

**Antepartum testing.** No specific testing is recommended. 

**Ascertainment and preparation for (preterm or term) labor.** Women with spinal cord transaction above T10, especially

### Table 20.1 Differentiating ADR from Preeclampsia

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Disease</th>
<th>Symptoms</th>
<th>Hematologic</th>
<th>Hepatic Function</th>
<th>Urinalysis</th>
<th>Treatment</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Preeclampsia</td>
<td>Independent of uterine contractions</td>
<td>Decreased platelets</td>
<td>Elevated uric acid and/or liver function tests</td>
<td>Proteinuria</td>
<td>Intravenous MgSO₄ (most commonly)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ADR</td>
<td>Synchronous with uterine contractions</td>
<td>Normal</td>
<td>Normal</td>
<td>Norepinephrine</td>
<td>Remove stimulus; antihypertensive therapy</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Abbreviations:** ADR, autonomic dysreflexia; MgSO₄, magnesium sulfate.
above T6, may have **painless labor** and are at risk for unattended delivery. Even with lower levels, if transaction is complete, patients may not feel contractions. Symptoms that are related through the sympathetic nervous system may alert patients to labor. These should be reviewed with patients as they near term: abdominal or leg spasms, shortness of breath, or increased spasticity. **Uterine palpation techniques** should be reviewed with patients. Consider inpatient hospitalization, especially if patients dilated and have (>T6) high lesions (because of possible unattended delivery with ADR).

**Psychological challenges.** Successful pregnancy outcome in women with SCI relies on multidisciplinary team coordination with providers from high-risk obstetrics, anesthesia, and spinal cord injury service when possible [14,23]. Women with SCI should have an anesthesia consult with a plan for epidural at onset of labor. Professional support from a multidisciplinary team that focuses on patient empowerment and the degree of controllability can make the pregnancy experience a positive one for women with SCI [24]. Depression is commonly associated with SCI and treatment options include cognitive behavioral therapy, acupuncture, and selected antidepressants (some increase spasticity while others have fetal effects) [25].

### DELIVERY

Patients with spinal cord transaction above the level of T10 are at risk for unattended delivery secondary to unrecognized contractions. About 20% of women with SCI will deliver preterm; surveillance with cervical checks can be considered starting at 28 weeks [4]. Consider inpatient hospitalization for patients with advanced cervical dilation because of the risk of unattended delivery or for women with spinal cord lesions above the level of T6 because of the high risk of ADR [2,15].

Labor is the period during which ADR is most likely to arise. Therefore, there should be a plan for delivery in a unit capable of invasive hemodynamic monitoring. **Appropriate antihypertensive therapy should be available at the patient’s bedside during labor.** If induction is necessary, women with cervical ripening should have continuous blood pressure monitoring and possibly an epidural. **Continuous hemodynamic monitoring during labor by maternal electrocardiogram, pulse oximetry, and arterial line** should be performed in patients with **baseline pulmonary insufficiency** [15]. Body temperature should be closely monitored, without assuming that temperature increases are due to intra-amniotic infection (may be caused by underlying thermoregulation). A Foley catheter may be placed during labor to avoid bladder distention or repeated catheterizations. Patients should change position and have a skin examination every two hours to prevent decubitus ulcer formation. Episiotomy should be avoided, not only because it is not beneficial in general, but also because it is a possible trigger for ADR.

The rate of spontaneous vaginal delivery and need for assisted vaginal delivery depends on the level of the spinal cord lesion. Approximately 30% of SCI patients will be delivered by cesarean [2,3,5,12,14,23] (Table 20.2).

### ANESTHESIA

**Epidural anesthesia** should be administered early in labor [21,26]. This is to prevent ADR, with a goal for T10 level.

**Table 20.2 Mode of Delivery Stratified by Level of SCI**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Delivery Mode</th>
<th>≥T6 Level (%)</th>
<th>&lt;T6 Level (%)</th>
<th>All SCI (%)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>NSVD</td>
<td>15 (24)</td>
<td>18 (42)</td>
<td>33 (31)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AVD</td>
<td>22 (34)</td>
<td>7 (16)</td>
<td>29 (27)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CD</td>
<td>27 (42)</td>
<td>18 (42)</td>
<td>45 (42)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total</td>
<td>64 (100)</td>
<td>43 (100)</td>
<td>107 (100)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


**Abbreviations:** AVD, assisted vaginal delivery; CD, cesarean delivery; NSVD, normal spontaneous vaginal delivery; SCI, spinal cord injury. *Majority of assisted vaginal deliveries performed because of autonomic dysreflexia.*

Prehydration is very important as these patients tend to be hypotensive.

### POSTPARTUM CARE AND BREAST-FEEDING

The concept of women with SCI becoming parents frequently generates negative societal reactions; however, research has demonstrated that the children of women with SCI when compared with peers with able-bodied mothers have the same attitudes toward their parents, gender roles, and family functioning [27].

In the postpartum period, bladder distension and constipation should be avoided. The use of thomboprophylaxis of SCI patients during the puerperium is controversial. Breast-feeding should be encouraged. Oral contraceptive pills appear to be safe [3,28] although some authors discourage their use [29]. Progesterone-only pills, transdermal patches, intramuscular medroxyprogesterone injections, condoms and spermicide, and intruterine devices are all acceptable alternatives.

### GUILLAIN–BARRÉ SYNDROME

With many of the features of SCI in common, pregnant women with Guillain–Barré syndrome (GBS) face similar challenges [30]. The risk of UTI and DVT are both increased in this population, and extreme muscle weakness can lead to paralysis and the need for ventilatory support. The safety and effectiveness of plasmapheresis and IVIG to treat GBS in pregnancy have been established and should be considered in cases involving severe or worsening weakness. Delivery can often be accomplished by regional anesthesia and passive or assisted second stage. The use of general anesthesia can be particularly dangerous in GBS patients, specifically in regards to the need for avoidance of succinylcholine, risk of hyperkalemimia, autonomic instability, and the challenges of extubation in severely weakened patients. A multidisciplinary team approach is highly recommended.

### RESOURCES

SCI patients and nonmedical personnel may be referred to the following website: [http://www.spinalcord.org/resources](http://www.spinalcord.org/resources) posted by the National Spinal Cord Injury Association (NSCIA) for more information.
REFERENCES


Mood disorders
Madeleine A. Becker, Tal E. Weinberger, Ann Chandy, Nazanin E. Silver, and Elisabeth J. S. Kunkel

KEY POINTS
- Depression is twice as common in women as in men, and rates are highest during the childbearing years.
- Depression is common in pregnancy. Up to 70% of pregnant women report symptoms of depression.
- Postpartum blues is a temporary, common condition, affecting up to 85% of new mothers.
- Postpartum depression occurs in 5% to 20% of women.
- Postpartum psychosis affects about 0.1% to 0.2% of women. There is a very high risk of postpartum psychosis in mothers with bipolar disorder.
- Pregnant women who discontinue their antidepressant medications during pregnancy demonstrate a high rate of relapse.
- Maternal depression has been associated with an increase in premature births, low birth weight, fetal growth restriction, and postnatal complications.
- Untreated maternal depression has been associated with an increased risk of subsequent childhood psychopathology.
- The Edinburgh Postnatal Depression Scale is a short and easy-to-administer screening tool to assess for postpartum depression.
- Bipolar depression is often misdiagnosed as a major depressive disorder.
- The risk of postpartum affective episodes is very high among women with bipolar disorder with the majority of women experiencing symptoms within the first three weeks of delivery.
- The incidence of infanticide in women with untreated postpartum psychosis may be as high as 4%.
- Patients with mood disorders should be stabilized on the minimal number of medications at the lowest effective dose before pregnancy.
- Paroxetine has been associated with an increased risk in cardiac malformations and should generally be avoided during pregnancy if possible.
- Other selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors (SSRIs) are not considered teratogenic.
- Individual decisions about medication management during pregnancy should take into account multiple factors, such as severity of maternal illness, frequency of mood episodes, efficacy of past medication trials, and strength of maternal support system.
- In neonates exposed to lithium during the first trimester, the risk of Ebstein’s anomaly has been estimated to be between 0.05% and 0.1%.
- The risk for major congenital anomalies in infants exposed to valproic acid in utero is estimated to be between 6.2% and 13.3%.
- There are still limited data regarding the safety of second-generation (atypical) antipsychotics during pregnancy.
- All psychotropic medications cross the placenta and can enter breast milk.
- Most SSRIs produce low infant levels and should be continued in breast-feeding mothers who need to take antidepressant medications.

MOOD DISORDERS IN PREGNANCY AND POSTPARTUM
Definitions and Epidemiology
Major depressive disorder (MDD) is a syndrome characterized by sustained depressed mood or loss of interest in daily activities along with “neurovegetative symptoms” of depression, which include a decrease or increase in appetite, insomnia or hypersomnia, psychomotor retardation or agitation, and decreased energy. Other symptoms of MDD include feelings of worthlessness or guilt, loss of interest in usually pleasurable activities (or anhedonia), difficulty concentrating, and recurrent thoughts of death or suicidal ideation [1]. Women have approximately twice the lifetime rate of depression as men [2]. In women, the highest rates of major depression occur during the childbearing years between the ages of 25 to 44. Depression is one of the most common complications during pregnancy and in the postpartum period [3]. Up to 70% of pregnant women report symptoms of depression during their pregnancy with 10% to 16% fulfilling the criteria for major depression [4,5]. There is a high rate of psychiatric illness in mothers after childbirth. This may be attributable to hormonal factors but also can be associated with psychological stress and prior psychiatric illness [6,7].

Postpartum blues is a common condition, affecting up to 85% of new mothers. It is characterized by tearfulness, mood lability, irritability, and anxiety. Symptoms are typically mild and begin around postpartum day 2 to 4 and resolve spontaneously, usually in about two weeks [8]. Women with postpartum blues may be at increased risk for the subsequent development of postpartum depression [9] and warrant close follow-up after delivery.

Postpartum depression occurs in 5% to 20% of women [10]. Symptoms of postpartum depression are the same as for major depressive disorder and include depressed mood, insomnia, anhedonia, suicidal ideation, guilt, worthlessness, fatigue, impaired concentration, change in appetite, and change in motor activity. The DSM-5 categorizes “peripartum onset” as a specifier of MDD, applied to the first four weeks after childbirth (ICD-10 coding permits classifications of postpartum mental disorders up to six weeks after childbirth) [1]. In practice, many clinicians would contemplate depressive symptoms to be considered “postpartum depression” for a much longer period than this, generally for up to one year after childbirth [11].

Postpartum psychosis is much less common than postpartum depression, affecting about 0.1% to 0.2% of all...
women [12]. It is characterized by mood lability, agitation, confusion, thought disorganization, hallucinations, and disturbed sleep. Postpartum psychosis has been associated with an increased risk of suicide, infant neglect, and infanticide [13,14], and is considered a psychiatric emergency. Although relatively rare in the general population, the risk of postpartum psychosis is significantly increased in mothers with a history of previous inpatient psychiatric hospitalization [15,16]. There is a very high risk of postpartum psychosis in mothers with bipolar depression, reportedly as high as 46% [4,6,7]. Additionally, women who have had an episode of postpartum psychosis are at increased risk for subsequently developing bipolar affective disorder, leading many researchers to speculate that postpartum psychosis is really an episode of bipolar disorder [17].

**RISK FACTORS**

The strongest risk factor for depression during pregnancy is a history of major depressive disorder [18]. Women with a history of anxiety disorder, depression, postpartum depression, or other previous psychiatric disorders are also at an increased risk for postpartum depression [10,13,19,20]. Social isolation, poor social support, high parity, unintended pregnancy, younger age, and exposure to trauma, domestic violence, and birth complications are also factors that are associated with postpartum depression [8,21–24]. Women who discontinue antidepressant medications during pregnancy are also at risk for relapse. One study of pregnant women with a history of moderate to severe recurrent depression, who discontinued their antidepressant medication during pregnancy, showed a 68% rate of relapse during pregnancy. This was compared to a 25% relapse rate for those women who continued antidepressants throughout their pregnancies [19].

Hormonal factors also have been implicated as risk factors for depression. Rapid changes in estradiol and progesterone levels have been associated with postpartum depression. Women with thyroid autoantibodies also appear to be at higher risk for postpartum depression [17].

The U.S. Preventive Services Task Force (USPSTF) and American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (ACOG) recommends screening for depression in pregnant and postpartum women. Screening should be implemented with adequate systems in place to ensure accurate diagnosis, effective treatment, and appropriate follow-up [3,25].

**COMPLICATIONS**

Untreated maternal depression is associated with multiple problems, both during pregnancy and postpartum, and can negatively affect mother–child interactions. Maternal depression has been associated with an increase in premature births [26,27], low birth weight, fetal growth restriction, and postnatal complications [4,27,28].

Untreated maternal depression during pregnancy may result in poor compliance with prenatal care and increased exposure risk to illicit drugs, herbal remedies, alcohol, and tobacco [4]. Infants of mothers with untreated depression have been shown to cry more, are more difficult to console, more irritable, less active, and less attentive. They also display fewer facial expressions [29,30]. Women who have depression, anxiety, or stress while being pregnant are at an increased risk for their child having impaired cognitive development, emotional problems, or symptoms of attention deficit hyperactivity disorder [31]. Maternal depression has been associated with an increased risk of subsequent childhood psychopathology, including behavioral problems, anxiety disorders, and depression [32–36]. Correspondingly, remission of maternal depression positively affects both mother and child, resulting in a significantly lower rate of childhood psychiatric symptoms and diagnoses [37].

Studies also show that mothers with depression have a poor pattern of infant health care utilization, including increased use of acute care and emergency room visits as well as decreased utilization of preventative services, including well-care visits and up-to-date vaccinations [38]. Depressed mothers are also less likely to continue to breastfeed [39].

**Screening**

The Edinburgh Postnatal Depression Scale (EPDS) is recommended for screening in women at risk for postpartum depression. This screening tool is short and easy to administer. It is a self-administered scale, consisting of 10 questions assessing emotional symptoms experienced by the mother over the seven days prior to evaluation. The EPDS can be completed in about five minutes [40]. Scores on the EPDS range from 0 to 30, and a score of 9 or greater should prompt further clinical evaluation. No scale is a substitute for clinical judgment, and in any situation in which there is significant clinical concern for postpartum depression, the patient should be evaluated thoroughly and if warranted referral should be made and treatment initiated [3].

An initial validation study revealed a sensitivity of 86% and a specificity of 78% of the EPDS [40]. However, a more recent review of multiple studies validating the EPDS demonstrated heterogeneity of sensitivity and specificity across different studies. This suggests that the EPDS may not be equally valid in different settings [41] (Figure 21.1).

Thyroid function tests and a complete blood count are useful for identifying other medical conditions that can present with symptoms of depression. Prompt psychiatric consultation should be obtained when depression is suspected, especially when symptoms are severe or when psychotic or suicidal features are present. The presence of psychosis or suicidal or homicidal ideation or intent should be considered an emergency.

**BIPOLAR DISORDER IN PREGNANCY AND POSTPARTUM**

**Definitions and Epidemiology**

Bipolar disorder is a psychiatric illness characterized by episodes of depression alternating with sustained episodes of elevated mood and/or irritability, which are classified as either “mania” or “hypomania.” Hypomania is an attenuated form of mania with no associated functional impairment. Both mania and hypomania are associated with increased energy, decreased need for sleep, rapid speech and/or thoughts, distractibility, impulsivity, mood lability, and grandiosity. “Mood swings” are not adequate for a diagnosis of bipolar disorder; rather, a patient must have a syndrome characterized by sustained symptoms lasting for days to weeks.

Bipolar disorder, type I (BAD I) is a severe form of bipolar disorder defined by at least one lifetime manic or
mixed episode. Mixed episodes are characterized by simultaneous manic and depressive symptoms. The lifetime prevalence estimate is 1% for BAD I [42]. Men and women are affected at equal rates.

Bipolar disorder, type II (BAD II) is characterized by episodes of depression and hypomania. The lifetime prevalence estimate is 1.1% for BAD II. Women with BAD II outnumber men by a ratio of approximately 2:1 [43].

The average age of onset of bipolar disorder is in the late teens to early 20s, placing affected women at high risk for mood episodes during their reproductive years.

**Risk Factors**

Extremely high susceptibility to postpartum episodes is a unique feature of bipolar disorder, as opposed to other mood or psychotic disorders [44] with a 67% risk of postpartum depression reported in one study [43]. Between 25% and 50% of women with BAD will have an episode of postpartum mania; a family history of postpartum psychosis further increases the risk of a postpartum psychotic episode [45].

Women with a previous history of postpartum psychosis are at extremely high risk in subsequent pregnancies [45].

A strong association between primiparity and risk of postpartum psychosis has been identified; this may be related to prophylactic strategies being implemented faster and more aggressively in women who have had previous deliveries affected by postpartum psychosis [46]. As opposed to nonpsychotic postpartum depression, studies have consistently found no association between stressful life events and onset of postpartum psychosis [44]. Immunological dysregulation has also been implicated and requires further study [47].

Postpartum women have nearly seven times the risk of a psychiatric hospital admission for a first affective episode and two times the risk of a recurrent affective episode compared with pregnant and nonpregnant women [48]. Onset of symptoms is often sudden. The peak prevalence of symptom onset is between postpartum days 1 to 3 with the majority of women experiencing symptoms within three weeks after delivery [43]. Approximately 50% of episodes

---

Figure 21.1  Edinburgh Postnatal Depression Scale (EPDS). Response categories are scored 0, 1, 2, and 3 according to increased severity of the symptoms. Items marked with an asterisk are reverse scored (i.e., 3, 2, 1, and 0). The total score is calculated by adding together the scores for each of the ten items. (Adapted from Cox JL, Holden JM, Sagovsky R. *Br J Psychiatry*, 150, 782–6, 1987.)
of postpartum psychosis are the first manifestation of mental illness with sudden onset and precipitous worsening of symptoms [44].

Women with a history of bipolar disorder or postpartum psychosis have a very high risk of relapse postpartum; a clinical dilemma that commonly arises in this setting is whether medication should be continued during pregnancy or started immediately after delivery. A recent small study demonstrated that women with a history of episodes restricted to the postpartum period were not at high risk during pregnancy; postpartum prophylaxis was highly effective in this group. However, those with episodes occurring outside the postpartum period were at high risk during pregnancy as well; postpartum prophylaxis was much less effective in this setting [49].

Complications

Unplanned pregnancy and voluntary termination of pregnancy may occur more frequently in women with BAD [48]. Adverse neonatal outcomes, such as preterm delivery, severe large for gestational age birth weight, neonatal morbidity (such as RDS, sepsis, and neonatal abstinence syndrome), congenital malformations, and neonatal hospital readmission, have been found to be more common among women with a history of hospitalization for bipolar disorder. The cause of the higher percentage of adverse outcomes in this population is unknown; potential explanations include direct physiological effect of psychiatric illness, health care and lifestyle behaviors related to mood symptoms, or effects of psychiatric medication [50].

Exposure to bipolar disorder during pregnancy has been associated with premature birth, low birth weight, and behavioral disturbances in the children of women with untreated illness [51].

Pregnancy Considerations

Women who discontinue mood stabilizer treatment shortly before or after conception have twice the risk of recurrence and a fourfold shorter latency to a new affective episode as compared to women who continue their mood stabilizers [52]. Perinatal affective episodes are often depressive rather than manic or hypomanic and, after occurring in one pregnancy, tend to recur in subsequent pregnancies [4]. The proportion of women experiencing mood episodes during pregnancy was found to be approximately 22.7% in one large study and was similar for women with BAD I and BAD II [53]. Younger age at illness onset was found to be strongly associated with perinatal illness [53]. Maintenance of mood stability during pregnancy is crucial as recurrence of symptoms during this time strongly predicts the onset of postpartum episodes [54].

Screening

Misclassification of BAD as MDD is common in the general population. This can lead to inappropriate treatment and consequent lack of improvement or worsening of the patient’s psychiatric condition. The use of selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors (SSRIs) in bipolar disorder is controversial but may be associated with treatment resistance or more frequent mood episodes in patients with the rapid-cycling form of the disorder [55]. Some markers of bipolar depression (as opposed to unipolar or major depression) include atypical symptoms (i.e., increased sleep or appetite), psychotic depression, early age of symptom onset, treatment resistance to antidepressants, and a family history of bipolar disorder [54].

Misdiagnosis of BAD as MDD in the postpartum period also may occur. Hypomania is often overlooked in the general psychiatric population as patients often dismiss symptoms that do not disrupt (or even enhance) their functioning. Clinicians may not inquire about episodes of elevated mood. Hypomania after delivery may be misconstrued as normal joy related to the birth of a child [42].

There are no screening instruments specifically designed to detect mood episodes in patients with bipolar disorder before or after delivery. Commonly used screening instruments, such as the EPDS, have not been validated in postpartum women with BAD [42]. Of all the screening instruments for BAD used in the general population, the Mood Disorders Questionnaire (MDQ) has been most widely studied, both in psychiatric settings as well as primary care and community settings. In one study, the MDQ demonstrated excellent sensitivity and specificity in screening for BAD (with use of a modified scoring algorithm) during pregnancy and the postpartum period in women referred for psychiatric evaluation [56]. No measures demonstrate high sensitivity in a community sample, making a universal screening scale difficult to recommend. Women who present with depressive symptoms during the perinatal or postpartum period should be screened clinically for BAD, given the risk of inappropriate treatment associated with misdiagnosis [43].

No screening instrument is intended to replace a thorough clinical evaluation. Any patient who has a positive screen for symptoms of mood disorder should be referred in a timely fashion for mental health evaluation. Immediate screening by a mental health professional is warranted for suspected suicidal ideation or homicidal ideation toward the baby as well as for any concern regarding postpartum psychosis. The incidence of infanticide in women with untreated postpartum psychosis has been estimated to be as high as 4% [57]. Emergent intervention (such as psychiatric hospitalization) may be necessary to address immediate safety issues.

PHARMACOLOGIC MANAGEMENT OF MOOD DISORDERS

All psychotropic medications cross the placenta and can enter breast milk [4]. Risks of medication exposure to the fetus need to be weighed against the risks (to both mother and fetus) of untreated maternal illness. When a mood disorder is suspected, referral to a psychiatrist is recommended. Psychotherapy should always be considered as part of the treatment plan and can be effective in many cases. Psychotherapy has been shown to be effective for some symptoms of depression in pregnancy [58]. When symptoms are severe, or there is a high risk of relapse, medications can be helpful and/or necessary.

Fetal exposure to either maternal depression or antidepressants carries risk to the developing fetus [59]. Individual decisions about medication management during pregnancy should take into account multiple factors, such as severity of maternal illness, frequency of mood episodes, efficacy of past medication trials, and strength of maternal support system. In general, a single medication at a higher dose is preferable to multiple medications [4]. Multidisciplinary collaboration
regarding psychotropic medication management during pregnancy should include the obstetrician, primary care doctor, psychiatrist, pediatrician, and patient’s family. The risks of discontinuing medication versus any known risks of the prenatal exposure should be fully discussed with the patient, and this discussion should be documented.

During the postpartum period, in addition to concerns about medication passage into breast milk, important considerations include the impact of sleep disruption on maternal illness. Sleep deprivation can be extremely destabilizing in women with bipolar disorder. This is particularly concerning given the fact that the postpartum period is already a time of additional vulnerability in patients with mood disorders.

**Antidepressants (Table 21.1)**

*Selective Serotonin Reuptake Inhibitors (SSRIs)*

The most commonly prescribed medications for depression are the SSRIs. According to a Cochrane review, SSRIs are more effective for treating perinatal depression than placebo [60]. Compared to other classes of antidepressant medications, there are much more data available for the safety of these medications during pregnancy. The potential impact of maternal psychiatric depression on neonatal outcome has been difficult to evaluate independently of medication effects, resulting in some difficulty in clearly interpreting these data.

The lowest effective dose of medication should be used during pregnancy to minimize exposure risk to the fetus. The need for using medications during pregnancy should always be weighed against any known risk of exposure of the fetus or nursing infant [8].

*Tertogenicity*

Several large reviews of the available data have shown no specific pattern of major malformations in women exposed to SSRIs or other antidepressants in pregnancy [61,62], and they are not considered to be teratogens [61,62]. The National Birth Defects Prevention Study found that there was an increased risk of omphalocele, anencephaly, and craniostenosis, but absolute risks were small [63]. These risks were found only after more than 40 statistical tests were performed and, thus, may be attributed to chance [4]. In the Sloane Epidemiology Center Birth Defects Study, no increased risk of omphalocele or craniostenosis was found to be associated with SSRI use. Both of these studies were limited by the small number of exposures for each congenital malformation [4].

There have been some reports showing that women exposed to paroxetine in the first trimester are at higher risk (1.5- to twofold) for cardiac malformations [28,64–68], but there are also reports that do not support this association [61,64,68–71]. In light of these findings, the manufacturer reclassified paroxetine’s pregnancy category to “D” [72], and so paroxetine should be avoided in pregnancy. If a patient were already taking paroxetine, one should attempt to switch to another antidepressant [4], preferably before pregnancy.

Although the data are conflicting, the majority of databases, including two recent, large, case-controlled studies, have found no significant increased rate of congenital heart defects with exposure to SSRIs other than paroxetine [4,28,54,62,63,71,73]. There are conflicting reports regarding the association of antidepressants and cardiovascular defects with a recent systematic review of the literature showing a recurrent pattern of heart defects [74]. A large multinational population study, however, found no substantial increase in prevalence of cardiovascular defects for either the SSRIs or for venlafaxine [63]. An increase in prevalence of septal and right ventricular outflow tract defects was present but was found to lack association with antidepressant exposure with further sibling-controlled analysis [62]. Another large recent meta-analysis found an increase in cardiac and septal heart defects, which although it reached statistical significance was not found to be clinically significant [75].

The use of antidepressants during pregnancy has been associated with reductions in birth weight [76] and infants who are small for gestational age [28,77]. Numerous studies show that SSRIs and TCAs (as well as the other antidepressants) are associated with preterm delivery (<37 weeks) [28,77,78]. These results are not consistent, and this association was not found in all studies. When effects were found, the differences in gestational age among exposed and non-exposed infants were typically modest (one week or less). As similar results were found among women using SSRIs and TCAs (which have different mechanisms of action), maternal illness rather than medication effects may explain some of these findings [68].

**Neonatal Toxicity**

Other risks concerning the use of SSRIs during pregnancy include reports of an increased risk of persistent pulmonary hypertension of the newborn (PPHN). PPHN involves right-to-left shunting of blood through the fetal ductus arteriosus and foramen ovale and results in neonatal hypoxia. If this is severe, it can result in right heart failure and is fatal in approximately 10% of cases. A meta-analysis has found an increased risk of PPHN among newborns whose mothers were exposed to SSRIs later in pregnancy (after 20 weeks gestation) [79]. PPHN was found to occur in about three to six per 1000 exposed infants. The baseline rate or occurrence of PPHN is between 0.5 and two per 1000 babies in the general population [28]. Two large, retrospective cohort studies [80,81] found no increased risk of PPHN in infants exposed to SSRIs. Four recent studies supported an association between SSRI use and PPHN with an adjusted odds ratio ranging from 3.44 to 6.1 [68,82–85]. The mechanism may be related to high circulating levels of serotonin in the fetal lungs [82]. Further research is needed to clarify this association.

Antidepressant exposure late in pregnancy has also been associated with transient neonatal complications. Symptoms may include jitteriness, tremor, tachypnea, hypoglycemia, temperature instability, weak cry, poor tone, and mild respiratory distress [4,86,87]. These symptoms are common and may occur in up to one third of infants exposed to antidepressants during the pregnancy [88]. Symptoms usually occur in the first neonatal days and generally resolve in a period of two weeks or less [28]. It is not clear whether the mechanism is a withdrawal syndrome or related to medication toxicity [61,87,89].

**Neurodevelopmental Effects**

Long-term neurodevelopmental effects after in utero SSRI exposure have been evaluated in a few small studies. Two studies found differences on some behavioral measures between exposed and unexposed children [90,91]. However, in two studies by Nulman et al., evaluating children exposed to fluoxetine and to various TCAs, no differences were found between exposed children and controls [92,93]. One study demonstrated that the effects of in utero SSRI exposure on children’s motor functioning is transitory and a longitudinal
### Table 21.1  Antidepressants in Pregnancy and Lactation

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class</th>
<th>Medication</th>
<th>FDA Risk Category</th>
<th>Teratogenicity</th>
<th>Late Pregnancy Exposure</th>
<th>Neonatal Toxicity</th>
<th>Breast-Feeding</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors | Citalopram (Celexa®) | C                | Most studies have not identified an increased risk of major malformations [4,28,61–63] | Conflicting reports regarding risk of PPHN in infants exposed to SSRIs after 20 weeks' gestation [68,79,82–85] | • Conflicting results regarding risk of preterm birth, low birth weight, and small for gestational age in SSRI exposed pregnancies  
  • Late pregnancy exposure associated with neonatal adaptation problems, NICU admission, low Apgar scores  
  • All of these findings may be attributable to maternal illness rather than medication exposure [28,76–78] | RID: <1%–9% [10] Infant serum concentration low or undetectable in several studies [94,95]  
  • One reported case of high infant serum levels [10,94,95] |
|                             | Fluoxetine (Prozac®, Prozac Weekly®, Sarafem®) | C                | Most studies have not identified an increased risk of major malformations [4,28,61–63] | As above                                                                                   | As above                                                                          |RID ≤10% Infant plasma concentration variable  
  • Less favored because of long half-life and active metabolite  
  • A few reports of adverse effects, but most studies with none in exposed infants [10,94,95] |
|                             | Sertraline (Zoloft®) | C                | Most studies have not identified an increased risk of major malformations [4,28,61–63] | As above                                                                                   | As above                                                                          |RID = 2% Infant serum concentration low to undetectable [10,94,95] |
|                             | Escitalopram (Lexapro®) | C                | Very limited studies, but as escitalopram is the S-enantiomer of citalopram, it is likely comparable with this medication [4,28,61–63] | As above                                                                                   | As above                                                                          |Limited data, but infant exposure thought to be similar to citalopram [10,94,95] |
|                             | Fluvoxamine (Luvox®, Luvox CR®) | C                | No increased risk identified, but data are limited [4,28,61–63] | As above                                                                                   | As above                                                                          |RID 1%–2% Limited data; infant plasma levels variable [10,94,95] |
|                             | Paroxetine (Paxil®, Paxil CR®, Pexeva®) | D                | Some data consistently supporting increased risk of cardiac malformations [28,64–71] | As above                                                                                   | As above                                                                          |RID 1%–3% Infant serum concentration low to undetectable [10,94,95] |

(Continued)
Table 21.1 (Continued)  Antidepressants in Pregnancy and Lactation

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class</th>
<th>Medication</th>
<th>FDA Risk Category</th>
<th>Teratogenicity</th>
<th>Late Pregnancy Exposure</th>
<th>Neonatal Toxicity</th>
<th>Breast-Feeding</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Serotonin-norepinephrine reuptake inhibitors</td>
<td><strong>Venlafaxine</strong> (Effexor®, Effexor XR®, Venlafaxine ER)</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>No increased risk identified, but data are limited [62,63]</td>
<td>As above</td>
<td>As above</td>
<td>Limited data, mean infant dose is 4.7%–9.2% of maternal levels; no adverse effects noted [10,96,97]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Duloxetine</td>
<td>(Cymbalta®)</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>Very limited data</td>
<td>As above</td>
<td>As above</td>
<td>Very limited data available</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mirtazapine</td>
<td>(Remeron®, Remeron SolTab®)</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>No increased risk identified, but data very limited [4,28,98–102]</td>
<td>As above</td>
<td>As above</td>
<td>Very limited data, low to undetectable infant levels; no adverse events noted [103–105]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bupropion</td>
<td>(Budeprion SR, Budeprion XL, Buproban Wellbutrin®, Wellbutrin SR®, Wellbutrin XL®, Zyban ®)</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>Limited data, but most studies have not identified an increased risk of major malformations [4,28,98–102]</td>
<td>None reported</td>
<td></td>
<td>Limited data,  • One case report of a seizure in an exposed infant [106–108]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: RID, weight adjusted relative infant dose or % of weight adjusted maternal dose ingested by the infant.
pattern of poor developmental outcomes has not been established [109]. There is limited information available on the long-term effects of antidepressant exposure. Data on this topic must be interpreted carefully as the effects of maternal depression are also likely to have a significant impact on behavior and cognitive development [28].

**Autism Spectrum Disorders**

Findings from published studies regarding association of SSRIs with autism spectrum disorder are inconsistent and not conclusive. Multiple studies have found an association with first trimester exposure to SSRIs as well as maternal depression and an increased risk of autism spectrum disorders [110]. One study found that prenatal SSRI exposure was three times as likely in boys with autism spectrum disorder compared with children with typical development. This association was most strongly linked with first trimester exposure to the SSRRs [111]. Other studies have found only a small increase in risk [112]. A large study from Denmark did not find an association between antidepressant exposure and autism spectrum disorders when controlling for confounding factors [113]. It may be that depression itself may be attributable to some of these associations.

**Tricyclic Antidepressants (TCAs)**

TCAs have not been shown to be associated with a higher risk of congenital malformations when taken in the first trimester [28,70,114]. Complications for the newborn after tricyclic exposure during later pregnancy include tachycardia, irritability, jitteriness, hypertonia, convulsions, and anticholinergic symptoms, such as urinary retention [114].

**Monoamine Oxidase Inhibitors (MAOIs)**

Monoamine oxidase inhibitors are prescribed much less commonly because of multiple food and drug–drug interactions. There are much less data available for this class of medications. One small study shows an increased rate of congenital malformations [115]. Given the paucity of data on this class of medications, MAOIs should be avoided during pregnancy if possible [114].

**Serotonin-Norepinephrine Reuptake Inhibitors (SNRIs) and Other Classes**

Commonly used medications in these classes include venlafaxine, duloxetine, mirtazapine, and bupropion. Overall, existing data suggest no significantly increased rate of congenital malformations with these antidepressants, but there are much less data available than for the SSRIs or TCAs [4,28,98,99]. In one study, the rate of preterm delivery with the serotonin-norepinephrine reuptake inhibitors (SNRIs) or norepinephrine reuptake inhibitors (NRIs) was significantly increased, and neonatal symptoms were similar to those symptoms seen in infants whose mothers were taking SSRIs during pregnancy [100]. In a recent population-based, case-control study, there was a small positive association with maternal bupropion use during pregnancy and left outflow tract heart defects [101]. However, other studies found no increased rate of major malformations [28,102,116].

**Other Effects of Prenatal Exposure to Antidepressants**

In some past studies, there was found to be increased risk of spontaneous abortion (SAB) that is associated with the use of several classes of antidepressants in pregnancy. Miscarriage rates were 12.4% in exposed women versus 8.7% in women who were not exposed to medications. There were no differences found between the different classes of antidepressants. The studies, however, were variable in controlling for confounding variables, such as health habits, smoking, and age [28,117–119]. Other more recent studies do not support this association [77,120,121] with incidence of SAB in women exposed to various SSRIs not exceeding the SAB rates in control groups [90].

Expert guidelines and algorithms to guide the physician on decision making for continuing and/or initiating medications for MDD during pregnancy have been published [28].

**Mood Stabilizers (Table 21.2)**

**Lithium**

Lithium is associated with an increased risk of Ebstein’s anomaly, a cardiac defect characterized by congenital displacement of the tricuspid valve toward the apex of the right ventricle. In the general population, the risk of Ebstein's anomaly is 1:20,000. In neonates exposed to lithium during the first trimester, the risk of Ebstein’s anomaly is 1:1500, 0.05% to 0.1% [122]. Thus, although the relative risk of Ebstein's anomaly is significantly higher with prenatal lithium exposure, the absolute risk still remains small [48]. A recent meta-analysis of trials evaluating lithium toxicity concluded that lithium's teratogenic risk has been overestimated [123].

In one trial, birth weight of lithium-exposed infants was found to be significantly higher than matched controls [124]. Individual cases of arrhythmia, nephrogenic diabetes insipidus, thyroid dysfunction, hypotonia, hypoglycemia, and hyperbilirubinemia have been reported. These problems are generally transient and have no long-term sequelae. Lithium-exposed infants may have poor respiratory effort and/or cyanosis at delivery. Neonatal hypotonicity, bradycardia, cyanosis, and hypoglycemia are preventable if lithium is discontinued immediately before delivery; however, given the high risk of postpartum mood episodes in these patients, lithium should be reinstated immediately afterward [125]. Lithium is distributed in total body fluid volume, and levels can be affected by vomiting and changes in sodium intake [48]. Thyroid function should be monitored during pregnancy because of the possibility of lithium-induced thyroid toxicity. In the last trimester, renal excretion of lithium increases by 30% to 50% [125], which may necessitate a dose increase at this time. Decreasing the dose of lithium at delivery may be necessary to avoid maternal lithium toxicity associated with the dramatic decrease in vascular volume occurring at delivery. Adequate hydration should be maintained during labor [48].

Many experts recommend continuing lithium during pregnancy in women with severe symptoms who have had a good response to lithium [122]. However, given the small absolute risk of Ebstein’s anomaly, some patients with less frequent, less severe episodes may be able to discontinue lithium during pregnancy or at least during the first trimester. When the decision is made to discontinue lithium, the drug should be tapered slowly (over the course of ≥15 days) as rapid discontinuation of lithium is associated with higher frequency of, and reduced latency to recurrence of symptoms [52]. Prenatal screening, including high-resolution ultrasound and fetal echocardiography, should be conducted at 16 to 18 weeks’ gestation in pregnant women with first-trimester lithium exposure [48].
Table 21.2 Mood Stabilizers in Pregnancy and Lactation

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Medication</th>
<th>FDA Risk Category</th>
<th>Teratogenicity</th>
<th>Neonatal Toxicity</th>
<th>Breast-Feeding</th>
<th>Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lithium (Eskalith®, Lithobid®)</td>
<td>D</td>
<td>20- to 40-fold increased risk of Ebstein's anomaly but absolute risk is small [122–124]</td>
<td>Cases of transient arrhythmia, nephrogenic diabetes insipidus, thyroid dysfunction, hypotonia, hypoglycemia, and hyperbilirubinemia [125], Infants may have poor respiratory effort or cyanosis at delivery [125]</td>
<td>Variable infant serum levels [160], Risk of toxicity in the newborn. Monitor lithium levels and CBC in breast-fed exposed infants [126–128]</td>
<td>Monitor serum levels and thyroid function frequently. Fluid shifts and changes in metabolism may necessitate dose adjustment [48,125], Infants may have poor respiratory effort or cyanosis at delivery [125], High-resolution ultrasound and fetal echocardiography at 16 to 18 weeks gestation [48]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Valproic acid (Depakene®, Stavzor®, Divalproex sodium (Depakote®, Depakote ER®, Depakote Sprinkles®)</td>
<td>D</td>
<td>6.2%–13.3% risk of major anomalies: NTDs, cardiovascular anomalies, limb defects, and hypospadias, 1%–2% risk of NTDs [130,132], Risk of facial dysmorphic features “antiepileptic drug syndrome” [132], Risk of cognitive deficits and ASD [48]</td>
<td>None noted</td>
<td>Considered compatible with breast-feeding [129], low infant serum levels [129]</td>
<td>Teratogenicity and cognitive effects likely dose dependent [1], also polytherapy associated with greater risk [130,131], Supplement with high-dose folic acid [132]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carbamazepine (Carbatrol®, Equetro®, Tegretol®, Tegretol XR®)</td>
<td>D</td>
<td>Risk of NTD 0.5%–1%; overall risk of major malformations 2.2%–5.4% [130], Risk of facial dysmorphic features “antiepileptic drug syndrome” [48]</td>
<td>Risk of hemorrhagic disease in the newborn because of fetal vitamin K deficiency [48,131]</td>
<td>Considered compatible with breast-feeding [129] with variable infant serum levels; few reports of infant hepatotoxicity, monitor serum levels and LFTs in exposed infants [129,134–136]</td>
<td>Can cause fetal vitamin K deficiency, supplementation in last month of pregnancy recommended [129], Supplement with high-dose folic acid [129]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oxcarbazepine (Trileptal®, Trileptal®)</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>Available teratogenic information is reassuring but database is too small to draw definitive conclusions [130]</td>
<td>None noted</td>
<td>Limited data</td>
<td>Levels may decrease during pregnancy [48]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(Continued)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Medication</th>
<th>FDA Risk Category</th>
<th>Teratogenicity</th>
<th>Neonatal Toxicity</th>
<th>Breast-Feeding</th>
<th>Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lamotrigine (Lamictal®, Lamictal XR®)</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>Conflicting results regarding risk of oral clefts [137–139]; if elevated, absolute risk is low • May be higher risk of malformations at higher doses [137]</td>
<td>None noted</td>
<td>High infant exposure, approximately 30% of maternal levels [129] Hypothetical risk of SJS in the newborn [141,142]</td>
<td>Changes in clearance during pregnancy and after delivery may necessitate dose adjustment [140]. • Safety data are reassuring compared to other treatment options [140] • Periconceptional folic acid supplementation [140]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Atypical antipsychotics</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Risperidone (Risperdal®, Risperdal M-Tab®)</td>
<td>C</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quetiapine (Seroquel®, Seroquel XR®)</td>
<td>C</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aripiprazole (Abilify®, Abilify Discmelt®)</td>
<td>C</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ziprasidone (Geodon®)</td>
<td>C</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clozapine (Clozaril®, FazaClo®)</td>
<td>C</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Abbreviations: ASD, autism spectrum disorder; EPS, extrapyramidal symptoms; LGA, large for gestational age; NTD, neural tube defects; SJS, Steven’s–Johnson syndrome.
Valproic Acid
On the basis of data from several large antiepileptic pregnancy registries, the risk for major congenital anomalies in infants exposed to valproic acid (VPA) in utero is estimated to be between 6.2% and 13.3% [130]. Congenital anomalies seen with VPA include neural tube defects (NTDs), cardiovascular anomalies, limb defects, and hypospadias. About 1% to 2% of exposed infants present with NTDs [130,132]. Lumbosacral meningomyelocele is the most common NTD associated with VPA exposure, likely representing a drug effect on neural crest closure [48]. This defect occurs 10 to 20 times more frequently in VPA-exposed infants than in the general population [132].

A specific combination of facial dysmorphic features has been described in infants exposed to VPA in utero; this same syndrome was later described in children of women using other antiepileptic drugs (AEDs) (including carbamazepine) during pregnancy. This syndrome is known as the “antiepileptic drug syndrome” and is characterized by intrauterine growth retardation, long and thin upper lip, shallow philtrum, epicantal folds, and midfacial hypoplasia with flat nasal bridge, small upturned nose, and down-turned angles of the mouth [132]. In infants exposed to VPA in utero, these features are often associated with other major anomalies and developmental delay. Cognitive deficits, attention deficit disorder, and learning difficulties have been repeatedly reported in children exposed to VPA in utero [130,132]. Perinatal valproate exposure also is associated with autism spectrum disorder [132].

Teratogenicity and cognitive effects related to prenatal VPA exposure are likely dose dependent with doses greater than 800 to 1000 mg associated with significantly greater risk [130,131]. Polytherapy with VPA and other anticonvulsants results in a higher rate of teratogenicity than monotherapy with VPA alone [132].

Valproic acid should not be used during pregnancy unless the benefits clearly outweigh the risks. Valproate is known to interfere with folic acid metabolism, so high-dose folate supplementation (4–5 mg/day) is currently recommended prior to conception and during the first trimester in women taking VPA (as well as with other anticonvulsants) during pregnancy. Folic acid supplementation decreases the incidence of NTDs, but the benefit of using high-dose folate for decreasing the rate of NTD in this population is unclear. As lamotrigine and carbamazepine interfere with folic acid absorption, supplementation is recommended in women taking these medications as well [132]. The UK and Ireland Epilepsy and Pregnancy Registers recently found that folate supplementation had no significant effect on pregnancy outcome in women exposed to carbamazepine, lamotrigine, and valproic acid [150].

Carbamazepine and Oxcarbazepine
Rates of malformations with carbamazepine exposure range from 2.2% to 5.4% in different large AED pregnancy registries. Carbamazepine is associated with a risk of NTDs of 0.5% to 1%. Recent data suggest that carbamazepine exposure may not cause cognitive impairment. Malformation rates are consistently higher with VPA than with carbamazepine [130]. Pregnancies exposed to high doses of carbamazepine (>1000 mg) resulted in a higher rate of malformations than lower doses (<400 mg) [150].

Carbamazepine can cause fetal vitamin K deficiency. Vitamin K is necessary for normal midfacial growth and for normal clotting factor function; thus, carbamazepine exposure during pregnancy may increase the risk of neonatal bleeding and midfacial abnormalities. Many experts recommend oral vitamin K in the last month of pregnancy [48]. There is currently insufficient evidence to determine whether vitamin K supplementation reduces the rate of neonatal hemorrhagic complications [131].

Data on malformation rates with oxcarbazepine exposure are still limited. A literature review on infants exposed to oxcarbazepine in utero, including data from the worldwide Novartis safety database and other pregnancy registries and study centers, revealed no increased risk of malformations. However, the number of exposed pregnancies was insufficient to draw definitive conclusions regarding safety of this medication [151]. Oxcarbazepine does not produce the same toxic epoxide metabolite as carbamazepine, and thus authors speculate that oxcarbazepine may be less harmful to the developing fetus [48]. Plasma concentrations of oxcarbazepine may decrease during pregnancy [152], which may necessitate dose adjustment.

Lamotrigine
The reproductive safety data regarding lamotrigine seems to be reassuring compared to other treatments for BAD. The North American AED Pregnancy Registry reported a 10.4-fold increased risk of cleft lip and/or cleft palate in infants exposed to lamotrigine in utero; the absolute risk of cleft lip and/or palate in the registry was 7.3:1000 [137]. Other large pregnancy registries did not substantiate this association [138,139]. One pregnancy registry reported a higher risk of major malformations with lamotrigine doses greater than 200 mg/day. No effects on cognition have been found, but data remain limited [130]. However, in another registry, the rate of congenital malformations with high-dose lamotrigine was still found to be lower than that with high dose valproate [150].

Lamotrigine clearance is increased during pregnancy, which may necessitate dose increases to maintain therapeutic effect. After delivery, lamotrigine clearance returns rapidly to baseline, requiring carefully monitoring and dose adjustment to avoid toxicity [140].

Antipsychotics
Data regarding the safety of second-generation (atypical) antipsychotics during pregnancy is still too limited to draw definitive conclusions regarding risk of structural teratogenicity [143]. A large cohort study of women exposed to both first- and second-generation antipsychotics has not revealed any substantial risk of teratogenicity [144]. Current available evidence regarding olanzapine, risperidone, quetiapine, and clozapine does not consistently reveal any increased risk for teratogenicity above that in the general population. In one study, quetiapine demonstrated the lowest amount of placental passage when compared to haloperidol, risperidone, and olanzapine [153]. Minimal information is available regarding ziprasidone and aripiprazole [143]. No information is available regarding paliperidone, iloperidone, aripiprazole, or lurasidone. The second-generation antipsychotics are known to cause maternal weight gain and diabetes, which are independently associated with pregnancy complications. Clozapine and olanzapine should be considered highest risk for metabolic complications in pregnancy in this class [143]. Some data indicate that second-generation antipsychotic exposure can result in a higher incidence of large-for-gestational-age
infants [54]. One recent study demonstrated deficits in neuromotor performance in infants with prenatal antipsychotic exposure [154].

Data regarding exposure to haloperidol, a commonly used first-generation (typical) antipsychotic, are limited but generally are reassuring. An extrapyramidal syndrome has been reported in some cases of babies exposed to first-generation antipsychotics in utero [54].

NONPHARMACOLOGIC MANAGEMENT OF MOOD DISORDERS

Therapy
Empirically validated treatments exist for both depression during pregnancy and postpartum depression [155,156]. Interpersonal psychotherapy and cognitive-behavioral therapy are primary among these treatments and have been demonstrated to be effective for women with mild-to-severe depression. Interpersonal psychotherapy is a validated treatment for perinatal depression and should be a first-line treatment option [156–158]. Evidence from clinical trials indicates that interpersonal psychotherapy by itself or in combination with antidepressants may help speed time to recovery from postpartum depression and prolong the time spent in remission [158,159]. Randomized controlled trials are needed to further assess the efficacy of psychotherapy during pregnancy and postpartum [160,161].

According to a Cochrane review, pregnant women who receive psychological intervention for depression were significantly less likely to develop postnatal depression than were those who received standard care. Interventions included postpartum home visits, telephone support, and interpersonal psychotherapy [162].

Behavioral Educational Interventions
In an RCT of Black and Latina mothers just postpartum, behavioral educational intervention aimed to prepare and educate mothers about modifiable risk factors associated with symptoms of postpartum depression reduced positive depression screens [163]. Postpartum nurse home visits aimed at relationship-focused behavioral coaching (Communicating and Relating Effectively, CARE) are associated with significant increases in quality of mother–infant interaction and decreases in postpartum depression severity [164].

Electroconvulsive Therapy
In pregnant adults, electroconvulsive therapy (ECT) has well-proven efficacy in the treatment of MDD (complete response to treatment 84% and partial response 16%) and BAD (complete response to treatment 92% and partial response 8%) [165]. ECT is not recommended as a first-line treatment but may be considered in patients who have demonstrated treatment resistance, when depression is life threatening, and when psychotic features are present [166]. Side effects include transient memory loss, muscle soreness, and headache.

In pregnant women treated for depression, risks to the mother and child are low to moderate in all trimesters, possibly with more risk in the first trimester. The American Psychiatric Association (APA) recommends considering ECT as a primary treatment for MDD and bipolar disorder in pregnancy, consulting with an obstetrician before the pregnancy, immediate access to obstetrical services during ECT treatments, fetal heart rate and ultrasound monitoring, and routine anesthetic measures with a consideration of intubation [167,168]. The most common complications of ECT in pregnant women are fetal bradyarrhythmias, uterine contractions, and induction of premature labor, which occurred at a rate of up to 29% with a child mortality rate of 7% (in a case series of 67 patients) [169]. Fetal bradyarrhythmias likely occur as a result of hypoxia. Positioning the woman with her right hip elevated will minimize the risk of hypoxia in the fetus. Induction of labor may be related to postictal elevations of oxytocin. Uterine activity can be monitored during ECT administration [165,170]. Fetal monitoring is suggested during ECT because of the potential for fetal sedation from general anesthesia. Methohexital sodium and propofol are the anesthetic agents most commonly used for ECT in the United States. Succinylcholine is generally used as a muscle relaxant as it does not cross the placenta at usual doses [168]. Neither ECT nor any of these agents have known teratogenicity [170,171]. ECT does not generate current through the uterus. One case of fetal death after status epilepticus was reported [170]. Limiting seizure duration during ECT in the general population is standard practice.

MANAGEMENT DURING LACTATION

All psychiatric medications are passed into breast milk. The American Academy of Pediatrics (AAP) has rated the compatibility of individual drugs with lactation. This rating is based on case reports found in the literature and is intended to assist the physician in counseling the mother regarding breast-feeding while taking medication [172]. Given the high rate of psychiatric illness during and after pregnancy, the health care practitioner should carefully evaluate the postpartum patient who is at risk for psychiatric illness to determine whether medication is necessary.

Antidepressants
The AAP Committee on Drugs rates antidepressant medications as “effects unknown, and may be of concern in breast-feeding” [172]. However, a pooled analysis of antidepressant levels in lactating mothers suggests that it is probably safe to use most antidepressants during lactation [94] and that antidepressant use is not considered to be a contraindication to breast-feeding. Antidepressant exposure in breast milk is five to 10 times lower than exposure in utero [10]. There are few reports of adverse effects in infants exposed to these medications. Most antidepressant drugs do not pose a risk to the nursing infant; however, consideration to the individual risk/benefit is necessary in each individual patient. This is especially true of drugs that have long half-lives and those that accumulate in breast milk and of vulnerable infants, such as those that are premature and those with immature organ function or underlying medical conditions [95].

Selective Serotonin Reuptake Inhibitors
The growing evidence is generally reassuring concerning the safety of the use of SSRIs in breast-feeding mothers. The excretion of SSRIs into breast milk is relatively low to undetectable [10]. Low infant plasma levels have been found with all the SSRIs, but higher concentrations have been reported for fluoxetine, citalopram, sertraline, and venlafaxine [95]. However, if a woman has been stable on an antidepressant
throughout her pregnancy, preference is usually to remain on that agent postpartum as evidence suggests that most infant SSRIs levels have been found to be quite low. Long-term effects of infant exposure to SSRIs through nursing have been less well studied.

Tricyclic Antidepressants
The AAP rates effects of TCAs during breast-feeding as “unknown but may be of concern.” Infant plasma levels of TCAs were found to be <1% of maternal dose [173]. Most reports show no adverse effects in the nursing infant [4,10,173,174]. One exception is doxepin, with which there was one report of respiratory depression in an infant exposed through breast milk [4].

Monoamine Oxidase Inhibitors
No current data were found.

Venlafaxine
There are very few case reports published on the safety of venlafaxine in nursing. These show low-to-variable infant plasma levels in breast-fed infants. The mean infant dose or percentage of maternal intake ranged from 4.7% to 9.2% (mean of 6.4%), which is below the 10% estimated level of concern but still relatively high compared with data published for other antidepressants [96]. No adverse effects were found in exposed infants [10,96,97].

Duloxetine
At this time, there is an extremely limited amount of data available on effects on infants exposed to duloxetine while nursing.

Bupropion
There are no studies and only a few case reports on the safety of bupropion in breast-fed infants. Low infant serum levels were found [6,106], and no adverse effects were reported in two exposed infants [107]. One study reported a seizure in a six-month-old infant, which was possibly attributable to the use of bupropion during breast-feeding [108].

Trazodone
There are very little data on trazodone. In the few cases examined, levels in breast milk have been found to be low [175].

Mirtazapine
There are few published cases of infant exposure to mirtazapine. In these few cases, infant levels were low to undetectable. No adverse effects were seen in the exposed infants, including sedation or weight gain, which are common side effects of this medication [103–105].

Mood Stabilizers
Lithium
The AAP Committee on Drugs considers lithium to be associated “with significant effects on some nursing infants and should be given to nursing mothers with caution.” Infant levels have been reported as variable but higher than those with many other medications, from one half to one third of maternal levels [176]. More recent studies found considerable variability (0%–30% of maternal dose) in infant serum levels of lithium as well as levels that were generally lower than previously thought [126,127]. In a few case reports, adverse infant effects have included cyanosis, hypotonia, heart murmur, EKG changes, lethargy, and hypothermia [128,133]. Occasional and transient laboratory abnormalities, including elevated blood urea nitrogen (BUN), creatinine, and thyroid-stimulating hormone were observed in the sample of infants studied [126]. Infants may be more susceptible to both dehydration and lithium toxicity because of their immature kidney function and potential for rapid dehydration.

Valproic Acid
AAP Committee on Drugs considers valproic acid to be “compatible” with breast-feeding. Levels have been found to be very low in breast milk [129]. One adverse event of thrombocytopenia and anemia in an exposed infant was reported [177].

Carbamazepine
The AAP Committee on Drugs considers carbamazepine to be compatible with breast-feeding. Levels reported in infant serum were highly variable, but have not been found to penetrate breast milk in clinically significant amounts [129]. In two case reports, however, carbamazepine was associated with infant hepatotoxicity [134–136]. Exposed infants should be monitored by checking serum levels and liver function tests.

Lamotrigine
Effects of lamotrigine during breast-feeding are classified by the AAP as “unknown, but may be of concern.” Lamotrigine is excreted in relatively high levels in breast milk. Infant serum levels were one third (about 30%) of maternal levels, likely because of a slow, immature elimination in infants. Most of the case reports found no adverse effects in infants [129] although there were some cases of mild thrombocytopenia in one study [141]. There have been no reported cases of Stevens-Johnson syndrome in nursing infants to date, but because this may be a concern, infants should be closely monitored [142].

The Neurodevelopmental Effects of Antiepileptic Drugs Study is a prospective multicenter observational study examining cognitive outcomes in children at age 3 that were exposed to AEDs, both in utero and during breast-feeding. The study consisted of 199 children of mothers with epilepsy who were taking AEDs while pregnant. This study found no deleterious effects of AED therapy (valproate, carbamazepine, and lamotrigine) on cognitive outcomes of children that were exposed both in utero and while breastfeeding [178]. Although this study looked at effects on children of mothers with epilepsy rather than bipolar disorder, the effects of exposure would likely be applicable to either population.

Antipsychotics
The AAP Committee on Drugs rates the effects of haloperidol, chlorpromazine, thiothixene, mesoridazine, and trifluoperazine to be unknown and may be of concern to nursing infants. Haloperidol is excreted in relatively high amounts in breast milk but has not been associated with adverse effects on the infant [179,180]. Chlorpromazine exposure has been associated with drowsiness and lethargy in one infant [181]. In one study of seven infants with exposure to chlorpromazine...
through breast milk, there were no adverse effects reported at 16-month and five-year follow-up evaluations [182].

Atypical Antipsychotics
The atypical antipsychotics have not yet been rated by the AAP Committee on Drugs. There are only a few case reports published. Generally, risperidone, olanzapine, and quetiapine levels have been found to be low to undetectable in samples of nursing infants, and most infants showed no or few adverse effects from these medications [145,146]. There was one report of an infant with cardiomegaly, jaundice, and sedation after exposure to olanzapine [145]. There have also been a few cases of extrapyramidal reactions in infants exposed to olanzapine [146]. In a worldwide safety database maintained by the manufacturer of olanzapine, there were no adverse events reported in 82.3% of infants breast-feeding during olanzapine treatment. Most commonly reported adverse events in the remaining 15.6% of infants were somnolence, irritability, tremor, and insomnia [183]. The data for ziprasidone and aripiprazole are limited. In one case report, ziprasidone use in pregnancy and lactation did not result in any adverse outcomes for the infant, and in another case report, the concentration of ziprasidone in human milk was found to be low [147,148]. Likewise, in one case report, aripiprazole use during pregnancy and lactation did not result in any adverse outcomes, and there were no detectable levels of aripiprazole or its metabolite in the breast milk [149].

There are very few studies published on the safety of clozapine. The AAP rates effects as “unknown and of concern” in breast-feeding. In one case report, clozapine was shown to have a relatively high accumulation in breast milk [184]. In an infant exposed to clozapine both prenatally and during breast-feeding, delayed speech acquisition may have been attributable to clozapine [185]. Although no cases have been reported of agranulocytosis in nursing infants, it is a theoretical risk. Therefore, it is not recommended that clozapine be used during breast-feeding [10,146]. With limited data available, if women decide to breast-feed while taking an antipsychotic medication, infants should be monitored for possible adverse effects.

REFERENCES


35. Hammen C, Brennan PA. Severity, chronicity and timing of maternal depression and risk for adolescent offspring diagnosis in a community sample. *Arch Gen Psychiatry* 2003; 60(3): 253–8. [Cross-sectional cohort, n = 816, II-3]


80. Nulman I, Rovet J, Stewart DE et al. Neurodevelopment of children exposed in utero to antidepressant drugs. *N Engl J Med* 1997; 336: 258–62. [Retrospective study, II-3]


120. Yacobi S, Ornoy A. Is lithium a real teratogen? What can we conclude from the prospective versus retrospective studies? A review. *Isr J Psychiatry Relat Sci* 2008; 45(2): 95–106. [Review, III]


Smoking

Jorge E. Tolosa and David M. Stamilio

KEY POINTS

- **Smoking** is the most significant preventable risk factor associated with low birth weight, preterm birth, perinatal death, and other maternal and perinatal complications.
- Smoking cessation in pregnancy reduces the incidences of low birth weight, preterm birth, and perinatal death.
- Comprehensive screening for women who smoke in pregnancy is necessary by asking if she smokes; if no, need to ask if she smoked in the last year; if no, if she uses electronic cigarettes. If the answer to any of these three questions is yes, counseling and intervention are necessary.
- Counseling with behavioral and educational interventions is associated with the highest cessation rates (Tables 22.1 through 22.4).
- Pharmacotherapies are either contraindicated or their safety and efficacy is insufficiently studied in pregnancy.
- Nicotine replacement therapies are safe and effective in the general population, but there is insufficient evidence for recommending them in pregnant smokers.
- Nicotine replacement therapy is associated with known adverse fetal effects.
- The greatest risk of relapse occurs in the postpartum period.
- There is insufficient evidence to recommend specific interventions to prevent relapse in pregnant and postpartum women.

HISTORIC NOTES
The 20th century saw the rise of the manufactured cigarette and its popularity grew [1]. People continue to smoke despite known adverse effects [1].

DIAGNOSIS/DEFINITION
Tobacco dependence is a chronic addictive condition that requires repeated intervention for cessation.

EPIDEMIOLOGY/INCIDENCE

- Approximately 176 million adult women are daily smokers worldwide with the majority living in high-income countries. There is a very concerning trend toward increased rates of tobacco use, smoked and smokeless, in low- and middle-income countries [1,2].
- In 2012 in the United States, nearly 15 of every 100 adult women smoked [3].
- The incidence of smoking in pregnancy in the United States was 12.3% in 2010 (a significant reduction from 13.3% in 2000) [4]. Estimated smoking rates during pregnancy among reproductive-age women vary in different countries from 0.1% to 50% [5].
- By race, the highest prevalence of smoking occurs among those reporting multiple races and whites. The lowest prevalence occurs among Hispanics and Asian Pacific Islander women [6].
- Women are more likely to stop smoking in pregnancy than in any other time in their lives [7].
- Up to 46% of preconception smoking women stop smoking before their first antenatal visit or during pregnancy [8,9]. Pregnancy can help motivate women to quit smoking.
- 50% to 60% of those who quit smoking in pregnancy relapse within the first four months postpartum [4,9].
- More than 300 million people around the world, the vast majority of whom live in South Asia, use smokeless tobacco products. Its use in high-income countries remains stable (not including use of vaporized nicotine delivery systems) [1]. Regional variations ranging from 6% (Congo) to 33.5% (Orissa, India) exist among low- and middle-income countries [10].
- Among high-income countries, both the United States and Sweden have seen increases in smokeless tobacco use that may offset decreases in cigarette consumption [11,12].

GENETICS

- Maternal genotype may affect the risk of low birth weight in cigarette smokers [13].
- The CYP1A1, CYP2A6, and GSTT1 genes encode enzymes active in metabolism and elimination of toxic substances in cigarette smoke [13–15].
- In women who smoked, heterozygous variants of CYP1A1 and absence of GSTT1 genes resulted in significantly greater reductions in birth weight.

ETIOLOGY/BASIC PATHOLOGY

- Tobacco smoke has more than 7000 chemicals, hundreds of which are toxic and negatively affect almost all organ systems [1]. Nicotine and carbon monoxide are documented fetal neurotoxins and major compounds of tobacco smoke [16].
- Other toxic compounds include ammonia, polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons, hydrogen cyanide, vinyl chloride, and nitrogen oxide.
- Smoking may result in damage to fetal genetic material [17].
Table 22.1  Multiple-Choice Questionnaire Improves Initial Disclosure Rates of Smoking/Tobacco Use

| (A) | I have never smoked or I have smoked less than 100 cigarettes in my lifetime. |
| (B) | I stopped smoking before I found out I was pregnant, and I am not smoking now. |
| (C) | I stopped smoking after I found out I was pregnant, and I am not smoking now. |
| (D) | I smoke some now, but I cut down on the number of cigarettes I smoke since I found out I was pregnant. |
| (E) | I smoke regularly now, about the same as before I found out I was pregnant. |
| (F) | Do you use any other tobacco product? (If yes, inquire about details as above) |

If the patient responds to B or C, reinforce her decision to quit, congratulate her on success of quitting, and encourage her to remain smoke free.

If the patient responds to D or E, she should be classified as a smoker. Document in the chart and proceed to the other 5As of the 5A framework: Ask, Advise, Assess, Assist, and Arrange.


Table 22.2  “The 5 Rs” for Smokers Who Are Unwilling to Quit Smoking

1. **Relevance**: Motivational information to a patient is more effective if it is relevant to a patient's personal circumstances (i.e., smoking can cause adverse effects in pregnancy).
2. **Risks**: Stress the acute and long-term risks of smoking. Try to associate it with the patient's current health or illnesses.
3. **Rewards**: Ask the patient to identify potential benefits of smoking.
4. **Roadblocks**: Identify barriers or impediments to quitting and note treatment options that could address the barriers.
5. **Repetition**: Repeat the motivational intervention at each visit.

Table 22.3  “The 5 As” for Patients Who Are Willing to Quit Smoking

1. **Ask**: Tobacco status is inquired and documented. A multiple-choice question method (Table 22.1) improves disclosure.
2. **Advise**: Urge all tobacco users to quit in a clear, strong, personalized manner. Review risks associated with continued smoking.
3. **Assess**: Determine the patient's willingness to quit in the next 30 days. If unwilling, the provider should ask and advise at each subsequent office visit.
4. **Assist**: Provide smoking cessation materials and provide support. Help the patient develop a plan and provide practical counseling. Pharmacotherapy may be considered for the general population of smokers although there are insufficient data on safety and efficacy in pregnancy.
5. **Arrange**: Provide follow-up contact, either in person or by telephone, soon after the quit date and further follow-up encounters as needed. Congratulate success during each visit. Review circumstances if a relapse occurred and use it as a learning experience for the patient. Consider referral or more intensive treatment. Assess pharmacotherapy use and problems.

Table 22.4  Smoking Cessation Counseling (Skills Training and Problem Solving Techniques)

1. Identify activities that increase risk of smoking or relapse.
2. Explore coping skills and describe the time and nature of withdrawal.
3. Tell patients they may experience anxiety, frustration, depression, and intense cravings for cigarettes.
4. Withdrawal symptoms become manageable in a few weeks.
5. Make lifestyle changes to reduce stress and improve quality of life.
6. Minimize time spent in the company of smokers.
7. Provide as much information to the patient as possible: supplement discussions with pamphlets, booklets, videos, hotlines (1-800-QUIT-NOW), Internet, or support groups (http://www.smokefree.gov, http://www.smokefreefamilies.org).

Nicotine
- Crosses the placenta and can be detected in the fetal circulation at levels that exceed maternal circulation levels by 15% [18].
- Amniotic fluid levels are 88% higher than maternal plasma levels [18].
- Causes for impaired fetal oxygen delivery: vasocostriction and changes in capillary volume and villous membrane contribute to abnormal gas exchange within the placenta [19].
- Fetal central nervous system effects: Abnormalities in cell proliferation and differentiation lead to decreased number of cells and eventually altered synaptic activity. Nicotine not only affects multiple transmitter pathways and influences the development of the fetal brain, but also affects eventual programming and synaptic competence [18].
- Studies have been focused on short-term developmental fetal effects, such as sympathetic activation, leading to increased fetal heart rate and reduction in fetal breathing movement. However, animal studies suggest that fetal exposure to nicotine alone impacts the incidence of late-onset diseases, including Type II diabetes, obesity, hypertension, neurobehavioral deficits, and respiratory dysfunction [20].

Carbon Monoxide
- Crosses the placenta rapidly and can be detected in the fetal circulation at levels that exceed maternal circulation levels by 15% [16,18].
- Exposure causes formation of carboxyhemoglobin. Carboxyhemoglobin is cleared slowly from the fetal circulation and diminishes tissue oxygenation via competitive inhibition with oxyhemoglobin. There is a left shift of the oxyhemoglobin dissociation curve, causing decreased availability of oxygen to the fetus [18].
- A 10% maternal carboxyhemoglobin concentration would result in a decrease of available oxygen supply to the fetus akin to a 60% reduction in blood flow.

Carcinogens
- More than 69 carcinogens have been identified in smoked tobacco products, compounds that are toxic to rapidly dividing cells.
- Levels of cyanide and at least one tobacco-specific carcinogen are higher in smokers [16,18].
RISK FACTORS

- Social disadvantage and lower education [6,21]
- High parity
- Low levels of social support and/or being without a partner
- Exposure to domestic violence
- Having a partner that smokes or exposure to second-hand smoke at home
- Depression, coexisting emotional/psychiatric problems, substance abuse
- Job strain
- Poor coping skills
- Younger age
- Fear of weight gain and dissatisfaction with female body image

Spontaneous quitters usually smoke less, are more likely to have stopped smoking before, are more likely to have a nonsmoker partner or have more support and encouragement at home for quitting, and have stronger beliefs about the dangers of smoking [7].

COMPLICATIONS Smoking is the most modifiable risk factor associated with adverse pregnancy outcomes [9,16,22–24].

- **Congenital anomalies**: There is sufficient evidence to infer a causal relationship between maternal smoking in early pregnancy and orofacial clefts and suggestive evidence of a possible association with clubfoot, gastrochisis, and atrial septal defects [25].
- **Low birth weight (LBW)**: Women who smoke are more likely to have a low-birth-weight baby (<2500 g) with relative risk (RR) of 1.3 to 10. The mean birth weight deficit is 200 to 300 g by term [3]. Up to 19% of term LBW has been attributed to smoking [26], including environmental tobacco smoke exposure in pregnancy [27]. Low birth weight causes a substantial economic burden [4].
- **Preterm birth**: Women who smoke are 1.3 to 2.5 times more likely to have a preterm delivery. It is estimated that up to 5%–8% of preterm births may be attributed to smoking [26].
- **Pregnancy loss**: Women who smoke are 1.2 to 3.4 times more likely to have an early pregnancy loss.
- **Premature rupture of membranes (PROM)**: Smoking increases PROM risk by at least twofold (RR of 1.9–4.2).
- **Preeclampsia**: Smoking in the second trimester of pregnancy is associated with a reduced incidence of preeclampsia. The mechanism for the risk reduction has not been elucidated [28].
- **Placental abruption**: Smoking increases the rate of abruption (RR of 1.4–2.5).
- **Placenta previa**: Smoking is associated with a higher rate of placenta previa (RR of 1.4–4.4).
- **Fetal death**: Large case-control and cohort studies suggest a fetal death RR of 1.2–1.4 associated with cigarette smoking.
- **Postnatal morbidities**: Increased risk of sudden infant death syndrome (SIDS), respiratory infections, reactive airway diseases, otitis media, bronchiolitis, short stature, hyperactivity, obesity, and decreased school performance. Up to 34% of cases of SIDS have been attributed to smoking [26].
- **Health cost resulting from tobacco use includes annual expenditures for health and developmental problems of infants and children caused by mothers smoking or by being exposed to second-hand smoke during pregnancy or by kids being exposed to parents smoking after birth. Annual health expenditures solely from secondhand exposure amounted to $6.06 billion [29]. Also not included above are costs from smokeless tobacco use, adult secondhand smoke exposure, or pipe/cigar smoking.
- **Maternal lifetime complications**: Atherosclerotic disease, lung cancer, chronic obstructive pulmonary disease, many forms of lung disease, increased risk of ectopic pregnancy, premature menopause, infertility and osteoporosis.

Smokeless Tobacco Complications

Study of adverse outcomes related to use of smokeless tobacco has been limited. One study of the Swedish Medical Birth Registry reports an increased risk of stillbirth with an adjusted odds ratio (OR) of 1.6 [CI 1.1–2.3] [30]. This finding had been previously reported in India [31].

Electronic Cigarettes (E-cigarettes) in Pregnancy

Although the prevalence of e-cigarette use has increased considerably since their U.S. market introduction in 2007, currently there are very limited data on safety and efficacy of e-cigarettes to aid in achieving smoking cessation in pregnant patients. In addition to nicotine, e-cigarettes contain nitrosamines, diethylene glycol, and variable amounts of trace metals, including arsenic, chromium, cadmium, nickel, and lead. Contents, including nicotine amount, of the e-cigarette vapor vary considerably among the multitude of products [32].

- Pregnancy and maternal affects of the non-nicotine vapor contents are unknown.
- Although e-cigarette nicotine pregnancy effects have not been studied, there is an abundance of animal research that provides evidence that prenatal nicotine exposure has deleterious effects to offspring, including lung disease, central nervous system abnormalities that produce adverse cognitive and neurologic outcomes, stress-induced cardiac defects, high blood pressure, and reduced fertility [32].
- In nonpregnant patients there are limited observational data that e-cigarettes may assist in reducing cravings and the number of cigarettes smoked per day, but efficacy has not been studied in pregnant patients [33–35].
- Misconceptions about e-cigarettes are common among pregnant women, including a belief (in 43%) that e-cigarettes are safer to the fetus than traditional cigarettes. These misconceptions could pose risks to both maternal and child health [36].
- A survey indicates that misconceptions exist among obstetric providers with 29% responding that e-cigarettes are safer than traditional cigarettes and 14% reporting that e-cigarettes have no adverse health effects [37].

PREGNANCY CONSIDERATIONS

- Pregnancy is a unique opportunity for medical intervention and may be the only time women seek medical attention.
• Concerns over the dangers of smoking to the fetus may serve as a motivation for smoking cessation.
• Behavioral interventions, such as voucher based contingency management and other support/reward programs, have demonstrated efficacy in pregnancy [21,24,38].
• The safety and efficacy of existing pharmacotherapies remain uncertain in pregnancy [7,8,24,25].

PRINCIPLES

• Goal: Cessation of tobacco products use during pregnancy, postpartum, and for a lifetime.
• Tobacco-dependence treatments are clinically and economically effective relative to other medical disease prevention interventions [24].
• Smoking cessation in pregnancy could prevent 19% of low-birth-weight births, and 5%–8% of preterm deliveries [26]. Smoking in the third trimester has the greatest impact on birth weight [39,40].
• Women who quit smoking by the third trimester have birth weights similar to those of nonsmokers [39].

MANAGEMENT

• Document smoking status at each initial prenatal visit [41] (Table 22.1). For tobacco users, document smoking status at each follow-up prenatal visit.
• The patient should also be asked about the use of any other tobacco product.
• Comprehensive screening for women who smoke in pregnancy is necessary by asking if she smokes; if no, need to ask if she smoked in the last year; if no, if she uses electronic cigarettes. If the answer to any of these questions is yes, counseling and intervention are necessary.
• Although most pregnant women do disclose their smoking, urine cotinine testing can aid in uncovering the few who do not disclose, which may help in managing smoking cessation [42]. Biochemical verification of smoking status is an important component to the research setting and may also help to guide intervention in the clinical setting.
• Smoking cessation programs are helpful compared to no intervention at all [7].
• Most smokers make many attempts to quit before success is achieved. First-time quitters need to be aware of this trend [24].
• Explore reasons for previous failures: assess for nonadherence to therapy and improper use of cessation aides in the past [24].
• Assess for psychosocial comorbidities that may affect smoking cessation [43].
• Address secondhand tobacco exposures.
• Comprehensive tobacco control programs, including mass media campaigns, are effective in changing smoking behavior in adults [44].
• Other political and social interventions, such as smoking taxation, smoking bans in public and other places, bans on tobacco advertising and promotion, increases in retail prices, antismoking advocacy, and other public policies, are effective in smoking cessation [45]. For example, smoke-free legislation, such as smoking bans in workplaces, public places, or both, is associated with significant reductions in preterm births and child hospital admission for asthma [46].

THERAPY

Assessment for Intervention

• Assess and document tobacco use and status at every visit. This increases the likelihood of smoking-related discussions between patients and health care providers and increases cessation rates (Table 22.1). There is insufficient evidence (no RCTs) to assess the effect of an objective method to assess smoking status (e.g., a breath carbon monoxide monitor or cotinine measurement use systematically) in pregnant women.
• The five-step assessment (the 5Rs) can be used to address the patient who reports she is not willing to initiate smoking cessation (Table 22.2) [24].
• The five-step intervention (the 5As) is recommended in clinical practice to help pregnant women quit smoking if they verbalize a desire to quit in the next 30 days (Table 22.3) [24]. Use of the 5As is endorsed by The American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists [9], the National Cancer Institute, and the British Thoracic Society.

Counseling

• Simple advice has a small but positive effect on cessation rates [47].
• All health care providers should give clear, strong, and personalized advice to every patient to quit smoking as evidence demonstrates that a three-minute intervention raises abstinence rates [24].
• Disclosure rates improve 40% if a multiple-choice format for disclosure is used rather than a yes/no format (Table 22.1) [41].
• Oral and written advice at each prenatal visit regarding the risk of smoking for mother and fetus and a plan to quit are effective (Table 22.4) [24].
• On the basis of >56 randomized controlled trials with >21,000 women participants, use of support and reward techniques to help quit smoking have been associated with a 23% decrease in continued smoking late in pregnancy [48,49].
• Voucher-based contingency management is a promising mode of therapy as it has been associated with increased abstinence rates and improved neonatal birth weights [21,38]. Financial incentives significantly increase rates of smoking cessation [50]. For example, serial vouchers (£50–£400) provided for validated abstinence were associated with more smokers stopping smoking (22.5%) compared to controls (8.6%) [51]. In particular, reward-based programs (e.g., $800 for smoking cessation) are much more commonly accepted than deposit-based programs (e.g., refundable deposit of $150 plus $650 in reward payments), leading to higher rates of sustained abstinence from smoking. But smokers who were accepted to enroll were more likely to quit in the deposit-based program, e.g., if they stood to lose money if they failed [52].
• There is a strong dose–response relationship between the duration and frequency of counseling and its
effectiveness [24]. Videos, self-help manuals, self-help guides, and telephone calls are other examples of effective smoking cessation interventions [9].

- Women who received psychosocial interventions had an 18% reduction in preterm births and infants with low birth weight [8].
- **Telephone hotlines** (aka, QUITLINE; 1-800-QUIT-NOW) and **web information** (http://www.smokefree.gov; http://www.smokefreefamilies.org) sites are helpful and increase efficiency in implementing smoking cessation care in the clinical office. Patient uptake of QUITLINE assistance is improved with provider encouragement for its use and with proactive referral by the provider (with patient consent) rather than passively providing the phone number to a patient.
- Interventions to increase smoking cessation among the partners of pregnant women with the additional aim of facilitating cessation by the women themselves have been insufficiently studied [7]. Nonetheless, from studies including nonpregnant women, partner smoking cessation counseling and intervention should be performed during pregnancy.

**Pharmacotherapies**

**Nicotine Replacement Therapy**

- **General**
  - Nicotine replacement therapy (NRT) includes **patches, gums, inhalers, lozenges, and nasal spray**.
  - NRT is a part of an **effective strategy** to promote smoking cessation in the general nonpregnant population [53] (Table 22.5). All of the commercially available forms of NRT (gum, transdermal patch, nasal spray, inhaler, and sublingual tablets/lozenges) can help people who make a quit attempt to increase their chances of successfully stopping smoking. NRTs increase the rate of quitting by about 50% to 70%, regardless of setting. Quit rates are increased 43% with nicotine gum (4 mg more effective than 2 mg) and 66% with the patch. In fewer trials, nicotine inhaler, tablets/lozenges, and nasal spray are associated with 90% to 100% increase in quit rates. All of these effects were largely independent of the duration of therapy, the intensity of additional support provided, or the setting in which the NRT was offered [53].

- In pregnancy, NRT may help with nicotine withdrawal, has not yet been shown to have a significant advantage over other types of interventions, and has not been proven to effectively reduce smoking rates in pregnant smokers [54,55].
- In pregnancy, some studies show that NRT is associated with a trend for benefit [56–59], but safety/efficacy concerns remain [9,54].
- There is a risk of adverse effects of nicotine on the fetus through alterations in the uterine, placental, or cerebral blood flow [16–18,54].
- Animal studies suggest nicotine may be toxic to the developing central nervous system [16–18,54].
- The American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists cautions that the use of NRT should only be undertaken with close supervision and after careful consideration and discussion with the patient of the known risk of continued smoking and the possible risks of NRT [9].
- There is **insufficient evidence to assure safety or efficacy of NRT in pregnancy with unclear ratio of risks and benefits** [79,54].
- Biomarkers such as plasma, urine, or salivary cotinine, thiocyanate, carboxyhemoglobin, or cotinine may be useful to monitor NRT use in pregnancy.
- **Nicotine gum**
  - FDA class C drug with known adverse effect on fetus in animal models.
  - Nicotine gum 2 mg was associated with a nonsignificant increase in smoking cessation from 10% to 13%, and significantly increased birth weights and gestational age at birth, compared to placebo [60].
- **Nicotine patch**
  - **Class D drugs with known human risk in pregnancies**.
  - Nicotine patches during pregnancy have been associated with nonsignificant effects on smoking cessation in pregnant smokers [58–61]. Multiple meta-analyses of studies on other nicotine replacement therapies in pregnancy indicate that there is insufficient evidence that NRT (mostly patch) is effective or safe in prenatal smoking cessation [54,62,63]. Myung et al. concluded that there is a mean 13% abstinence rate in their meta-analysis; they included seven studies of which one is a prospective study of bupropion, one is a quasi-RCT that studied use of a multimodal

**Table 22.5 Nicotine Replacement Therapy**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nicotine Replacement</th>
<th>Dosing Regimen</th>
<th>Advantages</th>
<th>Disadvantages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nicotine patch: Nicoderm CQ® or Nicotrol®</td>
<td>Nicoderm CQ®, 21 mg/day for 6 wk, then 14 mg/day for 2 wk, then 7 mg/day for 2 wk. Nicotrol: single dose patch for 16 hr/day for 6 wk (no tapering recommended)</td>
<td>Over-the-counter, easy dosing</td>
<td>Local skin irritation in up to 50% of users, insomnia with 24-hr dosing, 30–60 min required for maximal effect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nicotine gum or lozenge</td>
<td>Start on quit date: 2 mg tab if &lt;25 cigarettes per day or 4 mg tab if &gt;25 cigarettes per day</td>
<td>Over-the-counter, satisfy oral behavior</td>
<td>Low nicotine levels, multiple dosing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nicotine nasal spray</td>
<td>1–2 doses per hr × 3 mo. Most patients require from 7–40 sprays over 24 hr</td>
<td>Rapid and higher nicotine levels</td>
<td>Initial adverse effects may include throat and nasal irritation, discouraging use for smoking behavior</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nicotine inhaler</td>
<td>10 mg cartridges used over 20 min. 6–16 cartridges per day</td>
<td>Substitutes for smoking behavior</td>
<td>Low nicotine levels</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Varenicline (Chantix®)

- No significant effect on birth weight or preterm birth were associated with nicotine patch use [56,58,61].
- Nicotine inhaler, tablets/lozenges, and nasal spray
- Class D drugs with known human risk in pregnancies. There is insufficient evidence to assess the safety and effectiveness of nicotine inhaler, tablets/lozenges, and nasal spray, with no RCTs of pregnant smokers.
- Electronic cigarettes
- There are insufficient data on the safety and smoking cessation efficacy of electronic cigarettes during pregnancy with no RCTs or well-designed observational studies in pregnant patients. Based on the lack of human data for safety and efficacy and potential for fetal harm from nicotine, electronic cigarettes are not recommended in pregnant or breast-feeding patients.

Bupropion HCl (Zyban®, Wellbutrin®)

- Class C drug in pregnancy with no known adverse fetal effects.
- There is an FDA black box warning relating to the risk of serious maternal neuropsychiatric events, including suicide.
- In controlled clinical trials, this antidepressant increased success for moderate to heavy smokers >15 cigarettes/day by 50% to 100% in the general population of non-pregnant smokers [7].
- **There are no published clinical trials to assess the safety and efficacy of bupropion as a smoking cessation intervention in pregnancy [7,55].**
- Dose: 300 mg/day (in two divided doses to minimize side effects). Start 2 weeks prior to anticipated quit date and continue up to 7 to 12 weeks.
- Advantages: in non-pregnant populations, non-nicotine and continue up to 7 to 12 weeks.
- Disadvantages: contraindicated if history of seizures, head trauma, alcohol abuse, or anorexia. Multiple-drug interactions with anti-HIV medications.

Varenicline (Chantix®)

- Class C drug in pregnancy with no adequate or well-controlled studies in pregnant women.
- There is an FDA black box warning relating to the risk of serious neuropsychiatric events, including suicide.
- Varenicline is a partial nicotine agonist sharing structural similarity with nicotine and competitively binds nicotine acetylcholine receptors.
- In nonpregnant populations, a meta-analysis of nine randomized trials shows that varenicline increased abstinence over placebo at six months or longer (RR 2.33 [CI 1.95–2.80]), over NRT at one year (RR 1.52 [CI 1.22–1.88]), and over bupropion at one year (RR 1.52 [CI 1.01–1.71]) [64].
- **There are no published clinical trials to assess the safety and efficacy of varenicline as a smoking cessation intervention in pregnancy [55].**
- As varenicline shares close structural similarity to nicotine and occupies identical receptor sites and safety data are nonexistent, it is not advisable to use varenicline during gestation and lactation.

Alternative Treatments

- **Acupuncture:** There is no clear evidence that acupuncture, acupressure, laser therapy, or electrostimulation are effective at smoking cessation [70].
- Hypnosis and meditation have been insufficiently studied in pregnant smokers to make a recommendation [9].
- **Stages of change or feedback** known as the transtheoretical model of behavior change assesses an individual’s readiness to act on a new healthier behavior and provides strategies or processes of change to guide the individual through the stages of change to action and maintenance. It is composed of the following constructs: stages of change, processes of change, self-efficacy, decisional balance, and temptation; it has not shown benefit [7].

BREAST-FEEDING

- Abstinence increases breast-feeding initiation and duration [71–73].
- Breast-fed infants of smoking mothers have urinary cotinine levels 50 times higher than breast-fed infants of non-smoking mothers and levels are 10 times higher among bottle-fed infants of women who smoke [23]. Mothers unable to quit smoking in the postpartum period should still be encouraged to breast-feed. Mothers should be counseled to avoid smoking at home [72].
- Incentive-based programs for tobacco cessation may increase duration of breast-feeding [71].

POSTPARTUM

- 50% to 60% of those who quit smoking relapse in the first four months after delivery [4,9], likely due to a period of great stress and emotional fluctuations.
- Risk factors for relapse include depression, family members who smoke, pregestational tobacco use, and low weight gain in pregnancy [73].
• Effective strategies for preventing relapse have not yet been identified [73,74], but smoking cessation interventions should be continued in collaboration with primary physicians and other health care personnel (Table 22.5).

PREVENTION

Relapse Prevention
• Insufficient evidence to support use of any specific interventions for helping smokers who have successfully quit for a short time and prevent relapse [73].
• It may be more efficient to focus efforts on initial cessation attempts [7,74].
• Biochemical markers may be used to monitor abstinence once cessation has occurred: carbon monoxide and urinary cotinine [23]. More research is needed to validate this method [7].

Reduce Initiation of Smoking
Prevent sale of tobacco to young people, prohibit smoking in public places, increase tobacco taxation, workplace smoking cessation programs, ban on tobacco sponsorship of sporting and cultural events [74,44,75].

Reduce Pregnancy Complications of Smoking
Vitamin C 1000 mg and vitamin E 400 IU supplementation has been associated with a reduction in placental abruption and preterm birth among smokers [76].

Reduce Consequences of Smoking in Newborn
Supplemental vitamin C 500 mg a day started before 22 weeks by smokers who decline to quit improves newborn pulmonary function tests and decreases wheezing through one year in the offspring [77].

FUTURE
• Development of clinical trials needed to determine safety and efficacy of pharmacologic therapies, such as nicotine replacement, bupropion, and varenicline [7–9,55].
• Clinical trials of alternative interventions, such as contingency management with use of incentives to reduce tobacco use in pregnancy.
• Evaluation of introduction and use of biochemical markers of exposure to tobacco in pregnancy and the postpartum period.
• Existing tobacco surveillance practices should be modified to include screening and intervention for use of smokeless tobacco and electronic cigarettes.
• Continued investigations should include an antinicotin vaccine—initial trials have not been successful—and new pharmaceutical approaches.

REFERENCES
2. Oncken CA, Dietz PM, Tong VT et al. Prenatal tobacco prevention and cessation interventions for women in low- and middle-income countries. Acta Obstet Gynecol Scand 2010; 89(4): 442–53. [Review; Tobacco prevention and intervention strategies for decreasing tobacco exposure and use in LMIC countries are reviewed. Recommendations of a working group of tobacco control and perinatal experts are reviewed. Key research priorities are identified, including evaluating the impact of tobacco control policy on tobacco use and SHS exposure among pregnant and reproductive-age women, development of culturally adapted interventions, exploring use of current population level and clinical interventions for cessation among pregnant and reproductive-age women.]
8. Chamberlain C, O’Mara-Eves A, Oliver S, Caird JR, Perlen SM, Eades SJ, Thomas J. Psychosocial interventions for supporting women to stop smoking in pregnancy. Cochrane Database System Rev 2013, 10: CD001055. doi:10.1002/14651858.CD001055.pub4. [77 trials > 29,000 women; Update of previous Cochrane Review on this topic. Seven new RCTs included and four cluster RCTs. Smoking cessation interventions significantly reduced low birth weight (RR 0.83; 0.73–0.95) and preterm birth (RR 0.86; 0.74–0.98) as well as smoking in pregnancy (RR 0.94; 0.93–0.96). Eight trials of smoking relapse prevention (n > 1000) showed no significant reduction in relapse rates.]
13. Wang X, Zuckerman B, Pearson C et al. Maternal cigarette smoking, metabolic gene polymorphism, and infant birth weight. JAMA 2002; 287: 195–202. [II-2, n = 74]; Case-control study. Mothers of singleton live births were evaluated by PTB, LBW, and maternal smoking status in pregnancy. The maternal genotype of CYP1A1 and GSTT1 genotypes for each variable was assessed. The greatest reduction for birth weight was found in smoking mothers with CYP1A1 AA/aa genotypes with absent GSTT1 (~125 g, p < 0.001). LBW infants and PTB were also significantly more prevalent in pregnant smokers with CYP1A1 AA/aa genotypes with absent GSTT1.
matched controls were evaluated for adverse pregnancy outcome on the basis of GSTT1 (del), CYP1A1, and CYP2A6 gene polymorphisms in mother and fetus. Fetal GSTT1(del) was significantly and specifically associated with low birth weight in pregnant smokers. Other adverse pregnancy outcomes were not associated with the gene polymorphisms studied.)


20. Bruin JE, Hertzog CG, Holloway AC. Long-term consequences of fetal and neonatal nicotine exposure: A critical review. Toxicol Sci 2010; 116: 364–74. [Review; Landmark toxicology review with focus on long-term effects of developmental nicotine exposure using existing data from animal models. “The evidence provided in this review overwhelmingly indicates that nicotine should no longer be considered the ‘safe’ component of cigarette smoke. In fact, many of the adverse postnatal health outcomes associated with maternal smoking during pregnancy may be attributable, at least in part, to nicotine alone.”]

21. Heil SH, Scott TL, Higgins ST. An overview of principles of effective treatment of substance use disorders and their potential application to pregnant cigarette smokers. Drug Alcohol Depend 2009; 104(Suppl. 1): S106–14. [Review; Novel interventions for tobacco cessation in pregnancy can be found from interventions for other substance use disorders. Promising modalities include contingency management using alternative reinforcers that accommodate deficits in D2 dopamine receptor density (voucher-based CM); medications modafinil and depranyl; cotreatment of depression. “Certainly, pharmacotherapies offer a potentially important treatment strategy for improving outcomes with pregnant smokers.” “The evidence that cessation medications increase abstinence rates in pregnant smokers is inconclusive.”]


27. Wikstrom AK, Cnattingius S, Stephansson O. Maternal use of Swedish snuff (snus) and risk of stillbirth. Epidemiology 2010; 21(6): 772–8. [II-2; Population-based cohort study of Swedish Medical Birth Register involving 7629 snuff users, 41,488 smokers of one to 10 daily cigarettes, and 17,014 smokers of greater than 10 cigarettes. Stillbirth rate was significantly elevated for snuff users [aOR 1.6 (1.1–2.3)], “light” smokers [aOR 1.4 (1.2–1.7)], and heavy smokers [aOR 2.4 (2.0–3.0)] when compared to 504,531 nonsmoking controls.]

28. Gupta PC, Subramoney S. Smokeless tobacco use and risk of stillbirth a cohort study in Mumbai, India. Epidemiology 2006; 17: 47–51. [II-1]


35. Heil SH, Higgins ST, Bernstein IM. Effects of voucher-based incentives on abstinence from cigarette smoking and fetal growth among pregnant women. Addiction 2008; 103(6): 1009–18. [I, n = 82 pregnant tobacco users; Participants were randomized to contingent or noncontingent voucher conditions. Vouchers could be exchanged for retail items during pregnancy and up to 12 weeks postpartum. Contingent vouchers were earned for biochemically verified abstinence. Participants in the contingent voucher system had significantly increased abstinence at delivery (41% vs. 10%; p = 0.003) and 12 weeks postpartum (24% vs. 3%; p = 0.006). Birth weight was significantly increased (3355 g vs. 3102 g, p = 0.06). Trend toward lower % LBW and % PTB was observed but not significant. Cost of incentive was $334 per participant.]


47. Lancaster T, Bergson G, Stead LF. Physician advice for smoking cessation. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2008; (4): CD000165. [Meta-analysis; 41 trials, n = 31,000 nonpregnant participants; Brief advice versus no advice detected a significant increase in quitting (RR 1.66; 1.42–1.94, 17 trials). More intensive intervention increased estimated effect (RR 1.84; 1.60–2.13, 11 trials). A small benefit of more intensive intervention over brief advice was noted. Assuming an unassisted quit rate of 2% to 3%, quit rates may increase further 1% to 2%.]


53. Stead LF, Perera R, Bullen C et al. Nicotine replacement therapy for smoking cessation. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2008; (1): CD000146. [Meta-analysis; 111 trials, N > 40,000 nonpregnant adults; NRT of any type resulted in abstinence compared to control (RR 1.58; 1.50–1.66); nicotine gum (RR 1.43; 1.33–1.53), nicotine patch (RR 1.53; 1.31–1.81), nicotine inhaler (RR 1.90; 1.36–2.67), lozenge (RR 1.20; 1.63–2.45), and nasal spray (RR 2.02; 1.49–3.73); 4 mg gum was associated with significant benefit when compared to 2 mg gum in heavy smokers. Quit rates were increased by 50% to 70% with the addition of an NRT.]

54. Lumley J, Chamberlain C, Dowsett T, Oliver S, Oakley L, Watson L. Interventions for promoting smoking cessation during pregnancy. *Cochrane Database System Rev* 2009; 3: CD001055. doi:10.1002/14651858.CD001055.pub3. [Meta-analysis; Seventy-two trials are included. Fifty-six randomized controlled trials (over 20,000 pregnant women) and nine cluster-randomized trials (over 5000 pregnant women) provided data on smoking cessation outcomes. There was a significant reduction in smoking in late pregnancy following interventions [risk ratio (RR) 0.94, 95% confidence interval (CI) 0.93 to 0.96]. Smoking cessation interventions reduced low birthweight (RR 0.83, 95% CI 0.73 to 0.95) and preterm birth (RR 0.86, 95% CI 0.74 to 0.98), and there was a 53.91g (95% CI 10.44g to 95.38g) increase in mean birthweight.]

55. Oncken CA, Kranzler HR. What do we know about the role of pharmacotherapy for smoking cessation before or during pregnancy? *Nicotine Tob Res* 2009; 11: 1265–73. [Review; NRT has not been demonstrated to have an advantage over placebo treatment. Studies are limited to small sample size and/or poor medication compliance. NRT use is associated with increased birth weight. Psychosocial interventions should be first treatment option for pregnant smokers.]

56. Pollack KJ, Oncken CA, Lipkus IM et al. Nicotine replacement and behavioral therapy for smoking cessation in pregnancy. *Am J Prev Med* 2007; 33: 297–305. [RCT, n = 181; Women were randomised to a self-selected NRT arm (patch, gum, lozenge, or no therapy arm) (N = 122) versus behavioral modification (N = 59). This trial was stopped by DSMB after an a priori criterion of a near-twofold increase in adverse pregnancy outcomes in the NRT arm (30% vs. 17%). Further analysis revealed that this effect was no longer present when controlling for history of preterm birth (32% vs. 12%, respectively).]


60. Oncken C, Dornelas E, Greene J et al. Nicotine gum for pregnant smokers: A randomized controlled trial. *Obstet Gynecol* 2008; 112: 859–67. [RCT, n = 194; RCT women randomized to 2 mg nicotine gum (N = 100) versus placebo (N = 94) for six weeks. NRT group was associated with higher birth weight, decreased LBW, and lower risk of delivery prior to 37 weeks gestation. The mean gestational age at delivery was clinically significant (38.9 vs. 38 weeks, p < 0.014). The cessation rate was low (33% NRT vs. 9.6% on placebo) at six weeks. This trial remained underpowered and was suspended by the DSMB for poor cessation.]

61. Wisborg K, Henriksen TB, Jespersen LB et al. Nicotine patches for pregnant smokers: A randomized controlled study. *Obstet Gynecol* 2000; 96: 967–71. [RCT, n = 250; Behavior modification therapy combined with either 15-mg NRT patch for eight weeks followed by 10-mg NRT patch for three weeks (N = 120) or placebo (N = 122). No differences in birth weight, LBW, preterm birth with adequate power. Only 11% of those in the treatment group completed a full course of therapy.]


64. Cahill K, Stead LF, Lancaster T. Nicotine receptor partial agonists for smoking cessation. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2008; (3): CD006103. [Meta-analysis; nine RCTs, n = 7627; Meta-analysis of nine randomized trials of varenicline increased abstinence over placebo at six months or longer (RR 2.33, 1.95–2.80), over bupropion at one year (RR 1.52, 1.22–1.88), and over NRT at one year (RR 1.31, 1.01–1.71). There is a need for independent community-based trials of varenicline to test its efficacy and safety in smokers with varying comorbidities and risk patterns. There is a need for further trials of the efficacy of treatment extended beyond 12 weeks.]


RR 1.69; 1.53–1.85), nortryptiline (6 trials, n = 975, RR 2.03; 1.48–2.78); both increased long-term cessation. Insufficient evidence to demonstrate any additional benefit with the addition of NRT to these medications. There is no significant effect of SSRIs, MAOIs, or venlafaxine.]

68. David S, Lancaster T, Stead LF. Opioid antagonists for smoking cessation. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2001; (3): CD003086. [Meta-analysis; four trials; No significant differences in long-term (6 months) abstinence rates.]

70. White AR, Rampes H, Campbell JL. Acupuncture and related interventions for smoking cessation. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2006; (1): CD000009. [Meta-analysis; 24 studies; No significant differences in short- or long-term abstinence rates.]

71. Higgins TM, Higgins ST, Heil SH et al. Effects of cigarette smoking cessation on breastfeeding duration. Nicotine Tob Res 2010; 12(5): 483–88. [II-1, n = 158; RCT where first 32 participants were assigned (not randomized) to their treatment or control group for pilot study purposes. Participants received incentive-based intervention or routine administration of comparable vouchers (control). Women receiving incentive-based treatment have significantly higher breastfeeding duration 35% versus 17% at 12 weeks postpartum (p = 0.002) as well as abstinence 25% versus 3% (p < 0.01).]


73. Soloman LJ, Higgins ST, Heil SH et al. Predictors of postpartum relapse to smoking. Drug Alcohol Depend 2007; 90(2–3): 224–7. [II-3, n = 87; Multivariate analyses of predictors of postpartum relapse of women who quit smoking in pregnancy. Relapse rate of 48% within 6 months postpartum. Friends/family members who smoke, heavy prepregnancy smoking, higher depression scores, and lower weight gain concerns were associated with increased risk of relapse. Interventions at targeting postpartum relapse include reducing postpartum depression.]

74. Hajek P, Stead LF, West R. Relapse prevention interventions for smoking cessation. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2009; (1): CD003999. [Meta-analysis, 36 RCTs; There is insufficient evidence to support the use of any specific behavioral or pharmacologic intervention for helping smokers who have successfully quit for a short time and avoid relapse.]


Drug abuse

Neil S. Seligman

KEY POINTS

- Estimates of the incidence of drug abuse during pregnancy, based on patient interview and toxicologic testing, vary from 0.4% to 27%. Polysubstance abuse (including tobacco and alcohol) is common.
- All pregnant women should be screened for illicit drug using tools such as the 4Ps (Table 23.3).
- Treatment of substance-abusing pregnant women requires a multidisciplinary team.
- Promoting preconception behavioral change or, ideally, strategies to prevent initiation of substance use is preferred over drug abuse treatment during pregnancy.

Marijuana

- Marijuana is the most commonly used drug during pregnancy; approximately one in 20 pregnant women use marijuana.
- The effects of marijuana exposure are mild, limited to decreased length of gestation (0.8 weeks) and birth weight (172 g), and are likely the result of alterations in hemodynamics. Marijuana use during pregnancy may increase the risk of sudden infant death syndrome.
- Marijuana is believed to alter fetal brain development by binding to opioid receptors in the central nervous system, which are present as early as the 14th week of gestation.

Opioids

- Infections (including hepatitis, HIV, and others) account for the majority of complications related to parenteral opioid use.
- Neonatal withdrawal from opioids occurs in 60% to 70% of exposed neonates.
- Oral replacement therapy is the standard treatment for opioid addiction. Replacement therapy diminishes the risks of perinatal transmission of hepatitis C and HIV and increases utilization of prenatal care among other benefits. Higher recidivism rates and an increased rate of complications are seen with detoxification. Methadone (often preferred) and buprenorphine are the most common options for replacement therapy. Methadone is titrated to the effective dose that prevents withdrawal symptoms.
- Opioids decrease baseline fetal heart rate and variability. Optimal timing of a nonstress test or biophysical profile is at least four to six hours following the last dose of medication.

Cocaine

- Systemic effects of cocaine include hypertension, tachycardia, and mydriasis. Pregnancy is associated with increased sensitivity of the cardiovascular system to the harmful effects of cocaine, such as arrhythmias and myocardial infarction.
- Fetal and neonatal effects of cocaine include higher rates of congenital malformations, intrauterine growth restriction, low birth weight (<2500 g), small for gestational age, preterm premature rupture of membranes, preterm birth, abruption, stillbirth, and emergent delivery. Cocaine exposure also results in shorter gestation, smaller head circumference, decreased length, and neonatal withdrawal.
- Interventions for cocaine dependence primarily involve psychosocial therapies; currently, there are no Food and Drug Administration (FDA)-approved pharmacotherapies for treatment of cocaine dependence during pregnancy.

Others

- The incidence of amphetamine use during pregnancy varies from 0.1% to 1.0% whereas methamphetamine use may be up to 5.2% in some high prevalence areas. Ecstasy use among pregnant women varies from 0.6% to 8.8%.
- Amphetamine and methamphetamine use during pregnancy has been associated with an increased risk of preterm birth, alterations in fetal and neonatal size, neonatal withdrawal, and long-term developmental consequences. The complications of ecstasy use during pregnancy are not well characterized.
- Benzodiazepine exposure is associated with preterm birth, delivery by cesarean section, low birth weight, low Apgar score, and neonatal sedation and withdrawal.
- Phencyclidine does not appear to cause congenital malformations but is associated with a higher incidence of prematurity, intrauterine growth restriction, low birth weight, and small for gestational age infants. Developmental effects, including neurological effects, behavioral problems, and sleep disturbances, have been noted.
- An increased risk of limb reduction defects, central nervous system anomalies, and neural tube defects has been reported in association with lysergic acid diethylamide (LSD) use.

BACKGROUND

Drug abuse is a chronic medical illness. In general, continued use of harmful substances is not intended to harm the fetus.
but rather a response to acute psychological or physical need [1]. In current terminology, the term “substance use disorder” has replaced “abuse” and “addiction” (Table 23.1). There is no safe pattern of illicit substance use.

**INCIDENCE**

Despite well-established risks, the prevalence of illicit substance use by reproductive-age women has steadily increased. Substance use by reproductive-age females represents possible teratogenic exposures. Estimates of use in the general population are available from the 2013 National Survey on Drug Use and Health (NSDUH) [2]:

- 24.6 million Americans (9.4%) aged 12 and older used drugs in the past month.
- 6.9 million were diagnosed with dependence or abuse of illicit drugs.
- Most commonly used illicit drugs were marijuana, non-medical use of psychotherapeutics (narcotics, tranquilizers, stimulants, and sedatives), cocaine, and hallucinogens.
- Substance abuse is lower in females (7.3%) than in males (11.5%).

During pregnancy, substance use ranges from 0.4% to 27% depending on the population surveyed based on patient interviews and urine toxicology testing at the initial prenatal visit and delivery [3]. According to the 2013 NSDUH [2],

- 5.4% of pregnant women aged 15–44 reported current illicit drug use, corresponding to >200,000 infants born annually exposed to illicit drugs in utero.
- Illicit drug use during pregnancy is more prevalent among younger women (15–17 years old: 14.6% vs. 18–25: 8.6% and 26–44: 3.2%).
- Fewer women reported current drug use during the third trimester compared to the first or second trimester (2.4% vs. 9.0% and 4.8%, respectively).

**RISK FACTORS**

Attributes common among pregnant substance-abusing women include a history of domestic violence, sexual assault, poverty, poor self-esteem, and difficulty with relationships. The use of multiple substances at the same time is common. Substance use increases the risk of sexually transmitted infections, including hepatitis C and HIV, endocarditis, and tuberculosis [5] through needle sharing, risky sexual behaviors (e.g., unprotected intercourse, sex with multiple partners, trading drugs for sex, and prostitution), and incarceration (resulting from the purchase and sale of illicit drugs, prostitution, or theft). Drug-dependent women have higher rates of psychopathology, which may impede optimal management. Factors that may heighten the suspicion of drug abuse are shown in Table 23.2.

**WORKUP**

Options for the evaluation of illicit substance use include interview, questionnaires, and chemical tests. Use of open-ended questions and motivational interviewing techniques may be helpful [6]. The “4Ps” is a frequently recommended screening tool for pregnant women (Table 23.3) [7]. T-ACE, TWEAK (both specifically designed for pregnant women), CAGE-AID, CRAFFT (for adolescents), and The Drug Abuse Screening Test (DAST) are other available options.

### Table 23.1 Definitions

- **Substance use disorder**: defined by the DSM-V as variable consumption resulting in significant impairment or distress including: 1) social or interpersonal consequences; 2) failure to fulfill obligations at work, school, or home; 3) physically hazardous situations; 4) tolerance; 5) withdrawal; 6) tolerance; 7) substance is taken in larger amounts and for longer than was expected; 8) persistent desire or unsuccessful efforts to cut down; 9) excessive time is spent in obtaining or using the substance; 10) important work, recreation, or social life activities are reduced or given up; 11) substance use is continued despite knowledge of the adverse consequences; 12) craving or strong desire or urge to use a specific substance.

**Mild**: 2–3 of the above within a 12 month period; replaces “abuse.”

**Moderate (4–5) or severe (≥6)**: of the above within a 12 month period; replaces “substance dependence.”

- **Physical dependence**: adaptation to use such that withdrawal symptoms manifest with abrupt discontinuation or tolerance.
- **Addiction**: a primary chronic disease characterized by impaired control over behavior, drug craving, inability to consistently abstain from drug use, and diminished recognition of significant problems with behaviors and interpersonal relationships.

- **Table 23.2 Common Signs and Symptoms That Should Indicate a High Risk of Drug Use**

  - No prenatal care, limited prenatal care (three or fewer prenatal visits prior to 28 weeks gestation), or late prenatal care (initiation of prenatal care after the first trimester)
  - Multiple missed prenatal care appointments
  - Impaired school or work performance
  - History of unexplained adverse obstetrical or neonatal outcomes (e.g., abruption)
  - Children with neurodevelopmental problems
  - Children not currently living in the home or involvement by child protective services
  - Medical history of substance abuse or substance abuse-related problems
  - Women on maintenance therapy with either methadone or buprenorphine
  - Family history of substance abuse
  - Frequent encounters with law enforcement
  - Partners who have a history of substance abuse
  - Homelessness
  - Physical stigma of substance use (track marks, related infections) or withdrawal
  - History of physical or sexual abuse
  - Sudden behavioral changes or inappropriate behavior, including disorientation, somnolence, loose associations, unfocused anger
  - Signs or symptoms of preterm labor or abruption
  - Severe hypertension (blood pressure >160/110 mmHg)
  - Unexplained vaginal bleeding or fetal demise
In Martinez (CA): The Born Free Project, Contra Costa.

Table 23.3 4Ps

1. Parents: Did any of your parents have a problem with alcohol or other drug use?
2. Partner: Does your partner have a problem with alcohol or drug use?
3. Past: In the past, have you had difficulties in your life because of alcohol or other drugs, including prescription medications?
4. Present: In the past month have you drank any alcohol or used other drugs?

Scoring: Any “yes” should trigger further questions.

Source: Adapted from ACOG CO 524 and Ewing H. A practical guide to intervention in health and social services with pregnant and post-partum addicts and alcoholics: theoretical framework, brief screening tool, key interview questions, and strategies for referral to recovery resources. In Martinez (CA): The Born Free Project, Contra Costa County Department of Health Services; 1990.

Chemical tests using samples of maternal blood, hair, saliva, sweat, or urine or fetal/neonatal specimens (amniotic fluid, cord blood, meconium, blood, hair, or urine) are available for most illicit substances. Verbal consent should be obtained before obtaining these tests. Urinalysis is the most commonly used laboratory screening for substance use. Providers should be aware of the strengths and limitations of this test. False negative test results can occur when drug ingestion occurred too recently for the substance to appear in the urine, when sufficient time has passed to allow complete drug clearance, or with dilute urine (Table 23.4). False positive results can be as high as 5% [8]. For example, labetalol may create a false positive result on urine drug screening for amphetamines [9]. Not all substances can be detected with a typical urine drug screen [8]. For example, more specific testing may be required when oxycodone use is suspected. Urine drug testing cannot diagnose a drug-use disorder or its severity, nor can it determine frequency, amount, or route of use [8]. The physician should also be aware of the limitations of neonatal testing. Drugs may be present in meconium for months, making it difficult to differentiate between the occasional user, continued substance use, and women on treatment (e.g., methadone maintenance therapy) with no recent substance use. Maternal self-report alone underestimates the prevalence of substance abuse; however, routine urine drug screening is not currently recommended.

When maternal history and/or laboratory tests are positive for illicit drug use, a complete drug history should be obtained for each substance. The acronym “DRUG” may be useful to remember the components of the drug history.

- Drug name
- Route (e.g., intravenous, oral)
- Used how much, how often
- Gotten how (e.g., prostitution, theft)

The initial evaluation of substance-abusing pregnant women presenting to the labor and delivery unit for any reason should include a urine drug screen, ideally with consent.

**MANAGEMENT**

In general, pregnant women are highly motivated to decrease or stop using illicit substances to avoid potential negative consequences for the fetus. Women who acknowledge their use of illicit substances should be counseled and offered treatment as necessary [10,11]. Treatment of substance-abusing pregnant women requires a multidisciplinary team. Providers must be aware of the specific needs of the pregnant substance abuser. Management options include psychosocial treatments [3] such as motivational interviewing [6], cognitive behavioral therapies, 12-step approaches, community/social network approaches contingency management, pharmacologic therapies, and inpatient treatment. Contingency management strategies (rewards for good behavior) are effective in improving retention of pregnant women in illicit drug treatment programs [12].

**PREVENTION**

The prevention of drug abuse is paramount to drug abuse treatment. Prevention strategies are focused on increasing public awareness of the harmful effects of drug use through advertising campaigns, school programs, and encouraging parents to educate their children. Physicians should take an active role in drug abuse prevention by routinely counseling their patients about the negative consequences of drug abuse.

**PRECONCEPTION COUNSELING**

Substance use is an important component of the history in women seeking preconception counseling because fetal drug exposure is preventable. Women with a positive history and/or laboratory testing for substance abuse should be counseled about the reproductive effects of the specific substances along with the risks and benefits of pharmacological and nonpharmacological treatment. Women should be encouraged to postpone conception until after initiating or completing drug treatment. Because of the reproductive risks of certain pharmacological treatments, reliable methods of contraception should be encouraged. Anovulatory cycles and infertility are more common in substance-abusing women, especially with opioid use; however, it should be stressed that pregnancy can definitely occur without adequate contraception. There is some evidence that preconception health promotion is associated with a positive effect on maternal behavior change (specifically binge drinking) but more research is needed [13] (see Chapter 1 of Obstetric Evidence Based Guidelines).

**PRENATAL CARE**

All pregnant women should be screened for the use of illicit substances, tobacco, and alcohol [7,14,15]. In fact, all

---

Table 23.4  Length of Time Drugs Are Present in Urine

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chemicals</th>
<th>Length of Time</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Opioids</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Codeine</td>
<td>2 days</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Morphine</td>
<td>2 days</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Heroin</td>
<td>1 day</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Methadone</td>
<td>3 days</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cocaine</td>
<td>1–3 days</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amphetamines</td>
<td>2 days</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Benzodiazepines</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Single use</td>
<td>3 days</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chronic use</td>
<td>6 weeks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Marijuana</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Single use</td>
<td>3 days</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chronic use</td>
<td>30 days</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
women over 12 years old should be screened [16]. Obtaining a history of drug abuse may be facilitated by creating a private, safe, nonjudgmental atmosphere (see earlier section titled “Workup”). Women should be informed that screening is universal, the intent is to ensure appropriate prenatal care, and answers are confidential [7]. Maternal history alone may not be sufficient when there is a high suspicion of substance abuse. Reluctance to admit substance use may stem from fear of legal repercussions and involvement of child protective services. Providers should address misinformation and dispel any myths about the risks and ramifications of substance use. Eighteen states consider substance abuse during pregnancy a form of child endangerment and have laws requiring mandatory reporting of substance abuse during pregnancy [1]. Criminalization of addiction in pregnancy is both ineffective and ethically inappropriate [1].

Components of the history and physical exam and the recommended laboratory evaluation are shown in Table 23.5. Because of the frequent association with poor nutrition, these women may benefit from nutritional counseling. Continued positive drug screens may warrant ultrasound and nonstress test (NST) surveillance. Whether referral to a maternal-fetal medicine specialist is required depends on physician experience and the presence of other comorbidities. Regardless, pregnant women who abuse illicit drugs may benefit from referral to specialized programs integrating addiction treatment, obstetrical and medical care, social services, and psychiatric support where available [1,8].

### Table 23.5 Elements of the Initial Evaluation

- History of drug sequelae (thrombophlebitis, bacterial endocarditis, hepatitis)
- Psychosocial history (abuse, domestic violence, depression/anxiety/bipolar, inpatient psych admission)
- Thorough drug history (what, how much, how often, how obtained, taken how)
- Observation for signs and symptoms of intoxication or withdrawal
- Assessment of nutritional status
- Physical exam (sequelae of drug use: track marks, skin lesions from intradermal injection aka “skin popping,” abscess scars, dentition)
- Dating ultrasound
- Laboratory evaluation: CBC with differential, basic metabolic panel, liver function tests, hepatitis B and C antibody, RPR, blood type and antibody screen, HIV (with counseling), urinalysis and culture, urine drug screen, TB skin test, gonorrhea, chlamydia, wet mount (trichomonas)

#### MARIJUANA (CANNABIS) AND SYNTHETIC CANNABANOIDs

### Historic Notes

Cannabis has been used for medicinal purposes for thousands of years and is among the earliest non-food-bearing plants cultivated by humans [17].

### Diagnosis/Definition

More than 400 chemicals are found in Cannabis sativa, many of which are the same toxic substances found in cigarette smoke. The primary active chemical in marijuana is tetrahydrocannabinol (THC), but marijuana contains more than 400 chemicals. Marinol (dronabinol), a synthetic preparation of Δ⁹-THC, is indicated for treatment of anorexia and weight loss in patients with AIDS and of nausea and vomiting associated with chemotherapy. Dried cannabis leaves contain up to 12% THC. Some common street names for marijuana include pot, grass, herb, weed, Mary Jane, reefer, skunk, boom, gangster, kif, chronic, and ganja. Marijuana is most commonly smoked but can also be taken orally. “Spice” or K2 refers to marijuana alternatives made from dried plant material mixed with synthetic cannabinoids [18].

### Symptoms

The symptoms of marijuana intoxication include euphoria, tachycardia, conjunctival congestion, and anxiety [19].

### Epidemiology/Incidence

Marijuana is the most commonly used illicit drug in the United States and the most commonly used illicit drug during pregnancy. Of women who use illicit drugs during pregnancy, 75% to 80% use marijuana [20]. The prevalence of marijuana use during pregnancy ranges from 2%–28% (typically 2%–5%) [21,22]. Additionally, continued marijuana use decreases across gestation; therefore, marijuana use at term most likely represents chronic use. Admission for treatment of marijuana use is increasing. Among pregnant women admitted for substance abuse treatment, marijuana was the primary drug in 6% of women in 1992 compared to 20% in 2012 [23]. Legalization and increased societal acceptance of marijuana is expected to result in increased marijuana use during pregnancy. Medicinal marijuana use should not be condoned during pregnancy [22].

### Etiology/Basic Pathophysiology

THC crosses the placenta and can be detected in fetal tissues for several weeks after use [24]. Fetal plasma levels are approximately 10% of maternal levels, but greater exposure can result from repetitive use [22]. Chronic marijuana use alters uterine artery blood flow [25] and may decrease uteroplacental perfusion [26]. Compared to cigarettes, smoking marijuana is associated with fivefold higher levels of carbon monoxide [21]. When taken in combination, marijuana can potentiate the effects of other illicit drugs.

### Risk Factors/Associations

Women who use marijuana during pregnancy are less likely to take folic acid and are more likely to be underweight, single, have lower levels of education and income, and be victims of intimate partner violence [22]. Alcohol and tobacco use is two to three times more likely among marijuana users [27].

### Complications

Limitations of the current research on the effects of marijuana use during pregnancy include ascertainment (e.g., self-report), frequent use of other substances, (especially tobacco), sociodemographic differences, and recent increase in prevalence of prenatal marijuana use. Although it is difficult to separate the effects of marijuana from its contextual associations of use, subtle effects could have a large impact because exposure is so frequent [28]. Additionally, much of the research was performed during a period in which marijuana potency
was fourfold less than it is today. Overall, the risk of obstetrical and/or neonatal complications increases in relation to the amount of marijuana use and is greatest among frequent users (>4–6 times per week) [29]. Infrequent use appears to pose limited risk. Little is known about the reproductive risks of synthetic cannabinoids.

- **Congenital anomalies**: Multiple large studies have shown no obvious pattern of malformations associated with prenatal marijuana use [22,30]. One study reported an increased incidence of anencephaly with first trimester marijuana use (OR 2.5, 95% CI 1.3–4.9), which may reflect less frequent use of supplemental folic acid [22].

- **Obstetrical complications**: Frequent marijuana use (>5 times per week) is associated with a 0.8-week reduction in length of gestation [31] but does not appear to be an independent risk factor for PTB. Likewise, marijuana exposure was not a predictor of other adverse outcomes [21,32]; however, NICU admission may be more likely (OR 1.54 95% CI 1.14–2.07). Reports of an increased risk of stillbirth are at least partially confounded by cigarette smoking [22,32].

- **Fetal/neonatal morphometrics**: Continued marijuana use was associated with a 172 g (95% CI –208 to –35 g) reduction in mean birth weight [33]. Marijuana use during the first 18 weeks was associated with a smaller, but still significant, reduction in weight (~95.4 g 95% CI –168 to –23 g). Heavy use (i.e., daily) was associated with the greatest reduction in weight. The effect, if any, on SGA (OR 1.3, 95% CI 1.03–1.62), length, and head circumference (approximately –0.5 cm) is small [20,22,32,34]. Additionally, there are mixed findings with respect to low birth weight (LBW) [22].

- **Neonatal withdrawal**: Examination of neonates of moderate to heavy marijuana smokers using the Brazelton Neonatal Assessment Scale demonstrated altered responses to visual stimuli, increased tremulousness, and a high-pitched cry [35]. These findings were no longer present by one month of age.

- **Long-term neonatal outcome**: Exposure to marijuana through second-hand smoke is a risk factor for sudden infant death syndrome [36,37]. Cannabinoid receptors in the fetal central nervous system, present as early as 14 weeks, play a role in normal brain development. Marijuana is believed to alter fetal brain development by binding these receptors leading to changes in synaptic structure and function and thus altered behavior, a predilection for adult neuropsychiatric disorders, and early onset marijuana use [22,37,38]. The main findings from longitudinal studies of perinatal marijuana exposure are: impaired mental development at nine months, increased aggression and inattention at 18 months (in girls), impaired memory and decreased verbal scores at 36–48 months, increased anxiety and depression, increased externalizing behavior (e.g., impulsivity, hyperactivity) at 6–10 years, impaired abstract and visual reasoning at 10 years, impaired visuo-perceptual functioning at 9–12 years, and altered visuospatial memory at 18–22 years [39].

**Therapy**
Currently, there is no approved pharmacotherapy for marijuanna abuse.

**Antepartum Testing**
The role of antepartum surveillance for marijuana exposure is insufficiently studied to make recommendations.

**Anesthesia**
Drugs affecting maternal heart rate and blood pressure should be used with caution. Adverse interactions have been reported between marijuana and drugs such as propranolol [40]. Likewise, during cesarean section under general anesthesia, the combination of marijuana and certain inhaled anesthetics can result in pronounced myocardial depression [40]. If general anesthesia is planned, the airway effects of chronic smoke inhalation should be considered [40]. Cross-tolerance to opioids and benzodiazepines may make dosing difficult [40].

**Postpartum/Breast-Feeding**
THC levels in breast milk are up to eight times higher than in maternal serum [37]. Reported effects of marijuana use during breast-feeding include sedation, lethargy, less frequent and shorter feedings, and delayed motor development at one year [41]. The AAP, ACOG, and ABM strongly advise that **women should not use marijuana while breast-feeding** as it may be hazardous to the infant and nursing mother [22,37,41,42].

**OPIOIDS: HEROIN AND PRESCRIPTION OPIOID ANALGESICS**

**Historic Notes**
Opioids are among the world’s oldest known drugs. Opium is the dried “latex” of the opium poppy, which is grown mainly in Southeast Asia. Use of opium for its therapeutic benefits predates recorded history. Historically, opium has incited significant social, political, and economic strife. Opium contains morphine, codeine, and thebaine (converted chemically into oxycodeone, oxymorphone, nalbuphine, naloxone, naltrexone, and buprenorphine). Opium can also be converted into heroin, a highly addictive and rapid acting opioid with a short half-life. Its origin dates back to 1874 when it was first introduced as a cure for morphine addiction [43]. Opioid maintenance therapy was adopted in the 1960s as a treatment for heroin addiction [1].

**Diagnosis/Definition**
Opioids are chemicals that bind to the opioid receptor. The term “opiate” refers to the naturally occurring alkaloids (morphine, codeine, heroin) found in opium. Street names for heroin in the United States include “big H,” “black tar,” “chiva,” “hell dust,” “horse,” “negra,” and “smack.” Opioids can be taken orally, sniffed, smoked, absorbed through the skin, or injected (most common route of administration for heroin). Heroin may be “cut” with adulterants, such as quinine, cornstarch, and baby formula powder.

**Symptoms**
Acute intoxication causes euphoria, altered pain sensation, and sedation; however, opioids can affect multiple organ systems (e.g., hypotension, constipation, urinary retention, sedation, miosis). **Withdrawal** presents as abdominal cramps, restlessness,
insomnia, mydriasis, tachycardia, tachypnea, hypertension, lacrimation, rhinorrhea, yawning, piloerection, drug craving, irritability, and anxiety. Withdrawal symptoms may start within four to six hours and last up to one week (longer for methadone) [7]. Opioid overdose, the most serious complication, presents with respiratory depression, miosis pupils, pulmonary edema, obtundation, and/or coma. Overdose because of opioids is usually managed by securing an airway, supporting respiration, and administration of naloxone (Narcan).

Epidemiology/Incidence

Abuse of heroin and prescription opioids in the United States has dramatically increased. 1/1000 pregnant women reported heroin use during pregnancy, and an additional 5.6–12/1000 pregnant women reported misuse of prescription opioid analgesics [8,44]. However, estimates range from <1% to as high as 21% depending on the population [45]. Oxycodone and hydrocodone are the most commonly abused prescription opioid analgesics. Neonatal withdrawal from opioids, also called neonatal abstinence syndrome (NAS), tripled in the United States from 2004 to 2013, indicating a rise in opioid use during pregnancy [46].

Risk Factors/Associations

Many opioid-addicted pregnant women are unmarried (18%), poorly educated (20% finished high school), and prostitute themselves (22%) [43]. The percentage of women who do not receive prenatal care is as high as 80% [43]. Poverty, polysubstance abuse, concomitant mental illness, domestic violence, and a history of physical or sexual assault are common [1].

Complications

Maternal medical complications because of chronic periternal opiate abuse (particularly needle sharing) account for much of the obstetrical issues in these women. Of greatest concern are infections, especially hepatitis B, hepatitis C, and HIV. However, other sequelae include, but are not limited to, bacteremia/sepsis, cellulitis, endocarditis, tuberculosis/pneumonia, and sexually transmitted infections [47]. Recent literature on obstetrical complications pertains mainly to women on methadone maintenance. For the purpose of this section, studies of methadone-maintained women were largely excluded. Few studies have independently evaluated nonsupervised or “street” methadone or misuse of prescription opioid analgesics. Complications related to illicit opioid use and prescribed opioids when used as directed use may not be comparable.

- **Congenital anomalies**: There is no established increased risk of congenital anomalies or pattern of malformations related to fetal opioid exposure [1]; however, a recent case-control study demonstrated an association between prescription opioid analgesics and certain birth defects—congenital ventricular septal defects (OR 2.7, 95% CI, 1.1–6.3), atrioventricular septal defects (OR 2.0, 95% CI, 1.2–3.6), hypoplastic left heart syndrome (OR 2.4, 95% CI, 1.4–4.1), spina bifida (OR 2.0, 95% CI, 1.3–3.2), or gastroschisis (OR 1.8, 95% CI, 1.1–2.9) [48]. This study was based on maternal recall and did not take into account dose [7]. Most prescription opioid analgesics are FDA pregnancy category B and C.

- **Obstetrical complications**: Heroin use is associated with a sixfold increase in obstetric complications [49]. The risk of miscarriage is increased. When the results of four observational studies are averaged, the rate of preterm birth (PTB) is 28% (range 17%–45% [50]) among women addicted to heroin [43]. The incidence of meconium staining ranges from 21% to 46% compared to 12% to 13.8% in drug-free controls [43]; however, some studies have reported no difference. Additionally, there are higher rates of abortion and stillbirth [7]. A retrospective cohort study examining the effect of the type of narcotic used demonstrated rates of “fetal distress” between 47% and 52% for women abusing unsupervised methadone, heroin, and polydrug abuse [51]. Respiratory distress may be less common because of fetal stress from repeated episodes of withdrawal.

- **Fetal/neonatal morphometrics**: Heroin use is associated with decreased birth weight. In a retrospective study, mean birth weight of infants exposed to heroin during pregnancy was lower than controls (2490 g vs. 3176 g) [52]. Combining the results of four controlled studies yielded similar results (mean 2553 g; 691 g compared to controls) [43]. It is not clear whether this is entirely due to heroin or is secondary to other aspects related to heroin addiction (e.g., malnutrition and smoking). One theory is that heroin affects birth weight by lowering fetal plasma leptin levels. Likewise, intrauterine growth restriction (IUGR) and LBW are more common [7]. Averaging the results from controlled studies, the rate of LBW is 41% (vs. 26% in methadone, p ≤ 0.01 and 19% in drug-free controls, p ≤ 0.0025) [43], much of which is due to a higher incidence of IUGR (20% vs. 4%) [53], and small for gestational age (SGA) infants (18% vs. 12% in methadone and 5% in drug-free controls) [43].

- **Neonatal withdrawal**: The incidence of NAS is approximately 60%–70% among opioid-exposed neonates. Symptoms typically appear within the first 72 hours after birth but can occur any time within the first two weeks [7]. NAS is characterized by central nervous system hyperirritability, gastrointestinal dysfunction, respiratory distress, and autonomic symptoms [47,54]. The most serious, life-threatening sequela of NAS is seizures. Up to 30% of opioid-exposed neonates will demonstrate abnormalities on electroencephalogram, and 2% to 11% will have overt seizures [55]. There are several scoring systems to measure the severity of NAS, the most common of which was proposed by Finnegan [56]. Neonates with high NAS scores (e.g., a cumulative Finnegan score of ≥24) may be candidates for replacement therapy (usually neonatal opium solution, morphine, clonidine, or phenobarbital, but buprenorphine has also been recently studied with promising results) [57]. In utero withdrawal is a largely hypothetical concept.

- **Long-term neonatal outcome**: With the exception of methadone, data on long-term outcome of infants exposed to opioids are limited [7]. In a study using videotaped interactions between drug-dependent women and their infants at four months, global ratings of interaction quality were lower compared to non–drug-exposed dyads [54]. Greater body tension and poorer coordination was also observed in the drug-exposed infants. Neurological impairment was also more common at 18 months and
three years of age [58]. Other effects include increased temper, impulsivity, aggressiveness, poorer self-confidence, and impaired memory and perception [30,59].

**Therapy**

The incidence of obstetrical complications is lower among women undergoing treatment [47]. Oral replacement therapy is the standard treatment for opioid-use disorder with dependence. Randomized controlled trials (RCTs) demonstrate an approximately threefold reduction in heroin use and a threefold increase in retention in treatment relative to non-pharmacological treatment [3,60]. In pregnancy, the **maternal and fetal benefits** are extensive and, among others, include preventing complications of illicit drug use (e.g., acquiring and vertically transmitting hepatitis C and HIV), encouraging prenatal care and drug treatment, reducing criminal activity, and avoiding other risks associated with drug culture [7]. Long-term studies have shown that pregnant women enrolled in opioid maintenance therapy rarely resume illicit substance use and can maintain a relatively normal family life [1].

Two approaches to pharmacological treatment are maintenance and detoxification. The goal of **maintenance therapy** is to substitute heroin with another licit drug in quantities sufficient to prevent symptoms of withdrawal and drug craving. **Detoxification**, however, aims to replace heroin with progressively lower doses of a licit substance until treatment is no longer required. **High rates of return to illicit opioid use have been observed with detoxification in pregnant women** [61,62] and nonpregnant individuals [3,63,64]; however, these two approaches to therapy have not been compared in RCTs of pregnant women. Moreover, opiate detoxification in pregnancy requires significant time commitment and extended treatment, with one study reporting 56% success with inpatient detoxification [65]. Additionally, the safety of detoxification during pregnancy is not well studied. **Detoxification has been associated with miscarriage, stillbirth, and alterations in fetal adrenal hormone levels** [66,67], but larger, more recent studies have not confirmed these findings [68,69]. Medically supervised withdrawal is preferred to continued illicit substance use [7]. Pregnant women are given priority in opioid maintenance programs. A list of providers can be found at https://findtreatment.samhsa.gov/TreatmentLocator/faces/QuickSearch.jspx. Opioid replacement is only one aspect of a comprehensive drug treatment program.

**Methadone**

Methadone (FDA category C), a long-acting synthetic μ receptor agonist, is the preferred treatment for opioid addiction during pregnancy. Four RCTs have shown that methadone maintenance decreases illicit opioid use, criminal activity, and mortality rates in nonpregnant heroin-addicted adults [70]. Typical initial stabilization doses range from 10 to 30 mg with the dose increased in 5- to 10-mg increments thereafter. The most appropriate methadone dose is controversial. Doses of at least 60 mg are more effective than lower doses [3,71]. We recommend titrating the daily methadone dose to achieve the dose that effectively prevents symptoms of withdrawal and drug cravings. In our experience the average maintenance dose of methadone is approximately 120 mg/day. As a result of the physiologic changes that occur during pregnancy (decreased plasma levels and increased clearance), dose increases are often needed in the later part of pregnancy to prevent withdrawal. A methadone trough level may be useful in guiding dose adjustments as symptomatic women have significantly lower mean methadone levels than asymptomatic women (0.18 mg/L vs. 0.24 mg/L) [72]. Likewise, trough levels >0.3 mg/L in symptomatic women should be clinically correlated to urine drug screen results because of the possibility of withdrawal from other illicit substances. Rarely, split daily dosing may be required because of rapid metabolism [7]. Caution should be taken when prescribing other medications to women on methadone because of the potential for drug–drug interactions. For example, both methadone and the commonly prescribed antibiotic metronidazole increase the QTc interval, which can lead to potentially fatal ventricular arrhythmias.

Methadone maintenance is associated with improved obstetrical and neonatal outcome compared to illicit opioid abuse (more adequate prenatal care, longer gestation, increased birth weight and head circumference, etc.) but not to the level of drug-free controls. The rate of continued illicit substance abuse is 15%–36% in some studies, and this continued substance abuse may attenuate some of the beneficial effects of drug treatment programs [50,73].

The most common neonatal sequelae of opioid exposure is **neonatal withdrawal**, also referred to as NAS. Rates of NAS reported in the literature range from 31% to 80% [72,74]. However, **maternal methadone dose is not associated with either the incidence of NAS or the length of neonatal treatment** [1,75–77]. Methadone has also been associated with decreased birth weight and head circumference [78], jaundice, and thrombocytosis. Less commonly recognized is the effect of methadone on the developing visual system. In a group of 20 exposed infants and children, ophthalmic abnormalities included decreased visual acuity (95%), nystagmus (70%), delayed visual maturation (50%), strabismus (30%), refractive errors (30%), and cerebral visual impairments (25%) [79]. Neither the long-term effects nor the independent effect of other illicit substances are clear.

**Buprenorphine**

Use of buprenorphine is increasing. Buprenorphine (Subutex, FDA category C) is a partial μ receptor agonist and κ receptor antagonist. Randomized trials demonstrate that buprenorphine increases treatment retention (RR 1.21–1.52) and decreases heroin use [3,60] in nonpregnant adults compared to methadone. **Effectiveness during pregnancy is similar to methadone** [8]. The main advantages of buprenorphine are lower risk of overdose (“ceiling effect”) and respiratory depression, fewer drug interactions, and that it does not require supervised daily administration [7]. Buprenorphine can be prescribed by any physician with the appropriate credentialing, which improves accessibility and confidentiality and decreases the social stigma [1]. **There is also evidence of less severe NAS.** In a Cochrane systematic review of maintenance agonist treatments for opiate-dependent pregnant women, compared to methadone, buprenorphine was not associated with a difference in dropout (RR 1.00, 95% CI 0.41–2.44), continued illicit heroin use (RR 2.50, 95% CI 0.11–54.87), rate of neonatal treatment for NAS (RR 1.28, 95% CI 0.58–2.85), or length of neonatal treatment for NAS (RR 0.50, 95% CI 1.84–2.84) [49]. However, a recent randomized, placebo-controlled trial comparing methadone and buprenorphine for treatment
of maternal opioid dependency found that buprenorphine was associated with significantly lower doses of morphine for treatment of NAS (mean total amount 1.1 vs. 10.4 mg), shorter duration of treatment for NAS (4.1 vs. 99 days), and shorter neonatal hospital stay (10.0 vs. 17.5 days) but no difference in continued illicit substance use (15% vs. 9%, p = 0.27) or the rate of neonatal treatment for NAS (57% vs. 47%, p = 0.26) [73]. This trial has yet to be included in the Cochrane systematic review. A limitation of the trial was a markedly higher attrition rate from the buprenorphine treatment arm than from the methadone arm (18% vs. 33%, p = 0.02). On the other hand, induction is more difficult, and some patients express dissatisfaction likely due to partial μ receptor agonist properties. With informed consent, buprenorphine may be an appropriate first-line medication for women who are not yet on treatment [7].

Suboxone is a combination of buprenorphine and naloxone. The addition of naloxone is meant to deter parental use and lowers the risk of diversion. In general, pregnant women taking Suboxone should be switched to an equivalent dose of buprenorphine (Subutex). As with methadone, dose increases during pregnancy are common.

Other Treatments
Other treatments for opioid-addicted pregnant women include oral slow-release morphine, heroin-assisted treatment, L-α-acetylmethadol (LAAM), and clonidine. In a small RCT, oral slow-release morphine was superior to methadone in abstinence from heroin, but there was no statistically significant difference in birth weight or duration of NAS [49,80]. There are two case reports of “heroin-assisted” treatment in a total of five pregnant women. Heroin-assisted treatment combines methadone and injectable heroin. The selection criteria for this program are a history of addiction for more than two years, failure of at least two alternative treatments, and risk of further physical or social decline. The authors observed a higher birth weight compared to women treated with methadone alone [81]. LAAM is a μ receptor agonist with a longer half-life than methadone. LAAM was taken off of the market in 2003 because it prolongs the QT interval, leading to potentially life-threatening ventricular arrhythmias. Clonidine, an α2-agonist antihypertensive medication, has been used alone or in addition to other medications for mild withdrawal. The blood pressure-lowering effect of clonidine is due to its α2-agonist properties. Likewise, clonidine prevents withdrawal symptoms through the same mechanism. In summary, treatments other than methadone or buprenorphine have limited evidence for safety and efficacy and therefore should be avoided.

Antepartum Testing
Reports of an increased risk of intrauterine fetal demise (IUFD) associated with intravenous opiate abuse [47] have led some authors to suggest weekly fetal monitoring beginning at 32 weeks. However, for women in a treatment program who have repetitively negative urine drug screens, antepartum testing should be reserved for standard obstetrical indications (e.g., IUGR). Opiates are associated with decreases in baseline, variability, and accelerations. Ideally, to avoid misinterpretation, women on methadone or other prescribed narcotics should have nonstress test or biophysical profile scheduled before or at least four to six hours after a dose of methadone.

Delivery
As per common obstetric practices.

Anesthesia
Peripheral intravenous access can be difficult in chronic intravenous drug abusers. Dosing of other opioid analgesics for pain control during labor and postpartum can be challenging because of recent use or tolerance from chronic receptor stimulation [19] and hyperalgesia. In a retrospective study, methadone-maintained women required 70% more oxycodone equivalents after cesarean section than controls [82]. Opioid antagonists or agonist-antagonists can precipitate acute withdrawal [82]. Examples of these drugs are Nubain®, Talwin®, Stadol®, and Narcan®. If any of these drugs are accidentally given, withdrawal can also be reversed with any opioid [82].

Regional anesthesia is safe. However, hypotension may occur more frequently because of concomitant malnutrition and/or liver disease. If general anesthesia becomes necessary, poor dentition, airway burns, chronic lung disease, and decreased gastric emptying may result in airway compromise [8].

After delivery, fluid shifts may increase opioid levels. However, we have not observed any cases of oversedation or other complications postpartum. Opioid replacement should be continued throughout labor and delivery as it is not part of the labor analgesia. Similarly, complaints of pain should be taken seriously and not assumed to be drug-seeking behavior.

Postpartum/Breast-Feeding
Methadone or buprenorphine should be continued during the immediate peripartum period. Oversedation from methadone because of changes in volume of distribution and hepatic clearance is rare in practice [83]. Dose reductions should be based on clinical signs and symptoms rather than protocol.

The American Academy of Pediatrics (AAP) strongly advises that women should not use heroin while breast-feeding as it may be hazardous to the infant and nursing mother [42]. Tremors, restlessness, vomiting, and poor feeding have been reported in breast-fed infants of women using heroin [41]. Breast-feeding is not contraindicated in women taking opioids for acute (e.g., Percocet for postoperative pain) or chronic pain.

Women taking methadone should be encouraged to breast-feed, irrespective of dose, assuming the patient is enrolled in a treatment program and remains abstinent [7,37,41,42]. Potential benefits include improved maternal-infant bonding and favorable effects on NAS [37,83–87]. However, close observation is warranted because lethargy, respiratory difficulty, and poor weight have also been observed [41]. Methadone levels in human milk are <3% of the maternal weight-adjusted dose, and infant plasma concentrations are <3% of the maternal trough concentration. With such low exposure, it is not clear whether the favorable effects of breast-feeding on NAS are related to methadone in breast milk or the act of breast-feeding itself [88].

Likewise, women prescribed buprenorphine should also be encouraged to breast-feed [7]. Although this contradicts the package labeling, the amount of buprenorphine in breast milk is also low. Infant exposure is <2.4% of the maternal weight-adjusted dose [41], which is unlikely to have
any negative effects on development [37]. Similar to methadone, buprenorphine also appears to have favorable effects on NAS [37].

COCAINE (BENZOYLMETHYLECOGNINE)

Historic Notes
The leaves of the South American erythroxylon coca plant have been consumed to increase energy and reduce fatigue and hunger since as early as 3000 BC [89]. Coca was purified in 1862 by Albert Neiman, and although Sigmund Freud first introduced cocaine into modern medicine in 1884 with his treatise On Coca, its use as a topical anesthetic (coca-saturated saliva) dates back thousands of years. Coca is still used in some ophthalmologic procedures. Coca-Cola® contained coca until 1903; today the soft drink still contains a non-narcotic extract prepared from the coca plant.

Diagnosis/Definition
As a hydrochloride, cocaine (also known as “snow”) is sold in the form of a powder or as granules or crystals. Crack, also known as crack cocaine, rock, or freebase, is cocaine returned to its pure, alkalized form by heating it with baking soda and water. The name “crack” comes from the characteristic sound made during the “cooking” process [89]. Cocaine can be injected, snorted, or smoked (in cigarettes or with marijuana). Inhalation is the preferred route of administration by crack users [90].

Symptoms, Signs, and Cardiopulmonary Complications
Cocaine produces a brief euphoria by interfering with presynaptic neurotransmitter uptake, thereby increasing sympathomimetic neurotransmitters (serotonin, norepinephrine, serotonin, norepinephrine, and dopamine) [91]. Systemic effects include hypertension (mean rise 25 mmHg systolic and 6 mmHg diastolic), tachycardia (mean increase 20 beats per minute), and dilated pupils [89]. More severe consequences include arrhythmias, hypotension, myocardial infarction, seizures, stroke, gastrointestinal ischemia, thrombosis, hyperthermia, and sudden death. Pulmonary complications of smoking crack include interstitial pneumonitis, spontaneous pneumothorax, and “crack lung,” which is characterized by acute dyspnea, hypoxia, fever, hemoptysis, and respiratory failure. The active metabolites may have delayed activity. The combination of cocaine and alcohol produces cocaethylene, which increases the risk of cardiac events 40-fold and sudden death 25-fold.

Pregnancy is associated with increased sensitivity of the cardiovascular system to cocaine [92,93]. Plasma cholinesterase activity, the enzyme responsible for metabolizing cocaine, is decreased during pregnancy, which prolongs the adverse effects of cocaine [94]. Additionally, other physiologic changes during pregnancy (increased oxygen demand and limited or decreased supply because of increases in heart rate, blood pressure, and left ventricular contractility) [91] increase the cardiopulmonary toxicity of cocaine [94,95].

Cocaine use may present as the constellation hypertension, proteinuria, and edema, and therefore may be confused for preeclampsia. Withdrawal symptoms from cocaine include drug craving, fatigue, and mental depression.

Epidemiology/Incidence
Cocaine use peaked in the 1980s (8%–17% in urban hospitals) [96] and has since declined. From 1993 to 1995, 9.1% of pregnant women used cocaine by self-report or positive meconium at four urban centers (3.4% history and positive meconium) [97]. According to another study, in the late 1990s, the prevalence of cocaine use by pregnant women was approximately 0.28% (1/10th of overall drug use during pregnancy) [98]. More recently, between 2000 and 2001, at a public hospital in São Paulo, Brazil, the rate of cocaine use by pregnant teens 11 to 19 years old in the third trimester was 1.7% using hair analysis.

Etiology/Basic Pathophysiology
Cocaine readily crosses the placenta and can be detected in fetal blood and tissues [96]. The maternal and fetal sequelae of cocaine may be related to the effects of cocaine on the cardiovascular system [95,99]. Uterine artery vasospasm and vasoconstriction in response to cocaine-mediated increases in norepinephrine results in decreased uteroplacental blood flow and uteroplacental insufficiency, which can lead to fetal acidosis, hypoxia, and distress. Additionally, increased maternal plasma norepinephrine and the β-agonist properties of cocaine stimulate uterine contractions [98], an effect that has been reproduced in vitro [100]. Uterine contractions and acute vasoconstriction of vessels in the placental bed are thought to be the mechanisms of abruption related to cocaine use [94,101]. Cocaine has the ability to potentiate the effects of or be potentiated by other drugs. The combination of cocaine and ethanol produces cocaethylene, a biologically active substance with unknown reproductive effects [95]. Cocaine is metabolized through the liver; hence preexisting liver disease may potentiate its effects.

Risk Factors/Associations
As with other substances, women who use cocaine are more likely to use other illicit substances, tobacco, and/or alcohol. Cocaine use during pregnancy is more common among black women compared with the racial distribution of other substances. Pregnant women who use cocaine also tend to be older, have less than a high school education, have higher gravity, and are more likely to have had a prior abortion [102]. Poverty, poor nutrition, depression, physical abuse, poor social support, and sexually transmitted infections have also been associated with cocaine use.

Maternal and Perinatal Complications

- **Congenital anomalies**: Cocaine use alone (RR 1.7, 95% CI 1.12–2.60) or in addition to other drugs (RR 2.10, 95% CI 1.42–3.09) during pregnancy is associated with a higher rate of congenital malformations, which is likely the effect of factors other than cocaine itself [97,103,104]. The overall rate of malformations is 10% [89]. Vasocostriction leads to disruption of the fetal bowel (atresia, infarction, perforation, necrotizing enterocolitis in the neonate), CNS (microcephaly in 16%, porencephaly), and/or limbs (reduction). Exposure to cocaine has been suggested in the etiology of hydranencephaly [95]. Neonates exposed to cocaine are at risk for structural and functional (arrhythmias, conduction abnormalities, etc.) congenital heart disease [105].
• **Obstetrical complications:** Miscarriage, shorter gestation (-1.47 weeks 95% CI -1.97 to -0.98), PTB (OR 3.38, 95% CI 2.72–4.21), PPROM (RR 1.85, 95% CI 1.35–2.52 cocaine alone; RR 3.18, 95% CI 1.61–6.29 cocaine with other drugs), abruption (RR 4.55, 95% CI 3.19–6.50 cocaine alone; RR 4.95, 95% CI 2.08–11.81 cocaine with other drugs), pre-eclampsia, stillbirth (18.2%) [106]; meconium staining of the amniotic fluid and fetal heart rate abnormalities are the most frequently cited obstetrical complications of cocaine use [19,95,96,104,107,108]. Women who use cocaine during pregnancy are four times more likely to require emergent delivery. Precipitous delivery is also common (13.4%) [109]. Women presenting with PPROM in association with cocaine exhibit more advanced cervical dilation and shorter latency [110,111]. Body packing, the ingestion of multiple packets of cocaine for the purpose of smuggling, can cause serious complications if a packet ruptures, and at least one case of perimortem cesarean section has been reported in this situation [112]. Cocaine use increases vertical transmission of HIV fourfold [113].

• **Fetal/neonatal morphometrics:** Cocaine use during pregnancy is associated with decreased birth weight (−492 g, 95% CI −562 to −421), LBW (OR 3.66, 95% CI 2.90–4.63), IUGR, SGA infants (OR 3.23, 95% CI 2.43–4.30), decreased head circumference (−1.21 to −1.72 cm), and decreased length (−2.17 to −2.57 cm) [104,107,114]. Poor placental perfusion and appetite suppression leading to poor maternal weight gain are hypothesized to cause the observed changes in growth.

• **Neonatal withdrawal:** Abrupt discontinuation of cocaine at birth results in a constellation of withdrawal symptoms, best described as “neonatal toxicity.” These symptoms include jitteriness/tremulousness (OR 2.17, 95% CI 1.44–3.29), high-pitched cry (OR 2.44; 95% CI 1.06–5.66), irritability (OR 1.81, 95% CI 1.18–2.80), excessive suck (OR 3.58, 95% CI 1.63–7.88), hyperalertness (OR 7.78, 95% CI 1.72–35.06), and autonomic instability (OR 2.64, 95% CI 1.17–5.95) and typically occur in the first two to three days of life [97].

• **Long-term neonatal outcome:** Initial studies reported adverse neurological consequences of antenatal cocaine exposure (so-called “crack babies”); however, more recent studies have found that much of the effect is related to co-occurring exposures. Nonetheless, cocaine is not without consequence. Antenatal exposure to cocaine is associated with slower growth and higher rates of obesity and elevated blood pressure [103,115]. The mechanism that has been postulated to explain increased obesity is poor maternal nutrition and LBW, which has been linked to later obesity. Children followed up to 10 years demonstrate poorer adolescent functioning and perceptual reasoning, impaired perceptual learning, internalizing, externalizing, and total behavior problems, more symptoms of oppositional defiant disorder and attention deficit hyperactivity disorder (ADHD), impairment of executive function, adverse effects on short-term memory, and poorer language development, which is at least in part due to associated sociodemographic factors (e.g., poverty) [103]. Brain magnetic resonance imaging of these children shows lesser total gray matter especially in the prefrontal and frontal regions [116]. Cocaine also has effects on the visual system. Strabismus and refractive errors are more likely among children prenatally exposed to cocaine. Cases of permanent eyelid edema have also been reported.

**Therapy**

There are currently no FDA-approved pharmacologic therapies available for detoxification or maintenance of cocaine dependence. Interventions for cocaine dependence primarily involve psychosocial therapies (e.g., cognitive behavioral therapy, motivational interviewing). Very few interventions have been specifically studied in pregnancy. Treatment programs for cocaine have a favorable impact on pregnancy outcome; rates of PTB and LBW were decreased by 67% and 84% [99]. Motivational enhancement therapy was compared to “usual” counseling for pregnant women abusing cocaine in a randomized trial that found no difference in treatment utilization. The use of motivational incentives, also known as voucher-based contingency management, was studied in a small, randomized trial of pregnant women abusing cocaine. Treatment retention and abstinence from cocaine was high in both groups and there was a trend toward increased attendance at prenatal care visits ($p = 0.077$) [117]. In a separate study, motivational interviewing was associated with a significant reduction in neonatal intensive care unit admission and length of stay and cost savings amounted to $5000 per mother/infant pair above the cost of the program [118]. A recent pilot study demonstrated that progesterone may have some promise as a treatment for cocaine use disorder in postpartum women [119]. Withdrawal from cocaine is usually mild, if present, and not life threatening for the mother or fetus. Benzodiazepines can be given to relieve symptoms [98]. Rarely, psychotic symptoms during withdrawal may require treatment with antipsychotic medications.

**Antepartum Testing**

The role of antepartum testing (ultrasound and nonstress tests or biophysical profiles) for cocaine use is insufficiently studied to make recommendations. Based on expert opinion, weekly antenatal testing is recommended starting at 32 weeks [120].

**Anesthesia**

Regional anesthesia should be used with caution because of combative behavior, altered perception of pain, cocaine-induced thrombocytopenia, and ephedrine-resistant hypotension (usually responds to phenylephrine). Women may perceive pain despite adequate spinal/epidural anesthesia levels [105]. Hydralazine is the drug of choice for management of cocaine-induced hypertension, labetalol plus nitroglycerin may be a reasonable alternative [19]. Propranolol should be avoided because of the potential for unopposed α-adrenergic stimulation; however, labetalol is generally considered safe. The use of general anesthesia also presents challenges; all volatile anesthetics can cause arrhythmia and increased systemic vascular resistance [121].

**Postpartum/Breast-Feeding**

The AAP strongly advises that women should not use cocaine while breast-feeding as it may be hazardous to the infant and nursing mother [42]. Cocaine intoxication, seizures, irritability, vomiting, diarrhea, and tremulousness have been reported in breast-fed infants of women using cocaine [41].
AMPHETAMINES: AMPHETAMINE, METHAMPHETAMINE, 3,4-METHYLENEDIOXYMETHAMPHETAMINE (ECSTASY), SYNTHETIC CATHINONES (“BATH SALTS”)  

Historic Notes  
Amphetamines were first synthesized in 1887 [122]. Amphetamine is FDA approved (schedule II) for the treatment of (ADHD) and narcolepsy. The more potent stimulant, methamphetamine (schedule II), is FDA approved for the treatment of ADHD and obesity. Methamphetamine is easily made from over-the-counter cold medications, and addiction can occur after as little as one use [123]. Ecstasy, which is chemically similar to methamphetamine, was patented in 1912 [124]. In the 1970s, psychotherapists used ecstasy to enhance “openness” with their patients [124]. Ecstasy was classified as a schedule I drug in 1985 [124]. Bath salts are a group of synthetic cathinones (naturally occurring alkaloids that are chemically similar to amphetamines) with amphetamine-like stimulant properties. “Bath salts,” sometimes also sold as “jewelry cleanser,” “phone screen cleaner,” or “plant food,” get their name from the resemblance of the crystalline powder to the real thing [125]. Bath salts are not detected on routine urine drug screens.

Diagnosis/Definition  
Amphetamines are a group of synthetic stimulants that are structurally similar to norepinephrine [126]. Amphetamines increase levels of norepinephrine, serotonin, and dopamine by increasing release and blocking reuptake [127]. Street names for amphetamines include dexies, bennies, ice (methamphetamine), and crystal (methamphetamine). Amphetamines can be injected, snorted, smoked (78.3% for methamphetamines), or taken orally or anally [128]. Gamma-hydroxybutyrate (GHB) is sometimes referred to as “liquid ecstasy” but is chemically and pharmacologically unrelated to 3,4-methylenedioxymethamphetamine.

Symptoms, Signs, and Organ Toxicity  
Symptoms of amphetamine use include alertness, decreased fatigue, sleeplessness, euphoria, exhilaration, emotional openness, reduction of negativity, and decreased inhibition [129]. Systemic effects include hypertension, dilated pupils, cardiovascular, and psychiatric symptoms.

Epidemiology/Incidence  
Amphetamines are the most abused prescription medication [130] and are overall the second most commonly abused drug worldwide. Despite similarity with cocaine, the greater popularity of amphetamines is likely related to longer half-life, greater sympathomimetic effects, lower cost, and greater accessibility [131]. Use of methamphetamine, the most commonly abused amphetamine, is an escalating problem in the United States and other parts of the world [124,127,132]. In recent years, hospitalization for amphetamine abuse by pregnant women has doubled [133]. The reported incidence of methamphetamine use during pregnancy is between 0.1% and 1.0% and up to 5.2% in the highest use areas [134,135]. Methamphetamine use during pregnancy is significantly more common in cities and in the West, Midwest, and Southeast United States [128]. Methamphetamine accounts for nearly a quarter of drug treatment admissions during pregnancy [128]. The rate of ecstasy exposure during pregnancy is less clear. Ecstasy is one of the most widely used illicit drugs in the United Kingdom where the rate of self-reported use ranged from 0.6% to 8.8% in 2004 [124]. In the United States, ecstasy use peaked in 2001 and has since declined. There has been a recent epidemic of bath salt use.

Etiology/Basic Pathophysiology  
Methamphetamine crosses the placenta and is detectable in fetal tissues. Studies of methamphetamine in pregnant sheep suggest that vasoconstriction may be the mechanism that leads to obstetrical and neonatal complications [136].

Risk Factors/Associations  
Pregnant methamphetamine users are more likely to be young, white (although an increasing proportion of women are Hispanic), and unmarried [127]. Other characteristics of amphetamine-using mothers include late initiation of prenatal care, lower SES, less education, less likely to have private insurance, and less likely to have social support and are more likely to be homeless, victims of domestic violence, involved in criminal activity, have comorbid psychiatric conditions, and engage in risky sexual behavior [137]. Women who use ecstasy during pregnancy are more likely to be younger (mean 23.2 years vs. 31.2 years, p < 0.0001), report that the pregnancy was unplanned (84% vs. 54%, p < 0.05), use alcohol (66% vs. 31%, p < 0.0001), smoke cigarettes (54% vs. 20%, p < 0.0001), and use other illicit drugs during pregnancy compared to nonusers [137,138]. Similar patterns of polysubstance abuse are observed among women who abuse amphetamine and methamphetamine [128,139].

Complications  
Given that amphetamines and cocaine have similar effects on the central nervous system, both agents produce similar effects during pregnancy and are often combined in studies. Amphetamines concentrate in the fetus at levels that eventually exceed those in the mother [140]. Proving an association between amphetamines and adverse outcomes is difficult because of multiple accompanying confounders.

- Congenital anomalies: Although central nervous system, cardiac, gastrointestinal, and limb malformations and cleft lip have been reported, the best available evidence suggests that exposure to amphetamines, excluding...
ecstasy, during pregnancy is unlikely to cause congenital anomalies [127,131]. Data from the United Kingdom National Teratology Information Service demonstrated a 15% rate of congenital anomalies after prenatal ecstasy exposure (expected 2%–3%). Among these malformations, talipes equinovarus occurred more frequently than expected (all three female, 38/1000 [95% CI 8.0–109.0] vs. expected 3.1 male predominance, 1/1000) [141]. There was also a trend toward higher-than-expected rates of congenital heart disease (26/1000 [95% CI 3.0–90.0] vs. expected 5–10/1000). Chemical additives used to expand drug volume (e.g., talc, inositol, methylsulfonylmethane) pose an unknown risk of congenital anomalies [127].

- Obstetric and neonatal complications: Amphetamine use is associated with an increased risk of PTB (OR 4.11, 95% CI 3.05–5.55). An increased risk of abortion has also been reported, which is thought to be due to amphetamine-mediated platelet activation and uterine contractions [140]. In a retrospective study evaluating outcomes in pregnancies complicated specifically by methamphetamine use, complications that occurred significantly more frequently included gestational hypertension (OR 1.8, 95% CI 1.6–2.0), preeclampsia (OR 2.7, 95% CI 2.4–3.0), IUFD (OR 5.1, 95% CI 3.7–7.2), abruptio (OR 5.5, 95% CI 4.9–6.3), PTB (OR 2.9, 95% CI 2.7–3.1), neonatal death (OR 3.1 95% CI 2.3–4.2), and infant death (OR 2.5, 95% CI 1.7–3.7) [131]. The obstetrical and neonatal complications of ecstasy use are insufficiently studied.

- Fetal/neonatal morphometrics: A systematic review of 10 studies demonstrated a 279 g decrease in mean birth weight (95% CI –485 to –74) and increases in LBW (OR 3.97, 95% CI 2.45–6.43), and SGA (OR 5.79, 95% CI 2.05–3.5), LBW (OR 2.0), and decreased birth weight, head circumference, and length (131,136,139,143,144).

- Neonatal withdrawal: Neonatal withdrawal from amphetamines is characterized by abnormal sleep, poor feeding, tremors, hyperton, agitation, and tachy pneum. Long-term neurodevelopmental outcome: In a longitudinal follow-up study of Swedish children exposed to amphetamine prenatally, the children demonstrated deficits in behavior and school performance, including language, mathematics, and physical fitness at age 14 years [145]. Earlier follow-up of these children showed increased sleepiness, characteristics of autism, speech abnormalities, and stranger anxiety by one year old, lower IQ at four years old, and aggressive behavior and difficulty with peers at eight years old [146]. This study included a relatively small sample and lacked a control group. The IDEAL study examined developmental outcomes of methamphetamine-exposed children vs. matched controls. These children were more likely to have behavioral problems, including emotional reactivity, anxiety/depression, externalizing behavior (i.e., “lashing out”), and ADHD at three to five years [146]. Further follow-up of these same children showed a much higher likelihood of cognitive problems (OR 2.8, 95% CI 1.2–6.5) at 7.5 years old [146], placing them at risk of poor academic achievement and behavioral problems. Magnetic resonance imaging studies of children up to 16 years old with prenatal exposure to methamphetamine showed smaller brain structures correlating with impairment in executive functioning (e.g., attention deficit) and verbal memory [147]. A cohort of infants followed up to 24 months demonstrated fine and gross motor deficits following in utero exposure to ecstasy [148]. No long-term studies of prenatal ecstasy exposure are available [124].

Therapy
There are currently no FDA-approved medications available for detoxification or maintenance of amphetamine dependence. Nonetheless, these women should be referred for treatment because psychosocial interventions (e.g., cognitive behavioral therapy) can be beneficial; due to the intensive schedule, a residential center may be preferred.

Antepartum Testing
The role of antepartum surveillance for exposure to amphetamines is insufficiently studied to make recommendations. Based on expert opinion, weekly antenatal testing is recommended starting at 32 weeks [120].

Anesthesia
Sympathectomy caused by regional anesthesia can result in profound hypotension in women using amphetamines, and vasopressors should be used with caution [40]. Small doses of benzodiazepines may be useful for agitation. Dosing of general anesthetics may be altered by acute and chronic amphetamine use [40]. Potent inhalation anesthetics (e.g., halothane) sensitize the myocardium to the effect of catecholamines, which are increased by amphetamines, increasing the risk arrhythmia.

Postpartum/Breast-Feeding
The AAP and ACOG strongly advise that women should not ingest amphetamines while breast-feeding [42,127]. Amphetamines can decrease breast milk supply by inhibiting prolactin release [127]. Additionally, amphetamines concentrate in breast milk, resulting in levels 2.8–7.5 times higher than in maternal plasma [127]. Adverse effects on the neonate have been reported (irritability, poor sleep, hypertension, tachycardia, seizures) [41,42]. Infant fatality from continued methamphetamine use during breast-feeding has been reported [41]. Like amphetamines, ecstasy is also concentrated in breast milk [41]. At prescription doses, methylphenidate levels in breast milk are very low (relative infant dose 0.7% <10% is generally considered acceptable for breast-feeding) [149].

BENZODIAZEPINES
Historic Notes
Benzodiazepines have been studied as potential treatments for threatened abortion, preterm labor, preeclampsia, and as adjuncts for pain management in labor.

Diagnosis/Definition
Benzodiazepines are a group of compounds formed through the fusion of a benzene and diazepine ring. They are categorized by half-life as short-, medium-, and long-acting. Street names for benzodiazepines include “benzos,” “downers,” “nerve pills,” and “tranks.” Benzodiazepines are usually taken orally.
Symptoms
Benzo[d]iazepines are sedative drugs, used mainly for the treatment of anxiety, and have the potential for addiction. They act on the GABAa receptor inhibiting postsynaptic signaling.

Epidemiology/Incidence
Benzo[d]iazepines were the most commonly prescribed drugs in pregnancy [150]. In the 1970s and 1980s, 1.6% to 2.2% of pregnant women in the United States and Europe used benzo[d]iazepines during pregnancy; however, the exact incidence of benzo[d]iazepine exposure is unclear with rates varying from <1% to 40% [151].

Etiology/Basic Pathophysiology
Benzo[d]iazepines cross the placenta; fetal and neonatal concentration vary between benzo[d]iazepines. Whereas diazepam levels in the neonate are one- to threefold higher than those of the mother, neonatal levels of midazolam are lower than those of the mother [150].

Risk Factors/Associations
Benzo[d]iazepine exposure in Swedish women is associated with older age, higher incidence of smoking, less education, and use of other psychoactive drugs [151].

Complications
A clear understanding of the effects of benzo[d]iazepines is limited by significant heterogeneity between studies: benzo[d]iazepines studied as a class versus individual agents; effect of the underlying medical condition (e.g., epilepsy) or obstetrical complication (e.g., preeclampsia); prescribed use of therapeutic doses versus illicit use; concomitant use of other psychoactive drugs, illicit substances, tobacco, or alcohol.

- Congenital anomalies: Benzo[d]iazepines do not carry a significant risk of teratogenesis [152,153]. In a meta-analysis of first trimester exposure to benzo[d]iazepines there was no increase in major malformations (OR 1.06 95% CI 0.91–1.25) [154]. Although previous reports suggested an increased risk of cleft lip and palate, the absolute risk of oral cleft from prenatal benzodiazepine exposure was increased by only 0.01%, from six in 10,000 to seven in 10,000 [155]. Considering benzo[d]iazepine individually rather than as a class, the OR for anal atresia was 6.15 (95% CI 2.44–15.74) following exposure to lorazepam [156].

- Obstetrical and neonatal complications: PTB (early exposure: aOR 1.48, 95% CI 1.26–1.75; late exposure aOR 2.57 95% CI 1.92–3.43), LBW (early exposure: aOR 1.30, 95% CI 1.06–1.59; late exposure: aOR 1.89, 95% CI 1.89–2.76), low Apgar scores <7 at five minutes (late exposure: aOR 2.02, 95% CI 1.13–3.65); all have been associated with benzo[d]iazepine exposure [157]. After exclusion of women with reported use of antidepressants, there was no significant increased risk of PTB or low Apgar score <7 at five minutes. Benzodiazepine use immediately prior to delivery may result in delivery of a sedated neonate.

- Neonatal withdrawal: Neonatal withdrawal from benzo[d]iazepines is characterized by hypoventilation, irritability, hypertonicity, and “floppy infant syndrome” (hypotonia, lethargy, poor respiratory effort, and feeding difficulties). Other withdrawal symptoms include irritability, sleep disturbance, restlessness, hyperreflexia, tremulousness, jitteriness, and gastrointestinal symptoms (diarrhea and vomiting) [152]. Symptoms of withdrawal may be delayed, not occurring until day 12 to 21, and may last for several months [152]. We recommend limiting as clinically feasible administration of benzo[d]iazepines to pregnant women, especially those on methadone maintenance therapy. Benzodiazepine use by women on methadone maintenance therapy is associated with more severe neonatal NAS [55,70,77,158]. In a multivariate analysis, the mean length of treatment was two weeks longer among neonates exposed to methadone and benzo[d]iazepines versus methadone alone [77].

- Long-term neonatal outcome: There is a paucity of long-term data; however, benzo[d]iazepines have been available for >40 years, and there is no significant evidence of a harmful effect on brain development [152,153]. At 18 months, compared to children of women without psychiatric disorders, benzo[d]iazepine (mainly diazepam-)exposed children (n = 17) showed impaired fine motor skills and abnormal tone and patterns of movement (e.g., walking) [159]. However, in a study of children with prenatal exposure to chlordiazepoxide, there was no evidence of abnormal neurodevelopment (IQ or motor status) at eight months (n = 501 children) or four years (n = 435 children) [160].

Therapy
Abrupt discontinuation of benzo[d]iazepines may cause serious maternal withdrawal. Mild symptoms include tremor, diaphoresis, tachycardia, and other vital sign changes. More serious symptoms include seizure, delirium, autonomic instability, and suicidal ideation. Benzo[d]iazepine withdrawal is less likely if a woman has not taken therapeutic doses (i.e., three to four times per day) for 24 weeks. These women should be reassessed for benzo[d]iazepine withdrawal if they have changes in vital signs (systolic blood pressure ≥150 mmHg, diastolic blood pressure ≥100 mmHg, pulse >110 beats/min, temperature >101°F, or SpO2 <96%) or symptoms of anxiety or agitation. Psychiatry consultation is suggested for women who are dependent on benzo[d]iazepines (i.e., use of benzo[d]iazepine at therapeutic doses for ≥4 weeks). Typically scheduled tapering is done with a longer-acting benzo[d]iazepine (e.g., Klonopin) to reduce the risk of benzo[d]iazepine withdrawal seizure. Protocols based on objective measures (e.g., vital signs), symptoms, and subjective complaints, such as the Clinical Institute Withdrawal Assessment of Alcohol Scale, Revised, can be used instead of or in addition to tapering. There are no published guidelines for detoxification during pregnancy. Likewise, there are currently no FDA-approved medications available for maintenance of benzo[d]iazepine dependence.

Antepartum Testing
The role of antepartum surveillance for benzo[d]iazepine exposure is insufficiently studied to make a recommendation.
Postpartum/Breast-Feeding
Approximately 0.1% to 11% of the weight-adjusted maternal benzodiazepine dose is transferred to the breast milk and is drug-specific [141]. Nonetheless, most prescription benzodiazepines are “moderately safe” (lactation risk category L3) during breast-feeding and few adverse events are reported [161]. However, CNS depression, accumulation of metabolites, and prolonged half-life in the neonate have been noted [41]. Sedation may be more likely when multiple CNS depressant medications are taken together [152]. Women are strongly advised to refrain from nonmedical use of benzodiazepines while breast-feeding [42].

Data from: [43,95,132].

The majority of pregnant women who use PCP during pregnancy also abuse other illicit drugs (e.g., cocaine) and alcohol.

Pregnancy Complications
There is a high rate of polysubstance abuse by women using PCP, which limits the ability to tease out the obstetrical and neonatal effects of PCP abuse. The use of matched, non–drug-exposed controls was infrequent.

- **Congenital anomalies:** Although there were early case reports of infants exposed antenatally to PCP born with dysmorphic facial features [167,176], microcephaly [172], and cerebellar malformations, no increased rate of congenital malformations have been reported in a literature review totaling 206 neonates with prenatal PCP exposure [177].
- **Obstetrical complications:** The rate of PTB among PCP-exposed neonates was 20% to 22% [173,176].
- **Fetal/neonatal morphometrics:** Prenatal exposure to PCP has not been consistently shown to affect birth weight, length, or head circumference [164,174,175]. However, higher-than-expected rates of IUGR (32%) [173], LBW (30%) [176], and SGA (17%) [176] have been reported.

- **Neonatal withdrawal:** Neonatal withdrawal from PCP is characterized by neurological (e.g., tremor, abnormal tone, and hypertonic reflexes) and gastrointestinal (e.g., emesis and diarrhea) symptoms, irritability, exaggerated responses to auditory and tactile stimuli, lethargy and rapid shifts in consciousness [164,165,172,175,176,178]. Symptoms of withdrawal were reported in 55% of 22 infants with exposure to PCP alone [176]. Symptoms of withdrawal can be managed conservatively (e.g., swaddling), by acidification of the urine, or when medications are indicated, with phenobarbital, diazepam, or paregoric.

- **Long-term neonatal outcome:** Studies of long-term neurodevelopmental outcome are limited by small size and dropout rates of over 50%. Attachment disorder has been described during the first year of life [176]. At 12 to 18 months of age, exposed infants demonstrated impaired fine motor skills [178]. Caretakers reported behavioral problems (e.g., temper tantrums and oppositional behaviors), inconsolability, and sleep disturbances [176,178].

Therapy
Mild symptoms can be managed by placing the individual in a dark, quiet environment with as little stimulation as possible. Additional symptoms and their treatments are as follows: convulsions are treated with diazepam, hypertension with antihypertensives (e.g., hydralazine), fever with antipyretics, and severe rigidity and rhabdomyolysis with dantrolene [43,179]. There are currently no FDA-approved medications available for detoxification or maintenance of PCP dependence.

Antepartum Testing
The role of antepartum surveillance is insufficiently studied to make recommendations. However, hypertension in response to moderate to high doses of PCP may be an indication for nonstress testing and/or ultrasound to estimate fetal weight [43].

Postpartum/Breast-Feeding
PCP is present in breast milk [169,170] in sufficient quantities to cause intoxication [41]. The AAP advises that women should not use PCP while breast-feeding [41,42].
HALLUCINOGENS: LYSERGIC ACID DIETHYLAMIDE, PSilocYBIN (MAGIC MUSHROOMS), PEYOTE (MESCALINE)

Historic Notes
Naturally occurring hallucinogens have been used for centuries as part of religious and cultural activities. LSD, the prototypical synthetic hallucinogen, was synthesized in 1938 by the chemist Albert Hofmann, who recognized its hallucinogenic capabilities when he was accidentally exposed.

Diagnosis/Definition
The active ingredients in psilocybin and peyote are psilocin (N, N-dimethyl-4-phosphoryloxytryptamine) and 3,4,5-trimethoxyphenethylamine. LSD is an ergot (rye fungus) derivative. Street names are as follows:
- LSD: acid, trips, microdots, dots, blotters (or named by the design on the blotting paper), mellow, or tabs
- Psilocybin: magic mushrooms, shrooms, magics, blue meanies, liberty caps, golden tops, mushies
- Peyote: buttons, cactus, mescal

LSD can be taken orally as a tablet, capsule, or liquid applied to blotter paper, sniffed, injected, or smoked. Psilocybin and peyote are usually taken orally; peyote can also be smoked.

Symptoms
Hallucinogens principally alter sensory perceptions, mood, and thought patterns through alteration of serotonin pathways in the central nervous system [59]. Vital sign abnormalities are uncommon, but may include increased blood pressure and heart rate. Rare complications include hyperthermia and serotonin syndrome.

Epidemiology/Incidence
According to the National Household Survey on Drug Abuse, 0.2% of reproductive age women aged 15 to 44 years reported hallucinogen use in the past month. Among pregnant women screened for inclusion in a study of prenatal methamphetamine exposure, <0.5% used hallucinogens. In Europe, the rate of LSD and hallucinogenic mushroom use is 0.4%–2.0% (7.5% in the United Kingdom) and 0.2%–12.8%, respectively [180].

Etiology/Basic Pathophysiology
Evidence that LSD causes DNA damage in vitro raises concerns about its potential as a teratogen [181].

Complications
The effects of hallucinogen exposure on obstetrical neonatal outcome are not well studied.
- Congenital anomalies: In a literature review including 162 pregnancies with parental LSD use before or during pregnancy, there were seven anomalies (4.3%) not attributable to other causes. Limb reduction defects accounted for five of the seven anomalies; a higher-than-expected incidence (1.78/1000) [182]. Another series of 148 pregnancies, including specimens from spontaneous and induced abortions with parental LSD use showed a 9.6% rate of major anomalies that were mainly central nervous system (hydrocephalus and arteriovenous malformations) and neural tube defects. Eye abnormalities have also been reported [59]. Because of lack of appropriate controls and confounding by use of other illicit substances, tobacco, and alcohol, a cause-and-effect relationship cannot be established [182,183]. There are no reports of human teratogenesis because of psilocybin or peyote [181].
- Obstetrical and neonatal complications: There is no evidence that LSD or other hallucinogens increased the risk of PTB or have an effect on birth weight.
- Long-term neonatal outcome: Follow-up of children whose parents used LSD to 2.5 years old showed no growth or developmental abnormalities [183].

Therapy
In most cases, supportive care is all that is necessary. Benzodiazepines are the first-line treatment for acute agitation. Rarely, severe hyperthermia may require medically induced paralysis. There are currently no FDA-approved medications available for detoxification or maintenance of hallucinogen dependence.

Antepartum Testing
The role of antepartum surveillance is insufficiently studied to make recommendations. However, hyperthermia and serotonin syndrome may be an indication for fetal monitoring.

REFERENCES


Respiratory diseases: asthma, pneumonia, influenza, and tuberculosis

Lauren A. Plante and Ryan K. Brannon

ASTHMA

Key Points

- Asthma is characterized by airway obstruction, inflammation, and increased responsiveness to stimuli. To be certain of diagnosis, once abnormal forced expiratory volume in one second (FEV1) is found in a patient with historic and physical exam findings consistent with asthma, other differential diagnoses must be excluded.
- Asthma is classified as mild intermittent, mild persistent, moderate persistent, and severe persistent by symptoms and peak expiratory flow rate (PEFR) or spirometry.
- Asthma has historically been associated with small increased risks of preterm birth, low birth weight, perinatal mortality, and preeclampsia, but these risks are probably associated just with undertreatment of asthma; if asthma is adequately treated, it is not associated with a significant increase in adverse perinatal outcomes.
- Pregnancy has a variable effect on asthma severity with about two thirds getting better and one third worse.
- The management of asthma in pregnant women should follow the same guidelines as for other nonpregnant patients.
- Management is based on objective measurements of pulmonary function (PEFR) (Table 24.1). The management plan should include use of environmental control measures; adequate pharmacotherapy; and patient education regarding symptoms, management, and compliance.
- Inhalation therapy is preferred to systemic treatments with inhaled corticosteroids, NOT inhaled β-agonist, the mainstay of therapy.
- Prostaglandin F2α should be avoided. Ergonovine and indomethacin, sometimes used in obstetric care, may worsen bronchospasm.

Diagnosis

Asthma is characterized by reversible episodic symptoms of airway obstruction, in which alternative explanations have been excluded. For example, typical symptoms and a large reversibility (usually with betamimetic nebulizer treatment) of airflow obstruction on spirometry (increase in FEV1 >15%) generally confirm the diagnosis of asthma. Airway inflammation with edema and remodeling rather than simply bronchospasm is the key. Increased airway responsiveness to stimuli is characteristic. Indicators that suggest a diagnosis of asthma include wheezing; history of recurrent cough; chest tightness or difficulty in breathing; worsening of symptoms with exercise; viral infection; exposure to animal fur or feathers, mold, pollen, house dust mites, tobacco or wood smoke; changes in weather; airborne chemicals or dusts; or worsening of symptoms at night. Physical examination is not always reliable and may include thoracic hyperexpansion or chest deformity, bunching of shoulders or use of accessory muscles, audible wheezing or a prolonged expiratory phase, increased nasal discharge or nasal polyps, or any manifestation of an allergic skin condition. The more indicators present, the more likely the diagnosis; however, the absence of wheezing does not equal the absence of asthma. A clinical diagnosis of asthma can be confirmed with the use of spirometry, which can be used to determine whether airflow obstruction is present and, if so, whether it is reversible. Additionally, forced vital capacity (FVC), FEV1, and FEV1/FVC ratio are measured before and after administration of a short-acting bronchodilator. Reduced FEV1, or FEV1/FVC shows airflow limitation, and a 12% or greater improvement in FEV1 after the administration of inhaled albuterol confirms reversibility [1].

To be certain of an asthma diagnosis, once an abnormal FEV1 is found in a patient with history and physical exam findings consistent with asthma, other differential diagnoses must be excluded, such as chronic obstructive pulmonary disease, congestive heart failure, pulmonary embolus, laryngeal or vocal cord dysfunction, and mechanical airway obstruction.

Symptoms

Wheezing, shortness of breath, coughing, chest tightness, difficulty in breathing, dyspnea.

Incidence

Asthma affects approximately 8% of pregnant women [2]. Among U.S. women aged 18 to 44, 5% reported an asthma attack within the preceding 12 months. However, 12% to 14% had received a diagnosis of asthma at some point during their lifetimes [2]. Thus, this is a common disease among women of reproductive age.

Etiology and Basic Pathophysiology

Airway obstruction and inflammation, usually because of excessive response to stimuli, as described above.

Classification

Asthma severity, that is, the intrinsic intensity of the disease, is classified into four stages (Table 24.1) [1]. Severity is most easily measured in a patient who is not receiving long-term control therapy. Severity can also be measured, once asthma control is achieved, by the amount of medication required to maintain control (Tables 24.2 through 24.4).
### Table 24.1 Classification of Asthma Severity

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Symptoms</th>
<th>Mild Intermittent</th>
<th>Mild Persistent</th>
<th>Moderate Persistent</th>
<th>Severe Persistent</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>≤2 times a week</td>
<td>&gt;2 times a week but &lt;1 time a day</td>
<td>Daily</td>
<td>Exacerbations occur ≥2 times a week</td>
<td>Continuous</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Asymptomatic between exacerbations</td>
<td>Normal PEFR between exacerbations</td>
<td>_FEV₁, or PEFR 60% to 80% of predicted</td>
<td>FEV₁, or PEFR &lt;60% of predicted</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FEV₁, or PEFR in relation to predicted</td>
<td>PEFR variability &lt;20%</td>
<td>PEFR variability 20% to 30%</td>
<td>PEFR variability &gt;30%</td>
<td>PEFR variability &gt;30%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nocturnal awakening</td>
<td>≤2 times a month</td>
<td>&gt;2 times a month</td>
<td>&gt;1 time a week</td>
<td>Nightly awakenings</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interference with daily activities</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>Mild</td>
<td>Some interference with normal activities but rare severe exacerbation</td>
<td>Limitations of physical activity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Treatment</td>
<td>Step 1</td>
<td>Step 2</td>
<td>Step 3 or Step 4</td>
<td>Step 5 or Step 6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


*Abbreviations: FEV₁, forced expiratory volume in one second; NAEPP, National Asthma Education and Prevention Program; PEFR, peak expiratory flow rate.*

### Table 24.2 Usual Drugs and Dosages for Long-Term Control Medication during Pregnancy

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Medication</th>
<th>Low Dose</th>
<th>Medium Dose</th>
<th>High Dose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Inhaled corticosteroid</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Beclomethasone CFC 42 or 84 µg/puff</td>
<td>168–504 µg TDD</td>
<td>504–840 µg TDD</td>
<td>&gt;840 µg TDD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Beclomethasone HFA 40 or 80 µg/puff</td>
<td>80–240 µg TDD</td>
<td>240–480 µg TDD</td>
<td>&gt;480 µg TDD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Budesonide dry powder 200 µg/puff</td>
<td>200–600 µg TDD</td>
<td>600–1200 µg TDD</td>
<td>&gt;1200 µg TDD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flunisolide 250 µg/puff</td>
<td>500–1000 µg TDD</td>
<td>1000–2000 µg TDD</td>
<td>&gt;2000 µg TDD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dry powder inhaler: 50, 100, 250 mg/ inhalation</td>
<td>DPI: 100–300 µg TDD</td>
<td>DPI: 300–750 µg TDD</td>
<td>DPI: &gt;750 µg TDD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Triamcinolone acetonide 100 µg/puff</td>
<td>400–1000 µg TDD</td>
<td>1000–2000 µg TDD</td>
<td>&gt;2000 µg TDD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Systemic corticosteroid</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Methylprednisolone Tablets: 2, 4, 8, 16, 32 mg</td>
<td>Daily dose (all three drugs are dosed the same)</td>
<td>7.5–60 mg daily</td>
<td>As a single dose in a.m.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prednisolone Tablets: 5 mg</td>
<td>As a single dose in a.m.</td>
<td>Every other day as needed for control</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prednisone Tablets: 1, 2.5, 5, 10, 20, 50 mg oral solution: 5 mg/mL</td>
<td>Every other day as needed for control</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Long-acting β-agonist (LAB A): Not for symptom relief, and not used alone; use with inhaled corticosteroids</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Salmeterol MDI: 21 µg/puff DPI: 50 µg/blistere 1 capsule q12h</td>
<td>One inhalation twice daily</td>
<td>Fluticasone dose depends on asthma severity</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Formoterol DPI: 12 µg per single-use capsule</td>
<td>One inhalation twice daily</td>
<td>Fluticasone dose depends on asthma severity</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Combination: LABA plus inhaled corticosteroid</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fluticasone/salmeterol DPI: fluticasone dose varies 100, 250, or 500 µg/puff; salmeterol always 50 µg/puff</td>
<td>One inhalation twice daily</td>
<td>Fluticasone dose depends on asthma severity</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Leukotriene receptor antagonists</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Montelukast 10 mg tablet</td>
<td>Maximum dose 800 mg/day; serum drug monitoring, 5–12 µg/mL is therapeutic</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zafirlukast</td>
<td>10 mg qhs</td>
<td>40 mg daily</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Theophylline</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Liquids; sustained-release tablets; capsules</td>
<td>Starting dose 10 mg/kg/day</td>
<td>Maximum dose 800 mg/day; serum drug monitoring, 5–12 µg/mL is therapeutic</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


*Abbreviations: CFC, chlorofluorocarbons; DPI, dry powder inhaler; FEV₁, forced expiratory volume in one second; HFA, hydrofluoroalkane; MDI, metered-dose inhaler; NAEPP, National Asthma Education and Prevention Program; PEFR, peak expiratory flow rate; TDD, total daily dose.*
National Heart, Lung, and Blood Institute (NHLBI) classification is as follows.

**Mild Intermittent Asthma**
- Fewer than two episodes per week AND fewer than two nocturnal episodes per month, plus
- PEFR better than 80% of personal best (or FEV₁ >80% of predicted), plus
- Less than 20% variation in PEFR in the course of a day.

**Mild Persistent Asthma**
- Symptoms more than twice a week (but not daily) or nocturnal symptoms more than twice per month, plus
- Peak expiratory flow (PEF) better than 80% of personal best (or FEV₁ >80% of predicted), plus
- No more than 20% to 30% variation in PEFR in the course of a day.

**Moderate Persistent Asthma**
- Daily symptoms or nocturnal symptoms more than once per week or
- PEF between 60% and 80% of personal best (FEV₁ 60%–80% of predicted) or
- PEF variation >30%.

**Severe Persistent Asthma**
- Continuous daytime symptoms or
- Frequent nocturnal symptoms or
- PEF <60% of personal best (FEV₁ <60% of predicted).
  - PEF variation is typically >30%.

**Pregnancy Complications**
Asthma has historically been associated with small increased risks of congenital malformations, preeclampsia, preterm
birth, low birth weight, and perinatal mortality [3,4]. These risks are probably associated just with undertreatment of asthma: If asthma is adequately controlled, it is not associated with a significant increase in adverse perinatal outcomes [5,6]. A relationship has been reported between decreased FEV1 during pregnancy and increased risk of low birth weight and prematurity [7]. In addition, women who required hospitalization for asthma during pregnancy or who reported their asthma control to be poor during pregnancy were at higher risk for preterm birth although not for growth restriction [6]. Large studies indicate that therapy tailored according to asthma severity can result in excellent infant and maternal outcomes [5,8]. There are no randomized prospective trials comparing pregnancy outcomes in treated and untreated asthmatics. Women who decrease their asthma medication during pregnancy deliver infants of lower birth weight and slightly shorter gestational age than those who either increase their medication or make no change [9].

Pregnancy Considerations
Pregnant women are less likely than others to receive appropriate asthma care [10]. Pregnant women are equally likely to be admitted for an asthma attack but are less likely to receive corticosteroids in the emergency department (ED), and those who are sent home are less likely to be prescribed outpatient steroids. Pregnant women are far more likely than nonpregnant counterparts to report ongoing symptoms two weeks after an ED visit, perhaps because of the difference in steroid use [10]. Adherence to treatment with inhaled corticosteroids has been reported to be poor in many studies. For example, women reported to decrease their use of inhaled corticosteroids during early pregnancy as compared with their use of these agents in the 20 weeks before their last menstrual period; this may be due to their reported concern regarding the safety of inhaled corticosteroids during pregnancy [3].

Pregnancy has a variable effect on asthma severity, which may improve, worsen, or remain unchanged. In general, about two thirds get better, and one third get worse [2]. Most exacerbations occur between 24 and 36 weeks, and the fewest symptoms occur at term. Of patients with mild disease, 2% were hospitalized during pregnancy, 13% were noted to have an exacerbation, and 13% had symptoms at time of delivery [7]. For patients with moderate asthma, 7% were hospitalized and 26% had an exacerbation during pregnancy with 21% symptomatic at delivery. Among severe asthmatics, 27% were hospitalized and 52% had an exacerbation during pregnancy, and 46% of severe asthmatics were symptomatic at delivery [7]. A number of factors have been proposed as predictors of disease worsening during pregnancy (smoking, carrying a female fetus, worsening of rhinitis), but studies are inconsistent [11–13].

Management
Principles
The management of asthma in pregnant women should follow the same guidelines as for other patients. The goal is to maintain asthma control during pregnancy. In 2004, the National Asthma Education and Prevention Program (NAEPP) stated, “It is safer for pregnant women with asthma to be treated with asthma medications than it is for them to have asthma symptoms and exacerbations” [14]. Recommendations for asthma management and control are available from the 2007 NAEPP Guidelines [1], the NAEPP update on managing asthma in pregnancy [14], and from the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists [15]. An expert panel of the NAEPP concluded in 2015 that an update to national asthma guidelines is warranted, but at the time of this writing no such update has yet been issued; the projected date for publication is 2018. [16] As is true for many guidelines, recommendations may be made on the basis of consensus or expert opinion rather than on level I evidence. A recent Cochrane review concluded that “no firm conclusions about optimal interventions for managing asthma in pregnancy can be made” [17].

Prevention
Eliminate or mitigate asthma triggers. Environmental control measures are shown in Table 24.5.

Preconception Care
Multidisciplinary care is recommended for preparation of pregnancy and during pregnancy. Education regarding prognosis, complications, and management of asthma therapy should be reviewed with emphasis on the fact that asthma therapy should not change in pregnancy compared to the nonpregnant state but should still aim for maximal relief of symptoms and best pulmonary function through attentive patient compliance with suggested management.

Prenatal Care
Achieving and maintaining asthma control requires four components of care:
1. Use of objective measures of lung function such as PEFR, to ascertain severity, assess asthma control, and to monitor therapy rather than relying on symptoms.
2. Control of environmental factors and comorbid conditions to eliminate or mitigate asthma triggers.
3. Pharmacotherapy designed to prevent or reverse airway inflammation typical of asthma, as well as drug treatment for exacerbations.
4. Patient education regarding symptoms, management, and compliance.

Table 24.5 Environmental Control Measures for Asthma Management

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reduce or eliminate allergens</th>
<th>Cockroaches</th>
<th>Pollen</th>
<th>Mold</th>
<th>Animal dander</th>
<th>House dust mites</th>
<th>Encase mattresses and pillows in allergen-impermeable covers</th>
<th>Remove carpets from bedroom</th>
<th>Reduce indoor humidity</th>
<th>Eliminate or reduce exposure to tobacco smoke</th>
<th>Reduce exposure to indoor and outdoor pollutants</th>
<th>Wood-burning stoves, fireplaces</th>
<th>Unvented stoves or heaters</th>
<th>Irritants, such as perfumes and cleaning products</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

Workup of Asthma Control

Asthma control should be assessed on a regular basis (at least at each prenatal visit) by review of symptoms, medications used, and quality of life over the preceding weeks. The PEF can be measured by peak flow meters, which are portable, inexpensive, and disposable. Both FEV1 and PEF remain unchanged in pregnancy in the normal state. Predicted PEF values are based on age, gender, and height. For women, they range from 380 to 550 L/min. Each pregnant woman should establish her personal best during quiescent asthma. PEF >80% of personal best are normal; values between 50% and 80% are intermediate; values <50% are associated with severe asthma exacerbation. Daily peak flow monitoring using an inexpensive home meter is advisable in cases of moderate or severe asthma in order to identify presymptomatic airflow obstruction, which may require escalation of therapy. Outcomes have not been proven to be different when symptom-based monitoring is used rather than PEF monitoring [1], but objective measures are particularly valuable for patients with a history of exacerbations, when evaluating a change in therapy, or for those patients whose perception of airflow is poor. 

PEF results should be recorded in a log and brought to each prenatal visit.

Therapy

General

Inhalation therapy is preferred to systemic treatments because of direct delivery to airway and fewer side effects. Spacer devices can increase delivery to the lungs and minimize oral absorption. For all except the mild intermittent type of asthma, inhaled corticosteroids, NOT inhaled β-agonists, are the mainstay of therapy.

Use of one or more canisters of β-agonist per month indicates inadequate asthma control. Gain control as quickly as possible; a short course of oral steroids may be helpful. Review symptoms monthly. Other indicators of a need for stepped-up therapy are symptoms more than twice per week; three or more nighttime awakenings related to asthma symptoms; and limitation or interference with normal activity. Step-down therapy may be attempted only if symptoms are well controlled.

An individualized action plan should be generated for an asthmatic patient. This incorporates frequent self- assessment, a daily self-management plan, long-term self- management plan, and an asthma action plan based on symptoms, peak flow, and medications used. The action plan allows patients to step up therapy at home with exacerbations and provides criteria for contacting the physician or seeking care in an ED. Sample action plans can be found online at http://www.nhlbi.nih.gov/health/public/lung/asthma/asthma_actplan.pdf and http://www.nhlbi.nih.gov/health/public/lung/asthma/actionplan_text.htm.

If symptoms are not adequately controlled, review compliance, inhalation technique, and environmental control. If no room for improvement in these areas, step up to the next level of therapy. At step 3 or 4 (moderate or severe persistent disease) or if patient required >2 bursts of oral systemic corticosteroids in one year or has an exacerbation requiring hospitalization, refer to a specialist in asthma (if one is not already involved).

Goals

- No limitations at school or work
- Normal or near-normal pulmonary function assessed by PEF (or FEV1)
- Prevent hypoxemia
- Minimal-to-no exacerbations, chronic symptoms, use of short-term β-agonists, or medication side effects

Suggested Medications

A stepwise approach to manage asthma is recommended to gain and maintain control (Figure 24.1). Usual drug doses are

![Figure 24.1](http://www.nhlbi.nih.gov/guidelines/asthma/asthgdln.pdf)
shown in Table 24.2. Medications for exacerbation are shown in Tables 24.3 and 24.4 (all tables are adapted from the NAEPP) [1]. Algorithms for home and hospital management of exacerbation can be found in the NAEPP guidelines (Figures 24.2 and 24.3) [1]. Number and frequency of medications increase with increasing asthma severity. On the basis of clinical trials, medications are considered to be “preferred” or “alternative” at each step of therapy. For patients who are not already taking long-term control medications, assess asthma severity and initiate therapy according to level of severity. For patients who are already taking long-term control medications, assess asthma control and step-up therapy if the patient’s asthma is not well controlled on current therapy. In general, using short-acting \( \beta \)-agonists (SABA) >2 days a week indicates the need for starting or increasing long-term control medications. 

*Mild intermittent asthma.* These patients require no daily medication (step 1). Quick relief can be provided in the form of two to four puffs of a SABA bronchodilator as needed.

---

**Assess severity**

Measure PEF: Value <50% personal best or predicted suggests severe exacerbation

Note signs and symptoms: Degrees of cough, breathlessness, wheeze, and chest tightness correlate imperfectly with severity of exacerbation

Accessory muscle use and suprasternal retractions suggest severe exacerbation

Note presence of fetal activity*

**Initial treatment**

Short-acting inhaled beta2-agonist: up to 3 treatments of 2–4 puffs by MDI at 20-minute intervals or single nebulizer treatment

---

**Good response**

Mild exacerbation
PEF >80% predicted or personal best.
No wheezing or shortness of breath.
Response to short-acting inhaled beta2-agonist sustained for 4 hours.
Appropriate fetal activity.*

Treatment:

- May continue short-acting inhaled beta2-agonist every 3–4 hours for 24–48 hours.
- For patients on inhaled cortico-steroid, double dose for 7–10 days.

Contact clinician for follow-up instructions.

**Incomplete response**

Moderate exacerbation
PEF 50%–80% predicted or personal best.
Persistent wheezing and shortness of breath.
Decreased fetal activity.*

Treatment:

- Add oral corticosteroid.
- Continue short-acting inhaled beta2-agonist.

Contact clinician urgently (this day) for instructions.

**Poor response**

Severe exacerbation
PEF <50% predicted or personal best.
Marked wheezing and shortness of breath.
Decreased fetal activity.*

Treatment:

- Add oral corticosteroid.
- Repeat short-acting inhaled beta2-agonist immediately.
- If distress is severe and nonresponsive, call your clinician immediately and proceed to emergency department; consider calling ambulance or 911.

Proceed to emergency department.

---

Figure 24.3  Management of asthma exacerbations during pregnancy and lactation: emergency department and hospital-based care.  FEV₁, forced expiratory volume in 1 second; MDI, metered-dose inhaler; PCO₂, carbon dioxide partial pressure; PEF, peak expiratory flow. (From National Asthma Education and Prevention Program. NAEEP Working Group Report on managing asthma during pregnancy: recommendations for pharmacologic treatment—update 2004. NIH Publication 05–3279. Available at: http://www.nhlbi.nih.gov/health/prof/lung/asthma/astpreg/astpreg_full.pdf, with permission from National Heart, Lung, and Blood Institute; National Institutes of Health; U.S. Department of Health and Human Services.)
In the event of exacerbation, PEFR 50% to 80% of predicted should be treated with an inhaled short-acting β-mimetic immediately. Values <50% require the same therapy plus immediate visit to emergency room. However, the need to use rescue twice a week or more means a step up in therapy and a reclassification of severity. These patients can have severe exacerbations interrupting long periods of normal lung function, in which case systemic steroids should be offered.

**Mild persistent asthma.** Treat with a daily inhaled corticosteroid (low dose). Alternative therapies include inhaled cromolyn, leukotriene receptor antagonist (LTRA), or sustained-release theophylline adjusted to serum level of 5 to 12 μg/mL (step 2).

**Moderate persistent asthma.** Treat with either a medium-dose inhaled corticosteroid or a low-dose inhaled corticosteroid plus a long-acting inhaled β-agonist (step 3). If necessary, give the long-acting β-agonist (LABA) with a medium-dose corticosteroid (step 4).

Alternative therapies include low-dose or medium-dose inhaled corticosteroid in combination with either theophylline or a LTRA.

**Severe persistent asthma.** These patients require both a high-dose inhaled corticosteroid and a long-acting inhaled β-agonist (step 5) and may also require oral corticosteroids (step 6); when feasible, the oral corticosteroids should be discontinued and control maintained with inhaled agents.

An alternative therapy would be high-dose inhaled corticosteroid plus sustained-release theophylline titrated to therapeutic serum levels as above.

**Inhaled Steroids**

Anti-inflammatory agents decrease edema and secretions in the bronchioles. Indications are shown in Figure 24.1. They are used not for acute relief but for long-term management (four weeks for maximal benefit). Inhaled corticosteroids are the most consistently effective long-term control medication at all steps of care for persistent asthma. If β-agonist (e.g., albuterol) is used two times a week, inhaled steroid therapy should be started. Most of the data on inhaled steroids in human pregnancy come from budesonide (Pulmocort) [12]. Inhaled beclomethasone is associated with improved FEV₁ and fewer side effects compared to oral theophylline in the only trial comparing them in pregnancy [16]. In a large, double-blind, randomized trial, treatment with low-dose budesonide had no adverse effects on the outcome of pregnancy [17]. There is no evidence of increased rates of congenital malformations with the use of inhaled corticosteroids in pregnancy [4,14]. Nor is there an effect on fetal growth, preterm birth, rates of gestational hypertension, pre eclampsia, and perinatal mortality [6,7,18-20]. A meta-analysis concludes that they are safe in pregnancy [21].

**β-Agonists**

β-Agonists relax bronchiolar smooth muscle. There is no consistent evidence of increased rates of congenital malformations with the use of β-agonists in pregnancy [14] despite a recent case-control study suggesting an increased risk of gastroschisis when bronchodilators were used during the periconception period [22]. Without having adjusted for severity of maternal asthma, it would be premature to conclude that β-agonists correlate with gastroschisis. Use of inhaled β-agonists does not appear to increase perinatal risks in pregnant asthmatic patients (including gestational hypertension, preterm birth, low birth weight, fetal growth, and small for gestational age) [6,7].

**Short-acting β-agonists.** These are the treatment of choice for relief of acute symptoms. Regularly scheduled, daily, chronic use of SABA is not recommended. The onset of action is <5 minutes with a duration of only four to six hours.

**Long-acting β-agonists.** Produce bronchodilation for at least 12 hours after a single dose. They are not to be used as monotherapy for long-term control of asthma. Instead, they are used in combination with inhaled corticosteroids for long-term control and prevention of symptoms in moderate or severe persistent asthma. Long-acting β-agonists have been shown to be more effective than LTRA or theophylline as add-on therapy to inhaled corticosteroids [1].

**Combination of Inhaled Corticosteroids and Long-Acting β-Agonists (Fixed-Drug Combination)**

Fluticasone and salmeterol (Advair) combination is more effective than either drug alone in nonpregnant trials.

**Cromolyn**

Cromolyn sodium is a nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory agent used for chronic management of asthma, not acute exacerbations (four weeks for maximal benefit). There is no evidence of increased rates of congenital malformations with the use of cromolyn in pregnancy [14]; this is a safe drug in pregnancy as is nedocromil.

**Theophylline**

Theophylline has a long record of use in pregnancy and no teratogenic effects are known; however, the narrow therapeutic window and potential for maternal and fetal toxicity mandates close monitoring of serum levels. Low-dose theophylline is an alternative to a LABA when inhaled corticosteroids do not suffice to control symptoms, but this is not a preferred therapy [1]. Recommendations for target serum theophylline levels have been changed to 5 to 12 μg/mL.

**Leukotriene Receptor Antagonists**

Limited human data are available on the use of LTRA during pregnancy. Several small studies have not shown an increase in the rate of major malformations in offspring of women who took LTRA during pregnancy [23,24]. Mean birth weight was lower and risk of low birth weight and fetal distress was higher in the montelukast-exposed group, a difference that may have been related to asthma severity rather than drug effect. In nonpregnant individuals, these drugs are less effective than inhaled corticosteroids and do not add much benefit to women already on inhaled steroids. They do not reduce the risk of exacerbation requiring systemic steroids and are associated with modest improvement in PEF with very modest decrease in use of rescue short-acting β-2 agonists [25]. These drugs may be considered during pregnancy for women who had a good response to them prior to pregnancy, but they are not a preferred option when initiating therapy. Montelukast and zafirlukast are safe in pregnancy [26,27]. Zileuton, a 5-lipoxygenase inhibitor, has been advised against in pregnancy based on animal data: human data are lacking [14].

**Anticholinergics**

Anticholinergics inhibit muscarinic cholinergic receptors and reduce intrinsic vagal tone of the airway. Ipratropium bromide provides additive benefit to SABA in moderate or...
severe exacerbations in the emergency care setting, not the hospital setting.

**Oral Corticosteroids**

Oral corticosteroids are indicated when combinations of inhaled steroids, β-agonists, and cromolyn do not control asthma. Oral steroid use in the first trimester is associated with a possible increased risk of cleft lip (with or without cleft palate) from the background rate of 0.1% to 0.3%, a small excess risk. The use of oral corticosteroids during pregnancy is associated with an increase in incidence of gestational diabetes, preeclampsia, preterm delivery, and low birth weight. These outcomes may be attributed to either the drug or the severity of the disease process. Available data do not allow for the distinction [7].

Intravenous corticosteroids may be indicated in severe asthma exacerbation.

**Status Asthmaticus**

Recommendations for management are either anecdotal or extrapolated from management of status asthmaticus outside of pregnancy [28,29].

**Acute Treatment of Asthma**

The treatment of an acute asthma exacerbation should be the same, in general, as in nonpregnant adults. Oxygen, aerosolized albuterol, and ipratropium as well as systemic steroids should be initiated as described above [30].

**Antepartum Testing**

No specific indication.

**Delivery**

Asthma medications should be continued in labor. Although asthma is typically quiescent during labor and delivery, PEF should be measured upon admission and again every 12 hours in labor.

The idea of giving stress doses of steroids in labor or peripartum is poorly supported by research (see Chapter 25). Individuals receiving long-term corticosteroids have not, in randomized studies, proven incapable of endogenous steroid production peripartum. A recent systematic review concludes that there is no need to add stress-dose steroids in the peripartum period as long as patients continue to get their usual daily dose of steroids; this would not, however, be true for patients with primary adrenal failure or other primary dysfunction of the hypothalamic–pituitary axis, who would still require additional glucocorticoid coverage. Thus, extrapolating from work done on surgical patients, one would not expect adrenal crisis, and it would seem satisfactory to continue their regular daily steroid dosing during labor for women who are on prednisone without adding additional “stress doses.” Blood pressure should, of course, be carefully monitored [31].

Prostaglandin E1 and E2 are safe. Prostaglandin F2a should be avoided as it can cause bronchospasm. Ergonovine, methylergonovine, and nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory agents (such as indomethacin, sometimes given for preterm labor) may precipitate bronchospasm.

**Anesthesia**

No specific changes; as a rule, regional anesthetics are preferred to general.

**Postpartum/Breast-Feeding**

The NAEPP found that the use of prednisone, theophylline, antihistamines, inhaled corticosteroids, β2-agonists, and cromolyn is not contraindicated for breast-feeding [14]. Breast-feeding does not protect against asthma in offspring [32]. Although nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory agents (NSAIDs) may precipitate bronchospasm in some asthmatics, the risk in the general asthmatic population is less than 1%. Thus, it is reasonable to treat patients during the postpartum period with NSAIDs especially if they have not previously exhibited an adverse reaction.

**PNEUMONIA**

**Key Points**

- The presence of an infiltrate on chest X-ray confirms the diagnosis of pneumonia.
- Complications of community-acquired pneumonia (CAP) include mechanical ventilation, maternal mortality, low birth weight infant, and perinatal mortality.
- Prompt administration of antibiotics without delay and appropriate antibiotic therapy are the most important principles for effective management.
- Hospitalization is indicated when a pregnant woman with CAP has coexisting medical conditions, such as malignancy, renal failure, immunosuppression, cerebrovascular disease, diabetes, or valvular heart disease, RR ≥30, diastolic BP ≤60, systolic BP ≤90, HR ≥125, altered mental status, PaCO2 <60 on room air, presence of a pleural effusion, hematocrit <30, arterial pH <7.35, or multi-lobe involvement.
- Most cases of low-risk CAP in pregnancy can be treated with a macrolide, and the more high-risk ones can be treated with a macrolide and a β-lactam.
- Antibiotic therapy should not be changed within the first 72 hours unless clinical deterioration is overt or organism sensitivities become available.

**Diagnosis**

Pneumonia is an infectious process of the lower respiratory tract, which should be suspected if a patient presents with new respiratory symptoms of cough, dyspnea, or sputum production, particularly if fever and abnormal breath sounds are also present. The presence of an infiltrate on chest X-ray confirms the diagnosis.

**Etiology/Basic Pathophysiology**

Etiology is usually bacterial, viral, or fungal infection of the lungs. Streptococcus pneumoniae (5%–30%) and Mycoplasma pneumoniae (5%–30%) are the most common pathogens, but dozens of different organisms can cause pneumonia (Table 24.6) [33,34]. In CAP, the causative agent is identified in only 40% to 60% of the cases [35].

**Classification**

The distinction between CAP and hospital-acquired pneumonia is made in practice. In the majority of cases, clinical signs
Viral pneumonia requires intubation and mechanical ventilation. Approximately 2% of pregnant women with pneumonia require intubation and mechanical ventilation.

Risk Factors

Smoking; asthma.

Prevention

Pneumococcal vaccine prevents 71% of cases of CAP and 32% of related mortality in nonpregnant adults [33]. For details on recommended pneumococcal and influenza vaccines, see Chapter 38.

Workup

Assess severity of illness by physical findings (blood pressure, respiratory rate, mental status, state of hydration) and by radiographic findings (e.g., multilobar involvement and pleural effusion). Laboratory testing for a specific cause is controversial and frequently nonrevealing. The IDSA and the ATS have recommended that diagnostic testing be initiated to determine the cause of CAP if the results would change treatment decisions, for example, antimicrobial regimens. This would be most useful in areas of high antibiotic resistance or if unusual pathogens are suspected. A list of clinical indications for more extensive diagnostic testing can be found in the IDSA/ATS Consensus Guidelines [36]. Routine diagnostic tests to identify an etiologic diagnosis are optional for the mildly ill, but patients with severe CAP should have the following diagnostic tests: blood cultures, urinary antigen assays for Legionella spp. and S. pneumoniae, and expectorated sputum samples/endotracheal aspirates.

Blood culture is positive in 5% to 11% of cases; positive blood cultures are more common in those with severe CAP [43]. Blood cultures should be obtained before antibiotic administration.

The Infectious Diseases Society of America (IDSA) and The American Thoracic Society (ATS) use the Pneumonia Severity Index (PSI) to stratify CAP by comorbidity and mortality rates [36]. Most pregnant patients with CAP will fall into subset I; this is a group that, if nonpregnant, would be appropriately treated as outpatients. There are, however, no reliable data as to inpatient versus outpatient therapy in pregnancy.

Management

Principles

Prompt administration of antibiotics without delay and appropriate antibiotic therapy are the most important principles for effective management.

Prevention

Pneumococcal vaccine prevents 71% of cases of CAP and 32% of related mortality in nonpregnant adults [33]. For details on recommended pneumococcal and influenza vaccines, see Chapter 38.

Table 24.6 Pathogens Isolated in Patients with Community-Acquired Pneumonia

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Bacterial</th>
<th>Common: Streptococcus pneumoniae, Mycoplasma pneumoniae, Haemophilus influenzae, Staphylococcus aureus, Chlamydia pneumoniae, and psittaci</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

Fungal

Uncommon: Histoplasma capsulatum, Coccidioides immitis, Cryptococcus neoformans, Blastomyces hominis, Aspergillus spp., Candida spp., Mucormycotic fungi

Other Causes

Uncommon: Mycobacterium tuberculosis, Pneumocystis jirovecii, Toxoplasma gondii, Ascaris lumbricoides, Strongyloides stercoralis, Coxiella burnetii, Rickettsia rickettsii

Source: Adapted from Sheffield JS, Cunningham FG. Obstet Gynecol, 114, 4, 915–22, 2009.

and symptoms do not distinguish one pathogen from another. The vast majority of cases of pneumonia in pregnant women in clinical practice and in the literature are cases of CAP.

The attack rate for CAP is no different among pregnant women than among women of reproductive age who are not pregnant, approximately 1.5 per 1000 [37]. Pregnant women hospitalized with CAP have lower severity scores than their nonpregnant counterparts; this may reflect either a tendency for the disease process to be less severe or a lower threshold for hospitalization during pregnancy. Pneumonia incidence is evenly distributed throughout pregnancy; that is, there is no specific period of vulnerability.

Risk Factors

Smoking; asthma.

Complications

Approximately 2% of pregnant women with pneumonia require intubation and mechanical ventilation [38].
Treatment

Hospitalization
The initial management decision after diagnosis is to determine the site of care, that is, outpatient, hospital ward, or ICU. There are no trials addressing benefits of outpatient versus inpatient care for the pregnant woman with pneumonia. Keeping this in mind, physicians may still begin treatment decisions by using a prediction tool for increased mortality, such as the PSI, combined with clinical judgment [36]. The PSI was developed to assist physicians in identifying patients at a higher risk of complications and who are more likely to benefit from hospitalization, that is, those with comorbidities, hypoxemia, alteration in vital signs, etc. It has not been validated in pregnancy. Direct admission to ICU is required for patients with septic shock requiring vasopressors or with acute respiratory failure requiring intubation and mechanical ventilation.

The majority of obstetrical patients will fail to qualify as high risk by these criteria. Retrospectively applying ATS guidelines in place at the time of the study (similar to above), only 25% of pregnant patients with a diagnosis of CAP could have been assigned to outpatient care [38]. A 23-hour observation period might be useful in deciding whether inpatient treatment is warranted in the pregnant patient.

Antibiotics
There are no trials to determine which antibiotic regimen is most beneficial for the pregnant woman with pneumonia. No published treatment guidelines alter therapy for pneumonia because of pregnancy. Antibiotic selection should take into account the common causes of CAP, local antibiotic resistance patterns, clinical presentation, comorbid conditions, and recent antibiotic use. The fluoroquinolones are generally avoided in pregnancy because of concerns about interference with cartilage formation in the fetus, and the tetracyclines because of concerns about dentition. However, depending on drug allergies and microbiologic sensitivities, it may be necessary to alter these preferences. Initial choice of antimicrobial treatment is empirical. The ATS and IDSA recommend antibiotic regimens for adults with CAP [43]; they are adapted here to exclude, where possible, quinolones and tetracyclines. A joint ATS-IDSA updated guideline for antimicrobial therapies in CAP is expected late in 2016.

- Previously healthy patient, no recent antibiotic therapy, no risk factors for drug-resistant S. pneumoniae:
  - Erythromycin, azithromycin, or clarithromycin: only 1% of pregnant women with CAP remained febrile with erythromycin 500 mg every six hours [38].
- Previously healthy, but antibiotics within the past three months for any reason; or comorbidities (chronic heart/lung/liver/kidney disease, diabetes, or asplenia); or immunocompromise, including immunosuppressant drugs:
  - β-lactam plus macrolide; high-dose amoxicillin (1 g po tid) or high-dose amoxicillin clavulanate (2 g po bid) are preferred; alternatives include ceftriaxone, cefpodoxime, or cefuroxime (500 mg po bid).
- Inpatient, not in ICU:
  - β-lactam (ceftaxime, ceftriaxone, or ampicillin) plus a macrolide.
- Inpatient, ICU:
  - β-lactam plus azithromycin.

- For Pseudomonas:
  - Piperacillin-tazobactam, cefepime, imipenem, or meropenem plus ciprofloxacin or levofloxacin or
  - Piperacillin-tazobactam, cefepime, imipenem, or meropenem plus aminoglycoside plus azithromycin.
- For community-acquired methicillin-resistant Staphylococcus aureus:
  - Add vancomycin or linezolid.

In summary, most cases of low-risk CAP in pregnancy can be treated with a macrolide, and the more high-risk ones can be treated with a macrolide and a β-lactam. Uncommon pathogens do exist and should be considered if response to therapy is inadequate or incomplete.

Typical responses to therapy include defervescence in two to four days with resolution of leukocytosis in the same time period. The chest X-ray may take longer to clear as may the auscultatory findings. Antibiotic therapy should not be changed within the first 72 hours unless clinical deterioration is overt or organism sensitivities become available. There is no evidence in nonpregnant adults that intravenous and oral therapy differ in efficacy. Patients should be switched from intravenous to oral therapy when hemodynamically stable and improving clinically, able to ingest medications and have a normally functioning GI tract. If the pathogen and sensitivities are known, the narrowest spectrum agent should be chosen for oral therapy, but in most cases, this will not be possible, and oral agents should duplicate the spectrum of the parenteral agents used. The American Thoracic Society and the Infectious Diseases Society of America recommend discharge to home the same day that clinical stability is achieved (afebrile, no tachypnea nor tachycardia, normotensive, normoxemic, normal mental status, and able to tolerate oral intake) and the switch to oral agents is made. Inpatient observation while receiving oral therapy is not necessary. A follow-up inpatient chest X-ray is not indicated.

There are inadequate data to determine the best duration of antimicrobial treatment for CAP. With older agents, a duration of 10 to 14 days is commonly prescribed, but newer agents have longer half-lives and therefore may be curative over shorter courses of therapy, for example, five to seven days; trials are under way. Regardless of the total duration, it is recommended that patients with CAP be treated for a minimum of five days, should be afebrile for 48 to 72 hours, and should be clinically stable before discontinuation of therapy [43].

Oxygen support should be provided as needed.

Antepartum Testing
No specific indication.

Delivery
No specific changes.

Anesthesia
No specific changes.

Postpartum/Breast-Feeding
No specific changes.
INFLUENZA

Key Points

- Trivalent inactivated influenza vaccine is recommended for all pregnant and postpartum women.
- In addition to the protective effect of vaccination on women themselves, infants born to vaccinated mothers have fewer episodes of influenza, fever, and respiratory illness in their first six months of life.
- Influenza antiviral medications should be started as soon as possible after symptom onset, ideally within 48 hours of symptom onset. Treatment should not wait for laboratory confirmation of influenza.
- Risk of severe illness and mortality because of influenza appear to be higher among pregnant women.

Epidemiology/Incidence

Annual epidemics of influenza typically occur during the late fall through early spring: in the northern hemisphere, flu season starts in September or October and may continue as late as May. In addition to seasonal flu, epidemics or pandemics arise unpredictably. The pattern of emergence is usually in the southern hemisphere first, during the austral winter, where influenza peaks in August.

Etiology/Basic Pathophysiology

Influenza illnesses are caused by infection with one of the three types of circulating RNA viruses: A, B, or C [44]. Although B and C are almost exclusive to humans, A is avian in origin, although capable of infecting a range of warm-blooded animals. Both A and B types cause epidemic human disease. Influenza A viruses are subtyped by their surface antigens hemagglutinin (H) and neuraminidase (N).

High mutation rates and the potential for cross-species genetic reassortment are characteristic of influenza A [44]. New influenza A subtypes have the potential to cause a pandemic as demonstrated most recently in the 2009 H1N1 pandemic. The 2009 pandemic influenza A (H1N1) virus contained a combination of gene segments that had not been reported previously in animals or humans.

Influenza is spread by aerosolized droplets. The incubation period for influenza is one to four days; patients are likely infectious one day before symptom onset.

Symptoms

Infection with influenza virus can range from asymptomatic infection to uncomplicated upper respiratory tract disease to serious complicated illness, such as secondary bacterial pneumonia, sepsis, and organ failure. Symptoms include fever, cough, sore throat, nasal congestion or rhinorrhea, headache, myalgia, and malaise.

Diagnosis

A variety of laboratory tests are available (Table 24.7). Testing should occur if the result would influence clinical management. For screening during influenza season, antigen-based rapid testing is appropriate, but positive predictive value is poor when influenza prevalence is low.

Complications

Complications are largely maternal. In influenza pandemics, the maternal mortality case–fatality ratio is higher than that of the general population. In the most recent pandemic (2009), pregnant women, who represented approximately 1% of the U.S. population, accounted for 5% of deaths from 2009 influenza A (H1N1) [45,46]. In a case series from the 2009 H1N1 pandemic, 7% of deaths occurred in the first trimester, 27% in the second, and 64% in the third trimester [46]. This study is consistent with previous pandemics and seasonal influenza studies, which usually suggest that the risk of influenza complications is higher in the second and third trimester of pregnancy than in the first trimester [47,48].

Transplacental passage of influenza virus appears to be rare [49]. Infants born to women with laboratory-confirmed seasonal influenza during pregnancy do not have higher rates of low birth weight or lower Apgar scores [49,50]. The effect of influenza on perinatal outcomes is inconsistent. In most studies, there are no significant differences in mode of delivery, duration of delivery admission, episodes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Test</th>
<th>Method</th>
<th>Time</th>
<th>Comment</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PCR</td>
<td>Gel-based reverse transcriptase PCR</td>
<td>≥2 hr</td>
<td>High sensitivity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Very high specificity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Moderate-to-high sensitivity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Immunofluorescence</td>
<td>Direct or indirect fluorescent antibody stain</td>
<td>2–4 hr</td>
<td>High specificity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Low-to-moderate sensitivity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rapid tests</td>
<td>Antigen detection; enzyme immunoassay</td>
<td>10–30 min</td>
<td>High specificity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Limitations: may not distinguish influenza A and B Positive predictive value poor outside of influenza season</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Viral culture</td>
<td>Shell vial culture or cell culture</td>
<td>2–10 days</td>
<td>Moderate-to-high sensitivity, highest specificity; useful for public health surveillance, not for clinician</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Serology</td>
<td>Acute paired &amp; convalescent samples: ELISA, complement fixation, hemagglutination, or neutralization</td>
<td>Weeks to months</td>
<td>Reference laboratories only; useful for public health surveillance, no help in clinical management</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

of preterm labor, and adverse perinatal outcomes between the influenza and noninfluenza groups [51,52], although a large U.S. study of 2009 pandemic H1N1 influenza demonstrated a 30% risk of preterm birth among affected women [46], and another Norwegian study of 2009 pandemic H1N1 influenza reported a significant increase in fetal deaths [53]. Severe maternal illness, of course, such as overt respiratory failure, is associated with significantly worse perinatal outcome than in most seasonal or even pandemic influenza [54–56].

Pregnancy Considerations
Changes in the immune, respiratory, and cardiovascular systems result in pregnant women being more severely affected. Pregnant women are at higher risk for severe complications and death from influenza, both H1N1 influenza and seasonal influenza.

During periods of seasonal flu, pregnant women account for excess health care visits related to respiratory complaints and excess hospitalizations (above what would be expected outside of pregnancy); this is true for both healthy women and those with chronic conditions. The rate of hospitalization for seasonal (not pandemic) influenza among healthy nonpregnant women in Canada has been reported as 17/100,000, but 156/100,000 among healthy women who were pregnant. The tenfold difference in influenza hospitalization persisted among women with comorbidities, but as expected, the absolute rates are higher [57]. Pregnant women are at increased risk for hospitalization during influenza season, and those hospitalized for respiratory illness stay longer [46,57,58]. During the 2009 H1N1 influenza pandemic, pregnant and postpartum women with H1N1 influenza had a seven times higher risk of admission to ICU than nonpregnant women in the same age group, and after 20 weeks of pregnancy, the relative risk of ICU admission was 13 times higher [56]. The severity of disease is demonstrated by utilization of extracorporeal membrane oxygenation (ECMO): in 2009 in Australia and New Zealand, 16% of all ECMO interventions for respiratory failure in H1N1 were performed on pregnant or postpartum patients [59]; these are patients whom conventional mechanical ventilation could not adequately oxygenate.

Management

Prevention

Annual influenza vaccination is the most effective method for preventing influenza infection and its complications [60]. The vaccine is reformulated yearly to cover the strains predicted to be in circulation. The trivalent inactivated vaccine (TIV) for individuals is recommended for women who are pregnant, postpartum, or breast-feeding during the influenza season. TIV contains noninfectious killed viruses and cannot cause influenza. It can be given in any trimester of pregnancy. Safety is not a concern; there is no suggestion of fetal harm after TIV administration to pregnant women [61] and no difference in rate of preterm birth and cesarean delivery [62]. In fact, influenza vaccination in the first trimester is not associated with an increase in major malformation rates and is associated with a decrease in stillbirth rates [63]. The live attenuated influenza vaccine (given intranasally), like other live-virus vaccines, should not be given during pregnancy (see also Chapter 38).

In addition to the protective effect of vaccination on women themselves, infants born to vaccinated mothers have fewer episodes of influenza, fever, and respiratory illness in their first six months of life [64], which may represent antibody transfer [65]. Each season, influenza vaccines are reformulated. Vaccination providers may check updated information at the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (http://www.cdc.gov/flu), Food and Drug Administration (http://www.fda.gov/BiologicsBloodVaccines/SafetyAvailability/vaccinesafety/default.htm), or World Health Organization (WHO) (http://www.who.int/csr/disease/influenza/vaccine_recommendations/en/index.html). However, national health authorities approve the specific composition and formulation of yearly vaccines for individual countries.

Prophylaxis after Suspected Exposure

Chemoprophylaxis after exposure to influenza is recommended for individuals at high risk of complications from influenza, which would include pregnant and postpartum women [66]. For household exposures, this means a 10-day course of either oseltamivir 75 mg once daily, or zanamivir as two 5-mg inhalations once daily. There are no RCTs of postexposure influenza prophylaxis among pregnant women. The efficacy of oseltamivir prophylaxis has, however, been called into question after a reanalysis of data obtained directly from the manufacturer [67]: See below.

Therapy

The neuraminidase inhibitors, oseltamivir and zanamivir, are modestly effective against both influenza A (including H1N1) and influenza B. Although the manufacturer has conducted no studies to assess safety of these medications for pregnant women, available risk–benefit data suggest that pregnant women with suspected or confirmed influenza should receive prompt antiviral therapy. Information about peramivir in pregnancy is limited to a handful of cases treated under the FDA's Emergency Use Authorization, and no recommendation can be made about this drug.

The standard dose for oseltamivir is 75 mg po bid for five days [68]. The standard dose for zanamivir is two inhalations twice daily for five days; this drug should be avoided in case of chronic respiratory disease, including asthma. If oseltamivir resistance is suspected, use zanamivir.

Treatment should be started as soon as possible, preferably within the first 48 hours. Delayed treatment of antiviral therapy has been associated with more severe illness and death in both seasonal influenza and 2009 influenza A (H1N1) whereas early initiation of treatment has been associated with reduced duration of illness, severity, mortality, and incidence of complications [46,54,69–71]. Laboratory confirmation of influenza virus infection is not necessary for the initiation of treatment. For uncomplicated influenza infection, a five-day course of antiviral medication is prescribed [68].

Several systematic reviews of neuraminidase inhibitors in nonpregnant adults [71–73] appeared to show an advantage for oseltamivir compared to placebo in reduction of symptoms (HR = 1.20; 95% CI, 1.06, 1.35) with a reduction in duration of illness of about one day. These reviews, however, have been called into question because of concerns of reporting bias. In order to perform the most recent systematic review, authors waged a four-year battle to obtain clinical trial results directly from the sponsoring pharmaceutical company and concluded that oseltamivir, compared to placebo, shortened the time to
alleviation of symptoms by 16 hours (that is, from 70 days of symptoms to 6.5 days), had no effect on hospital admission, and did not affect the risk of developing objectively verified pneumonia or any other complication deemed significant. [70] When given as postexposure prophylaxis, oseltamivir reduced the probability of developing symptomatic influenza by 55% while increasing gastrointestinal disturbances, headache, psychiatric events, and renal compromise [70].

Epidemiologic data from the 2009–2010 pandemic showed that among pregnant women, later initiation of antiviral treatment (≥4 days after symptoms began) was associated with higher rates of hospital admission, ICU admission, and mechanical ventilation, compared to those who began treatment earlier. Women who received no antiviral drug had no increased risk of hospital admission but were more likely to be admitted to ICU and to receive mechanical ventilation, compared to those who began antiviral therapy at less than four days after symptom onset. “Late” or no treatment was also associated with higher risk of death although mortality was, surprisingly, higher with late treatment than with no treatment, perhaps reflecting small numbers [46].

There is limited evidence regarding the safety of oseltamivir use in pregnancy. A single cotyledon perfused placental model showed that oseltamivir is extensively metabolized by the placenta [74] with minimal accumulation of the metabolite on the fetal side. In a population of 90 Japanese women who received oseltamivir during pregnancy, the incidence of malformation (1.1%) was similar to the incidence of major malformations in the general population [75]. A retrospective cohort study of 239 pregnant women in Texas demonstrated no association of antepartum exposure to amantadine, rimantadine, or oseltamivir with adverse fetal outcomes [76]. As of 2015, CDC continues to recommend oral oseltamivir for treatment of pregnant and postpartum women suspected of having influenza and states that the decision to start antiviral treatment should not wait for laboratory confirmation, since “laboratory testing can delay treatment and because a negative rapid influenza diagnostic test does not rule out influenza” [77].

Antepartum Testing
No evidence for recommendations.

Delivery
No evidence for recommendations.

Postpartum/Breast-Feeding
Whether influenza viruses are passed into human milk is not known; however, respiratory droplets are believed to be the main mode of viral transmission. Because of the antiinfective benefits of human milk for infants, continuation of breast-feeding is recommended while the mother is receiving treatment for influenza infection. The concentration of oseltamivir found in breast milk equates to much lower doses than the therapeutic dose given to infants [78].

TUBERCULOSIS

Key Points
- Definite diagnosis of active infection is based on culture (of suspected site: sputum for pulmonary TB) for Mycobacterium tuberculosis. Sputum culture is also important for drug sensitivity testing.
- Diagnosis of latent tuberculosis infection is based on a positive tuberculin test (called tuberculin skin testing, TST, or purified protein derivative, PPD), or interferon gamma-release assay (IGRA), and the absence of signs, symptoms, or proof of active disease. The choice of diagnostic test is based on available resources and specific populations as noted below.
- Pregnancy does not influence the progression from latent to active disease.
- The treatment for latent tuberculosis infection in pregnancy is isoniazid 300 mg daily for six to nine months.
- Treatment of active tuberculosis consists of an initial two-month phase of therapy, including isoniazid, rifampin, pyrazinamide, and ethambutol. Directly observed therapy is usually recommended. For the following four months, continue isoniazid and rifampin. Treatment for active tuberculosis is not altered by pregnancy.

Epidemiology/Incidence
TB is rare in the developed world with, for example, approximately 9000 new cases in the United States in 2014. This is consistent with a rate of 3.0 cases per 100,000 persons. In comparison, there were more than nine million new TB cases in 2014 worldwide and 1.5 million deaths; TB is one of the top three causes of death for women of reproductive age [79]. HIV coinfection (about 12% worldwide) accounts for a significant portion of the tuberculosis burden. Even resource-rich countries have seen a resurgence of TB over the past few years as a result of an increase in immigrant populations. The national incidence of TB in pregnancy in the UK in 2008 was estimated at four per 100,000 maternities [80]. All but one of the TB patients in this study were non-Western immigrants and half had extrapulmonary disease. Few had undergone tuberculin skin testing despite recommendations to the contrary.

Symptoms (of Active Disease)
Cough, lethargy, dyspnea, malaise, fever, sweating, weight loss. Hemoptyis is a late finding.

Etiology/Basic Pathophysiology
The pathogenesis of tuberculosis infection and disease in pregnant women is similar to that in nonpregnant women. Spread (by airborne droplets) is facilitated by the ability of these small particles to remain airborne for hours after being emitted from an infected respiratory tract. Once the Mycobacterium is taken up by alveolar macrophages, the infection may either be contained by granuloma formation or may progress to active disease [81]. Most patients develop cell-mediated immunity, which is demonstrated by conversion of the tuberculin skin test and which constitutes latent tuberculosis infection. In some patients, the replication of M. tuberculosis cannot be contained, and active disease occurs. Latent tuberculosis infection can develop into active tuberculosis, especially in individuals with risk factors. Pulmonary disease is the most common but not the only form of active tuberculosis, which can manifest in 20% of cases (extrapulmonary tuberculosis) as meningitis, osteitis, genitourinary involvement, or disseminated disease.
Risk Factors/Associations
HIV is the most important risk factor. Poorly controlled diabetes, renal failure, malignancy, steroids, malnutrition, and vitamin A or D deficiency are other risk factors for acquiring active \textit{M. tuberculosis} infection [81].

Diagnosis
Definitive diagnosis of \textit{active} infection is still made by culture (of suspected site, e.g., sputum) for \textit{M. tuberculosis}. Smear demonstrating acid-fast bacilli is a technique for rapid diagnosis [76]. Diagnosis of \textit{latent tuberculosis} requires a positive \textit{tuberculin skin test} (TST, also called purified protein derivative, PPD), in the absence of disease (thus no symptoms, X-ray findings, bacilli on smear, or positive culture). The \textit{interferon gamma release assay} (IGRA) is an alternative method for diagnosing TB and can be used in all incidences in which the TST would be recommended. It is specifically preferred in populations who have previously received the BCG vaccination and those who historically have poor rates of return for TST reading.

The most widely used method to detect respiratory TB in most disease-endemic countries is the sputum smear microscopy test developed in the 19th century, drawbacks of which include low sensitivity (especially in children and in HIV-positive individuals), inability to determine drug susceptibility, and variable performance depending on operator training and skill. In December 2010, the WHO endorsed a novel rapid test for tuberculosis, a fully automated molecular test for TB case detection plus rifampicin resistance testing. Other than adding sputum and reagent to the cartridge, there is little for the technician to do [82]. In a multinational study of about 1500 nonpregnant adults, this assay identified 98% of patients with smear-positive and culture-positive tuberculosis (including more than 70% of patients with smear-negative and culture-positive disease) and correctly identified 98% of bacteria that were resistant to rifampin [82]. The effect of pregnancy on this test has not been extensively studied, but it is counterintuitive to assume pregnancy would affect test performance.

Pregnancy Considerations
Tuberculosis attack rates appear to be comparable in the pregnant and nonpregnant states. Presentation is similar among both pregnant and nonpregnant patients, but diagnosis may be delayed in pregnancy because of the ubiquity of constitutional complaints during early pregnancy. \textit{Pregnancy is not known to influence the progression from latent to active disease}, nor has it been shown to affect the response to treatment. Pregnancy is not associated with higher (or lower) prevalence of anergy compared to other HIV-negative adults.

There are conflicting data on the effect of TB on maternal and neonatal outcomes. In a population-based study in Taiwan, women known to have TB during pregnancy—all of whom were treated—demonstrated an absolute increase of 2%–3% in the rate of low-birth-weight babies with no difference in preterm births compared to controls [83]. An earlier case-control study from India suggested higher rates of both preterm birth and small for gestational age newborns among women undergoing treatment for pulmonary TB, compared to matched controls [84], but a later Indian case-control study found no difference in perinatal outcome [85].

Congenital TB, which is very rare, is associated with maternal HIV infection, tuberculous endometritis, and military tuberculosis [86]. It can occur hematogenously via the placenta and umbilical vein or by fetal aspiration or ingestion of infected amniotic fluid. Neonatal TB develops following exposure of an infant to the mother’s aerosolized respiratory sections. This is more common than congenital TB, and diagnosis of neonatal TB can lead to diagnosis of previously unrecognized TB in the mother [87].

Pregnancy Management
Principles
Management of \textit{M. tuberculosis} infection in pregnancy should be multidisciplinary with involvement of obstetrician, maternal-fetal medicine, and infectious diseases specialists.

Screening
\textit{Tuberculin Skin Testing}
Tuberculin skin testing (TST) is the method historically used to detect both latent and active disease. TST can be performed safely in pregnant women, and pregnancy does not alter the response to the TST [88]. Using standardized \textit{purified protein derivative} (PPD), 0.1 mL (5 tuberculin units) is administered intradermally in the volar surface of the forearm. The reaction is read 48 to 72 hours after the injection although reading is accurate up to a week after challenge. Targeted (not universal) tuberculin testing is recommended so as to identify individuals who are at increased risk for developing \textit{M. tuberculosis} infection and who would benefit by treatment of latent tuberculosis infection. \textit{Testing is discouraged among persons without risk factors} (Table 24.8). Persons at increased risk for development of active disease are those who were recently infected (i.e., converted from a positive to a negative skin test within the preceding two years) as well as those who have latent infection plus an increased risk of progression to overt disease. Table 24.8 shows some of the \textit{indications for testing in pregnancy}: it is not an exhaustive list but is limited to those conditions that may be found in pregnancy. \textit{Interpretation of PPD results} is shown in Table 24.9 [89].

\textit{A decision to test is a decision to treat}. Therefore, do not test unless prepared to treat. With a positive skin test,

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table 24.8 Indications for Tuberculin Skin Testing in Pregnancy (Factors that Predispose to Progression from Latent to Active Disease)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Recent conversion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Household contacts of persons with infectious pulmonary TB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Recent immigration from parts of the world with high rates of TB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Homelessness</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HIV infection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Living or working in institutional setting in which TB is common (hospital, jail, homeless shelter)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Injection drug use</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Renal failure on hemodialysis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diabetes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Solid organ transplantation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Certain cancers; certain surgeries, such as gastrectomy or jejunal bypass</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>High-dose corticosteroids for prolonged periods (lower limit not known)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Significantly underweight/poor nutrition</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
chest X-ray (and perhaps additional testing) is indicated to differentiate latent from active infection as the therapy is different. The screening algorithm is shown in Figure 24.4.

Selective immunological testing (IGRA) for tuberculosis antigens, performed on whole blood, is available. IGRA appears to correlate better with recent TB exposure, is less likely to be affected by prior BCG vaccination, is more specific, at least as sensitive, is less likely to produce a false positive result, and may be a better predictor of progression, compared to TST [90,91]. Data in pregnancy are encouraging. A trial in Kenya of cryopreserved specimens obtained from HIV-positive pregnant women suggested that positive IGRA testing correlated strongly with the development of active TB postpartum [92]; a cross-sectional study in India showed that more pregnant women tested positive with IGRA than with TST, which may reflect higher sensitivity for latent tuberculosis infection. [93] IGRA may, in future, replace TST as the standard screen for TB exposure, latent infection, or disease. At this time IGRA may be used to screen adults in any situation in which TST would be considered, including women with prior BCG vaccine [94]. At this time, there are no studies that strongly support the use of one test versus the other. Although both tests are acceptable options for the diagnosis of TB, the ability to make a diagnosis in one visit with the IGRA does provide some logistical advantages.

Workup
Women with a cough lasting for >2 weeks or with symptoms as described above, especially with risk factors or from high-prevalence areas, should be worked up for tuberculosis. Radiographic findings suggesting tuberculosis include upper lobe infiltrate, cavitary lesions, and hilar adenopathy. Sputum smear can be negative even in active disease (15%–20% of cases). Sputum culture is required both for definite diagnosis

**Table 24.9 Interpretation of Tuberculin Skin Testing**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Size of Reaction</th>
<th>Persons in Whom Reaction Is Considered</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>≥5 mm</td>
<td>HIV-infected persons</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Close contacts of persons with infectious tuberculosis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Persons with an abnormal chest radiograph consistent with previous tuberculosis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Immunosuppressed patients receiving the equivalent of ≥15 mg of prednisone per day for ≥1 month</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>≥10 mm</td>
<td>Foreign-born persons recently arrived (&lt;5 years earlier) from country with high prevalence of tuberculosis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Persons with a medical condition that increases the risk of tuberculosis&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Injection-drug users</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Members of medically underserved, low-income populations (e.g., homeless persons)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Residents and staff members of long-term care facilities (e.g., nursing homes, correctional institutions, and homeless shelters)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Health care workers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Children &lt;4 years of age</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Persons with conversion on a tuberculin skin test (increase in duration of &gt;10 mm within a 2-year period)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>≥15 mm</td>
<td>All others</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<sup>a</sup>Medical conditions that increase the risk of tuberculosis: silicosis, end-stage renal disease, malnutrition, diabetes mellitus, carcinoma of the head and neck or lung, immunosuppressive therapy, lymphoma, leukemia, loss of >10% of ideal body weight, gastrectomy, and jejuno-ileal bypass.


---

**Figure 24.4** Tuberculosis screening algorithm. (Adapted from American Thoracic Society, CDC, and Infectious Diseases Society of America. Treatment of tuberculosis. MMWR Recomm Rep, 52, RR-11, 1–77, 2003.)
Isoniazid is 60% to 90% effective in reducing the risk of progression from tuberculosis latent infection to active disease. The most important but rare (1/1000) side effect of isoniazid is hepatotoxicity; the concern that this may be more common among pregnant women (which prompted a consideration of routinely deferring treatment to the puerperium) is based on a single investigation in which five cases of isoniazid hepatitis were identified among nearly 4000 pregnant women [85]; statistical significance was absent. Age >35 years is no longer considered a contraindication to isoniazid use [88]. Pregnant and postpartum women should have pretreatment liver transaminases and bilirubin function tests, and if these are normal, isoniazid can be started. Liver function tests should be obtained monthly. Isoniazid should be discontinued in a symptomatic or jaundiced patient if alanine aminotransferase (ALT) is more than three times the upper limit of normal and in an asymptomatic patient if ALT is more than five times the upper limit of normal [96].

Advantages of beginning treatment during pregnancy include better compliance and less loss to follow-up. A decision analysis suggests that antepartum treatment of latent tuberculosis infection is more efficient at preventing additional cases of TB within the population [97]. Recent infection with tuberculosis (i.e., a recent conversion of TST) or HIV coinfection increases the risk for transplacental spread of tubercle bacilli and thus for congenital tuberculosis, which implies that treatment for latent infection in these cases should be especially expeditious and compliant.

**Management**

**Prevention**

BCG (bacille Calmette-Guerin) vaccine has >70% efficacy in preventing *M. tuberculosis* infection in children but not great efficacy in adults. TST cannot distinguish between induration induced by BCG or *M. tuberculosis* infection. A history of BCG vaccination is ignored when administering and interpreting a tuberculin skin test. BCG should not be administered during pregnancy for the prevention of tuberculosis because it is a live vaccine. IGRA testing is useful in evaluating for TB in women with prior BCG vaccine.

**Therapy**

**Latent Tuberculosis Infection**

The treatment for latent tuberculosis infection in pregnancy is isoniazid 300 mg daily for six to nine months [87]. Alternative rifampin-based regimens have not been evaluated in pregnancy. Because isoniazid can interfere with pyridoxine metabolism and thereby precipitate peripheral neuropa-thy, coadministration of pyridoxine 25 mg/day is advisable. Isoniazid is 60% to 90% effective in reducing the risk of progression from tuberculosis latent infection to active disease. The most important but rare (1/1000) side effect of isoniazid is hepatitis; the concern that this may be more common among pregnant women (which prompted a consideration of routinely deferring treatment to the puerperium) is based on a single investigation in which five cases of isoniazid hepatitis were identified among nearly 4000 pregnant women [85]; statistical significance was absent. Age >35 years is no longer considered a contraindication to isoniazid use [88]. Pregnant and postpartum women should have pretreatment liver transaminases and bilirubin function tests, and if these are normal, isoniazid can be started. Liver function tests should be obtained monthly. Isoniazid should be discontinued in a symptomatic or jaundiced patient if alanine aminotransferase (ALT) is more than three times the upper limit of normal and in an asymptomatic patient if ALT is more than five times the upper limit of normal [96].

Advantages of beginning treatment during pregnancy include better compliance and less loss to follow-up. A decision analysis suggests that antepartum treatment of latent tuberculosis infection is more efficient at preventing additional cases of TB within the population [97]. Recent infection with tuberculosis (i.e., a recent conversion of TST) or HIV coinfection increases the risk for transplacental spread of tubercle bacilli and thus for congenital tuberculosis, which implies that treatment for latent infection in these cases should be especially expeditious and compliant.

**Active Tuberculosis Infection**

**Single-drug therapy is not acceptable for active TB.** Multiple drugs for six months or more can cure >95% of patients (Tables 24.10 and 24.11) [90]. The treatment regimen is two-part, with an initial period of intensive therapy to kill actively growing bacilli, shortening the time the individual is infectious to others, followed by a second phase in which microbiologic cure is the goal. **The usual treatment for new patients with TB is an initial two-month phase of isoniazid, rifampin, pyrazinamide, and ethambutol.** Drugs may be given as fixed-dose combinations. Strict adherence to the regimen is important in minimizing drug resistance; for this reason, directly observed therapy is usually recommended. **For the following four months, isoniazid and rifampin are continued.** In settings in which isoniazid resistance is high and the patient’s strain of TB has not been tested for isoniazid resistance, the four-month continuation phase should also include ethambutol.

**Table 24.10 Recommended Daily Doses of First-Line Anti-Tuberculosis Drugs (Adults)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Drug</th>
<th>Daily Dose</th>
<th>Maximum Dose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Isoniazid</td>
<td>4–6 mg/kg</td>
<td>300 mg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rifampicin</td>
<td>8–12 mg/kg</td>
<td>600 mg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pyrazinamide</td>
<td>20–30 mg/kg</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ethambutol</td>
<td>12–18 mg/kg</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


**Table 24.11 WHO-Recommended Treatment Regimens**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Treatment Category</th>
<th>Patients</th>
<th>Initial Phase</th>
<th>Continuation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>New cases of smear-positive pulmonary TB, severe extrapolummary TB, severe smear-negative pulmonary TB, or severe concomitant HIV disease</td>
<td>2 months HRZES or 1 month HRZE</td>
<td>4 months HRE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>2 months H3R3Z3E3 or H3R3Z3E3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II</td>
<td>Previously treated smear-positive pulmonary TB, relapse, treatment failure, treatment after default</td>
<td>2 months HRZE or 2 months HRZ</td>
<td>4 months HR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>2 months H3R3Z3E3S3/1 month H3R3Z3E3</td>
<td>5 months</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III</td>
<td>New cases of smear-negative pulmonary TB or with less severe forms of extrapolummary TB</td>
<td>2 months HRZES/1 month HRZ</td>
<td>4 months HRE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>2 months H3R3Z3E3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


*Subscript refers to the number of doses per week; for daily dosing, no subscript. H, isoniazid; R, rifampicin; Z, pyrazinamide; S, streptomycin; E, ethambutol.
Treatment regimens and alternatives are available from the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, the American Thoracic Society, the National Institute for Clinical Excellence, and the WHO. Those interested in these topics may bookmark the CDC’s Find TB Resources website at http://www.fmdtresources.org/scripts/index.cfm, which contains links to these sites.

In the case of multidrug-resistant (MDR) or extensively drug-resistant (XDR) tuberculosis, treatment becomes considerably more complex. Retreatment is beyond the scope of this chapter.

**Tuberculosis treatment is not altered by pregnancy.** Isoniazid, rifampin, pyrazinamide, and ethambutol are not teratogenic, and the WHO recommends their use in pregnant women [98]. Streptomycin exposure in utero has been associated with infant hearing loss, and so it is contraindicated in pregnancy. There are no adequate well-controlled reliable studies in human pregnancy. Although there has been some discussion in the literature about deferring treatment of latent tuberculosis infection to the postpartum period (see above), there is no defensible argument for deferring treatment of active disease during pregnancy. Pregnant women who are untreated pose an infection risk to the population at large as well as to their own infants.

**Drug Resistance**

MDR-TB—resistant to isoniazid and rifampin—accounts for about 1% of isolates in the United States [99]. Worldwide, MDR-TB accounts for about 4% of cases [100] although in some areas of the Russian Federation this rate is as high as 25%. Approximately 5% to 10% of MDR-TB strains are believed to be XDR, that is, also resistant to second-line anti-TB drugs. Pregnant women with MDR tuberculosis should be treated despite the limited safety data because of the grave public health implications. Tuberculosis strains that are known to be resistant to one or more of the first-line drugs are treated with alternative agents, for example, capreomycin, cycloserine, fluoroquinolones, para-aminosalicylate, thiactetazone, amoxicillin-clavulanic acid, clofazamine, or clarithromycin. Kanamycin, streptomy-ycin, and amikacin, which are ototoxic, have been associated with hearing loss in newborns whose mothers were treated during pregnancy. Ethionamide not only worsens nausea associated with pregnancy but has also been associated with congenital anomalies in animal studies: the WHO recommends against its use in pregnancy, if possible [101]. For all the second-line drugs, well-designed controlled studies in pregnant women are unavailable. The literature on treatment of drug-resistant TB during pregnancy is limited to case reports or case series [102–105]. Therapy of MDR tuberculosis should be limited to patients infected with strains that are known to be resistant to one or more of the first-line drugs and to be treatment experienced. Therapy in pregnancy could be deferred only if the organism is sensitive, two weeks of multidrug therapy renders them noninfectious, so special precautions are not necessary thereafter. If the duration of therapy is shorter, or if MDR tuberculosis is present or suspected, the mother must be isolated in a negative pressure room for labor, and personal protective equipment should be worn by staff. Measures for the infant may include prophylactic isoniazid, BCG vaccination, or—in cases of MDR or XDR tuberculosis—separation from the mother.

**Co-infection with TB and HIV during Pregnancy**

This is a large and growing public health problem, directly affecting global maternal mortality [106], which is nevertheless beyond the scope of this chapter. The interested reader is referred to a review of the topic [107] and to online resources at CDC (http://www.cdc.gov/tb/default.htm) and WHO (http://www.who.int/tb/publications/tb_women_factsheet_251013.pdf).

**Infection Control Issues**

Women with active pulmonary tuberculosis are infectious, but if the organism is sensitive, two weeks of multidrug therapy renders them noninfectious, so special precautions are not necessary thereafter. If the duration of therapy is shorter, or if MDR tuberculosis is present or suspected, the mother must be isolated in a negative pressure room for labor, and personal protective equipment should be worn by staff. Measures for the infant may include prophylactic isoniazid, BCG vaccination, or—in cases of MDR or XDR tuberculosis—separation from the mother.

**Antepartum Testing**

No specific indications.

**Delivery**

Cord blood and placenta should be tested for acid-fast bacilli.

**Postpartum/Breast-Feeding**

**Maternal tuberculosis treatment is not altered by breast-feeding.** Pyridoxine should be administered to the breast-feeding infant even if the infant is not receiving isoniazid therapy [85,87]. Neonate should undergo TST, chest X-ray, lumbar puncture, and M. tuberculosis smear and culture if mother had TB during pregnancy. If tuberculosis is suspected in the child, the child should be adequately treated.

**REFERENCES**


83. Lin HC, Lin HC, Chen SF. Increased risk of low birth weight and small for gestational age infants among women with tuberculosis. BJOG 2010; 117: 585–90. [II-2]
Systemic lupus erythematosus

Maria A. Giraldo-Isaza

**KEY POINTS**

- **Diagnosis**: ≥4/11 American College of Rheumatology (ACR) criteria OR 4/17 Systemic Lupus International Collaborating Clinics (SLICC) criteria with at least one clinical criteria and one immunologic criteria OR lupus nephritis by renal biopsy in the presence of ANA or anti ds-DNA antibodies.

- **Preconception counseling**: Feto-neonatal and maternal complications are primarily seen in systemic lupus erythematosus (SLE) patients with active disease preconception or patients with hypertension, renal, heart, lungs, or brain disease or antiphospholipid or SSA/SSB antibodies. Therefore, it is recommended to screen for all above and to start pregnancy with SLE in remission. Optimize medical therapy preconception.

- **Laboratories**: CBC with platelets, transaminases, creatinine, BUN, anti-Ro (SSA) and anti-La (SSB), anticardiolipin antibodies (ACA), lupus anticoagulant (LA) or dilute Russell’s viper venom time (DRVVT), anti beta-2 glycoprotein-I, anti–ds DNA, C3, C4, CH50, urine sediment, 24-hour urine for total protein and creatinine clearance or spot urine protein-to-creatinine ratio.

- Azathioprine and hydroxychloroquine (Plaquenil) are safe and effective in pregnancy. Currently hydroxychloroquine is the safest and most effective therapy for SLE pregnant women who need therapy. If stable with no recent flares on azathioprine and/or hydroxychloroquine (Plaquenil), it is recommended to continue them in pregnancy and postpartum. Alternatively, they can also be started in pregnancy as needed.

- Low-dose aspirin (50–150 mg daily), if indicated, should be ideally initiated prior to 16 weeks for prevention of preeclampsia and fetal growth restriction (FGR).

- For women with antiphospholipid syndrome (APS), see Chapter 26.

- Women with SSA/SSB antibodies have about a 2% risk of congenital heart block (CHB). Preventive screening and therapy for CHB are not evidence based. Women with fetuses with CHB should be managed and delivered at a tertiary care center with the availability of immediate neonatal pacing.

**DIAGNOSIS**

SLE is a chronic multisystemic immunologic disease supported by the presence of autoantibodies in patients with clinical manifestations. The diagnosis can be challenging. Diagnostic criteria (ACR and SLICC) have been published. ACR criteria were developed in 1982 and revised in 1997: need ≥4/11 criteria to make diagnosis of SLE—either serially or simultaneously (Table 25.1) [1]. The ACR criteria were revised and validated to reflect new knowledge and attempt to reflect better clinical and immunologic aspects of the disease. The 2012 validated SLICC diagnosis needs 4/17 criteria with at least one clinical criteria and one immunologic criteria OR lupus nephritis by renal biopsy in the presence of ANA or anti ds-DNA antibodies (Table 25.2) [2]. The SLICC criteria were found to have better sensitivity (97% vs. 83%), less specificity (84% vs. 96%), and less misclassified cases (n = 62 vs. n = 74) when compared to the ACR criteria. Currently, either diagnostic criteria are used and acceptable.

**SYMPTOMS**

See diagnostic criteria in Tables 25.1 and 25.2. Also general (fatigue, fever, malaise, weight loss); GI (anorexia, ascites, vasculitis); thrombosis, Raynaud’s phenomenon, among others.

**EPIDEMIOLOGY/INCIDENCE**

1:700 to 2000 general population (1:200 in African Americans), 90% in women, 1/500 in childbearing age. Table 25.3 has a list of incidence of abnormal laboratory tests and its associations with SLE; 25% of SLE patients meet criteria for antiphospholipid syndrome (APS) (see Chapter 26).

**ETIOLOGY/BASIC PATHOPHYSIOLOGY**

Autoantibody (Ab) to fixed tissue antigen (Ag) in vessel wall, nucleus, cytoplasmic membranes, etc.; Ag–Ab complexes in serum.

**COMPLICATIONS**

Maternal

- Hypertension (4%–20%), preeclampsia (8%–20%), eclampsia (0.5%–1%), preterm birth (20%–50%) (spontaneous—preterm premature rupture of membranes [PPROM] and preterm labor [PTL]—and indicated), cesarean section (30%–40%), lupus flare (20%–30%), nephritis (10%–20%); hematologic complications including thrombocytopenia (4%), anemia (13%), antepartum bleeding (2%), blood transfusion (3%) [3–5]. There is also increased risk (1%–2%) for infections, thrombosis, and maternal death when compared with non-SLE pregnant women [5]. Increased risk of diabetes is associated with treatment with steroids during pregnancy.

Fetal/Neonatal

- Increased incidence of first-trimester spontaneous pregnancy loss (10%–20%), fetal death (1%–5%), FGR (5%–20%), CHB (see below), neonatal lupus (see below) [3–5]. Independent risk factors for pregnancy loss in SLE women are proteinuria (≥500 mg in 24 hours), APS, thrombocytopenia (≤150,000/μL), and hypertension (≥140/90 mmHg) [6].
These adverse outcomes are primarily seen in SLE patients with active disease periconceptionally or in patients with hypertension, renal, cardiac, pulmonary, or neurologic disease or antiphospholipid antibodies. APS is associated with most fetal deaths in SLE. Renal disease is present in 50% of SLE patients. Lupus nephritis and APS are associated with higher incidence of PTL and hypertensive disorders. Above complications may also be seen more frequently in multiple pregnancies with SLE.

**PREGNANCY CONSIDERATIONS**

**Effect of Pregnancy on SLE**

Pregnancy usually does not affect long-term prognosis of SLE. Incidence of flares varies widely, depending on the definition of flare, patient selection, and clinical status at conception. About 50% of patients will have measurable lupus activity during pregnancy. The overall rate of lupus flare is about 26.5% [3]. Flares can occur in any trimester, but are most common in late pregnancy and postpartum. Most flares in pregnancy are mild to moderate, musculoskeletal, cutaneous, and hematologic. Prednisone ≥20 mg only is usually required for severe flares.

**Effect of SLE on Pregnancy**

Increased incidence of complications (see above). If renal SLE, 50% have hypertension, 10% to 30% worsening but usually reversible renal disease. If creatinine ≥1.3 mg/dL and/or creatinine clearance <50 mL/min and/or proteinuria >3 g in 24 hours preconceptionally, there is a small risk of irreversible renal deterioration. Patients with SLE who undergo kidney transplant have a pregnancy outcome similar to those patients that have kidney transplants for other indications [7] (see Chapters 13 and 17).

Overall rate of renal flare is about 16% [8]. Proteinuria (>500 mg–1 g/day) and GFR <60 mL/min increase the risk of renal flares[9]. Pregnancy can worsen renal function. Mild renal insufficiency (creatinine <1.4 mg/dL): successful pregnancy outcome, no irreversible effect renal function. Moderate-to-severe renal insufficiency (creatinine >1.4 mg/dL): increased risk of OB complications, 43% worsening renal function, 10% irreversible renal deterioration [10]. Renal biopsy might be indicated in selected women. Pregnancy by itself does not contraindicate renal biopsy.

**Table 25.1** ACR Diagnostic Criteria

| 1. Malar rash |
| 2. Discoid rash |
| 3. Photosensitivity |
| 4. Oral ulcers: painless |
| 5. Arthritis: nonerosive, involving two or more peripheral joints |
| 6. Serositis: pleuritis or pericarditis |
| 7. Renal disorder: persistent proteinuria >0.5 g/day or cellular casts |
| 8. Neurologic disorder: seizure or psychosis |
| 9. Immunologic disorder: positive lupus erythematosus cell preparation or anti-double-stranded (ds) DNA or anti-Smith (SM) antibody or false positive serologic test for syphilis |
| 10. Hematologic disorder: hemolytic anemia with reticulocytosis or leucopenia <4000/mm3 or lymphopenia <1500/mm3 or thrombocytopenia <100,000/mm3 |
| 11. Antinuclear antibodies (ANA) in abnormal titers |

For diagnosis, need ≥4/11 criteria either serially or simultaneously.

**Table 25.2** SLICC Diagnostic Criteria

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Clinical Criteria</th>
<th>Immunological Criteria</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Acute cutaneous lupus: malar rash, bullous lupus, toxic epidermal necrolysis, maculopapular rash, photosensitivity</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subacute cutaneous lupus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chronic cutaneous lupus: classic, hypertrophic, panniculitis, mucosal, lupus erythematosus tupidus, chilblains, discoid/lichen planus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oral ulcers: not explained by other causes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nonscarring alopecia: not explained by other causes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Serositis: Pleurisy, pleural effusions, or pleural rub &gt;1 day OR pericardial pain, pericardial effusions, pericardial rub, or pericarditis by EKG &gt;1 day</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Renal: &gt;500 mg protein/24 hr by urine protein/creatinine or 24 hr urine protein OR RBC casts</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neurologic: seizures, psychosis, mononeuritis multiple, myelitis, peripheral or cranial neuropathy, acute confusional state not explained by other causes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hemolytic anemia</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Leukopenia (&lt;4000/mm3) OR lymphopenia (&lt;1000/mm3) not explained by other causes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thrombocytopenia (&lt;100,000/mm3) not explained by other causes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Abbreviations: ANA, antinuclear antibodies; RBC, red blood cell.

For diagnosis, need 4/17 criteria, with at least one of the clinical criteria and one of the immunological criteria OR lupus nephritis by renal biopsy in the presence of ANA or anti ds-DNA antibodies.

**MANAGEMENT**

**Principles**

More than 90% of women without end-organ disease or antiphospholipid antibodies (APAs) do well and take home babies. Goal: pregnancy with SLE in remission. **Start pregnancy with SLE in remission.** To achieve this, usually need...
to optimize medical therapy preconceptionally. Most drugs are safe (see below) and should be continued throughout pregnancy.

**Workup**
Baseline prenatal laboratory tests in a woman with known SLE should include the following (Table 25.4): CBC with platelets, transaminases, creatinine, blood urea nitrogen (BUN), anti-Ro (SSA), anti-La (SSB), ACA, LA, anti-beta 2-glycoprotein-I, anti–ds DNA, C3, C4, CH 50, urine sediment, 24-hour urine for total protein and creatinine clearance or spot urine protein-to-creatinine ratio.

**Differential diagnosis** to distinguish SLE flare from preclampsia includes the following: C3, C4 (↓ in SLE), and anti–ds DNA (↑ in SLE), urine sediment (red and white cells and cellular casts seen in SLE). Gestational age (GA) at onset of symptoms is also helpful with preeclampsia usually only after 20 weeks.

**Preconception Counseling**
Preconception, antepartum, intrapartum, and postpartum care are summarized in Table 25.4. Evaluate by history, physical exam, and laboratory tests. Obtain records. Discuss current medications. To ensure pregnancy is conceived with SLE quiescent, encourage patient to wait at least six months without flares/active disease before attempting conception. Review diagnosis, risks and complications, and management with patient and family. Discuss contraception. If stable with no recent flares on azathioprine and/or hydroxychloroquine, it is recommended to continue them in pregnancy and postpartum. Keep steroids, if needed, at lowest possible efficacious dose. Substitute teratogenic medications (e.g., mycophenolate mofetil) with safe medications prior to conception. Consider multidisciplinary management with rheumatologist/nephrologist if lupus nephritis. Based on baseline renal function, counsel regarding risks of progression of renal disease and irreversible renal damage (see Chapter 17, Renal disease). Women with creatinine ≥2.5 mg/dL should be counseled regarding trying not to get pregnant and the alternatives of renal transplant, surrogacy, and/or adoption.

**Prenatal Care**
For women with positive antiphospholipid antibody, see Chapter 26. Treatment decisions are based on the past obstetric history and any history of prior thromboembolic events. Identify and manage risk factors for early pregnancy loss.

**Table 25.3** Selected Laboratory Tests for SLE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Test</th>
<th>Prevalence in SLE Patients</th>
<th>Associations/Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ANA</td>
<td>95%</td>
<td>Not specific or pathognomonic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anti-double-stranded (ds) DNA</td>
<td>70%</td>
<td>Clinical activity and flares; renal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anti-Ro (SSA)</td>
<td>30%</td>
<td>Congenital heart block (CHB), neonatal lupus, Sjogren's syndrome</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anti-La (SSB)</td>
<td>15%</td>
<td>CHB, neonatal lupus, Sjogren's syndrome</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anticardiolipin antibodies (ACA)</td>
<td>50%</td>
<td>APS (see Chapter 26), thrombosis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lupus anticoagulant (LA)</td>
<td>26%</td>
<td>FGR, fetal death, preeclampsia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anti-SM</td>
<td>20%</td>
<td>Specific for SLE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anti-RNP</td>
<td>40%</td>
<td>Neonatal lupus, mixed connective tissue (CT) disorder</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anticentromere</td>
<td></td>
<td>90% in CREST variant of scleroderma</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Abbreviations:** ANA, antinuclear antibodies; SLE, systemic lupus erythematosus.

**Table 25.4** Proposed Management of SLE

**Preconception**
- Start pregnancy in remission (at least >6 months)
- Evaluate end-organ damage/prior laboratory
- Assess concurrent comorbidities (HTN, APS)
- Optimize medications, counsel regarding side effects
- Discontinue teratogenic medications
- Counseling maternal and fetal complications
- Baseline laboratory evaluation: CBC with platelets, transaminases, creatinine, blood urea nitrogen, anti-Ro (SSA), anti-La (SSB), ACA, LA, anti-beta 2-glycoprotein-I, anti–ds DNA, C3, C4, CH 50, urine sediment, 24-hour urine for total protein and creatinine clearance or spot urine protein-to-creatinine ratio
- Screen for diabetes if risk factors (long-term steroids)

**Antepartum**
- Multidisciplinary management (OB, MFM, rheumatology, nephrology, etc.)
- Continue hydroxychloroquine
- Consider starting hydroxychloroquine if prior child with CHB
- Initiate aspirin prior to 16 weeks gestation
- Baseline laboratory evaluation (same as preconception)
- Screen for diabetes if risk factors (e.g., on steroids)
- First trimester ultrasound for dating
- Ultrasound at 18–20 weeks for fetal anatomic survey
- Fetal echocardiogram at 20–22 weeks
- Serial growth ultrasounds every 3–4 weeks
- Ultrasounds weekly at 16–26 weeks and every 2 weeks at 26–34 weeks for PR interval measurement in SSA/SSB positive
- Antenatal testing weekly starting at 32 weeks, earlier as clinically indicated
- Surveillance for preeclampsia, worsening kidney disease
- Evaluation by pediatric cardiology if CHB
- For APS, see Chapter 26

**Intrapartum**
- Delivery at 39 0/7–39 6/7 weeks if no earlier indications
- Stress dose of steroids, if indicated
- Vaginal delivery ideal, cesarean section for OB indications/unable to monitor CHB
- Delivery at Level 3 NICU, pediatric cardiology/pacemaker availability if CHB
- Notify pediatric of SLE, especially if maternal SSA/SSB antibodies

**Postpartum**
- Contraception counseling
- Breast-feeding counseling
- Long-term follow-up

**Abbreviations:** ACA, anticardiolipin antibody; APS, anti-phospholipid syndrome; CHB, congenital heart block; HTN, hypertension; LA, lupus anticoagulant; MFM, maternal fetal medicine; NICU, neonatal intensive care unit; OB, obstetrician; SLE, systemic lupus erythematosus.
The use of medications to treat or suppress SLE flares will need to be evaluated on an individual basis. If patients have been maintained on medication(s) throughout the pregnancy, these should be continued through the postpartum period. Counsel women regarding avoiding excessive sun exposure or fatigue.

**Therapy (Table 25.5)**

**NSAIDs (Nonsteroidal Anti-Inflammatory Drugs)**
Safe up to 28 to 30 weeks. Side effects: fetal ductal closure and oligohydramnios, especially after 30 weeks. Low-dose aspirin (50–150 mg daily) should ideally be initiated prior to 16 weeks for prevention of preeclampsia and FGR [11].

**Hydroxychloroquine Sulfate (Plaquenil)**
Antimalarial drug: 400 to 600 mg orally daily, then ↓ 200 to 400 mg daily. Safe in pregnancy [12]. No increased risk of miscarriage, stillbirth, pregnancy loss, and congenital anomalies in exposed pregnancies when compared to nonexposed group [13]. If stopped, 2.5 times risk of flare compared to placebo [14]. This is currently the safest and most effective therapy for SLE pregnant women who need therapy. Important not to stop drug periconception [13,15]. In fact, if stable with no recent flares on hydroxychloroquine, it is recommended to continue it in pregnancy and postpartum. No long-term effects. Safe in breast-feeding. Evolving data suggest hydroxychloroquine during pregnancy (200 mg/d initiated prior to 10 weeks gestation) decreases the recurrence of congenital heart block. Insufficient data for recommendation; current ongoing trial [16–18]. See below CHB Prevention.

**Azathioprine (Azasan, Imuran)**
Daily 50 to 100 mg orally or divided bid. Increase after six to eight weeks. Safe in pregnancy. FGR association is probably due to SLE not azathioprine. It induces chromosomal breaks, which disappear as the infant grows.

**Corticosteroids**
Mechanism of action: ↓ antibody levels. Prednisone: 5 to 80 mg usual daily dose. Try to keep maintenance doses ≤20 mg/day. For treatment of flares, usually need ≥60 mg/day for three weeks. Safe in pregnancy (metabolized by placenta, does not cross it). Animal studies report facial clefts. Safe for breast-feeding. High doses: risk of diabetes (perform early glucose, PPROM, hypertension, and FGR). Taper if used more than seven days. Side effects: increased bone loss, especially together with heparin (give calcium). Fluorinated corticosteroids (dexamethasone and betamethasone) cross the placenta and should not be used to treat lupus activity.

In general, there is no need for stress steroids peripartum. The usual oral daily dose should be given peripartum. Stress dose of steroids are indicated only if prednisone ≥20 mg daily or equivalent dose of a different steroid given for >3 weeks [19–21]. This is to prevent Addisonian collapse, manifested as general malaise, nausea/vomiting, and skin changes, which is extremely rare. If used, stress dose of steroids can be given as hydrocortisone 100 mg IV when patient is in active labor or prior to induction of anesthesia if cesarean delivery, followed by hydrocortisone 50 mg IV q8h for 24 hours. Usual oral dose should be restarted postpartum. If unexplained refractory hypotension, consider secondary hypotension and treat as needed.

**Immunoglobulin**
Used as 0.5 g/kg initiated after positive pregnancy test until 33 weeks of gestation. It has been associated in a nonrandomized study with decrease in the rate of miscarriage in patients with history of recurrent pregnancy loss (25% pregnancy loss in nontreated group vs. 0% in treated group) with or without

---

**Table 25.5 Medications**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type of Medication</th>
<th>Drug</th>
<th>Pregnancy Category</th>
<th>Recommendation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>NSAIDs</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>B (first to second</td>
<td>Safe up to 28–30 weeks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>trimester)</td>
<td>Aspirin (50–150 mg)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>D (third trimester)</td>
<td>&lt;16 weeks for prevention of preeclampsia,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Corticosteroids</td>
<td>Prednisone</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>FGR, and PTB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Fluorinated corticosteroids (dexamethasone and betamethasone)</td>
<td></td>
<td>Continue in pregnancy if efficacious</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Keep ≤20 mg/d as possible</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hydrochloroquine</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>Fluorinated corticosteroids: Not for treatment of lupus activity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Consider if CHB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Immunosuppressive agents</td>
<td>Azathioprine</td>
<td>D</td>
<td>Low risk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Immunosuppressive agents: Calcineurin inhibitors</td>
<td>Cyclosporine</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>Increased risk of flares if stopped</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Tacrolimus</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>Continue in pregnancy if efficacious</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Immunosuppressive agents: TNF inhibitors</td>
<td>Infliximab</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>Limited data in the literature. Use only if benefits outweigh the risks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Etanercept</td>
<td>B</td>
<td>Likely safe based on limited data</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Rituximab</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>Likely safe based on limited data; long-term effects unknown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Immunosuppressive agents</td>
<td>Methotrexate</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>Avoid as possible</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Immunosuppressive agents</td>
<td>Cyclophosphamide</td>
<td>D</td>
<td>Contraindicated, teratogenic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Immunosuppressive agents</td>
<td>Mycophenolate mofetil</td>
<td>D</td>
<td>Avoid, not safe in pregnancy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Immunosuppressive agents</td>
<td>Leflunomide</td>
<td>X</td>
<td>Contraindicated, teratogenic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Immunoglobulin</td>
<td></td>
<td>C</td>
<td>Limited data in the literature; use only if benefits outweigh the risks</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Abbreviations:** CHB, congenital heart block; FGR, fetal growth restriction; PTB, preterm birth.
associated APS, decrease in doses of concomitant medications including prednisolone, decrease in lupus activity, and improvement in laboratory values (anti-ds DNA, anti-Ro, and anti-LA antibodies) [22]. Insufficient data for recommendation; further studies are needed.

**Cyclosporine**
Calcineurin inhibitor (CNI). Limited data in the literature. Use only if benefits outweigh the risks in patients not responding to other therapy. No increased risk of congenital anomalies. Association with low birth weight, maternal diabetes, hypertension, and kidney graft rejection likely related to disease and not cyclosporine [23–25].

**Tacrolimus**
Calcineurin inhibitor (CNI). Limited data in the literature suggest reasonable use in pregnancy. Used for acute flare or maintenance of lupus nephritis. Data is mostly accumulating from case series and retrospective observational studies in women undergoing pregnancy after solid organ transplantation. Reported anomalies in observational studies include meningocoele, urogenital anomalies (MCDK, unilateral polycystic renal disease, hypospadias) tracheoesophageal fistula, heart defects, ear defects, and cleft palate, however, not enough data to attribute to the use of Tacrolimus. Transient neonatal elevation of the potassium and creatinine level has been frequently observed after in utero exposure to Tacrolimus. Association with preterm delivery and low birth weight [26–31].

**Tumor Necrosis Factors Inhibitors (TNF Inhibitors)**

**Etanercept, Infliximab:** Limited data in the literature. Used only if benefits outweigh the risks. Data derived from patients with rheumatoid arthritis and inflammatory bowel disease. Even earlier data suggested possible association with VACTERL (vertebral, anorectal, cardiac, tracheoesophageal fistula, renal, limb defects) anomaly [32]; this has not been replicated by follow-up analyses [33–35].

Less data available with Rituximab, so avoid as possible. Reported decreased white blood cell counts in newborns exposed in utero. Ongoing trial by The Organization of Teratology Information Specialists-OTIS Project [35].

**Other Agents**
Acetaminophen or paracetamol: safe throughout pregnancy. Usually not as effective as other therapies.

Cyclophosphamide, methotrexate, penicillamine, Leflunomide and mycophenolate mofetil: avoid; not safe in pregnancy.

**Leflunomide** (antimetabolite, blocks pyrimidine synthesis by inhibiting the dihydroorotate dehydrogenase). **Avoid** as no data available and long half-life of its metabolite, Terifluonimide, is of concern. Wait two years after discontinuation of therapy to attempt conception. Cholestyramine can be used to accelerate clearance. Ongoing trial by The Organization of Teratology Information Specialists-OTIS Project [35].

Plasmapheresis: last resort, consult rheumatology.

**ANTEPARTUM TESTING**
Accurate gestational age assessment is important; therefore, a **first-trimester ultrasound** examination is indicated. Perform **fetal anatomic survey** between 18 and 20 weeks and **fetal echocardiogram** around 20–22 weeks. For women with SSA/SSB, perform **serial PR interval measurements weekly from 16 to 26 weeks and every other week from 26 to 34 weeks**; see section titled “Congenital Heart Block.” **Fetal growth** can be evaluated throughout the pregnancy with q 4 weeks ultrasound examinations. Patients in whom disease activity is quiescent and there is no evidence of hypertension, renal disease, FGR, or preeclampsia can **begin weekly fetal testing at 32 weeks**. Patients with active disease, antiphospholipid antibodies, renal disease, hypertension, or FGR can begin antepartum testing earlier.

**DELIVERY**
Delivery is recommended at 39 0/7–39 6/7 weeks, if no earlier indications. Vaginal delivery is ideal, and cesarean section should be reserved for obstetrical indications. Cesarean section might also be needed when unable to monitor fetuses with congenital heart block. Stress-dose steroids are indicated only if prednisone ≥20 mg daily or equivalent dose of a different steroid is given for >3 weeks. See section titled “Corticosteroids.”

**POSTPARTUM/BREAST-FEEDING**
Flares are more common. Continue and consider increasing SLE therapies. Breast-feeding is usually safe depending on medications.

**NEONATAL LUPUS**
Neonatal lupus occurs in 1%–2% of babies born to mothers with SLE. It is caused by passage of maternal IgG (anti Ro/SSA and anti La/SSB) antibodies through the placenta. It is limited to fetuses of mothers who are positive for anti SSA/anti SSB antibodies (regardless of maternal diagnosis of lupus or other autoimmune disease). The female:male ratio is 14:1. It is transient, lasting up to 14 to 16 weeks. Neonatal death rate is 1% to 2%. The manifestations include cutaneous (photosensitive annular erythematous rash), hematologic (anemia, thrombocytopenia, pancytopenia), hepatic (elevated liver enzymes, cholestasis, fulminant liver disease), and cardiac (congenital heart block, dilated cardiomyopathy, endocardial fibroelastosis) abnormalities. Usually transient except cardiac manifestations.

**CARDIAC NEONATAL LUPUS/CONGENITAL HEART BLOCK**
**Etiology**
SSA/SSB antibodies bind to surface cardiomyocytes triggering inflammation, remodeling and fibrosis. Maternal SSA/SSB antibodies are necessary to cause CHB, but evidence suggests that there are other factors involved in the development of CHB. Cross reactivity of L-type calcium channels with SSA/SSB antibodies has also been proposed as a mechanism altering calcium homeostasis [36].

**Counseling**
The risk of a fetus developing CHB and cardiac neonatal lupus (cardiac-NL) is about 2% in mothers with positive SSA/SSB and no prior affected pregnancy. It increases to 10%–15% if the mother has a prior child with cutaneous lupus and 19% if prior child with cardiac—NL. CHB is most likely to occur between 18 and 24 weeks gestation. It may be associated with
congestive heart failure (hydrops). CHB is usually permanent with a pacemaker needed in 60%–70% of surviving affected children. Cardiac-NL is associated with 18% neonatal mortality with 6% of these being in utero demises. The 10-year survival rate if born alive is 86%. Poor prognostic factors include diagnosis at <20 weeks gestation, hydrops, ventricular rate <50 bpm, left ventricular failure. Cardiac transplant is rare (1%) [37–39].

Management

Prenatal Care Evaluation

Evaluate for structural cardiac anomalies with fetal echocardiogram. CHB can be seen in CHD, but structural defects can also be seen in cardiac NL without CHB. Structural anomalies include persistent patent ductus arteriosus, ASD, VSD, and pulmonic and tricuspid valve abnormalities [40]. Of CHB cases, 10% to 20% have CHD and not SSA/SSB, but 95% of CHB without CHD have SSA/SSB. For fetuses with hydrops, see also Chapter 54. If positive for SSA/SSB, consider following with weekly fetal pulse Doppler echocardiography or fetal kinetocardiogram/tissue Doppler echocardiography (FKCG) from 16 to 26 weeks and every other week from 26 to 34 weeks to look for prolonged PR (AV) interval and any dysrhythmia, especially looking for incomplete (first or second) degree block. This screening may not be cost-effective given CHB is uncommon in prospective series even with positive SSA/SSB and is not evidence based [41]. The fetal mechanical PR interval is measured from simultaneous mitral and aortic Doppler waveforms. Fixed cutoff of PR interval measurement >150 ms have been used to diagnose first-degree heart block. For example, the PRISE study [42,43] used a fixed cut of 150 ms. However, nomograms have been proposed adjusting by gestational age and fetal heart rate with normal PR interval ranging from 138 to 155 ms [44]. FKCG, a tissue velocity-based measurement of AV conduction, appears to be superior to the pulse Doppler echocardiography [45]. Data from prospective series revealed that the FKCG can detect first-degree AV block in ~8.5% of these high-risk fetuses and that Doppler can detect PR prolongation in only ~3% of these fetuses and did not precede the occurrence of third-degree block [42,46]. Even as it remains unclear if cardiac injury is progressive and could be prevented if diagnosed and treated early, prolongation of the PR interval >150 ms, moderate or severe tricuspid regurgitation, and/or atrial echodensity appear to be potential early biomarkers of reversible cardiac injury.

Prevention

A nonrandomized study suggests hydroxychloroquine >200 mg/d initiated prior to 10 weeks and continued through pregnancy decreases CHB recurrence in women with prior affected offspring (decreased risk by 64% in SSA/SSB positive mothers) [16]. Further research is needed for definitive conclusions. There is an ongoing prospective study [18]. Data is insufficient to recommend the use of hydroxychloroquine to decrease the risk of CHB in women with SSA/SSB antibodies without affected offspring. A cohort study showed decreased risk by 28% but statistical significance was no longer seen after multivariable analyses [17]. Maternal treatment with fluorinated steroids does not appear to impact fetal and neonatal mortality [39]. Data from an observational study suggested an increased mortality rate; however, this could have been influenced by severity of maternal disease itself [38]. IVIG is also ineffective for recurrence prevention [47,48].

Therapy

Treatment with fluorinated steroids (Betamethasone, Dexamethasone) upon detection has been reported as possibly associated with normalization of AV conduction. Studies (nonrandomized) suggest dexamethasone 4 mg/day is likely beneficial in treating fetuses with first- and second-degree AV block and not beneficial and possibly harmful for third-degree block. Risks—benefits of prolonged steroid treatment should be discussed with the patient. Once complete (third degree) CHB occurs, this is considered to be irreversible. No randomized trials have demonstrated the effectiveness of steroid, beta-mimetic, digoxin, IVIG, and other therapies to normalize conduction or improve outcome [38,39,42,43,46,49–53]. There is a potential benefit of IVIG (1 gram/kg, one to three doses) to improve survival rates and decrease the need of cardiac transplant in fetuses/neonates with cardiomyopathy and/or endocardial fibroelastosis [54]; however, further studies are needed before it can be recommended. Refer to Pediatric Cardiology if evidence of cardiac-NL.

Delivery

Women with fetuses with CHB should be managed and delivered at a tertiary care center with the availability of immediate neonatal pacing. Although trial of labor (TOL) by repeated scalp sampling to assure fetal well-being can be attempted, TOL is often difficult to manage clinically.

CONTRACEPTION

Combination oral contraceptives are safe for women with mild lupus who do not have antiphospholipid antibodies. Progestin only or copper IUDs are safe options for women with SLE with vascular disease, nephritis, or antiphospholipid antibodies [55–57].

REFERENCES


40. Friedman DM, Llanos C, Izmirly PM et al. Evaluation of fetuses in a study of intravenous immunoglobulin as preventive therapy for congenital heart block: Results of a multicenter,


57. ACOG Practice Bulletin Number 73. *Use of Hormonal Contraception in Women With Coexisting Medical Conditions*. [III]
Antiphospholipid syndrome

Tracy A. Manuck

KEY POINTS
- The diagnosis of antiphospholipid syndrome (APS) requires the presence of at least one clinical and one laboratory criteria (Tables 26.1 and 26.2).
- APS is associated with venous thromboembolism (VTE), early onset preeclampsia, early pregnancy loss, fetal growth restriction (FGR), fetal death, preterm birth, and other complications.
- Therapy should be as follows:
  - For APS with ≥3 unexplained consecutive pregnancy losses at <10 weeks or ≥1 fetal loss >10 weeks: low-dose ASA and prophylactic heparin (either unfractionated or low molecular weight).
  - For APS with VTE during the current pregnancy: therapeutic anticoagulation with heparin.
  - For APS with VTE prior to pregnancy: prophylactic anticoagulation with heparin.
  - There are no trials to assess therapy for APS with a history of preeclampsia and/or FGR prior to 34 weeks gestation.
  - If on low-molecular-weight heparin, regional anesthesia may need to be delayed until ≥24 hours after the last dose.

HISTORIC NOTES
Lupus anticoagulant (LA) was first described in the early 1950s as prolonging certain clotting assays. A few years later, LA was found to be associated with the false positive test for syphilis and, paradoxically, thrombosis.

DIAGNOSIS
The diagnosis of APS requires the presence of at least one clinical (Table 26.1) and one laboratory (Table 26.2) criteria [1,2]. Abnormal laboratory tests must occur on more than two occasions, ≥12 weeks apart. The two tests must occur within a five-year time frame. There are no time limits on the interval between the clinical and laboratory events. Once the diagnosis is established by the criteria above, subsequent negative results decrease but do not eliminate the risks of complications.

ANTIPHOSPHOLIPID ANTIBODY TESTING
Antiphospholipid antibodies (APAs) are directed against phospholipids and include anticardiolipin antibodies (ACAs), LA, and anti-beta-2 glycoprotein-I (B2GP-I) (Table 26.2). LA is a double misnomer. LA is seen in many patients without systemic lupus erythematosus (SLE) and is associated with thrombosis not anticoagulation (see Chapter 25). ACAs strongly correlate with LA and thrombosis. ACAs require the presence of plasma phospholipid-binding protein B2 glycoprotein I to bind to cardiolipin. In contrast, ACAs from patients with syphilis or other infections are B2 glycoprotein I independent. Approximately 80% of patients with LA have ACAs, and 20% of patients with ACAs are found positive for LA [2]. Substantial interlaboratory variation when testing the same sera remains a serious problem.

SYMPTOMS
Clinical manifestations of APS may include any organ system, including vascular (arterial or venous), cardiac, cutaneous, endocrine/reproductive, gastrointestinal, hematologic, neurologic, obstetrical, ophthalmologic, pulmonary, renal, and others.

EPIDEMIOLOGY/INCIDENCE
Up to 11% of healthy controls with uncomplicated pregnancies have APAs with a median prevalence of about 2%. APAs have a very poor positive predictive value for adverse obstetric outcomes and a causal relationship between APAs and a single clinical event can be difficult to prove, given that many of the studied adverse obstetric outcomes are very common. Of SLE patients, 25% to 35% have APS (see Chapter 25). ACAs are present in 15% of women with recurrent miscarriage; LA is found in 8% of patients with recurrent miscarriage. In women with mid trimester fetal loss, LA is seen in up to 30%. Of definite APS patients, 70% have both ACAs and LA.

ETIOLOGY/BASIC PATHOPHYSIOLOGY
APAs may cause pregnancy loss by thrombosis of placental vessels, interference with coagulation factors (reduce levels of annexin V), inhibition of proliferation of trophoblasts, complement activation, or other yet unknown mechanisms. However, given that asymptomatic healthy women with APAs who do not meet criteria for APS have little to no increased risk, the mere presence of APAs is insufficient to cause these adverse pregnancy outcomes [3].

CLASSIFICATION
Primary APS refers to patients with APS but no other autoimmune disorders. Secondary APS refers to patients with other autoimmune disorders (e.g., SLE) [2].

COMPLICATIONS
Maternal
- Venous and arterial thromboembolism: Risk is 5% to 12% in pregnancy; there are no adequate cohort or case-control studies to validate these estimates of VTE with APS pregnant women [4], and 0.5% to 2% of
Table 26.1 Clinical Criteria for Diagnosis of Antiphospholipid Syndrome

1. Vascular thrombosis
One or more clinical episodes of arterial, venous, or small vessel thrombosis, in any tissue or organ. Thrombosis must be confirmed by objective criteria (e.g., imaging or Doppler studies or histopathology)
And/or
2. Pregnancy morbidity
(A) One or more unexplained deaths of a morphologically normal fetus at or beyond the 10th week of gestation with normal fetal morphology documented by ultrasound or by direct examination of the fetus
And/or
(B) One or more premature births of a morphologically normal neonate before the 34th week of gestation because of eclampsia or severe preeclampsia or features consistent with placental insufficiency (e.g., abnormal Doppler flow, abnormal fetal testing, SGA <10%, oligohydramnios)
And/or
(C) Three or more unexplained consecutive spontaneous abortions before the 10th week of pregnancy with maternal anatomic or hormonal abnormalities and paternal and maternal chromosomal causes excluded

Abbreviations: AFI, amniotic fluid index; SGA, small for gestational age.

Table 26.2 Laboratory Criteria for the Diagnosis of Antiphospholipid Syndrome

1. Lupus anticoagulant present in plasma on two or more occasions at least 12 weeks apart. Examples are lupus anticoagulant, DRVVT, or aPTT test. Testing is ideally performed before the patient is treated with anticoagulants
And/or
2. Anticardiolipin antibody of IgG and/or IgM isotype in serum or plasma, present as >40 GPL or MPL or >99th percentile on two or more occasions at least 12 weeks apart
And/or
3. Anti-B2 glycoprotein-I of IgG and/or IgM isotype in serum or plasma (in titer >99th percentile for a normal population as defined by the laboratory performing the test), present on two or more occasions at least 12 weeks apart

Abbreviations: aPTT, activated partial thromboplastin time; DRVVT, dilute Russell’s viper venom time.

PREGNANCY CONSIDERATIONS

The likelihood of complications is lower if pregnancy starts when APS is “quiescent” without symptoms and with undetectable or lower levels of APAs. Complications are more frequent and severe if APS is active with high levels of APAs. As with other autoimmune disorders, APS can exacerbate postpartum: fever, pulmonary infiltrates, pleural effusion, occasionally renal, pulmonary complications, VTE; rarely DIC and mortality.

MANAGEMENT Principles

Multidisciplinary management with rheumatologist or internal medicine specialist is recommended.

Who to Screen
Women with clinical criteria for APS (Table 26.1) should be screened for ACA, LA, and B2GP-I.

Other conditions associated with APS include autoimmune thrombocytopenia, amaurosis fugax, livedo reticularis, systemic lupus erythematosus, and a false positive rapid plasma regain result (RPR). These conditions are not considered clinical criteria for APS; therefore, testing individuals for the presence of APA with these isolated conditions is not

asymptomatic nonpregnant people occasionally found to have APAs have thromboses each year. Most thrombotic events are venous (65%–70%). Arterial thromboses can occur in atypical sites, such as the retina, the subclavian artery, or the middle cerebral artery (the most common vessel involved when a stroke occurs in these patients).

- Preeclampsia: Incidence of preeclampsia is increased and ranges from 18% to 48% among women with APS. There is a statistically significant association especially between preeclampsia and ACA [4].

- Autoimmune thrombocytopenia: Risk is 40% to 50%. Thrombocytopenia secondary to APAs is difficult to distinguish from ITP and is treated in a similar fashion. Heparin-induced thrombocytopenia [less with low-molecular-weight heparin (LMWH)] can also occur as well as lupus flare in patients with coexisting SLE.

- Other medical complications: APS is also associated with autoimmune hemolytic anemia, livedo reticularis, cutaneous ulcers, chorea gravidarum, multi-infarct dementia, and transverse myelitis. These complications, although associated with APS, are insufficient for clinical diagnosis of APS.

- Rarely, catastrophic APS, resulting in progressive thromboses, multiorgan failure, and death may occur.

Fetal

- Pregnancy loss and fetal death: These complications can occur in any trimester and be recurrent. About 5% to 20% of women with recurrent pregnancy losses have APAs [2]. Although all APAs are associated with pregnancy loss and fetal death, early pregnancy loss has been associated in a review with both ACA and LA; recurrent first trimester with ACA; second trimester with LA; third trimester with ACA [4]. ACA IgM, ACA IgG, and anti-beta2-microglobulin-I are present in about 6%, 5%, and 2% of stillbirths, respectively, compared to 3%, 1%, and 0.6% of live births, respectively (three- to fivefold increased risk for stillbirth) [5].

- FGR (in particular with ACA) [4].

- Preterm birth (33%, secondary to gestational hypertension or placental insufficiency, either spontaneous or iatrogenic).

- Placental abruption (not associated with ACA or LA in a review) [4].
recommended. Testing women without clinical features of APS may lead to management dilemmas; this problem can be avoided by testing only individuals who meet clinical criteria for APS [2].

**How to Screen**

Laboratory tests include ACA (IgG and IgM), LA, and B2GP-I (IgG and IgM) tests (Table 26.2). Initial positive results should be confirmed after a minimum of 12 weeks. Testing for APAs other than LA, ACA, and B2GP-I is not clinically useful in the diagnosis of APS and should not be performed.

**Prevention**

There is no preventive strategy available.

**Therapy**

*Evidence*

- Aspirin alone: Compared to placebo or usual care, low-dose aspirin alone is not associated with any difference in outcome in pregnant women with APS [6–8]. The summary relative risk for recurrent pregnancy loss is 1.05, 95% CI 0.66, 1.68 [9].
- **Combination of unfractionated heparin (UFH) and low-dose aspirin** in APS patients with recurrent first-trimester losses is associated with significant reduction in early pregnancy loss (OR 0.26, 95% CI 0.14–0.48; number needed to treat 4) [9–12] compared to low-dose aspirin alone. **Low molecular weight heparin** (LMWH) did not show a benefit when combined with aspirin (OR 0.70, 95% CI 0.34–1.45) [13,14]. This could be attributed to the lower efficacy of LMWH or to several other parameters, such as the paucity of studies on LMWH and small study samples, low cutoff threshold for APAs positivity, coexistence of other thrombophilic disorders within the same study, late entry into the studies that may preclude many early losses, nonacceptance of randomization, and the crossover from assigned treatments [13,14]. These five studies have been reviewed and published as a systematic review [15].
- Two small RCTs have directly compared LMWH to UFH, and despite the small number of patients recruited, **effectiveness of LMWH appears comparable with that of UFH** [16,17]. One additional small open-label RCT randomized women with APS and recurrent abortion to receive LMWH plus low dose aspirin or UFH plus low dose aspirin and found similar live rates (80% vs. 66.7%, \( p = 0.243 \)) [18].
- A meta-analysis of five studies demonstrated improved overall live-birth rates among women treated with UFH and low-dose aspirin (74.3%) compared to low-dose aspirin alone (55.8%; RR 1.30, 95% CI 1.04–1.63, NNT 5.6) [19].
- The addition of glucocorticoids does not improve outcomes and is associated with an increased risk of preterm birth. Compared to low-dose aspirin alone or placebo, prednisone and low-dose aspirin are not associated with a significant difference in pregnancy loss (RR 0.85; 95% CI 0.53, 1.36) [20,21]. However, there were significant higher rates of preterm birth in the prednisone groups in both trials and higher NICU admissions in one study [21]. There were also lower birth weights in the prednisone group in one of the studies [20]. In another study, when compared to heparin and low-dose aspirin, prednisone and low-dose aspirin were associated with no difference in pregnancy loss rates, but again the prednisone group had a significantly higher rate of preterm birth [22].
- Severe and/or resistant APS and alternative therapy:
  - **IVIG:** In women already on heparin and aspirin, the addition of IVIG does not affect pregnancy loss rates in a very small trial, but is associated with a significantly higher preterm birth rate [23]. This therapy is very expensive, and is the only treatment shown to lower anticardiolipin levels.
  - **Hydroxychloroquine:** theoretical benefits, as it reverses platelet activation induced by APA, but no human data are available.
  - **Plasma exchange:** limited case reports and a small case series have investigated the role of therapeutic plasma exchange in improving pregnancy outcomes among women who have failed first-line therapy. The largest report included 18 women who received prednisone (10 mg/day) and plasma exchange (3x/week) and reported a 100% live birth rate, but the majority had at least one major complication such as PTB (22%), oligohydramnios (16%), fetal growth restriction (11%), and/or preeclampsia (5%) [24]. Additional studies are needed before this strategy can be routinely recommended.

**Actual Therapy** (Table 26.3)

- **APS with early (usually <10 weeks) recurrent pregnancy loss:** low-dose aspirin (ASA) and prophylactic heparin (either UFH or LMWH although most data in UFH) [9,25,26].

  Therapy is usually begun once fetal viability is established, but there is insufficient evidence regarding best time of initiation of therapy. Low-dose aspirin dose is usually about 75 to 100 mg daily (and some experts recommend starting it even preconception in severe cases) [25]. Dose for prophylactic UFH is usually 5000 to 7500 U first trimester, 7500 to 10,000 U second trimester, 10,000 U third trimester SQ q12h. Dose for prophylactic LMWH is usually enoxaparin (Lovenox) 30 to 40 mg SQ q12h or dalteparin (Fragmin) 5000 U SQ q12h. One may adjust prophylaxis in high-risk cases to a heparin (anti-Xa) level range of 0.2 to 0.4. Anti-Xa level is usually drawn four hours after injection. Anti-Xa levels have not been adequately evaluated prospectively to show a reduction in the incidence of complications.

  **APS with VTE during the current pregnancy:** therapeutic anticoagulation [25,26].

  Therapeutic intravenous UFH doses need to be adjusted to keep activated partial thromboplastin time (aPTT) two to three times normal. Therapeutic LMWH is usually enoxaparin 1 mg/kg q12h SQ or dalteparin 200 U/kg q12h SQ. Therapeutic LMWH must be adjusted to heparin (anti-Xa) level 0.5 to 1.2. After initial therapy, subcutaneous therapeutic LMWH or UFH should be continued for a minimum total duration of

*Note: The text includes references to tables and figures that are not visible in the image.*
Table 26.3  Suggested Prophylaxis for APS during Pregnancy and Postpartum Based on Selected Clinical Scenarios

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Antepartum</th>
<th>Postpartum</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>APS characterized by laboratory criteria and fetal loss (≥3 recurrent consecutive first trimester miscarriages or ≥1 unexplained fetal loss &gt;10 weeks) but no history of arterial or venous thrombosis</td>
<td>Low-dose aspirin with either:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• UFH 5000–7500 U first trimester; 7500–10,000 U second trimester; 10,000 U third trimester SQ q12h</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• LMWH, e.g., enoxaparin (Lovenox) 30–40 mg SQ q12h or dalteparin (Fragmin) 5000 U SQ q12h</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>APS characterized by laboratory criteria and obstetric morbidity of ≥1 preterm deliveries of a morphologically normal infant &lt;34 weeks due to placental insufficiency (IUGR or severe preeclampsia) but no history of arterial or venous thrombosis</td>
<td>Clinical surveillance and low dose aspirin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Low-dose aspirin and UFH or LMWH in cases of recurrent placental insufficiency or evidence of extensive decidual inflammation, vasculopathy, and/or thrombosis on placental pathology</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Laboratory criteria for APS but no clinical criteria for APS</td>
<td>Clinical surveillance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Clinical surveillance or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Low-dose aspirin and UFH or LMWH</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>APS with previous arterial or venous thrombosis</td>
<td>Low-dose aspirin with either</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• UFH 5000–7500 U first trimester; 7500–10,000 U second trimester; 10,000 U third trimester SQ q12h</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• LMWH, e.g., enoxaparin (Lovenox) 30–40 mg SQ q12h or dalteparin (Fragmin) 5000 U SQ q12h</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Abbreviations: APS, antiphospholipid syndrome; LMWH, low-molecular-weight heparin; SQ, subcutaneous; UFH, unfractionated heparin.

*There is no level 1 evidence for this management, but it may be considered in select cases and in consultation with maternal fetal medicine.

Six months. Anticoagulation should also be used for six weeks postpartum. Postpartum anticoagulation could be at therapeutic doses if the VTE occurred late in pregnancy, or it could be at prophylactic doses if the VTE occurred early in pregnancy.

- APS with VTE in a prior pregnancy: prophylactic heparin (either UFH or LMWH) both in the antepartum and postpartum period (six weeks) [25,26]. Therapy is usually begun once fetal viability is established, but there is insufficient evidence regarding the best time of initiation of therapy. Low-dose aspirin dose is usually about 75 to 100 mg daily. Prophylactic UFH dose is usually 5000 to 7500 U first trimester, 7500 to 10,000 U second trimester, 10,000 U third trimester SQ q12h. Prophylactic LMWH dose are usually enoxaparin (Lovenox) 30 to 40 mg SQ q12h, or dalteparin (Fragmin) 5000 U SQ q12h. One may adjust prophylaxis in high-risk cases to a heparin (anti-Xa) level range of 0.2 to 0.4. Anti-Xa level is usually drawn four hours after injection. Anti-Xa levels have not been adequately evaluated prospectively to show a reduction in the incidence of complications.

- APS with late fetal death: Treatment trials have not shown a significant benefit at this time. The two trials that addressed this issue had some weaknesses, and thus no recommendations can be made at this time [13,14].

- APS with a medically indicated preterm birth secondary to early onset intrauterine growth restriction (IUGR) or severe preeclampsia: There are no treatment trials to assess any therapy, and recommendations are based primarily on expert opinion. Some experts have suggested prophylaxis similar to that shown in Table 26.3 [26]. Clinical surveillance alone is a reasonable strategy given the lack of evidence in this group of women [2].

Other Issues with Therapy

Heparin is associated with a 5% decrease in bone mass density and, therefore, osteoporosis. Supplemental calcium (calcium gluconate/carbonate 1500 mg daily) and vitamin D, as well as resistance exercise, should be encouraged. Idiosyncratic thrombocytopenia known as heparin-induced thrombocytopenia (HIT) occurs in <5% of women on heparin therapy, is usually mild, and starts usually three to 15 days after initiation of therapy. HIT is less common with LMWH. If on heparin (either type), consider checking an anti-Xa level at least once in three weeks after initiating heparin. Check platelet counts initially and then weekly in the first three weeks to assure that there is no evidence of HIT. There is no evidence to assess warfarin therapy for women with extreme thrombotic histories, including recurrent thromboses or cerebral thrombosis (see also Chapter 28).

ANTEPARTUM TESTING

- Early ultrasound is essential for accurate dating.
- Detailed fetal anatomic survey ultrasound at 18 to 20 weeks and follow-up ultrasounds approximately every four to six weeks for growth, fluid volume, and (if necessary) Doppler evaluation of the fetus.
• Fetal surveillance testing (e.g., NSTs and/or BPPs) starting at 32 weeks. The optimal regimen for fetal testing is unclear, and the entire clinical scenario must be considered when determining the optimal testing regimen for an individual patient.

PREPARATIONS FOR DELIVERY
• If on LMWH, switch to UFH at 36 weeks to allow regional anesthesia.
• Delivery should be considered at 39 0/7–39 6/7 weeks gestation to control timing of anticoagulation discontinuation.
• Anticoagulation should be discontinued 24 hours prior to planned induction of labor or cesarean section.

DELIVERY
Consider sending the placenta to pathology to check for decreased placental weight, ischemic-hypoxic changes—infarctions, decidual and fetal thrombi, chronic villitis.

ANESTHESIA
If on UFH, regional anesthesia can be administered usually six to eight hours after the dose, or at least when the aPTT is within normal limits. If on LMWH, regional anesthesia should be delayed until ≥24 hours after the last dose because there is a risk of spinal hematoma if regional anesthesia is performed within 24 hours. That is why a woman on LMWH might be switched off LMWH on to UFH weeks before any chance of labor or delivery (usually around 36 weeks if no other risk of preterm birth).

POSTPARTUM/BREAST-FEEDING
• In women with APS based on recurrent embryonic loss <10 weeks, the use of anticoagulation in the postpartum period has never been shown to be helpful.
• In women with APS based on fetal loss ≥10 weeks and no thrombotic events, anticoagulation for six weeks is usually recommended in the United States [2] (only three to five days in the United Kingdom).
• Women with APS based on prior thrombotic events should remain on lifelong anticoagulation therapy, and postpartum should be switched to warfarin therapy. Warfarin therapy is safe in breast-feeding women. An INR of 3.0 is desirable.

Estrogen-containing contraceptives are contraindicated as they further increase the VTE risk.

It is imperative that women with APS be followed closely by a medical or hematological specialist after pregnancy. Women with APS based on obstetric history and no history of thrombosis have an increased postpartum risk of deep venous thrombosis (adjusted hazard ratio [aHR] 1.85, 95% CI 1.50–2.28, annualized rate 1.46%) and stroke (aHR 2.10, 95% CI 1.08–4.08, annualized rate 0.17%) [27]. Additionally, about 10% with APS will later develop SLE [2].

REFERENCES


Inherited thrombophilia

Robert M. Silver and James A. Airoldi

KEY POINTS

- Inherited thrombophilias are genetic conditions that increase the risk of thromboembolism.
- The risk of thrombotic events is affected by numerous factors, including thrombophilia, personal history of deep vein thrombosis (DVT), family history of DVT, surgery, age over 35 years, high parity, high body mass index, smoking, trauma, and immobilization.
- The prevalence and thrombogenic potential of the inherited thrombophilias are shown in Tables 27.1 and 27.2.
- Venous thromboembolism (VTE) is associated with factor V Leiden (FVL), prothrombin 20210A gene mutation (PGM), antithrombin III (ATIII) deficiency, decreased protein C (PC) and protein S (PS) in retrospective cohort studies.
- The presence of inherited thrombophilias has been weakly associated with adverse pregnancy outcomes such as stillbirth, preeclampsia, and fetal growth restriction in retrospective studies. However, there has been NO or minimal association in several large prospective studies.
- Fetal carriage of inherited thrombophilia mutations also have been weakly associated with adverse pregnancy outcomes, but quality data are lacking.
- Screening for inherited thrombophilias:
  - Universal screening for inherited thrombophilias is not recommended.
  - It is recommended to screen any pregnant woman with a prior personal history of VTE as this could affect anticoagulation recommendations, especially if the event was “unprovoked.” Screening should include FVL, PGM, ATIII, PS, and PC although ATIII, PC, and PS deficiencies are rare in the absence of a family history of VTE.
  - In a woman with VTE in the current pregnancy, screening can be performed for FVL, PGM, and ATIII. PC and PS assessment is less reliable in pregnancy.
  - In an otherwise healthy pregnant woman with no personal history of VTE or adverse pregnancy outcomes but whose first-degree relative has a genetic thrombophilia or VTE, there is insufficient evidence to recommend for or against any type of screening. Given a lack of proven benefit, screening such women is not advised. In an otherwise healthy pregnant woman with a prior adverse pregnancy outcome but no major risk factors for VTE, there is insufficient evidence to support thrombophilia screening.
- Treatment for inherited thrombophilias and related conditions:
  - If PC, PS, heterozygous FVL, or PGM are detected in a woman with prior VTE, prophylactic anticoagulation is reasonable.
  - If homozygous FVL or PGM or an ATIII deficiency or a compound heterozygote is detected in a woman with a prior VTE, full therapeutic anticoagulation is reasonable although prophylactic anticoagulation may be adequate.
  - In a woman with a prior personal history of a VTE and a recurring etiology (e.g., estrogen containing oral contraceptives or pregnancy), prophylactic anticoagulation is recommended.
  - Among women with a nonrecurring cause for the prior VTE (e.g., orthopedic surgery) and no thrombophilia, the risk of recurrent antepartum VTE is low; therefore, routine antepartum prophylaxis with heparin may not be warranted. Anticoagulation could still be given postpartum.
  - Thromboprophylaxis is not advised for women with thrombophilia in hopes of improving obstetric outcomes.

See also Chapters 25, 26, and 28.

HISTORIC NOTES

Antithrombin deficiency and dysfibrinogenemia, the first inherited thrombophilias to be described (1965), were discovered in studies of families in which several members were affected by venous thrombosis [1,2]. Later, heterozygous deficiencies of protein C (PC) [3] and protein S (PS) [4] were identified as causes of inherited thrombophilia. In 1993, resistance to activated PC, the most common cause of inherited thrombophilia, was discovered [5,6]. In most cases, it results from a mutation of the factor V gene (G1691A), resulting in an abnormal factor V protein, termed factor V Leiden (FVL) [7]. In 1996, the C20210A mutation of the prothrombin gene was found to be another cause of thrombophilia [8].

DEFINITION

Inherited thrombophilias are genetic conditions that increase the risk of VTE [9].

EPIDEMIOLOGY/INCIDENCE

VTE is one of the leading causes of pregnancy-related maternal morbidity and mortality in the developed world [10]. Estimates for the incidence of thrombotic events occurring during pregnancy and the puerperium vary from 0.2 to 2 per 1000 births [10,11]. During pregnancy, women have a fivefold increased risk of VTE compared with nonpregnant women [11], and cesarean delivery carries a fivefold higher risk of thrombosis relative to vaginal delivery [12,13]. The incidence of thrombotic events is equal in the antepartum and postpartum periods. However, the rate of VTE per day is relatively higher postpartum. Also, the increased risk may persist for
Table 27.1 Prevalence of Different Thrombophilias in the General and At-Risk Populations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Thrombophilia</th>
<th>Prevalence in General Population (%)</th>
<th>Prevalence in Patients with History of Thrombosis (%)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Factor V Leiden (heterozygous)</td>
<td>1–15</td>
<td>10–50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prothrombin gene (heterozygous)</td>
<td>2–5</td>
<td>6–18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ATIII deficiency</td>
<td>0.02</td>
<td>1–3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Protein S deficiency</td>
<td>0.1–1.3</td>
<td>1–5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Protein C deficiency</td>
<td>0.2–0.4</td>
<td>3–5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hyperhomocysteinemia</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MTHFR (C677T heterozygous)</td>
<td>5–14</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


ETIOLOGY/BASIC PATHOPHYSIOLOGY

Changes in the coagulation system, an increase in venous stasis, and vascular injury at delivery (Virchow's triad) substantially increase the risk of developing VTE in pregnancy compared with the nonpregnant state [10]. Changes in the coagulation system during pregnancy include increases in fibrinogen and factors II, VII, VIII, IX, X, and XII, an increase in the activity of the fibrinolytic inhibitors as evidenced by increases in plasminogen-activator inhibitor 1 (PAI-1) and 2 (PAI-2); a decrease in PS activity (because of estrogen-induced decreases in total PS and increases in the complement 4b binding protein, which binds PS); and an increase in resistance to activated PC in the second and third trimesters [21,22] (see Chapter 3 of Obstetric Evidence Based Guidelines). In approximately 50% of patients with a hereditary thrombophilia, the initial thrombotic event occurs in the presence of an additional risk factor, such as pregnancy, personal or family history, high body mass index, smoking, oral contraceptive use, orthopedic trauma, immobilization, or surgery [23,24]. Histologic examination of uteroplacental vessels and intervillous architecture from pathologic pregnancies typically display increased fibrin deposition, thrombosis, and hypoxia-associated endothelial and trophoblast changes [25]. However, these findings are not consistent in placentas of women with thrombophilias [26].

GENETICS/CLASSIFICATION OF EACH INHERITED THROMBOPHILIA (TABLES 27.1 AND 27.2)

Factor V Leiden

The FVL mutation arises from a (G to A) mutation in nucleotide 1691 of the factor V gene's 10th exon, resulting in a substitution of a glutamine for an arginine at position 506 in the factor V polypeptide (factor V Q506). The resultant amino acid substitution impairs the inactivation of factor Va by the complex activated PC and PS. This defect is termed the FVL mutation and is primarily inherited in an autosomal-dominant fashion. It is the most common cause of activated PC resistance. Its prevalence is about 5% to 10% in Europeans, 3% in Afro-Americans, and rare in Asian and African populations (Table 27.1). Homozygosity for the mutation, although rare, confers a far higher risk of thromboembolism.

Table 27.2 Risk of VTE with Different Thrombophilias

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Thrombophilia</th>
<th>VTE Potential (RR of VTE)</th>
<th>VTE Risk per Pregnancy</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>No History (%)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Factor V Leiden heterozygote</td>
<td>5–7</td>
<td>0.25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Factor V Leiden homozygote</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>1.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prothrombin gene heterozygote</td>
<td>3–9</td>
<td>0.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prothrombin gene homozygote</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>2–3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FVL/prothrombin compound heterozygote</td>
<td>84</td>
<td>4.5–5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Antithrombin III activity &lt;60%</td>
<td>50–100</td>
<td>0.4–7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Protein C activity &lt;50%</td>
<td>10–13</td>
<td>0.1–0.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Protein S free antigen &lt;55%</td>
<td>2–10</td>
<td>0.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hyperhomocysteinemia (&gt;16 mM)</td>
<td>3–6</td>
<td>0.2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


Abbreviations: RR, risk ratio; VTE, venous thromboembolism.
heterozygotes (FVL, heterozygotes and prothrombin gene heterozygotes; see below) should be treated similar to homozygous women [18,19].

**Prothrombin G20210A**

Heterozygosity for a mutation in the promoter of the prothrombin gene (G20210A) leads to increased (150%–200%) circulating levels of prothrombin and an increased risk of thromboembolism. Heterozygosity for the prothrombin mutation confers a risk of thrombosis equivalent to that of FVL homozygosity. It is inherited in an **autosomal-dominant** fashion [19].

**Antithrombin III**

Antithrombin III (ATIII) deficiency is the **most thrombogenic** of the inherited thrombophilias with a 70% to 90% lifetime risk of thromboembolism. Deficiencies in AT result from numerous point mutations, deletions, and insertions, and are usually inherited in an **autosomal-dominant** fashion. Because the prevalence of AT deficiency is low, 1/1000 to 1/5000, it is only present in 1% of patients with thromboembolism [19]. The appropriate **threshold for abnormally low activity** is <60%.

**Protein C**

PC is a vitamin K-dependent polypeptide synthesized primarily in the liver. Activated PC combines with free PS to inhibit factors V and VIII (see Figure 28.1). PC levels can be decreased by warfarin. PC deficiency can result from numerous mutations, which have highly variable procoagulant sequelae, making it extremely difficult to predict which patients with PC or PS deficiencies will develop thromboembolism [19]. The inheritance is **autosomal dominant**. PC deficiency is best diagnosed by a **functional assay activity cutoff of** <50%, found in only 0.3% of the population.

**Protein S**

PS is a vitamin K-dependent polypeptide synthesized primarily in the liver. PS is present in plasma in its free (40%) and bound (60%) forms, but it is the free form that is functional. PS functions as a cofactor with PC (see Figure 28.1). PS deficiency has three distinct phenotypes: 1) type I, marked by reduced total and free immunoreactive levels but reduced activated protein C (APC) cofactor activity; and 3) type III, in which there is normal total immunoreactive but reduced free immunoreactive levels. The inheritance is **autosomal dominant**. **Protein S decreases normally** by about 40% during pregnancy, and thus screening during pregnancy is not recommended. The decrease in pregnancy is due to estrogen-induced decreases in total PS and increases in the complement 4b binding protein, which binds PS. A **free PS antigen** <58% in nonpregnant women should be detected at least twice to document PS deficiency, and best correlates with PS mutations. If screening in pregnancy is performed, cutoff values in the second and third trimesters of <30% and <24%, respectively, may be valid [27].

**MTHFR/Homocysteinemia**

The most common form of genetic hyperhomocysteinemia results from the production of a thermolabile variant of **methylenetetrahydrofolate reductase** (MTHFR) with reduced enzymatic activity (T mutation) [28]. The gene encoding for this variant contains an alanine-to-valine substitution at amino acid 677 (C677T) [29]. The responsible mutation is common, with a population frequency for homozygosity estimated between 5% and 14% [30,31]. A MTHFR polymorphism at A1298C is less common. Homozygosity for the thermolabile variant of MTHFR (TT genotype) is a relatively common cause of mildly elevated plasma homocysteine levels in the general population, often occurring in association with low serum folate levels [32,33]. Increased blood levels of homocysteine may reflect deficiency of folate, vitamin B<sub>6</sub>, and/or vitamin B<sub>12</sub> [34–37]. Plasma folate and B<sub>12</sub> levels, in particular, are strong determinants of the homocysteine concentration. Homocysteine levels are inversely related to folate consumption, reaching a stable baseline level when folate intake exceeds 400 mg/day [38,39]. Vitamin B<sub>6</sub> is a weaker determinant [39]. **Isolated MTHFR mutations (in the setting of normal homocysteine levels) are not associated with increased risk of VTE, and therefore should not be categorized as thrombophilias** [11,40,41].

**RISK FACTORS/ASSOCIATIONS**

The risk of thrombotic events is affected by numerous factors including **thrombophilia**, **personal history of DVT**, family history of DVT, surgery, age over 35 years, high parity, high body mass index, smoking, edema, proteinuria, tissue trauma, and immobilization [42,43].

**COMPLICATIONS VTE**

The thrombogenic potential of inherited thrombophilias and the estimated probability of thrombosis per pregnancy in affected individuals are shown in Table 27.2 [16,17,44,45]. If a woman is a heterozygote for both FVL and PGM, the probability of thrombosis per pregnancy is estimated at 4.6% [44]. Data from older case-control studies show significant associations between thrombophilias and VTE in women with no personal history [14] as well as in those with prior VTE [45]. In a prospective study [29], the frequency of FVL in women with a history of thrombosis was higher than expected, (15% vs. 2%), but not for MTHFR (about 505 in cases and controls). In another prospective study [46], pregnant women with a single previous episode of VTE without antepartum anticoagulation had a 2.4% antepartum recurrence of VTE. There were no recurrences in the 44 women who had no evidence of thrombophilia and who also had a previous episode of thrombosis that was associated with a nonrecurring risk factor. However, the small numbers of women meeting these criteria do not allow a definitive conclusion that there is no increased risk of recurrent thrombosis. Among the 51 women with abnormal laboratory results or a previous episode of idiopathic thrombosis, or both, 59% had an antepartum recurrence of VTE [46]. Although there was no association between thrombophilias and VTE in several prospective studies in asymptomatic women, they included too few individuals to make conclusions regarding the risk of VTE [20,47].

**Adverse Pregnancy Outcome (Table 27.3)**

To assess the true association between thrombophilias and pregnancy complications, prospective cohort studies are preferred over retrospective cohort and case-control studies.
Meta-analyses of retrospective cohort and case-control studies show associations between various thrombophilias and adverse pregnancy outcomes [48–55]. Confounders were assessed and included ethnicity, genetic testing only, and severity of illness [56]. Thrombophilias tended to be more strongly associated with later pregnancy loss (e.g., after 10 or 20 weeks) gestation than early pregnancy loss [48,49]. However, there was no association found between thrombophilias and adverse pregnancy outcomes in several prospective cohort studies. In a large multicenter study in the United States conducted through the MFMI, neither the FVL or prothrombin gene mutations were related to pregnancy loss (any trimester), placental abruption, preeclampsia, or fetal growth restriction [20,47]. In another large case-control study, there was no significant association between preeclampsia and four different thrombophilias (FVL, prothrombin gene mutation, MTHFR C677T mutation, or homocysteine) [57].

Seven prospective cohort studies are noted in the most current literature. All were performed in low-risk women, which should be distinguished from women with thromboembolism and/or obstetric complications.

In the first study, there was no association between the factor V Leiden mutation or the prothrombin G20210A mutation and pregnancy loss, preeclampsia, abruption, or SGA neonates in a low-risk, prospective cohort [20,47].

In the second study, some associations between thrombophilias and adverse outcomes were noted [58]:

- Women who carried the prothrombin gene mutation had an odds ratio (OR) of 3.58 (95% confidence interval [CI] 1.20–10.61, \( p = 0.02 \)) for the development of the composite primary outcome (abruption, stillbirth, or neonatal death).
- Homozygous carriers of the MTHFR 1298 polymorphism had an odds ratio of 0.26 (95% CI 0.08–0.86, \( p = 0.03 \)) for the composite outcome, denoting a protective effect.
- None of the other polymorphisms studied showed a significant association with preeclampsia and four different thrombophilias (FVL, prothrombin gene mutation, MTHFR C677T mutation, or homocysteine) [57].

In the fourth study, the frequency of FVL and MTHFR was no higher in those who subsequently developed preeclampsia or intrauterine growth retardation, and none of the screened population developed thrombosis [60].

In the fifth study, the APC-resistant subgroup did not differ from the non-APC-resistant subgroup in terms of pregnancy complications but was characterized by an eightfold higher risk of VTE (3/270 vs 3/2210), a lower rate of profuse intrapartum hemorrhage (3.7% vs. 79%) (\( p = 0.02 \), and less intrapartum blood loss (340 mL vs 361 mL) (\( p = 0.04 \)) [61].

In the sixth study, women with hyperhomocysteinemia had severe preeclampsia (2/35 vs 0.01, \( p < 0.01 \)) and stillbirth (2/35 vs 0.01, \( p < 0.05 \)) more frequently than normohomocysteinemia [62]. The seventh study was performed in three tertiary care centers in Canada. Women were assessed for thrombophilias in the early second trimester of pregnancy. Placenta-mediated pregnancy complications occurred in 11.64% of women testing positive for thrombophilias compared to 11.23% in those testing negative (RR 1.04 [95% CI, 0.81–1.33]) [63].

In summary, there are no consistent results from these prospective cohort studies with most showing no or little association between thrombophilias and adverse pregnancy outcomes. Importantly, the vast majority of women with thrombophilias and no prior adverse pregnancy outcomes have uncomplicated normal pregnancies. Accordingly, such women should not be screened for thrombophilias and should be reassured regarding pregnancy.

Other than the potential for selection bias in case-control studies, it is unclear why results differ in retrospective and prospective studies. At worst, thrombophilias should be considered a minor “risk factor” rather than a “cause” of obstetric complications. It also seems that women with thrombophilias and prior adverse pregnancy outcomes comprise a different population than those with no prior complications. Indeed, the obstetric history is more predictive of subsequent obstetric risk than the thrombophilia.

## Fetal Thrombophilia

Fetal carriage of thrombophilic mutations may also have adverse clinical consequences. A case-control study evaluated abortuses for the presence of FVL [64]. The mutation was present more frequently among abortuses than in unselected pregnancies. If the placenta showed >10% infarction, the fetus was 10 times more likely to have the mutation than when the placenta was normal. Carriers of multiple or homozygous...
thrombophilic defects were at increased risk of having a birth weight in the lowest quartile or lowest decile in a retrospective study [65]. In a prospective study [20], there was no statistical significance between fetal thrombophilia and any adverse pregnancy outcome. However, fetal FVL mutation carriage was associated with more frequent preeclampsia among African-American women and Hispanic women compared to Caucasian women.

DOSE DEPENDENCY OF THROMBOPHILIA

A case-control study nested in the European Prospective Cohort on Thrombophilia (EPCOT) compared 571 women with thrombophilia with 395 control patients and reported an increased risk of fetal loss (miscarriage and stillbirth) among the former patients (29.4% vs. 23.5%; p = 0.04) [66]. The risk of loss was greater after 28 weeks than at or before 28 weeks (OR 3.6; 95% CI 1.4–9.4 vs. OR 1.27; 95% CI 0.94–1.71). The highest risk for stillbirth was observed in women with combined thrombophilic defects and antithrombin and PC deficiencies. This suggests that often single genetic defects, such as FVL, may not lead to thrombosis, but rather it is the presence of multiple defects that causes a problem.

In another study [67], the FVL homozygous genotype increased the risk of late fetal loss. However, the overall likelihood of a positive outcome was high in women who were homozygous for factor V.

MANAGEMENT

Screening (Table 27.4)

The decision to perform screening should be influenced by the following:

- Prevalence of the risk factor in the studied population (e.g., personal and family history of thrombosis or thrombophilia).
- If the information gathered will impact clinical management in the short and long term.

There is insufficient evidence to support universal screening given the overall low prevalence of thrombophilias in the general population and the low prevalence of VTE and adverse pregnancy outcomes even in women with thrombophilias.

It is reasonable to screen any pregnant women with a current or prior personal history of VTE, especially when the VTE was not associated with a clear precipitating event such as immobilization after surgery. In a small prospective study [66], pregnant women with a single previous episode of VTE without antepartum anticoagulation had a 2.4% antepartum recurrence of VTE. There were no recurrences in the 44 women who had no evidence of thrombophilia and who also had a previous episode of thrombosis that was associated with a nonrecurring risk factor. However, there have been numerous subsequent exceptions with recurrent VTE in this population. Nonetheless, they are at lower risk than women with VTE and thrombophilias. Among the 51 women with abnormal laboratory results or a previous episode of idiopathic thrombosis, or both, 5.9% had an antepartum recurrence of VTE.

In an otherwise healthy pregnant woman with no personal history of VTE, but whose first-degree relative has a genetic thrombophilia or prior VTE, there is insufficient evidence to recommend for or against screening. Thrombophilia screening in this population is advised by some authorities [18]. However, given a lack of proven benefit, we do not advise screening such women.

In an otherwise healthy pregnant woman with a prior adverse pregnancy outcome but no major risk factors for VTE, there is insufficient evidence to support screening either antepartum or postpartum.

Screening for MTHFR mutations is not recommended.

Diagnosis

It is important to be cognizant of potential inaccuracy when testing for thrombophilias. In general, DNA or antibody-based tests are reliable in most circumstances. However, some clotting assays may be affected by anticoagulant therapy, pregnancy, and other conditions. Table 27.5 describes testing of thrombophilias. The following are some potential causes of false positive results when testing for thrombophilias [68]:

- Hyperhomocysteinemia: deficiencies of folic acid, vitamin B₁₂, or vitamin B₆; older age, renal failure, smoking
- Protein C activity: pregnancy, liver disease, childhood, use of oral anticoagulants, vitamin K deficiency, disseminated intravascular coagulation (DIC), the presence of antibodies against PC
- Protein S total and free antigen: pregnancy, liver disease, childhood, use of oral anticoagulants, vitamin K deficiency, DIC, use of oral contraceptives, nephrotic syndrome, the presence of antibodies to PS
- Antithrombin III activity: liver disease, use of heparin therapy, nephrotic syndrome, DIC

Table 27.4 Who to Consider Screening (or Not Screening) for Inherited Thrombophilias

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Screening Status</th>
<th>Screening for</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Prior VTE with nonrecurrent etiology</td>
<td>Factor V, PT 20210, ATIII, PC, PS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prior VTE with recurrent etiology</td>
<td>Factor V, PT 20210, ATIII, PC, PS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VTE in current pregnancy</td>
<td>Factor V, PT 20210, ATIII, PC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>General population</td>
<td>No screening</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Relative with inherited thrombophilia but no personal history of VTE</td>
<td>No screening</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prior adverse pregnancy outcome</td>
<td>No screening</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Abbreviations: ATIII, antithrombin III; PC, protein C; PS, protein S; PT, prothrombin; VTE, venous thromboembolism.

Treatment

The primary goal of clinical management is to reduce the risk of VTE. As with many pregnancy-related conditions, there are few data from properly designed clinical trials to guide evidence-based management. Accordingly, recommendations are based on observational studies and extrapolation of data derived from nonpregnant populations. Expert based recommendations from the most recent ACOG bulletin are shown in Table 27.6. Treatment can be divided into “prevention of VTE” and “prevention of obstetrical complications.”

Prevention of VTE

Among women with a nonrecurring cause for the prior VTE and no thrombophilia, the risk of recurrent antepartum
Table 27.5  Testing Characteristics for Different Thrombophilias

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Testing Method</th>
<th>Can Patients Be Tested during Pregnancy?</th>
<th>Is the Test Reliable during Acute Thrombosis?</th>
<th>Is the Test Reliable while on Anticoagulation?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Factor V Leiden</td>
<td>APC resistance assay</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DNA analysis</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prothrombin gene mutation G20210A</td>
<td>DNA analysis</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Protein C deficiency</td>
<td>Protein C activity (&lt;50%)</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Protein S deficiency</td>
<td>Free protein S antigen (&lt;55%)</td>
<td>No†</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ATIII deficiency</td>
<td>ATIII activity (&lt;60%)</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hyperhomocysteinemia</td>
<td>Fasting plasma homocysteine</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Unclear</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


Abbreviation: ATIII, antithrombin III.

†Protein S cutoffs in pregnancy may be reliable if lower thresholds are used (testing should be repeated more than six weeks postpartum): [69].

Table 27.6  Recommended Thromboprophylaxis for Pregnancies Complicated by Inherited Thrombophilias

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Clinical Scenario</th>
<th>Antepartum Management</th>
<th>Postpartum Management</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Low-risk thrombophilia without previous VTE</td>
<td>Surveillance without anticoagulation therapy</td>
<td>Surveillance without anticoagulation therapy or postpartum anticoagulation therapy if the patient has additional risk factors.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Low-risk thrombophilia with a family history of VTE</td>
<td>Surveillance without anticoagulation therapy</td>
<td>Postpartum anticoagulation therapy or intermediate-dose LMWH/UFH</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Low-risk thrombophilia with a single previous episode of VTE—not receiving long-term anticoagulation therapy</td>
<td>Prophylactic or intermediate-dose LMWH/UFH or surveillance without anticoagulation therapy</td>
<td>Postpartum anticoagulation therapy or intermediate-dose LMWH/UFH</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>High-risk thrombophilia without previous VTE</td>
<td>Surveillance without anticoagulation therapy</td>
<td>Postpartum anticoagulation therapy.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>High-risk thrombophilia with a single previous episode of VTE or an affected first-degree relative—not receiving long-term anticoagulation therapy</td>
<td>Prophylactic, intermediate-dose or adjusted-dose LMWH/UFH regimen</td>
<td>Postpartum anticoagulation therapy or intermediate or adjusted-dose LMWH/UFH for 6 weeks (therapy level should be at least as high as antepartum treatment)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No thrombophilia with previous single episode of VTE associated with transient risk factor that is no longer present—excludes pregnancy- or estrogen-related risk factor</td>
<td>Surveillance without anticoagulation therapy</td>
<td>Postpartum anticoagulation therapy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No thrombophilia with previous single episode of VTE associated with transient risk factor that was pregnancy- or estrogen-related</td>
<td>Prophylactic-dose LMWH or UFH†</td>
<td>Postpartum anticoagulation therapy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No thrombophilia with previous single episode of VTE without an associated risk factor (idiopathic)—not receiving long-term anticoagulation therapy</td>
<td>Prophylactic-dose LMWH or UFH†</td>
<td>Postpartum anticoagulation therapy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thrombophilia or no thrombophilia with two or more episodes of VTE—not receiving long-term anticoagulation therapy</td>
<td>Prophylactic or therapeutic-dose LMWH or Prophylactic or therapeutic-dose UFH</td>
<td>Postpartum anticoagulation therapy or Therapeutic-dose LMWH/UFH for 6 weeks Resumption of long-term anticoagulation therapy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thrombophilia or no thrombophilia with two or more episodes of VTE—receiving long-term anticoagulation therapy</td>
<td>Therapeutic-dose LMWH or UFH</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


Abbreviations: LMWH, low molecular weight heparin; UFH, unfractionated heparin; VTE, venous thromboembolism.

†Postpartum treatment levels should be greater or equal to antepartum treatment. Treatment of acute VTE and management of antiphospholipid syndrome are addressed in other Practice Bulletins.

‡Low-risk thrombophilia: factor V Leiden heterozygous; prothrombin G20210A heterozygous; protein C or protein S deficiency.

§First-degree relative with a history of a thrombotic episode before age 50 years or other major thrombotic risk factors (e.g., obesity or prolonged immobility).

¶High-risk thrombophilia: antithrombin deficiency; double heterozygous for prothrombin G20210A mutation and factor V Leiden; factor V Leiden homozygous or prothrombin G20210A mutation homozygous.

‖Surveillance without anticoagulation therapy is supported as an alternative approach by some experts.
VTE is low; therefore, routine antepartum prophylaxis with heparin may not be warranted. Prophylactic anticoagulation should still be given postpartum, especially if there is a cesarean delivery. If moderate risk thrombophilias such as PC, PS, heterozygous FVL, or PGM are detected in this group of women, prophylactic anticoagulation is advised. If high-risk thrombophilias, such as homozygous FVL or PGM; a compound heterozygote; or ATIII deficiency is detected, full therapeutic anticoagulation is recommended. An elevated homocysteine and a low folate, B₁₂, or B₉ level should prompt replacement.

In a woman with a prior personal history of a VTE and no prior sporadic precipitating event (e.g., unprovoked, oral contraceptives, or pregnancy), prophylactic anticoagulation antepartum and postpartum is usually recommended. Full anticoagulation is advised in women with high-risk thrombophilias. An elevated homocysteine and a low folate, B₁₂, or B₉ level should prompt replacement.

In a woman with a VTE in the current pregnancy, full anticoagulation is typically advised for three to six months. At that time, women with low-risk thrombophilias are then given prophylactic doses of anticoagulation through six weeks postpartum. Those with high-risk thrombophilias (homozygous FVL, homozygous PGM, compound heterozygote, ATIII deficiency) or recurrent VTE are treated with full anticoagulant doses through six weeks postpartum and often for life.

**Prevention of Obstetrical Complications**

(See Table 28.5)

On balance, anticoagulant therapy in women with thrombophilias does not appear to be efficacious for improving obstetric outcomes. However, there are scant high-quality data, and definitive conclusions cannot be made. A prospective randomized, nonblinded non-placebo-controlled randomized trial evaluated the effect of thromboprophylaxis in women with one unexplained pregnancy loss at ≥10th week of amenorrhea and either heterozygous FVL mutation, prothrombin G20210A mutation, or PS deficiency (free antigen <55%) [70]. Women were given 5 mg folic acid daily before conception to be continued during pregnancy, and either low-dose aspirin 100 mg daily or LMWH enoxaparin 40 mg starting at eight weeks. LMWH was associated with a higher (86% vs. 29%) incidence of a healthy live birth and lower incidence of low birth weight (10% vs. 30%). No significant side effects of the treatments could be evidenced in patients or newborns. This trial led to enthusiasm about the potential benefits of thromboprophylaxis. However, this was not a blinded trial, and outcomes in untreated women were considerably worse than expected. Thus, results should be interpreted with caution.

Since that time, results have not been as encouraging. A retrospective, nonrandomized study noted no improvement in pregnancy outcomes in women with thrombophilias who were and were not treated with thromboprophylaxis [71]. A cohort study showed that in women with a thrombophilia (heterozygous factor V, activated PC resistance, MTHFR 677 TT genotype, PS deficiency, heterozygous prothrombin 20210, antithrombin II deficiency, hyperhomocysteinemia, and/or PC deficiency) and a history of ≥3 first trimester losses, ≥2 second trimester losses, or a fetal death in the third trimester, enoxaparin 40 mg/day was associated with an approximate 80% rate of live births, similar to enoxaparin 80 mg/day [72]. Recent meta-analyses and reviews also found no increase in live birth rates in women with thrombophilias and pregnancy loss treated with anticoagulant therapy [73,74]. The FRUIT trial compared low-dose aspirin with and without dalteparin in 139 women with thrombophilia and prior adverse pregnancy outcome. Dalteparin decreased the risk of recurrent hypertensive disease prior to 34 weeks gestation (risk reduction 8.7% (95% CI 1.9–15.5%) but had no effect on fetal growth [75,76].

Finally, a recent, large, multicenter, multinational study, the TIPPS trial, compared antepartum prophylactic dalteparin versus no dalteparin for the prevention of pregnancy complications in 289 women with thrombophilia [77]. There was no difference in adverse obstetric outcomes between groups. There also was a similar rate of major bleeding although minor bleeding was more common in the dalteparin group [78]. Taken together, these data do NOT support the use of thromboprophylaxis in women with thrombophilias in order to improve pregnancy outcomes.

**Hyperhomocysteinemia**

There are no trials to assess interventions for the pregnant woman with hyperhomocysteinemia. It might be reasonable to suggest safer therapy aimed to normalize the homocysteine level, with folic acid 4 mg once a day, in addition to vitamin B₆ 25 mg three to four times a day and vitamin B₁₂ 100 mg once a day, but counseling should emphasize that this therapy has not been tested in trials in pregnant women. This therapy has been tested in the nonpregnant population. The Vitamins and Thrombosis (VITRO) study investigated the effect of homocysteine lowering by daily supplementation of B vitamins on the risk reduction of DVT and pulmonary embolism (PE) [78]. The results did not show that homocysteine lowering by vitamin B supplementation prevents recurrent venous thrombosis even though homocysteine levels were lowered back to the normal range with therapy.

For antepartum testing, delivery, anesthesia, and postpartum/breast-feeding, see Chapter 28.

**REFERENCES**

Inherited thrombophilia   267
American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists. Obstet
Gynecol 2010; 116: 212–22. [Review]
13. Macklon NS, Greer IA. Venous thromboembolic disease in
obstetrics and gynaecology: The Scottish experience. Scott Med
J 1996; 41: 83–6. [II-2]
after the 6 week postpartum period. N Engl J Med 2014; 370:
1307–15. [II-2]
15. Grandone E, Margaglione M, Colaizzo D et al. Genetic susceptibility to pregnancy-related venous thromboembolism: Roles of
179: 1324–8. [II-2]
17. Haverkate F, Samama M. Familial dysfibrinogenaemia and
thrombophilia. Report on a study of the SSC Subcommittee on
18. Inherited thrombophilias in pregnancy. American College of
Obstetricians and Gynecologists Practice Bulletin Number 138,
19. Lockwood C. Inherited thrombophilias in pregnant patients:
Detection and treatment paradigm. Obstet Gynecol 2002; 99:
333–41. [Review]
of the factor V Leiden mutation and pregnancy outcomes for
21. Lockwood CJ. Heritable coagulopathies in pregnancy. Obstet
Gynecol Surv 1999; 54: 754. [Review]
1997; 77: 162. [II-3]
23. De Stefano V, Leone G, Mastrangelo S et al. Clinical manifestations and management of inherited thrombophilia:
Retrospective analysis and follow-up after diagnosis of 238
24. Middledorp S, Henkens CM, Koopman MM et al. The incidence
of venous thromboembolism in family members of patients
with factor V Leiden mutation and venous thrombosis. Ann
26. Many A, Schreiber L, Rosner S et al. Pathologic features of the
placenta in women with severe pregnancy complications and
27. Paidas MJ, Ku DH, Lee MJ et al. Protein Z, protein S levels are
29. Frosst P, Blom HJ, Milos R et al. A candidate genetic risk factor
30. Gallagher PM, Meleady R, Shields DC et al. Homocysteine and
31. Guttormsen AB, Ueland PM, Nesthus I et al. Determinants and
vitamin responsiveness of intermediate hyperhomocysteinemia (40 mmol/L). J Clin Invest 1996; 98: 2174. [II-3]
32. Harmon DL, Woodside JV, Yarnell JW et al. The common “thermolabile” variant of methylenetetrahydrofolate reductase is a
major determinant of mild hyperhomocysteinemia. QJM 1996;
89: 571. [II-3]

33. Kluijtmans LA, Young IS, Boreham CA et al. Genetic and nutritional factors contributing to hyperhomocysteinemia in young
34. Robinson K, Arheart K, Refsum H et al., for the European
COMCAC Group. Low circulating folate and vitamin B6 concentrations. Risk factors for stroke, peripheral vascular disease,
35. Rimm EB, Willett WC, Hu FB et al. Folate and vitamin B6 from
intake is associated with an excess incidence of acute coronary
events: The Kuopio Ischemic Heart Disease Risk Factor Study.
Circulation 2001; 103: 2674. [II-1]
37. Vermeulen EG, Stehouwer CD, Twisk JW et al. Effect of homocysteine-lowering treatment with folic acid plus vitamin B6 on
38. Selhub J, Jacques PF, Wilson PW et al. Vitamin status and intake
as primary determinants of homocysteinemia in an elderly
population. JAMA 1993; 270: 2693. [II-1]
39. Ubbink JR, Vermaak WJ, van der Merwe A et al. Vitamin B-12,
vitamin B-6, and folate nutritional status in men with hyperhomocysteinemia. Am J Clin Nutr 1993; 57: 47. [II-2]
40. McColl MD, Ellison J, Reid F et al. Prothrombin 20210, MTHFR
C677T mutations in women with venous thromboembolism
41. Ziakas PD, Poulou LS, Pavlou M, Zintzaras E. Thrombophilia
and venous thromboembolism in pregnancy: A meta-analysis
106–11. [II-2]
42. Zotz RB, Gerhardt A, Scharf RE. Inherited thrombophilia
and gestational venous thromboembolism. Best Pract Res Clin
Haematol 2003; 16: 243. [Review]
43. British Society of Hematology. Investigation and management
44. Gerhardt A, Scharf RE, Beckmann MW et al. Prothrombin and
374–80. [II-2]
recurrent events in thrombophilic women with previous
46. Brill-Edwards P, Ginsberg JS, Gent M et al. Safety of withholding heparin in pregnant women with a history of venous
125]
47. Silver R, Zhao Y, Spong Y et al. Prothrombin gene G20210A
mutation and obstetric complications. Obstet Gynecol 2010; 115:
14–20. [II-2]
[Review]
49. Rey E, Kahn SR, David M et al. Thrombophilic disorders and
50. Howley HE, Walker M, Rodger MA. A systematic review of
the association between factor V Leiden or prothrombin gene
variant and intrauterine growth restriction. Am J Obstet Gynecol
2005; 192: 694. [II-2]
51. Lin J, August P. Genetic thrombophilias and preeclampsia:
52. Roque H, Paidas MJ, Funai EF et al. Maternal thrombophilias
are not associated with early pregnancy loss. Thromb Haemost
2004; 91: 290. [II-2]
53. Infante-Rivard C, Rivard GE, Yotov WV et al. Absence of association of thrombophilia polymorphisms with intrauterine
54. Prochazka M, Happach C, Marsal K et al. Factor V Leiden in
pregnancies complicated by placental abruption. BJOG 2003;
110: 462–6. [II-2]




73. de Jong PG, Kaandorp S, Di Nisio M, Goddijn M, Middeldorp S. Aspirin and/or heparin for women with unexplained recurrent miscarriage with or without inherited thrombophilia (Review). The Cochrane Library 2014; 7: 1–73. [Review]


Venous thromboembolism and anticoagulation
Melissa Chu Lam and James A. Airoldi

KEY POINTS

- Venous thromboembolism is one of the leading causes of pregnancy-related maternal morbidity and mortality in high-income countries.
- Risk factors are listed in Table 28.2 and include pregnancy, increased parity, prior thromboembolism, age of 35 years or more, increased maternal weight, instrumented-assisted deliveries or cesarean section, prolonged immobilization, smoking, and the presence of an acquired or inherited thrombophilia.
- Compressive ultrasonography is the primary modality for the diagnosis of deep vein thrombosis (DVT) in pregnancy.
- The ventilation/perfusion (V/Q) scan or a computed tomography pulmonary angiography (CTPA) are fairly equivalent first-line imaging tests for the diagnosis of pulmonary embolism (PE) in pregnant patients although some experts favor V/Q scans.
- The three anticoagulants typically used are unfractionated heparin (UFH), low-molecular weight heparin (LMWH), and warfarin.
- Platelet counts should be checked five days after the initiation of UFH and periodically for the first three weeks of heparin therapy.
- LMWH is at least as effective and safe as UFH for the treatment of patients with acute DVT and for the prevention of DVT. LMWH and UFH do not cross the placenta and are safe for the fetus. The incidences of bleeding, osteopenia, and heparin-induced thrombocytopenia with LMWH are probably decreased compared to UFH in pregnant patients. Pregnant women may require higher doses, and the risks could be dose related. The dosing of LMWH in pregnancy remains controversial.
- Warfarin derivatives cross the placenta and have the potential to cause both bleeding in the fetus and teratogenicity. Warfarin use is believed to be safe in the first 6 weeks of gestation but has been associated with warfarin embryopathy in 4%–5% of fetuses when maternal exposure occurs between six and nine weeks gestation.
- In the pregnant patient with acute VTE, either therapeutic LMWH throughout pregnancy or intravenous UFH for at least five days, followed by therapeutic UFH or LMWH for a minimum of 6 months, is the recommended approach. Anticoagulants should be administered for at least six weeks postpartum.
- There are three general approaches to the antepartum management of pregnant patients with previous VTE: UFH, LMWH, or close surveillance (Table 28.4).
- Among women with a nonrecurring cause for the prior VTE and no thrombophilia, the risk of recurrent antepartum VTE is low, and therefore routine antepartum prophylaxis with heparin is not warranted. However, postpartum low-dose prophylaxis is still recommended.
- If there is a potential recurring cause, prophylactic anticoagulation is recommended.
- In pregnant women with a prior VTE with history of a low-risk thrombophilia (heterozygous Factor V or prothrombin gene, protein C or S), prophylactic anticoagulation is recommended.
- Therapeutic anticoagulation is recommended for prior VTE and high-risk thrombophilia (ATIII deficiency, homozygous Factor V or prothrombin gene, or compound heterozygote).
- Therapeutic anticoagulation should be used in pregnant women if the woman has recurrent VTE episodes, life-threatening thrombosis, or thrombosis while receiving chronic anticoagulation. Filters of the inferior vena cava should be considered in these situations as well.
- It is recommended that pregnant patients with recurrent early pregnancy losses and antiphospholipid syndrome (APS) who do not have a history of VTE receive prophylactic regimen of heparin and low-dose aspirin and that those with previous VTE and APS receive a similar prophylactic dose of heparin.
- In pregnant women with mechanical heart valves, it appears reasonable to use one of these four regimens: 1) therapeutic LMWH or UFH between 6 and 12 weeks and close to term only and vitamin K antagonists (VKAs) at other times, 2) careful therapeutic UFH throughout pregnancy, 3) careful therapeutic LMWH throughout pregnancy, or 4) VKAs throughout pregnancy.

DEFINITION

Venous thromboembolism (VTE) refers to a condition in which blood clots inappropriately and includes deep vein thrombosis (DVT, when a clot forms in the deep veins of the body) and pulmonary embolism (PE, when a clot in the deep veins breaks free and is carried to the arteries of the lung), which are the most common, and others, such as cerebrovascular events (CVA or stroke) [1].

SYMPTOMS

The two most common initial symptoms (80% of pregnant patients with DVT) are unilateral pain and edema of an extremity [2]. Other symptoms include discoloration and color of the leg. Pain with foot dorsiflexion (Homans’ sign) is neither sensitive nor specific in nonpregnant patients, but data are lacking in patients who are pregnant. Compared with the nonpregnant patient, in whom distal vein thrombosis is more common, most events in pregnancy are ileofemoral, and patients may manifest with unusual symptoms, such as isolated buttock, groin, flank, or abdominal pain [3]. PE is not detected clinically in 70%–80% of patients in whom it
is detected postmortem. Most patients who die of PE do so within 30 minutes of the event, reinforcing the need for rapid and accurate diagnosis [4]. Clinical presentation of PE can range from low-grade pyrexia, dyspnea, tachypnea, chest pain, or hemoptysis to cardiovascular collapse. Due to common nonspecific symptoms during pregnancy, diagnosis of VTE can be challenging. Clinical suspicion of DVT is confirmed in 10% of pregnant patients compared with 25% of nonpregnant patients, and PE is confirmed in only 4% of pregnant patients [5].

EPIDEMIOLOGY AND INCIDENCE

VTE is one of the leading causes of pregnancy-related maternal morbidity and mortality in high-income countries [6]. Fatal PE accounts for 9.8% of all pregnancy-related deaths in the United States [7]. Due to physiological and anatomical changes normally associated with pregnancy, the risk of VTE in women during pregnancy and immediately postpartum is higher than women who are the same age and not pregnant. The risk of VTE is increased fivefold during pregnancy and 60-fold during the first three months after birth [8]. A systematic review to evaluate the risk of VTE during the postpartum period demonstrated a substantially higher risk during the first six weeks postpartum with a gradual decline with every week after delivery; however, it is not entirely clear from these data exactly when a woman's risk of VTE returns to baseline levels [9]. This risk might persist until at least 12 weeks postpartum [10]. Although the relative risk of VTE is greatly increased, the absolute risk is estimated at around one to two in 1000 pregnancies [11]. Although much of the evidence suggests an incidence is equally distributed throughout all trimesters, a recent study suggested an exponential increase in the risk across the duration of pregnancy [12]. The highest risk is in the puerperium likely because of the addition of trauma to the pelvic vessels during delivery. Unlike nonpregnant women, in which distal DVT is more common, the anatomic distribution of DVT in pregnant women differs from that for nonpregnant patients. In addition to what was previously known—that left-sided DVT is more common in pregnancy—this study also found that proximal DVT restricted to the femoral or iliac veins is also more common (>60% of cases) [13]. PE occurs in 15% of untreated DVTs with a mortality rate of 1% and in 4.5% of treated DVTs with a mortality rate of 1% [14]. Death from PE occurs in about every 1.1–1.5 per 100,000 pregnancies [15].

GENETICS

Thrombophilic disorders can be inherited or acquired. About 50% of patients with thrombosis have an identifiable underlying genetic disorder [16]. Approximately 50%–60% of patients with a hereditary basis for thrombosis or a thrombophilia do not experience a thrombotic event until one other risk factor is present [17]. Tables 271 through 274 summarize the prevalence, risk of VTE, testing characteristics, and management for the different inherited thrombophilias [18] (see Chapter 27).

Antiphospholipid syndrome (APS) is the most important acquired thrombophilia of pregnancy and is defined by specific levels of circulating antiphospholipid antibodies and one of the clinical criteria, which include vascular thrombosis or recurrent miscarriages, unexplained death of a fetus after 10 weeks of gestation, or premature birth before 34 weeks due to eclampsia or preeclampsia [18] (see Chapter 26). Current evidence does not support inherited thrombophilia or APS screening [19]. However, expert opinion suggest screening may be considered in cases of personal history of VTE that was associated with a noncurrent risk factor (e.g., fractures, surgery, and prolonged immobilization) or a first-degree relative with a high-risk thrombophilia [20].

ETIOLOGY/BASIC PATHOPHYSIOLOGY

The coagulation cascade is briefly and schematically shown in Figure 28.1. Pregnancy is associated with marked alterations in the proteins of the coagulation and fibrinolytic systems [20–22] (see Chapter 3 in Obstetric Evidence Based Guidelines) (Table 28.1). A tendency for excessive clotting seems to be an adaptive mechanism to prevent excessive bleeding at delivery. At delivery, about 120 spiral arteries are denuded while carrying about 12% of the woman's cardiac output every minute. Much of the prevention in bleeding is due to myometrial contraction, but there are also marked increased clotting capacity, impaired fibrinolysis, and decreased natural anticoagulant activity in pregnancy. Pregnancy and postpartum are characterized by the presence of the three components of Virchow's triad, which contribute to the increased risk of VTE:

1) Hypercoagulable blood: Increased clotting potential, decreased anticoagulant activity, and decreased fibrinolysis occurs during pregnancy to prepare for the hemostatic challenges of delivery. Mechanisms driving this state include the following:
   - Increase in the levels of Fibrinogen (factor II) and factor V, VII, VIII, IX, X, and XII levels [23]. The generation of fibrin also increases markedly.
   - The anticoagulant activity of protein S is decreased by about 40% although the levels of protein C remain normal [24].
   - Thrombus dissolution (fibrinolysis) is decreased from increased plasminogen activator inhibitor type 1 and 2 activity and decreased tissue plasminogen activator activity [23].

2) Venous stasis: Caused by progesterone-induced venodilation, venous compression by the gravid uterus, compression of the left iliac vein by the right iliac artery, and immobilization.

3) Vascular damage: Due to venous distention, vaginal, assisted vaginal, and cesarean deliveries [25].

RISK FACTORS/ASSOCIATIONS

Risk factors are shown in Table 28.2, with the most common in pregnancy including a personal history of thrombosis [4] (15%–25% of all cases of VTE are recurrent events) [26], age 35 years or more, multiparity, obesity, multiple pregnancy, assisted vaginal or cesarean delivery, immobilization, smoking, and the presence of inherited or acquired thrombophilia (see Chapters 26 and 27) [27]. About 50% of cases of VTE in pregnancy are associated with an inherited or acquired thrombophilia [15].

COMPICATIONS

DVT: Risk of PE, post-thrombotic syndrome from venous hypertension due to thrombotic obstruction, which presents with signs and symptoms of chronic venous insufficiency [28].

PE: Risk of death, pulmonary hypertension, and right ventricular failure [29].
Given the paucity of data regarding diagnosis and treatment in pregnancy, most data are derived from the nonpregnant general population.

Diagnosis

A full history and physical examination should be the initial steps in the diagnoses of DVT or PE, but objective testing is essential because clinical assessment alone is unreliable and the consequences of misdiagnosis are serious. To diagnose VTE, clinical suspicion must remain high. Only about 25% of patients who present with symptoms of DVT have a definitive diagnosis of DVT on objective testing [30]. However, in symptomatic pregnant women, DVT and PE appear less prevalent due to the fact that symptoms such as lower extremity edema, chest pain, and dyspnea can be common in pregnancy. The prevalence of DVT is about 8% in pregnant women with suspected DVT, and the prevalence of PE is about 5% in pregnant women with suspected PE [31]. A concern with diagnostic tests has been the potential side effects of fetal radiation exposure. Epidemiologic studies have shown that exposure to radiation of less than a cumulative dose of 5 rads has not been associated with significant risk for fetal injury [32]. The diagnostic tests shown in Table 28.3 are all below the safe limit. Some case-controlled studies, however, have shown a slight increase of childhood cancers [33]. No increase in pregnancy loss, growth retardation, or mental retardation has been found [34].

Deep Vein Thrombosis

During pregnancy, thrombosis most frequently begins in the veins of the calf or in the iliofemoral segment of the deep venous system and has a striking predilection for the left leg [35–37] (85%–90%), possibly because of the compressive effects on the left iliac vein by the right iliac artery where they cross [38]. Although clinical assessment using clinical decision rules has been demonstrated to be very successful in assigning pretest probability outside of pregnancy, the studies deriving and validating this model did not include pregnant patients [39].

In nonpregnant women, D dimer can also be used in combination with clinical probability score to diagnose DVT [40]. However, D Dimer values increase progressively throughout pregnancy, limiting its utility [41]. Although a low D dimer may be helpful in ruling out DVT, a positive (high) D Dimer result will be common in pregnancy and
Table 28.2  Conditions Associated with Increased Risks for VTE (Pregnant and Nonpregnant Women)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Condition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Previous VTE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thrombophilia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Advancing age</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Obesity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Surgery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trauma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Active cancer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acute medical illnesses, e.g., acute myocardial infarction, heart failure, respiratory failure, infection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inflammatory bowel disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Antiphospholipid syndrome</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dyslipoproteinemia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nephrotic syndrome</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Paroxysmal nocturnal hemoglobinuria</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Myeloproliferative diseases</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Behcets syndrome</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Varicose veins</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Superficial vein thrombosis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Congenital venous malformation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Long-distance travel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prolonged bed rest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Immobilization</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Limb paresis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chronic care facility stay</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pregnancy/puerperium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oral contraceptives</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hormone replacement therapy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Heparin-induced thrombocytopenia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other drugs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-Chemotherapy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-Tamoxifen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-Thalidomide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-Antipsychotics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Central venous catheter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vena cava filter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Intravenous drug abuse</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


Table 28.3  Radiation Exposures of Diagnostic Tests for VTE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Test</th>
<th>Radiation Exposure (Rads)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Chest X-ray</td>
<td>0.001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perfusion scan</td>
<td>0.018</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ventilation scan</td>
<td>0.019</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Helical CT</td>
<td>0.005</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Limited venography</td>
<td>0.050</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pulmonary angiography</td>
<td>0.221</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Compression u/s</td>
<td>none</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MRI</td>
<td>none</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

always require confirmatory testing [42]. Compressive ultrasonography is now the primary modality for the diagnosis of DVT in pregnancy (Figure 28.2). This method is noninvasive, and there is no radiation exposure to the fetus. It has a sensitivity of 97% and a specificity of 94% for the diagnosis of proximal DVT in nonpregnant patients [43,44]. The sensitivity and specificity is lower for distal DVT (i.e., DVT isolated to the paired calf veins, peroneal, anterior tibial, and posterior tibial veins) and for iliac vein thrombosis [45]. When iliac vein thrombosis is suspected, the available options include 1) venography, 2) magnetic resonance imaging, or 3) pulse Doppler and/or direct visualization of the iliac vein [44]. In cases of confirmed DVT with compression ultrasonography, treatment should be initiated. In cases of negative results and no suspicion of iliac vein process, surveillance is recommended. When tests are negative or equivocal and there is suspicion of thrombosis, patients can either have additional imaging studies, such as venography or serial noninvasive testing, or have presumptive anticoagulation therapy started [45].

Pulmonary Embolism

The accurate diagnosis of PE in pregnancy is imperative. If undiagnosed, it can be fatal whereas treating patients with anticoagulation can expose them to unnecessary risks of such therapy. The approach to diagnosing PE in pregnancy is similar to that of the nonpregnant patient (Figure 28.3).

If the clinical features are compatible with PE, V/Q scan is one of the tests of choice [46]. If the test is normal, PE is excluded. If a segmental defect in perfusion with normal ventilation (high probability lung scan) is seen, the diagnosis of PE is confirmed [31]. About 40%–60% of V/Q scans are diagnostic (either high probability or normal). Patients with nondiagnostic lung scans can undergo compression ultrasound or CT pulmonary angiography (CTPA). A limitation of V/Q scan in the nonpregnant population is that most scans are nondiagnostic, in which the incidence of PE varies widely from 10% to 30%. In pregnant patients, however, fewer patients will have nondiagnostic scans, likely due to less concomitant respiratory disease and hyperdynamic pulmonary circulation [47].

CTPA is also an additional first line-imaging test available. It is usually preferred in nonpregnant patients for several reasons: 1) the specificity is higher than V/Q (>90% vs. 10%), 2) CTPA may identify alternative diagnosis as cause of the symptoms, and 3) CTPA is more widely accessible [48]. Despite its advantages, the sensitivity and specificity of CTPA can be affected by the location of the embolus. CTPA is more sensitive for the detection of central arteries and can miss subsegmental emboli [49]. CTPA has also been associated with increased risk of breast cancer [50]. Regardless of the method chosen for diagnosing PE, both are not associated with high-dose radiation exposure to the fetus. Doppler US of the lower extremities can also be initially performed because the diagnosis of DVT may confirm PTE indirectly and the therapy is the same for both conditions [51].

Pulmonary angiography remains the gold standard for ruling out PE. This test requires expertise for performance and interpretation and is invasive. Thus, it is held in reserve for patients in whom the diagnosis cannot be made or excluded on the basis of less invasive testing.

MANAGEMENT: CLINICAL SCENARIOS AND ANTICOAGULATION

Despite an increased risk of DVT/PE associated with pregnancy and the postpartum period, routine anticoagulation therapy is not currently recommended due to possible complications that can arise with this therapy [52,53]. Anticoagulation is recommended in those patients with an acute thromboembolism or with risk factors including a prior history of DVT/PE or a diagnosed thrombophilia. Table 28.4 shows proposed management of patients based on risk factors for VTE in pregnancy.
The anticoagulants that have been evaluated for the prevention and treatment of VTE in pregnancy include heparin and heparin-like compounds (UFH, LMWH, heparinoids, and pentasaccharide) and coumadin derivatives (warfarin). There is limited evidence for safety and efficacy on new oral anticoagulants, such as rivaroxaban, apixaban, or edoxaban [54]. UFH and LMWH are the anticoagulants most often used given their safety and efficacy during pregnancy.

**Unfractionated Heparin (UFH)**
The word heparin derives from the Greek “hepar,” liver, the organ in which it was first isolated from. UFH exerts its anticoagulation action by two mechanisms of action: 1) stimulation of anti-thrombin III (ATIII) activity, which inhibits factor 2, 9, 10, and 11 and 2) direct factor 10 inhibition [55]. It does not cross the placenta and is safe for the fetus; however, it has been associated with adverse effects in the mother, including bleeding, skin reactions, heparin-induced thrombocytopenia (HIT) and osteoporosis [56].

**Bleeding**
The rate of major maternal bleeding in pregnant patients treated with UFH therapy is about 2%, which is consistent with the reported rates of bleeding associated with heparin therapy in nonpregnant patients [57] and with warfarin [58].

UFH half-life is about 1.5 hours. This short half-life makes it the preferred anticoagulation around the time of delivery or surgery. The anticoagulant effect lasts for about 8–12 hours and its effect can be reversed with protamine sulfate if necessary. PTT can be obtained to verify clearance. Recent UFH administration is not a contraindication to regional anesthesia as long as the PTT is not prolonged.

**Heparin Induced Thrombocytopenia (HIT)**
Approximately 3% of nonpregnant patients receiving UFH acquire HIT [59]. HIT is very rare in pregnancy and is an adverse reaction to heparin in which antibodies to platelets form. These antibodies can activate platelets and lead to life-threatening arterial and venous thrombosis. It should be suspected with a fall in platelet count >50% from baseline or <100,000/microL, antibodies to heparin, skin lesions at the injection site, and systemic reaction after IV injection 5–15 days after commencing heparin [59]. It should be differentiated from a transient thrombocytopenia that can occur with initiation of UFH due to platelet clumping. Platelet counts should be checked about five days after initiation of UFH and periodically for the first two weeks.

Definitive laboratory data using HIT antibody testing (e.g., immunoassay and sometimes functional assay) may not be available for several days, and it may be necessary to make a presumptive diagnosis of HIT while awaiting these data. In
pregnant women who are diagnosed with HIT and require anticoagulation, alternative options include use of the heparinoid, danaparoid sodium (does not cross the placenta but unavailable in the United States [60], or fondaparinux, a synthetic pentasaccharide and selective factor Xa inhibitor. A retrospective study comparing fondaparinux with enoxaparin found no effects of fondaparinux on mother or infant; however, some anticoagulant activity has been detected in umbilical cord blood of exposed infants [61–63]. Fondaparinux has been recommended by the Pregnancy and Thrombosis Working Group as an alternative for patients with HIT [64].

Heparin-Induced Osteoporosis
Symptomatic vertebral fractures have been reported to occur in about 2% to 3% of heparin-treated patients and significant reductions in bone mineral density in up to 30% of patients receiving long-term UFH [65]. The mean bone loss is about 5% with unclear reversibility. **LMWH has a lower risk of osteopenia than UFH.**

**Low Molecular Weight Heparin (LMWH)**
LMWH has become the anticoagulant of choice during pregnancy. LMWH exerts its anticoagulation action by stimulation of antithrombin III activity, inhibiting in particular factor 10 (not factor 2). Multiple studies have found LMWH to be more effective, associated with lower risk of hemorrhagic complications and with lower mortality than UFH in the treatment of DVT in nonpregnant women [66,67]. In a Cochrane review of 22 studies with more than 8000 patients with DVT and PE, LMWH was associated with lower rates of VTE recurrence or extension, lower mortality, and less bleeding during the initial treatment period [68]. Also, the risk of HIT is substantially lower with LMWH as well as the risk of heparin-induced osteoporosis [69], and there are fewer allergic skin reactions. The other advantage is a longer plasma life and a more predictable response than UFH [70]. LMWH does not cross the placenta, and studies have supported its safety on maternal and fetal outcomes [71].

The dosing of LMWH remains controversial. The anticoagulant effect of LMWH lasts for 18–24 hours. Pregnant
women may require increases in dalteparin dose of 10%–20% compared with doses of nonpregnant women to reach the target anti-Xa levels [72–74]. Anticoagulation with LMWH may need to be monitored in pregnant women and the dose adjusted to reach the target Xa level, which decreases the logistical and financial benefits of LMWH. The therapeutic anti-Xa level for adjusted-dose therapy is 0.5–1.2 U/mL. The target anti-Xa level for prophylactic dose therapy is 0.2–0.4 U/mL. To achieve these levels, often dosing every 12 hours is necessary even for prophylaxis in pregnancy. Twice-daily dosing of enoxaparin may be necessary to maintain anti-Xa activity throughout the day to prevent thrombosis in pregnancy or whether maintaining a specific minimum level of anti-Xa activity for only a portion of the day is sufficient. Anti-Xa levels may be used especially for obese and for renal disease patients [6].

**Warfarin (Coumadin)**

Vitamin K derives its name from the German word *koagulierung*. Warfarin derivatives are vitamin K antagonists (VKAs) and inhibit vitamin K-dependent factors (2, 7, 9, 10, and protein S) and inhibit vitamin K-dependent factors (2, 7, 9, 10, and protein S). VKA crosses the placenta and can cause bleeding and teratogenicity in the fetus [75]. Warfarin is believed to be safe in the first six weeks of gestation, but it has been associated with warfarin embryopathy in 4%–5% of fetuses when maternal exposure is between six and nine weeks. Warfarin embryopathy is characterized by skeletal (stippled epiphyses), nasal, and limb (hypoplasia) involvement. Bleeding in the fetus can occur in all trimesters. There are cases in which warfarin is the preferred anticoagulation despite its risks. These include women with mechanical heart valves, those who have a recurrence while receiving heparin, and those with contraindications to heparin therapy. In a systematic review of observational studies between 1966 and 1997 that reported outcome with various anticoagulant regimens in pregnant women with mechanical prosthetic heart valves, VKAs were associated with the lowest risk of valve thrombosis and systemic embolism (3.9%).

---

**Table 28.4 Recommended Thromboprophylaxis for Pregnancies Complicated by Inherited Thrombophilias and/or History of VTE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Clinical Scenario</th>
<th>Antepartum Management</th>
<th>Postpartum Management¹</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Low-risk thrombophilia without previous VTE</td>
<td>Surveillance without anticoagulation therapy or prophylactic LMWH or UFH</td>
<td>Surveillance without anticoagulation therapy or postpartum anticoagulation therapy if the patient has additional risks factors²</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Low-risk thrombophilia with a single previous episode of VTE—not receiving long-term anticoagulation therapy</td>
<td>Prophylactic or intermediate-dose LMWH/UFH or surveillance without anticoagulation therapy</td>
<td>Postpartum anticoagulation therapy or intermediate-dose LMWH/UFH</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>High-risk thrombophilia without previous VTE</td>
<td>Prophylactic LMWH or UFH</td>
<td>Postpartum anticoagulation therapy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>High-risk thrombophilia with a single previous episode of VTE—not receiving long-term anticoagulation therapy</td>
<td>Prophylactic, intermediate-dose, or adjusted-dose LMWH/UFH regimen</td>
<td>Postpartum anticoagulation therapy³</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Previous single episode of VTE associated with transient risk factor that is no longer present—excludes pregnancy- or estrogen-related risk factor but no thrombophilia</td>
<td>Surveillance without anticoagulation therapy</td>
<td>Postpartum anticoagulation therapy⁴</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Previous single episode of VTE associated with transient risk factor that was pregnancy- or estrogen-related, but no thrombophilia</td>
<td>Prophylactic-dose LMWH or UFH⁵</td>
<td>Postpartum anticoagulation therapy⁴</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Previous single episode of VTE without an associated risk factor (idiopathic)—Not receiving long-term anticoagulation therapy but no thrombophilia</td>
<td>Prophylactic-dose LMWH or UFH⁵</td>
<td>Postpartum anticoagulation therapy⁴</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Two or more episodes of VTE—not receiving long-term anticoagulation therapy with or without thrombophilia</td>
<td>Prophylactic or therapeutic-dose LMWH or Prophylactic or therapeutic-dose UFH</td>
<td>Postpartum anticoagulation therapy or Therapeutic-dose LMWH/UFH for 6 weeks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Two or more episodes of VTE—Receiving long-term anticoagulation therapy, with or without thrombophilia</td>
<td>Therapeutic-dose LMWH or UFH</td>
<td>Resumption of long-term anticoagulation therapy</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Source:** Modified from American College of Obstetrics and Gynecology. Thromboembolism in pregnancy. ACOG 2011; 123, Reaffirmed 2014. **Abbreviations:** LMWH, low molecular weight heparin; UFH, unfractionated heparin; VTE, venous thromboembolism. **¹Postpartum treatment levels should be greater or equal to antepartum treatment. Treatment of acute VTE and management of antiphospholipid syndrome are addressed in other Practice Bulletins.** **²Low-risk thrombophilia: factor V Leiden heterozygous; prothrombin G20210A heterozygous; protein C or protein S deficiency.** **³First-degree relative with a history of a thrombotic episode before age 50 years or other major thrombotic risk factors (e.g., obesity, prolonged immobility).** **⁴High-risk thrombophilia: antithrombin deficiency; double heterozygous for prothrombin G20210A mutation and factor V Leiden; factor V Leiden homozygous or prothrombin G20210A mutation homozygous.** **⁵Surveillance without anticoagulation is supported as an alternative approach by some experts.**
In general, four possible regimens can be considered in patients with mechanical heart valves: 1) VKAs throughout pregnancy, 2) either therapeutic LMWH or UFH between six and 12 weeks and close to term only and VKAs at other times, 3) careful therapeutic UFH throughout pregnancy, or 4) careful therapeutic LMWH throughout pregnancy. Patient should understand the risks and benefits and options before making a decision. Warfarin does not induce an anticoagulant effect in the breast-fed infant when the drug is given to a nursing mother [77,78]. Therefore, the use of warfarin in breast-feeding women who require postpartum anticoagulant therapy is safe.

**Aspirin**

Low dose aspirin (60–150 mg) can be administered safely during the second and third trimesters in women at risk for hypertensive complications and/or fetal growth restriction (FGR) [79,80]. The safety of higher doses of aspirin and/or aspirin ingestion during the first trimester remains uncertain associated with a 20%–40% incidence of fetal loss, so this treatment should be restricted to cases in which the woman's life is endangered [86]. Duration of therapeutic anticoagulation treatment after an acute episode of VTE in pregnancy and postpartum should be a minimum of three months with many experts recommending six months [81]. Controversy exists on whether the dose of LMWH or UFH can be reduced after the initial therapeutic anticoagulation. Some suggest continuation of therapeutic doses during pregnancy and postpartum, and others have proposed lowering the dose to an intermediate dose regimen [87] or 75% of a full-treatment dose.

### Table 28.5 Anticoagulation Regimens

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Management Type</th>
<th>Dosage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Prophylactic LMWH&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>Enoxaparin, 40 mg SC once&lt;sup&gt;d&lt;/sup&gt; daily</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Dalteparin, 5000 units SC once daily</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Tinzaparin, 4500 units SC once daily</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Therapeutic LMWH&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt; (also referred to as weight-adjusted, full-treatment dose)</td>
<td>Enoxaparin, 1 mg/kg every 12 hours</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Dalteparin, 200 units/kg once daily</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Tinzaparin, 175 units/kg once daily</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Dalteparin, 100 units/kg every 12 hours</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Minidose prophylactic UFH</td>
<td>UFH, 5000 units SC every 12 hours</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prophylactic UFH</td>
<td>UFH, 5000–10,000 units SC every 12 hours</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>UFH, 5000–7500 units SC every 12 hours in first trimester</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>UFH, 7500–10,000 units SC every 12 hours in the second trimester</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>UFH, 10,000 units SC every 12 hours in the third trimester, unless the aPTT is elevated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Therapeutic UFH (also referred to as weight-adjusted, full-treatment dose)</td>
<td>UFH, 10,000 units or more SC every 12 hours in doses adjusted to target aPTT in the therapeutic range (1.5–2.5, 6 hours after injection)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Postpartum anticoagulation</td>
<td>Prophylactic LMWH/UFH for 4–6 weeks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Vitamin K antagonists for 4–6 weeks with a target INR of 2.0–3.0, with initial UFH or LMWH therapy overlap until the INR is 2.0 or more for 2 days</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Source: Modified from American College of Obstetrics and Gynecology. Thromboembolism in pregnancy. ACOG 2011; 123, Reaffirmed 2014. Abbreviations: aPTT, activated partial thromboplastin time; INR, international normalized ratio; LMWH, low molecular weight heparin; SC, subcutaneously; UFH, unfractionated heparin.*

<sup>a</sup>Although at extremes of body weight, modification of dose may be required.

<sup>b</sup>Some advocate twice a day.

<sup>d</sup>May target an anti-Xa level in the therapeutic range of 0.6–1.0 units/mL for twice daily regimen; slightly higher doses may be needed for a once-daily regimen.

<sup>c</sup>Clinical vigilance and appropriate objective investigation of women with symptoms suspicious of deep vein thrombosis or pulmonary embolism may be needed.
dose [88], which has been successfully used in patients at high risk, such as cancer patients.

Women with antithrombin deficiency, antiphospholipid antibodies, homozygous or combined thrombophilias, or previous VTE may benefit from indefinite anticoagulation, but this should be decided by an internist after pregnancy [89]. Long-term, low-intensity warfarin therapy is associated with an about 50% prevention of recurrent VTE, major hemorrhage, or death in patients with a prior idiopathic VTE [90].

**Inferior vena cava (IVC) filters** should be restricted to women with proven VTE and either recurrent PE despite adequate anticoagulation or contraindications to anticoagulation [51]. Suprapelvic placement is recommended. Careful evaluation should be undertaken because filter placement is associated with complications, such as migration, filter fracture, and IVC perforation [51].

In the initial management of DVT, the leg should be elevated and a gradual elastic compression stocking applied to reduce edema. Traditionally, it was thought that mobilization could dislodge an unstable thrombus and cause PE. Randomized controlled trials have shown the opposite. **Early ambulation with leg compression does not increase PE or thrombus propagation, and leg pain and edema improve faster** [89].

The use of thrombolytic agents during pregnancy has been limited to life-threatening situations because of the risk of substantial maternal bleeding, especially at the time of delivery and immediately postpartum [91]. The risk of placental abruption and fetal death due to these drugs is currently unknown.

**Embolectomy,** another treatment option when conservative treatment fails, is indicated to prevent death in patients who are hemodynamically unstable despite anticoagulation and treatment with vasopressors [92]. Embolectomy has been associated with a 20%/40% incidence of fetal loss [93], so this treatment must be restricted to cases in which the woman’s life is endangered.

**PREVENTION OF VTE**

**Avoidance of risk factors** (Table 28.2) is the key to the prevention of VTE and its complications. **Preconception counseling** should review preventative measures as well as review in detail any prior history of VTE or known thrombophilia. In general, for a pregnant patient with a prior VTE, prophylactic anticoagulation is recommended, but this can be modified based on the cause of the VTE and the presence of a thrombophilia. See Table 28.4 for further recommendations.

Women with a history of VTE (with or without thrombophilia) are believed to have a higher risk of recurrence in subsequent pregnancies. Estimates of the rate of recurrent venous thrombosis during pregnancy in women with a history of VTE have varied between 1% and 10% [94–97]. The higher of these estimates has prompted recommendation for anticoagulant prophylaxis during pregnancy and the postpartum period in women with a history of VTE. However, the risk is likely to be lower than has been suggested by some of these studies because they were retrospective with the possibility of significant bias. The risk is dramatically influenced by risk factors, in particular the presence of thrombophilias (Table 28.2 and Chapter 27).

There are very few randomized controlled trials (RCTs) for the prevention of VTE in pregnancy (both antepartum and postpartum). The sample sizes of all trials are small and often cannot be combined.

For antenatal prophylaxis, none of the RCTs included in the latest Cochrane Review reported on maternal mortality, and no differences were detected for the other primary outcomes of symptomatic thromboembolic events, symptomatic PE, and symptomatic DVT when LMWH or UFH was compared with no treatment/placebo or when LMWH was compared with UFH [98]. The RR for symptomatic VTE was antenatal LMWH/UFH versus no heparin, RR 0.33; 95% confidence interval (CI) 0.04 to 2.99 (two trials, 56 women); and antenatal LMWH versus UFH, RR 0.47; 95% CI 0.09 to 2.49 (four trials, 404 women). No differences were shown when antenatal LMWH or UFH was compared with no treatment/placebo for any secondary outcomes. Antenatal LMWH was associated with fewer adverse effects sufficient to stop treatment (RR 0.07; 95% CI 0.01 to 0.54; two trials, 226 women), and fewer fetal losses (RR 0.47; 95% CI 0.23 to 0.95; three trials, 343 women) when compared with UFH. In two trials, antenatal LMWH compared with UFH was associated with fewer bleeding episodes (defined in one trial of 121 women as bruises >1 inch, RR 0.18, 95% CI 0.09 to 0.36, and in one trial of 105 women as injection site hematomas of ≥2 cm, bleeding during delivery, or other bleeding, RR 0.28; 95% CI 0.15 to 0.53). The results for these secondary outcomes should be interpreted with caution, being derived from small trials that were not of high methodological quality [98].

In general, in pregnant women with a prior VTE, prophylactic anticoagulation can be used. This may be modified based on the cause of the first VTE and the presence of a thrombophilia. **If the prior VTE was related to a nonrecurrerent cause** (i.e., broken bone and immobilization) and the thrombophilia workup is negative, the risk of recurrence is very low, and prophylaxis may be avoided, especially in women without other risk factors except pregnancy. In fact, the risk of recurrence was 0% in 44 such women followed without antepartum anticoagulation [99].

Approximately 50%–80% of gestational VTEs are associated with heritable thrombophilia (Chapter 27). Given that the background rate of VTE during pregnancy is approximately 1:1000, the absolute risk of VTE remains modest for the majority of these thrombophilias except antithrombin deficiency, homozygosity for the factor V Leiden mutation and for the prothrombin mutation, and combined defects. The absolute risk of pregnancy-associated VTE has been reported to range from 9% to 16% in homozygotes for the factor V Leiden mutation [100–103]. Double heterozygosity for the factor V Leiden and prothrombin gene mutations has been reported to have an absolute risk of pregnancy-associated VTE of 4.0% (95% CI 1.4 to 16.9%) [104]. These data suggest that women with antithrombin deficiency, homozygosity for the factor V Leiden mutation, or the prothrombin mutation as well as double heterozygotes, should be managed more aggressively than those with other low-risk inherited thrombophilias, and thus **adjusted-dose therapeutic anticoagulation is recommended for prior DVT and a high risk thrombophilia** (ATIII deficiency, homozygous factor V or prothrombin gene mutation, or double heterozygote). Therapeutic anticoagulation may also be used in pregnant women if the woman has had recurrent VTE episodes, life-threatening thrombosis, or thrombosis while receiving chronic anticoagulation. Filters in the inferior vena cava should be considered in this situation as well. In pregnant women with a history of a prior VTE with history of a low risk thrombophilia (heterozygous factor V or prothrombin gene, protein C or S, prophylactic anticoagulation is recommended.**
antibodies are associated with an increased risk of VTE during pregnancy and the puerperium. It has been suggested that pregnant patients with the antiphospholipid syndrome who do not have a history of venous thrombosis receive a low-dose prophylactic regimen of heparin as well as those with previous thrombosis [65] (Chapter 26). The antepartum management of pregnant women with known thrombophilia and no prior VTE remains controversial because of our limited knowledge of the natural histories of various thrombophilias and a lack of trials of VTE prophylaxis. Prospective data is lacking regarding the incidence of VTE in a large group of pregnant women with known thrombophilia and no prior VTE. Currently, there is no evidence to suggest prophylactic low-dose anticoagulation in this group. If there is a very strong family history of VTE (especially at young ages), consideration can be made for low-dose prophylactic anticoagulation. Individualized risk assessment should be performed in this situation.

PROPHYLAXIS IN WOMEN WITH MECHANICAL HEART VALVES

Women who anticipate ultimately needing valve replacement surgery should be encouraged to complete childbearing before valve replacement. The highest risk for VTE is with first-generation mechanical valves (Starr-Edwards, Bjork-Shiley) in the mitral position, followed by second-generation valves (St Jude) in the aortic position. (Chapter 2). These women need to be therapeutically anticoagulated throughout pregnancy and postpartum with blood levels frequently (usually weekly) checked to ensure therapeutic levels of anticoagulation. Pregnant women with prosthetic heart valves pose a problem because of the lack of trials regarding the efficacy and safety of antithrombotic therapy during pregnancy. There is insufficient data to make definitive recommendations about optimal anticoagulation in pregnant patients with mechanical heart valves.

There are, in general, four regimens that can be considered: 1) VKAs throughout pregnancy, 2) either therapeutic LMWH or UFH between six weeks and 12 weeks and close to term only and to use VKAs at other times, 3) careful therapeutic UFH throughout pregnancy, and 4) careful therapeutic LMWH throughout pregnancy. Before any of these approaches is used, it is crucial to explain the risks/benefits carefully to the patient.

In a review, VKAs throughout pregnancy was the regimen associated with the lowest risk of valve thrombosis/systemic embolism (3.9%); using UFH only between six and 12 weeks gestation was associated with an increased risk of valve thrombosis (9.2%) [105]. This analysis suggests that VKAs are more efficacious than UFH for thromboembolic prophylaxis of women with mechanical heart valves in pregnancy; however, coumarins increase the risk of embryopathy. In the first trimester coumarin is associated with a 10%–15% teratogenic risk (nasal hypoplasia, optic atrophy, digital anomalies, mental impairment). European experts have recommended warfarin therapy throughout pregnancy in view of the reports of poor maternal outcomes with heparin and their impression that the risk of embryopathy with coumarin derivatives has been overstated [106]. If coumarin is used, the dose should be adjusted to attain a target INR of 3.0 (range, 2.5 to 3.5).

A common option utilizes unfractionated heparin during the first trimester to minimize teratogenesis, warfarin for the majority of pregnancy (12–36 weeks), and unfractionated heparin again in the last month to prepare for delivery and allow for epidural anesthesia. Although this may be efficacious, fetal risk is not completely eliminated. Substituting VKAs with heparin between six and 12 weeks reduces the risk of fetopathic effects but possibly subjects the woman to an increased risk of thromboembolic complications. The reported high rates of thromboembolism with UFH might be explained by inadequate dosing and/or the use of an inappropriate target therapeutic range.

The use of weight-adjusted therapeutic UFH warrants careful monitoring and appropriate dose adjustment. A target aPTT ratio of at least twice the control should be attained [107]. If used, SC UFH should be initiated in high doses, usually every eight hours, and adjusted to prolong a six-hour postinjection aPTT into the therapeutic range (usually 60–80 seconds); strong efforts should be made to ensure an adequate anticoagulant effect. LMWH use in pregnant women with prosthetic heart valves has been associated with treatment failures [108–111], and the use of LMWH for this indication has recently become controversial due to a warning from a LMWH manufacturer regarding their safety in this situation [112]. If used, LMWH should be administered twice daily and dosed to achieve anti-Xa levels of 1.0 to 1.2 U/mL four to six hours (peak) after SC injection, with trough 0.6–0.7.

Extrapolating from data in nonpregnant patients with mechanical valves receiving warfarin therapy [113], for some high-risk women, the addition of low-dose aspirin, 75 to 162 mg/d, can be considered in an attempt to reduce the risk of thrombosis, recognizing that it increases the risk of bleeding.

ANTEPARTUM TESTING

No specific recommendations.

DELIVERY AND ANESTHESIA

For women on anticoagulation, a planned delivery, either through induction of labor or by cesarean delivery, may optimize timing of events and prevent the risks of an unplanned delivery. Patients can be recommended to withhold anticoagulation 12–24 hours (depending on the type of heparin used) prior to induction or scheduled cesarean delivery. Women are usually converted to UFH near term (e.g., 36 weeks) with the purpose of preventing the rare possibility of an epidural or spinal hematoma with regional anesthesia [114]. If regional anesthesia is planned and/or desired, UFH is usually stopped about 12 hours before the start of induction or cesarean delivery. Women are currently perinatal risk factors with LMWH use [115]. If LMWH is used until the last month of pregnancy, LMWH is usually converted to UFH near term. Upon delivery, LMWH is continued until the patient is fully anticoagulated and can be converted to oral anticoagulation. LMWH is the anticoagulant of choice for women receiving LMWH for VTE, as it is associated with a lower risk of bleeding and is not teratogenic.

For women not receiving regional anesthesia, if vaginal or cesarean delivery occurs more than four hours after a prophylactic dose of UFH, the patient is not at significant risk of hemorrhagic complications.
Pneumatic compression devices are recommended in patients in whom anticoagulation therapy has been temporarily withheld during delivery [4].

In cases in which VTE was diagnosed within two to four weeks prior to delivery, intravenous UFH can be used just prior to delivery and reversed with protamine. Removable filters can be placed to provide protection from PE during the time anticoagulation is stopped [31].

In women with mechanical heart valves, therapeutic anticoagulation can be continued IV (half-life: 1.5 hours) until active labor and then stopped during active labor and for delivery with therapeutic heparin restarted about 6–12 hours after delivery and warfarin restarted in an overlapping fashion (to avoid paradoxical thrombosis) 24–36 hours after delivery (the night after delivery). Extensive counseling on all these options and risks is required.

PROPHYLAXIS AFTER CESAREAN DELIVERY
Available data suggests that the risk of VTE is higher after cesarean section (especially emergent surgery) than after vaginal delivery [115]. The presence of additional risk factors for pregnancy-associated VTE (for example, prior VTE, thrombophilia, age >35 years, obesity, prolonged bed rest, and concomitant acute medical illness) may exacerbate this risk. Clinical judgment should be used to decide on anticoagulation after cesarean section, taking into account all of the patient’s risk factors.

For postcesarean/postnatal prophylaxis, only one RCT comparing five-day versus 10-day LMWH after cesarean section reported on maternal mortality, observing no deaths. No differences were seen across any of the comparisons for the other primary outcomes (symptomatic thromboembolic events, symptomatic PE, and symptomatic DVT). The RRs for symptomatic thromboembolic events were postcesarean LMWH/UFH versus no heparin, RR 1.30; 95% CI 0.39 to 4.27 (four trials, 840 women); postcesarean LMWH versus UFH, RR 0.33; 95% CI 0.01 to 7.99 (three trials, 217 women); postcesarean five-day versus 10-day LMWH, RR 0.36; 95% CI 0.01 to 8.78 (one trial, 646 women); postnatal UFH versus no heparin, RR 0.16; 95% CI 0.02 to 1.36 (one trial, 210 women). For prophylaxis after cesarean section, in one trial (of 580 women), women receiving UFH and physiotherapy were more likely to have bleeding complications than women receiving physiotherapy alone (RR 5.03; 95% CI 2.49 to 10.18) [98].

Use of a pneumatic compression device after cesarean delivery has been shown to provide a VTE risk reduction similar to universal prophylaxis with heparin while reducing the risks associated with anticoagulation [116]. Routine anticoagulation is not recommended in the universal population in the United States, but it is currently in the United Kingdom and other countries. For patients with additional risk factors from VTE, individual risk assessment may require prophylaxis with LMWH or UFH [82]. In women undergoing cesarean delivery with BMI >50 kg/m², previous VTE, or two or more additional risk factors for VTE (such as smoking, multiple gestation, BMI >30 kg/m², prolonged immobility, and infection), adding to mechanical prophylaxis pharmacological VTE prophylaxis, with either enoxaparin 40 mg daily or UFH 5000 every 12 hours, should be considered. This pharmacological prophylaxis can start postoperatively, at 6 to 12 hours, after concerns for hemorrhage have decreased and can continue until full ambulation [117]. In certain cases, for example, women with anti-thrombin deficiency, anti-thrombin concentrates can be used [4] (see Chapter 13 in Obstetric Evidence Based Guidelines).

POSTPARTUM MANAGEMENT OF ANTICOAGULATION
To minimize bleeding complications, anticoagulation with UFH or LMWH should be restarted 4–6 hours after vaginal delivery or 6–12 hours after cesarean delivery and no sooner than 2 hours after epidural removal [114]. Pneumatic compression devices should be left in place until patient is ambulating and anticoagulation is restarted. It has been proposed that anticoagulant therapy should be continued for at least 6 weeks postpartum and to allow a total duration of treatment of at least 3 months after a VTE [82].

Women who require more than 6 weeks of therapeutic anticoagulation postpartum can be bridged to warfarin, which is safe during breast-feeding [118]. Warfarin can be started with a 5-mg dose. If desired, warfarin can be started in an overlapping fashion (to avoid paradoxical thrombosis) 24–36 hours after delivery (the night after delivery). Daily testing of the international normalized ratio (INR) is recommended starting on day 2 of warfarin therapy and subsequent doses titrated to maintain the INR between 2.0 and 3.0. Heparin should be continued for the first five to seven days and can be discontinued once the INR is greater than 2.0 for at least 24 h [119]. In general, postpartum anticoagulation should be at levels at or higher those antepartum (Table 28.5).

Breast-feeding is safe while on anticoagulation (with either UFH, LMWH, or warfarin).

Thrombophilia testing should be considered once anticoagulation has been discontinued and only if this will influence the patient’s future management [120].

CONTRACEPTION
Combined estrogen–progesterin oral contraceptives have been associated with higher efficacy than progestin-only pills but have the disadvantage of an increased risk of VTE. This risk has been attributed to the estrogen component. In women taking estrogen-containing oral contraceptives, the risk of VTE increases 39-fold to 99-fold among those heterozygous for factor V Leiden and prothrombin G20210A mutations [121]. A meta-analysis of eight observational studies assessing the risk of VTE in women prescribed progestin oral contraception showed no increased risk compared with nonusers of hormonal contraception [122]. In a subanalysis of women prescribed injectable progestins, there was a two-fold increase in thrombotic risk. Also, the type of progestin might influence this risk with newer progestins, such as desogestrel, gestodene, and norgestimate associated with a greater risk than older ones, such as levonorgestrel, lynestrenol, and norethisterone [123–125]. Better contraceptive options for women at risk for VTE include the intrauterine device (including those with estrogen) and progesterin implants. Barrier methods of contraception are also safe but less effective [126].

REFERENCES
7. Pregnancy Mortality Surveillance System. CDC. [Review]
Mattediom-Fetal Evidence Based Guidelines


Hepatitis A

Neil Silverman and Steven K. Herrine

KEY POINTS

- The vast majority of hepatitis A virus (HAV) infections are self-limited.
- There is no perinatal transmission of HAV.
- The inactivated HAV vaccine can be safely used for prevention, can be safely used and should be given during prevention during pregnancy if a patient is at risk for HAV exposure.
- Exposed pregnant women can receive immune globulin injections, which are >85% effective in preventing HAV infection if given within 2 weeks of exposure.
- Therapy of acute HAV infection in pregnancy is supportive.

DIAGNOSIS

Anti-HAV IgM is the diagnostic criterion for acute hepatitis A virus (HAV) infection.

SYMPTOMS

Fever, malaise, decreased appetite, nausea, abdominal discomfort, dark urine, jaundice.

EPIDEMIOLOGY/INCIDENCE

Hepatitis A infection is seen in <1/1000 pregnancies [1]. Worldwide, geographic areas can be characterized by high, intermediate, or low levels of endemicity (Figure 29.1). Levels of endemicity are related to hygienic and sanitary conditions in the geographic areas. HAV infection is common (high or intermediate endemicity) throughout the developing world, where infections most frequently are acquired during early childhood and usually are asymptomatic or mild. In areas of high endemicity, adults are usually immune and epidemics of hepatitis A are uncommon.

There were about 17,000 cases in the United States in 1999 (down almost 50% from 1995) although rates have been shown to decline nationally even more lately as a result of implementation of vaccine protocols, particularly among children [2]. In fact, acute hepatitis A national incidence (new cases) last usually less than 2 months (up to 6 months in 10%–15% patients). The vast majority of cases are self-limited.

RISK FACTORS/ASSOCIATIONS

Increased risk of acquiring HAV infection in travelers to developing/high-prevalence countries; men who have sex with men; intravenous drug users; people who work with nonhuman primates; people with chronic liver disease.

COMPLICATIONS

Mortality is <0.3%. Chronic carrier state does not exist.

PREGNANCY CONSIDERATIONS

No perinatal transmission.

PREGNANCY MANAGEMENT

Workup

HAV IgM and IgG. HAV IgM is detectable 5–10 days before the onset of symptoms and usually decreases to undetectable concentrations within 6 months after recovery [4]. Consider rest of hepatitis workup (see Hepatitis B and C guidelines). Check AST/ALT, bilirubin. HAV IgG is associated with immunity.

Prevention/Preconception Counseling

Avoid fecal-oral contamination by washing all foods and keeping hands clean. Be aware of frequent source (40%) being contact with children. Havrix (Smith Kline Beecham) and Vaqta (Merck) are inactive live virus vaccines. Two doses IM (Havrix 1 ml [50 u] or Vaqta 1 g [1440 u]), given 6–12 months apart, are needed to confer immunity. They can be safely used during pregnancy if a patient is at risk for HAV exposure. HA vaccine is also available in combination with HB vaccine. Immunity after vaccination lasts >10 years.

Prenatal Care

Therapy

Acute infection. No anti-HAV drug is available at present. Supportive therapies can be offered as outpatient. Consider hospitalization only in rare cases of severe dehydration, encephalopathy, or coagulopathy.

Exposed pregnant women can receive immune globulin injections (0.02 mg/kg IM), which are >85% effective in preventing HAV infection if given within 2 weeks of exposure (close
personal or sexual contact). The HAV vaccine series should also be initiated [1]. In June 2007, U.S. guidelines were revised to allow for Hepatitis A vaccine to be used after exposure to prevent infection in healthy persons aged 1–40 years.

**ANTEPARTUM TESTING**
Not indicated.

**DELIVERY**
Follow obstetrical indications.

**ANESTHESIA**
No particular precautions necessary.

**POSTPARTUM/BREAST-FEEDING**
Breast-feeding is not contraindicated.

**REFERENCES**
2. APGO Educational Series on Women’s Health. Hepatitis B and C: The Ob/Gyn’s role. APGO, Maryland, 2002. [Review; III]
Hepatitis B
Neil Silverman and Steven K. Herrine

KEY POINTS
• Universal precautions, proper hygiene, avoidance of high-risk behavior with contact with potentially infectious body fluids (blood, semen, and saliva) must be employed by the mother (or potential mother) to avoid acquiring the infection.
• Hepatitis B virus (HBV) vaccine should be administered preconception or early in pregnancy to every reproductive age woman who is susceptible.
• All women should be screened for HBV infection during pregnancy: HBsAg is the appropriate screening test.
• Vertical transmission of HBV occurs in 90% to 95% of women with HBeAg+ and 90% of women with acute hepatitis in the third trimester in the absence of neonatal immunoprophylaxis.
• Vertical transmission can occur in about 20% to 30% of women who are HBsAg+ but HBeAg– in the absence of neonatal immunoprophylaxis.
• In pregnant women with HBV infection, HBV viral load testing should be considered in the third trimester.
• In pregnant women with HBV infection and viral load >6–8 log 10 (10^6–8) copies/mL, HBV-targeted maternal antiviral therapy should be considered for the purpose of decreasing the risk of intrauterine fetal infection.
• 90% of newborns infected with HBV develop chronic HB without intervention with 25% of chronic HBV carriers eventually dying of complications (cirrhosis, hepatocellular cancer) of HBV infection.
• Hepatitis B vaccine and HBIG should be given within 12 hours of birth to all newborns of HBsAg positive mothers or those with unknown or undocumented HBsAg status regardless of whether maternal antiviral therapy has been given during the pregnancy.
• Breast-feeding is not contraindicated as long as the newborn receives appropriate immunoprophylaxis.

DIAGNOSIS/DEFINITION
Adults (Table 30.1)
Acute: HBsAg+, HBeAg+, HBCIgM+, HBsAb–.
Chronic: HBsAg+ >6 months, HBsAb– [1,2].

The virus can be found by PCR in blood, urine, feces, seminal fluid, saliva, and the GI tract. Serum, semen, and saliva are infectious. The initial differential diagnosis of hepatitis includes hepatitis A, B, or C viruses (HAV, HBV, HCV), cytomegalovirus (CMV), Epstein-Barr virus (EBV), varicella zoster virus (VZV), coxsackie B virus, herpes simplex virus (HSV), rubella, autoimmune hepatitis, and drug- or herbal-induced hepatotoxicity.

Infants
The diagnosis is made by detection of persistent (e.g., >9 months of age) HBsAg. Only HBsAb is attributable to newborn vaccination: HBCAb arises only as the result of actual HBV infection.

SYMPTOMS
Only 30% to 50% of acutely infected adult patients have symptoms, such as loss of appetite, malaise, nausea, and vomiting. About 10% have jaundice. The onset is usually insidious.

EPIDEMIOLOGY/INCIDENCE
More than 400 million worldwide have chronic HBV infection. Most acquire the infection at birth or in the first one to two years of life. More than 300,000 liver cancers per year are due to HBV (>50% of 530,000 cases—118,000 cases due to HCV—so hepatitis is responsible for 82% of all liver cancer). One third of the world’s population (two billion people) have been infected with HBV [3]; 90% have complete resolution, and about 10% overall develop chronic HBV infection. But this incidence is age-specific: 90% in children who are infected at <1 year of age and only 2% in persons >5 years old. About 25% of HBV chronic infection patients die of liver disease (4000/yr in the United States, >1 million/yr worldwide—0.5% mortality) [4].

The vaccine is about 95% effective against HBV. More than 90 countries implement universal vaccination: the worldwide eradication of HBV is a distinct possibility but far away at present. More than 75% of chronic HBV infection patients are Chinese, second is sub-Saharan Africa (10%–20% incidence in these countries). Incidence is 0.2% to 0.5% in North America, Europe, and Australia. The absolute annual incidence of acute HBV infection has decreased in the United States from 8000 to 3500 cases over the 2000–2013 interval with a stabilized rate of 0.9–1.1 cases/100,000 population in the United States from 2009 to 2013. In endemic areas where universal childhood HBV vaccination has been instituted, decreases in HBsAg carrier rates were associated with subsequent reductions, up to 70%, in the incidence of hepatocellular carcinoma in children and adolescents [5,6].

GENETICS
Small partially double-stranded DNA virus.
ETIOLOGY/BASIC PATHOPHYSIOLOGY

HB virus exposure, then incubation of about 60 to 90 days (depends on the amount of viral exposure), then laboratory changes (Table 30.1; Figure 30.1).

- **Antigens**
  - "s" surface—infected. If present >6 months, chronic HBV infection
  - "c"—core
  - "e"—envelope—connotes higher infectivity

- **Antibodies**
  - "s"—immune
  - "c"—core—positive in "window" period and usually precedes HBsAb conversion

The presence of HBsAb is diagnostic for immunity whether it results from vaccination or from natural (but cleared or resolved) infection. HBcAb arises only as a result of natural infection and coexists with HBsAb in individuals who have cleared their acute infection. In contrast, HBsAb and HBsAg do not coexist in standard clinical testing because HBsAg is the clearance, or neutralizing antibody, for the antigen.

About 5% of HBV infections in adults become chronic. This can lead to cirrhosis, hepatocellular carcinoma, and death. (http://www.cdc.gov/vaccines/pubs/pinkbook/hepb.html)

CLASSIFICATION
See Table 30.1.

RISK FACTORS/ASSOCIATIONS

Transmission is parenteral (blood borne) and sexual (mucosal). The greatest source of chronic HBV infection worldwide is perinatal transmission from HBV-infected mothers. Twenty-five percent of sexual contacts become positive. Intravenous drug use (IDU), sexually transmitted diseases (STDs), multiple sex partners, household contacts, time in a mental institution/prison, and acupuncture are other risk factors as is the rare HBV-infected blood transfusion. The risk of transfusion-attributable HBV infections is about 1 per 137,000 transfused units of screened blood [1]. HBV-infected patients are more likely to be infected with HIV and HCV.

COMPLICATIONS

Ninety percent of adult patients resolve the infection (clear both HBsAg and HBeAg) and develop HBsAb; 10% develop chronic hepatitis B infection (maintain HBsAg). Of these, most are asymptomatic with normal liver function tests (LFTs), with no HBV detectable by PCR. The other 15% to 30% of chronic HB has persistent viral replication: These patients can develop cirrhosis and hepatocellular cancer. Mortality is 0.5% to 1%. About 5% to 10% of all HBV transmission is transplacental hematogenous. The outcome of acute HBV infection is age-dependent. About 95% of neonates, 20%–30% of children age 1–5 years old, and <5% of adults develop chronic infection. Up to 40% of men and 15% of women with perinatally acquired HBV infection will die of liver cirrhosis or hepatocellular carcinoma [7].

PREGNANCY CONSIDERATIONS

Vertical transmission occurs in about 20% to 30% of children born to HBsAg/HBeAg– mothers if no neonatal immunoprophylaxis is given. If the woman is also HBeAg+, the risk for vertical transmission is about 90% to 95% with 90% of
Figure 30.1  HBV markers during natural course resolved acute HBV infection (a) and transition of acute to chronic HBV infection (b). A subset of chronic patients might seroconvert from HBeAg to anti-HBe despite persistence of HBV DNA. HBV = hepatitis B virus. (From Trepo C, Chan HLY, Lok A. Lancet 384, 2053–63, 2014. With permission.)
HBsAg, HBsAb, HBCAb, HBcIgM, HBeAg, HBeAb. See Table 30.1 for interpretation of diagnosis, disease stage. HBV DNA by quantitative PCR is recommended in the early third trimester for women diagnosed as chronic carriers. This test is used to counsel women regarding the risk of intrauterine infection/neonatal immunization failure and to discuss options related to maternal antiviral therapy during pregnancy to decrease the risk of fetal infection [14,15]. Liver biopsy can be considered for initial assessment of severity of disease for chronic HBV.

Prevention/Preconception Counseling [1,4]

Universal precautions, proper hygiene, and avoidance of high-risk behavior with contact with potentially infected fluids (e.g., serum, semen, and saliva) must be employed by the mother (or potential mother) to avoid acquiring the infection.

HBV vaccine should be administered preconception or early in pregnancy to every reproductive age woman who is susceptible.

Universal maternal screening with HBsAg is recommended at first visit or preconception. If HBsAg+, test for HBsAb, eAg, eAb, cAb. Also test quantitative HBV-DNA level in early third trimester. Consideration should be given to offering maternal antiviral therapy for very high maternal viral loads, which is discussed below. All HBsAg+ women should also have their neonate receive HBIG and HB vaccine within 12 hours of birth regardless of whether maternal antiviral therapy was used during pregnancy. This combination prevents >90% of vertical transmission.

If HBsAg–, consider vaccine in pregnancy for all and especially high-risk groups such as STDs, HIV+, HepC+, and IVDU.

Women who are known to be or found to be chronically HBV infected (HBsAg+) should also be screened for prior hepatitis A virus infection (test: HAV-IgG) and vaccinated if nonimmune because coinfection with other hepatitis viruses has additive morbidity.

Prenatal Care

Universal maternal screening with HBsAg at first visit or preconception. If HBsAg+, send workup as above. If HBsAg–, no further workup. Consider repeating in early third trimester in high-risk groups, such as sex with acutely or chronically HBV-infected person, sex workers, multiple/new partners, multiple STDs, HIV, IVDU, occupational contact with blood, receivers of unscreened blood, hemodialysis patients, household contacts of infected patients, persons in prisons or institutions, or countries with high rates of HBV infection.

Therapy

Main intervention therapies [1,2,4,16,17]:

**Hepatitis B Vaccine**

Series of three IM injections in deltoid muscle over six months of recombinant DNA; 95% seroconversion (HBsAb+ and immune) rate. It is safe in pregnancy and for neonate. Two vaccines available:

1. Recombivax HB (Merck and Co., Inc., New Jersey, U.S.): adults ≥20 years old = 10 μg (1 mL); 11–19 years old = 5 (0.5); <11 years old = 2.5 (0.25); within 12 hours of delivery and maternal HBeAg+ = 5; within 12 hours of delivery and maternal HBeAg– = 2.5.

2. Engerix-B (Smith Kline Beecham Biologicals, Belgium): adults ≥20 years old = 20 μg (1 mL); 11 to 19 years old = 10 (1); <11 years old = 10 (0.5); within 12 hours of delivery and maternal HBeAg+ = 10; within 12 hours of delivery and maternal HBeAg– = 10.

There is also one combination (HA and HB) vaccine available (Twinrix) [1].

**HBIG**

Immunoglobulins specific for HB (0.5 mL/kg IM for adult; 0.13 mL/kg for neonate). It is safe in pregnancy and for neonate.

**Nucleoside/Nucleotide Analogs (Table 30.2)**

Safety: generally safe. A recent analysis of antiretroviral registry data looking specifically at the fetal safety profiles of
Lamivudine and tenofovir were both associated with a reduction in vertical transmission risk (0% and 2%, respectively) compared to no antiviral therapy (20% transmission) [25]. A meta-analysis compiling data on the use of lamivudine during pregnancy for this purpose included 10 trials although only three were placebo-controlled; compared to placebo, treatment with lamivudine starting at 24–32 weeks of gestation through 4 weeks postpartum resulted in a (significant) 80% decrease in intrauterine fetal HBV infection (OR 0.2 [0.10–0.39]; p < 0.001) [20].

Subsequent trials using tenofovir and entecavir, another reverse transcriptase inhibitor, showed sustained viral suppression below detectable levels and reversal of hepatic histopathology without similar levels of resistance in nonpregnant adults [21].

More recent reports have demonstrated that in chronically infected nonpregnant adults, tenofovir monotherapy has maintained HBV-DNA suppression when used for up to 6 years of continuous treatment with no evidence of tenofovir resistance even in patients whose virus became resistant to lamivudine [22,23]. The most recent treatment guidelines issued by the American Association for the Study of Liver Diseases (AASLD) in 2009 for the treatment of chronic HBV infection moved tenofovir and entecavir to first-line therapies with lamivudine not a first-line agent due to resistance concerns [24].

Regarding pregnancy data, in a recent multicenter prospective observational study, HBV antiviral therapy was given to pregnant women with elevated HBV DNA levels (>7 log10 IU/mL) after 32 weeks of gestation. All newborns received recommended active and passive immunization. Lamivudine and tenofovir were both associated with a reduction in vertical transmission risk (0% and 2%, respectively) compared to no antiviral therapy (20% transmission) [25].

Based on these studies and others, the use of HBV-specific antivirals after 28–32 weeks of gestation for HBV infected women with high viral load (>10^8–10^9 copies/mL) has been suggested in addition to administration of both HBV vaccine and HBIG within 12–24 hours of birth to minimize in utero infection and to maximize neonatal HBV prevention. In Europe, both the European Association for the Study of the Liver (EASL) and the UK’s National Institute for Health and Care Excellence have published such guidelines in 2012 and 2013, respectively [14,26]. Both agencies currently advocate discussion of antiviral therapy with HBV infected pregnant women with viral loads >6–7 log 10 IU/mL (6.7–7.7 log 10 copies/mL) with treatment to be offered in the third trimester. As more data are published in larger trials, this will inevitably lead to development of perinatal treatment protocols in the United States [15,27].

**Conditions**

- **Acute Hepatitis B in pregnancy:** diagnosis: document conversion from HBsAg– to HBsAg+. Check all labs as above. Outpatient supportive therapy. Consider hospitalization for severe anemia, diabetes mellitus, severe dehydration, coagulopathy, bilirubin >15. Consider nucleoside/nucleotide and/or HBIG therapy. Vitamin K 10 mg IM (or po) q8h × 3 can be given to pregnant women with coagulopathy. Mortality is about 1% [1]. Sexual, needle, and household contacts should be informed by the patient.

- **Exposure to HB in pregnancy:** Check all labs as above. If HBsAg– and sAb–, give HBIG and begin the HB vaccine series (preferably within 24 hours of exposure); this combination will prevent 75% of transmission. Must give HBIG within 14 days of sexual contact. Repeat HBIG within one month if blood or mucous membrane exposure.

- **Vertical transmission prevention:** In pregnant women with HBV infection and viral load >6–8 log 10 (10^6–10^8) copies/mL, HBV-targeted maternal antiviral therapy should be considered for the purpose of decreasing the risk of intrauterine fetal infection. All newborns born to women with HBsAg+ should receive HBIG and HB vaccine within 12 hours of birth given simultaneously at different sites IM [1,2] regardless of whether maternal antiviral therapy was also used during pregnancy.

**ANTEPARTUM TESTING**

Not indicated.

**DELIVERY**

Per obstetrical indications.

**ANESTHESIA**

No particular precautions necessary.

**POSTPARTUM/BREAST-FEEDING**

Breast-feeding is not contraindicated as long as the neonate receives HBIG and HB vaccine as above [1,28].

**RARE/RELATED**

Hepatitis D virus: incomplete RNA virus, which can superinfect 20% to 25% of chronic HBV-infected patients. HDV infection worsens chronic HBV infection so that 25% may die from disease. If HBV is prevented, HDV infection is prevented too. HDV has no effect on pregnancy or fetus/neonate.
REFERENCES


Hepatitis C

Neil Silverman, Raja Dhanekula, and Jonathan M. Fenkel

KEY POINTS

- Chronic hepatitis C virus (HCV) infection is defined as a reactive HCV antibody with detectable HCV RNA for >6 months duration.
- Chronic hepatitis C virus (HCV) infection is one of the most common chronic liver diseases and accounts for 5 deaths per 100,000 population in the United States in the most recent data survey from 2014 [1]. The majority of liver transplants performed in the United States are for chronic HCV-related liver disease or hepatocellular carcinoma (liver cancer).
- Complications of chronic HCV infection include cirrhosis, liver failure, and hepatocellular carcinoma.
- HCV is primarily acquired via infected blood-to-blood contact, but mother-to-infant (vertical transmission) can occur about 5% of the time an HCV-infected mother delivers a newborn.
- Transmission occurs from mothers who are HCV-RNA positive (as opposed to those who are anti-HCV positive but HCV-RNA negative). The risk of transmission is, as with HIV, in part related to the level of viremia at the time of birth.
- Mother-to-infant transmission is most commonly diagnosed by the presence of HCV-antibody and/or HCV RNA in the infant after 18 months of age but can also be diagnosed by detectable HCV RNA on two occasions 3–4 months apart after the infant is 2 months old. Coinfection with HIV and high maternatal viral load are associated with higher risk of transmission.
- Risk factors (Table 31.1) for HCV should be avoided to prevent HCV infection and be used for screening.
- HCV-positive pregnant women should be screened for coinfection with HIV (HIV antibody) and hepatitis B (hepatitis B surface antigen) as well as other sexually transmitted infections. Blood tests to measure liver function (AST, ALT, total bilirubin, albumin, platelet count, prothrombin time/INR) are also recommended. Strong consideration should be given for hepatology referral and measurement of HCV quantitative RNA (“viral load”) and/or HCV genotype for counseling regarding risk of mother-to-infant transmission, risk reduction behaviors, and eventual treatment consideration.
- Patients with chronic HCV infection are at high risk of liver failure if they become infected with other forms of viral hepatitis. Screening for immunity to hepatitis A (hepatitis A total ab/IgG) and hepatitis B (hepatitis B surface antibody) and vaccinating if not immune is also recommended.
- Treatment for chronic HCV infection has changed dramatically since 2011. HCV can be cured >90% of the time with combination direct-acting antiviral agents (DAAs), such as ledipasvir/sofosbuvir, paritaprevir/ritonavir/dasabuvir/ombitasvir, or sofosbuvir+daclatasvir, with few side effects and all oral administration. Safety and efficacy of treatment in pregnant patients has not been established or studied and is not recommended at this time. Older treatments including pegylated interferon are no longer recommended, and ribavirin is contraindicated in pregnancy due to teratogenicity concerns.
- In women of reproductive age with chronic HCV, treatment before conception should be strongly considered with as short as an 8–12 weeks regimen of DAAs, particularly if they have advanced liver fibrosis, compensated cirrhosis, severe extrahepatic complications of HCV, or prior children infected with HCV via mother-to-infant transmission. Pregnancy is not recommended in patients with decompensated cirrhosis.
- In HCV-positive but HIV-negative women, cesarean delivery should be reserved for obstetric indications as it does not decrease the risk of vertical transmission of HCV infection.
- Breast-feeding is generally not considered to be a risk factor for vertical transmission of HCV in non-HIV infected women. Breast-feeding is instead contraindicated in women coinfected with both HCV and HIV infections.
- Treatment of HCV should be considered postpartum in all infected patients.

DIAGNOSES/DEFINITIONS/CLASSIFICATION

Adults

Chronic hepatitis C virus (HCV) infection is defined as a reactive HCV antibody with detectable HCV RNA for more than 6 months duration. Patients often have elevated liver enzyme tests although this is not required to make the diagnosis and does not occur in all patients with chronic HCV infection.

HCV can cause both acute and chronic hepatitis. The acute process is self-limited with flu-like symptoms, rarely causes hepatic failure, and usually leads to chronic infection. Chronic HCV infection often follows a progressive course over many years and can ultimately result in cirrhosis, liver failure, hepatocellular carcinoma, and the need for liver transplantation.

Acute HCV hepatitis is not common in pregnancy, but would be most likely to occur in women who use intravenous drugs while pregnant. The incubation time is usually 30 to 60 days. Diagnosis is made by detectable HCV RNA in the blood. HCV antibody is usually nonreactive in acute hepatitis C, at least for the first 2–3 months of infection. Treatment is supportive and up to 20% may clear infection spontaneously. Patients who develop symptoms, and in particular jaundice, from acute HCV are more likely to clear infection spontaneously than those without symptoms. Once the infection has been present for >6 months, it is considered chronic and will not clear without antiviral therapy.
HCV can be found by PCR in blood, urine, feces, seminal fluid, saliva, and GI tract [2,3].

The initial differential diagnosis of acute hepatitis includes hepatitis A, B, or C virus (HAV, HBV, or HCV), cytomegalovirus (CMV), Epstein-Barr, varicella (VZV), coxsackie B, herpes (HSV), rubella, autoimmune, etc.

Infants
Mother-to-infant transmission is most commonly diagnosed by the presence of HCV-antibody and/or HCV RNA in the infant after 18 months of age but can also be diagnosed by detectable HCV RNA on two occasions 3–4 months apart after the infant is 2 months old.

SYMPTOMS
Most (about 75%) patients with chronic infection are asymptomatic or have only mild nonspecific symptoms. Among those who have symptoms, the most frequent complaint is fatigue; other less common manifestations include nausea, anorexia, myalgia, arthralgia, weakness, and weight loss [4].

Extrahepatic manifestations: A number of extrahepatic diseases have been associated with chronic HCV infection. Most cases appear to be directly related to the viral infection [5]. These include the following:

- Hematologic diseases, such as essential mixed cryoglobulinemia and lymphoma
- Renal disease, particularly membranoproliferative glomerulonephritis
- Autoimmune disorders, such as thyroiditis and the presence of autoantibodies
- Dermatologic conditions, such as porphyria cutanea tarda and lichen planus
- Diabetes mellitus

NATURAL HISTORY
The majority of patients who acquire HCV do not spontaneously clear the virus and thus develop chronic HCV infection. Chronic infection results in chronic inflammation of the liver, which heals with scar tissue formation or fibrosis and ultimately cirrhosis in a subset of patients although the rate of disease progression is variable. Patients who develop cirrhosis are at further risk for decompensating events (such as variceal hemorrhage, ascites, and encephalopathy) and hepatocellular carcinoma although many patients with compensated cirrhosis remain stable for years (Figure 31.1) [6].

The risk of chronic infection after HCV acquisition is high. In most studies, 50% to 85% of patients chronically remain HCV RNA positive following infection and seroconversion, depending on the population and the source of infection. Of those who are able to spontaneously clear HCV, most do so within 12 weeks of seroconversion although spontaneous clearance after a longer period of follow-up has been described.

The mechanism responsible for the high prevalence of viral persistence, and thus chronic infection, is unclear, but both viral and host factors are likely to contribute.
EPIDEMIOLOGY/INCIDENCE
In the United States, 0.6% to 4.5% of pregnant women have HCV antibodies with considerable worldwide geographic variation. HCV is the most common chronic blood-borne infection in the United States (although HBV is worldwide). Globally, it was estimated that in 2005, more than 185 million people had HCV antibodies, a prevalence of 2.8 percent [6,7]. Of noninstitutionalized U.S. citizens, 1.3% (3.6 million) carry HCV antibodies; 74% of these (2.7 million) have detectable viral RNA in their serum (chronic disease) [8]. The prevalence of antibodies to hepatitis C virus (anti-HCV) in the United States is approximately 1.6% (equating to about 4.1 million anti-HCV positive persons), and the prevalence of positive HCV RNA is approximately 1.3% (or about 3.2 million persons who are HCV RNA-positive). The peak prevalence is observed among persons born between 1945 and 1964 (baby boomers) and the Centers for Disease Control (CDC) recently recommended one-time screening for HCV in all Americans born between 1945 and 1965 [9,10]. The prevalence is projected to decrease from the current about 1.6% to about 1% by the year 2030. On the contrary, the prevalence of liver disease caused by HCV is on the rise. This is because of the significant lag time, often 20 years or longer, between the onset of infection and clinical manifestations of liver disease.

Chronic HCV is one of the most common chronic liver diseases and accounts for 8–13,000 deaths in the United States each year. The majority of liver transplants performed in the United States are for chronic HCV-related liver disease or hepatocellular carcinoma (liver cancer). Chronic HCV infection is usually slowly progressive and may not result in clinically apparent liver disease in many patients. Approximately 20%–50% of chronically infected individuals develop cirrhosis over a 20- to 30-year period of time.

GENETICS
Single-stranded RNA virus; striking genetic heterogeneity, including six major genotypes with rapid accumulation of mutations. At least six different genotypes of HCV have been identified with multiple subtypes among the genotypes. Current treatments are targeted to specific genotypes and subtypes.

ETIOLOGY/BASIC PATHOPHYSIOLOGY
HCV is primarily acquired via infected blood-to-blood contact, but mother-to-infant (vertical transmission) can occur about 5% of the time an HCV-infected mother delivers a newborn [11]. Sexual contact is a very weak risk factor. Table 31.1 delineates risk factors associated with HCV acquisition. Sexual contact is a very uncommon source of HCV infection. The risk of infecting a noninfected partner in monogamous couples in which one partner is HCV infected is thought to be <1% with regular sexual contact. Personal care items such as razors, toothbrushes, and nail clippers can also present household risk for HCV infection through infected blood. See Figure 31.1 for the natural history of HCV infection and likelihood of developing chronic hepatitis.

RISK FACTORS/ASSOCIATIONS
In the United States, the primary risk factor for HCV infection is parenteral (injected or inhaled) drug abuse (Table 31.1) [12]. The risk of HCV infection via blood transfusion is now <1/million transfused units in the United States [2]. Up to 40% of HCV-infected women may have no risk factors. HCV can be found in semen [3] and acquired through artificial insemination [13]. As with HIV, IVF with ICSI (after sperm washing and separation) can avoid the risk of an HCV-infected male partner from infecting his female partner via unprotected intercourse [14].

COMPLICATIONS
The most common maternal long-term complications of chronic infection include cirrhosis (20%–50%) and hepatocellular carcinoma (1%–5%). Chronic HCV is associated with increased all-cause mortality not only related to liver disease. Renal disease, malignancy, and cardiovascular diseases are also more common in chronic HCV infected patients [15]. Extra-hepatic complications of chronic HCV are detailed above under “Symptoms.” Perinatal complications of maternal HCV infection include perinatal transmission (see below).

PREGNANCY CONSIDERATIONS
Mother-to-Infant (Perinatal) Transmission
HCV perinatal (also called vertical) transmission rates have been reported between 2% and 10%. HCV chronically infects an estimated 25,000–50,000 U.S. children with 750 new cases a year acquired through vertical transmission [16–18]. Table 31.2 summarizes transmission rates compiled from 77 studies and 383 cases of mother-to-infant transmission cases [2,11]. Coinfection with HIV greatly increases vertical transmission [11]. The risk of infection is approximately at least two-fold higher or more in infants born to women coinfected with HCV and HIV. Highly active antiretroviral HIV therapy has been shown to decrease HCV transmission in HCV–HIV coinfected women [19]. Mothers must be viremic to transmit the virus to the infant. Although maternal HCV antibody can be passively transmitted to the infant, viremia is required for transmission of the virus. Vertical transmission correlates with high maternal HCV viral load [20], but a specific cut-off that predicts transmission has not been identified. The higher the maternal HCV viral titer, the higher the risk of perinatal transmission.

Other maternal risk factors reported to be possibly associated with an increased rate of vertical HCV transmission include prolonged membrane rupture during labor (6 hours or longer) and use of internal fetal monitoring during labor [16,17]. Nonetheless, it is controversial whether prolonged rupture of the membranes (i.e., for >6 hours) increases risk. The use of scalp electrodes is discouraged. There is no association between gestational age and risk of transmission. Amniocentesis does not appear to significantly increase the risk [21], but very few studies have addressed this.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Risk Factor</th>
<th>Weighted Rate (%)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Anti-HCV only (RNA negative)</td>
<td>1–2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Viremic (HCV RNA positive)</td>
<td>4–6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HIV positive</td>
<td>19–40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HIV negative</td>
<td>3–5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anti-HCV and injection drug use</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

amniocentesis is requested, transplacental needle insertion should be avoided. There are no data regarding CVS and in utero transmission: appropriate counseling should be undertaken if an HCV-infected woman requests CVS, and the availability of amniocentesis should be discussed as a potentially less invasive and vasodisruptive procedure.

Vertical transmission does not correlate with mode of delivery in non-HIV-infected pregnant women. Therefore, in these women, cesarean delivery has not been shown to independently decrease the risk of perinatal transmission and should be considered only for obstetrical reasons. HIV coinfected women delivered by cesarean section were 60% less likely to have a HCV-infected child than those delivered vaginally [22].

Diagnostic confirmation of vertical transmission is obtained with positive serum HCV RNA on two occasions 3 to 4 months apart after the infant is 2 months old or anti-HCV detected after the child is 18 months old.

MANAGEMENT
Prevention
There is no HCV vaccine available. Risk factors for HCV (Table 31.1) should be avoided, and risk reduction counseling should be performed for HCV-infected patients. Prevention of complications of liver disease includes avoidance of alcohol and hepatotoxic medicines (including alternative and herbal remedies) and certain foods, such as raw shellfish.

Principles
Effect of Pregnancy on Hepatitis C
Pregnancy does not affect the clinical course of acute or chronic hepatitis C. There is an improvement in biochemical markers of liver damage in HCV-positive women during pregnancy [23]. There is a linear increase in HCV viremia throughout pregnancy [3], 50% above baseline [23].

Effect of Hepatitis C on Pregnancy
Chronic active hepatitis in the pregnant woman is associated with an increased incidence of preterm delivery, intrapartum growth restriction, small for gestational age, and NICU admission [24–26]. HCV vertical transmission and its consequences can affect the neonate. Long-term complications of HCV infection for either the mother or the baby can lead to cirrhosis, cancer, and death.

Screening
It is neither cost-effective nor appropriate to screen universally for HCV among low-risk pregnant women. Screening is recommended in women with risk factors for HCV infection (Table 31.1). Screening is performed with anti-HCV (HCV IgG) antibody. Universal screening may become recommended when therapy for HCV in pregnancy is deemed safe and effective.

Workup
Any woman who tests positive for anti-HCV antibody should have HCV RNA quantitative viral load (via polymerase chain reaction, PCR) to confirm the diagnosis of chronic hepatitis C. She should be screened for coinfection with HIV (HIV antibody) and hepatitis B (hepatitis B surface antigen) as well as other sexually transmitted infections. Blood tests to measure liver function (AST, ALT, total bilirubin, albumin, platelet count, prothrombin time/INR) are also recommended. Strong consideration should be given for hepatology referral for counseling regarding risk of vertical transmission, risk reduction behaviors, and eventual treatment consideration. An HCV genotype is also recommended if treatment is being considered as treatment is tailored to the genotype/subtype. Additionally, patients with chronic HCV infection are at high risk of liver failure if they become infected with other forms of viral hepatitis. Screening for immunity to hepatitis A (hepatitis A total Ab/IgG) and hepatitis B (hepatitis B surface antibody) and vaccinating if not immune is also recommended.

Preconception/Pregnancy Counseling
Effect of pregnancy on HCV infection and vice versa should be reviewed. Counseling of the pregnant woman with HCV infection should include review of risk factors known to increase mother-to-infant transmission (HIV coinfection, HCV viremia especially with high viral loads, vaginal delivery in HIV coinfected women, scalp electrode, and breastfeeding in HIV coinfected women), and reassurance for factors known not to increase transmission (vaginal delivery in HIV-negative women, gestational age at time of infection, chorioamnionitis, and breast-feeding in HIV-negative women). Amniocentesis, especially nontransplacental, is associated with minimal risk of HCV vertical transmission. Counseling should also include other possible complications, management, and postpartum follow-up.

Other disease-specific counseling tips include avoid sharing personal care items, such as toothbrushes and dental or shaving equipment, and be cautioned to cover any bleeding wound in order to keep their blood away from others. Patients should be counseled to stop using illicit drugs and alcohol. Those who continue to inject drugs should be counseled to avoid reusing or sharing syringes, needles, water, and cotton or other paraphernalia; to clean the injection site with a new alcohol swab; and to dispose safely of syringes and needles after use.

HCV-infected patients should be counseled that the risk of sexual transmission is low and that the infection itself is not a reason to change sexual practices (i.e., those in long-term relationships need not start using barrier precautions and others should always practice “safer” sex). Still, some sexual behaviors including sex during menses, sex with toys, and anal intercourse are associated with an increased risk of sexual transmission compared to vaginal intercourse.

In women of reproductive age with chronic HCV, treatment before conception should be strongly considered with a short (8–12 weeks) regimen of direct-acting antiviral agents (DAAs), particularly if they have advanced liver fibrosis, compensated cirrhosis, severe extrahepatic complications of HCV, or prior children infected with HCV via mother-to-infant transmission. Pregnancy is not recommended in patients with decompensated cirrhosis. Liver transplant may be considered in some of these cases.

Therapy
Treatment for all nonpregnant adults with HCV chronic HCV infection has changed dramatically since 2011 after the introduction of the first HCV-specific direct DAAs, telaprevir and boceprevir. Since then, many other DAAs have been FDA
approved, and more are expected to market in the next few years. Three general classes of HCV antiviral activity are now available, including HCV protease inhibitors, HCV polymerase inhibitors, and NS5A inhibitors. By using DAA from at least two of the three categories, HCV can be cured >90% of the time with as little as one pill/day for 8–24 weeks in most patients regardless of prior treatment experience. Some of the available combinations for genotype 1 include ledipasvir/sofosbuvir, simeprevir + sofosbuvir, paritaprevir/ritonavir/ombitasvir + dasabuvir, and sofosbuvir + daclatasvir. Using a + instead of a/distinguishes combination of two agents rather than a combination pill. In addition, recent trials have demonstrated the efficacy of a regimen combining the polymerase inhibitor sofosbuvir with a newer NS5A inhibitor, velpatasvir, across all HCV genotypes when used for 12 weeks as a once-daily, fixed-dose therapy [27,28]. These combinations have very few and generally mild side effects, including headache, nausea, fatigue, and insomnia and are given all by oral administration. In nonpregnant adults, indications for treatment include patients with cirrhosis as well as all HCV-positive patients for the prevention of developing advanced fibrosis and cirrhosis. The main goal of treatment for chronic HCV is now cure. This is typically defined as a sustained virologic response (SVR): an undetectable viral load (less than the lower limit of quantification) at 12–24 weeks after completing therapy, which is associated with reduction of both all-cause and liver-related mortality from HCV [29,30].

Safety and efficacy of this treatment in pregnant patients has not been established and is not recommended at this time. Older treatments, including pegylated interferon, are no longer recommended, and ribavirin is contraindicated in pregnancy due to teratogenicity concerns. Both the apparent safety profile and the potential ribavirin- and interferon-free nature of these regimens make them particularly attractive for potential use in pregnancy. The short duration (12 weeks or less for most patients) is also an attractive duration for use during the third trimester. Sofosbuvir and ledipasvir are both category B drugs given there was no evidence of fetal harm in animal studies. NS5A inhibitors’ profile in pregnancy is promising, but further animal and patient studies are warranted before use in pregnant patients commences. As research evolves, interferon-free combination DAA regimens will most likely become first-line treatment options in pregnancy with better efficacy and lower rates of side effects for both treatment-naive patients as well as previous interferon nonresponders [31]. Pregnancy is a unique opportunity to not only cure the mother of her HCV, but also to prevent her child from becoming infected.

**ANTEPARTUM TESTING**

Not indicated for HCV infection alone.

**DELIVERY**

In HCV-positive women not coinfected with HIV, mode of delivery does not affect vertical transmission, so cesarean delivery should be reserved for obstetric indications. In HCV- and HIV-coinfected women, mode of delivery should be cesarean delivery if the HIV viral load is ≥1000 [23].

**ANESTHESIA**

No particular precautions necessary.

**POSTPARTUM**

Patients with hepatitis C should be immunized against hepatitis A and B during pregnancy if not already immune as these vaccines are safe. If immunization has not occurred antenatally, hepatitis A and B vaccines (or their combination) should be given postpartum even if breast-feeding [32].

**BREAST-FEEDING**

Breast-feeding is generally not considered to be a risk factor for vertical transmission of HCV in non-HIV infected women [2]. The safety of breast-feeding operates on the assumption that traumatized, cracked, or bleeding nipples are not present. However, with HIV coinfection, those who breast-fed were four times more likely to infect their children than those who bottle-fed [23]. Breast-feeding is therefore contraindicated in women with HCV/HIV co-infection [33,34].

**REFERENCES**

HIV
William R. Short

KEY POINTS

- Identification of HIV infection in pregnancy is essential for the prevention of perinatal transmission. Therefore, universal screening is recommended in the first trimester or at entry into prenatal care. An opt-out approach has been shown to increase acceptance rates for HIV testing in pregnant women and is the recommended approach to universal prenatal screening.

- Screening should be repeated preferably before 36 weeks in cases of high-risk behavior, high prevalence area, or previously declined testing.

- Rapid testing is recommended for previously untested women presenting in labor or those expected to be delivered for maternal or fetal indications before results of conventional testing can be obtained. If a rapid HIV test result is positive, antiretroviral prophylaxis should be offered without waiting for the results of the confirmatory conventional tests.

- Goal of HIV treatment in pregnancy is to prevent vertical transmission primarily by reducing maternal viral load to <1000 copies/mL or preferably below the limit of detection of the assay.

- Rate of perinatal transmission is directly correlated to maternal viral load, but other factors also appear to play a role. Perinatal transmission can occur at any HIV RNA level, including in women with an undetectable viral load.

- All HIV positive women should be recommended a combination antiretroviral therapy (ART) regardless of clinical or immunological diagnosis to maximally suppress viral replication, reduce the risk of perinatal transmission, and minimize the risk of development of resistant virus.

- Plasma HIV-1 RNA levels should be monitored serially, at least initially, and in each trimester to both assess effectiveness of ART and assess options for best mode of delivery.

- Women with a viral load >1000 copies/mL at ≥34–36 weeks gestation should be counseled regarding the benefit of planned cesarean delivery at 38 weeks to reduce the risk of transmission. In addition, intrapartum intravenous Zidovudine should be administered.

- With effective antiretroviral therapy leading to undetectable viral load, planned cesarean delivery for viral load ≥1000, and formula feeding, the risk of perinatal transmission is reduced to <2%.

HISTORIC NOTES

The first report in the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention’s (CDC) Morbidity and Mortality Weekly Report (MMWR), dated June 5, 1981, discussed five young men, all active homosexuals who were treated for biopsy confirmed Pneumocystis carinii pneumonia (PCP) at three different hospitals in Los Angeles. The authors speculated that there was some aspect of a homosexual lifestyle or some disease that was acquired through sexual contact that had a role in these unusual cases [1]. This disease was eventually called the acquired immune deficiency syndrome (AIDS), and human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) was identified as the etiologic agent. In 1983, cases of women who were steady sexual partners of men with AIDS were identified [2].

In 1994, the landmark study conducted by the Pediatric AIDS Clinical Trial group (PACTG-076) concluded that a regimen of antepartum and intrapartum Zidovudine (AZT) administered to the mother and then to the newborn for six weeks resulted in a reduction of maternal–infant transmission of HIV-1 from 25.5% to 8% [2]. This was followed by a dramatic change in the landscape of preventing mother-to-child transmission of HIV. Subsequent studies demonstrated that the use of combination antiretroviral therapy resulted in transmission rates of 1%–2% [3].

DIAGNOSIS

Diagnosis is made when a screening ELISA is positive and is followed by a confirmatory positive Western blot. Regarding rapid testing, the sensitivity and specificity of each of the available rapid testing assays ranges from 95% to 100%, and the positive predictive value depends on the prevalence of disease in the population. In a population with low prevalence of disease, the positive predictive value is low and the false positive rate is high. For example, with a prevalence of disease of ~1% in the population, the positive predictive value of the test may be as low as 60%.

The fourth-generation HIV test begins with testing for antibodies to HIV-1 and HIV-2 as well as for the p24 viral antigen. Samples that are found to be reactive to this initial step are then tested to determine if HIV-1 and HIV-2 antibodies are present. This qualitative immunoassay for HIV antibodies is known as the HIV Multispot. If the Multispot testing for HIV-1 and HIV-2 is negative or indeterminate, a viral nucleic acid amplification test is next performed. If the patient is Multispot negative but viral RNA positive, the patient is considered to have an acute HIV infection. Using the new fourth-generation testing algorithm, HIV can be diagnosed at approximately day 15 of acute infection or 5 days prior to the earliest diagnosis with third-generation antibody testing [4]. The time course for production of HIV RNA, HIV-1 p24 antigen, and HIV antibodies are visually represented in Figure 32.1 [5]. Testing using this algorithm has shown a specificity rate of 99.85% and has shown a reduction of false positives when compared to the previous generation modality [6]. The fourth-generation algorithm provides a more accurate way of screening for acute infection and also makes the clear distinction between infection with HIV-1 and HIV-2.
Unlike the early years of the epidemic, the management of HIV in the United States today is not just about preventing death and treating opportunistic infections, but also about selecting and implementing long-term treatment strategies that will enable patients to live long, healthy, and productive lives as well as about ways to prevent the occurrence of new HIV infections.

In the United States, HIV was first reported in women in 1983 and was found among those who had been steady sexual partners of males with acquired AIDS [2]. Although men still represent the majority of people living with HIV, the number of women increased rapidly, and at the end of 2011, an estimated one in four individuals living with HIV in the United States was female. Minority women bear a disproportionate burden of the disease. At the end of 2010, women accounted for an estimated 9500 or 20% of the approximate 45,000 new infections occurring in the United States. Of these new infections among women, 64% were among black/African Americans compared to 18% white and 15% Hispanic/Latinas compared to their makeup in the entire U.S. population of 12%, 68%, and 14%, respectively, showing how black women are disproportionately affected by the HIV epidemic. Regardless of race or ethnicity, unprotected heterosexual contact is the most common mode of transmission [7].

In the United States, HIV was first reported in women in 1983 and was found among those who had been steady sexual partners of males with acquired AIDS [2]. Although men still represent the majority of people living with HIV, the number of women increased rapidly, and at the end of 2011, an estimated one in four individuals living with HIV in the United States was female. Minority women bear a disproportionate burden of the disease. At the end of 2010, women accounted for an estimated 9500 or 20% of the approximate 45,000 new infections occurring in the United States. Of these new infections among women, 64% were among black/African Americans compared to 18% white and 15% Hispanic/Latinas compared to their makeup in the entire U.S. population of 12%, 68%, and 14%, respectively, showing how black women are disproportionately affected by the HIV epidemic. Regardless of race or ethnicity, unprotected heterosexual contact is the most common mode of transmission [7].

The reduction in perinatal transmission of HIV is one of the most important achievements in HIV medicine; however, perinatal transmissions continue to occur. In a landmark study, AIDS Clinical Trial Group 076 demonstrated that zidovudine monotherapy administered during pregnancy, labor, and delivery and to the newborn reduced the risk of HIV transmission to the infant by 67%, from 25% to 8% [9]. Additional studies have demonstrated the effectiveness of combination therapy, further decreasing the risk of HIV transmission to 1%–2% [10]. The Department of Health and Human Services (DHHS) perinatal guidelines recommend that all HIV-positive women who are pregnant receive...
an effective combination ART regardless of CD4 count to minimize the risk of mother-to-child transmission [10]. In 2010, an estimated 217 children younger than the age of 13 years were diagnosed with HIV in the 46 states with long-term, confidential name-based HIV infection reporting since at least 2007; 162 (75%) of those children were perinatally infected. Missed opportunities included primary prevention strategies for women and girls, lack of prenatal testing, failure to prescribe antiretroviral medication during pregnancy, lack of cesarean section for women with viral loads above 1000 copies/mL, and breast-feeding [11]. In summary, treating women with HIV provides unique opportunities and challenges for providers. Understanding the epidemiologic trends in HIV-infected women in the United States is crucial because these trends are not only complex, but also dynamic.

### PATHOPHYSIOLOGY

HIV primarily infects T lymphocytes that express the CD4 antigen, resulting in a progressive loss of these cells over time and impairment of cellular immunity as well as humoral immunity. When CD4 lymphocytes are sufficiently depleted, there is the progression to AIDS, characterized by the development of opportunistic infections and malignancies.

### CLASSIFICATION

The CDC classification is based on clinical and laboratory evaluations (Table 32.1). There are three clinical categories: asymptomatic (A), symptomatic (B), or an AIDS-defining condition (C); and three ranges of CD4 count: >500 [1], 200–499 [2], <200 cells/mm³. Regardless of symptoms, a CD4 <200 cells/mm³ or the presence of an AIDS-defining illness in an HIV-positive person is an AIDS diagnosis [12].

### RISK FACTORS

Risk of perinatal transmission is closely related to viral load (VL) at the time of delivery [13,14]. Other risk factors include low CD4+ T lymphocyte count, lack of antiretroviral (ARV) therapy, biologic phenotype of the virus, substance abuse, prolonged duration of membrane rupture, HCV coinfection, sexually transmitted infections (STIs), preterm birth, and chorioamnionitis [15,16]. Risk factors for maternal infection include unprotected sexual contact with an infected person, sharing drug needles or syringes, sexual contact with someone whose HIV status is unknown, and transfusions of contaminated blood or blood components. The presence of ulcerating or nonulcerating STIs, including syphilis, genital herpes, chlamydial infection, gonorrhea, or bacterial vaginosis, increases susceptibility to HIV infection during sex with infected partners. There is no evidence that HIV is spread through sweat, tears, urine, feces, or by insect bites, such as mosquito bites.

### COMPLICATIONS

#### Maternal

Increased risks of chorioamnionitis, postpartum endometritis, and wound infection have been reported. The risk of peripartum infection is inversely proportional to the CD4+ count at the time of delivery.

#### Fetal

Possible increased risk of preterm delivery if on a protease inhibitor (PI)-containing regimen, but no increased risk of FGR, stillbirth, or low Apgar scores [17–19].

### PREGNANCY CONSIDERATIONS

#### Effect of pregnancy on disease:

Pregnancy has no clear effect on HIV progression. A transient but clinically insignificant decrease in the CD4+ T lymphocyte count has been described.

**Effect of disease on pregnancy:** Perinatal transmission can occur antepartum (25%–40%), intrapartum (60%–75%), or postpartum with breast-feeding (14%). **Perinatal transmission appears closely related to viral load.** There is a strong correlation between high maternal VL at delivery and risk of transmission, but transmission has occurred at all levels of VL [20]. Transmission rates are about 1.2% on HAART, 10.4% on AZT monotherapy, and 25% on no ARV [11].

### PREGNANCY MANAGEMENT

#### Screening

Regulations and policies about HIV screening in pregnancy vary from state to state. Given the effectiveness of intervention, **standard serologic testing with counseling is recommended for all pregnant women at the initiation of prenatal care** with a screening ELISA, which, if positive, is followed by a confirmatory Western blot or the new approach using a fourth-generation assay. An *opt-out approach* in which the patient is informed that she will be tested for HIV along with other standard prenatal labs unless she declines has been shown in several studies to significantly increase testing rates from less than 40% to 85%–98% [21–24]. Screening should be repeated at 28 to 32 weeks in the case of high-risk behavior, high-prevalence area, or previously declined testing [24]. **Rapid testing** is recommended for previously untested women presenting in labor or those expected to be delivered for maternal or fetal indications before results of conventional testing can be obtained [25,26]. If a rapid HIV test result is positive, ARV prophylaxis should be offered without waiting for the results of the confirmatory conventional tests.

### Table 32.1  Classification for HIV Infection

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CD4 Count</th>
<th>Clinical Categories</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Asymptomatic, Acute (Primary) HIV, or PGL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. ≥500/μL</td>
<td>A1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. &lt;200/μL</td>
<td>A3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Principles

The goal of HIV therapy is to achieve a HIV-1 RNA level <1000 copies/mL or below the limit of detection of the assay. The risk of perinatal transmission can be <2% with effective ART therapy, planned cesarean delivery (CD) as appropriate, and avoidance of breast-feeding. ART therapy is recommended in pregnancy predominantly to decrease maternal VL and thereby decrease the risk of perinatal transmission and to improve maternal health. Combination ART therapy is indicated in pregnancy regardless of clinical or immunological status. When combination ART therapy is not available or the patient chooses not to undertake this therapy, several short-course peripartum drug regimens have been shown to significantly decrease the risk of vertical transmission to ~10%.

Preconception Counseling

Many HIV-positive women enter pregnancy aware of their diagnosis, and more than half of these women enter the first trimester on ART therapy. Preconception counseling should include the following:

- Initiate or modify ART therapy, avoiding potentially teratogenic agents
- Opportunistic infection prophylaxis as indicated by CD4 count
- Appropriate immunizations
- Optimize maternal nutritional status, initiating folic acid supplementation
- Screen for and treat STIs
- Screen for psychological and substance abuse disorders
- Prevent unwanted/unintended pregnancies

Prenatal Care

Care in pregnancy should be multidisciplinary with close collaboration between the obstetrician, maternal-fetal medicine team, and infectious disease specialists. A specialist with experience in the treatment of pregnant women with HIV-1 infection should be involved in the prenatal care.

Initial prenatal visit history

- Complete medical and obstetric/gynecologic history.
- Document history of prior or current ART use, including resistance to regimens.
- Assess the need for prophylaxis against opportunistic infections, such as pneumocystis pneumonia (PCP), toxoplasmosis, or mycobacterium avium complex (MAC).

Physical examination

Complete physical exam at initial visit. During subsequent visits, screen for HIV disease progression. With CD4 <200 cells/mm³, specifically evaluate for thrush, HSV, lymphadenopathy, or a rash.

Laboratory tests

Baseline (and follow-up) laboratory investigations should include the following:

- Hepatitis B surface antigen and antibody, hepatitis B core antibody, hepatitis C antibody.
- CBC with differential, liver, and renal profile.
- VDRL/RPR, gonorrhea, and chlamydia testing. PPD.
- Early diabetes screening of patients with a history of prolonged protease inhibitor (PI) exposure.
- Pap smear (all abnormal Pap smears require colposcopy). CD4 cell count (should be monitored at the initial visit and at least every trimester in pregnancy).
- Plasma HIV RNA levels (should be monitored at the initial visit, 2 to 4 weeks after initiating or changing therapy, monthly until HIV RNA levels are undetectable, and then at about 34 to 36 weeks gestation to make a decision regarding mode of delivery. The VL should decrease by 1 to 2 logs within 4 weeks of starting therapy).
- Resistance testing should be performed prior to starting ART in women who enter pregnancy with a HIV RNA level above the threshold for resistance testing on therapy; in women with suboptimal viral suppression after initiation of therapy; and in women with a persistently detectable plasma VL on therapy, which previously suppressed the virus to below the assay level of detection. Genotyping is preferable to phenotyping because it is less expensive and it has a faster turnaround time and a greater sensitivity for detecting mixtures of wild-type and resistant virus.
- HLA B-5701 testing if abacavir use is anticipated.

Counseling

- Discuss risk of transmission and factors that modify those risks.
- Discuss risk and benefits of ART for both the patient and the fetus.
- Educate on safe sex practices with condoms.

PROPHYLAXIS FOR OPPORTUNISTIC INFECTIONS (TABLE 32.2)

Antiretroviral Therapy

A landmark study, AIDS Clinical Trial Group 076, demonstrated that zidovudine monotherapy administered during pregnancy, labor, and delivery to the newborn reduced the risk of HIV transmission to the infant by 67%, from 25% to 8% [3]. Additional studies have demonstrated the effectiveness of combination therapy, further decreasing the risk of HIV transmission to 1%–2% [20]. The Department of Health and Human Services (DHHS) perinatal guidelines recommend that all HIV-positive women who are pregnant receive effective combination ART regardless of CD4 count to minimize the risk of mother-to-child transmission [27].

The goals of HIV treatment during pregnancy are to maintain the woman’s health, restore her immune system, suppress viral replication, and decrease the risk of perinatal transmission. The choice of preferred ART for the pregnant female differs from the nonpregnant female and is based on evolving experience and information about safety, efficacy, and tolerability in pregnancy (Table 32.3). Women who present for prenatal care on a suppressive regimen should continue that regimen as long as it is tolerated because there is a risk of loss of virologic control when switching regimens, and this may increase risk of perinatal transmission [27]. There are physiologic changes that occur during pregnancy that may alter drug disposition and that could potentially lead to decreased drug exposure. Some of the changes include total body water increase, decreased protein binding, induction of hepatic metabolic pathways, and increased clearance...
of drugs that are renally eliminated [28]. These changes may be associated with incomplete virologic suppression, virologic failure, and/or development of drug resistance, so altered doses of some ART should be considered or careful monitoring with viral load, particularly in the second and third trimesters.

**IMMUNIZATIONS [29]**

Although HIV infection is primarily a disease of cell-mediated immunity, humoral immunity is also impaired in HIV-positive individuals. Serologic response to vaccination may be suboptimal, especially in those with advanced disease. Live virus vaccines have historically been withheld from HIV-positive individuals because of the risk of contracting the disease from the vaccine. Vaccines should be administered early in the course of HIV infection if possible to increase the likelihood of adequate responses and to minimize the risk of disseminated infection from live vaccines in immunocompromised patients.

All patients should receive Prevnar-13, Pneumovax, Hepatitis B vaccine series, and inactivated Influenza vaccine. Patients who are HCV positive should also be offered the Hepatitis A vaccine series.

Tetanus and diphtheria (Td) immunization should be updated. Substitute Tdap once for Td, then Td booster every 10 years.

Inactivated polio vaccine as a primary series or booster should be administered to those at risk of exposure.

If risk of exposure to yellow fever is high and CD4 count is >200, yellow fever vaccine may be administered; however, serologic response may be as low as 35% [27].

Patients who are Rubella nonimmune and have a CD4 count >100 cells/μl for >3 months should be offered vaccination in the postpartum period [30].

**Table 32.2 Prophylaxis for Opportunistic Infections**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infection</th>
<th>Indication</th>
<th>First-Line Tx</th>
<th>Alternate Tx</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pneumocystis jiroveci</td>
<td>CD4 count &lt;200</td>
<td>Trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole (TMP-SMZ) one DS tablet daily</td>
<td>TMP-SMZ one DS tablet 3×/wk or Dapsone 50 mg bid or 100 mg daily</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pneumonia&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>CD4% &lt;14</td>
<td>or Trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole (TMP-SMZ) one SS tablet daily</td>
<td>Dapsone 50 mg po daily + (Pyrimethamine 50 mg + Leucovorin 25 mg) po weekly or Dapsone 200 mg + Pyrimethamine 75 mg + Leucovorin 25 mg po weekly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>History of AIDS-defining illness</td>
<td></td>
<td>Atovaquone 750 mg bid or 1500 mg daily</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>History of oropharyngeal candidiasis</td>
<td></td>
<td>Aerosolized pentamidine 300 mg monthly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>History of Pneumocystis jiroveci pneumonia (secondary prophylaxis)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Toxoplastic encephalitis&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>CD4 &lt;100 cells/μl and Seropositive for T. gondii IgG</td>
<td>Trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole (TMP-SMZ) one DS tablet daily</td>
<td>TMP-SMZ one SS tablet daily</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Dapsone 50 mg po daily + (Pyrimethamine 50 mg + Leucovorin 25 mg) po weekly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Dapsone 200 mg po + leucovorin 25 mg po weekly and pyrimethamine 75 mg weekly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Atovaquone 1500 mg po daily</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Atovaquone 1500 mg + Pyrimethamine 25 mg + Leucovorin 10 mg po daily</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Rifabutin 300 mg po daily or Rifabutin 300 mg po daily + Azithromycin 1200 mg po weekly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Rifampin 600 mg po daily or rifabutin 300 mg po daily for 4 months</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disseminated Mycobacterium avium complex&lt;sup&gt;c&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>CD4 count &lt;50 cells/μl</td>
<td>Azithromycin 1200 mg po/week or Clarithromycin 500 mg bid or Azithromycin 600 mg twice weekly INH sensitive: INH 300 mg po + pyridoxine 50 mg po daily for 9 months or INH 900 mg po twice weekly by DOT + pyridoxine 25 mg po daily for 9 months INH resistant: Rifampin 600 mg po daily or Rifabutin 300 mg po daily for 4 months</td>
<td>Rifabutin 300 mg po daily or Rifabutin 300 mg po daily + Azithromycin 1200 mg po weekly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mycobacterium tuberculosis</td>
<td>PPD ≥5 mm or Prior positive PPD without adequate treatment or Contact with person with active TB regardless of PPD status</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Varicella zoster virus</td>
<td>Varicella nonimmune and exposed to chicken pox or shingles</td>
<td>Varicella zoster immune globulin—5 vials (1.25 mL each) within 48–96 hours of exposure</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<sup>a</sup>Primary prophylaxis should be discontinued after sustained response to ART with a CD4 count >200 cells/μl for >3 months. Secondary prophylaxis should be discontinued if CD4 count increases from <200 cells/μl to >200 cells/μl for >3 months in response to ART.

<sup>b</sup>Discontinue primary prophylaxis after sustained response to ART with CD4 count >200 cells/μl for >3 months. Discontinue secondary prophylaxis when initial therapy completed and asymptomatic with sustained CD4 count >200 cells/μl for >6 months in response to ART.

<sup>c</sup>Discontinue primary prophylaxis after sustained response to ART with CD4 count >100 cells/μl for >3 months.
**ANEUPLOIDY SCREENING**

There is limited evidence on the effect of HIV infection on prenatal aneuploidy screening. Currently, serum screening appears **not affected** sufficiently by HIV infection to alter its accuracy. Routine counseling should occur regarding non-invasive prenatal aneuploidy screening [33] (see Chapter 5 in Obstetric Evidence Based Guidelines).

**ANTEPARTUM TESTING**

Ultrasound evaluation should be performed for the usual obstetric indications including confirmation of gestational age and to assess fetal anatomy [34]. Invasive procedures, such as amniocentesis, chorionic villus sampling, and cordocentesis indicated for diagnostic or therapeutic purposes, may place the fetus at increased risk of transmission of the HIV virus, and appropriate counseling with review of indication for these interventions is recommended [35]. Among women on HAART, no perinatal transmissions have been reported after amniocentesis, but a small risk of transmission cannot be ruled out [35]. If an amniocentesis is planned, it should be performed after initiation of an effective combination ART regimen and when the VL is nondetectable, avoiding traversing the placenta.

Table 32.3 Initial Combination Regimens for Antiretroviral-Naïve Pregnant Women

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Drug</th>
<th>Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Preferred regimens</strong></td>
<td><strong>REGIMENS WITH CLINICAL TRIAL DATA IN ADULTS DEMONSTRATING OPTIMAL EFFICACY AND DURABILITY WITH ACCEPTABLE TOXICITY AND EASE OF USE, PK DATA AVAILABLE IN PREGNANCY, AND NO EVIDENCE TO DATE OF TERATOGENIC EFFECTS OR ESTABLISHED ADVERSE OUTCOMES FOR MOTHER/FETUS</strong> To minimize the risk of resistance, a PI regimen is preferred for women who may stop ART during the postpartum period.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Preferred two-NRTI backbone</strong></td>
<td>Available as FDC. Can be administered once daily. ABC <strong>should not be used</strong> in patients who test positive for HLA-B*5701 because of the risk of hypersensitivity reaction. ABC/3TC with ATV/r or with EFV is not recommended if pretreatment HIV RNA &gt;100,000 copies/mL.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ABC/3TC</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TDF/FTC or 3TC</td>
<td>TDF/FTC available as FDC. Either TDF/FTC or TDF and 3TC can be administered once daily. TDF has potential renal toxicity; thus TDF-based dual NRTI combinations should be used with caution in patients with renal insufficiency.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ZDV/3TC</td>
<td>Available as FDC. NRTI combination with most experience for use in pregnancy but has disadvantages of requirement for twice-daily administration and increased potential for hematologic toxicities.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Preferred PI regimens</strong></td>
<td>Once daily administration. Extensive experience in pregnancy. Maternal hyperbilirubinemia.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ATV/r plus a preferred two-NRTI backbone</td>
<td>Better tolerated than LPV/r. PK data available. Increasing experience with use in pregnancy. Must be used twice daily during pregnancy.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DRV/r plus a preferred two-NRTI backbone</td>
<td>PK data available and increasing experience in pregnancy. Rapid viral load reduction. Useful when drug interactions with PI-based regimens are a concern. Twice-daily dosing required.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Preferred integrase inhibitor regimen</strong></td>
<td><strong>PK DATA AVAILABLE IN PREGNANCY, AND NO EVIDENCE TO DATE OF TERATOGENIC EFFECTS OR ESTABLISHED ADVERSE OUTCOMES FOR MOTHER/FETUS</strong> To minimize the risk of resistance, a PI regimen is preferred for women who may stop ART during the postpartum period.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EFV plus a preferred two-NRTI backbone</td>
<td>Concern because of birth effects seen in primate study; risk in humans is unclear. Postpartum contraception must be ensured. Preferred regimen in women who require coadministration of drugs with significant interactions with PIs or the convenience of coformulated, single tablet, once-daily regimen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Note: May be initiated <strong>after the first 8 weeks of pregnancy.</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Preferred NNRTI regimen</strong></td>
<td><strong>TIME OF INITIATION</strong> Postpartum contraception must be ensured. Preferred regimens in women who require coadministration of drugs with significant interactions with PIs or the convenience of coformulated, single tablet, once-daily regimen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RAL plus a preferred two-NRTI backbone</td>
<td>PK data available and increasing experience in pregnancy. Rapid viral load reduction. Useful when drug interactions with PI-based regimens are a concern. Twice-daily dosing required.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


**Abbreviations:** 3TC, lamivudine; ABC, abacavir; ART, antiretroviral therapy; ARV, antiretroviral; ATV/r, atazanavir/ritonavir; CD4, CD4 T lymphocyte cell; DRV/r, darunavir/ritonavir; EFV, efavirenz; FDC, fixed-dose combination; FTC, emtricitabine; NNRTI, non-nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitor; NRTI, nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitor; PI, protease inhibitor; PK, pharmacokinetic; RAL, raltegravir; RTV, ritonavir; TDF, tenofovir disoproxil fumarate; ZDV, zidovudine.

**ANEUPLOIDY SCREENING**

Varicella vaccine is indicated in HIV-positive adults with a CD4 cell count ≥200 cells/ul in the postpartum period for varicella nonimmune women.

BCG vaccine should **not** be administered to HIV-infected women or their newborns—even if the risk of acquiring TB is high. Disseminated BCG has been reported after immunization [31,32].

**PRETERM PREMATURE RUPTURE OF MEMBRANES**

The risks of prematurity-related morbidity/mortality must be balanced against the risk of vertical transmission with prolonged rupture of membranes. If PPROM occurs prior to 32 weeks, expectant management with administration of corticosteroids for fetal maturity and antibiotics for latency are recommended. At a gestational age ≥32 weeks, delivery without the benefit of corticosteroids should be considered if appropriate support is immediately available to care for the premature infant. Consultation with a neonatologist should be sought if considering delivery prior to 32 weeks without the benefit of steroids as prognosis is dependent on resources available for care of the preterm infant [16].
DELIVERY AND INTRAPARTUM CARE
Use the most recent VL level to counsel regarding mode of delivery. Risk of perinatal transmission with persistently undetectable VL on antiretroviral therapy is <2% regardless of mode of delivery. Honor the woman's decision regarding mode of delivery. Women who have a viral load greater than 1000 copies/mL at the time of delivery should undergo a cesarean delivery scheduled at 38 weeks gestation with the addition of preoperative intravenous zidovudine to maximize prevention of perinatal transmission. It remains unclear how soon after the onset of labor or rupture of membranes that the benefit of cesarean delivery is lost; the delivery plan in these situations should be individualized. For women who have viral loads below the threshold of 1000 copies/mL, there is no proven added benefit to a cesarean section, and in this situation, cesarean should be performed only for standard obstetrical indications. ART should be continued during labor [27]. The benefits of intrapartum AZT in this situation are not clear, and the recommendation is not to administer it.

Maintain universal body fluid precautions for all deliveries. Inform pediatrician of mother's status. Bulb suction for the baby at delivery and washing off maternal secretions as soon as possible after birth are suggested.

Induction of labor should be reserved for obstetric indications. Admit in early labor and augment labor to expedite delivery. Continue the oral ART regimen in labor; administer intravenous AZT in labor with loading and maintenance dosing continuously until the umbilical cord is clamped if the viral load is >1000 copies/mL at or near delivery. Continue ART therapy as usual and initiate AZT infusion for 3 hours prior to CD and continue until cord clamped. Delay amniotomy; however, it is not contraindicated and may be used to augment labor later in the active phase. Avoid invasive fetal monitoring, intrauterine pressure catheter (IUPC), fetal scalp electrode (FSE), fetal scalp blood sampling (FSBS), episiotomy, forceps, or vacuum delivery [27].

BREAST-FEEDING
Women with HIV infection who have access to an adequate supply of infant formula or other suitable source of nutrition should not breast-feed [36]. If access to an alternate nutrition source is not sufficient to completely replace breast-feeding, then exclusive breast-feeding is preferable to alternating breast-feeding/formula-feeding regimens. Any woman considering breast-feeding should be aware of her HIV status. A decision not to breast-feed may raise issues regarding confidentiality of a mothers' HIV diagnosis and requires sensitivity and supportive interventions [37,38].

MATERNAL POSTPARTUM CARE
Maternal postpartum care is essential to establish ongoing primary care for HIV disease. Long-term planning is essential to ensure that the woman does not fall out of the health care system. Following delivery, considerations regarding continuation of the ART regimen for maternal therapeutic indications are the same as for nonpregnant individuals. The pros and cons of continuing versus discontinuing therapy postpartum should be discussed with the woman so that she can make an educated decision prior to delivery regarding postpartum ART use. In general, once ART is commenced, it is continued for lifetime.

Family planning is critical to the prevention of perinatal transmission. Condom use should be strongly encouraged. Monitor for gynecological manifestations associated with disease progression.

Rubella vaccines should be administered postpartum to those women with CD4 count >200 [30].

FOLLOW-UP OF INFANTS
The baby should be bathed soon after delivery to remove potentially infectious maternal secretions. All HIV-exposed infants should receive postpartum ART drugs to reduce perinatal transmission of HIV. Infant prophylaxis should be initiated as soon as possible postdelivery. HIV diagnostic testing to establish or rule out HIV infection as early as possible is suggested. Initiate PCP prophylaxis at six weeks (until there are two consecutive negative HIV results). Long-term follow-up of HIV- and ARV-exposed infants is important [27].

DIAGNOSIS OF HIV INFECTION IN THE INFANT
Early diagnosis of HIV infection is crucial in infants; however, establishing the diagnosis is complicated by the presence of transplacentally acquired maternal antibodies, which make serological testing unreliable. The mean time to clear maternal antibodies is 10.3 months, but it can take up to 18 months [39]. For this reason, early pediatric diagnosis relies on identification of the virus usually via HIV-1 DNA or RNA PCR (polymerase chain reaction) techniques. The former measures integrated virus in the host genome, and the latter measures circulating plasma virus. HIV-1 coculture is not routinely performed because of cost and time although it is also a reliable diagnostic method. HIV viral load testing should be performed at a minimum age of 14 to 21 days, 1 to 2 months, and 4 to 6 months after birth. Some experts also test at birth, especially if there is poor control in pregnancy. HIV may be presumptively excluded with two or more negative PCR tests with one at ≥14 days and another at ≥1 month of age. Many experts confirm HIV-negative status with an HIV antibody test at 12 to 18 months [40].

ACUTE HIV INFECTION
Primary or acute HIV infection in pregnancy is associated with an increased risk of perinatal transmission. When acute retroviral syndrome is suspected in pregnancy or during breast-feeding, a plasma HIV RNA test should be performed, which is usually >10,000,000 copies/mL with a negative HIV antibody test [41]. All pregnant women with acute or recent HIV infection should start ART as soon as possible to prevent perinatal transmission aiming to suppress the VL to undetectable. Resistance testing should be performed but initiation should not be delayed pending the results. Because clinically significant resistance to protease inhibitors (PI) is less common than resistance to non-nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitor (NNRTI) in naïve patients, a Ritonavir-boosted PI-based regimen should be used if initiated prior to resistance testing results becoming available.

REFERENCES


31. CDC. Division of Tuberculosis Elimination. Fact Sheet BCG vaccine. 2005. [Guideline]


Gonorrhea

A. Marie O’Neill

KEY POINTS

• Gonorrhea has been associated with an increased risk of spontaneous abortion, preterm birth, early rupture of fetal membranes, chorioamnionitis, and perinatal mortality as well as neonatal conjunctivitis leading to blindness, increased HIV transmission, and postpartum infection.
• Prevention strategies shown to be effective include use of condoms, screening high-risk populations, early diagnosis and treatment, and partner notification and treatment without clinical assessment.
• There is insufficient evidence to recommend screening of low-risk pregnant women.
• Pregnant women at high risk for gonorrhea are those of age <25 years, with prior sexually transmitted infection (STI), having multiple sexual partners, having a partner with a past history of any sexually transmitted infections (STI), sex work, drug use, or inconsistent condom use. These women should be screened in pregnancy for gonorrhea.
• Definitive diagnosis requires isolation by culture or positive nucleic acid amplification test.
• Because of the potential for concomitant infection, testing for Chlamydia trachomatis, syphilis, HIV, and hepatitis B is recommended.
• First-line treatment for gonorrhea in pregnancy in the United States and most of Western Europe is ceftriaxone 250 mg IM plus a single dose of azithromycin 1 g orally. Due to increasing drug resistance, single agent therapy is no longer considered adequate.
• Patients presenting with preterm premature rupture of membranes and having active gonorrheal infection can be managed expectantly as long as prompt treatment for gonorrhea is instituted.
• The emergence of multidrug-resistant organisms is causing a worldwide crisis in the treatment of gonorrhea and of all STIs. The prevalence of multidrug-resistant gonorrhea is greatest in low- and middle-income countries but is increasing in all countries. Overuse and inappropriate use of antibiotics in health care and farming is a major and preventable contributor to the emergence of drug-resistant organisms. Responsible use of antibiotics must become a priority for all health care professionals.

ETIOLOGY

Neisseria gonorrhoeae is a gram-negative diplococcus that primarily infects the nonciliated, columnar, or cuboidal epithelium of the endocervix, urethra, rectum, or pharynx. Gonococci are obligate human pathogens and can survive only briefly outside of the human reservoir.

PATHOPHYSIOLOGY/TRANSMISSION

N. gonorrhoeae is easily transmitted during oral, vaginal, or anal sex. The transmission rate from male to female during vaginal intercourse is approximately 50% per contact, rising to 90% after three exposures [5,6]. The incubation period for N. gonorrhoeae is on average 2 to 7 days but may vary between 1 and 14 days. Vertical transmission to the infant occurs in 30% to 47% cases if cervical infection is present at the time of delivery. The eye is the most common site of neonatal infection, but disseminated gonococcal infection or gonococcal arthritis may also occur in the newborn [7,8]. The vast majority of vertical transmission occurs during vaginal delivery; however, transmission has been reported after cesarean delivery in patients with ruptured membranes.

SYMPTOMS

The clinical manifestations of gonorrhea are unchanged in pregnant women except that pelvic inflammatory disease (PID) and perihepatitis are uncommon after the first trimester. Cervical infection is asymptomatic in up to 80% of women [9]. When symptoms are present, they include a purulent or mucopurulent cervical exudate, edema, and easily induced cervical or endocervical bleeding. Urethral infection is present in 70% to 90% of women who have gonococcal

EPIDEMIOLOGY/INCIDENCE

Worldwide, it is estimated that 106.1 million new cases of gonorrhea occur annually [1]. The highest incidences of gonorrhea and its complications occur in developing countries. As a result of a national gonorrhea control program implemented in the United States in the 1970s, the national rate of gonorrheal infection has decreased >75% over the last three decades. The number of cases reported in the United States reached a low of 301,174 cases, or 99.1/100,000; however, the rate has increased slightly each year since. In 2013, there were 333,004 cases of gonorrhea reported to the Centers for Disease Control (CDC) with approximately 44,000 of these infections occurring in pregnant women. The CDC estimated that fewer than half of all infections are reported, and the true rate is estimated to be 820,000 cases annually [2]. The incidence is substantially lower in all countries of Western Europe than in the United States, but high and rising rates have been documented in Eastern Europe. Gonorrhea disproportionally affects African-Americans with the reported rate of infection in this population being 12.4 times greater than that in whites; however, as a result of both declining rates of infection in blacks and increasing rates in whites, this disparity is declining [2,3]. The median prevalence of gonorrhea in unselected populations of pregnant women has been estimated to be 10% in Africa, 5% in Latin America, and 4% in Asia [4].
cervicitis—most will present with dysuria [9,10]. *N. gonorrhoae* does not cause vaginitis; however, coinfection with bacterial vaginosis, trichomonas, or *C. trachomatis* is common and often causes abnormal vaginal discharge. Pharyngeal infection is typically asymptomatic but may cause exudative pharyngitis and cervical lymphadenopathy. This occurs in 10% to 20% of women with cervical gonorrhea [11,12]. Rectal infection is typically asymptomatic but may cause anal pruritus; mucopurulent discharge; and sometimes pain, tenesmus, and bleeding. This occurs in about 40% of women with cervical gonorrhea [9]. Disseminated gonococcal infection occurs in 0.5% to 3% of infected individuals and usually causes septic arthritis accompanied by a rash of hemorrhagic papules and pustules [13]. There are conflicting reports as to whether pregnancy is a risk factor for disseminated infection; however, a recent publication reports an incidence of 0.04% to 0.09% in pregnancy [14].

**COMPLICATIONS**

- Gonorrhea has been associated with an increased risk of spontaneous abortion, preterm birth, early rupture of fetal membranes, chorioamnionitis, and perinatal mortality. It is not clear if these complications are a direct result of gonococcal infection or if infection is a marker for other high-risk factors [15–18].
- Vertical transmission to the infant can cause conjunctivitis, which if left untreated may result in blindness. Prior to routine prophylaxis of all infants at the time of birth, approximately 25% of congenital blindness in the United States was caused by gonorrheal conjunctivitis, and it remains a major cause of congenital blindness in underdeveloped countries [7,8].
- Epidemiologic and biologic studies provide strong evidence that gonococcal infections facilitate the transmission of HIV infection, which has major implications for the pregnancy [18,19].
- Women with active cervical infection at the time of delivery are at increased risk for postpartum infection [15,17].

**MANAGEMENT**

**Prevention**

Condoms, when used correctly and consistently, provide a high degree of protection from gonorrheal infection as well as from other STIs [20,21]. Other important practices for prevention of gonorrhea are screening to identify asymptomatic cases in high-risk populations, early diagnosis and treatment, and partner notification and treatment. Several recent randomized trials reported a reduction in the rate of reinfection with an expedited approach to partner therapy (EPT) whereby partners are treated without a clinical assessment. In this approach, the patient delivers either medication or prescriptions to their partner [22–25]. The legal status of such an approach varies in the United States with some states prohibiting EPT. Legal status should be verified prior to providing EPT. Another complicating factor in providing EPT is the most recent recommendation of combination intramuscular and oral medications as first-line treatment for uncomplicated gonorrhea in the United States. Evaluation of all sex partners from the previous 60 days and treatment with the recommended regimen (ceftriaxone 250 mg IM plus a single dose of azithromycin 1 g orally) is the best course of action. However, if this is not possible, EPT with oral cefixime 400 mg and azithromycin 1 g should be considered as not treating partners is significantly more harmful than is the use of oral EPT for gonorrhea [24,25].

**Screening (Table 33.1) [26–31]**

There is no evidence that screening low-risk pregnant women is beneficial. Screening pregnant women at high risk for gonorrhea may prevent other complications associated with gonococcal infection during pregnancy. Risk factors include age <25, prior STI, multiple sexual partners, having a partner with a past history of any STI, sex work, drug use, or inconsistent condom use. Because *N. gonorrhoae* can cause infection at a variety of body sites, the decision of which sites to test should be guided by sexual history and physical exam findings.

**Diagnosis (Table 33.1) [26–31]**

Isolation of *N. gonorrhoeae* by culture is the historic mainstay of gonorrhea diagnosis; however, this method is somewhat limited by the difficulty of maintaining viability of organisms during transport and storage from a variety of settings in which screening programs are established and the time delay from specimen collection to result reporting [5,26]. In most laboratories, culture has been replaced by nucleic acid amplification tests (NAATs), including ligase (LCR), polymerase chain reaction (PCR), transcription-mediated amplification (TMA), and strand-displacement amplification (SDA). The sensitivity, specificity, and ease of specimen collection and transport with NAAT technology is better than that of any other test available, and these tests have been shown to be cost-effective in preventing sequelae due to *N. gonorrhoeae* infection [26]. A significant limitation of these tests is the risk of specimen contamination—the presence of a single viable or nonviable organism will lead to a positive test result; therefore, workflow and lab cleaning procedures are of extreme importance [31]. Non-NAAT testing utilizing DNA probes is available but is NOT recommended due to significantly lower sensitivity [30]. For NAAT testing, a self-collected or clinician-collected vaginal swab is the preferred specimen type; however, a first catch voided urine or endocervical swab is acceptable for most available assays—confirm specimen requirements for each assay used [30]. NAAT tests are not FDA approved for use on rectal, pharyngeal, or conjunctival specimens; however, most labs have developed performance specifications for using NAATs on these specimens, and they are currently the recommended testing method for rectal and oropharyngeal specimens with the caveat that the testing lab must be in compliance with the Clinical Laboratory Improvement Amendments (CLIA) for test modifications [28–30]. Conjunctival specimens should be cultured. Some assays can detect *C. trachomatis* or *N. gonorrhoeae* in a single specimen. Several of these combined assays do not differentiate between the two organisms, so a positive result should be followed by tests for each organism to obtain an organism-specific result [31]. Clinicians who perform STI screening tests should be aware of the prevalence of STIs in the population being screened and have a conceptual understanding of positive predictive value and the impact of screening low-risk individuals with a test that has limited specificity. The positive predictive value of nucleic acid-based tests is <60% when
the prevalence of infection in the population is <1%. **Routine test of cure is not recommended except in cases in which an alternate treatment is used to treat pharyngeal infections; then a test of cure by either culture or NAAT is recommended in 14 days** [31,32]. Because of the continued increase in antibiotic-resistant strains, **suspected treatment failures must be evaluated with culture rather than a NAAT so that antibiotic sensitivity can be evaluated** [31,32].

### Treatment

Due to increasing multidrug resistance, awareness of local antimicrobial resistance data is of utmost importance in the treatment of gonorrhea. The Gonococcal Isolate Surveillance Project (GISP) of the CDC and the European Gonococcal Antimicrobial Surveillance Programme (Euro-GASP) have reported resistance to penicillins, tetracyclines, and fluoroquinolones. From 2006 to 2011, the minimum concentrations of cefixime needed to inhibit in vitro growth of the *N. gonorrhoeae* strains circulating in the United States and many other countries increased, suggesting that the susceptibility may be decreasing. In addition, treatment failures with cefixime or other oral cephalosporins have been reported in Asia, Europe, South Africa, and Canada [32–37].

**Current CDC recommendations for treatment are presented in Table 33.2** [32,33]. Currently, only one regimen consisting of dual treatment with ceftriaxone and azithromycin is recommended for treatment of gonorrhea in the United States, but as resistance patterns change, so too will treatment recommendations. There are no published trials evaluating

| NAAT | 96.7% compared to culture | 98% | High sensitivity  
Is the current gold standard for screening and diagnosis  
Approved for testing on voided urine  
Approved for testing on liquid-based pap medium  
Rapid results  
Specimen less affected by handling and transport  
Currently the preferred testing method for rectal and oropharyngeal specimens if lab is CLIA compliant | Most expensive option  
No isolate preserved for forensics or sensitivity testing  
Highest false-positive rate when persons at low risk are tested  
Limited to cervical or urine specimens  
Nonviable organisms or contaminants will give false-positive result |
|---|---|---|---|
| Culture | 80%–90% | 100% | Can obtain specimen from any potentially infected site  
Preserve and isolate for antimicrobial sensitivity testing and forensics | Organism is especially fastidious—can be difficult to grow in culture  
Overgrowth of contaminating microorganisms can give a false negative result  
Organism can be rendered nonviable during transport if incorrect media used or delay in transport  
48–72 hr to complete  
Least sensitive/specific |
| Gram stain | 40%–60% compared to culture | 70%–90% | Rapid results  
Negative predictive value is 99%–100%  
In setting of limited resources can be used for screening with follow-up testing of screen positives | Higher false negative rate results in more failure to treat |
| Non-NAAT | 92.1% compared to culture | 99% | Inexpensive  
Rapid results  
Specimen less affected by handling and transport | Nonviable organisms or contaminants will give false-positive result  
Limited to cervical specimens  
NOT RECOMMENDED |

**Table 33.1** Screening and Diagnostic Tests for Gonorrhea


**Abbreviation**: NAAT, nucleic acid amplification test.
this regimen in a pregnant population; however, efficacy of cefoxitin in a pregnant population has previously been demonstrated [38–40]. Dual therapy using two antimicrobials with different mechanisms of action (e.g., a cephalosporin plus azithromycin) is expected to improve treatment efficacy and potentially slow the emergence and spread of resistance to cefoxitin. Patients infected with N. gonorrhoeae are frequently coinfected with C. trachomatis. Of women who have endocervical gonorrhea, 35% to 50% are coinfected with C. trachomatis, so there is a longstanding recommendation that persons treated for gonococcal infection also be treated with a regimen that is effective against uncomplicated genital C. trachomatis infection, further supporting the use of dual therapy that includes azithromycin [32,33]. Patients should be advised to abstain from sexual activity for 7 days after treatment and until all partners are adequately treated and complete 7 days of abstinence to prevent transmission and reinfection.

Allergic reactions to first-generation cephalosporins occur in only <2.5% of persons with a history of penicillin allergy and are uncommon with third-generation cephalosporins (e.g., ceftriaxone and cefixime). Use of ceftriaxone or cefixime is contraindicated in persons with a history of an IgE-mediated penicillin allergy (e.g., anaphylaxis, Stevens-Johnson syndrome, and toxic epidermal necrolysis). Data have demonstrated [38–40]. Dual therapy using two antimicrobials with different mechanisms of action (e.g., a cephalosporin plus azithromycin) is expected to improve treatment efficacy and potentially slow the emergence and spread of resistance to cefoxitin. Patients infected with N. gonorrhoeae are frequently coinfected with C. trachomatis. Of women who have endocervical gonorrhea, 35% to 50% are coinfected with C. trachomatis, so there is a longstanding recommendation that persons treated for gonococcal infection also be treated with a regimen that is effective against uncomplicated genital C. trachomatis infection, further supporting the use of dual therapy that includes azithromycin [32,33]. Patients should be advised to abstain from sexual activity for 7 days after treatment and until all partners are adequately treated and complete 7 days of abstinence to prevent transmission and reinfection.

Allergic reactions to first-generation cephalosporins occur in only <2.5% of persons with a history of penicillin allergy and are uncommon with third-generation cephalosporins (e.g., ceftriaxone and cefixime). Use of ceftriaxone or cefixime is contraindicated in persons with a history of an IgE-mediated penicillin allergy (e.g., anaphylaxis, Stevens-Johnson syndrome, and toxic epidermal necrolysis). Data are limited regarding alternative regimens for treating gonorrhea among persons who have either a cephalosporin or IgE-mediated penicillin allergy. Spectinomycin can be considered for treatment of urogenital and anorectal gonorrhoea; however, it is not widely available. An infectious disease specialist should be consulted for advice on treating persons with cephalosporin or IgE-mediated penicillin allergy [41,42]. Updates can be found at http://www.cdc.gov/STD/treatment/ [33].

For uncomplicated gonococcal infection treated with the recommended regimen, a test of cure is not necessary. However, if alternate treatment regimens are used, consider performing a test of cure with either a NAAT or culture two weeks after completing the treatment. If a patient fails the recommended treatment regimen, a culture should be obtained for antimicrobial susceptibility testing. Treatment is considered to have failed if the patient reports compliance with medication regimen, simultaneous treatment of her partner, and no sexual activity without barrier protection after completing treatment. It is difficult to exclude reinfection as the cause of a positive result on repeat testing. In the United States, clinicians should contact their local or state health department or the CDC for guidance and assistance in follow-up of these patients as part of the ongoing GISP. In European countries, the European Centre for Disease Prevention and Control (ECDC) should be made aware of apparent treatment failures [34,35].

Patients presenting with preterm premature rupture of membranes who are found to have active gonorrheal infection can be managed expectantly as long as treatment for gonorrhea is initiated promptly [38].

Because of the potential for concomitant infection, testing for C. trachomatis, syphilis, HIV, and hepatitis B is recommended.

**REFERENCES**


Chlamydia
Rebecca J. Mercier

KEY POINTS

• Untreated maternal genital Chlamydia trachomatis has been associated with increased preterm premature rupture of membranes, preterm birth, low birth weight, and decreased perinatal survival.

• Neonatal infection is associated with neonatal conjunctivitis and pneumonia.

• Prevention strategies shown to be effective include condoms, screening to identify asymptomatic cases in high-risk populations, early diagnosis and treatment, and partner notification and treatment without a clinical assessment.

• Screening and treatment of women at risk for chlamydial infection improves pregnancy outcome.

• Pregnant women with risk factors should undergo screening: age <25 years (strongest risk factor), multiple sex partners, new partner within last 3 months, single marital status, inconsistent use of barrier contraception, previous or concurrent sexually transmitted infection (STI), vaginal discharge, mucopurulent cervicitis, friable cervix, or signs of cervicitis on physical examination.

• There is insufficient evidence to recommend for or against routine screening of asymptomatic, low-risk pregnant women aged 26 years and older for chlamydial infection although several national organizations, including the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (ACOG) and the Centers for Disease Control (CDC), do recommend universal screening in pregnancy.

• A nucleic acid amplification (NAAT) (e.g., LCR or PCR) screening test, confirmed by another NAAT test, achieves highest predictive accuracy for the diagnosis of maternal genital chlamydial infection and is therefore the gold standard.

• Azythromycin 1 g orally as a single dose, amoxicillin, and erythromycin (in order of preference) are all accepted treatments of maternal genital chlamydial infection. Partner notification and treatment without a clinical assessment increases the rates of partner treatment and decreases the rates of maternal reinfection for various STIs and is therefore supported.

• A test of cure approximately three weeks after completion of therapy with a recommended regimen and repeat testing in the third trimester as well as testing for N. gonorrhea, syphilis, HIV, and hepatitis B are recommended for those women with positive testing earlier in pregnancy.

BACKGROUND

The major sexually transmitted diseases caused by C. trachomatis are cervicitis, urethritis, proctitis, and lymphogranuloma. Chlamydia trachomatis is also a significant pathogen causing conjunctivitis in both the newborn and in sexually active adolescents and adults.

EPIDEMIOLOGY/INCIDENCE

Worldwide it is estimated that more than 105.7 million chlamydial infections occur annually with approximately half of those in women; at any given time, 100.4 million adults are infected [1]. The incidence of chlamydial infections in the United States and worldwide continues to rise annually. In 2013, a total of 1,401,906 chlamydial infections were reported to the Centers for Disease Control (CDC) in the United States; more than 900,000 of these cases were among females, and approximately 200,000 of these occur in pregnant women [2]. Higher rates among women compared to men likely reflects more frequent screening, and the increase in the number of cases reported annually is thought to be due in part to expansion of screening programs for at-risk women.

The age-specific rate for chlamydial infection is highest in the 15- to 24-year-old age category. The rate of chlamydia in African-American females in the United States is 6.4 times higher than the rate among white females. Estimates of the prevalence of chlamydia in pregnancy in the United States vary widely, ranging from 2.8% to 19% with the highest prevalence tending to be found in urban populations [3,4]. The prevalence of chlamydia varies significantly across the world. The rates of genital C. trachomatis infection in pregnant women are shown in Table 34.1 [5].

Ocular trachoma, a chronic keratoconjunctivitis caused by C. trachomatis, is rare in the developed world, but worldwide it is estimated that 7 to 9 million people are blind as a result of this condition [6].

LGV occurs sporadically in developed countries but is endemic in Africa, India, Southeast Asia, South America, and the Caribbean. The WHO and several partner organizations have initiated a program for global elimination of ocular trachoma as a disease of public health importance by the year 2020. Infection with C. trachomatis confers little protection against reinfection, and the limited protection that is conferred is short lived.

SYMPTOMS

C. trachomatis infections can be divided into four clinical categories:

• Classic ocular trachoma
• Other ocular and genital diseases in adults
• LGV
• Perinatal infection—primarily conjunctivitis and pneumonia

In pregnant women, genital infection including LGV and conjunctivitis are the most clinically significant.
Table 34.1  The Rates of Chlamydial Infection in Pregnant Women

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Country</th>
<th>Rate</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>United States</td>
<td>5%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Italy</td>
<td>2.7%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Iceland</td>
<td>8%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brazil</td>
<td>2.1%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thailand</td>
<td>5.7%</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


Maternal Genital Infection

The clinical manifestations of C. trachomatis are unchanged in pregnant women except that pelvic inflammatory disease and perihepatitis are uncommon after the first trimester. About 70% to 90% of women with cervical or urethral C. trachomatis infection are asymptomatic.

Cervicitis/Urethritis

Mucopurulent cervicitis that may be perceived as vaginal discharge, cervical edema and friability, dysuria if urethritis present, and low abdominal pain if upper genital tract infection present.

Proctitis/Proctocolitis

Results from anal intercourse or secondary spread of secretions from the cervix.

- Serovars D through K—anal pruritus and a mucous rectal discharge that may become mucopurulent. The infection remains superficial, is limited to the rectum, and closely resembles gonococcal proctitis. Infection is often asymptomatic.
- LGV strains—rectal pain, tenesmus, rectal bleeding, and fever. The disease extends into the colon. The rectal and colonic mucosa become ulcerated, and a granulomatous inflammatory process occurs in the bowel wall with both noncaseating granulomas and crypt abscesses. Sinus tract formation can lead to rectovaginal fistulas in women.

Chlamydial Conjunctivitis

Chlamydia is the most common cause of chronic follicular conjunctivitis. Common manifestations are a unilateral or bilateral asymmetric conjunctivitis associated with moderate hyperemia and mucopurulent discharge.

LGV

Often a difficult diagnosis to make because it is not thought of in the differential.

- The first stage is the formation of a primary lesion—a small papule or herpetiform ulcer—usually on genital mucosa or adjacent skin and causes little or no symptoms.
- The secondary stage occurs days to weeks later and is characterized by painful inguinal lymphadenopathy and systemic symptoms.
- The third stage manifests as hypertrophic chronic granulomatous enlargement with ulceration of the external genitalia. Lymphatic obstruction may also lead to elephantiasis of the genitalia.

PATHOPHYSIOLOGY/ETIOLOGY

C. trachomatis is an obligate intracellular pathogen that exhibits morphologic and structural similarities to gram-negative bacteria. The organism has a unique life cycle that includes an extracellular infectious form and an intracellular replicative form. The target cells of C. trachomatis are the squamocolumnar epithelial cells of the endocervix and upper genital tract, the conjunctiva, urethra, and rectum.

Target cells of the trachoma biovar of C. trachomatis are the squamocolumnar epithelial cells of the endocervix and upper genital tract, conjunctiva, urethra, and rectum. LGV biovar of C. trachomatis penetrates breaks in the skin or infects epithelial cells of the mucous membranes of the genital tract or rectum. It is then carried by lymphatic drainage to the regional lymph nodes, where it multiplies inside mononuclear phagocytes. C. trachomatis serovars D through K cause conjunctivitis in neonates as well as in adults. The incubation for C. trachomatis is variable depending on the type of infection but in general is 7 to 21 days.

TRANSMISSION

- C. trachomatis is readily transmitted during vaginal, oral, or anal sex, and mother-to-infant transmission commonly occurs at delivery.
- The risk of acquisition of C. trachomatis with a single episode of sexual intercourse with an infected partner is not known. However, it appears to be substantially less than that for Neisseria gonorrhoeae [7].
- Between 22% and 44% of infants born to infected women develop neonatal conjunctivitis [8].
- Between 11% and 20% of infants born to infected mothers develop pneumonia caused by C. trachomatis [9].

COMPLICATIONS/RISKS

Untreated maternal genital C. trachomatis has been associated to be an independent risk factor for the statistically significant increase in preterm premature rupture of membranes, preterm birth, low birth weight, and decreased perinatal survival when compared to either treated women or controls without the infection [10]. Successful treatment is therefore associated with prevention of premature rupture of membranes and small-for-gestational-age infants [11]. Treatment early in pregnancy with sustained eradication is associated with better outcomes compared to diagnosis and treatment later in pregnancy [12]. Neonatal infection acquired from an infected maternal genital tract at the time of delivery is associated with neonatal conjunctivitis and pneumonia.

MANAGEMENT

Prevention

Condoms, when used correctly and consistently, provide a high degree of protection from chlamydia and other STIs [13]. Other important practices for prevention of chlamydia are screening to identify asymptomatic cases in high-risk populations, early diagnosis and treatment, and partner notification and treatment. Expedited partner treatment (EPT) is an approach to therapy with which the patient delivers either medication or prescriptions to their partner without requiring the partner to present for clinical assessment. EPT is known to increase the rates of partner treatment and
to decrease the rates of maternal reinfection for various STIs [14,15]; the impact on specifically chlamydial reinfection is uncertain [16–18]. ACOG supports the provision of EPT for all STIs [19]. In the United States, EPT is explicitly permissible in 38 states, is potentially allowable in eight states, and is illegal in four states (Florida, Kentucky, Ohio, and West Virginia) [20].

**Screening**

There is no trial to assess the efficacy of universal or risk-based screening for chlamydial genital infection in pregnancy. The Canadian Task Force, the CDC, the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (ACOG), and the American Academy of Pediatrics (AAP) recommend that all pregnant women be screened for chlamydial infection at the first prenatal visit with repeat testing in the third trimester for women age <25 or with risk factors for infection [21–23]. The U.S. Preventative Services Task Force recommends screening only pregnant women aged 24 and younger and those over age 24 who have risk factors for infection [24]. Risk factors for acquiring chlamydial infection (extrapolated mainly from nonpregnant studies) are age <25 years (strongest risk factor), multiple sex partners, new partner within last 3 months, single marital status, inconsistent use of barrier contraception, previous or concurrent STI, vaginal discharge, mucopurulent cervicitis, friable cervix, and cervical ectopy.

**Diagnosis**

A nucleic acid amplification (NAAT) (e.g., ligase chain reaction [LCR] or polymerase chain reaction [PCR]) screening test, confirmed by another NAAT test, achieves highest predictive accuracy for the diagnosis of maternal genital chlamydial infection [25,26]. Therefore, NAAT testing is the gold standard for the diagnosis of maternal genital chlamydial infection.

- **Anti-Chlamydia IgM** is uncommon in adults with genital tract infection. The prevalence of anti-Chlamydia IgG is high in sexually active adults (30%–60%) even in those who do not have an active infection and is probably due to past infection. The sensitivity, specificity, and predictive values of serologies are not high enough to make them clinically useful in the diagnosis of active disease. Thus, chlamydial serologies are not recommended for diagnosis of active disease except in suspected cases of LGV.
- When endocervical culture is compared with endocervical DFA, EIA, and PCR, nonculture tests have a higher sensitivity even in a population with a prevalence rate as low as 4.3% [27,28].
- Clinicians who perform STD screening tests should be aware of the prevalence of STDs in the population being screened and have a conceptual understanding of positive predictive value and the implications of screening low-risk individuals with a test that has limited specificity. In low-prevalence populations (<5% infected), a significant proportion of positive test results are false positives. For example, with a prevalence of 3%, out of 1000 patients, 30 are infected. A test with a sensitivity of 80% and a specificity of 99% detects 24 of the infected people but falsely identifies 10 uninfected as infected. The positive predictive value in this example is 70%.

- **The Centers for Disease Control and Prevention recommended confirming positive screening tests for *C. trachomatis* when positive predictive values are <90%.
- A positive result on a nonculture test should be considered presumptive evidence of infection in a low-prevalence population. Consideration should be given to performing an additional test after a positive screening test and requiring that both the screening test and additional test be positive to make a diagnosis of *C. trachomatis* infection.
- Except for using culture to obtain an isolate, a non-NAAT should not be used as an additional test after a NAAT because of the lower sensitivity of the non-NAAT.
- The majority of commercial NAATs have been cleared by the Food and Drug Administration (FDA) to detect *C. trachomatis* in endocervical swabs and urine from women.
- Two prospective studies compared LCR NAAT performed on voided urine to endocervical culture in pregnant women, and found the LCR NAAT to be more sensitive [29,30]; voided urine NAAT has been shown to be equivalent to endocervical NAAT in pregnant women [31].
- Commercial NAAT performed with vaginal swabs are equivalent to cervical swabs in detecting chlamydia [28], and one trial has found them to be equivalent in pregnant women [32].
- Patient-collected vaginal swabs have been found to have sensitivity equal to endocervical swabs collected by a health care provider in nonpregnant patients [28]; only one small trial has assessed their performance in pregnant patients [33].

**TREATMENT**

- **Azithromycin, amoxicillin, and erythromycin** (in order of preference) are all accepted treatments of maternal genital chlamydial infection (Table 34.2). Azithromycin has the highest efficacy, highest compliance, and fewest reported side effects in pregnant women [34–38].
- Amoxicillin is associated with similar efficacy to erythromycin in achieving a negative test of cure and is better tolerated in pregnant women than erythromycin [39–42].
- Although in vitro studies suggest that *C. trachomatis* may have resistance to amoxicillin, two randomized trials have demonstrated that it is efficacious in pregnant patients [43,44]. Amoxicillin is less expensive than azithromycin. However, because azithromycin is a single dose and amoxicillin requires a thrice-daily dosing for a seven day course, compliance with amoxicillin is often lower than with azithromycin [43].
- Clindamycin may be considered if azithromycin, erythromycin, and amoxicillin are contraindicated or not tolerated [45].
- Doxycycline is one treatment of choice in nonpregnant women, but is not recommended in pregnancy because it may cause permanent discoloration in developing fetal teeth.
- Treatment for LGV and conjunctivitis caused by *C. trachomatis* has not been studied in pregnancy. Recommendations are based on treatment recommendations in nonpregnant populations.
Table 34.2  Treatment of Chlamydial Infection in Pregnancy

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommended</th>
<th>Alternate</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cervicitis/urethritis/proctitis</td>
<td>Azithromycin 1 g orally single dose OR Amoxicillin 500 mg orally three a day for 7 days</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conjunctivitis</td>
<td>Azithromycin 1 g orally single dose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lymphogranuloma venerum</td>
<td>Erythromycin base 500 mg orally four times a day for 21 days</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Source: Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. Sexually Transmitted Diseases Treatment Guidelines 2015. MMWR, 64, 3, 10–11, 2015.

- Concurrent treatment for gonorrhea is not indicated unless a positive test for this organism is obtained. Because of the potential for concomitant infection, testing for N. gonorrhoea, syphilis, HIV, and hepatitis B is recommended.

Treatment of sexual partners may decrease reinfection rates [16–18]. Common partner-management options include partner notification (partners are notified and instructed to seek evaluation and treatment) and patient-delivered partner therapy (partner is provided with either medication or prescriptions directly via the index patient). Expedited partner treatment (EPT) is the approach to therapy with which the patient delivers either medication or prescriptions to their partner without requiring the partner to present for clinical assessment. EPT is known to increase the rates of partner treatment and to decrease the rates of maternal reinfection for various STIs [14,15]; the impact on specifically chlamydial reinfection is uncertain [16–18]. ACOG supports the provision of EPT for all STIs [19]. No single partner management strategy has been shown to be more effective than any other in reducing reinfection rates. In the United States, EPT is currently explicitly permissible in 38 states, is potentially allowable in eight states, and is illegal in 5 states (Florida, Kentucky, Ohio, and West Virginia) [20].

A follow-up test of cure is recommended in pregnant women treated for chlamydia. If a nucleic acid-based test is used, follow-up testing should be performed at least three weeks post-treatment because nonviable organisms may remain present for some days after successful treatment and can give a false positive test result. Repeat testing in the third trimester of pregnancy is recommended for women who test positive earlier in pregnancy to reduce transmission to the neonate at birth [24].

One prospective study of cervical chlamydial infection in women presenting with preterm premature rupture of membranes who were conservatively managed and not treated for Chlamydia showed no effect on duration of latency and no increase in the incidence of chorioamnionitis or early endometritis [46].

REFERENCES
17. Ferreira A, Young T, Mathews C, Zunza M, Low N. Strategies for partner notification for sexually transmitted infections, including HIV. Cochrane Database System Rev 2013; 10. [Meta-analysis, 26 RCT, n > 17000; I]
Syphilis
A. Marie O’Neill

KEY POINTS
• Prenatal screening and treatment of pregnant women for syphilis is cost-effective even in areas of low prevalence of the disease (<0.1%).
• All pregnant women should be screened with a serologic test for syphilis at the first prenatal visit. Women who are at high risk, live in areas of high syphilis morbidity, or are previously untested should be screened at 28 weeks and again at delivery.
• Penicillin (parenteral penicillin G, 2.4 million units IM, either once or repeated weekly for three weeks depending on stage) remains the only recommended treatment for syphilis in pregnancy.
• Pregnant women with a penicillin allergy should be desensitized and then treated with penicillin.
• Staging of disease and penicillin dosing are not altered by pregnancy.
• Current treatment regimens are based on more than 50 years of clinical experience with penicillin, expert opinion, and observational clinical studies rather than on randomized clinical trials.

DEFINITION
Treponema pallidum is the causative agent of syphilis.

INCIDENCE/EPIDEMIOLOGY
• Worldwide, it is estimated that more than 5.6 million new cases of syphilis occur annually [1].
• In 2007 the World Health Organization (WHO) estimated there are more than 2 million active syphilis infections in pregnant women annually worldwide. More than 90% of new cases occur in developing countries with the greatest burden of disease seen in sub-Saharan Africa and Southeast Asia. Approximately 80% of infected women have had at least one antenatal visit; however, >66% were not screened or treated [2]. Since 1989, the newly independent states of the former Soviet Union have experienced a 43-fold increase in reported cases with rises proportionally larger among reproductive-aged women [3].
• Each year at least half a million infants are born with congenital syphilis worldwide, and another half million stillbirths and spontaneous abortions occur as a result of maternal infection.
• The rate of primary and secondary syphilis in the United States declined by 89.7% between 1990 and 2000 but then increased almost every year from 2001 to 2014. In 2014, there were 19,999 cases of primary and secondary syphilis reported to the Centers for Disease Control (CDC). Approximately 22% of these infections occur in reproductive-aged women [4]. The number of cases of congenital syphilis in the United States decreased from 446 cases (10.5/100,000 live births) in 2008 to 334 cases (8.4/100,000) in 2012 but then began to increase annually with 458 cases (11.6/100,000) in 2014 [4]. Syphilis disproportionately affects African-Americans with the reported rate of infection in this population being 5.4 times greater than that in whites and 57% of infants with congenital syphilis being born to black women [4,5]. The Syphilis Elimination Effort (SEE) is a national initiative launched by the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention in 1999 to reduce or eliminate syphilis in the United States. Updates on the progress of this project can be found at http://www.cdc.gov/stopsyphilis/.
• In 2007 the WHO launched the Initiative for Global Elimination of Congenital Syphilis with a goal of achieving a prenatal screen rate of ≥90% and providing adequate treatment to ≥90% of seropositive women and their partners [2].

PATHOPHYSIOLOGY AND TRANSMISSION
T. pallidum is a gram-negative spirochete unable to survive outside the human host and therefore has never been grown in culture. Unlike most other infectious diseases, it is rarely if ever diagnosed by isolation and characterization of the causative organism. T. pallidum can survive in the human host for several decades.

T. pallidum is easily transmitted by sexual contact, and an overwhelming majority of cases are transmitted by sexual intercourse. Endemic syphilis is transmitted non-terminally by close contact with an active lesion and occurs in communities living under poor hygiene conditions. Syphilis is rarely transmitted during transfusion of blood or blood products or through needle sharing by intravenous drug abusers. The organism generally enters the body through small breaches in epithelial surfaces of genital, anorectal, oropharyngeal, or other cutaneous sites; however, penetration of intact mucous membranes can occur. Once inside the body, it rapidly disseminates. The incubation period for T. pallidum averages 3 weeks but can range from 10 to 90 days. During the incubation period, infected patients have, by definition, neither clinical nor serologic evidence of disease but are potentially infectious. The period of greatest infectivity is early in the disease when a chancre, mucous patch, or condyloma lata is present. Infectivity decreases over time, and after four years, it is very unlikely that an untreated individual will spread syphilis even by sexual contact. The risk of infection during a single sexual encounter with an infected individual is up to 60% depending on the stage of disease and approaches 100% after five sexual encounters [6].
Fetal syphilis occurs as a result of transplacental passage of the spirochete that enters fetal circulation causing infection. Neonates may acquire syphilis at the time of delivery by contact with infectious maternal secretions, blood, or genital lesions. Perinatal transmission may occur during any stage of maternal disease; however, it is most common in cases of maternal primary, secondary, or early latent syphilis with up to 83% of fetuses and newborns being affected [7].

SYMPTOMS AND CLASSIFICATION
Syphilis has been called “the great pretender” because of the myriad of clinical manifestations it can produce. It is a chronic, systemic infection characterized by several stages. The immune response to T. pallidum plays a significant role in the manifestations of all stages of syphilis. Much of the pathology observed in the disease is attributable to vascular abnormalities caused by proliferative endarteritis that occurs in all stages of syphilis. The pathophysiology of the endarteritis is not known although the scarcity of treponemes and the intense inflammatory infiltrate suggest that the immune response plays a role in the development of these lesions. Manifestations of syphilis are not altered by pregnancy.

Incubation Period
- Asymptomatic with no serologic evidence of disease. Transmission can occur during this period.

Primary Syphilis [6,8–10]
- Symptoms develop at the site of initial treponemal invasion as a result of local replication of the organism.
- Treponemes also spread throughout the body by hematologic and lymphatic dissemination even before the appearance of the chancre.
- Regional adenopathy often develops within the first week and usually consists of several discrete nontender, rubbery nodes. Inguinal adenopathy is often bilateral.
- Primary lesions are popular, but rapidly ulcerate to form a chancre.
- The classic chancre is a solitary, painless lesion with raised, firm, everted edges, central ulceration, and a granular base. However, up to 40% of individuals have multiple chancre.
- The most common site is the labia or cervix in females, but primary lesions may also occur on the lips, breasts, mouth, and anus.
- Without treatment, the local lesion spontaneously resolves within three to six weeks.
- Approximately 25% of individuals will have an adequate immune response and the infection will be spontaneously cleared.

Secondary Syphilis [6,8–10]
- If the primary infection is untreated, secondary syphilis develops two to eight weeks later in approximately 75% of untreated individuals.
- Secondary infection demonstrates a wide diversity in physical features involving virtually any organ and is often not thought of early in the diagnostic process.
- It generally begins with a nonspecific constitutional illness that commonly includes a sore throat, low-grade fever, myalgias, and generalized lymphadenopathy.
- Skin rashes are the classic and most commonly recognized lesions, but the appearance is highly variable, and differential diagnosis is often challenging.
- Rash is often initially macular and nonpruritic and becomes papular by three months.
- Rash frequently involves the palms of the hands and soles of the feet, and may be accompanied by mucous patches in the mouth, pharynx, or cervix and condyloma lata in the anogenital region or axilla. Condyloma lata are hypertrophic lesions resembling flat warts that occur in moist areas.
- Individuals are highly contagious during this stage, especially upon contact with mucous patches or condyloma lata.
- Secondary disease lasts for an average of 3.6 months and spontaneously resolves. Approximately 25% of individuals experience a relapse of secondary disease during the first year of infection.

Latent Syphilis [6,8–10]
- In latent syphilis, by definition, there are no clinical stigmata of active disease although disease remains detectable by positive specific treponemal serologic tests [FTA-ABS (fluorescent treponemal antibody absorption) or MHA-TP (microhemagglutination assay for T. pallidum)]. Latent syphilis is further subdivided into stages based on the duration of infection: early latent, late latent, and latent of unknown duration.

Early Latent Syphilis
- Early latency is defined as the time period within one year of initial infection.
- 90% of relapse occurs during this time period; mucocutaneous lesions are most common. Patient is infectious when lesions are present.
- Patients are believed to be potentially infectious in the absence of lesions.
- Vertical transmission of infection may occur.

Late Latent Syphilis
- Initial infection has occurred greater than one year previously.
- Associated with host resistance to reinfection.
- Sexual transmission is unlikely.
- Transplacental infection of the fetus can occur but is less likely than with earlier stages of disease.
- Infection via blood transfusion is possible.

Latent Syphilis of Unknown Duration
- Date of initial infection cannot be established as having occurred within the previous year and patient is aged 13 to 35 years and has a nontreponemal titer ≥1:32.

Late Benign Syphilis (Tertiary Syphilis) [6,8–10]
- Without treatment at earlier stages of disease, tertiary syphilis eventually develops in 30% to 40% of infected patients.
• Usually becomes clinically manifest after a period of 15 to 30 years of untreated infection.
• Characteristic manifestations of tertiary disease include cardiovascular and gummatous lesions.
• Cardiovascular syphilis typically presents as inflammatory lesions of the cardiovascular system—especially aortitis.
• Gummas are granulomatous, nodular lesions that can occur in a variety of organs, most commonly skin and bone.
• In patients with untreated syphilis, about 10% develop cardiovascular syphilis, 16% develop gummatous syphilis, and 6.5% develop symptomatic neurosyphilis [9].
• The diagnosis of late syphilis is confounded by the lack of sensitivity of the nontreponemal tests in these conditions.
• If a patient suspected of having late syphilis has a nonreactive nontreponemal test, a confirmatory treponemal test should be performed.
• Approximately one third of patients will remain seroreactive for decades but will not develop clinical manifestations of tertiary syphilis.
• Treatment of tertiary syphilis achieves a microbiologic cure, but many of the clinical manifestations will be irreversible.

Neurosyphilis [6,8–10]

• The diagnosis of neurosyphilis is made at any stage of disease when both clinical and laboratory criteria are met.
• T. pallidum disseminates widely after initial infection. Examination of cerebrospinal fluid will reveal evidence of infection [elevated lymphocytes and protein, positive VDRL (venereal disease research laboratory)] in approximately 15% of patients with primary syphilis and as many as 40% of patients with secondary syphilis.
• Many patients with CSF evidence of infection will be asymptomatic in the early stages of disease.
• Persistence of CSF abnormalities for more than five years in the untreated patient is highly predictive of the development of clinical neurosyphilis.
• Clinical evidence of central nervous system infection with T. pallidum includes the following:
  • Acute syphilitic meningitis
  • Meningovascular syphilis/seizures/stroke syndrome
  • General paresis/dementia/depression/memory loss/change in personality
  • Argyle Robertson pupils—small fixed pupils that do not react to light but do react to convergence accommodation
  • Tabes dorsalis—paresthesias, abnormal gait, shooting pains in the extremities or trunk, diminished peripheral reflexes, loss of position and vibration senses
  • Laboratory evidence of neurosyphilis includes a reactive serologic test for syphilis and a reactive VDRL in the CSF.
  • The CSF-VDRL is a highly specific test but has a sensitivity of only about 30%.
  • Treponemal-specific testing of CSF is helpful only when negative—this rules out neurosyphilis. IgG antibodies cross the blood–brain barrier and can give a positive result in the absence of neurosyphilis, so a positive treponemal-specific test is not helpful in making the diagnosis.
• CSF examination is essential in patients with signs or symptoms of neurologic involvement at any stage of T. pallidum infection and is also recommended in all patients with untreated syphilis of unknown duration or of duration greater than one year.
• CSF evaluation should include a cell count, protein level, and VDRL. Elevated lymphocytes and protein and positive VDRL are typical findings.
• Treatment of neurosyphilis achieves a microbiologic cure, but many of the neurologic manifestations will be irreversible.

RISK FACTORS
Risk factors for maternal infection include multiple sexual partners, unprotected sex, sex in exchange for money or drugs, presence of other sexually transmitted infections, African-American race, and spending time in a correctional facility.

The single most significant risk factor for congenital syphilis infection is the maternal stage of disease. With early-stage disease (primary, secondary, and early latent), up to 83% of fetuses and newborns are affected [7].

COMPLICATIONS

• Untreated syphilis can profoundly affect pregnancy outcome resulting in spontaneous abortion, stillbirth, nonimmune hydrops fetalis, preterm birth, or perinatal morbidity and mortality. Fetal syphilis has similar complications and manifestations to those seen in neonatal syphilis: hepatomegaly, ascites, elevated transaminases, anemia, and thrombocytopenia are common [7].
• The longer the interval between infection and pregnancy, the more benign the outcome for the infant [11].
• In general, infection during early gestation ends in spontaneous abortion or stillbirth; infection in late gestation results in full-term delivery of an infant with congenital syphilis, and infection in the distant past often results in an unaffected infant [11].
• The greatest risk of stillbirth caused by congenital syphilis occurs at 24 to 32 weeks gestation [12].
• Rates of vertical transmission in untreated women based on stage of disease [13]:
  • 70% to 100% in primary syphilis
  • 40% in early latent syphilis
  • 10% in late latent disease

MANAGEMENT
Prevention

Important practices for prevention of syphilis are early diagnosis and treatment, partner notification and treatment, and screening to identify asymptomatic cases in high-risk populations.

Screening (Table 35.1) [12,14]

• Most pregnant women with syphilis are asymptomatic and can only be identified through serological screening.
Point of care 98.2 97.3 •
PCR 95.8 95.7 •
ICS 84.1–95.3 92 •
Dark-field •
laboratory.

Abbreviations: ICS, immunochromatographic strip; PCR, polymerase chain reaction; RPR, rapid plasma reagin; VDRL, venereal disease research laboratory.


**Screening Tests for Syphilis**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Test</th>
<th>Sensitivity (%)</th>
<th>Specificity (%)</th>
<th>Advantages</th>
<th>Disadvantages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Serology</td>
<td>85.5</td>
<td>97.1</td>
<td>• Relatively inexpensive</td>
<td>• Not useful in primary disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Rapid</td>
<td>• RPR and VDRL detect antigens NOT specific to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dark-field microscopy</td>
<td>80</td>
<td>99–100</td>
<td>• Technically simple</td>
<td>• treponemes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Useful in evaluating lesions of primary disease</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Immediate diagnosis if positive findings</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ICS</td>
<td>84.1–95.3</td>
<td>92</td>
<td>• Point-of-care testing</td>
<td>• Slightly lower sensitivity than other methods</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Inexpensive</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Can be used in the most resource-poor settings</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PCR</td>
<td>95.8</td>
<td>95.7</td>
<td>• In trials PCR does differentiate syphilis from other</td>
<td>• Expensive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>treponematoses</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Point of care</td>
<td>98.2</td>
<td>97.3</td>
<td>• Considered a valid test for primary and secondary</td>
<td>• Investigational—not yet available for clinical</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>infection</td>
<td>use</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Inexpensive, rapid result reduces risk of patient</td>
<td>• Positive result should be confirmed with</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>lost to follow-up</td>
<td>diagnostic testing</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Prenatal screening and treatment programs are limited or nonexistent in many developing countries where the incidence and burden of disease is greatest.

Screening all pregnant women for syphilis and appropriately treating those found to be reactive effectively reduces complications associated with infection during pregnancy [15].

In the United States, serologic screening during pregnancy has been legislated since the 1930s; however, only 90% of states currently have statutes requiring antepartum syphilis screening [16]. Of those states with mandatory screening, 76% require one prenatal test early in pregnancy, and 24% require repeat screening in the third trimester. The most cost-effective approach is to screen all pregnant women at their initial prenatal visit, and to repeat screening in the third trimester in those women with significant risk factors [15].

The CDC and American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (ACOG) recommend screening all pregnant women with a serologic test at the first prenatal visit. Women who are at high risk, live in areas of high syphilis morbidity, or are previously untested should be screened at 28 weeks and again at delivery [5,17].

The genus Treponema includes T. carateum, the causative agent of pinta, and T. pallidum. The latter species is subdivided into three subspecies: T. pallidum sub-species pallidum, which causes syphilis; T. pallidum sub-species pertenue, which causes yaws; and T. pallidum subspecies endemicum, which causes bejel. The subspecies causing pinta, yaws, and bejel are morphologically and serologically indistinguishable from T. pallidum pallidum (syphilis), so there is no test in current clinical use that can differentiate one of these treponemal infections from another. The transmission of yaws, pinta, or bejel is not via sexual contact and the clinical course of each disease is significantly different, which differentiates them from syphilis.

Serologic testing remains the mainstay for screening and laboratory diagnosis of secondary, latent, and tertiary syphilis. These tests include nontreponemal and treponemal antibody detection.

Nontreponemal tests are useful for screening. These include the rapid plasma reagin (RPR) card test and the VDRL.

Nontreponemal tests are also useful for monitoring treatment as titers drop over time and often revert to negative; however, with repeated infection, complete seroreversion may not occur.

Point of care testing is now being used, primarily in resource-poor settings. Syphilis Health Check is the only point of care test currently FDA approved. It was approved in 2011 and received waiver from the Clinical Laboratory Improvement Amendment (CLIA) to allow the test to be used by untrained personnel and outside of conventional lab settings in 2015. It is a rapid immunochromatographic test that qualitatively screens for antibodies to T. pallidum in serum, plasma, or whole blood. It can be performed on a finger stick whole blood specimen and yields result in 12 minutes. It is a screening test, so positive results should be followed up with confirmatory diagnostic testing. If confirmatory testing is not possible, immediate treatment of screen positive women and their partners has the potential to reduce transmission to the fetus and to sexual contacts. A number of logistical and technical problems have been reported with this approach, and so far no clear reduction in perinatal death has been observed. More trials are needed to adequately assess the risks and benefits of this strategy [18].
**Diagnosis**

- Treponemal tests are used to confirm the diagnosis. These include the serum FTA-ABS and the MHA-TP tests.
- Treponemal tests remain reactive for many years in more than 85% of persons adequately treated, and they give a false positive result in about 1% of the general population and should therefore not be used for screening [19].
- Serologic tests are generally not reactive until several weeks after the appearance of the primary lesion and therefore are not useful in diagnosing primary syphilis.
- Dark-field microscopy and direct fluorescent-antibody testing for *T. pallidum* (DFA-TP) are diagnostic options for primary syphilis.
- **Dark-field microscopy** is the most specific technique for diagnosing syphilis when an active chancre or condyloma latum is present. Its sensitivity is limited by the experience of the operator performing the test, the number of live treponemes in the lesion, and the presence of nonpathologic treponemes in oral or anal lesions. Given the inherent difficulties of dark-field microscopy, negative examinations on three different days are necessary before a lesion may be considered negative for *T. pallidum* [20].
- A new screening test that consists of an immunochromatographic strip (ICS) impregnated with treponemal antigen, which tests blood obtained by finger prick and offers immediate results, is available [14]. It has been found to be cost-effective and has the potential to have a significant impact on the epidemiology of this disease in undeveloped, resource-poor countries.
- The complete genome of *T. pallidum* has been sequenced, and specific PCR primers have been developed; however, PCR is not yet available for routine clinical use [21,22].

**Workup**

- **Lumbar puncture** is indicated with the following:
  - Neurologic/ophthalmologic signs
  - Aortitis/gummas
  - Treatment failure/treatment with agent other than penicillin
  - HIV infection
  - Titer >1:32
- Cerebral spinal fluid with a positive VDRL is diagnostic for neurosyphilis

**Treatment (Table 35.2) [23]**

- The efficacy of penicillin for the treatment of syphilis was well established through clinical experience before the value of randomized controlled clinical trials was recognized. Therefore, almost all the recommendations for the treatment of syphilis are based on the opinions of persons having knowledge about STDs and are reinforced by case series, clinical trials, and more than 50 years of clinical experience.
- Although erythromycin, azithromycin, and ceftriaxone are routinely used to treat syphilis in nonpregnant patients, they have not been shown to reliably cure maternal infection or prevent congenital syphilis [24].
- **Parenteral penicillin G** is the only therapy with documented efficacy for syphilis during pregnancy. The success of therapy is >98% [25].

**Table 35.2** Treatment of Syphilis

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stage of Syphilis</th>
<th>Therapy</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Primary syphilis</td>
<td><strong>Benzathine penicillin G</strong> 2.4 million units IM in a single dose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secondary syphilis</td>
<td><strong>Benzathine penicillin G</strong> 2.4 million units IM in a single dose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Early latent syphilis</td>
<td><strong>Benzathine penicillin G</strong> 2.4 million units IM in a single dose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Late latent syphilis a</td>
<td><strong>Benzathine penicillin G</strong> 2.4 million units IM each at 1-wk intervals x 3 wk 7.2 million units total</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tertiary syphilis</td>
<td><strong>Benzathine penicillin G</strong> 2.4 million units IM each at 1-wk intervals x 3 wk 7.2 million units total</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neurosyphilis</td>
<td><strong>Aqueous crystalline penicillin G</strong> 18–24 million units per day, administered as 3–4 million units IV every 4 hr or continuous infusion, for 10–14 days OR <strong>Procaine penicillin</strong> 2.4 million units IM once daily PLUS <strong>Probenecid</strong> 500 mg orally four times a day, both for 10–14 days</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Source: Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. Sexually Transmitted Diseases Treatment Guidelines 2015. Morb Mort Week Re, 64, 36–7, 2015. aOr syphilis of unknown duration.*

- The highest risk of fetal treatment failure exists with maternal secondary syphilis [24].
- High VDRL titers at treatment and delivery, earlier maternal stage of syphilis, the interval from treatment to delivery, and delivery of an infant at ≤36 weeks gestation are associated with the delivery of a congenitally infected neonate after adequate treatment for maternal syphilis [25].
- Pregnant women with syphilis in any stage who report penicillin allergy should be evaluated to determine the need for desensitization and treated with penicillin (Table 35.3) [26].

**Table 35.3** Oral Desensitization Protocol for Patients with a Positive Skin Test

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Penicillin V Suspension Dose No.</th>
<th>Units</th>
<th>Cumulative Dose (Units)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>200</td>
<td>300</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>400</td>
<td>700</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>800</td>
<td>1500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>1600</td>
<td>3100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>3200</td>
<td>6300</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>6400</td>
<td>12,700</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>12,000</td>
<td>24,700</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>24,000</td>
<td>48,700</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>48,000</td>
<td>96,700</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>80,000</td>
<td>176,700</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>160,000</td>
<td>336,700</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>320,000</td>
<td>656,700</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>640,000</td>
<td>1,296,700</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Source: Adapted from Wendel GD Jr, Stark BJ, Jamison RB et al. N Engl J Med, 312, 19, 1229–32, 1985. Note: Observation period: 30 minutes before parenteral administration of penicillin. Interval between doses, 15 minutes; elapsed time, 3 hours and 45 minutes; cumulative dose, 1.3 million units.*
Women with a penicillin reaction other than anaphylaxis should undergo skin testing. Those with a history of anaphylaxis or a positive skin test to one of the penicillin determinants should be desensitized and treated with penicillin.

Desensitization is a straightforward, relatively safe procedure that can be done orally or intravenously. Oral desensitization is regarded as safer and is easier to perform. Patients should be desensitized in a hospital setting because serious IgE-mediated allergic reaction can rarely occur. Desensitization is typically completed in approximately four hours, after which the first treatment dose of penicillin is administered. After desensitization, patients must be maintained on a penicillin regimen for the duration of therapy if multiple weekly doses are indicated by stage of disease.

The Jarisch–Herxheimer reaction is an acute febrile reaction frequently accompanied by headache, myalgias, and other symptoms that usually occurs within the first 24 hours after any therapy for syphilis. It occurs most often in early disease—especially primary—and is thought to represent massive lysis of treponemes. The reaction begins within one to two hours of treatment, peaks at eight hours, and typically resolves within 24 to 48 hours. It occurs in up to 45% of pregnant women treated for syphilis. The Jarisch–Herxheimer reaction may induce labor or cause fetal distress in pregnant women; however, these concerns should not prevent or delay therapy.

Ultrasonography provides a noninvasive means to evaluate the fetus for signs of syphilis. Abnormal findings indicate a risk for obstetric complications and fetal treatment failure [27].

Sexual contacts must be elicited, tracked, and treated (by law in the United States).

### Follow-Up after Treatment

- Nontreponemal antibody serologic titers should be checked at 1, 3, 6, 12, and 24 months following treatment [11].
- Among patients with primary and secondary syphilis, a fourfold decline (two dilutions) by 6 months and an eightfold decline (four dilutions) by 12 months are expected.
- Among patients with early latent syphilis a fourfold decline by 12 months is expected.
- Titers that show a fourfold rise or do not decrease appropriately suggest either treatment failure or reinfection. The treatment regimen should be repeated in these cases.
- It is important that the same testing method (RPR or VDRL) be used for all follow-up examinations because titers may vary by one to two dilutions if different tests are used.
- Patients with neurosyphilis should have repeat CSF evaluation every six months for the first two years, or until the CSF shows no evidence of disease [11].
- Treponemal tests usually stay positive for life.

### NEONATAL

**Neonatal congenital syphilis** is characterized by macopapular rash, hepatosplenomegaly, osteochondritis/periostosis (do X ray of long bones: 95% of these infants will have osteochondritis), jaundice, ascites/hydrops, petechiae/purpura, lymphadenopathy, chorioretinitis, anemia, thrombocytopenia, hyperbilirubinemia, elevated liver enzymes, and reactive syphilis serologic tests in blood/cerebral spinal fluid. Babies can be asymptomatic. Out of the congenitally affected babies, 50% are born to mothers without prenatal care. **Infants of mothers with untreated syphilis, relapse/reinfection, treated with erythromycin, treated <1 month before delivery, without good history of treatment, without fourfold decrease in titers, or without enough serologic follow-up should be treated.**

Lumbar puncture should be done on any infant suspected to have congenital syphilis.

### REFERENCES

Trichomoniasis

Tino Tran

KEY POINTS
- Pregnant women colonized with *Trichomonas vaginalis* in the second trimester have a higher risk of delivering an infant with low birth weight or delivering before term, but unfortunately metronidazole treatment has been associated with an increased risk of preterm birth.
- *T. vaginalis* infection is a risk factor for sexual transmission of HIV-1 with a twofold increase reported.
- Condoms, when used correctly and consistently, provide a high degree of protection from many STIs, including *T. vaginalis*.
- There is no evidence that identifying asymptomatic *T. vaginalis* is beneficial in reducing the associated risk of preterm delivery or delivery of a low-birth-weight infant. Therefore, there is insufficient evidence to recommend screening of asymptomatic pregnant women and some evidence that treatment of these patients may in fact be harmful.
- Metronidazole as a single 2-g oral dose or 500 mg twice a day for seven days at any gestational age is the treatment of choice for symptomatic *T. vaginalis* infection.
- Concurrent treatment of sexual partners is recommended to prevent reinfection.
- Currently, trichomoniasis diagnosis by PCR and NAAT is the gold standard in diagnosis.

EPIDEMIOLOGY/INCIDENCE
Worldwide, it is estimated that the incidence of trichomoniasis is 240 million new cases annually between men and women. The prevalence worldwide was estimated to be around 152 million [1]. Developing countries account for a disproportionate number of cases. Trichomoniasis affects approximately 3.7 million and 80,000 nonpregnant and pregnant women in the United States annually [2]. The frequency of infection in European women is similar. The WHO estimates 78 million new infections annually in Africa [3]. In contrast to bacterial sexually transmitted infections (STIs), such as *Neisseria gonorrhoeae* and *Chlamydia trachomatis*, *T. vaginalis* infection rates are as high or higher in middle-aged women when compared to adolescents. Incidence is highest among women with multiple sexual partners and in populations with high rates of other sexually transmitted infections.

SYMPTOMS/SIGNS
The clinical manifestations of trichomoniasis are unchanged in pregnant women. Infection is asymptomatic in up to 50% of women. The most common symptoms include vulvovaginal pruritis (23%–82%), vaginal discharge (50%–75%), dysuria (30%–50%), and dyspareunia (10%–50%). The most common signs are copious vaginal discharge (50%–75%) (yellow/green in 5%–20%, frothy in 10%–50%), inflammation of vaginal mucosa (40%–75%), vulvar erythema (10%–20%), and abdominal pain (1%–5%).

PATHOPHYSIOLOGY/ETIOLOGY
Trichomoniasis is caused by the protozoan *T. vaginalis*, which had been previously thought to be a harmless commensal. *T. vaginalis* can infect the vagina and the Skene’s glands of the urethra along with the urethra itself. Less common sites of infection include the cervix, bladder, and Bartholins gland. The incubation period for *T. vaginalis* is 4 to 7 days on average but ranges from 2 to 28 days. The mechanism on how trichomoniasis infection causes preterm labor is unknown. Some studies have linked infection to a maternal inflammatory response. This was demonstrated by findings of elevated cervical interleukin-9 and vaginal defensing in pregnant asymptomatic patients, which causes a neutrophilic response to release mixed metalloproteinases [4].

TRANSMISSION
*T. vaginalis* is easily transmitted during vaginal intercourse. The organism will survive for several hours in a moist environment outside the host and is rarely transmitted nonparenterally. The transmission rate from male to female during vaginal intercourse has been reported to be 66% to 100% [5]. Vertical transmission to a female infant occurs in 2% to 17% if vaginal infection is present at the time of delivery [6].

COMPLICATIONS/RISKS
Pregnant women colonized with *T. vaginalis* in the second trimester had a 30%–40% higher risk of delivering an infant with low birth weight or delivering before term and a 40% higher risk of giving birth to an infant who was both preterm and of low birth weight [7]. In a meta-analysis, infection with trichomoniasis yielded an increased relative risk of 1.42 for preterm birth, 1.41 for preterm premature rupture of membranes, and 1.51 for small for gestational age [4]. In pregnant women with *T. vaginalis*, unfortunately metronidazole treatment, as given in the trial (two 2-g doses given 48 hours apart at 16–23 weeks, which is twice the usual dose for treatment) has been associated with an 80% increase of preterm birth compared to no treatment with the majority of the increase in preterm delivery attributed to spontaneous preterm labor [8–10]. The proposed mechanism for treatment with metronidazole causing preterm labor is that lysis of dying trichomonads elicits an inflammatory response that triggers labor [8–10] (see also chapter 17 of *Obstetric Evidence Based Guidelines*). Other nonrandomized studies have not shown this association. A retrospective study found no association between metronidazole use and increase risk of preterm birth, low birth weight, or congenital abnormalities [11]. Another retrospective cohort of 4274 women diagnosed with
trichomoniasis found treatment was not associated with an increased risk of preterm birth and may even be protective (HR 0.69, CI 0.52–0.92, p = 0.010) [12].

*T. vaginalis* infection is a *risk factor for sexual transmission of HIV-1* in women. Studies from Africa have suggested that *T. vaginalis* infection approximately doubles the rate of HIV transmission [13]. The proposed mechanism for this increased risk is twofold: local infiltration of large number of leukocytes including CD4+ lymphocytes—the primary target of HIV infection—and disruption in the integrity of the vaginal mucosa allowing access to viral particles. HIV-positive women who become infected with *T. vaginalis* have been shown to shed more HIV virus in their vaginal secretions and therefore pose a higher risk for transmission.

Epidemiologic studies of *T. vaginalis* infection in the neonate have reported vertical transmission rates ranging from 2% to 17% [6], causing vaginal, urinary, and respiratory infection in these neonates.

**MANAGEMENT**

**Prevention**

Condoms, when used correctly and consistently, provide a high degree of protection from many STIs [14].

Most cases of reinfection result from sexual contact with an untreated partner. Adequate treatment of sexual partners has been shown to decrease reinfection [15].

**Screening**

There is no evidence that identifying asymptomatic *T. vaginalis* in the general population is beneficial in reducing the associated risk of preterm delivery or delivery of a low-birth-weight infant. However, there is mounting evidence that all women with HIV should be screened for trichomoniasis as there is a high rate of coinfection (up to 53%). Treatment of trichomoniasis in women with concomitant HIV has been shown to decrease genital tract viral shedding and load [16].

**Diagnosis**

Wet mount preparation of vaginal secretions suspended in normal saline with microscopic observation of motile trichomonads is the most commonly utilized method of diagnosing trichomoniasis in women. Cost is minimal with wet preparation; however, the sensitivity of this method is low. Providers using wet mount to diagnose trichomoniasis should also attempt to interpret slides immediately as decreases in sensitivity have been found with slides interpreted >1 hr after retrieval [16].

Isolation of *T. vaginalis* by culture was the prior gold standard, but the greater cost and longer time to diagnosis make this an underutilized diagnostic option. Commonly used culture media [17,18] include the following:

- Modified Diamond’s broth media (sensitivity 95%)
- InPouch™ transport and test system (sensitivity 87%)
- Modified Columbia agar (sensitivity 98%)

To increase the detection rate in a high-risk population without substantially increasing cost, culture could be performed on those symptomatic patients with a negative wet mount.

Conventional Pap smear is not considered accurate for the identification of *T. vaginalis*. Confirmatory testing is necessary for those cases reported by Pap: sensitivity = 60% to 70%, specificity = 88%. Liquid-based Pap smear is accurate for the identification of *T. vaginalis* and warrants treatment without further testing; however, the sensitivity is low (61.4%) [19]. Clinicians who perform STI screening tests should be aware of the prevalence of STIs in the population being screened and have a conceptual understanding of positive predictive value and the impact screening low-risk individuals has with a test that has limited specificity (Table 36.1) [20–22].

Nucleic acid-based tests are currently considered the gold standard for detection of trichomonads. PCR and nucleic acid amplification tests that can be performed as rapid point of care testing are commercially available in the United States. Recently, multiple assays such as the APTIMA T. Vaginalis assay (Hologic Gen-Probe, San Diego CA) and the BD Probe tec TV Qx have been FDA cleared for detection of trichomonas vaginalis from vaginal, cervical, or urine specimens for women. The sensitivity and specificity of NAAT testing has been found to be as high as 95.3%–99% and 95.2%–99% respectively [23]. Rapid Swabs for trichomoniasis are also readily available and can be read in as quickly as 10 minutes.

### Table 36.1 Screening/Diagnostic Tests for *T. vaginalis*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Test</th>
<th>Sensitivity (%)</th>
<th>Specificity (%)</th>
<th>Advantages</th>
<th>Disadvantages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Wet mount</td>
<td>62–80</td>
<td>&gt;99</td>
<td>• Rapid results</td>
<td>• Low sensitivity compared to culture</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Inexpensive</td>
<td>• Sensitivity and specificity are strongly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>dependent on the skills and experience of the</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>microscopist and also on the quality of the</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>sample</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Culture</td>
<td>95</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>• High specificity</td>
<td>• Organism can be rendered nonviable if</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• High sensitivity and specificity</td>
<td>incorrect media used or delay in transport</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• 3–7 days to complete</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Not available in most clinical labs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PCR/NAAT</td>
<td>95</td>
<td>98</td>
<td>• Results available more quickly than with</td>
<td>• Most expensive option</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>culture</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


Abbreviations: NAAT, nucleic acid amplification test; PCR, polymerase chain reaction.
Treatment

The nitroimidazoles are the only class of drugs useful for the oral or parenteral treatment of trichomoniasis. In randomized clinical trials, oral nitroimidazoles have resulted in parasitologic cure rates of 90% to 95%. Metronidazole and tinidazole are most commonly used. Metronidazole can be given as a single 2-g oral dose or 500 mg twice a day for seven days and can be given to symptomatic women at any gestational age [9]. In patients with coinfection with HIV, studies have shown the twice-a-day dosing to be more effective and thus should be the treatment of choice. All patients, regardless of HIV status, should also be rescreened for a test of cure approximately three months out from initial infection [16,24]; this can be done as soon as two weeks with PCR amplification. Multiple studies and meta-analyses have not demonstrated a definitive association between metronidazole use during pregnancy and teratogenic or mutagenic effects in infants [25,26]. Tinidazole is given as a single 2-g oral dose. Its use is contraindicated in the first trimester of pregnancy. Metronidazole resistance is increasingly common. The CDC estimated that 5% of clinical isolates of T. vaginalis exhibit some degree of metronidazole resistance. An escalated dosing regimen of metronidazole 2 g daily for three to five days has been successful in some cases of resistant infection, but in general, not more than a single 2-g dose should be given to prevent possible increase in preterm birth [9]. Tinidazole is effective in treating up to 60% of metronidazole-resistant T. vaginalis infections. Concurrent treatment of sexual partners is recommended to prevent reinfection. In those rare cases with a confirmed metronidazole allergy, patients should go through desensitization of their allergy before being treated with metronidazole.

REFERENCES

Group B Streptococcus
Laura Carlson and M. Kathryn Menard

KEY POINTS
- Asymptomatic group B streptococcus (GBS) colonization in the mother is associated with an incidence of neonatal GBS disease of ~1% to 2% without intervention. Neonatal disease is divided into early onset or late onset with possible complications being sepsis, pneumonia, meningitis, and less frequently focal infections and death.
- Major risk factors for neonatal GBS sepsis are prolonged rupture of membranes (≥18 h), preterm delivery, and temperature ≥100.4°F (≥38°C).
- Universal prenatal maternal screening and intrapartum antibiotic treatment is the most efficacious of the current strategies for prevention of early-onset disease and >50% more effective than a risk factor-based strategy. There is no known effective preventive strategy for late-onset GBS sepsis.
- Women with GBS bacteriuria (>10,000 colony-forming units [CFU]) in the current pregnancy or who had a prior infant with GBS sepsis are candidates for intrapartum antibiotics prophylaxis and should be the only two groups not screened in the third trimester.
- Screening involves collecting an anovaginal specimen at 35 to 37 weeks (labeled penicillin-allergic if appropriate).
- Women who are GBS positive are treated with penicillin in labor. Ampicillin is a reasonable alternative. If the patient is penicillin-allergic but not at high risk for anaphylaxis, cefazolin is the agent of choice. For the woman at high risk for anaphylaxis to penicillin and a cultured isolate sensitive to both clindamycin and erythromycin, treatment with clindamycin is indicated. If the culture is resistant to either clindamycin or erythromycin or the results are unknown, then treatment with vancomycin is recommended.
- Intrapartum treatment for chorioamnionitis is recommended regardless of GBS maternal status.

DIAGNOSIS/DEFINITION
GBS is a bacterium also known as *Streptococcus agalactiae*. Infection with GBS is a cause of morbidity and mortality in pregnant or postpartum women as well as fetuses and newborns.

SYMPTOMS
In the mother, GBS colonization is usually asymptomatic. It can cause urinary tract infection, chorioamnionitis, endometritis, and bacteremia. In the fetus, it can be associated with stillbirth. Two forms of infection occur in newborns: early onset and late onset. Early-onset neonatal GBS disease usually causes illness within the first 24 hours of life. However, illness can occur up to six days after birth. Late-onset neonatal disease usually occurs at three to four weeks of age; it can occur any time from seven days to three months of age. Symptoms of neonatal GBS include breathing problems, not eating well, irritability, extreme drowsiness, unstable temperature (low or high), weakness, or listlessness (in late onset).

EPIDEMIOLOGY/INCIDENCE (FIGURE 37.1)
GBS is a major cause of infectious morbidity among infants. In the United States, it is the most common cause of serious neonatal bacterial sepsis, including neonatal meningitis. The prevalence of asymptomatic GBS anovaginal colonization in pregnant women is about 20% with a range of 10% to 30% [1]. GBS colonization during pregnancy can be transient or persistent. A substantial portion of women who are colonized during one pregnancy will not have GBS colonization during a subsequent pregnancy. Usually 40% to 75% of neonates born to colonized mothers are colonized themselves [2]. As a result of prevention efforts employing screening and antibiotic prophylaxis, the incidence of early-onset GBS sepsis fell in the United States from 1.7 cases per 1000 live births in 1990 to 0.25 per 1000 live births in 2013 [3].

ETIOLOGY/BASIC PATHOPHYSIOLOGY
GBS is an encapsulated gram-positive coccus that colonizes the vaginal and gastrointestinal tract (reservoir) in 10% to 30% of healthy pregnant women [2,4–6]. GBS may cause maternal urinary tract infection, amnionitis, endomyometritis, and maternal sepsis. Neonates acquire the organism as a result of vertical transmission from the maternal genital tract to the infant in utero or usually at delivery.

CLASSIFICATION
Disease in the neonate is divided into early and late disease (Table 37.1). Early neonatal sepsis with GBS often is observed within 24 hours of delivery. Early-onset disease presents within the first six days of life with breathing difficulty, shock, pneumonia, and occasionally meningitis [1]. Nothing specific regarding the clinical presentation in early disease differentiates GBS as the etiology from other pathogens. Pneumonia with bacteremia is common and meningitis less likely. Late-onset GBS disease is defined as infection after one week and before three months after birth. Late-onset disease is commonly characterized by bacteremia and meningitis. Infections in the infant can be localized or systemic.

RISK FACTORS/ASSOCIATIONS
For early-onset GBS disease, risk factors include prolonged rupture of membranes (ROM) (≥18 hours), preterm delivery (but >80% GBS neonates are term), temperature ≥100.4°F (≥38°C), maternal GBS colonization between 35 and 37 weeks,
birth of a previous infant with invasive GBS disease, maternal chorioamnionitis, young maternal age, African-American race, Hispanic ethnicity, and GBS bacteriuria during pregnancy. Diabetes or maternal GBS colonization in a previous pregnancy are not risk factors for early-onset GBS disease although GBS colonization in a previous pregnancy is a risk factor for recurrent maternal GBS colonization [7].

COMPLICATIONS (TABLE 37.1)
In newborns, GBS can cause sepsis, pneumonia, meningitis, and less frequently focal infections, such as osteomyelitis, septic arthritis, or cellulitis. Early-onset GBS sepsis is defined as occurring within the first week of life, usually around 48 hours and within 72 hours. Neonatal death occurs in 4% to 6% of cases of early-onset disease. Mortality is higher among preterm infants, 20% to 30% if <33 weeks gestation, compared with 2% to 3% among full-term infants [1].

MANAGEMENT
Principles/Prevention
Several approaches to the prevention of early-onset GBS neonatal infection have been studied or devised [8]. There are no trials to assess the effectiveness of any of these approaches, probably because they would have to include about >100,000 screened pregnancies to show a difference in early-onset GBS sepsis given the current incidence of the disease (<0.5%). Potential strategies are outlined in the following sections.

Maternal Vaccination
Vaccination against GBS is potentially the most effective method of preventing the morbidity and mortality caused by infection. GBS vaccines have been investigated as a tool to reduce maternal colonization and prevent transmission to the neonate; however, a licensed vaccine is not yet available with few trials ongoing [1]. GBS capsular polysaccharide (CPS)-based protein conjugate vaccines have been produced and tested in animals [9]. The first capsular polysaccharide vaccine was poorly immunogenic, so a trial of protein conjugate vaccines followed, using tetanus toxoid as the conjugate. They were shown to be safe and well tolerated, and the antibody response was persistent for over a year in the mother, and the passive protection in the neonate protected him/her against late onset disease [10]. There is need for a phase III randomized trial recording neonatal disease events [1,11]. Vaccination is the only strategy that would have the potential to protect against late-onset disease, which current strategies do not cover.

Universal Maternal Treatment
There is insufficient data to evaluate universal treatment of all women during birth.

Prenatal Maternal Screening and Prelabor Maternal Treatment
Antibiotics should not be used before the intrapartum period to treat asymptomatic maternal GBS colonization except if GBS is present in the urine (2%–4% of pregnancies). Asymptomatic women with GBS in the urine culture at 27 to 31 weeks gestation have decreased preterm birth (PTB) <37 weeks when treated with penicillin 1 million IU three times per day for six days compared to placebo [12]. GBS bacteriuria during pregnancy should be treated at the time of diagnosis. In fact, every urine specimen sent in pregnancy should be labeled “pregnant,” so to alert the laboratory to report any isolation of GBS. GBS identified in urine is a marker for heavy maternal colonization and is associated with a higher risk for early-onset GBS sepsis and is also an indication for intrapartum antibiotic prophylaxis [1]. Antibiotic therapy (with erythromycin) does not prevent PTB or affect stillbirths in women with GBS colonization [13].

Table 37.1 Early- vs. Late-Onset GBS Characteristics

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Early Onset</th>
<th>Late Onset</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Definition</td>
<td>Occurs &lt;1 wk</td>
<td>≥1 wk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Usual timing</td>
<td>24–48 hr</td>
<td>≥1 wk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Incidence</td>
<td>80% (natural); 50% (screen and treat)</td>
<td>20% (natural); 50% (screen and treat)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Most common</td>
<td>Sepsis, pneumonia (meningitis 10%–30%)</td>
<td>Meningitis, localized infections (ears, eyes, breasts, bone, joints, skin, etc.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Predominant</td>
<td>Overall = 5%</td>
<td>III (95%)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clinical signs/s</td>
<td>Full-term = 2%–3%</td>
<td>&lt;2%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>symptoms</td>
<td>33 wk = 30%</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Serotype</td>
<td></td>
<td>If meningitis—15%–50% can have neurologic sequelae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Case-fatality</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ratio</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Long-term morbidity</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
No Prenatal Maternal Screening and Intrapartum Treatment Based on Risk Factors

Risk factors used for this strategy are delivering <37 weeks, intrapartum temperature ≥100.4°F (≥38°C), or ROM ≥18 hours [1]. More than 20% of neonates with early-onset GBS sepsis are born to women without risk factors. As shown below, although this was a popular strategy in the past, it is less effective than a screening-based strategy [10,12]. A risk factor-based strategy is still recommended in the United Kingdom [14,15]. Intrapartum treatment for chorioamnionitis is recommended regardless of maternal GBS status.

Universal Prenatal Maternal Screening and Intrapartum Treatment (Figure 37.2)

A screening-based strategy is >50% more effective than a risk factor-based strategy [16]. This is the protocol with the most evidence for efficacy [1,17]. After the Centers for Disease Control (CDC) recommended this screening strategy compared to either the risk factor-based strategy in 2002, the incidence of early-onset GBS sepsis declined from 0.47/1000 live births (1999–2001) to 0.25/1000 live births [3]. A screening-based strategy involves an incidence of intrapartum antibiotic prophylaxis similar (24%) to that of the risk-factor approach [18]; thus, the treatment risks should be similar. This approach of screening for GBS colonization and intrapartum treatment does not affect incidence of late-onset GBS sepsis. A screening-based strategy is recommended in the United States [1,19] (see section titled “Screening” below for more details).

Neonatal (Screening and) Treatment Only

Screening and/or treatment of just the neonate without some form of in utero prophylaxis is a much inferior approach than the maternal screening approaches just described (screening or risk factor–based). Neonatal treatment only is “too little, too late” as 40% of neonates with GBS are already bacteremic at birth. Evaluation of neonates born to GBS-positive mothers who were not treated or to mothers with risk factors is imperative [20].

Screening/Diagnosis (Figure 37.2)

Detection

Detecting vaginal GBS colonization of pregnant women is a way of detecting women at high risk for early-onset GBS infection. Because colonization can be intermittent, a swab done earlier in pregnancy is less predictive of intrapartum status and early-onset GBS disease than a culture performed near term. The recommended time frame for performing the culture is 35 to 37 weeks gestation [1]. The negative predictive values of GBS cultures performed at 35 to 37 weeks (prevalence about 20%) are 95% to 98% [1]. Women with GBS bacteriuria in the current pregnancy or who had a prior infant with GBS sepsis are candidates for intrapartum antibiotics prophylaxis, and should not be screened [1]. Notably, cultures obtained after prophylactic antibiotic administration may not accurately reflect GBS status [21].

Figure 37.2  Indications for intrapartum antibiotic prophylaxis to prevent perinatal GBS disease under a universal prenatal screening strategy based on combined vaginal and rectal cultures collected at 35 to 37 weeks gestation from all pregnant women. If nucleic acid amplification test (NAAT) is negative and any of the above risk factors are present, then intrapartum prophylaxis is indicated.

aIf amnionitis is suspected, broad-spectrum antibiotic therapy that includes an agent known to be active against GBS should replace GBS prophylaxis.

Collection of Screening Specimen

A vaginal-rectal swab, collected at 35 to 37 weeks gestation. Sampling the lower vagina, followed by the anorectal area gives highest yield for GBS [1]. Vaginal-rectal swabs, during which >70% of women report at least mild pain, do not increase GBS detection rates compared to vaginal-perianal swabs [22]. The swab is transported in special medium (e.g., Amies or Stuart’s without charcoal), which maintains GBS viability for up to one to four days. It is labeled “penicillin allergy” when applicable. The swab is cultured using a selective enrichment broth media (e.g., Todd-Hewitt with antibiotics) over 18 to 24 hours. For penicillin-allergic patients, clindamycin and erythromycin disk susceptibility is done [1].

The availability of a sensitive rapid screening test to accurately detect women in labor who are colonized with GBS would make prevention strategies more efficient, but the available rapid tests still lack acceptable performance characteristics to be applied in all circumstances. However, for women who present at term with unknown GBS status and without risk factors for GBS sepsis, application of real-time PCR has adequate specificity (92%–99%) to appropriately identify women in whom antibiotics are indicated [23–26].

Intrapartum Prophylaxis (Table 37.2)

The incidence of early-onset GBS infection is reduced with use of intrapartum antibiotic prophylaxis in women colonized with GBS. Treatment is associated with a 90% decreased incidence of infant colonization and 83% decreased incidence of early-onset neonatal infection with GBS [27]. The rate of

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table 37.2 Recommended Regimens for Intrapartum Antimicrobial Prophylaxis for Perinatal GBS Disease Preventiona</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Recommended Antimicrobial Regimen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Penicillin G, 5 million units IV initial dose, then 2.5–3 million units IV every 4 hr until delivery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ampicillin, 2 g IV initial dose, then 1 g IV every 4 hr until delivery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cefazolin, 2 g IV initial dose, then 1 g IV every 8 hr until delivery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clindamycin, 900 mg IV every 8 hr until delivery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vancomycin, 1 g IV every 12 hr until delivery</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


aBroader-spectrum agents, including an agent against GBS, may be necessary for treatment of chorioamnionitis.

bHistory of penicillin allergy should be assessed to determine whether a high risk for anaphylaxis, angioedema, respiratory distress, or urticaria is present.

cIf laboratory facilities are adequate, clindamycin and erythromycin susceptibility testing should be performed on prenatal GBS isolates from penicillin-allergic women at high risk for anaphylaxis.

dResistance to erythromycin is often, but not always, associated with clindamycin resistance. If a strain is resistant to erythromycin but appears susceptible to clindamycin, it may still have inducible resistance to clindamycin. Treatment with erythromycin is not recommended.

Onset of labor at <37 weeks gestation with significant risk for imminent preterm delivery

No GBS culture

Obtain vaginal and rectal GBS culture and initiate GBS prophylaxis

Culture negative

Stop antibioticsa

GBS+

Intrapartum prophylaxis

Progressing in labor?

No

Stop antibioticsb

Yes

Continue GBS prophylaxis until delivery

GBS– within 5 weeks

No GBS prophylaxis

Figure 37.3 Algorithm for GBS prophylaxis for women with threatened preterm delivery. This algorithm is not an exclusive course of management. Variations that incorporate individual circumstances or institutional preferences may be appropriate. aIf delivery has not occurred within 4 weeks, a vaginal and rectal GBS screening culture should be repeated and the patient should be managed as described, based on the result of the repeat culture. bGBS prophylaxis at onset of true labor. (From National Institute for Health and Clinical Excellence: Antibiotics for early-onset neonatal infection. CG149. London: National Institute for Health and Clinical Excellence, 2012.)
infant GBS sepsis in the control groups of the studies where this outcome was reported ranged from 2% to 9%. This is higher than the overall infection rates of 1% to 3% that are reported in babies whose mothers are colonized with GBS, raising questions as to how representative the populations studied were.

Penicillin is the first-line agent for intrapartum GBS prophylaxis (Table 37.2). When antibiotics are given ≥2 hours before delivery, neonatal GBS colonization is minimized [1]. A retrospective study further evaluated timing of antibiotic prophylaxis and found a further reduction in early onset sepsis if antibiotics were administered at least 4 hours prior to delivery [28]. For women with penicillin allergy not at high risk for anaphylaxis, cefazolin is recommended. For the woman at high risk for anaphylaxis to penicillin and a cultured isolate sensitive to both clindamycin and erythromycin, treatment with clindamycin is indicated. If the culture is resistant to either clindamycin or erythromycin or the results are unknown, then treatment with vancomycin is recommended [1]. If intrapartum infection is diagnosed, broad-spectrum antibiotic therapy (e.g., ampicillin and gentamicin) is recommended. Women with preterm premature rupture of membranes at or after 34 weeks who are colonized with GBS should be counseled to proceed with delivery [29].

Adverse consequences of prophylaxis are anaphylaxis to penicillin (4–40/100,000), drug resistance, and neonatal infection from agents different than GBS. Penicillin is the preferred antibiotic to decrease emerging resistance. Early-onset

---

**Figure 37.4** Algorithm for secondary prevention of early-onset GBS disease in the newborn. aBlood culture, a complete blood count (CBC) with white blood cell differential and platelet counts, chest radiograph (if respiratory abnormalities are present), and lumbar puncture (if patient is stable enough to tolerate procedure and sepsis is suspected). bDirected toward the most common causes of neonatal sepsis, including intravenous ampicillin for GBS and coverage for other organisms (including Escherichia coli and other gram-negative pathogens) and should take into account local antibiotic-resistance patterns. cConsultation with obstetric providers is important to determine the level of clinical suspicion for chorioamnionitis. dBlood culture (at birth) and CBC with differential and platelets (at birth and/or at 6–12 hours of life). eSee Table 37.2 for indications for intrapartum GBS prophylaxis. fIf signs of sepsis develop, a full diagnostic evaluation should be conducted and antibiotic therapy initiated. gIf ≥37 weeks gestation, observation may occur at home after 24 hours if other discharge criteria have been met, access to medical care is readily available, and a person who is able to comply fully with instructions for home observation will be present. If any of these conditions is not met, the infant should be observed in the hospital for at least 48 hours and until discharge criteria are achieved. hSome experts recommend a CBC with differential and platelets at age 6–12 hours. (From Verani JR, McGee L, Schrag SJ. Prevention of perinatal group B streptococcal disease—Revised guidelines from CDC, 2010. Division of Bacterial Diseases, National Center for Immunization and Respiratory Diseases, Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). MMWR Recomm Rep, 59, RR–10, 1–3, 2010.)
sepsis from pathogens other than GBS requires continuous surveillance.

Newborns of women undergoing cesarean delivery before labor or ROM have an extremely low risk for early-onset GBS disease. Antibiotic prophylaxis is not recommended in this circumstance. However, women planning to be delivered by cesarean should still undergo screening for GBS at 35 to 37 weeks in case they present in labor or with ROM.

For women with threatened preterm delivery, see Figure 37.3.

Vaginal chlorhexidine has not been shown to be associated with reductions in neonatal early-onset GBS infection, pneumonia, sepsis, or mortality [30]. The lack of efficacy may be due to insufficient data (type II error).

**Antepartum Testing**

No specific indication for GBS carriers.

**Delivery**

Intrapartum antibiotic prophylaxis is described in Figure 37.2 and Table 37.2. There is insufficient evidence to assess whether digital vaginal examinations or intravaginal fetal monitoring affect incidence of GBS sepsis [1]. There seems to be no increase in GBS sepsis in pregnancies undergoing stripping of membranes [31], but none of the studies reported screening or results for GBS.

**NEONATAL MANAGEMENT**

See Figure 37.4 [1].

**REFERENCES**


Vaccination

Amber S. Maratas, Edward M. Buchanan, and Joshua H. Barash

KEY POINTS
- Evaluation of a woman’s immune status should occur in the preconception period. Optimally, immunization with indicated vaccines should occur prior to pregnancy.
- Immunity to rubella, varicella, influenza, and hepatitis B should be determined and administered as necessary in the preconception period.
- Nonetheless, in most cases, vaccines should be administered to pregnant women believed to be at high risk for acquiring a vaccine-preventable illness, as there is no vaccine that is more dangerous to a pregnant woman or her fetus than the disease it is designed to prevent.
- Recombinant, inactivated, and subunit vaccines as well as toxoids and immunoglobulins pose no threat to a developing fetus.
- Inactivated influenza vaccine should be given (by injection as killed virus) to all pregnant women during the influenza season. The live attenuated form of the vaccine (intranasal spray) should not be given during pregnancy.
- Hepatitis B vaccine can be safely given in pregnancy.
- Tdap vaccine should be administered to all pregnant women in every pregnancy regardless of previous vaccination history. Optimal timing of Tdap vaccination is 27–36 weeks gestation.
- Live, attenuated vaccines are contraindicated in pregnancy because of the theoretical concern for fetal infection. However, if inadvertent vaccination occurs during pregnancy, no adverse fetal outcomes have been described with rubella, varicella, or BCG vaccination.
- Rubella and varicella immunity should be determined in all women of childbearing age. MMR (measles–mumps–rubella) and varicella vaccination should be avoided in pregnancy as they are live attenuated vaccines and administered to all nonimmune women in the preconception or postpartum period.
- Breast-feeding does not adversely affect immunization and is not a contraindication for any vaccine with the exception of smallpox vaccine.
- No vaccine is 100% safe and 100% effective in nonpregnant or pregnant adults.

PREGNANCY AND VACCINE-PREVENTABLE DISEASES
Pregnancy is an important part of the life cycle when certain infections can play a particularly destructive role. Pregnancy creates a relative immune suppression, which places a woman at greater risk of complications from illnesses such as influenza and varicella. Likewise, maternal infections with such viruses as varicella and rubella can cause a spectrum of fetal effects including congenital anomalies, fetal morbidities, and even fetal death. Finally, neonates are highly susceptible to complications from vaccine-preventable diseases at a time when they do not receive full protection from vaccination themselves. By immunizing close contacts of a newborn, the risk of exposure is reduced, a strategy known as “cocooning.” Maternal vaccination also provides protection of the neonate through passive immunization, in which maternal antibodies (IgG) are transmitted transplacently, particularly in the last four to six weeks of gestation [2]. An additional benefit may occur with the passage of antibodies (IgA) via breast milk.

GENERAL GUIDELINES FOR VACCINATION AND PREGNANCY

Preconception
Evaluation of a woman’s immune status should occur in the preconception period. Optimally, immunization with indicated vaccines should occur prior to pregnancy. For the reproductive age female, immunity to rubella, varicella, influenza, tetanus, pertussis, hepatitis B, and HPV are particularly beneficial for the health of the woman and her offspring (Tables 38.1 through 38.4). If live, attenuated vaccines are administered, the patient should avoid pregnancy for four weeks because of the theoretical concern for transplacental infection of the fetus [32]. In addition, family members of a newborn should be immunized against influenza and pertussis. Although vaccination does not have to occur preconception as is optimal for the mother, these vaccinations should be administered to family members before or during a woman’s pregnancy to provide a protective barrier to disease from the moment of birth.

Pregnancy
If a woman is pregnant at the time of evaluation, careful selection of appropriate vaccinations should be made on the basis of the clinical situation to reduce morbidity from high-risk infections. Recombinant, inactivated, and subunit vaccines as well as toxoids and immunoglobulins pose no threat to a developing fetus [33–35]. These medications may be administered at any time in pregnancy although delaying until the second trimester will avoid false associations with adverse events in the first trimester.

HISTORICAL NOTES
Vaccination is one of the most cost-effective and clinically successful medical interventions available. The incidence of vaccine-preventable diseases drops precipitously upon initiating an effective vaccination program within a population [1]. Although traditionally targeted for children, adult vaccination programs are critically important to prevent disease in pregnant women and their offspring.
rubella, varicella, or BCG vaccination [29,36–40]. However, if inadvertent vaccination occurs during pregnancy, no adverse fetal outcomes have been described with mediated immunity [43]. Following the 2009 H1N1 pandemic, a retrospective cohort found an association with physiologic changes that include decreased pulmonary volume, increased cardiac output, and suppression of cell-mediated immunity [43].

Inactivated influenza vaccine should be administered in any trimester during the flu season because of the risk that infection poses to a pregnant woman [41] (Table 38.1). Given incomplete immunity against influenza with vaccination, close contacts of the pregnant woman should also be immunized. Pregnant women and young infants are at significant increased risk for serious consequences of influenza. During pregnancy, women have a fourfold increased rate of serious illness and hospitalization [42]. The increased morbidity related to influenza during pregnancy is related to physiologic changes that include decreased pulmonary volume, increased cardiac output, and suppression of cell-mediated immunity [43]. Following the 2009 H1N1 pandemic, a retrospective cohort found an association with influenza infection and increased rates of stillbirth and prematurity [44]. A randomized controlled trial of 314 mothers and infants demonstrated immunization benefits to both mother and child. Immunized pregnant women had 30% less respiratory febrile illnesses. Infants less than six months old born to immunized mothers had 63% fewer cases of influenza [45]. Influenza vaccine has been routinely administered during pregnancy since 1957. No study to date has shown an adverse consequence of inactivated influenza vaccine in pregnant women or their offspring [3,4,46] (see also Chapter 24).

Live, attenuated vaccines are contraindicated in pregnancy because of the theoretical concern for fetal infection. However, if inadvertent vaccination occurs during pregnancy, no adverse fetal outcomes have been described with rubella, varicella, or BCG vaccination [29,36–40].

**SPECIFIC VACCINES**

**Influenza**

Inactivated influenza vaccine should be administered in any trimester during the flu season because of the risk that infection poses to a pregnant woman [41] (Table 38.1). Given incomplete immunity against influenza with vaccination, close contacts of the pregnant woman should also be immunized. Pregnant women and young infants are at significant increased risk for serious consequences of influenza. During pregnancy, women have a fourfold increased rate of serious illness and hospitalization [42]. The increased morbidity related to influenza during pregnancy is related to physiologic changes that include decreased pulmonary volume, increased cardiac output, and suppression of cell-mediated immunity [43]. Following the 2009 H1N1 pandemic, a retrospective cohort found an association with influenza infection and increased rates of stillbirth and prematurity [44]. A randomized controlled trial of 314 mothers and infants demonstrated immunization benefits to both mother and child. Immunized pregnant women had 30% less respiratory febrile illnesses. Infants less than six months old born to immunized mothers had 63% fewer cases of influenza [45]. Influenza vaccine has been routinely administered during pregnancy since 1957. No study to date has shown an adverse consequence of inactivated influenza vaccine in pregnant women or their offspring [3,4,46] (see also Chapter 24).

**Td/Tdap**

Td (tetanus toxoid, reduced inactivated diphtheria toxoid) is a tetanus vaccine containing diphtheria toxoid as well (Table 38.1). Tetanus in newborn infants, once common, is prevented if the mother has been immunized because the immune mother passes antibodies to the fetus across the placenta. Maternal tetanus toxoid vaccination has been shown to be up to 98% effective in preventing neonatal tetanus [47].

Tetanus in newborn infants, once common, is prevented if the mother has been immunized because the immune mother passes antibodies to the fetus across the placenta. Maternal tetanus toxoid vaccination has been shown to be up to 98% effective in preventing neonatal tetanus [47].
Table 38.2  Recommended for Pregnant Women at Significant Risk for Exposure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Vaccine</th>
<th>Subtype</th>
<th>Dosing Regimen</th>
<th>Indications/Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Hepatitis A [10,11]      | Inactivated                    | **Pre-exposure prophylaxis:**  
  • Two-dose vaccine series, second dose 6–18 mo after the first dose  
  **Postexposure prophylaxis:**  
  • Either vaccinate, give IG, or both depending on exposure type, age, health statusa | Chronic liver disease, clotting disorders requiring clotting factor precipitates, illicit drug users (both injection and noninjection), men who have sex with men, travel/live/work in endemic areas  
  Unvaccinated persons in contact with an infected person (both sexual and household contacts), members of child care centers with an infected employee or child, to be considered for hospital workers in close contact with infected patients |
| Pneumococcal [12]        | Polysaccharide                 | Single dose                                                                    | Smoking (adults 19 yr and older), chronic pulmonary disease including smoking, asthma, chronic liver disease, chronic alcoholism, chronic cardiovascular disease, chronic renal failure or nephrotic syndrome, functional or anatomic asplenia (e.g., sickle cell disease or splenectomy), diabetes mellitus, immunosuppressive conditions (e.g., HIV) |
| Rabies [13–15]           | Inactivated                    | **Pre-exposure prophylaxis:**  
  • Three doses: day 0, 7, 21, or 28  
  • Test Ab titer every 6 mo for continuous exposure or every 2 yr for intermittent exposure  
  • Booster vaccination if titer < acceptable level  
  **Postexposure prophylaxis:**  
  • Not previously vaccinated: single dose of rabies immune globulin (RIG) + four doses of vaccine on days 0, 3, 7, and 14c  
  • If previously vaccinated: one dose of vaccine immediately, and repeat 3 days later | Chronic renal failure or nephrotic syndrome, functional or anatomic asplenia (e.g., sickle cell disease or splenectomy), chronic high-dose steroids, immunosuppressive conditions  
  Veterinary workers, persons having frequent contact with animal species at risk for rabies,b spelunkers, travelers to areas where dog rabies is enzootic and rapid access to medical care may not be available  
  Indicated for any wound/scratch/bite caused by a possibly rabid animalb |
| Meningococcal [16–21]    | Polysaccharide, conjugate, recombinant | Single dose, revaccination after 5 yr recommended if continued high risk for infection | Anatomic or functional asplenia, terminal complement component deficiency, military recruits, boarding school or college students, travel or reside in endemic or epidemic area  
  Safety data with the quadrivalent polysaccharide vaccine in pregnancy is limited; however, more safety data is available for the polysaccharide than the conjugated version of the vaccine. Of note, conjugated vaccine has not been associated with any increase risk of adverse effects when given inadvertently in pregnancy. No pregnancy data exists for Serogroup B meningococcal vaccines.  
  Travel to or live in areas where polio is endemic or epidemic, lab worker who might handle poliovirus, health care workers who might care for polio infected persons, unvaccinated adults whose children will receive OPV  
  • IPV is used exclusively for routine vaccination in the United States and other nations where polio is not endemic. OPV is still used for outbreaks [22].  
  • Pregnancy: Vaccination should be avoided on theoretical grounds, but if at increased risk for infection, IPV can be administered. No adverse effects have been found in pregnant women or their fetuses. |
| Polio (IPV, inactivated polio vaccine) [22] | Inactivated                  | Three-dose primary series if not previously completed  
  • Second dose 1–2 mo after first dose  
  • Third dose 6–12 mo after second dose  
  Booster—if risk of exposure and primary series completed more than 10 yr previously:  
  • Single dose of IPV | (Continued) |

(Continued)
Table 38.2 (Continued)  Recommended for Pregnant Women at Significant Risk for Exposure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Vaccine</th>
<th>Subtype</th>
<th>Dosing Regimen</th>
<th>Indications/Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Polio (OPV, oral polio vaccine)</td>
<td>Live</td>
<td>If less than 4 wk available to immunize, a single dose of OPV may be given [22] Three-dose primary series and booster recommendations are same as above</td>
<td>• OPV has a risk of causing vaccine-related paralytic poliomyelitis. It is used in countries endemic for polio where the superior secretory immunity in the gastrointestinal tract induced by OPV is an advantage. OPV is the only product available in many developing nations and should be used in pregnancy as indicated. No adverse effects have been found to mother/infant.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anthrax [23]</td>
<td>Inactivated, acellular vaccine</td>
<td>Pre-exposure: 5 IM doses (0 wk, 4 wk, 6 mo, 12 mo, and 18 mo [IM]) + annual booster to maintain immunity Postexposure: three doses SC (0, 2, 4 wk) with 60-day antimicrobial postexposure prophylaxis</td>
<td>Pre-exposure: Military personnel in high-risk areas, persons who perform high-risk laboratory work, handle animal product/hides and unable to adhere to standards of prevention (Although likely safe in pregnancy, CDC recommends deferment in vaccine administration in pregnant persons even if high risk of exposure). Postexposure: Given to persons exposed including pregnant and breast-feeding women, children &lt;18 yr decided case by case</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Japanese encephalitis [24]</td>
<td>Inactivated</td>
<td>Three-dose series • 0, 7, and 30 days</td>
<td>Travelers with significant risk of exposure based on destination, duration of travel, season, and activities [24]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Typhoid vaccine [25–27]</td>
<td>Live attenuated Polysaccharide Live virus</td>
<td>Oral: three-dose series • One dose every 2 days Injection Vi: • Single dose Inactivated injection: • Two doses 4 wk apart Single dose • Booster every 10 yr for continued risk/exposure</td>
<td>Given to those at high risk: travel to or live in area where typhoid is endemic, close contact of typhoid carrier, lab exposure to Salmonella typhi. Information on safety in pregnancy is not available, on theoretical grounds avoid vaccination in pregnancy Given to those at high risk: live in or travel to area where yellow fever is endemic, or lab exposure to the virus. Not well studied in pregnancy, pregnant women who must travel to areas where risk of yellow fever infection is high should be vaccinated</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Abbreviation: IG, immunoglobulin.

aRecommendations for hepatitis A postexposure prophylaxis: http://www.cdc.gov/mmwr/preview/mmwrhtml/mm5641a3.htm#box.
bAnimals at high risk for carrying rabies: http://www.cdc.gov/mmwr/preview/mmwrhtml/rr57e517a1.htm.
cFor persons with immunosuppression, rabies post-exposure prophylaxis should be administered using all five doses of vaccine on days 0, 3, 7, 14, and 28.

tetanus have been prevented since a 1989 initiative to eliminate maternal and neonatal tetanus.

Tdap vaccine (tetanus toxoid, reduced inactivated diphtheria toxoid, and acellular pertussis) was first licensed in 2005 and now recommended for use in persons age ≥7 years old (Table 38.1). Pertussis protection was added to Td vaccine due to a resurgence of pertussis cases in the United States. Family members with pertussis are the source of infection in 75% of cases in early infancy when complications and fatalities are high [48]. Infants less than 12 months old account for most of the morbidity and mortality related to pertussis [47].

Tdap administration is recommended for all women in each pregnancy between 27 and 36 weeks gestation regardless of previous immunization timing. With peak maternal antibody titers occurring at least two weeks after vaccination, this timing allows for maximal transplacental antibody passage to the fetus during the third trimester [49]. Consequently, the newborn will benefit from passive immunity to pertussis until active immunization takes effect via the childhood immunization program schedule. This strategy, recommended by the CDC since 2013, has been shown more cost-effective and clinically superior to the previous strategy of postpartum and household contact Tdap vaccination by mathematical modeling [47,50].

Hepatitis B

Hepatitis B is a serious problem in pregnancy because of the possibility of vertical transmission to the neonate (see Chapter 30) (Table 38.1). Vertical transmission occurs in up to 90% of infected women depending on their viral status, and 90% of the children who become infected develop chronic infection [51,52]. Nonimmune women at high risk for HBV infection during pregnancy should be immunized. This includes women who have had more than one sexual partner in the past six months, illicit drug users (both injection and noninjection), those with an HBsAg-positive sex partner, and those being evaluated or treated for a sexually transmitted disease [7]. Women at risk should also be counseled on safe sexual practices to prevent HBV infection. HBV is also spread through oral secretions; therefore, it is also recommended to vaccinate women who have household members that are Hepatitis B sAg positive [7]. Although reports are limited, this vaccine has not been shown to have any adverse effects on the developing fetus [21,51,52].

Streptococcus pneumoniae

In Table 38.2, pneumococcal vaccine indications are presented, which includes maternal asthma and smoking. Studies
Table 38.3 Not Recommended in Pregnancy

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Vaccine</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Dosage Regimen</th>
<th>Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Varicella</td>
<td>Live attenuated</td>
<td>Two-dose series: • Second dose 4–8 wk after first</td>
<td>Not given to pregnant women or women planning to become pregnant within 4 wk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Postexposure prophylaxis: • Varicella zoster immune globulin (VZIG) within 96 hr of exposure to varicella or herpes zoster</td>
<td>Initiate series in the immediate postpartum period to those women determined to be varicella nonimmune on prenatal evaluation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>If VZIG is not available: • IVIG can be used at a dose of 400 mg/kg given IV as a single dose</td>
<td>VZIG and IVIG are safe in pregnancy and breast-feeding</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>OR • Closely monitor for development of disease and treat with acyclovir if disease develops</td>
<td>Acyclovir in Pregnancy Registry was completed in 1999. Data on 124,748 exposures in pregnancy did not find an association with any adverse pregnancy outcome [28]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MMR</td>
<td>Live attenuated</td>
<td>Single dose</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(measles–mumps–rubella)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BCG</td>
<td>Live attenuated</td>
<td>Single dose</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Smallpox [30,31]</td>
<td>Live attenuated</td>
<td>Single inoculation immunity decreases 3–5 yr after vaccination</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Postexposure prophylaxis: Vaccination within 3 days of exposure will completely prevent or significantly modify smallpox in the vast majority of persons. Vaccination 4–7 days after exposure likely offers some protection from disease or decreases severity</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: CDC’s Advisory Committee on Immunization Practices does not recommend preventive use of vaccinia immune globulin (VIG) for pregnant women. However, if a woman has a complication from smallpox vaccine that could be treated with VIG, she should receive it while pregnant [30,31].

Table 38.4 Vaccination Clinical Guide Summary

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Preconception</th>
<th>Pregnancy</th>
<th>Postpartum*</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Influenza a</td>
<td>Any trimester</td>
<td>Influenza a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MMR b</td>
<td>Influenza a</td>
<td>MMR b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Varicella b</td>
<td>Gestational age 27–36 weeks</td>
<td>Varicella a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Td/Tdap</td>
<td>Tdap a</td>
<td>Tdap b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HPV c</td>
<td>Maternal indications benefit &gt; risk</td>
<td>HPV c</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hepatitis B d</td>
<td>Hepatitis B</td>
<td>Hepatitis B d</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pneumococcal d</td>
<td>Pneumococcal</td>
<td>Pneumococcal d</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Meningococcal d</td>
<td>Meningococcal</td>
<td>Meningococcal d</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hepatitis A d</td>
<td>Hepatitis A</td>
<td>Hepatitis A d</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: See Table 38.2 for further details about travel vaccines or vaccines related to high risk conditions.

aAdminister 1 dose of inactivated vaccine during influenza season.

bIf demonstrated nonimmune, preconception advise to avoid pregnancy for 4 weeks.

cAge 13–26 years.

dWhen maternal indications are present.

eAdminister every pregnancy regardless of vaccination history.

fTetravalent polysaccharide preferred based on safety data [21].

gPostpartum vaccines listed are not contraindicated in breast feeding [32].

hIf not already given intrapartum.
limited, but this vaccine has not shown any adverse effects on developing fetus [21]. In pregnancy, studies lack sufficient statistical power to prove effectiveness in newborn protection. However, pneumococcal vaccination during pregnancy appears to reduce the risk of neonatal infection (RR 0.51; 95% CI 0.18–1.41) and pneumococcal colonization in infants by 16 months of age (RR 0.53; 95% CI 0.11–0.98) [12]. At the present time, pneumococcal vaccination is recommended for maternal indications only.

CONTRAINDICATIONS TO VACCINATION
The only true contraindication applicable to all vaccines is a history of a severe allergic reaction after a prior dose of vaccine or to a vaccine component unless the recipient has been desensitized. An extensive listing of vaccine components, their use, and the vaccines that contain each component is available from CDC’s National Immunization Program website at http://www.cdc.gov/vaccines.

REFERENCES

VACCINATION 337
Trauma
Lauren A. Plante

KEY POINTS
• Trauma during pregnancy is a common complication and accounts for a significant fraction of maternal deaths as well as perinatal mortality.
• Changes in physiology related to pregnancy must be borne in mind when managing trauma care.
• Care of the pregnant trauma patient:
  • There is no level I evidence to dictate the initial care of the traumatized pregnant patient, the type and duration of monitoring, the type of testing required, or the follow-up care of ongoing pregnancy after trauma.
  • Initial maternal stabilization takes priority over fetal assessment.
  • Transfer to a trauma center should be considered for severe cases. This decision is usually made at the scene.
  • Multidisciplinary approach is important as obstetrician, maternal-fetal specialist, trauma surgeon, intensivist, anesthesiologist, neonatologist, and others may need to be involved.
  • Maternal stabilization: “ABCs” (airway, breathing, circulation).
  • Appropriate radiologic or other studies should not be withheld because of pregnancy.
  • Ultrasound, fetal monitoring, tocodynamometer (contraction) monitoring, and Kleihauer–Betke (KB) test can be considered in the management of the pregnant woman with trauma.
  • After hospital discharge following trauma, there remains an increased probability of worse perinatal outcome. Ongoing fetal assessment may be indicated although the exact type of surveillance has not been established.

DEFINITION
Trauma includes both intentional harm and accidents. Intentional harm encompasses assault, blunt force trauma, and penetrating trauma. Accidents include, predominantly, motor vehicle crashes and falls.

INCIDENCE
Incidence of trauma in pregnancy is unclear, and both the burden and the breakdown of cause vary by region and socioeconomic factors. A commonly quoted figure of 8% from the United States is of uncertain reliability [1,2]. Estimates vary widely from 8% (any physical trauma) to 0.2% to 2% (evaluation for trauma) to 0.4–2/10,000 (hospitalization for trauma) [3–5]. A population-based study in Sweden, using both the national birth registry and the national traffic accident registry, calculated a ratio of 207 motor vehicle crashes per 100,000 pregnancies [6]. The probability of hospital admission after maternal trauma increases with increasing gestational age [7]. Domestic violence against pregnant women ranges from 4% to 9% [8]. Published figures are probably affected by reporting bias and undercounting of the total number of injuries. Not all cases of maternal trauma are seen at a trauma center or even referred to a hospital. Available literature on trauma is generally biased toward more serious injury whenever data are collected from hospital visits or admissions rather than from traffic records. A recent analysis of the National Inpatient Sample (NIS) demonstrates that, among women admitted to hospital following MVA, pregnant women had a lower risk of fracture, open wounds, intracranial, internal and spinal cord injury, transfusion, operations (other than those coded as genitourinary, a grouping that includes cesarean), and death than a matched group of nonpregnant controls [9]. This may represent either a difference in the type or severity of MVA in which a pregnant woman is involved, a difference in seatbelt use, or a differential willingness on the part of physicians to admit a pregnant patient for observation even with minor or no discernable injury. The NIS data set also showed that 3.8% of MVA involved pregnant women although it could not show the overall incidence of MVA in pregnancy. Motor vehicle crashes involving pregnant women are, roughly, evenly distributed by trimester [10,11].

ETIOLOGY/BASIC PATHOPHYSIOLOGY
Causes of trauma in pregnancy in the United States:
• 73% motor vehicle accident, including auto vs. pedestrian (MVA; 3%–4% of all MVA involve a pregnant woman) [9,12]
• 12% assault
• 9% fall
• 2% bicycle
• <1% suicide
• 3% other (unintentional)

These reflect American data and cannot be taken as universally representative. By way of comparison, assault accounted for more than half of admissions of pregnant patients to a metropolitan trauma service in South Africa [13].

PROGNOSTIC FACTORS
Factors that predispose injured women to a worse pregnancy outcome, defined as delivery, pregnancy loss, or hysterectomy, are as follows:
• Higher degree of severity, e.g., injury severity score (ISS) >9 (For an online calculator of injury severity score, see http://www. trauma.org/index.php/main/article/383/)
• Lactate ≥2 mmol/L
• Altered mental status at admission (Glasgow Coma Score <8)
• Lack of proper seatbelt use
• Severe head injury
• Injury to thorax, abdomen, lower extremities, or spine

Drug use and shock at admission are also correlated with worse outcome although to a lesser extent [3,14]. Individual risk factors associated with fetal demise include penetrating injury, severity of injury, maternal hypotension, and need for laparotomy [13,15].

In cases of minor trauma (ISS = 0), classically described risk factors, such as Kleihauer–Betke, fibrinogen <200, contraction pattern by toocodynamometer, direct abdominal trauma, placenta location, and abdominal pain are not reliable predictors of adverse pregnancy outcomes [16]. Although the evaluation of each patient should be individualized, extensive evaluation measures that are routine in practice may be reconsidered in cases of minor trauma in pregnancy.

COMPLICATIONS
Complications are more common if there is severe injury (ISS ≥9) [4] or if the woman is delivered during the hospitalization for trauma [5]. Delayed complications may occur even when there is no injury diagnosed at the time of hospitalization and when the woman is discharged home undelivered.

Maternal Death
Maternal mortality associated with trauma is about 0.1% to 1.4% [3,5]: This is 10 to 100 times increased over the background U.S. maternal mortality ratio. Among pregnant women hospitalized after trauma, the case fatality rate is 2%–4% [9,17–21].

Trauma is a leading cause of maternal death as about 27% of maternal deaths are injury related [22]. Of these deaths, the largest fraction is attributed to MVAs (44%), followed by homicide (31%), unintentional injuries (13%), and suicide (10%). Data from the Pregnancy Mortality Surveillance System in the 1990s suggested that the majority of pregnancy-associated homicides occurred in the postpartum period [22], but figures drawn a decade later from the National Violent Death Reporting System showed that 77% of pregnancy-associated homicides occurred, in fact, during pregnancy [23]. Trauma and other forms of violence are the leading cause of death in nonpregnant women of reproductive age.

Hospitalization
Women in the third trimester are more likely to be admitted to the hospital than women in the first or second trimester [10]; 3% of all trauma admissions are pregnant [24].

Transfusion
0.6% to 4%.

Hysterectomy
0.5% to 2%. May be indicated in cases of penetrating injury to the uterus or in cases of uterine rupture, resulting from blunt force trauma when surgical repair is not reasonable [25], or in cases in which coagulopathy follows placental abruption.

Fetal/Neonatal Outcomes
Nonreassuring fetal testing: 5% to 20%; preterm birth (PTB) <37 weeks: 14% to 20% [4].

Abruptio Placenta
1% to 13%. Severity of maternal injury does not reliably correlate with abruptio [26].

Fetal Injury
Very few cases have been reported of fetal injury from maternal gunshot or stab wounds and of fetal fractures, visceral ruptures, and intracranial hemorrhage after blunt trauma. Penetrating abdominal injury, which, in the second half of pregnancy, usually involves the uterus, is associated with fetal death in up to 73% of cases [27] and has been proposed as an indication to explore the abdomen or effect cesarean delivery.

Fetal Death
0.4% to 1.5%. The rate of fetal death among women hospitalized for trauma is about 11% [17–21]. About 5/1000 fetal deaths can be attributed to trauma or approximately four traumatic fetal deaths per 100,000 live births [28]. The single most salient risk factor for fetal death is maternal death. The majority (>80%) of these fetal deaths in the United States are associated with MVAs, and 6% are related to firearms and another 3% to falls: This does not mean that MVA is uniquely lethal to fetuses, only that it is more common than other mechanisms of injury. Less than half of fetal deaths are designated as due to placental injury (42%), 20% as placental abruption. Fetal death is more likely in cases of maternal death, hemorrhagic shock, or no seatbelt use. Aside from maternal death, the most significant associations with fetal death after blunt trauma are maternal ejection from a vehicle, maternal tachycardia (HR >110), maternal ISS >9, and fetal bradycardia (FHR <120) [29]. However, even minor maternal injuries from MVA have been associated with fetal death. Swedish data showed the risk of fetal death to be 93% with fatal maternal injury, 5% with major maternal injury, and 1% with minor maternal injury; but because there are so many more minor injuries, these still contributed significantly to fetal outcome statistics [6]. The odds ratio for fetal demise was 3.55 among all women involved in a motor vehicle crash; excluding early pregnancy losses, the odds ratio for fetal death was 2.49 when only third-trimester crashes were taken into account.

Neonatal Death
0.4% to 1.5%; highly related to preterm birth.

SPECIAL CONSIDERATIONS FOR COMPLICATIONS FROM ASSAULT
The rate of hospitalization for assault during pregnancy is 0.04% to 0.1% [30,31]. In California, 46% of assaults were related to an unarmed fight, 12% to firearms or bomb, and 9% to stab injuries. Women assaulted during pregnancy had higher rates of preterm delivery, low birth weight, placental abruption, stillbirth, and uterine rupture compared to women who were never hospitalized for assault during pregnancy. Thirteen percent of women hospitalized after assault delivered during the hospitalization. These women had
worse outcomes than either women who were not assaulted or women who were assaulted but discharged undelivered [30]. In New Zealand, assault during pregnancy and assault after pregnancy were both associated with long-term danger for women, including injury and death within a 5-year period [31].

Intimate-partner violence accounted for 20% of the assaults in women who were discharged undelivered and for 50% of the assaults in women who delivered during the hospitalization [30]. Sadly, over a 15-year period in Maryland, homicide was the leading cause of pregnancy-associated maternal death, most often perpetrated by a current or former intimate partner and most often by gunshot [32].

**PREGNANCY CONSIDERATIONS**

Causes of trauma in pregnancy differ from nonpregnant trauma in that more are attributed to motor vehicles and fewer to other causes. Pregnancy is generally protective in relation to suicide. Compared to women of the same age who are not pregnant, pregnant women who sustained trauma were younger, had lower ISS and lower mortality (1% vs. 4%), had shorter length of stay, and lower rates of alcohol and drug use; however, 12% had been drinking and 20% had been using drugs [10]. A crash rate of 13/1000 person-years was calculated for pregnant women aged 15 to 39, which is half the rate for nonpregnant women in this age group (26/1000) [10].

In 11% of pregnancy trauma cases [24], the pregnancy status was unknown at admission to the receiving trauma team, and in two thirds of those, the pregnancy was newly diagnosed by serum hCG screening—that is, the status had possibly not been known by the patient either. Of those pregnancies unknown to the trauma team at admission but presumably known to the patient (although she did not or could not communicate the status to the team), fetal mortality was >75%, including both spontaneous and elective abortion. Incidental pregnancies that were new to the trauma team although not to the patient carried a 25% probability of fetal mortality [24]. One third of the nonsurvivors in the newly diagnosed group were voluntary abortions, in which the women reported they were fearful of nonspecific damage because of either injury or radiation. It must be cautioned, however, that the stated rationale for elective abortion is not always true.

**PRENANCY MANAGEMENT**

**Prevention of Injury**

*Seatbelts*

Rates of seatbelt use are now similar among pregnant and nonpregnant individuals involved in MVAs, based on the National Automotive Sampling System/Crashworthiness Data System: approximately two thirds used a lap and shoulder belt [11]. Three-point seatbelts should always be worn with the shoulder belt over the shoulder, collar bone, and across the chest, between the breasts, and the lap belt as low as possible under the abdomen and the uterus. Seat belts save maternal lives by preventing ejection. Correct seat belt use is also associated with better fetal outcomes: an in-depth physical and mechanical analysis of 57 MVAs involving pregnant women demonstrated adverse fetal outcomes (death or damage) in 29% of correctly seatbelted, 50% of improperly restrained, and 80% of unrestrained women [33]. However, severity of the crash was an independent predictor of poor fetal outcome: 85% of severe crashes (≥30 mph) in this sample were followed by fetal death, direct fetal injury, uterine rupture, or preterm delivery. A large study that linked birth records with state crash records in North Carolina concluded that the risk of stillbirth was tripled when a crash involved an unbelted pregnant driver compared to a belted pregnant driver [34]. Seatbelt restraints also have a protective role in low-velocity collisions. Impact testing using a crash-test dummy modeled to represent a woman at 30 weeks of pregnancy demonstrated two to three times higher peak abdominal pressure when the dummy was unrestrained compared to properly belted [35].

*Air Bags*

A cohort study in Washington State cross-referenced state patrol crash data with birth certificate and fetal death certificate data and found no statistically significant differences in maternal or fetal outcomes among 198 women whose airbag deployed compared to 622 women whose airbag did not deploy [36]. The rates of preterm labor and of fetal death were higher in the no-airbag group, and the lack of statistical significance may be a function of small numbers. In the North Carolina study, the rate of placental abruption was 58% higher when the pregnant driver’s vehicle was not equipped with airbags [34] although rates of preterm birth and stillbirth were not significantly different.

In a case series of 30 women past 20 weeks of pregnancy who were hospitalized after crashes in which their air bags deployed, 67% of whom were also restrained with a seat belt, 90% had obstetrical signs or symptoms at admission (contractions, abdominal pain, abnormal fetal heart rate, or vaginal bleeding), but there was only one fetal death. All with a live fetus were discharged home undelivered after an mean length of stay of 24 hours although unfortunately most were lost to follow-up [37]. On the available evidence, no definitive statement can be made as to the utility or safety of air bags specifically in pregnancy, but because they save maternal lives, they would, on balance, be expected to save fetal lives.

*Intimate Partner Violence*

Prevention is key. ACOG recommends screening for intimate partner violence at the initial prenatal visit, at least once per trimester, and again in the postpartum period. ACOG also encourages gun safety and firearm restrictions as a way of reducing pregnancy-associated homicide [38,39].

**Care of the Pregnant Trauma Patient**

There are no trials assessing effectiveness of initial care and interventions for the pregnant patient following trauma, including the type and duration of monitoring, the type of testing required, or the follow-up care of ongoing pregnancy after trauma. The Society of Obstetricians and Gynaecologists of Canada has recently released guidelines for care of the pregnant trauma patient [40]. Guidelines have also been published by the Eastern Association for the Surgery of Trauma [7], and the American College of Surgeons includes a section on trauma in pregnancy in the Advanced Trauma Life Support (ATLS) course and manual [41]. These recommendations are level II and level III, given lack of randomized trials in pregnancy.
**Workup and Management**

An algorithm for evaluation and management of trauma in pregnancy, specifically, is shown in Figure 39.1 [2]. Electronic resources are also available online at www.myatls.com and as the MyATLS app for smartphones: search iPhone’s AppStore or GooglePlay for Android devices.

**Stabilization**

The American College of Surgeons [42], the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists [1], and the Society of Obstetricians and Gynaecologists of Canada [40] are unanimous in declaring that maternal stabilization takes priority over fetal assessment. The ATLS algorithm lays out, in order,

---

**Management algorithm for trauma in pregnancy**

**Assess maternal status**

- Cardiac arrest
- Unresponsive
- Loss of airway/respiratory arrest
- BP < 80/40 mm Hg or HR < 50 or > 140 bpm
- If fetus viable, FHR < 110 or > 160 bpm

**Advanced life support**

- Airway/cervical spine control
- Breathing
- Circulation
- Disability
- Exposure
- Consultation with trauma team; notify NICU
- Supplemental O₂
- Displace uterus to left if GA > 20 weeks
- IV access (2 peripheral lines)
- Labs: CBC, coagulation profile, type and screen; KB if RH (–)
- Viable fetus: continuous FHR monitoring
- Preivable fetus: FHR via Doppler
- Tocometer if concern for abruption

**Maternal injury greater than minor bruising, lacerations or contusions**

- Consider trauma team consultation
- IV access
- Labs: CBC, coagulation profile, type and screen; KB if RH (–)
- Viable fetus: fetal monitoring for 4 hours–Ctxs < 6/hour consider discharge
- Ctxs ≥ 6/hour consider admission
- Preivable fetus: FHR via Doppler
- Tocometer if concern for abruption

**Once the patient is stable**

- Fetal ultrasound +/- biophysical profile
- Consider other labs—chemistries, urinalysis, urine toxicology screen
- Radiologic assessment/peritoneal lavage/F.A.S.T. U/S imaging (if indicated)

---

**Figure 39.1** Management algorithm for trauma in pregnancy. Abbreviations: BP, blood pressure; CBC, complete blood cell count; Ctxs, contractions; DV, domestic violence; FAST, focused assessment with sonography for trauma; FHR, fetal heart rate; GA, gestational age; HR, heart rate; IPV, intimate partner violence; ISS, injury severity score; IV, intravenous; KB, Kleihauer-Betke; MVA, motor vehicle accident; NICU, neonatal intensive care unit; O₂, oxygen; U/S, ultrasound. (Reprinted from Mendez-Figueroa H, Dahlke JD, Vrees RA, Rouse DJ. Am J Obstet Gynecol, 208, 4, 321.e1–9, 2013. With permission.)
Table 39.1 Maternal Stabilization after Trauma in Pregnancy

- Airway
- Breathing
- Circulation
- Disability (neurological evaluation)
- Exposure, environmental control (undress the patient, look everywhere for injuries, but keep them warm)
- (Fetus)


Assessment and stabilization as shown in Table 39.1. These are addressed briefly, in regard to pregnant patients especially, in the following subsections.

**Airway.** Airway edema is more common in pregnant women, so smaller endotracheal tube size is required. Airway reflexes are not changed in pregnancy, but longer gastric emptying times and diminished function of the lower esophageal sphincter leave pregnant women more prone to aspiration of gastric contents.

**Breathing.** In pregnancy, minute ventilation is increased and functional residual capacity is decreased, so periods of apnea or hypopnea lead more quickly to hypoxemia.

**Circulation.** Physiologic changes in pregnancy include increased cardiac output, expanded plasma volume, peripheral vasodilation, and a decrease in systolic and diastolic blood pressure. As a result, the signs of hypovolemia are seen later in pregnant women because of these compensatory mechanisms. Tachycardia and narrowed pulse pressure are late findings as pregnant women progress through the stages of hypovolemic shock. Fetal heart rate should be evaluated as an additional vital sign. A normal fetal heart rate suggests normal uterine perfusion, and an abnormal FHR may reflect compromised perfusion and function as an early warning sign of decreased circulatory volume. Maintenance of left uterine displacement is important in maintaining preload and cardiac output after mid-pregnancy because of the effect of the gravid uterus on compressing the inferior vena cava. If the patient is visibly pregnant to the prehospital provider, the supine position should be avoided.

After maternal stabilization, history (medical/surgical/pregnancy history, gestational age, trauma mechanism, etc.) should be obtained, a thorough physical examination should be performed (including vital signs, signs of trauma, uterine tenderness, speculum examination, and bimanual exam), and available records (e.g., ultrasounds, laboratory tests) should be reviewed. Problems with history or physical examination, however, must be borne in mind. In severe trauma, history may be unobtainable if the patient’s neurologic status is compromised; information may be obtained from family members or emergency responders as an alternative. The absence of uterine tenderness cannot be construed as the absence of uterine or placental injury. Speculum/manual exam may be difficult or impossible if the patient is in c-spine immobilization or has pelvic fractures.

The focused abdominal sonogram for trauma (FAST) is commonly undertaken as part of an initial assessment in the emergency department. This is a quick four-quadrant ultrasound to look for free fluid in the abdomen and pelvis; sensitivity is reported to be 80% and specificity 100% in the pregnant patient following blunt-force abdominal trauma [34]. The FAST scan, although not originally designed for fetal assessment, presents an obvious opportunity to ascertain fetal cardiac activity and other relevant factors.

### Evaluation and Diagnostic Studies

Appropriate studies should not be withheld because of pregnancy.

1. **CT** is recommended for evaluation of hemodynamically stable patients with associated neurological injury, multiple nonabdominal injury, or equivocal physical examination. Patients with a negative CT should nonetheless be admitted for observation [43] (radiation concerns, see below and Tables 39.2 and 39.3) [33].

2. **Blunt abdominal trauma**

   a. **FAST ultrasound:** The maternal abdomen can be evaluated for the presence of intraperitoneal blood with diagnostic peritoneal lavage (DPL) or with ultrasound; the FAST scan has supplanted DPL in most institutions [7,41]. FAST scan has 80% sensitivity and 100% specificity in women with mid-pregnancy trauma.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Examination</th>
<th>Mean Fetal Dose (mGy)</th>
<th>Maximum Fetal Dose (mGy)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Skull</td>
<td>&lt;0.01</td>
<td>&lt;0.01</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chest</td>
<td>&lt;0.01</td>
<td>&lt;0.01</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abdomen</td>
<td>1.4</td>
<td>4.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thoracic spine</td>
<td>&lt;0.01</td>
<td>&lt;0.01</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lumbar spine</td>
<td>1.7</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pelvis</td>
<td>1.1</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IVP</td>
<td>1.7</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Source: From Health Protection Agency, the Royal College of Radiologists and the College of Radiographers. Protection of pregnant patients during diagnostic medical exposures to ionizing radiation: Advice from the Health Protection Agency, the Royal College of Radiologists and the College of Radiographers. 2009.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CT Examination</th>
<th>Mean Fetal Dose (mGy)</th>
<th>Maximum Fetal Dose (mGy)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Head</td>
<td>&lt;0.005</td>
<td>&lt;0.005</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chest</td>
<td>0.06</td>
<td>0.96</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abdomen</td>
<td>8.0</td>
<td>49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lumbar spine</td>
<td>2.4</td>
<td>8.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pelvis</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>79</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pelvimetry</td>
<td>0.2</td>
<td>0.4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Source: From Health Protection Agency, the Royal College of Radiologists and the College of Radiographers. Protection of pregnant patients during diagnostic medical exposures to ionizing radiation: Advice from the Health Protection Agency, the Royal College of Radiologists and the College of Radiographers. 2009.
specificity for intra-abdominal injury in the pregnant patient following blunt abdominal trauma [41]. If DPL is elected, it is typically performed with an open technique in pregnancy. Both these techniques can be performed quickly and therefore are suitable for evaluation of an unstable patient and avoid transport and ionizing radiation altogether.

b. Exploratory laparotomy is indicated for a positive DPL [43] and in most cases of a positive FAST scan. Suspicion of uterine rupture is also an indication for laparotomy [40].

3. In hemodynamically stable patients with positive FAST scan, follow-up CT scan may be considered so as to identify the source. Some solid viscus injuries may be managed nonoperatively [43].

4. Penetrating abdominal wound: Single preoperative dose of broad-spectrum antibiotic [43]. Laparotomy is indicated if hypotension is present with a penetrating abdominal wound; gunshot wound to abdomen; bleeding from GI or GU tract after penetrating trauma; peritonitis; evisceration; free air. The pregnant uterus tends to shield maternal viscera, so stab wounds to the abdomen are less likely to injure bowel unless the site is the upper abdomen. In contrast, the fetus is often injured. As is true outside of pregnancy, the trajectory of a bullet or other missile is unpredictable and therefore laparotomy is generally indicated.

5. Open fractures: Prophylactic antibiotics with gram-positive coverage, administered as soon as possible after injury [42].

6. Traumatic brain injury: Head CT is generally required. Broad-spectrum prophylactic antibiotics if penetrating brain injury [42].

7. Spine trauma suspected: immobilization and imaging, generally CT [42].

8. Special pregnancy-specific evaluations/studies:
   a. Fetal ultrasound: Although there is insufficient formal evidence to assess the effectiveness of performing a fetal ultrasound in the woman with trauma in pregnancy, it is near universal and is without risk as long as it does not delay definitive maternal care. Assessment of fetus, AFV, and placenta by ultrasound may be beneficial for management. Ultrasound is insufficiently sensitive to detect placental abruption unless it involves >50% of the placenta, so that negative ultrasound does not exclude abortion, especially because abortion may develop days after the initial trauma.
   b. Fetal monitoring: There is insufficient evidence to assess fetal monitoring and especially its duration in the woman with trauma in pregnancy. Assessment of fetal status may be beneficial as the fetoplacental unit is often one of the most sensitive “organs” to be affected by maternal circulatory compromise. If fetal monitoring is to be undertaken, continuous monitoring is probably preferable to intermittent. More than one third of third-trimester women with trauma have ominous findings on monitoring [19]. The fact that maternal and fetal outcomes are worse in women who do not have electronic monitoring in some reports [19] reflects the team priorities (more severely injured mothers require interventions that preclude fetal monitoring, or electronic monitoring is deemed of low priority).
   c. Tocodynamometer or contraction monitoring: An oft-cited study [26] found that at >20 weeks gestation, >90% of women with trauma presenting for evaluation demonstrate some uterine presenting for evaluation demonstrate some uterine presenting for evaluation demonstrate some uterine presenting for evaluation demonstrate some uterine presenting for evaluation demonstrate some uterine presenting for evaluation demonstrate some uterine presenting for evaluation demonstrate some uterine presenting for evaluation demonstrate some uterine presenting for evaluation demonstrate some uterine presenting for evaluation demonstrate some uterine presenting for evaluation demonstrate some uterine activity decreasing over time. Within the first hour, 64% were contracting with a frequency of every five minutes or more, declining to 29% by hour 4. Patients without contractions or whose contractions never exceeded q10 minute frequency were discharged at the end of four hours, and none had abruption [26]. Those who had been contracting at more than q11 minute frequency were all kept for at least 24 hours. There was one placental abruption at six hours, resulting in emergent delivery for fetal distress, and among the patients hospitalized beyond 24 hours, there was a 40% delivery rate with one stillborn infant. Total abortion rate was 8% [26]. From these data comes the common recommendation for monitoring at least four hours after maternal trauma [40,44]. Others have recommended a minimum of six hours of monitoring, acknowledging that the best duration of monitoring is unknown [7]. In nearly 5% of trauma in pregnancy cases, fetal compromise or placental abruption becomes evident only after prolonged monitoring (6–48 hours or more) [45].
   d. The Kleihauer–Betke (KB) test assesses presence of fetal red blood cells in the maternal circulation. It has been proposed as an adjunct to predict preterm labor after trauma [46]. A study of 233 women found that 20% of pregnant trauma patients who had KB drawn had positive results although the test proved neither sensitive nor specific for a poor outcome [45]: 96% of women with a positive KB (defined as >0.01 mL of fetal blood in the maternal circulation) had preterm contractions, half of whom also had cervical change, and none of those with a negative test had any contractions during the period of surveillance, which encompassed a minimum of four hours. A smaller study evaluating 73 women with KB after trauma calculated the likelihood ratio of a positive KB for predicting preterm labor as greater than 20 [46]; none of the KB-negative women had contractions. The authors proposed that if the KB were negative, duration of monitoring could be limited to the time it took to get the test back, that is, 1–2 hrs. Although the test is inexpensive and simple to perform, it has been criticized for its subjectivity and lack of reproducibility [47]. Using known admixtures of fetal and maternal blood, KB testing overestimates the volume of fetomaternal hemorrhage and has been demonstrated to vary more than tenfold with repeat testing of a single sample [47]. Some have advocated substitution of flow cytometry (using a fluorescence-activated cell sorter) or monoclonal antibodies to Hb F as a test for fetomaternal hemorrhage; although these are both sensitive and more precise, they are expensive and not widely available.
   e. Rh status must be tested after maternal trauma. Rh negative women should receive Rh immune globulin after maternal trauma of any degree because even minor maternal trauma may be associated with maternal-fetal hemorrhage sufficient to cause sensitization. KB is particularly helpful with Rh-negative women to determine dose of Rh immune globulin needed to prevent rhesus isoimmunization.
   f. Coagulation studies (e.g., fibrinogen, D-dimer, PT, and PTT): There is no evidence of benefit of routine
coagulation studies unless massive hemorrhage has occurred or is expected.

g. Admission: Admission to the hospital for longer observation (≥24 hours) should be considered for women with uterine tenderness, continued abdominal pain, a high-risk mechanism of injury (such as auto vs. pedestrian or high-speed crash), persistent (>4/hour) contractions, rupture of membranes, positive KB, bleeding, abnormal fetal heart rate tracing [40].

The indication for tetanus prophylaxis does not change during pregnancy (see Chapter 38). All traumatic wounds are at risk for development of tetanus, and passive immunization should be considered in all cases with human tetanus immune globulin 250 units given IM [42].

Radiation in the Pregnant Trauma Patient

Estimates of fetal radiation dose for the following examinations are shown in Table 39.2 [33]. Gray is the unit of measurement for absorbed dose of radiation; it is defined as 1 J of energy deposited in 1 kg of material. This has replaced the rad or roentgen-absorbed dose, which is the dose delivered to an object of 100 ergs of energy per gram of material. One Gray = 100 rads (or, 1 rad = 10 mGy). Teratogenic effects are of no concern until after 5 to 10 mGy. Plain radiographs of the spine and chest can be performed in pregnancy with minimal radiation exposure to the fetus with abdomen and pelvis shielding. The American College of Radiology considers that some radiological examinations expose a pregnant uterus to so low a dose that pregnancy does not affect the decision to proceed [48]: these include chest X-ray in the first and second trimester, X-ray or CT of the extremities, and any imaging of the head or neck. With CT scanning, the total radiation dose to the fetus depends on the site imaged, the machine and technique used, and on the distance between cuts.

Estimates of fetal radiation exposure with computed tomography (CT) are shown in Table 39.3 [49]. Because the actual fetal dose given in a procedure may be as much as tenfold higher than the published mean dose, depending on the patient’s size and the technique used, actual dose should be ascertained wherever possible by contacting the institution’s radiation physicists for dosimetry. The ACR suggests that unused personnel monitors for radiation dose could be placed above and below the patient’s pelvis so as to document the uterine dose [48]. The proxy for fetal radiation dose is uterine dose.

Concerns about radiation effects on the embryo or fetus include death, malformation, growth restriction, abnormal development of the brain with cognitive sequelae, and cancer. No data are available for cellular effects per se, only for clinical effects. Threshold doses for the appearance of death or malformation are shown in Table 39.4 [49]. Data for cognitive impairment (mental retardation), based on survivors of the atomic bomb exposed in utero, suggest no effect with exposure before 10 weeks or after 27 weeks. These data do raise the possibility of a dose-response (rather than threshold) model between 10 and 17 weeks with a loss of 30 IQ points per Gy (1000 mGy). Diagnostic radiologic procedures are orders of magnitude below these limits. Even in the 10- to 17-week fetus in which a dose-response curve may be postulated for cognitive impairment, an 80-mGy study, such as CT of the pelvis, would have only minimal potential to compromise intellectual function, for example, 2 IQ points.

Concerns have also been raised about the possibility of cancer induction in children exposed to intrauterine radiation. Unlike death or malformation, the induction of cancers is believed to be a dose-response rather than threshold phenomenon. Because childhood cancers are rare events, even a doubling or quadrupling of the risk has little impact on cancer deaths. Excess risk of fatal childhood cancer attributed to fetal exposure with typical diagnostic procedures range from 1 in 30,000 to 1 in 1700. The derived risk is estimated at one excess case per 33,000 per mGy of exposure. The highest risks, which remain quite small on a population basis, are seen with the highest exposures, for example, CT of the pelvis [49]. This concern is not a reason to routinely offer termination of pregnancy [49,50]. Recent estimates of conceptus radiation dose with a single anteroposterior chest radiograph (assuming an average maternal size: dose increases with increasing maternal size) range from 0.0021 to 0.0028 mGy in the first trimester to 0.1 to 5.9 mGy in the second and 0.1 to 1.9 mGy in the third trimester [51]. This corresponds to an excess risk of childhood cancer of approximately 10 per million.

Ultrasound and magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) do not utilize radiation energy and are not associated with adverse effects on the embryo or fetus. MRI is used infrequently in the setting of trauma.

Iodinated contrast medium is not known to be harmful to fetuses: It is not teratogenic and does not suppress fetal thyroid function. The American College of Radiology states, “We do not recommend withholding the use of iodinated contrast agents in pregnant or potentially pregnant patients when it is needed for diagnostic purposes” [52].

Unfortunately, pregnant women are less likely to undergo recommended imaging after trauma [53], a situation one author group has called “radiation fear” and which can only be decried.

CARDIOPULMONARY RESUSCITATION

Indications for beginning cardiopulmonary resuscitation (CPR) are no different in pregnant patients. Algorithms for treatment, including drugs and defibrillation, are unchanged by the fact of pregnancy [54]. After midpregnancy, left uterine displacement should be effected so as to avoid caval compression: This may be done with a wedge under the right hip, manual displacement of the uterus from above, or

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Weeks from LMP</th>
<th>Embryo/Fetus Death</th>
<th>Congenital Malformation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>No threshold at conception</td>
<td>250–500 mGy</td>
<td>200 mGy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 to 7</td>
<td>500 mGy</td>
<td>500 mGy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7 to 9</td>
<td>&gt;500 mGy</td>
<td>Very few observed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9 to 23</td>
<td>&gt;1000 mGy</td>
<td>Very few observed</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Source: From Health Protection Agency, the Royal College of Radiologists and the College of Radiographers. Protection of pregnant patients during diagnostic medical exposures to ionizing radiation: Advice from the Health Protection Agency, the Royal College of Radiologists and the College of Radiographers. 2009.
with a human wedge in which the patient’s right hip is lifted onto a rescuer’s knees. The 2015 American Heart Association (AHA) guidelines advocate manual uterine displacement in preference to the other techniques because of easier access for defibrillation and airway management and the potential for more effective chest compressions when the patient is not tilted [54]. Survival among pregnant women undergoing CPR in the emergency department after traumatic injury has been reported as 17% in a national administrative data set, worse than age-matched nonpregnant controls [55].

PRENATAL CARE

If the pregnant patient who has had trauma can be discharged undelivered, she should be counseled that abruption, PTB, and other complications can occur even days to weeks after discharge of a stable woman after trauma [5,16]. Even if they have been discharged from the hospital, women who suffered trauma in pregnancy should be aware that a normal baby outcome cannot be guaranteed. The optimal strategy for ongoing pregnancy surveillance is not known, but heightened suspicion for pregnancy complications is reasonable.

ANTEPARTUM TESTING

There is no trial to assess effectiveness of testing in this population.

DELIVERY

There are no specific recommendations as to delivery of women who have had some trauma earlier in pregnancy, which is a more common situation than the one of catastrophic trauma.

If efforts to resuscitate the pregnant patient having had major trauma are unsuccessful and there is no return of spontaneous circulation, perimortem cesarean delivery (PMCD) should be performed for patients at later gestational ages. The gestational age at which this intervention should be undertaken is subject to dispute, probably reflecting confusion about the purpose of PMCD: The goal has sometimes been understood as fetal salvage and some-...

REFERENCES

3. Ikossi DG, Lazar AA, Morabito D et al. Profile of mothers at risk: An analysis of injury and pregnancy loss in 1195 trauma patients. J Am Coll Surg 2005; 200: 49–56. [Level II-2. Cohort. The American College of Surgeons maintains a National Trauma Data Bank (NTDB)—Data collected from 130 trauma centers in the United States, including level I, level II, and level III facilities. Review of the NTDB between 1994 and 2001 compared 1195 female admissions that were additionally coded as pregnant to a control group of 76,126 injured women in the same age group. Because during this time there were approximately 27 million live births in the United States (NCHS), that equates to four trauma center admissions per 100,000 live births.]


17. Corsi PR, Rasslan S, de Oliveira LB et al. Trauma in pregnant women: Analysis of maternal and fetal mortality. *Injury* 1999; 30: 239–43. [II-3. Fetal death: Corsi’s 315; Shah’s 14% if you don’t count elective abortions; Rogers 9%; Warner’s—a fairly small study—was 6%; and Theodorou’s 18%. Maternal death: Corsi 12%, Shah 9%, Rogers 4%, and Warner 3%]


29. Curet MJ, Schermer CR, Demarest GB et al. Predictors of outcome in trauma during pregnancy: Identification of patients who can safely be monitored for less than 6 hours. *J Trauma* 2000; 49: 18–24. [Level III. Case series. Eight years’ experience at a large level I trauma center; 271 pregnant women who were admitted after blunt trauma; reviewed delivery outcomes in approximately half]


46. Muench MV, Baschat AA, Reddy UM et al. Kleihauer–Betke testing is important in all cases of maternal trauma. *J Trauma* 2004; 57: 1094–8. [II-2]

47. Ochsenbein-Imhof N, Ochsenbein AF, Seifert B et al. Quantification of fetomaternal hemorrhage by fluorescence microscopy is equivalent to flow cytometry. *Transfusion* 2002; 42: 947–53. [II-3]


49. Health Protection Agency, the Royal College of Radiologists and the College of Radiographers. Protection of pregnant patients during diagnostic medical exposures to ionizing radiation: Advice from the Health Protection Agency, the Royal College of Radiologists and the College of Radiographers. 2009. Available at: https://www.ipem.ac.uk/Portals/0/Images/Protection%20of%20pregnant%20patients.pdf. Accessed November 20, 2010. [III, review]


Critical care
Lauren A. Plante

KEY POINTS
• In the developed world, <1% of maternity admissions require admission to intensive care but up to 5% require admission to intermediate care or a high-dependency unit.
• Most maternal admissions to ICU are postpartum.
• Antepartum admission to ICU is associated with high rates of preterm birth.
• Standard of care for acute respiratory distress syndrome is a low-tidal-volume strategy although this has not been formally tested in pregnancy.
• Delayed recognition and treatment of sepsis increases mortality.

BACKGROUND
The field of maternal critical care remains insufficiently researched. Although many recommendations in critical care are based on good evidence, little is specifically focused on pregnant or postpartum women. Much of this chapter, perforce, addresses general critical care, extrapolating to maternal critical care whenever possible.

INCIDENCE
In the developed world, between 1 and 8/1000 obstetric admissions are managed in an intensive care unit (ICU) [1–11]. Among this population, the risk of death ranges from 2% to 11%, a figure that, although better than average ICU mortality in a general population, is orders of magnitude higher than the maternal mortality ratio in the developed world.

Figures on ICU admission do not include women with similarly life-threatening conditions who are treated within the confines of a labor and delivery unit or specialized obstetric care unit. Another 1% to 5% of all women admitted for delivery require this type of care [12–14].

Definitions of maternal mortality (and related terms) and severe maternal morbidity (also called, at times, near-miss mortality) are shown in Table 40.1. Audits of near-miss maternal mortality or severe acute maternal morbidity have been used to quantitate life-threatening conditions and therefore constitute a proxy for intensive care utilization. In Scotland, severe morbidity and near-miss events were recorded in 4/1000 deliveries although only one third of these ended up in the ICU [8]. Severe maternal morbidity also occurred in 4/1000 deliveries between 1991 and 2001 in Canada [15] but increased to 14/1000 between 2003 and 2007 [16]. This increase in Canadian figures may represent differential classification, different data sets, or a real increase in severe acute maternal morbidity over time. Analysis of year-by-year data shows a steady increase in rates of acute renal failure, assisted ventilation, and major obstetrical hemorrhage in Canada [17]. Admission to an ICU was reported in 2.4/1000 deliveries in the Netherlands, but only one third of women with serious maternal morbidity were cared for in the ICU [18]. Population-based estimates put rates of severe maternal morbidity during hospitalizations for delivery at 5.1/1000 in the United States between 1991 and 2003 [19]. Using the same methodology, the same researchers calculated rates of severe maternal morbidity in 2-year intervals from 1998 through 2009, this time analyzing both delivery and postpartum hospitalizations: Severe morbidity rates during delivery hospitalizations rose by 75% and during postpartum hospitalizations by 114% [20]. By 2009, the frequency of severe maternal morbidity during hospitalization for delivery was 129.1 per 10,000 delivery hospitalizations and during postpartum hospitalizations was 29 per 10,000 or about a tripling of the 1991–2003 rate. With 4 million births per year in the United States [21], these figures imply more than 50,000 episodes of severe acute maternal morbidity among pregnant and postpartum women in this country. The need for maternal critical care appears to be increasing in the developed world, influenced largely by an increase in both the rate of postpartum hemorrhage and the risk of adverse outcomes among women with postpartum hemorrhage [22,23]. One may predict that the need will continue to rise in parallel with a rising cesarean rate [24,25].

LEVELS OF CRITICAL CARE
The American College of Critical Care Medicine (ACCM) describes three levels of adult ICUs [26]:

Level I critical care: Typically found in university medical centers; provide comprehensive, sometimes specialized, critical care. They require continuous availability of sophisticated technologies (Table 40.2), highly trained nursing staff, and physicians with critical care training immediately available at the bedside. Comprehensive support services are in place.

Level II critical care: Although level II centers can provide comprehensive critical care, they lack resources for highly specialized subpopulations, such as cardiothoracic patients, and must have arrangements in place to transfer out patients who exceed their expertise.

Level III critical care: Level III ICUs provide only initial stabilization of critically ill patients, followed by transfer for comprehensive critical care to a level I or II facility.

An alternative to the ICU is the intermediate care or high-dependency unit (HDU) [27]. Patients who require frequent monitoring of vital signs or frequent nursing interventions but do not need specific ICU life support treatments may be admitted to such a unit. The intermediate care unit is staffed at lower nursing levels and includes less complex technology than the ICU, which makes it less expensive to run, frees up beds in the ICU, and has been associated with...
Table 40.1 Definitions of Maternal Mortality (and Related Terms) and Severe Maternal Morbidity (or Near-Miss Maternal Mortality)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Definition</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pregnancy-related deaths</td>
<td>Same as above</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Direct obstetric deaths</td>
<td>Same as above</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indirect obstetric deaths</td>
<td>Same as above</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Late maternal deaths</td>
<td>Same as above</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 40.2 Equipment and Support That an ICU Should Be Prepared to Provide

- Continuous ECG monitoring (with high/low alarms), all patients
- Continuous arterial pressure monitoring (invasive and noninvasive)
- Central venous pressure monitoring
- Transcutaneous oxygen monitoring or pulse oximetry for all patients receiving supplemental oxygen
- Airway equipment, including laryngoscopes and endotracheal tubes
- Ventilatory equipment: Ambu bags, ventilators, oxygen, compressed air
- Emergency resuscitation equipment
- Equipment to support hemodynamically unstable patients: infusion pumps, blood/fluid warmers, pressure bags, blood filters
- Beds with removable headboard and adjustable position; various specialty beds
- Adequate lighting for bedside procedures
- Suction
- Cooling/warming blankets
- Scales
- Temporary pacemakers (transcutaneous and transvenous)
- Temperature monitoring devices
- Pulmonary artery pressure monitoring
- Cardiac output monitoring
- Continuous and intermittent dialysis and ultrafiltration
- Peritoneal dialysis
- Capnography
- Fiberoptic bronchoscopy
- Intracranial pressure monitoring
- Continuous EEG monitoring capability
- Positive and negative pressure isolation rooms
- Immediate access to information (medical books, journals, drug information, poison control, personnel phone and page numbers, patient lab and test data, medical record information)

greater family satisfaction. Intermediate care units include post-ICU step-down units, telemetry units for cardiac patients, etc.

Low-risk monitor patients are those predicted to be at low risk of requiring active life-saving treatment, such as mechanical ventilation or vasopressors. The most frequent monitoring services deployed in the care of such patients in the ICU are ECG (>99%), intra-arterial BP monitoring (51%), and pulse oximetry (33%), and the most frequent labor-intensive nursing interventions were intake/output measurement, hourly vital signs, and hourly neurologic checks [28]. When planning obstetric critical care services, the intermediate care unit is a good approximation of the type and acuity of services generally needed. However, recent experience in 2009 with novel influenza should remind us that pregnant women are at higher risk of respiratory failure in some circumstances, and a contingency plan for epidemic flu (and other respiratory infections) must be made, including provision of mechanical ventilatory support [29–31].

An alternate schema for levels of critical care comes from the Intensive Care Society (ICS) in the United Kingdom [32]. Unfortunately, this numbering system runs in reverse from the ACCM levels: level 0 refers to normal ward care, level 1 to patients at risk of deterioration, level 2 to patients with single-organ failure, and level 3 to patients with more than a single organ failure or those requiring mechanical ventilation (Table 40.3) [32]. The Maternal Critical Care Working Group, convened in London in 2011, explicitly adapted the ICS guidelines to maternal care: see Table 40.4 [33].

ORGANIZATION OF OBSTETRIC CRITICAL CARE SERVICES

If the discipline of critical care is young, that of obstetric critical care is younger still. There are no evidence based recommendations published specifically for critical care in
interventions. The degree of nursing care involved, although higher-acuity than on most general wards, is well within the abilities of most labor and delivery nurses in a specialty or subspecialty care facility, that is, levels of maternal care II and III as described by the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists and Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine [54]. The intermediate care unit or HDU is also designed to provide care of this type.

A smaller number of obstetrical patients have non-obstetric causes for ICU admission: these amount to 20% to 30% of the total [1,5,7,13]. Most obstetric patients who are admitted to the ICU are sent there postpartum rather than un delivered [5,6,39]. The preponderance of postpartum over antepartum admissions may stem from postpartum vulnerability (e.g., postpartum hemorrhage, postpartum decompensation of cardiac disease) or to ascertainment bias: Obstetricians may be reluctant to transfer or intensivists to accept a patient whose fetus must be considered in management. In the rare case of an “obstetrical ICU” existing within a labor/delivery unit, there is a higher percentage of both antepartum admissions and primary medical (nonobstetric) admissions [7,44]. This may reflect a lower threshold for admission to the obstetrical ICU (as no transfer or travel is involved), a need to justify the continuation of the service, or a preference to transfer out postpartum patients: Labor and delivery (L&D) beds are a scarce commodity, and a postpartum patient requiring intensive care ties up space and personnel when she could be adequately cared for outside of the obstetric unit.

### Table 40.3 Levels of Adult ICU Care

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Level</th>
<th>Patients whose needs can be met through normal ward care in acute hospital.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Level 0</td>
<td>Patients at risks of their condition deteriorating, or those recently relocated from higher levels of care, whose needs can be met on an acute ward with additional advice and support from the Critical Care Team.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Level 2</td>
<td>Patients requiring more detailed observation or intervention including support for a single failing organ system or postoperative care and those “stepping down” from higher levels of care.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Level 3</td>
<td>Patients requiring advanced respiratory support alone or basic respiratory support together with support of at least two organ systems. This level includes all complex patients requiring support for multorgan failure.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


### Hemorrhage and hypertension are, consistently, the most common causes of admission from obstetrical services to intensive care [1–11,15,18,36–53]. The majority of these patients require monitoring and only simple interventions. The degree of nursing care involved, although higher-acuity than on most general wards, is well within the abilities of most labor and delivery nurses in a specialty or subspecialty care facility, that is, levels of maternal care II and III as described by the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists and Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine [54]. The intermediate care unit or HDU is also designed to provide care of this type.

A smaller number of obstetrical patients have non-obstetric causes for ICU admission: these amount to 20% to 30% of the total [1,5,7,13]. Most obstetric patients who are admitted to the ICU are sent there postpartum rather than un delivered [5,6,39]. The preponderance of postpartum over antepartum admissions may stem from postpartum vulnerability (e.g., postpartum hemorrhage, postpartum decompensation of cardiac disease) or to ascertainment bias: Obstetricians may be reluctant to transfer or intensivists to accept a patient whose fetus must be considered in management. In the rare case of an “obstetrical ICU” existing within a labor/delivery unit, there is a higher percentage of both antepartum admissions and primary medical (nonobstetric) admissions [7,44]. This may reflect a lower threshold for admission to the obstetrical ICU (as no transfer or travel is involved), a need to justify the continuation of the service, or a preference to transfer out postpartum patients: Labor and delivery (L&D) beds are a scarce commodity, and a postpartum patient requiring intensive care ties up space and personnel when she could be adequately cared for outside of the obstetric unit.

### Table 40.4 Levels of Care According to the Maternal Critical Care Working Group

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Level of Care</th>
<th>Maternity Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Level 0: Normal ward care</td>
<td>Care of low-risk mother</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Level 1: Additional monitoring or intervention, or step down from higher level of care</td>
<td>» Risk of hemorrhage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>» Oxytocin infusion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>» Mild pre-eclampsia on oral antihypertensives/fluid restriction, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>» Woman with medical condition such as congenital heart disease, diabetic on insulin infusion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Level 2: Single organ support</td>
<td>Basic respiratory support (BRS)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>» 50% or oxygen via face mask to maintain oxygen saturation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>» Continuous positive airway pressure (CPAP), bilevel positive airway pressure (BiPAP)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Basic cardiovascular support (BCVS)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>» Intravenous antihypertensives, to control blood pressure in pre-eclampsia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>» Arterial line used for pressure monitoring or sampling</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>» CVP line used for fluid management and CVP monitoring to guide therapy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Advanced cardiovascular support (ACVS)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>» Simultaneous use of at least two intravenous, anti-arrhythmic/antihypertensive/vasoactive drugs, one of which must be a vasoactive drug</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>» Need to measure and treat cardiac output</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Neurological support</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>» Magnesium infusion to control seizures (not prophylaxis)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>» Intracranial pressure monitoring</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>» Hepatic support</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>» Management of acute fulminant hepatic failure, e.g., from HELLP syndrome or acute fatty liver, such that transplantation is being considered</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Level 3: Advanced respiratory support alone, or support of two or more organ systems above</td>
<td>Advanced respiratory support</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>» Invasive mechanical ventilation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Support of two or more organ systems</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>» Renal support and BRS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>» BRS/BCVS and an additional organ supported*</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


* A BRS and BCVS occurring simultaneously during the episode count as single organ support.
Most obstetrical services would be unable to implement a full-service obstetrical ICU. Both the technology and the personnel mandated by ICU guidelines are impracticable. The HDU or intermediate care unit, however, is a reasonable model for much of obstetric critical care. Published experience, albeit limited, is encouraging. A high-volume public hospital in Dallas admitted 1.7% of maternity cases to a five-bed obstetrics intermediate care unit, usually postpartum (80%), with a mean length of stay less than 24 hours [13]. Of these 500 women, 15% subsequently were transferred to a full-service medical or surgical ICU, most for mechanical ventilation. A referral maternity hospital in Dublin opened a “high-dependency” or intermediate care unit [12]. Prior to debut of the HDU, patients requiring intensive care services (0.1% of maternity admissions) were transferred out to another hospital with a medical/surgical ICU. After the obstetric HDU was established, the referral rate to the off-site ICU dropped by 50%, but the HDU was busier than one might have expected: 1% of maternity patients were admitted thereto, a tenfold increase in the percentage of patients who were managed as higher acuity. The question as to whether this represents underutilization of needed services before the advent of the obstetric intermediate care unit or overutilization after cannot be answered. In a large women’s hospital in Birmingham without an on-site ICU, a three-bed HDU within the delivery suite accommodated between 1% and 5% of all obstetric patients: The percentage has steadily been increasing over time [14]. Among women admitted to this HDU, 3.5% were then transferred out to intensive care.

The American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, jointly with the Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine, produced an obstetric care consensus on levels of maternal care, the stated goal being a reduction in maternal morbidity and mortality [54]. Critical care services are specifically mentioned in level III and IV facilities. Level III facilities are expected to have an on-site intensive care unit...and critical care providers on-site to actively collaborate with maternal-fetal specialists at all times. Equipment and personnel with expertise must be available on-site to ventilate and monitor women in the labor and delivery unit until they can be safely transferred to the ICU.

The concept of critical care in pregnancy is more explicitly spelled out in the description of level IV facilities, which are to be regional perinatal health care centers:

A level IV facility is distinct from a level III facility in the approach to the care of pregnant women and women in the postpartum period with complex and critical illnesses. In addition to having ICU care on-site for obstetric patients, a level IV facility must have...a maternal-fetal medicine care team that has the expertise to assume responsibility for pregnant women and women in the postpartum period who are in critical condition or have complex medical conditions. The maternal-fetal medicine team collaborates actively in the comanagement of all obstetric patients who require critical care and ICU services. This includes comanagement of ICU-admitted obstetric patients...The team should be led by a board-certified maternal-fetal medicine subspecialist with expertise in critical care obstetrics...The maternal-fetal medicine team must have expertise in critical care at the physician level, nursing level, and ancillary services level...There should be institutional support for the routine involvement of a maternal-fetal medicine care team with the critical care units and specialists...The director of obstetric services is a board-certified maternal-fetal medicine subspecialist or a board-certified obstetrician–gynecologist with expertise in critical care obstetrics.

The American College of Critical Care Medicine states, “The Physician Director should meet guidelines for the definition of an intensivist and the practice of critical care medicine” [55]. The definition of an intensivist is one few obstetricians or maternal-fetal medicine specialists would be able to meet because it includes not only skills, interest, and availability but also completion of an approved training program in critical care medicine. Mabie has suggested several ways in which an obstetrician might obtain some critical care training [44]: a critical care fellowship, a residency in internal medicine, or a maternal-fetal medicine fellowship. A plea to put the “M” back into MFM [56] resulted in a new ABOG requirement for MFM fellows to complete 1 month of ICU training, which cannot be considered adequate in itself. Critical care medicine fellowships run 12 months under the aegis of anesthesia or surgery (both of which are open to individuals who have completed residency in OBGYN) or 2 years after completion of an emergency medicine or internal medicine residency or 3 years after a pediatrics residency. Having acquired formal training would, of course, be insufficient if there is not enough clinical material to maintain skills and expertise: This is an even higher hurdle. Zeeman et al. [13] mention only that a maternal-fetal medicine faculty member was director of the OB intermediate care unit without specifying whether this individual had any critical care qualifications or training. Despite the patient volume, it appears that no mechanical ventilation, pulmonary artery catheterization, or vasopressor therapy was carried out in this unit: This is appropriate for an intermediate care unit but ensures that providers’ skills decay. The Birmingham HDU, which also appears to exclude mechanical ventilation [14], is described only as “staffed by qualified midwives” with anesthetic and obstetric teams covering.

Recommendations for nursing care in an ICU [26,55] state that all nurses working in critical care should complete a clinical and didactic course in critical care before taking on patient responsibilities, participate in continuing education, and assume nurse-to-patient ratios either 1:2 or based on patient acuity. High nurse-to-patient ratios are already standard on labor/delivery units and would, therefore, be rather easy to implement. As above, acquiring and maintaining critical care skills would be considerably more difficult. ACOG and SMFM have recommended that nursing services in maternal level III hospitals have “continuously available...RN with special training and expertise in managing women with complex maternal illnesses” and that level IV facilities should also have “nursing leadership [with] expertise in maternal intensive and critical care” [54].

Competence in core procedural skills is expected of any physician practicing in critical care [57]:

1. Maintenance of airway (nonintubated patient)
2. Ventilation (bag and mask)
3. Endotracheal intubation
4. Management of pneumothorax
5. Arterial puncture; insertion of an arterial line
6. Central venous cannulation
7. Pulmonary artery catheterization (insertion, maintenance, interpretation)—little used now
8. ECG interpretation
9. Cardiopulmonary resuscitation, defibrillation
Some critical care techniques are used less frequently now than in the past. **Utilization of the pulmonary artery catheter dropped** by two thirds in the first decade of the 21st century [58], after demonstration that its use is not associated with improvement in outcomes. Noninvasive methods of ventilation have replaced mechanical ventilation in some cases. More recent competencies for critical care training and practice now also include ultrasound imaging (lung, abdominal, and heart as well as procedural guidance), advanced airway management (including supraglottic airway), bronchoscopy, and thoracentesis [59,60]. As some techniques are phased out, new ones appear; thus, the list here can only be taken as a snapshot of current critical care practice. Skill maintenance may not be feasible unless alternative means are sought, such as simulation-based or supervised experience.

**CONSIDERATIONS IN TRANSFER (INTERHOSPITAL)**

Premature delivery may occur concurrently with critical illness because of underlying medical or obstetric conditions, spontaneous preterm labor, or iatrogenic interventions. One case-control study [6] puts at 36 weeks the mean gestational age achieved by antepartum patients admitted to ICU. For respiratory failure in pregnancy, median gestational age achieved is 31 to 32 weeks [61,62]. The Mayo series of 93 antepartum admissions to ICU reported that one third resulted in fetal losses and one half in preterm births [54]. Thus, it would appear prudent that a pregnant woman requiring ICU services, after achieving a gestational age compatible with extrauterine viability, should be managed in a facility with both adult and neonatal ICU capability. Because some hospitals maintain adult intensive care services but no maternity services and others, specifically women’s hospitals, do not have adult intensive care, arrangements should be in place for seamless transfer to a facility that maintains appropriate levels of care for mothers and neonates. Guidelines for perinatal transfers have advocated antenatal over neonatal transfer when feasible. In the event that maternal transport is unsafe or impossible, alternative arrangements for neonatal transport must be made.

**Transfer in cases of critical illness is more complex than the usual perinatal transfer.** The transport process increases risk of morbidity and mortality for the critically ill [64] and therefore cannot be embarked upon lightly. Once the decision to transfer has been made and the patient (or her designated decision maker) has consented, she should be transferred as expeditiously as possible to the receiving facility that has agreed to accept her. If the patient is unstable, she should be stabilized and/or resuscitated to the best possible condition prior to transport albeit with the understanding that complete stabilization may not be possible outside of the receiving facility. Transport may be by ground or air, based on the urgency of the patient’s condition, the distance between facilities, weather conditions, potential interventions during transport, and equipment or personnel available. The minimum monitoring of a critically ill patient during transport includes continuous pulse oximetry and ECG as well as regular assessment of vital signs [64]. Patients who already have arterial or central lines should have those monitored as well. Women who are mechanically ventilated must have the endotracheal tube position confirmed and secured before transport and must be assessed for adequacy of oxygenation and ventilation.

All critically ill patients must have secure venous access before transport.

Opinion, but no data, guides us as to additional monitoring during transport of the critically ill obstetrical patient. Patients at high risk of delivering en route should be held at the initial hospital until delivered because there is unlikely to be access to both the patient’s head and her vagina in tight transport quarters, most transport teams lack expertise in delivery and neonatal resuscitation, and a dedicated neonatal transport team can be summoned for the newborn. There is little benefit in tocodynamometry during the transport process with information insufficient to make a recommendation. Fetal monitoring during transport may be feasible to perform but is of unproven utility. Because fetal monitoring equipment takes up space in tight quarters and there is little or nothing the transport team can do en route for an ominous tracing, it seems preferable to avoid fetal monitoring when transporting a critically ill obstetric patient. Simple measures, such as left uterine displacement and supplemental oxygen, should be routine during transport of the critically ill pregnant patient.

**ADMISSION TO INTENSIVE CARE**

The commonest reasons for transfer to ICU are, reliably, hemorrhage and hypertension, and most admissions are postpartum. Level II and level III maternity units [54] may be able to care for such patients on the labor and delivery unit, particularly if an intermediate care unit or HDU is located there. Level I facilities, however, should consider transfer either to a higher-level perinatal center or to the ICU at their own facility. In cases in which both obstetric and critical care services are at the most basic level, transfer of such patients to another facility may be the best approach. A small number of OB-GYN specialty hospitals exist in the United States [65]: These usually have limited critical care support or consultation available in-house and probably should also have a low threshold for transfer. Obstetrics services in such hospitals should have a set of site-specific guidelines established at the hospital level.

The American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists has suggested using an objective parameters model [66,67] when deciding need for maternal critical care: see Table 40.5. This simplifies the process of triage in that any patient meeting those criteria becomes a candidate for admission or transfer to ICU. Alternate models are diagnosis-driven or priority-driven, which are less useful in this patient population.

In any center, a decision to transfer to ICU should be made on the basis of need for site-specific care. An obstetric service should adopt guidelines for transfer based on the level of care required, modified by the level of care that could be provided on the labor floor or within an existing obstetric intermediate care unit. **Necessary care must not be withheld while awaiting transfer.** The Maternal Critical Care Working Group has called for equity of care for pregnant and puerperal women with critical illness, meaning that the same standard of care applies for both their obstetrical and critical care needs regardless of where that care must be delivered [33].

**LOGISTICS**

The Maternal Critical Care Working Group provides useful guidance about service organization, competencies, and
Table 40.5  Objective Parameters Model: Criteria for Admission to ICU

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Vital signs</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Heart rate</td>
<td>&lt;40 or &gt;150 bpm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Blood pressure</td>
<td>&lt;80 mmHg systolic (or 20 mmHg below the patient’s usual BP)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mean arterial pressure</td>
<td>&lt;60 mmHg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Blood pressure</td>
<td>&gt;120 mm diastolic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Respiratory rate</td>
<td>&gt;35/min</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Laboratory values (new)</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Serum sodium</td>
<td>&lt;110 or &gt;170 mEq/L</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Serum potassium</td>
<td>&lt;2.0 or &gt;7.0 mEq/L</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PaO₂</td>
<td>&lt;50 mmHg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pH</td>
<td>&lt;7.1 or &gt;7.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Serum calcium</td>
<td>&gt;15 mg/dL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Serum glucose</td>
<td>&gt;800 mg/dL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Toxic drug level</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Imaging (new)</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cerebrovascular hemorrhage, contusion, or subarachnoid hemorrhage with altered mental status or focal neurologic findings</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ruptured viscous or esophageal varices with hemodynamic instability</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dissecting aortic aneurysm</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MI with complex arrhythmia, hemodynamic instability or congestive heart failure</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sustained ventricular tachycardia or ventricular fibrillation</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Complete heart block with hemodynamic instability</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Physical findings (new)</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Airway obstruction</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anuria</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Burns &gt;10% of body surface area</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cardiac tamponade</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coma</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Continuous seizures, cyanosis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unequal pupils (unconscious patient)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


Workforce development [33]. This document is indispensable to anyone contemplating setting up maternal critical care services.

Zeeman proposed a “blueprint” for obstetric critical care [13,68], that is, an intermediate care unit in the obstetric setting. She lists as advantages the “concurrent availability of expert obstetric care and critical care management... the option of continuous fetal monitoring with on-hand expertise in its interpretation... the advantages of keeping mother and infant together combined with the improved continuity of antenatal and postnatal care” [68]. This seems indisputable for units that are big enough to keep up expertise. For lower-volume centers, however, it is not always feasible, and for even the largest services, there will be patients who are best treated in a full-service ICU.

Better outcomes are demonstrated in a general medical/surgical ICU population when specialized ICU physicians staff the unit. High-intensity ICU physician staffing (either a closed ICU model or mandatory intensivist consultation) is associated with lower ICU mortality, lower hospital mortality, and decreased length of stay in both ICU and hospital compared to models in which intensivist consultation is optional [69]. Although there are limited data specifically addressing the critical care obstetric patient, it would be odd indeed if intensivist input did not improve outcomes in this population as well [70,71].

If a patient who is still pregnant requires critical care services, the first question to answer is: where is she best cared for? If the pregnancy is early or the duration of ICU services is anticipated to be lengthy, the labor floor is not likely the best location. If she is in active labor, the labor floor is probably the best choice. Most patients, however, will fall into neither of these categories; factors affecting the decision include degree of instability, interventions required, staffing and expertise available, anticipated duration of ICU stay, probability of delivery, access for family, etc.

The obstetrician transferring a patient to an ICU must be familiar with the types of units available within the facility, that is, general medical/surgical ICU or specialty unit (cardiothoracic, neurologic/neurosurgical, etc.), and understand whether the ICU is open, closed, or hybrid/transitional [72]. In an open unit, any physician can write orders or perform procedures; management or consultation by an intensivist is not mandatory. In a closed ICU, only the critical care staff writes orders and manages patients: The primary team gives over control. The hybrid or transitional model allows all physicians to write orders but requires an on-site critical care physician to consult, round on, or comanage all patients in the unit. As above, involving the intensivist improves outcome.

Despite the need for expertise, it is acknowledged that critical care requires a multidisciplinary approach [55] to achieve best outcomes. The usual ICU team comprises physicians, nurses, pharmacists, and respiratory therapists. In the case of maternal critical care, the ICU team must also include obstetricians, obstetric/perinatal nurses, and, sometimes, pediatricians. Commonly, the physician cohort would be subspecialty-trained, for example, maternal-fetal medicine and neonatology.

When an undelivered patient is transferred to ICU, efforts should be made to map out the anticipated course of her condition or disease, look ahead to possible complications, and set parameters for delivery (except in cases of too-early gestational age). Modifications of physical and laboratory assessment related to pregnancy must be known and taken into account; the obstetrician will be more familiar with these than the intensivist. The plan should be clear to the medical team and to the patient’s family and to the patient herself if she is able to understand. The risk–benefit balance for a given intervention will change as pregnancy progresses, so it is important to revisit the care plan on a regular basis.

Fetal monitoring will often, but not always, be appropriate. If plans are made for fetal monitoring outside of the labor and delivery unit, the team should strategize about the type and frequency of monitoring as well as the expected interventions. It is not appropriate to commit to continuous fetal monitoring unless the strip can be interpreted in real time by someone qualified to read it and empowered to take corrective action. In some cases, this will entail an obstetric or perinatal nurse at the bedside in ICU. Alternatively, remote access monitoring can be used to transmit the tracing to a display on the obstetrical unit. Changes in the fetal monitor tracing often reflect alterations in maternal physiology rather than in the fetal status per se and thus may function as an early warning system for derangements in maternal end-organ status (acid–base balance, volume status, etc.). This means that the response that is a reflex on the labor floor—in
which the nonreassuring fetal tracing is immediately evaluated for delivery—must be suppressed long enough to look for alternate explanations that would be better addressed by correcting maternal status.

The **plan for delivery** should be made long before delivery is imminent and address preferred location for delivery, mode of delivery, requirement for analgesia or anesthesia, and access for the neonatal team. It must also include alternatives in case matters do not go as anticipated.

**The patient in an HDU or intermediate care unit on the labor floor can easily be delivered there.** Many critically ill obstetric patients will, however, be elsewhere. Advantages of vaginal delivery in ICU include ready availability of critical care interventions and staff, plus avoidance of potentially destabilizing transport. Disadvantages include lack of space to conduct delivery, unfamiliarity of critical care personnel with obstetric management, space constraints for the pediatric team and equipment, and inadequate privacy. The alternative, transport to L&D, ensures familiarity with obstetric issues but unfamiliarity with critical care issues. The process of transport itself is risky for a critically ill patient [64].

**When considering delivery in ICU,** the increased likelihood of instrumental delivery must be kept in mind. Patients with translaryngeal intubation cannot close the glottis to push and therefore may have a prolonged second stage, often requiring delivery via vacuum or forceps. Patients with cardiac, respiratory or neuromuscular compromise are at risk of decompensation during labor, especially in second stage. Women with altered mental status may not tolerate pain or obstetric manipulation. Pain relief cannot be forgone in ICU even when a patient cannot verbalize discomfort, but patients may not qualify for regional analgesia techniques because of issues with positioning, hemodynamic instability, or coagulopathy. Intravenous analgesia is, of course, an alternative to epidural, but is not as effective in protecting a medically fragile patient from hemodynamic derangements associated with pain.

**Cesarean delivery in ICU is fraught with hazards.** The ICU does, on occasion, host surgical procedures performed under local anesthesia, such as tracheostomy, percutaneous gastrostomy, insertion of vena cava filters, or diagnostic laparoscopy [73–76]. Some cardiothoracic units allow emergency re-exploration in ICU for bleeding or tamponade rather than retransport back to the operating room [77], and resuscitative laparotomy has, rarely, been performed at the bedside when patients have been deemed too unstable for transport to OR although with very high mortality rates [78]. For the most part, however, surgical procedures are avoided in ICU when possible. Disadvantages of performing cesarean in the ICU include inadequate space for anesthetic and surgical equipment (to say nothing of required neonatal resuscitation gear), inadequate lighting, unfamiliarity of attendant personnel with the operation, the accumulation of a crowd of onlookers, and the risk of nosocomial infection with drug-resistant organisms: ICUs have the highest rates of health care-associated infections in a hospital [79,80]. In the special condition of perimortem cesarean, of course, these concerns would be ignored.

**ROLE OF OB-GYN**

In an intermediate care unit on a labor/delivery floor, the **lead physician** will typically be an obstetrician-gynecologist (Ob-Gyn) with or without subspecialty maternal-fetal medicine training; sometimes this function will be fulfilled instead by an obstetric anesthesiologist. The team leader would coordinate and manage the patient’s care, in addition to providing hands-on care as necessary. It is essential that the lead physician be immediately available to the critically ill obstetrical patient and that coverage arrangements are adequate in order to avoid interference with prompt and timely delivery of care. When other specialty consultation is required, the lead physician must coordinate and integrate such consultation as appropriate. He/she must also be able to clearly decide when the patient’s condition is no longer appropriate for intermediate care and then transfer up for intensive care or down for routine ward care.

**When obstetric patients are transferred to the ICU,** the obstetrician’s role will depend on the ICU model (open or closed) and the patient’s status (antepartum or postpartum). The Ob-Gyn’s anxiety about a patient in the ICU is easily matched by the ICU team’s anxiety about a fetus in the uterus, and even in a closed unit, the obstetrician’s input is welcomed. Decisions about care for a pregnant patient in the ICU should be made in concert by the multidisciplinary team and should involve the patient and her family insofar as this is feasible. **No matter what the ICU model, the obstetrician should continue to see the patient and consult with the primary ICU team daily,** offering pregnancy-specific knowledge necessary to give the best care to these complex patients.

If a patient is transferred to the ICU postpartum, the obstetrician’s role becomes simpler medically although the patient and family may have concerns regarding any obstetrical event that precipitated transfer. Anger, dissatisfaction, or legal action often follow a perceived bad outcome: In case of a postpartum complication or condition requiring critical care, the obstetrician may bear the brunt of questions. This is likely to be stressful even when there has been no evident error as the fear of litigation is prominent in such cases [81].

The medical issues with a postpartum admission to the ICU typically relate to uncertainty (on the part of the primary ICU team) about vaginal bleeding, evaluation of fever, therapies such as magnesium, and feasibility of breast-feeding, especially compatibility with various medications. There may be surgical issues, such as re-exploration or reclosure of incisions. Under some circumstances, the Ob-Gyn will be the advocate for bringing together the critically ill mother and her new baby.

Fetal surveillance is often employed when a pregnant patient is admitted to ICU. The obstetrician who is used to reviewing fetal heart rate tracings as an indicator of fetal status should consider that the fetal heart rate tracing reflects maternal end-organ (uteroplacental) perfusion and maternal acid–base status as well. If baseline variability disappears or decelerations are seen, a reason should be sought in maternal physiology, such as hypotension, acidemia, or compression of the inferior vena cava by the gravid uterus in supine position. Correction of these factors may result in improvement of the tracing.

The potential for preterm delivery is high in the ICU [6,61–63]. Attempts to suppress preterm contractions are ill advised in the case of critical illness in pregnancy: Aside from the equivocal efficacy of tocolytic drugs, preterm labor may represent an adaptive response. No drug is devoid of side effects, which must be carefully monitored in the setting of critical illness (tachycardia and decreased BP with β-agonists, effects on platelet function and renal perfusion with indomethacin, magnesium’s effects on cardiac function, etc.). But
because of the potential for preterm birth, the threshold for administration of a course of antenatal corticosteroids to promote fetal lung maturity should be low. Corticosteroids are often given in an ICU setting for reasons, such as sepsis and spinal cord injury: It may be feasible to substitute betamethasone or dexamethasone for the usual hydrocortisone in these circumstances in order to obtain additional fetal benefit.

Physicians who deal with the critically ill are familiar with the difficulties of informed consent and with the frequent need to identify a designated decision maker. This is not typically a problem with which obstetricians have much experience, but in critical care obstetrics, the designated decision maker must assume the role for both mother and fetus when the woman herself cannot. Even if a woman has previously made her wishes known with a living will or advance directive, state law varies: Advance directives may be specifically invalidated if a patient is pregnant [82]. The hospital ethics committee may be called upon for guidance as needed.

**SPECIFIC CONDITIONS FOR WHICH CRITICAL CARE MAY BE REQUIRED**

Reviews of severe acute maternal morbidity [1–11,15,18,36–53] suggest the following conditions are of most concern: hemorrhage, eclampsia, cardiac arrest, pulmonary edema, respiratory failure, renal failure, sepsis, shock (multiple types), cerebrovascular event, coma, anesthetic complications (e.g., aspiration, difficult/failed intubation), and other cardiac conditions. Most obstetricians will be familiar with hemorrhage, preeclampsia, and eclampsia—in fact, more familiar than most intensivists—and these conditions are frequently handled on a labor and delivery unit without transfer. The remainder of the chapter addresses a few critical care topics with which the obstetrician is likely to be less familiar. With the understanding that critical care medicine, like any other branch of medicine, is constantly evolving, current evidence based practice in critical care is described below.

**Acute Respiratory Distress Syndrome and Mechanical Ventilation**

The acute respiratory distress syndrome (ARDS) is a non-specific response of the lung to a variety of inciting events. It is the extreme form of a spectrum of **acute lung injury (ALI)** and has been defined as “a syndrome of inflammation and increased permeability that is associated with a constellation of clinical, radiology, and physiologic abnormalities that cannot be explained by, but may coexist with, left atrial or pulmonary capillary hypertension” [83]. In other words, ARDS is a **type of noncardiogenic pulmonary edema**. Criteria for ARDS diagnosis were revised in 2012 [84] and are shown in Table 40.6. The lungs are poorly compliant and resist expansion. Positive-pressure ventilation, the mainstay of treatment, itself may cause further damage to the lung.

ARDS is an uncommon disorder in pregnancy with an incidence frequently quoted from case series as between 1/3000 and 1/6000 deliveries [61,85]. More recent population-level data, however, show that ARDS was coded in 1/3000 and 1/6000 deliveries [61,85]. More recent population-level data, however, show that ARDS was coded in 1/3000 and 1/6000 deliveries [61,85]. More recent population-level data, however, show that ARDS was coded in 1/3000 and 1/6000 deliveries [61,85]. More recent population-level data, however, show that ARDS was coded in 1/3000 and 1/6000 deliveries [61,85]. More recent population-level data, however, show that ARDS was coded in 1/3000 and 1/6000 deliveries [61,85].

Canada, however, showed a rate of ARDS of 0.6 per 10,000 among pregnancy hospitalizations from 2003–2007 [87]. It is possible that this represents not an epidemiologic difference in North America, but a difference in data capture: U.S. data relied on ICD-9 codes and Canadian on ICD-10. ARDS itself is not always captured in administrative data sets but may be approximated by the number of cases of mechanical ventilation. In the Netherlands, between 2004 and 2006, 291 women of the 358,874 delivered required mechanical ventilation for a rate of about 8 per 10,000 [18].

Among pregnant women with H1N1 influenza, the rate of ARDS was nearly twice as high as among nonpregnant women (9.7% vs. 5.4%) [88]; the difference in severity is demonstrated in a report from Australia and New Zealand in which extracorporeal membrane oxygenation was required in 45% of pregnant or postpartum women with severe H1N1 respiratory disease [89].

The mortality rate for ARDS among obstetrical patients was estimated to be 24% to 44% in older case series [61,85,90,91] and 33% in a more recent series [92], neither greatly different from the general population case fatality rate of 38% [93]. A review of Canadian hospital admissions between 1991 and 2002, however, found that the case fatality rate among obstetric patients with ARDS in the absence of any major preexisting condition was only 6% [15], and between 2003 and 2007, the case fatality rate was under 3% [87].

In managing ARDS in pregnancy, many authorities recommend maintaining maternal SpO2 >95% or PaO2 >60 mmHg in an effort to promote fetal well-being, but it is unclear what evidence supports this recommendation. The gradient between maternal and fetal oxygen content drives transfer. Because the oxygen content of fetal blood is quite low, the gradient is easily preserved: normal fetal umbilical venous pO2 is only 31 to 42 mmHg [94]. Oxygen delivery to the fetus and to fetal organs, as to the adult, is the product
of blood flow and oxygen content. Adaptive strategies in the fetus include higher affinity of fetal hemoglobin for oxygen and high cardiac output relative to size.

There is one experimental trial of deliberate hypoxia in human pregnancy [95]. Ten women with normal pregnancies near term were exposed to a hypoxic gas mixture with an FIO2 approximately 0.1 (50% room air, 50% nitrogen) for 10 minutes during which time maternal oxygen saturation (SpO2) decreased by 15%. Fetal heart rate baseline and variability, umbilical artery Doppler indices, and middle cerebral artery Doppler indices did not change during experimental maternal hypoxia. Direct sampling of fetal blood was not performed in this study.

In ARDS, the use of lower tidal volumes in mechanical ventilation was associated with lower mortality and more ventilator-free days in nonpregnant adults [96] in a randomized controlled trial in a general medical–surgical ICU population. This strategy allows hypercapnia and respiratory acidosis but minimizes inflation pressures and stretch-induced lung injury. There are no data on outcomes of a lung-protective or lower-tidal-volume-ventilation strategy for pregnant women with ARDS. In fact, there are no randomized controlled trials of ventilator strategies in an obstetric population. Maternal acidemia does affect fetal acid–base status, which suggests that continuous fetal monitoring could be useful, specifically in determining the lower acceptable limits of maternal pH.

After the publication of the ARDSNet trial, which demonstrated better survival when low-tidal-volume ventilation was employed [96], strategies for mechanical ventilation swung away from normalizing arterial blood gases to limiting barotrauma, volutrauma, and other types of ventilator-induced lung injury. No trials have been performed on ARDS in pregnant patients, and few publications describe ventilator settings in the case of ARDS in pregnancy. In case series from the era preceding low-tidal-volume ventilation for ARDS, barotrauma rates were high in obstetric patients who were mechanically ventilated: 36% to 44% [61,85]. This compares unfavorably with the background rate of barotrauma of 11% among nonobstetric patients ventilated with “traditional” tidal volumes in ARDS [96]. There is, however, no head-to-head trial among pregnant patients with ARDS.

When contemplating a low-tidal-volume ventilation strategy for pregnant women with ARDS, the maternal PaCO2 must also be considered. CO2 transfer across the placenta also requires a gradient; in this case, the higher PCO2 of maternal blood. High maternal PCO2, as in permissiveness, might be expected to impede transfer and allow fetal acidemia. In a small trial of CO2 rebreathing in 35 healthy pregnant women, a rise in the maternal end-tidal CO2 (28–33 cm H2O) and interrupted for brief periods with low PEEP (8–10 cm H2O). This was well tolerated by mothers and fetuses, and maternal oxygenation immediately improved [100].

The author suggests that a pregnant woman ventilated with a low tidal volume strategy should have the fetal heart rate tracing continuously monitored once viability has been reached, and if the tracing is suspicious for fetal acidemia, consider increasing minute ventilation by increasing frequency or tidal volume (to increase maternal pH, decrease PCO2) or switch to airway pressure release ventilation. This is an example of using the fetal heart rate tracing as another maternal vital sign.

Delivery does not improve maternal survival in ARDS [61,62,101]. Fetal survival, however, is tightly linked to gestational age at delivery: This would imply a fetal benefit to continuing rather than interrupting pregnancy, assuming maternal and fetal condition permits.

### Sepsis

Sepsis, a leading cause of maternal death in the era before the introduction of aseptic technique and antibiotics, is again resurgent. In the most recent triennial report of maternal deaths in the United Kingdom, 25% of maternal deaths were due to sepsis [102]. There are no randomized trials on sepsis specific to the obstetric population. In most trials, pregnant patients are explicitly barred from enrollment.

Table 40.7 lists older criteria for sepsis with which the reader may be familiar, but the paradigm has recently been revised. The Sepsis-3 consensus panel has radically simplified both categorization and diagnosis (see Table 40.8). Sepsis must be conceptualized neither as infection nor as bacteremia, but should be understood as “life-threatening organ dysfunction caused by a dysregulated host response to infection” [103].

In this context, organ failure is paramount: it may be circulatory failure, respiratory or renal failure, gastrointestinal or hepatic dysfunction, coagulopathy, etc. The old categories of systemic inflammatory response syndrome and severe sepsis have disappeared; because sepsis is now understood to incorporate organ failure, the previous concept of “severe sepsis” is redundant. Only the categories of sepsis and septic shock have been retained.

There is no gold-standard diagnostic test for sepsis, so the clinician must look for clinical criteria rather than biomarkers. The clinical measures that have been found to best correlate with sepsis [104,105] are any two of the following three findings:

1. Systolic BP ≤100 mmHg
2. Respiratory rate ≥22/min
3. Altered mental status

Fever is not included, as it is neither necessary nor sufficient to a sepsis diagnosis. This triad, a modification of the Sequential Organ Failure Assessment (SOFA) score, is known as the quick SOFA, or qSOFA, score, and can be easily applied to patients outside of the ICU. (For patients currently in ICU, a 2-point increase in the full SOFA score should be taken to represent sepsis.) Because a qSOFA score of 2 or 3 has been shown to predict mortality or prolonged ICU stay, one would then carefully look for signs of organ dysfunction, begin or escalate treatment, increase acuity of observations, or consider transfer to a higher level of care. These cutoffs have not been studied in pregnancy and the puerperium, and given
Infection, documented or suspected, and some of the following:

**General variables**
- Fever (>38.3°C)
- Hypothermia (core temperature <36°C)
- Heart rate >90/min or more than 2 standard deviations above the normal value for age
- Tachypnea
- Altered mental status
- Significant edema or positive fluid balance (>20 mL/kg over 24 hr)
- Hyperglycemia (plasma glucose >140 mg/dL) in the absence of diabetes

**Inflammatory variables**
- Leukocytosis (WBC >12,000/μL)
- Leukopenia (WBC <4000/μL)
- WBC in the normal range with >10% bands
- Plasma C-reactive protein more than 2 standard deviations above the normal value
- Plasma procalcitonin more than 2 standard deviations above normal

**Hemodynamic variables**
- Arterial hypotension (SBP <90 mmHg, MAP <70 mmHg, or SBP decrease >40 mmHg)
- Organ dysfunction variables
  - Arterial hypoxemia (PaO₂/FIO₂ <300)
  - Acute oliguria (urine output <0.5 mL/kg/hr for at least 2 hrs despite adequate fluid resuscitation)
  - Creatinine increase >0.5 mg/dL
  - Coagulation abnormalities (INR >1.5 or aPTT >60 sec)
  - Ileus
  - Thrombocytopenia (platelet count <100,000/μL)
  - Hyperbilirubinemia (total bilirubin >4 mg/dL)

**Tissue perfusion variables**
- Hyperlactatemia (>1 mmol/L)
- Decreased capillary refill or mottling

Unclear how these criteria should be modified for the physiologic changes of pregnancy.


---

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table 40.7 Former Diagnostic Criteria for Sepsis (Now Supplanted by Sepsis-3: See Table 40.8)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**Categories:**
- **Sepsis:** life-threatening organ dysfunction caused by a dysregulated host response to infection. Organ dysfunction is identified as an acute change in SOFA score of >2 points, consequent to the infection.
- **Septic shock:** a subset of sepsis in which underlying circulatory and cellular metabolism abnormalities are profound enough to substantially increase mortality.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Diagnosis:</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Sepsis:</strong> quick SOFA (qSOFA) score</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Any two of the following:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Respiratory rate &gt; 22/min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Altered mentation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Systolic BP &lt; 100 mmHg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>For a patient already in ICU, use the full SOFA score.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Septic shock:</strong> persistent hypotension requiring vasopressors to maintain mean arterial pressure &gt;65 mmHg and a serum lactate level &gt; 2 mmol/L (18 mg/dL), despite adequate volume resuscitation.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

women as among the population generally. See Chapter 24 for a more detailed discussion of influenza in pregnancy.

The diagnosis of sepsis may be more challenging in obstetric patients, particularly when normal alterations in pregnancy physiology are taken into account. Blood pressure in normal pregnancy tends to be lower and heart rate higher, and leukocytosis is common both in the third trimester and in labor [113]. Thus, the specificity of usual criteria for sepsis has been called into question. The more salient problem, however, would be the possibility of under-recognition of sepsis in pregnancy and the puerperium. In a series of maternal deaths from sepsis in the state of Michigan between 1999 and 2006, only 18% were febrile at presentation, and 25% were never febrile during hospitalization [114].

Delay contributes to death in sepsis [115]. This may be blamed on delay in diagnosis, delay in starting appropriate antibiotics, or delay in escalation of care. A review of maternal deaths due to sepsis revealed a delay in antibiotics in 73% and a delay in escalation of care (e.g., consultation with infectious disease specialist or transfer to critical care) in 53% [114]. Similarly, the most recent triennial review of maternal deaths in the United Kingdom identified a delay in recognition or management in 70% of maternal deaths from sepsis [105]; sadly, two thirds of those delays occurred in the obstetric unit.

The Surviving Sepsis Campaign (SSC) [116] is a multi-organizational effort to improve mortality in sepsis and septic shock based on best available evidence. It proposes a number of therapeutic goals and recommends care bundles (see Table 40.9). Adherence to SSC goals has shown to improve mortality in septic shock [117]. SSC guidelines, originally codified in 2003, were revised in 2008 and again in 2012; a revision is planned for 2017. The website is available at www.survivingsepsis.org. There are no guidelines geared specifically toward pregnancy, though it seems reasonable to apply these recommendations until pregnancy-specific guidance becomes available.

1. **Broad-spectrum antimicrobial therapy should be begun within one hour of diagnosis of sepsis or septic shock** (see below); cultures, including blood cultures, should be obtained as appropriate, providing this does not delay the start of antimicrobials. Mortality increases as time to appropriate antibiotics increases [118–120]. Initial therapy will be empiric, commonly requires more than one drug for broad coverage, and should be active against all likely inciting pathogens, bacterial, viral and/or fungal. Regimen should be reassessed daily for possible de-escalation based on clinical response and culture results; empiric therapy should be limited to 3–5 days. Specific regimens for identified pathogens are not provided here, being both beyond the scope of this chapter and subject to rapid change as organisms evolve resistance. Usual print and/or online resources may be accessed, or consultation may be sought from an expert in infectious disease. Total duration of therapy should usually be 7–10 days although may need to be longer if S. aureus bacteremia, slow clinical response, undrainable focus of infection, etc. Broad-spectrum coverage is appropriate in OB patients: In a large study of peripartum sepsis, more than 40 organisms were cultured, including aerobic gram-positive and gram-negative as well as anaerobic bacteria [121]. When narrowing coverage, consideration should be given to whether transplacental coverage is needed; some drugs do not cross placenta well and result in inadequate fetal treatment, such as azithromycin in the treatment of syphilis [122].

2. **Blood cultures before antibiotic therapy as long as antimicrobial therapy is not delayed more than 45 minutes.** At least two sets of blood cultures should be obtained. No reason this would not apply in obstetric patients. One study in Finland described this specific policy for obstetric patients: 2% (of more than 40,000) were cultured for fever and had broad-spectrum antibiotics instituted immediately. Bacteremia was confirmed in 5% of cases; only 1 of the 798 patients cultured developed septic shock, for an incidence of 0.1% [121].

3. **Source control.** SSC recommends “a specific anatomical diagnosis of infection requiring consideration for emergent source control be sought and diagnosed or excluded as rapidly as possible, and intervention be undertaken for source control within the first 12 hr after the diagnosis is made, if feasible.” The intervention undertaken should be the one with the least potential for physiologic derangement, e.g., percutaneous rather than surgical drainage of an abscess. There is limited data specific to pregnancy. Up to half of cases of sepsis in pregnant/postpartum women localize to the uterus [106,109–112,123] and would therefore require the uterus be emptied. **There are no data on antibiotics without delivery for women diagnosed with clinical sepsis attributed to intra-amniotic infection.** Women with a diagnosis of subclinical intra-amniotic infection, treated with antibiotics alone in the hope of delaying delivery to a more favorable gestational age, have had pregnancy prolonged by days to weeks with the only maternal morbidity a 3% rate of postpartum endometritis [124] but with an infant death rate of 33% and major infant morbidity >75%. It should be emphasized that patients with subclinical chorioamnionitis, who typically present with preterm labor or membrane rupture, are unlikely to come to the ICU; if these nonseptic patients cannot be managed without delivery, there is no argument for delaying source control in pregnancy.

After 2001, there sprang up a recommendation for a protocolized form of aggressive fluid resuscitation known as “early goal-directed therapy” (EGDT), first popularized after a small randomized trial in an adult non-pregnant population.

### Table 40.9 Core Bundles for Management of Sepsis (SSC)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>To be completed within 3 hours of presentation with sepsis or septic shock:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Measure lactate level</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Obtain blood cultures prior to administration of antibiotics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Administer broad spectrum antibiotics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Administer 30 mL/kg crystalloid for hypotension or lactate ≥4 mmol/L</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

To be completed within 6 hours of presentation

1. Begin vasopressors for hypotension that does not respond to initial fluid resuscitation; maintain MAP > 65 mm Hg.
2. In the event of persistent hypotension after initial fluid load, or if initial lactate was >4 mmol/L, reassess volume status and tissue perfusion.
3. Repeat lactate measurement if initial lactate was elevated.

**Source:** Surviving Sepsis Campaign, http://www.survivingsepsis.org /SiteCollectionDocuments/SSC_Bundle.pdf Accessed 8/16/16
showed a benefit in mortality among severe forms of sepsis [125]. EGDT required invasive monitoring of central venous pressure and central venous oxygen saturation, which were targeted with extensive fluid resuscitation, transfusion, vasopressors, and inotropes. Despite the lack of pregnancy-specific data, EGDT had subsequently been recommended in pregnancy as well [126–128]. More recently, however, three much larger RCTs have demonstrated no mortality benefit at all to EGDT, and to the contrary, show more organ failure, more interventions, greater length of stay, and higher cost [129–131]. It has been removed from the SSC bundle. Again, we have no pregnancy-specific data, but since EDGT was never tested in pregnant patients in the first place and has now been disproven in a general adult population, it should not be implemented as standard sepsis care.

In addition to the recommendations for initial resuscitation and antimicrobial treatment, SSC weighs in on hemodynamic support and adjunctive therapy in severe sepsis and septic shock, as follows:

1. **Crystalloid as the fluid of choice**, rather than colloid: no survival benefit to colloid, additional cost, and a disadvantage in outcome specifically with hydroxyethyl starch (HES) [116]. No evidence to recommend crystalloid versus colloid in pregnancy. Decreased oncolytic pressure in pregnancy and decreased gradient between colloid oncotic pressure and pulmonary artery occlusion pressure [132] may increase risk of pulmonary edema in pregnancy when crystalloid resuscitation is chosen. If colloid resuscitation is elected in pregnancy, use albumin rather than hydroxyethyl starch (HES), because of evidence of harm with HES.

2. **Initial fluid challenge with sepsis-induced tissue hypoperfusion**: 30 mL/kg [116]. No data specific to pregnancy; however, the gradient between colloid oncotic pressure and pulmonary artery occlusion pressure is lower in pregnancy [132], so there is more risk of inducing pulmonary edema. Not all patients are fluid responders anyway, so a quick test of fluid responsiveness using either passive leg raising or point-of-care ultrasound (diameter of the inferior vena cava, extravascular lung water) might be useful as a first step in determining how much of a fluid load to try [133–135]. These techniques are not specifically validated in pregnancy, however.

3. **Vasopressor to target initial mean arterial pressure>65 mmHg but individualized for the patient.** The goal is to maintain tissue perfusion even if hypovolemia has not yet been resolved. Supplemental clinical end points are also important: BP, mental status, urine output, blood lactate. Norepinephrine is the vasopressor of choice [116]. No data exist to make a recommendation about the lower limit of mean arterial pressure in pregnancy, but because mean arterial pressure is normally lower in pregnancy [136], a target MAP >65 may be too stringent. Although MAP is approximately 4 to 5 mmHg lower in pregnancy, one cannot extrapolate a target of 60 mmHg instead. The uteroplacental circulation does not autoregulate, and compromised placental perfusion is expected to affect the fetus. Use of clinical end points, as described above, is crucial in making a decision for an individual patient; if the patient is still pregnant, the electronic fetal heart rate tracing may help with individualization of target MAP. There is little data as to use of vasopressors in septic pregnancy in general. Norepinephrine has been studied, in a randomized trial, as an agent to maintain maternal BP during cesarean under spinal anesthesia [137]. Compared to the commonly used agent phenylephrine, norepinephrine maintained BP equally well with a more favorable chronotropic profile and a higher cardiac output. There was no difference in Apgar scores or cord gases; a significantly lower concentration of epinephrine in the cord blood of norepinephrine-exposed than phenylephrine-exposed infants suggested at least the possibility of decreased physiologic stress. Although the dose used in this study was constrained to a maximum of 5 mcg/min and the duration of fetal exposure generally less than 30 min, which are both less than would be required in septic shock, this study nevertheless represents early evidence that norepinephrine does not seem to impair uteroplacental perfusion in and of itself. This supports preclinical work that showed, in a dual-perfused single-cotyledon model of human placenta, no change in fetal arterial perfusion with administration of norepinephrine [138].

4. **Trial of dobutamine in either myocardial dysfunction (high filling pressures and low cardiac output) or ongoing hypoperfusion despite adequate intravascular volume and MAP [116].** Normal cardiac output in pregnancy is increased and the systemic vascular resistance decreased [132]; thus, it is unclear what would constitute a “low” cardiac output in pregnancy. In addition, this is probably outdated, as current critical care practice seldom makes use of invasive monitoring of cardiac output or filling pressures; in the recent ProCESS trial, only 1% of septic shock patients in the control arm received dobutamine [129]. Dobutamine has little effect on resting uterine tone even at high doses but decreases uterine blood flow in gravid ewes [139]. Human data are lacking. It is unlikely that fetal concerns would be paramount in a situation in which the maternal condition was sufficiently dire to consider adding dobutamine to vasopressor therapy.

5. **Corticosteroids are sometimes used in septic shock when fluid resuscitation and vasopressors have been unsuccessful.** The SSC guidelines are now less than lukewarm in this recommendation [116]. There are no specific data in pregnancy. Many pregnant patients will have been given betamethasone or dexamethasone for fetal indications; these steroids have not been studied extensively in septic shock.

SSC also makes recommendations for blood product administration (defer RBC transfusion until hemoglobin concentration is less than 70 g/dL, prophylactic platelets when platelet count <10,000 or, if at high risk of bleeding, 20,000), thrombo-prophylaxis, and stress ulcer prophylaxis. Oral or enteral feeding is preferred over parenteral nutrition or fasting. A former recommendation for tight glucose control (≤110 mg/dL), using insulin infusion as necessary, has been updated to maintain blood glucose ≤180 mg/dL in adult patients with sepsis. Obstetricians are already accustomed to targeting glucose control in diabetic pregnancy, frequently use insulin infusions in labor, and should find glycemic control an easy recommendation to adopt. It must be cautioned, however, that the ideal range for glucose in critically ill pregnant patients has not been studied; obstetricians may be tempted to aim for the usual range recommended in diabetes of 80–120 mg/dL in an effort to minimize fetal hyperinsulinemia and neonatal
hypoglycemia, but this may or may not be correct in the management of sepsis.

The final recommendations in the SSC guidelines are universally applicable and underappreciated. These state that the prognosis and goals of care should be discussed with the patient and family as soon as feasible and that the goals of care should be incorporated into treatment, including end-of-life planning [116]. Goals for a pregnant or post-partum patient in ICU may be challenging to set or may be painful for the patient, her family members, or the health care professionals involved, but they cannot be shunted aside. Some women may prioritize the outcome for the fetus/ neonate above their own health; in other cases, the family may need to make unwelcome choices between the critically ill woman and the potential new baby. It may be helpful to bring in multiple perspectives, including, in some cases, a palliative care team or an ethicist.

What is missing from this discussion are the voices of women themselves who have survived a stay in the intensive care unit. A small qualitative survey of women’s experiences in maternal critical care elucidated several themes: the distance between their expectations about childbirth and the reality they experienced, the pain of being separated from their newborn regardless of how sick they were, and the difficulty of being transferred out of ICU to a maternity ward [140]. Many women were shocked or frightened to wake up in the ICU, slow in understanding why, disturbed or powerless being in the ICU, and unsupported in their specific needs once out of ICU. The long-term outcome of women who have survived maternal critical care remains unreported in the medical literature although physical and psychiatric sequelae are common among ICU survivors in general.

REFERENCES


18. Callagan WM, Creanga AA, Kuklina EV. Severe maternal morbidity among delivery and postpartum hospitalizations in the United States. *Obstet Gynecol* 2012; 120: 1029–36. [II-b; administrative database; 50 million records, 597,000 qualifying cases]


29. Seppelt I, for ANZIC writing committee. Critical illness due to 2009A/H1N1 influenza in pregnant and postpartum women: Population based cohort study. BMJ 2010; 340: c1279. [II-2; cohort study, n = 64]


40. Graham SG, Lutxon MC. The requirement for intensive care support for the pregnant population. Anesthesiology 1989; 44: 581–4. [II-3; case series, n = 23]


83. Spelting D. Do pregnant women have (living) will? J Health Care Law Policy 2005; 8(2): 331–42. [III; review]


Amniotic fluid embolism

Antonio F. Saad and Luis D. Pacheco

KEY POINTS

- Amniotic fluid embolism (AFE) classically presents as a triad of sudden hypoxia, hypotension, and coagulopathy.
- Management of AFE is mainly supportive.
- In the case of a viable pregnancy, immediate delivery is advised.
- Early high-quality cardiopulmonary resuscitation and adherence to advanced cardiac life support guidelines are recommended.
- The initial phase is defined by right ventricular failure physiology. Bedside transthoracic echocardiography is a valuable tool in identifying this phase early.
- Later phase is predominated by left ventricular failure, and treatment should be tailored accordingly.
- Early management of AFE-related coagulopathy should be initiated as soon as possible with transfusion of blood products and with adjuvant agents.
- A multidisciplinary team of maternal–fetal medicine physicians, intensivists, and anesthesiologists should be involved in the management of such critically ill patients.

Background

Amniotic fluid embolism (AFE) is a rare, often lethal disease that occurs in pregnancy or in the puerperium period. In the developed world, it is one of the most common etiologies of maternal mortality. It is estimated that up to 10% of maternal deaths are caused by AFE [1]. According to a recent United States national registry review of around 1.5 million deliveries, AFE, second only to preeclampsia, was the most common disease leading to maternal death [2]. Historically, AFE patients have a poor prognosis. Based on a 1995 national registry, mortality rate after an AFE event was reported to be 61% and neurological intact maternal survival rate to be only 15% [3]. Recent data has reported better outcomes with maternal mortality rates as low as 26% and neurological intact survival rates up to 93% [4,5]. Perinatal mortality has been described to be as high as 25%.

Incidence

The incidence of AFE ranges between 1/8000 and 1/80,000 [3]. This large discrepancy can be explained by differences in study methodology and by unclear or inconsistent definitions of AFE. Absence of validated case identification that excludes false positives can lead to overestimation and even doubling of its incidence [6]. In population analysis estimates or administrative databases that use case validation, the description of disease outcomes and incidence are more accurate because fewer false positives (non-AFE cases have better outcomes) are included. By accounting for false positive cases, the true incidence of AFE can be elucidated [6,7].

Emphasis on developing a clear case definition and diagnostic criteria of AFE is of utmost importance.

Pathophysiology

The pathophysiology of AFE remains to be elucidated. Historically, it was thought to occur secondary to travelling of cellular fragments and squamous cells from the amniotic fluid to the pulmonary system with vessel obstruction leading to acute right ventricular failure and eventually to death. Examples of inciting factors that promote the travelling of amniotic fluid into the maternal side include pelvic lacerations, placental abruption, and cesarean section. The embolism hypothesis has been recently discredited by studies that failed to reproduce the syndrome after direct injection of amniotic fluid into the pulmonary vascular space [3,8,9] in animal models. Moreover, despite fetal or amniotic-derived tissue being found in the pulmonary vascular system of pregnant women, patients did not develop AFE [10]. Because the presence of these histologic landmarks are neither sensitive nor specific and are not necessary for the development of AFE, genetic predisposition may explain why some women develop the syndrome of AFE and others do not.

Recently AFE has been linked to a massive inflammatory response secondary to activation of maternal immunity by fetal antigens/epitopes. Amniotic fluid consists of a milieu rich in potent mediators that can explain the different clinical manifestations of AFE. Examples include platelet activator factor, cytokines, bradykinin, histamine, arachidonic acid, leukotrienes, prostaglandins, tissue factor, and endothelin [11,12].

Endothelin has been suggested as a major mediator in the pathogenesis of AFE. It is a potent constrictor that can cause prominent pulmonary vascular spasm and acute elevation of the pulmonary vascular resistances. Within the first minutes of AFE (first phase), the resulting surge in afterload leads to acute core pulmonale in the absence of anatomic occlusion of the pulmonary vasculature [13]. Two major detrimental events result from acute right ventricular failure and chamber dilation: massive ventricular ischemia from compressive occlusion of the feeding right coronary vessels within the myocardium, leading to a right ventricular infarction, and displacement of the inter-ventricular septum toward the left ventricle, decreasing left ventricular preload and cardiac output secondary to diastolic dysfunction.

Left ventricular failure, cardiogenic pulmonary edema, and hypotension define the second phase of the disease. During this time, the mainstream of management is comprised of vasopressors and inotropes [14]. The observed left ventricular dysfunction is due to a amalgamation of cardiac stunning from hypoxia that occurred in the first phase of the disease and to cytokine-induced myocardial depression.
from inflammatory proteins, such as tumor necrosis factor-α, nitric oxide, platelet activating factor, and interleukin 1 [15]. The physiologic consequence of decreased left heart function is cardiogenic pulmonary edema.

Disseminated intravascular coagulation (DIC) is another feature of AFE, occurring in up to 83% of reported cases [3]. Amniotic fluid tissue factor binds to maternal serum factor VII activating the extrinsic pathway of the clotting cascade. Amniotic fluid alone has also been reported to directly activate factor X and platelets. Other important stimulators of the clotting cascade include major inflammatory proteins from tissue factor released from activated monocytes and neutrophils. DIC in AFE is mainly a consumptive coagulopathy manifested as hemorrhage.

For those that survive the first two phases, a third phase of AFE ensues. It is characterized by slow and delayed improvement in left ventricular function secondary to prolonged severe inflammation coupled with the need for prolonged critical care (risk factor for nosocomial infections such as ventilator-associated pneumonia, line bacteremia, urinary tract infections, sinusitis) and by distributive shock with inflammation induced noncardiogenic pulmonary edema [14].

Some have suggested a common link between AFE and anaphylaxis [3]. In addition, up to 41% of patients with AFE have reported previous history of atopy [3]. The proposed similarity is justified because all three conditions, AFE, anaphylaxis, and sepsis, involve significant inflammatory responses. This relationship has been challenged as severe biventricular heart failure and profound coagulopathy, the defining pillars of AFE, are not found in anaphylaxis.

Risk Factors for Amniotic Fluid Embolus

There are modifiable and nonmodifiable risk factors for AFE [13]. Modifiable risk factors include medical induction of labor, instrumental vaginal delivery (forceps and vacuum-assisted deliveries), cervical lacerations, uterine rupture, and cesarean section. Nonmodifiable risk factors include advanced maternal age (more than 30 years old), African American race, eclampsia, polyhydramnios, male fetus, placenta previa, placental abruption, and multiple pregnancies [6,16–18].

The association between AFE and oxytocin administration or prolonged protracted labor has been inconsistent [3]. The common use of oxytocin in contrast to the paucity of AFE makes this causative link extremely unlikely [19]. Another misconception is that uterine tone anomalies (hypotonia or hypertonus) may play a role in AFE development; instead, it appears that uterine hypoperfusion due to maternal hypoxia and shock with massive adrenoregic surge is responsible for the tone anomalies [3].

Currently, evidence is lacking to determine if cesarean or operative vaginal deliveries are associated with AFE. Most publications lack information on the temporal relationship between operative delivery and AFE. It is unclear if the interventions indeed preceded AFE events or they were performed after the AFE to improve fetal outcomes [6].

Despite identifiable risk factors, AFE remains unpredictable and unpreventable. The inability for the described risk factors to predict AFE may be secondary to their nonspecificity along with the rarity of the disease. Modifying obstetrical practice for the sole purpose to prevent AFE is not recommended.

**DIAGNOSIS**

**Clinical Presentation of Amniotic Fluid Embolism**

Based on the national registry data, AFE cases have occurred 70% during labor, 11% after a vaginal delivery, and 19% during a cesarean delivery [3].

AFE classically presents as a triad of sudden hypoxia, hypotension, and coagulopathy. It seldom happens in the second or third trimester or at the time of amniocentesis or pregnancy termination [20]. It may be preceded by a period of anxiety, altered mental status, agitation, and sensation of “doom” [21]. AFE should be considered in the differential workup in any woman that is pregnant or recently delivered with acute cardiovascular collapse, seizures, severe respiratory difficulty/attack, or coagulopathy unexplained by other etiologies.

Arterial pulmonary vasculature constriction leading to ventilation perfusion mismatch and right ventricular heart failure account for the observed hypoxia. Decreased arterial pressure results from right ventricular dilation and impingement of the interventricular septum into the left ventricular chamber, decreasing cavity size and end-diastolic volume, ultimately diminishing cardiac output. The subsequent hypoxemia increases the hazard of seizures, left heart failure, and uterine atony [14].

Cardiac arrest may occur suddenly, with asystole, ventricular fibrillation, pulseless electrical activity (PEA), or pulseless ventricular tachycardia. If arrest occurs while pregnant, common fetal heart tracings include fetal tachycardia, decelerations, loss of variability, bradycardia, and terminal decelerations.

DIC is a common finding in up to 83% of AFE cases [3]. It is secondary to consumptive activation of the clotting cascade by either amniotic fluid constituents (e.g., tissue factor) or by the systemic inflammatory response that is triggered during the event. Coagulopathy can be the only manifestation in AFE, but it can also manifest with unstable hemodynamics or even after completion of initial resuscitative maneuvers [22–24]. AFE patients with DIC are at risk for the following serious hemorrhagic complications: venipuncture bleeding, gastrointestinal hemorrhage, hematuria, pelvic laceration bleeding, and uterine bleeding.

**Differential Diagnosis of AFE**

Despite being long, one should narrow the differential diagnosis to clinically relevant diseases that have specific treatment strategies. More importantly, one should initiate treatment for suspected AFE even before an exact diagnosis is determined. This is especially true because management mainly involves life-supporting interventions (i.e., cardiopulmonary resuscitation). Common medical conditions that need to be considered when ruling out AFE include myocardial infarction, thromboembolism, high spinal anesthesia, air embolism, eclampsia, and anaphylactic shock.

**Bedside echocardiography** with evidence of right ventricular dysfunction favors the diagnosis of AFE over anaphylaxis and most of the other conditions that mimic AFE.

Patients with risk factors, such as diabetes, smoking, obesity, advanced maternal age, chronic hypertension, dyslipidemia, and previous history of coronary artery disease, should be ruled out for acute myocardial infarction. Workup should include cardiac troponins and a 12-lead electrocardiogram as soon as possible. A bedside echocardiograph is a useful tool in assisting in the diagnosis of cardiogenic shock.
secondary to myocardial ischemia or to rare causes, such as a peripartum dilated cardiomyopathy [25].

Pulmonary embolism from a pelvic clot needs to be considered high on the differential list. Findings of acute right ventricular dilution and hypocoagulability in a bedside transthoracic echocardiogram during the acute event may be helpful. Once the patient is stabilized, confirmatory testing, such as a computed tomography angiography or ventilation perfusion scan, should be considered. The possibility of thromboembolism is unlikely in cases with profuse bleeding.

In the absence of cardiac decompensation and hemorrhage, high spinal anesthesia leading to apnea should be considered in the differential diagnosis. Local anesthetic toxicity secondary to inadvertent intravascular injection can manifest by seizures and cardiovascular collapse [26]. Timing between injection and onset of symptoms is of utmost importance. If suspicion is high, cardiopulmonary resuscitation should be initiated as soon as possible, and administration of intravenous lipids (20% Intralipid) should be started [27].

Acute cardiorespiratory compromise can also be seen with air embolism. The initial management of this condition is identical to that of AFE. In addition, normobaric 100% oxygen should be administered if highly suspected. The patient should also be placed in the left lateral decubitus position to avoid air from travelling to the pulmonary vasculature. If a central venous catheter is in place, blood aspiration of air bubbles can be attempted. Hyperbaric oxygen therapy should be used in cases of arterial air embolism.

In the absence of profound coagulopathy and cardio-pulmonary decompensation, eclampsia should be high in the differential diagnosis of patients presenting with new onset of seizures.

Anaphylactic shock is a known imitator of AFE, and it should be considered when AFE is suspected. Important clues that favor anaphylaxis versus AFE include development of urticarial rash, laryngospasm, and bronchospasm. The latter is only present in 15% of cases of AFE. Coagulopathy and cardiac dysfunction are seldom seen in anaphylaxis. The observed hypotension is secondary to vasodilation and increased vascular permeability rather than ventricular failure. Treatment of anaphylactic shock involves prompt administration of epinephrine, steroids, and inhaled bronchodilators.

### Diagnostic Laboratory Testing

AFE is not diagnosed based on a specific laboratory test but rather based on exclusion. Historically, the presence of acellular fetal debris or fetal squamous cells in the maternal circulation was believed to be pathognomonic of the disease. This has been challenged because the same pathologic findings have been described in normal asymptomatic pregnant women and are not always present in women with AFE [10,28].

Recent data has proposed a novel serum biomarker for AFE: insulin like growth factor binding protein 1 (IGFBP-1) [29]. Further evidence is needed before it reaches the confirmatory stage.

Investigators have proposed renaming AFE to “anaphylactoid reaction of pregnancy” due to similarities in inflammatory biomarkers between anaphylaxis and AFE [3]. Of note, these biomarkers are not exclusive to either disease and are found in other nonspecific inflammatory responses. Although in anaphylaxis the enzyme serum trypsin is commonly elevated, this is not found in cases with AFE and cannot be used to rebut or confirm diagnosis [30–32]. Moreover, this evidence refutes the hypothesis that AFE and anaphylaxis have similar pathogenesis [33].

Activation of the complement pathway has also been shown in AFE [33]. Confirmation of the disease is not advised based on low serum complement levels due to poor sensitivity and specificity.

In summary, diagnosis of AFE is mainly based in clinical presentation, and there is no specific confirmatory laboratory testing.

### Management of Cardiac Arrest

The main basis of initial management of cardiac arrest is supportive care with standard resuscitative efforts; immediate cardiopulmonary resuscitation (CPR) should be initiated as soon as possible. Because most events occur inpatient and are witnessed, blood oxygen content is initially normal; hence, high-quality chest compressions are recommended before administration of rescue breathing [34].

Chest compressions should be performed using a firm black board, the patient in a supine position, hands in center of chest (as in nonpregnant patient), compressions at a rate of at least 100 per minute at a depth of at least 2 in (5 cm), allowing full recoil before the next compression with minimal interruptions and at a compression–ventilation ratio of 30:2 [35]. If the patient is undelivered, continuous manual left uterine displacement should be implemented, with which the uterus is lifted up and displaced leftward off the maternal major vessels [35]. The use of vasopressors, anti-arrhythmics, and defibrillating doses should be no different than those utilized in nonpregnant individuals. There is no evidence that fetal monitors will result in electrical arcing; defibrillation may be performed with the monitors in place.

If the patient has a viable pregnancy at the time of the arrest, expeditious operative assisted vaginal delivery (forceps or vacuum) is recommended when the cervix is dilated and fetal head is at low station. If vaginal delivery is not possible and return of spontaneous circulation (ROSC) has not been achieved despite initial resuscitative interventions, a perimortem cesarean delivery (PMCD) should be considered.

The classical indication for PMCD is failure to achieve ROSC after 4 minutes of CPR [35]. In addition to obvious fetal benefits of delivering the fetus, improving chances of ROSC after CPR can be increased by relief of aorticaval compression from evacuation of the uterus [36]. With the goals of rapid fetus delivery and low bleeding complications, techniques such as a vertical skin incision and a classical cesarean are recommended by some.

Waiting for the full 4 minutes to initiate PMCD is not an absolute rule; patient care should be individualized based on fetal indications versus maternal well-being.

Post cardiac arrest management is of paramount importance [37]. After ROSC, patients are often hemodynamically unstable, and management is mainly based on fluids, vasopressors, and inotropes. Mean arterial blood pressure of 65 mmHg should be maintained [37]. To avoid ischemia–reperfusion injury, fever should be avoided and aggressively treated. Hyperoxia should be avoided for the same reason, and administration of 100% oxygen to patients after survival of cardiac arrest is not recommended. This is achieved by weaning the inspired fraction of oxygen to sustain pulse oxymetry values of 94%–98% [38]. As the standard of care in any critical ill patient, serum glucose levels should be maintained between 140 and 180 mg/dL with implementation of an insulin drip if needed.
Mild therapeutic hypothermia (TH) has been shown to benefit comatose adult nonpregnant survivors after outpatient cardiac arrest. It consists of bringing down the patient’s body temperature to 32°C to 34°C (89.6°F–93.2°F) for 12 to 24 hours. The American Heart Association has recommended temperature management, and it has become the standard of care in this patient population [37,39]. A recent clinical trial has shown no difference in outcomes when comparing targeted temperatures of 33°C versus 36°C in patients that achieved ROSC after cardiac arrest [40]. Current guidelines recommend maintaining temperature between 33°C and 36°C after cardiac arrest.

Evidence on TH during pregnancy is scant and based on case reports, and its application should be considered on an individual basis [41,42]. Most survivors of AFE will not be pregnant anymore after successful resuscitation. One of the major adverse effects or complications of TH is the risk of hemorrhage. TH should be considered in patients whose bleeding risk is low. It is recommended to target a temperature of 36°C rather than lower temperatures to decrease the risk of bleeding.

Resuscitative efforts of suspected AFE are mainly supportive and focus on rapid maternal hemodynamic stabilization. A multidisciplinary team of maternal-fetal medicine and intensive care specialists should be involved in the management of these critically ill survivors. When possible, a transthoracic and/or transesophageal echocardiography should be performed. Pertinent findings include a severely dilated hypokinetic right ventricle with left sided deviation of the inter-ventricular septum. During the initial phase of right ventricular failure, acidosis, hypercapnia, and hypoxia should be avoided as they worsen the condition by increasing pulmonary vascular resistances [13]. Dobutamine and milrinone are the drugs of choice for right ventricular heart failure because, along with being ionotropes, they also are pulmonary vasodilators. Other specific agents that decrease the pulmonary vascular resistances include sildenafil, inhaled or intravenous prostacyclin, and inhaled nitric oxide. Common vasopressors used to treat hypotension include norepinephrine or vasopressin [43]. Table 41.1 contains commonly used dosages of the described agents.

| Table 41.1 Common Drugs Used in Cases of Acute Right Ventricular Failure |
|------------------------------------------------|-----------------|-----------------|----------------- |
| **Agent** | **Mechanism of Action** | **Contraindication/Adverse Effects** | **Dose** |
| Sildenafil | Selective inhibitor of cGMP-phosphodiesterase type 5 (PDE5); vasodilator by relaxing the vascular smooth muscle. Selective pulmonary vasodilator in patients with pulmonary hypertension. | Hypotension risk in patients with severe aortic stenosis, left ventricular outflow tract obstruction, concomitant nitrates, or hypovolaemia. | 20 mg tid PO or through nasogastric/orogastric tube |
| Dobutamine | Direct beta2-receptor agonist with chronotropic, arrhythmogenic, and vasodilative effects. | Avoid in idiopathic hypertrophic subaortic stenosis. Hypersensitivity Higher doses may compromise right ventricular filling time due to tachycardia. | 2.5–5.0 micrograms/kg/minute |
| Milrinone | Selective inhibitor of peak III cAMP phosphodiesterase isozyme in cardiac and vascular smooth muscle. | Hypersensitivity Systemic hypotension | 0.25–0.75 micrograms/kg/minute |
| Inhaled nitric oxide | Stimulates guanylate cyclase leading to increase in cGMP and protein phosphorylation leading to selective pulmonary vasodilator of those areas of the lung being ventilated. | Methemoglobinemia | 5–40 ppm (parts per million). Follow methemoglobin levels every 6 hours and avoid abrupt discontinuation. |
| Inhaled prostacyclin | Inhibits platelet activation. Selective pulmonary vasodilator of those areas of the lung being ventilated. Anti-inflammatory properties. | Hypersensitivity | 10–50 nanograms/kg/minute |
| Intravenous prostacyclin | Inhibits platelet activation. Nonselective pulmonary vasodilator | Avoid in severe left ventricular systolic dysfunction. Hypersensitivity Systemic hypotension Nausea/vomiting Headache Jaw pain Diarrhea | Start at 1–2 nanograms/kg/minute through a central line and titrate to desired effect. |
| Norepinephrine | Peripheral vasoconstrictor (alpha-adrenergic action) and inotropic stimulator of the heart and dilator of coronary arteries (beta-adrenergic action). Alpha action is greater than beta action. | None | 0.05–3.3 micrograms/kg/minute |
| Vasopressin | Potent analog of the posterior pituitary hormone antidiuretic hormone. Effects are through the V1 vascular receptors. | Hypersensitivity Hyponatremia and water retention. | 0.03–0.06 units/minute |
In the setting of a massively dilated right ventricle (acute core pulmonale), fluid resuscitation should be administered judiciously. Fluid overload can lead to overdistention of the right ventricular chamber, raising the risk of a right-sided myocardial infarction and to left inter-ventricular septum shift, leading to left ventricular chamber obliteration, ultimately compromising left ventricular cardiac output.

Within hours of initial presentation, right ventricular dysfunction starts to recover, and left ventricular dysfunction predominates with resulting cardiogenic pulmonary edema [21]. Noninvasive mechanical ventilation or endotracheal intubation should be considered early in patients who are not intubated. The mainstay of therapy consists of fluid restriction, diuretics (in normotensive patients), vasopressors in cases of hypotension, and inotropes (dobutamine or milrinone) with the aim of maintaining coronary perfusion and optimizing left ventricular contractility. Persistent pulmonary congestion despite diuretic therapy may necessitate renal replacement therapy for fluid removal.

The role of steroids in the management of AFE remains controversial and is not indicated.

Prolonged care in the intensive care unit and persistent severe inflammation predispose survivors to develop nosocomial infections and distributive shock with noncardiogenic pulmonary edema secondary to endothelial injury from severe sepsis [14]. Figure 41.1 summarizes the main points in the management of AFE.

Management of Coagulopathy Associated with Amniotic Fluid Embolism

DIC is often present in AFE cases; its onset is variable, and it can occur in early or late phases of the syndrome. Therapy involves a medical and surgical approach.

Medical management involves administration of blood products to maintain a platelet count above 50,000/mm³ to correct for prolonged activated partial thromboplastin time (aPTT), international normalized ratio (INR), and low fibrinogen levels (less than 150–200 mg/dL). In cases of massive hemorrhage, massive transfusion of blood products should be administered as soon as possible and not delayed just for the sake of waiting for laboratory results. Early aggressive hemostatic resuscitation with a 1:1:1 ratio of packed red blood cells, fresh-frozen plasma, and platelets is likely to result in improved outcomes [44]. Although administration of recombinant activated factor VII has been described in cases of AFE [45–47], some authors believe that excessive diffuse thrombosis and multiorgan failure can occur secondary to the combination of recombinant activated factor VII and elevated levels of tissue factor present in AFE. Hence, it is recommended to consider using this agent only as a last resort in cases of intractable hemorrhage despite massive blood component replacement and surgical interventions [46].

Amniotic fluid has been shown to contain both plasminogen activators and plasminogen activator inhibitors [48]. Hyperfibrinolysis has been involved in AFE-related coagulopathy and antifibrinolytics, such as tranexamic acid or epsilon amino caproic acid, and bedside thromboelastography should be considered in the management of AFE [49].

In the United States, most of the fibrinogen replacement is done in the form of cryoprecipitates (2 g of fibrinogen are found in 100 cc of cryoprecipitate). Each unit of cryoprecipitate will correct the serum fibrinogen by 10 mg/dL. An adult will require a usual dose of 10 units for expected fibrinogen correction of 100 mg/dL. Just like fresh frozen plasma, cryoprecipitate needs to be thawed before its use and carries the risk for virus transmission. Although not widely available in the United States, fibrinogen concentrates have emerged as another alternative to replenish serum fibrinogen levels without the risk of viral transmission or transfusion reactions like transfusion related acute lung injury (TRALI). It is stored at room temperature and available for immediate use. Fibrinogen concentrates contains high concentrations of fibrinogen (100 mL contains 2 g of fibrinogen).

Uterine atony, when present, should be managed aggressively with the use of uterotonics such as oxytocin, ergot derivatives, and prostaglandins [50]. If medical therapy fails, uterine tamponade with the use of packing or commercially available intrauterine balloons should be considered. Surgical approaches, such as bilateral uterine artery ligation, B-Lynch stitch, or even a hysterectomy, may be needed in extreme cases of uterine atony.

After vaginal delivery, thorough assessment of vaginal canal lacerations as potential sources of bleeding is strongly recommended. For patients undergoing a cesarean section with diffuse bleeding not amenable to surgical control, damage control surgery should be considered with packing the pelvis and transfer to the intensive care unit for further medical therapy with delayed closure/abdominal exploration.

PROGNOSIS OF PATIENTS WHO SURVIVE AN AFE EVENT

Prognosis AFE is very poor with mortality rates up to 61% and with only 15% ending up with intact neurologic status [3]. In-hospital cardiac arrest patients have an overall survival of 15%–20% [51]. Due to improvement in the health care system, better outcomes have been reported with maternal mortality rates down to 26% and 93% of survivors neurologically intact [4,5]. Perinatal mortality has been reported to be as high as 25%. Of note, when discussing outcomes of cases with suspected AFE, one should account for patients’ characteristics because these can skew the data to either better or worse survival/mortality rates. For example, in patients with the full-blown syndrome of coagulopathy and cardiopulmonary arrest, mortality rates would be invariably higher than those with isolated coagulopathy alone [19].

Postpartum Counseling about Recurrence Rates of AFE

AFE is so rare that recurrence rates are difficult, if not impossible, to describe. In the literature, multiple cases of uneventful pregnancies after an episode of AFE have been reported [52,53]. No recurrent cases have been published, and no data exists to counsel AFE survivors about the possibility of recurrence.

SUMMARY

AFE is a rare but often lethal condition. In the past decade, better maternal and perinatal outcomes have been observed secondary to improvements in the management of the critically ill patient. Its pathophysiology remains largely unknown. Diagnosis is mainly clinical and one of exclusion because specific diagnostic tests are currently absent. Management consists mainly of supportive care. Core treatment principles include delivery of fetus when indicated, respiratory support
Figure 41.1 Pearls in the management of suspected cases of amniotic fluid embolism. Abbreviations: CPR-ACLS, cardiopulmonary resuscitation-advanced cardiac life support; DIC, disseminated intravascular coagulation; MAP, mean arterial pressure; TTE, transthoracic echocardiography.
(usually in the form of endotracheal intubation and mechanical ventilation), and hemodynamic support. Judicious use of fluids, vasopressors, inotropes, and pulmonary vasodilators are crucial in the therapy of the underlying cardiovascular dysfunction. High index of suspicion with prompt initiation of treatment is crucial to improve outcomes of this serious and lethal disease.

REFERENCES


5. Tufnell DJ. United Kingdom amniotic fluid embolism register. *BJOG* 2005; 112(12): 1625–9. [II-2; Retrospective chart review, n = 44]


42. Wible EF, Kass JS, Lopez GA. A report of fetal demise during therapeutic hypothermia after cardiac arrest. *Neurocrit Care* 2010; 13(2): 239–42. [III; Case report]


Cancer

Elyce Cardonick

KEY POINTS
Cancer Diagnosed in Pregnancy

- Avoid delay in diagnosis by performing necessary diagnostic studies in a timely and adequate fashion as in nonpregnant adults with rare exceptions.
- Postpone radiologic studies that will not alter cancer treatment or patient decisions during pregnancy.
- Avoid iatrogenic preterm deliveries.
- When choosing a particular chemotherapeutic regimen for a particular cancer, choose the one with the most experience of use and proven safety during pregnancy as long as it will offer a similar chance of cure for the patient. Administer the same doses of chemotherapy as given to nonpregnant women based on the actual height and weight of the patient during pregnancy. Prepregnancy weight or ideal body weight should not be used to calculate chemotherapy dosage during pregnancy.
- At least 3 weeks between a cycle of chemotherapy during pregnancy and delivery is recommended. Halt/complete chemotherapy regimens by 34/35 weeks gestation.
- Send placental pathology for all cancers, especially in cases of melanoma.
- Close multidisciplinary management with an oncologist and maternal-fetal specialist knowledgeable regarding the unique considerations of cancer during pregnancy is vital to optimize outcomes.

Cancer Diagnosed before Pregnancy

- Women who have been treated for childhood cancer with chemotherapy, radiation therapy, or both are not at increased risk of having children with congenital or chromosomal anomalies.
- The available data do not support an adverse effect of prior chemotherapy on the risk of miscarriage, fetal demise, or birth weight.
- Women who have received prior irradiation deliver infants with a statistically lower birth weight compared to survivors only treated with chemotherapy, and those with a history of pelvic irradiation specifically can have perinatal complications, such as miscarriage, preterm labor and delivery, low birth weight, and placenta accreta.
- Unless the cancer suffered by the patient was part of an inherited syndrome, such as retinoblastoma, the offspring of cancer survivors are not at increased risk for cancer.
- With the possible exception of gestational trophoblastic disease, pregnancy does not affect the risk of recurrence of any type of cancer.
- Women with a history of left-sided chest radiation therapy or anthracycline-based chemotherapy (daunorubicin, doxorubicin, idarubicin, epirubicin, and mitoxantrone) can have delayed cardiac toxicity and should undergo cardiac evaluation prior to pregnancy.

CANCER DIAGNOSED IN PREGNANCY
Incidence/Epidemiology
Cancer complicates approximately 1/1000 pregnancies, and 1 out of every 118 malignancies is associated with pregnancy [1]. There is no increased incidence of malignancy in pregnant women. The biggest risk for cancer during pregnancy is advanced maternal age as the incidence of cancer in women increases with age. The most common cancers that occur during pregnancy are breast, cervical, leukemia, lymphoma, thyroid, and melanoma [2].

General Considerations
Delays in diagnosis should be avoided. The necessary diagnostic studies to work up a concerning sign or symptom in a pregnant patient should proceed in the same timely and efficient matter as if the patient were not pregnant [3]. The safest diagnostic studies should be employed, for example, an MRI in place of CT if similar diagnostic information can be obtained. Staging procedures and radiologic studies should be limited during pregnancy to those that will determine the treatment course during pregnancy or affect patient decisions about continuing the pregnancy. Chemotherapy regimens should be comparable to those used in nonpregnant patients; however, using the newest agents is not recommended in absence of safety data even if favored for nonpregnant patients. For example, nonpregnant women may be treated for breast cancer with doxorubicin/cyclophosphamide (AC); idarubicin/cyclophosphamide, 5-fluorouracil/doxorubicin/cyclophosphamide, cyclophosphamide/methotrexate/f-fluorouracil, or epirubicin/cyclophosphamide. The latter may be better tolerated in nonpregnant patients, and data is accumulating outside of the United States with using epirubicin/cyclophosphamide during pregnancy; however, the first regimen (AC) has the most reported cases in the pregnancy literature and is usually the first line of treatment for breast cancer during pregnancy. The second regimen (idarubicin/cyclophosphamide) has been associated with transient cardiomyopathy in infants exposed in utero [4–6]. Different drugs in the same class of chemotherapy agents may have different properties that allow more placental transfer. Once the regimen is chosen, the pregnant woman should be given the same doses of chemotherapy as given to nonpregnant women with the same cancer type and stage. The woman’s changing weight during pregnancy should be used,
not prepregnancy or ideal body weight, to determine the dose of chemotherapy. This recommendation may change if pharmacokinetic studies are performed in the future on pregnant women receiving chemotherapy as free drug levels may not be the same as in nonpregnant women due to the many physiologic changes during pregnancy that affect drug metabolism. For most cancers, termination of pregnancy does not improve or affect outcome. If the patient wishes to continue the pregnancy, cancer treatment is discussed if treatment cannot be delayed until postpartum without compromising the woman’s disease-free or overall survival. This concept brings into conflict what is best for maternal survival yet not harmful to the developing fetus. Close multidisciplinary management, especially with oncologists and maternal-fetal specialists knowledgeable in cancer and pregnancy and the neonatal team is vital to optimize outcomes. Obstetrical management and mode of delivery (aside from cervical or vulvar cancers) rarely need to be altered, and evidence based interventions proven beneficial in pregnancy should be available to all pregnant women with cancer. Iatrogenic preterm deliveries prior to 34/35 weeks should be avoided. Placental pathology should be sent for all cancers, especially in cases of melanoma.

**General Chemotherapy Considerations**

Chemotherapy given during the first trimester has the highest chance of causing malformations as the majority of organogenesis occurs between three and eight weeks post-conception. The literature supports the relative safety of fetal exposure to chemotherapy during the second and third trimesters [7–9]. References for specific chemotherapy regimens are listed below by cancer type. If one controls for the gestational age at delivery, fetal growth restriction does not appear to be increased in most cases, especially with solid tumors. Patients with systemic disease, such as leukemia, are at risk for increased perinatal morbidity and mortality including fetal growth restriction and intrauterine fetal demise.

Transplacental studies of chemotherapeutic drugs during pregnancy are scarce. Doxorubicin was not detectable in amniotic fluid, placental tissue, fetal brain, or GI tract but detectable in fetal liver, kidney, and lung 15 hours after IV administration [10]. Placental transfer of various chemotherapeutic agents can be modified by placenta proteins, such as P-glycoprotein, which act as efflux proteins to decrease fetal exposure [11]. Umbilical blood sampling two and five weeks post multiagent chemotherapy for maternal leukemia showed that fetal hematopoiesis was normal [12].

**Breast Cancer**

Breast cancer is the most common cancer complicating pregnancy with more than 900 cases reported in the literature. Seven percent to 15% of premenopausal breast cancers occur during pregnancy. The histology of breast cancer diagnosed during pregnancy is different from the nonpregnant patient population with invasive ductal carcinoma being the most common subtype. Beadle et al. evaluated the survival of 668 patients younger than 35 years of age with breast cancer: 51 diagnosed during pregnancy, 53 within 1 year postpartum, and 548 nonpregnant women. During the median follow-up of 114 months, patients with pregnancy-associated cases had no statistically significant differences in 10-year locoregional recurrence, distant metastases, or overall survival. For patients diagnosed with breast cancer during pregnancy, any treatment intervention during pregnancy provided a trend toward improved overall survival compared to delaying evaluation and treatment until after delivery; 78.8% versus 44.6%, p = 0.68 [13]. Loibl, too, found that delaying treatment until after delivery did not afford a survival advantage [14]. Women diagnosed with and treated for breast cancer during pregnancy have comparable survival to age- and stage-matched nonpregnant women [13–15]. Pregnant women may be more likely to be diagnosed at stage II compared to nonpregnant women (74% vs. 37%) and less likely to be diagnosed with early-stage disease (21% vs. 54%) [16]. Pregnant and nonpregnant women younger than 40 are more likely to be diagnosed with stage-II disease compared to women older than 40. When matched for stage, women younger than 40 have a statistically worse five-year survival compared to women older than 40 years of age at diagnosis (55% vs. 75%). According to these data, it may be the age of reproductive-age women that has a stronger influence on survival than pregnancy [16].

**Delay in Diagnosis**

Studies show both patients and physicians follow a breast mass longer in pregnant women before performing a biopsy. This is not solely due to ascribing the palpable mass as “normal breast changes” of pregnancy. Pregnant women, therefore, are often diagnosed with larger tumors at later stages than nonpregnant women. A delay in diagnosis obviously worsens prognosis and is inexcusable. During routine prenatal care, the examination of the breast all the way into and including the axillae should be included in all breast examinations as this can be the sole area of a breast cancer presentation during pregnancy.

**Diagnostic Tests and Safety in Pregnancy**

The fetal exposure to mammography is not the deterrent to performing this as the first line for the workup of a mass in pregnancy as the exposure is only 0.4 rads. Mammography has less sensitivity for screening in pregnancy due to the increased overall density, vascularity, cellularity, and water content, which leads to less contrast during pregnancy. During pregnancy, breast ultrasound has a better accuracy than mammography and should be performed for palpable masses. The sensitivity and specificity of ultrasound to detect solid versus cystic breast masses is not altered by pregnancy. The biopsy of a solitary mass should continue as in nonpregnant women with core needle biopsy preferred over fine needle aspiration during pregnancy. False positive cytological findings can occur in pregnancy due to the highly proliferative state of the breast, and the pathologist should be aware that the patient is pregnant [17]. As in premenopausal nonpregnant women, most tumors in pregnant women are estrogen receptor negative [18]. HER2neu expression is comparable to nonpregnant premenopausal women [18]. Maternal age, rather than pregnancy, determine the biologic features of breast cancer.

**Effects on the Pregnancy**

Breast cancer itself (excluding therapy) does not directly affect perinatal outcome.

**Termination of Pregnancy and Breast Cancer**

Routine termination of pregnancy does not appear to offer a survival advantage for pregnant women diagnosed with breast cancer [16,19,20].
Staging during Pregnancy

Mammography is indicated once breast cancer is diagnosed during pregnancy to exclude multifocal disease in the affected breast or cancer in the contralateral breast. To detect metastases to lungs, liver, or bone, the most common sites of metastases in breast cancer, a chest X-ray (with abdominal shielding) is recommended and can be safely performed with fetal exposure of 0.06 mrad. Abdominal ultrasound can be performed to detect liver metastases, and liver function tests are not reliable for management decisions as alkaline phosphatase is physiologically increased in pregnancy. The risk of bony metastasis with stage I or II breast cancer is 3% to 7%.

A bone scan can be safely deferred until after pregnancy for asymptomatic patients with early-stage disease. If a patient is symptomatic or has advanced-stage disease, a bone scan can be performed with a Foley catheter in place and intravenous hydration to promote washout of the excreted radiopharmaceutical from the patient’s bladder. An exposure of 10 mCi rather than 20 mCi of Technitium-99m (Tc-99m) methylene diphosphonate (MDP) and doubling the imaging time can reduce fetal radiation exposure [21]. Alternatively, an MRI of the skeleton can detect 80% of metastatic deposits. Brain scan is of little yield unless the patient has neurologic symptoms and physical findings. Positron emission tomography (PET) scans are performed postpartum. Detecting spread to regional lymph nodes is discussed below.

Surgery during Pregnancy

Either modified radical mastectomy or breast conservation surgery with axillary or sentinel lymph node dissection can be safely performed at any gestational age during pregnancy with attention paid to avoid the supine position after 20 weeks gestation. Intraoperative fetal monitoring is performed during a procedure at or after 24 weeks gestation; otherwise fetal viability is documented before and after surgery. Pregnant patients should have the same discussion as nonpregnant women with breast cancer about the pros and cons of breast conservation surgery. There does not appear to be a survival advantage of mastectomy over breast conservation [22]. Patients choosing breast conservation and patients requiring radiation despite mastectomy will need to defer radiotherapy until postpartum. Depending on the gestational age at diagnosis and surgery, chemotherapy can be given during this time until postpartum radiation. Before prescribing taxanes in pregnancy, mastectomy was encouraged for patients diagnosed early in pregnancy as completing surgery and only four cycles of AC chemotherapy occurred too early in pregnancy to consider a preterm delivery. Recent evidence showing the safety of taxane treatment has given an alternative to this suggestion as up to four cycles of taxane treatment may be given every 2 weeks to fill that period of time between completing anthracycline-based therapy and postpartum radiation. Autologous breast reconstruction is delayed for the best cosmetic results to match the unaffected postpartum breast, but expanders/spacers can be placed. Surgeons should be advised of the safe use of narcotics in pregnancy for postoperative pain management.

Sentinel Node Biopsy

Sentinel node mapping and biopsy is commonly used for nonpregnant women to avoid the complications of lymphedema after complete axillary lymphadenectomy. Sentinel node biopsy can be safely performed in pregnancy with Tc-99m sulfur colloid, which identifies the first draining node(s) relative to the site of the primary invasive tumor [23]. For sentinel node imaging, only a minimal dose (500–600 mCi) of double-filtered Tc-99m sulfur colloid is injected at the site of the breast tumor. The entire radioisotope stays trapped at the site of injection or within the lymphatics until decay occurs (half-life = six hours), not traveling throughout the body to expose the fetus [23]. There is limited information on the use of blue dyes such as lymphazurin for sentinel node mapping in pregnancy, and this carries a risk of anaphylaxis. The current recommendation is to use Tc-99 as a same-day procedure rather than any dye injection.

Treatment during Pregnancy (Figure 42.1)

Radiation therapy is usually postponed until postpartum. As the pregnancy advances, the fetus has increased proximity to the breast and radiation field increasing exposure risk. The majority of women reported in the literature are treated with cyclophosphamide, doxorubicin, or epirubicin, with or without 5-fluorouracil (5FU). Currently doxorubicin is the preferred anthracycline to use during pregnancy and is commonly included in the regimens to treat various types of cancer during pregnancy. Data is accumulating, however, in Europe concerning epirubicin during pregnancy as it has lower myelotoxic and cardiotoxic properties and is better tolerated in nonpregnant patients. Transient neonatal cardiomyopathy has been reported after idarubicin exposure, and the use of this anthracycline is not recommended during pregnancy [4, 5]. Taxanes, widely used as standard first-line treatment for high-risk early-stage and advanced/metastatic breast cancer in nonpregnant women, result in a better response rate and longer time to progression than standard anthracycline-based regimens. Nonpregnant women with positive nodes receive taxane therapy, simultaneously or after completing cyclophosphamide and an anthracycline with or without 5FU. Case reports of taxane use in human pregnancy are accumulating, and the placental transfer rate is suspected to be low [24–32]. An increased risk for growth restriction was noted in some reports. If taxane therapy is to be postponed until after delivery, giving one to two additional cycles of anthracycline-based chemotherapy can be considered. Hereceptin/trastuzumab use is contraindicated in pregnancy as its use has been found to be associated with oligohydramnios and pulmonary hypoplasia [33–38]. Hormonal agents, such as tamoxifen, are also postponed until postpartum.

Hodgkin’s Disease

The mean age of diagnosis for Hodgkin’s disease (HD) is 32 years [39]. Pregnant women are not more likely to be diagnosed at a higher stage compared to nonpregnant women [40]. Pregnancy does not adversely affect survival rate. The safety of the doxorubicin bleomycin/vincristine/dacarbazine (ABVD) during pregnancy has been documented [8]. Chemotherapy during organogenesis in the first trimester will increase the risk for malformations (see treatment below). If patients require treatment during the first trimester, consider single-agent treatment with vinblastine followed by a complete regimen during second and third trimesters.

Presentation, Diagnostic Tests, and Safety in Pregnancy

The clinical behavior of HD during pregnancy does not appear to differ from nonpregnant women. Pregnant women can present with a cough, night sweats, and weight loss. A patient with such complaints should have a complete physical exam,
and clavicular adenopathy can be safely biopsied during pregnancy. A chest X-ray can be performed safely with minimal fetal exposure. An abdominal shield is indicated for all radiologic studies during pregnancy. A bone marrow biopsy can also be safely performed with appropriate analgesia.

**Effects on Pregnancy**
HD does not directly affect perinatal outcome. Infants born to women with HD do not have a higher risk for prematurity or intrauterine growth restriction [40].

**Termination of Pregnancy**
Therapeutic termination of a pregnancy does not improve the course of disease [41].

**Surgery during Pregnancy**
At times, histologic examination of a clavicular lymph node is inconclusive. In such cases, if mediastinal adenopathy is evident on X-ray or CT of the chest, a guided biopsy may be indicated to confirm a diagnosis.

**Staging of Disease in Pregnancy**
The staging of lymphoma is based on history and physical examination, hematologic and biochemical testing, bone marrow biopsy, and radiologic imaging. Gallium scanning, staging laparotomy, and splenectomy are no longer routinely performed in nonpregnant patients. Currently, women with stages I and II receive combination modality treatment, so full staging during pregnancy is unlikely to change the recommended treatment during the course of pregnancy and can be delayed to the postpartum period. Image staging in nonpregnant patients includes a chest X-ray and CT. In the pregnant woman, a two-view chest X-ray is suggested. Fetal exposure is negligible with abdominal shielding. A chest MRI can assess lymphadenopathy, and the information gained is comparable to a CT [42]. MRI can also evaluate the bone marrow and detect splenic involvement that may be undetectable with CT.

**Treatment of HD during Pregnancy**
The ABVD regimen for Hodgkin’s lymphoma has been reported to be safe in pregnancy [8]. Similar doses should be
given to the pregnant patient with adjustment for weight gain during pregnancy.

Radiotherapy during Pregnancy
Radiotherapy for HD during pregnancy has been reported to be tolerable for the fetus at certain gestational ages [43]. Exposure of the fetus to radiation is determined by the internal scatter, leakage from the tube head, and scatter from the collimator. Internal scatter depends on the source of radiation, the distance of the fetus from the source, and the size of treatment fields. Blocks are not recommended in pregnancy because of the additional scatter they create. Exposure of the fetus can be estimated with simulated measurements, which have shown that treatment with a 6 MV linear accelerator exposes the fetus to less radiation than treatment with Cobalt 60 [43]. The highest risk of brain damage and mental retardation is between 8 and 15 weeks gestation [44]. Radiation for HD is usually reserved for cases progressing despite chemotherapy, lymphocyte predominant type, or if chemotherapy is not an option.

Non–Hodgkin’s Lymphoma
Non–Hodgkin’s lymphoma (NHL) is rarely reported during pregnancy as this generally occurs in an older age group (mean age at diagnosis is 42 years). Pregnant women present with an aggressive histology [39,45], but the response to treatment, failure, and progression rates are similar to non-pregnant patients. Symptoms can vary widely, with many complaints similar to symptoms in normal pregnancy, which can lead to a delay in diagnosis of NHL in pregnancy.

Avoid Delay in Diagnosis
Pregnant women with NHL can present with breast or ovarian masses, misleading the initial diagnosis to a gynecologic malignancy. When masses are bilateral and massive in size, one should suspect NHL.

Effects of Cancer on the Pregnancy and Vice Versa
NHL does not directly affect pregnancy. However, pregnancy can affect the presentation of NHL, and some authors report a progression of NHL postpartum [45,46]. In some cases, such as lymphoproliferative T-cell lymphoma, a component of Epstein–Barr virus in the etiology of NHL may explain, given the immunosuppression of pregnancy, why some cases of NHL seem to progress more rapidly in pregnant women. The number of cases, however, is too small to determine if termination of the pregnancy would improve prognosis. In addition to the typical presentation of lymphadenopathy, pregnant patients can have involvement of the breasts, ovaries, and uterus. A hormonal influence of pregnancy on the progression of NHL is suggested by the frequent and massive involvement of such organs during pregnancy, which are otherwise unusually involved with NHL in nonpregnant patients [45].

Treatment of NHL during Pregnancy
Breast or ovarian masses should not be surgically removed after biopsy confirms non-Hodgkin’s lymphoma. The masses will respond to systemic chemotherapy. Thirty-five cases of NHL were treated during pregnancy with multiple regimens, most including doxorubicin, cyclophosphamide, and vincristine. No malformations occurred even with first trimester treatment in 11 cases. Rituximab is often used in nonpregnant patients in addition to chemotherapy. It is a chimeric IgG1 antibody, which can cross the placenta and interact with fetal B-cells. It is unlikely that rituximab has any mutagenic potential. Infants exposed to rituximab in pregnancy initially had a period of low IgG, but B-cell counts normalized by four months after birth, and the period with low IgG might not have been longer than average [47].

Leukemia
Acute Leukemia
Acute leukemia is rarely diagnosed during pregnancy as affected women usually have amenorrhea.

Avoid Delay in Diagnosis.
Pregnant women with leukemia can present with severe anemia, thrombocytopenia, infection or sepsis, fever, bone pain, or bleeding.

Diagnostic Tests and Safety in Pregnancy.
Bone marrow biopsy can be safely performed during pregnancy.

Termination of Pregnancy Issues.
Termination of pregnancy has not been shown to improve prognosis but may be a clinically relevant option for pregnant women diagnosed during the first trimester as chemotherapy cannot be delayed until after 12 weeks gestation. Patients newly diagnosed with acute leukemia are too ill to safely undergo a dilatation and curettage procedure even when termination is elected without first undergoing induction chemotherapy. It is suggested to start therapy before termination to induce remission so that the procedure can be safely performed. The patient is otherwise at too high a risk for the complications of D and E, such as infection and sepsis, uterine perforation and hemorrhage, and disseminated intravascular coagulation (DIC).

Effects of Cancer on the Pregnancy.
Acute leukemia is one of the cancers that can affect perinatal outcome. The earlier the diagnosis is made in pregnancy, the higher the perinatal mortality. Pregnancies complicated by acute leukemia are at higher risk for miscarriage, intrauterine fetal demise, preterm labor, and fetal growth restriction, unrelated to cancer treatment [48,49]. Suspected etiologies include maternal anemia, DIC, or leukemic cells affecting blood flow and nutrient exchange in the intervillous spaces of the placenta, and decreased oxygen transport to the fetus [49]. When intensive chemotherapy is given in pregnancy, complete remission is achieved in 75% of patients [49].

Treatment of Cancer during Pregnancy: Chemotherapy, Radiation Therapy.
Aggressive hematologic and obstetric management is advocated when acute leukemia is diagnosed. The prognosis for both mother and fetus is poor when acute leukemia is not treated during pregnancy. Without therapy, maternal death may occur within two months time [49]. Chemotherapy treatment during pregnancy is associated with higher maternal and fetal/neonatal survival compared to postponing chemotherapy until postpartum [49]. All cases with anomalies occurred with first-trimester exposure to cytarabine or 6-thioguanine, alone or in combination with an anthracycline. Cytarabine and 6-thioguanine should be avoided in the first trimester if possible. Combinations including vincristine, 6-MP, doxorubicin or daunorubicin, cyclophosphamide, prednisone, and methotrexate were used in all trimesters without anomalies. Transient myelosuppression can occur in neonates, especially if delivered within
three to four weeks of chemotherapy [50]. More rarely, transient neonatal cardiomyopathy has been reported. Cardiomyopathy occurred mostly after use of idarubicin [4,5]. Iatrogenic preterm deliveries or elective inductions should be avoided before remission is attempted as the patient with acute leukemia is at risk for hemorrhage, DIC, and sepsis during labor and delivery if lacerations, uterine atony, or endometritis occurs.

Chronic Leukemia

Pregnancy does not alter the natural course of chronic leukemia, but there are potentially perinatal risks of placental insufficiency secondary to leukostasis as well as maternal risks if left untreated. Treatment of severe leukocytosis is necessary to reduce maternal risk of stroke hypoxia, DVT. There are case reports of observation alone during pregnancy in patients without splenomegaly. Leukopheresis can be a temporizing measure to reduce WBC and spleen size if necessary [51,52]. Tyrosine kinase inhibitors, such as Imatinib, the newest advance in the treatment of chronic leukemia in non-pregnant adults, has been shown to cause teratogenic effects in rats including exencephaly or encephalocele and absent or reduced frontal and absent parietal bones. Postimplantation loss occurred as well. No teratogenicity has been shown in rabbits. In humans, the majority of reports concerning Imatinib use during pregnancy are first trimester exposures in patients on maintenance therapy who conceive while taking this drug despite the recommendations to use contraception and to avoid unplanned pregnancies. Patients with CML who conceive while taking Gleevec are advised to discontinue use during pregnancy with the majority of patients able to regain remission status postpartum [53]. If a pregnant patient newly diagnosed with CML is symptomatic with splenomegaly and without clinical response to leukopheresis or other medications, Imatinib would be preferred over second-generation tyrosine kinase inhibitors, such as desatinib or nolotinib.

Effects of Cancer on the Pregnancy

Melanoma is one of the rare cancers that can metastasize to the placenta. Eighty-seven cases of placenta/fetal metastasis have been reported. The largest percentage (31%) was in cases of maternal melanoma [63]. Patients with placental metastases also had widespread disease. The placenta should be sent for pathologic evaluation in all cases of melanoma diagnosed during pregnancy. If melanoma is found in the placenta, the neonate should be followed closely for one year with frequent skin evaluations.

Termination of Pregnancy Issues

No advantage in prognosis or survival has been demonstrated with elective pregnancy termination in patients with stage-I melanoma.

Surgery during Pregnancy

Wide local excision is the only cure for melanoma and can be safely performed during pregnancy at any gestational age. Patients should be positioned with uterine displacement after wide local excision. If melanoma is found in the placenta, the placenta should be sent for staging if the melanoma is greater than 1.0 mm thick. For stage I or II melanoma, a chest X-ray is indicated for staging if the melanoma is greater than 1.0 mm thick. No other staging radiologic studies are required. For stage III disease, an MRI of the chest and abdomen with or without the pelvis is additionally recommended for evaluation of lymphadenopathy or evidence of liver metastases. MRI of the brain and skeleton is also recommended.

Avoid Delay in Diagnosis

Pregnant women are diagnosed with thicker tumors compared to nonpregnant women. This (as well as the increase in metastatic disease) has been ascribed to a delay in biopsy leading to delayed diagnosis when changes in moles’ appearances are ascribed to pregnancy or the surgeon is hesitant to perform a biopsy during pregnancy. Hyperpigmentation can occur secondary to an increased secretion of melanocyte-stimulating hormone (MSH); however, the color of the mole should still be uniform, and benign moles should not cause itching. Maximum increases/decreases in the size of melanocytic nevi in pregnancy is 1 mm [62]. During pregnancy, one must still look for signs of melanoma, listed below, which should not be ascribed to normal changes in pregnancy. These include the ABCD signs: A for asymmetry; B for notched, irregular, or indistinct borders; C for an uneven color; D for diameter greater than 6 mm. Again, itching of a mole can be an early sign of malignant melanoma.

Invasive Cervical Cancer

Invasive carcinoma of the cervix occurs in approximately 1 out of 2200 pregnancies, but this incidence is declining due to widespread and improved Papanicolaou screening [64]. Tumor characteristics and maternal survival are not adversely affected by pregnancy; in fact, pregnant women are more likely to be diagnosed with earlier stage disease as cervical screening is routine during prenatal care [64]. Unlike non-pregnant patients, presenting symptoms are more likely to
be abnormal Papanicolaou screens rather than bleeding. The predominant histologic type is squamous cell. Prognosis is comparable to nonpregnant patients [64–67]. (For noninvasive cervical cancer, see Chapter 33 in Obstetrical Evidence Based Guidelines.)

Avoid Delay in Diagnosis
When pregnant patients complain of vaginal bleeding, the cervix should be visualized for lesions.

Diagnostic Tests and Safety in Pregnancy
The cytobrush can be safely used during pregnancy to obtain an adequate Papanicolaou screen during prenatal care. Pregnant patients should be warned of the possibility of bleeding afterward.

Effects of Cancer on the Pregnancy
Cervical cancer does not adversely affect pregnancy directly; however, cancer treatment affects future fertility if hysterectomy is indicated.

Termination of Pregnancy Issues
A spontaneous loss of the pregnancy may occur when treatment for cervical cancer is initiated for patients diagnosed prior to 18 weeks gestation.

Considerations Regarding Therapy during Pregnancy for Cervical Cancer
The gestational age at diagnosis determines the management choices for the pregnant patient. For stages IB–IIA diagnosed before 18 weeks, immediate surgery or radiotherapy treatment is recommended with the fetus in situ. Often a spontaneous miscarriage will occur within a short time after radiotherapy. For patients with advanced-stage disease, external radiotherapy and chemotherapy with fetus in situ is suggested. Spontaneous abortion often follows radiotherapy; however, hysterotomy may be required to facilitate brachytherapy if this does not occur [66].

Staging of Cervical Cancer during Pregnancy
Evaluation of regional lymph node chains is an important component of staging as lymphadenopathy has prognostic and therapeutic implications. MRI can identify enlarged lymph nodes. MRI can also detect depth of stromal invasion, involvement of the parametria, and a dilated collecting system. A two-view chest X-ray with proper shielding can be performed if indicated clinically.

Treatment of Cancer during Pregnancy: Surgery, Chemotherapy, Radiation Therapy
Treatment for invasive cervical cancer involves either surgery, radiation, or both, depending on the stage at diagnosis. The safe use of neoadjuvant platinum-based chemotherapy has been reported [68,69]. See also Chapter 33 in Obstetrics Evidence Based Guidelines.

Surgery for Cervical Cancer Diagnosed during Pregnancy
Patients diagnosed after 18 weeks gestation can consider delaying surgical treatment of cervical cancer in order to improve fetal maturity and survival. Neoadjuvant chemotherapy for invasive cervical disease may be given during the second and third trimesters of pregnancy during this interval until postpartum surgical treatment. The survival outcomes for pregnant women and their children when surgical treatment for cervical cancer is intentionally delayed for 6 to 17 weeks is very good with fetal outcomes markedly improved and maternal survival not adversely affected [70–74].

Delivery for Patients with Invasive Cervical Cancer during Pregnancy
In the majority of cases, a cesarean section is advised with radical hysterectomy performed simultaneously. A classical cesarean delivery is recommended to avoid extension into the lower uterine segment [72,73]. At the time of cesarean section, pelvic and para-aortic nodes should be sampled, and an oophoropexy can be performed to move the ovaries out of the planned radiation field. Presurgical consultation with a radiation oncologist is suggested prior to delivery. Episiotomy site recurrences of cervical cancer have been reported for women diagnosed with invasive cervical cancer during pregnancy who delivered vaginally [75]. Microinvasion of the cervix is not a contraindication to vaginal delivery.

Thyroid Cancer
The mean age of diagnosis for thyroid cancer is between 30 and 34 years of age with most cases in pregnancy presenting as a solitary nodule [76]. There is no evidence that pregnancy changes the clinical course of the disease and no evidence that thyroid cancer adversely affects pregnancy outcome. The prognosis of differentiated thyroid cancer is the same in pregnant and nonpregnant women [77]. No endocrine association between maternal hormonal changes and thyroid cancer has been found. Treatment depends on histologic subtype, degree of differentiation, stage, and gestational age at diagnosis.

Avoid Delay in Diagnosis
The thyroid can enlarge during normal pregnancy, but solitary nodules should be evaluated.

Diagnostic Tests and Safety in Pregnancy
Biopsy of a solid nodule can be safely performed during pregnancy at any gestational age.

Termination of Pregnancy Issues
Elective termination of pregnancy for thyroid cancer is not associated with any survival advantage.

Surgery during Pregnancy
The histologic type of thyroid cancer and the gestational age at diagnosis determine if thyroidectomy is necessary during pregnancy or can be safely postponed until postpartum. See section titled “Treatment of Thyroid Cancer During Pregnancy.”

Treatment of Thyroid Cancer during Pregnancy
Differentiated types of thyroid cancer, such as papillary, follicular, or mixed types, are slow growing, and surgery can be postponed until postpartum for patients diagnosed after 12 weeks gestation. Prior to 12 weeks, a subtotal thyroidectomy is recommended [78]. If a nodule is noted to enlarge during pregnancy, if the surrounding tissues are fixed, or lymphatic invasion is seen on the original biopsy, surgery should not be delayed to postpartum regardless of the gestational age at diagnosis. Patients who delay treatment due to pregnancy should be advised to undergo surgery within 1 year of diagnosis [78].
Medullary or anaplastic types of thyroid cancer are more aggressive, and surgery should not be postponed. A total thyroidectomy may be necessary. If the lesion is compromising the airway, radiotherapy may be necessary during pregnancy. During total thyroidectomy, parathyroid tissue is often inadvertently removed as well. For the remainder of the pregnancy and during deliveries, calcium balance should be watched carefully. When magnesium is given for preterm labor or preeclampsia, calcium levels should be followed as should symptoms of hypocalcemia.

FOR ALL CANCER TYPES DIAGNOSED DURING PREGNANCY
Complications of Cancer Therapy
During chemotherapy, side effects, such as nausea and vomiting, can occur and can compound the nausea related to the pregnancy. Oxandron, metoclopramide, kytril, and benadryl can be safely given for nausea. Decadron can also be given to enhance the effectiveness of antiemetics but should be given in the lowest effective dose (see section titled “Fetal Surveillance and Timing of Delivery”). A common complaint during or immediately after chemotherapy sessions is uterine contractions. Patients should be well hydrated before, during, and after chemotherapy sessions. Given the relative immunosuppression of pregnancy combined with the bone marrow suppression with chemotherapy, pregnant women are at risk for infection, and therefore, the feteuses are at risk for exposure as well. No studies have shown an adverse effect on the neonate due to utero exposure to neupogen; however, during pregnancy, it is given once neutropenia is demonstrated rather than prophylactically as in the nonpregnant setting. Another complication can be poor maternal weight gain due to either nausea and vomiting or chemotherapy-induced stomatitis. Patients should increase caloric and protein intake in the weeks preceding and following chemotherapy. Nutritional supplementation is sometimes necessary. Theoretically, additional antioxidants should not be supplemented with the prenatal vitamin as free radicals are supposed to be created by the chemotherapy and this may impede its therapeutic effect.

Maternal Surveillance
An echocardiogram is preferred over a multigated equilibrium radionuclide cineangiography (MUGA) to evaluate baseline cardiac function prior to anthracycline therapy. This can provide the necessary information regarding cardiac function and valvular disease. Patients who have any fevers during chemotherapy require comprehensive evaluations for presence of infection, especially during the nadir period. Monitor weight gain throughout pregnancy.

Fetal Surveillance and Timing of Delivery
Often decadron is given with chemotherapy to enhance the effectiveness of antiemetics. This is the intravenous form of dexamethasone. If the patient requires tocolysis for preterm labor and has received IV decadron with chemotherapy after 24 weeks, steroids, such as dexamethasone/betamethasone, may not be necessary to stimulate fetal lung maturity. The fetal/neonatal safety of repeated doses of steroids has not been demonstrated, and repeated courses of steroids are not currently recommended (see Chapter 16 in Obstetrics Evidence Based Guidelines).

The preterm infant cannot metabolize the chemotherapy agents as well as the term infant; therefore, iatrogenic preterm deliveries should be avoided in patients receiving chemotherapy, and preterm labor should be treated aggressively. Chemotherapy may need to be temporarily withheld/delayed if the patient has preterm labor. Growth ultrasounds in the late second and third trimesters are suggested for women receiving chemotherapy during pregnancy, especially for patients diagnosed with acute leukemia, given the increased risk of intrauterine growth restriction.

Transient bone marrow suppression of the neonate can occur if delivery is within three to four weeks of treatment. Chemotherapy should not be given after 34 weeks as the patient could potentially go into spontaneous labor during the nadir period. If additional treatment is still required, one can consider a late preterm induction so that the interval between the last treatment in pregnancy and the postpartum treatment is not greater than six weeks (e.g., if treatment is 33 weeks, consider induction at 38 weeks so that 1 week afterward the patient can resume chemo with a 6-week interval between last treatment during pregnancy and postpartum treatment).

Fetal/Neonatal Evaluation after Chemotherapy during Pregnancy
A single case of malignancy has been diagnosed in a child exposed in utero to chemotherapy. Papillary thyroid cancer at age 11 and neuroblastoma at age 14 were diagnosed in a 14-year-old exposed in utero to multiple chemotherapeutic agents for maternal leukemia. His fraternal twin (exposed to the same agents) was healthy [79]. He was also born with congenital anomalies including esophageal atresia, abnormal IVc, and right-arm deformity.

Long-term follow-up of children exposed to chemotherapy is limited but accumulating. A case series of neurodevelopmental follow-up for a mean of 18 years on 84 children exposed in utero to various types of chemotherapy for maternal hematologic malignancy shows that their clinical health status is comparable to their unexposed siblings. All displayed normal growth, development, neurologic function, and school performance. Cytogenetic studies were normal. Neurological, intellectual and visual–motor assessments were no different for exposed children compared to their siblings and unrelated controls. No cancer has been diagnosed in any of the children, and 12 children exposed in utero have now had their own children. All second-generation children were normal in appearance but did not undergo the same rigorous testing as their parents [8]. Recently, Amant, Calsteren, Halaska et al. reported a prospective study on the developmental outcomes of 70 children exposed to cancer treatment in utero. Children were assessed for cognitive performance. The children showing delays in development were concentrated in the group delivered preterm, the majority of which were iatrogenically delivered prematurely [80]. In another prospective follow-up study of children exposed to chemotherapy in utero, no significant differences were noted in cognitive ability, school performance, or behavioral competence for children exposed to chemotherapy in utero compared with nonexposed controls (also born to women diagnosed with cancer during pregnancy). Ninety-five percent scored within normal limits on cognitive assessments; 71% and 79% of children demonstrated at or above age equivalency in mathematics and reading scores, respectively [81].
The placenta should be sent for pathology examination in all cases of women diagnosed with cancer during pregnancy regardless of cancer type or treatment. A complete blood count with differential is recommended on either the cord blood or the neonate when chemotherapy has been given during pregnancy. Additional long-term follow-up on the children exposed to cancer and its treatment in utero is ongoing. A Cancer and Pregnancy Registry is established to follow all children of women diagnosed with cancer during pregnancy. The women are also followed yearly. Information about cancer diagnosis, treatment, pregnancy outcomes, and long-term neonatal health and maternal survival is collected and kept confidential. Contact the Cancer and Pregnancy Registry: 1-877-635-4499; 856-757-7876, 856-342-2491, or Cancerandpregnancy.com; Cancerandpregnancy.com.

CANCER DIAGNOSED BEFORE PREGNANCY

General Principles

Pregnancy after Chemotherapy

The Childhood Cancer Survivor Study compared pregnancy outcome in five-year female cancer survivors who were less than 21 years old at diagnosis with pregnancy outcomes in their sibling controls [82]. The most frequently used agents were cyclophosphamide, doxorubicin, vincristine, daunorubicin, and daunorubicin. More than 1900 females reported 4029 pregnancies. There were no significant differences in pregnancy outcome between patients who had received chemotherapy and controls. The available data do not support an adverse effect of prior chemotherapy on the risk of miscarriage, fetal growth, congenital malformations and development, fetal demise, or uterine function [82–88].

Chemotherapy-Induced Cardiac Toxicity

We suggest that women who received anthracyclines (daunorubicin, doxorubicin, idarubicin, epirubicin, and mitoxantrone) undergo cardiac evaluation prior to pregnancy [89].

Pregnancy after Radiation

Pregnancy in women who have received prior pelvic irradiation appears to be associated with complications, such as miscarriage, preterm labor and delivery, low birth weight, impaired fetal growth, placenta accreta, and stillbirth [90–97]. Hypotheses for these complications include changes in the uterine vasculature and its response to cytotoxicblastic invasion or decreased uterine elasticity and volume from radiation-induced myometrial fibrosis. These responses to radiation, especially if before puberty, can affect fetoplacental blood flow or result in a small uterine size leading to preterm labor and delivery. In addition, radiotherapy may injure the endometrium and prevent normal decidualization, resulting in disorders of placental attachment, such as placenta accreta or percreta [92,93].

In the Childhood Cancer Survivor Study, compared with the children of survivors who did not receive any radiotherapy, the children of survivors treated with high-dose radiotherapy to the uterus (>500 cGy) were at significantly increased risk of preterm birth (50.0% vs. 19.6%), low birth weight (36.2% vs. 7.6%), and small for gestational age (18.2% vs. 7.8%). These risks were also noted at lower uterine radiotherapy doses (starting at 50 cGy for preterm birth and at 250 cGy for low birth weight) [82].

Radiation-Induced Cardiac Toxicity Due to Fibrosis

The clinical spectrum of cardiac toxicity resulting from radiation includes delayed pericarditis that can present abruptly or as chronic pericardial effusion or constriction; pancarditis, which includes pericardial and myocardial fibrosis with or without endocardial fibroelastosis; cardiomyopathy; coronary artery disease; and functional valve injury and conduction defects [98]. Women with a history of prior thoracic radiation therapy (including left-sided breast cancer) should undergo a baseline echocardiogram and electrocardiogram prior to pregnancy to detect subclinical radiation-induced cardiac sequelae. Consultation with a cardiologist is advised if the echocardiogram is abnormal or an arrhythmia is noted.

Patients who have undergone mediastinal/mantle radiation, such as after Hodgkin's disease, may be at risk for hypothyroidism and should have thyroid function studies performed at initial prenatal visit.

Children of Cancer Survivors: No Increased Risk for Cancer

The offspring of cancer survivors are not at increased risk for cancer unless the tumor suffered by the parent was a component of an inherited syndrome, such as retinoblastoma [99,100].

Pregnancy after Cancer: Risk of Recurrence?

With the possible exception of gestational trophoblastic disease, pregnancy does not affect the risk of recurrence of any type of cancer although the diagnosis may be delayed because of the pregnancy. In particular, recurrence of melanoma [101,102] and breast cancer [103–105] appear to be unaffected by a subsequent pregnancy.

Pregnancy after Specific Cancers

Aside from a history of choriocarcinoma, a pregnancy subsequent to cancer treatment should not increase a woman's risk for cancer recurrence or death.

Pregnancy after Breast Cancer

Breast cancer, being hormonally driven, is the most common cancer for which women hesitate to have subsequent pregnancies. Some reports suggest that a subsequent pregnancy after treatment of early-stage breast cancer has a favorable impact on survival [106–109]. Prognosis is determined by nodal status and stage, not subsequent pregnancy [110]. In one series, 94 women with early-stage disease who became pregnant after breast cancer were compared to 188 breast cancer survivors without subsequent pregnancies matched for nodal status, tumor size, age, and year of diagnosis [108]. The risk ratio for death was significantly lower (0.44) for women who became pregnant subsequent to the diagnosis of breast cancer compared to women with breast cancer who did not have a subsequent pregnancy. Sankila (RR 0.2 [0.1–0.5]) and Mueller (RR 0.54 [0.41–0.71]) also showed a decreased risk of death for women with subsequent pregnancy after breast cancer compared to controls matched for age, stage, and year of diagnosis [99,111]. Even for women with a history of estrogen receptor positive breast cancer, a subsequent pregnancy was not deleterious for survival status. In this multicenter retrospective cohort study, 333 pregnant patients and 874 matched nonpregnant patients were analyzed of whom 686 patients had ER-positive disease. No difference in disease-free survival was observed between pregnant and nonpregnant patients in the ER-positive (HR 0.91; 95% CI, 0.67 to 1.24, p 0.55) or the ER-negative (HR 0.75; 95% CI, 0.51 to 1.08, p 0.12)
breast-feeding from the irradiated areolar complex or transected many ducts [121]. Even when women who have undergone irradiation for breast cancer are able to produce milk on the affected side, but the amount is insufficient in cancer mortality if they conceived within 10 months of diagnosis. Among women with positive lymph-node negative at diagnosis, younger than 35 years of age, or with only localized disease, pregnancy did not affect cancer mortality even if conception occurred within 10 months of diagnosis. Among women with positive lymph nodes at diagnosis, older than 35 years of age, or diagnosed with regional recurrence prior to pregnancy, there was a significant increase in cancer mortality if they conceived within 10 months of diagnosis. Women who conceived at least 10 months after diagnosis had lower mortality than women without births after breast cancer (RR 0.54, 95% CI 0.41–0.71). Decreased mortality was noted regardless of local/metastatic disease, maternal age, tumor size, or lymph-node status. For each year delay in conception after breast cancer, the relative risk of death was further decreased: two to three years after diagnosis, RR 0.49 (95% CI 0.27–0.86); three to four years after diagnosis, RR 0.30 (95% CI 0.12–0.71); and four to five years after diagnosis, RR 0.19 (95% CI 0.05–0.81).

The half-life of methotrexate (a commonly used agent in the CMF [cyclophosphamide, methotrexate, fluorouracil] regimen) is approximately 8 to 15 hours and it is retained for several weeks to months in the kidney and liver, respectively, leading this author to recommend delaying conception for at least 12 weeks after stopping methotrexate [120].

Breast-feeding after treatment for breast cancer. Most women who have undergone irradiation for breast cancer are able to produce milk on the affected side, but the amount of milk produced may be less than that in a nonirradiated breast, particularly if the lumpectomy site was close to the areolar complex or transected many ducts [121]. Even when breast milk is produced, breast-feeding is not advised because mastitis will be difficult to treat if it occurs [122,123].

Pregnancy after Hodgkin's Lymphoma
After mantle/mediastinal radiation, patients may have undiagnosed hypothyroidism and should be screened with thyroid function studies at the beginning of pregnancy. Patients s/p treatment for HD also have a lifetime risk for secondary cancers, so during prenatal care, breast and skin examination is important.

Pregnancy after Chronic Leukemia
Patients with CML who conceive while taking Gleevac are advised to discontinue use during pregnancy with the majority of patients able to regain remission status postpartum [53].

Pregnancy after Melanoma
The highest risk for recurrence after an adequately excised melanoma is during the first 2 years, so women are often advised to avoid pregnancy during this time period, but having a pregnancy during this time period does not increase one's risk for recurrence. Placental pathology should be sent after delivery in women with a history of melanoma, and prenatal skin examination should be performed at the first prenatal visit and vigilantly by the patient. Moles may darken and even increase in size during pregnancy but should not become irregular or itch.

REFERENCES


77. Moosa M, Mazzaferrri EL. Outcome of differentiated thyroid cancer diagnosed in pregnant women. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 1997; 82(9): 2862–6. [II-3]
Dermatoses of pregnancy

Dana Correale, Joya Sahu, and Jason B. Lee

BACKGROUND
Polymorphic eruption of pregnancy (PEP) comprises the only pregnancy-specific dermatosis. All other dermatoses mentioned herein may be encountered outside of pregnancy, but they have been traditionally grouped and discussed as dermatoses of pregnancy as they represent common and uncommon dermatoses encountered during pregnancy.

Stretch marks are the only dermatologic condition for which there are trials for interventions. Dermatoses of pregnancy as well as melanoma in pregnancy are not well studied with no specific trials regarding treatment. Most evidence regarding pathogenesis and etiology as well as typical disease presentation is based on case reports and case series. Dermatoses of pregnancy have been plagued by disagreements about their nomenclature and classification. Although likely to be reworked and reclassified in the future, the current widely accepted classification, based on the largest series to date, consists of four major categories: 1) polymorphic eruption of pregnancy (PEP), 2) atopic eruption of pregnancy (AEP), 3) pemphigoid gestationis (PG), and 4) intrahepatic cholestasis of pregnancy (ICP). Under this classification, AEP has subsumed atopic dermatitis (eczema) of pregnancy, prurigo of pregnancy (PP), and pruritic folliculitis of pregnancy (PFP). Intrahepatic cholestasis of pregnancy, although not associated with any primary skin lesions, is currently accepted as one of the dermatoses of pregnancy. The most common skin disorder in pregnancy is atopic dermatitis (eczema) of pregnancy. As pruritus represents a significant symptom in all four dermatoses, differentiating one from the other, especially in their early stages, may pose a significant diagnostic challenge, requiring excluding each of the dermatoses methodically. Although not included in the current classification, impetigo herpetiformis (IH), a variant of pustular psoriasis, is frequently discussed together with dermatoses of pregnancy, considered by some as the fifth dermatosis of pregnancy. Table 43.1 provides a summary and classification of the dermatoses of pregnancy. Multidisciplinary management involving a dermatologist expert in dermatologic conditions in pregnancy is of paramount importance.

STRIAE GRAVIDARUM
Key Points
- The exact cause of striae gravidarum (SG) is unknown, but the strongest associated risk factors for their development are presence of preexisting breast and thigh striae and a family history.
- There is no widely available product that has been shown to prevent the formation of SG. Massage with either Trofolastin cream or Verum ointment is associated with a decrease in the development of SG.
- Topical tretinoin and various types of laser therapy have been shown to be helpful in the treatment of SG.

Diagnosis/Definition
Striae distensae (SD), or stretch marks, do not represent a disease but rather they are a cosmetic problem for many people. They often occur for the first time during pregnancy and are referred to as SG. SD initially appear as linear patches that are red to purple in color and lack noticeable surface change (striae rubra). With time, their color fades to lighter than normal skin tone. They become atrophic or depressed with a fine, wrinkled surface (striae alba).

Symptoms
SD are largely asymptomatic. They may be slightly pruritic in their early stages.

Epidemiology/Incidence
The prevalence of SG ranges from 50% to 90% [1]. The mean gestational age for the onset of SG is 25 weeks [1].

Genetics
There is no known clear genetic cause of SG; however, there may be a familial tendency to develop them [1].

Etiology/Basic Pathology
Many theories exist regarding the etiology of SG. Rapid weight gain, baseline weight, hormonal changes, and greater change in abdominal and hip girth during pregnancy have been associated in the past with SG [1,2]. None of these theories have been supported by any recent studies. It is known, however, that elastin and fibrillin fibers, components of the dermal extracellular matrix, are reduced in SD [3].

Risk Factors/Associations
The factors most strongly associated with the development of SG are the presence of breast or thigh striae, having a mother with SG, having additional family members with SG, and belonging to a nonwhite race. In contrast, pre-pregnancy body mass index (BMI), mean weight gain during pregnancy, mean percentage of weight gain, and mean change in BMI seem not to be associated with the development of SG [1].
Management

Prevention

Massage with Trofolastin cream containing Centella asiatica extract, alpha tocopherol, and collagen-elastic hydrolysates applied daily is associated with a 59% decrease in the development of SG compared to massage with placebo [4]. Overall, 56% of the placebo group developed SG compared with 34% of the Trofolastin group. Massage with Verum ointment containing tocopherol, essential fatty acids, panthenol, hyaluronic acid, elastin, and menthol is also associated with a 74% decrease in the development of SG compared to no treatment, so it is unclear in this study if the massage or the Verum ointment or the combination of the two were beneficial [4]. In women with stretch marks from a previous pregnancy, there is no benefit. It should be noted that neither of these compounds are widely available, nor is it known what their active ingredient, if any, might be. There is the suggestion from the second study that bland emollients and massage alone may be of benefit in preventing the formation of SG. Cocoa butter lotion is not associated with reduction in the likelihood of developing SG [5].

Therapy

Once SG have formed, there are treatment options. Topical tretinoin 0.1% cream has been shown to reduce the appearance of SG/SD when used on early lesions (striae rubra) [6]. It is important to note that once striae have become white and atrophic, topical tretinoin was shown to have no benefit in a double-blind, placebo-controlled study [7]. Topical tretinoin (Retin A) works by binding to cytoplasmic proteins and nuclear receptors of keratinocytes and altering downstream gene transcription. The end biologic effect is to regulate the growth and differentiation of keratinocytes [8]. In addition to regulating keratinocyte proliferation, topical retinoids have been shown to decrease fine wrinkling, increase dermal collagen, and repair elastin fiber formation [9]. Improvement in the appearance of SD/SG is most likely the result of this particular biologic effect. Tretinoin is pregnancy category C. Its use is contraindicated during breast-feeding, which makes it difficult to use during the early stages of SG. The side effects of tretinoin therapy are erythema, desquamation, and photosensitivity limited to the application site.

In addition to tretinoin therapy, improvement in the appearance of SD/SG can be achieved with laser therapy. Laser therapy is a rapidly evolving field with new lasers and applications emerging on a regular basis. Two large, blinded studies using an objective grading system evaluating the treatment of SD using a 585-nm pulsed dye laser have shown improvement in their appearance [10]. Both increases and decreases in collagen production have been shown post-treatment depending on the wavelength and energy density of laser used. An increase in dermal elastin content has also been shown in biopsies obtained after laser therapy [10]. Again, newer, more erythematous striae respond more favorably to pulsed dye laser treatment. This may be a more reasonable treatment option during the postpartum period as laser therapy is believed to be safe in breast-feeding women. A more recent study evaluating the effects of a XeCl excimer ultraviolet B (UVB) laser and a UVB light device showed repigmentation of striae alba [2]. Repigmentation was associated with an increase in melanin content, hypertrophy of melanocytes, and an increase in number of melanocytes 6 months after treatment.

Table 43.1 A Summary and Classification of the Dermatoses of Pregnancy

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Dermatosis</th>
<th>Course</th>
<th>Skin Findings</th>
<th>Fetal Risks</th>
<th>Treatment</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PEP</td>
<td>Third trimester. Resolution postpartum.</td>
<td>Urticarial lesions on the abdomen, often within striae with sparing of the periumbilical area. Extension to upper thighs and buttocks.</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>High-potency topical steroids</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ADP</td>
<td>First to third trimesters. Can persist postpartum.</td>
<td>Hyperpigmented, lichenified, excoriated patches and plaques on flexural surfaces in 80% and papules and/or prurigo nodules in 20%.</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>Mid- to high-potency topical steroids, emollients, and antihistamines; oral corticosteroids in severe cases</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PFP</td>
<td>Second or third trimester. Resolution within 1–2 months postpartum.</td>
<td>Follicular papules and pustules</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>Mid- to high-potency topical corticosteroids</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PP</td>
<td>Second or third trimester. Resolution postpartum.</td>
<td>Excoriated papules over extremities and occasionally abdomen</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>Mid- to high-potency topical steroids</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ICP</td>
<td>See Chapter 10</td>
<td>Ranges from annular and polycyclic urticarial papules and plaques to grouped blisters on the abdomen and extremities involving the periumbilical and umbilical skin</td>
<td>Prematurity and small gestational age at birth</td>
<td>Topical steroid for mild cases and systemic steroid for more severe cases</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PG</td>
<td>Second or third trimester. Resolution postpartum after weeks to months.</td>
<td>Symmetric, erythematous patches with peripheral superficial sterile pustules on flexural skin</td>
<td>Placental insufficiency and fetal loss</td>
<td>Systemic corticosteroids</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IH</td>
<td>Third trimester. Persists after delivery if untreated.</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Abbreviations: ADP, atopic dermatitis of pregnancy; AEP, atopic eruption of pregnancy; ICP, intrahepatic cholestasis of pregnancy; IH, impetigo herpetiformis; PEP, polymorphic eruption of pregnancy; PFP, pruritic folliculitis of pregnancy; PG, pemphigoid gestationis; PP, prurigo of pregnancy.
POLYMORPHIC ERUPTION OF PREGNANCY
(PRURITIC URTICARIAL PAPULES AND PLAQUES OF PREGNANCY)

Key Points
- Polymorphic eruption of pregnancy (pruritic urticarial papules and plaques of pregnancy [PUPPP]) is an extremely pruritic urticarial eruption occurring during the third trimester of pregnancy.
- There is no associated fetal morbidity or mortality.
- The mainstay of treatment is topical steroids.

Historic Notes
This entity was originally described by Lawley and colleagues in 1979 in a series of seven patients [11].

Diagnosis/Definition
PEP is characterized by urticarial lesions that begin on the abdomen, often within abdominal striae, and spare the periumbilical area (Figure 43.1). Lesions frequently spread to the upper thighs and buttocks and occasionally may affect the arms. The face, palms, and soles are usually spared. Despite the severe pruritus, there is notable lack of excoriation. As its name implies, PEP is polymorphous. Clinical lesions may appear vesicular, targetoid, or purpuric. This eruption is seen mostly in primigravidas with onset in the third trimester of pregnancy. It resolves shortly after delivery, but there have been a few cases reported in which onset of the disease has occurred in the postpartum period [12–14]. The diagnosis is primarily clinical. Histopathologic examination of affected skin most often yields nonspecific findings.

Symptoms
The eruption is accompanied by extreme pruritus. The itching is often so severe that it may interfere with sleep.

Epidemiology/Incidence
PEP is one of the most common dermatoses of pregnancy. It occurs in approximately 0.5% of pregnancies [15].

Genetics
There are no known genetic factors in PEP. In fact, some studies have looked for but failed to document a human leukocyte antigen (HLA) association [16,17].

Etiology/Basic Pathology
To date, there are no widely accepted theories to explain the etiology of this disease. Associated factors include increased abdominal distension secondary to excessive maternal weight gain and fetal birth weight [13,17,18], increased incidence of multiple pregnancies [12,15,17,19], not autoimmune mechanisms [20], but decreased serum cortisol levels [21,22], and fetal DNA migration in PEP skin lesions [23].

Complications
There have been no consistent maternal or fetal complications associated with PEP with newborns not affected with any related skin disease [14,17,21].

Management
Workup
The most important disease to exclude when diagnosing PEP is PG, which can present with urticarial lesions in the absence of more prototypical blisters. PG is usually a widespread eruption that begins on the abdomen but does not show a predilection for striae nor spares the periumbilical area. PG is rare, but it is associated with significant maternal and fetal morbidity and mortality [11,24]. Exclusion of PG relies on the clinical presentation, but direct immunofluorescence (DIF) of affected skin may be required in equivocal cases. There are no consistent DIF findings in PEP [13,14,17,21,25]. When positive DIF findings have been reported in PEP, they have been considered nondiagnostic for any particular disease [14,25]. In contrast, PG is associated with very consistent and reliable DIF findings [24].

Preconception Counseling
The vast majority of cases of PEP do not recur with subsequent pregnancies [11,17,21] or oral contraceptive use [1,7].
A few women affected by PEP have been reported to have episodes of transient hives while breast-feeding after the initial eruption resolved [11].

**Therapy**
The majority of cases of PEP can be effectively managed with **high-potency topical steroids** [11,17,21]. This class of medication does not cause any known fetal complications when used properly. In rare cases of prolonged and widespread use, significant systemic absorption could occur. In severe and widespread cases, short courses of oral corticosteroids have been used effectively [11,17,21]. The reader is referred to the guideline for impetigo herpetiformis for more detailed information on the use and safety of steroids in pregnancy. There is one reported case of severe PEP that required delivery by cesarean section at 35 weeks gestation for intractable pruritus uncontrolled by topical and oral corticosteroids [26]. In this case, the patient’s symptoms were significantly improved within 12 hours of delivery.

---

**ATOPIC DERMATITIS (ECZEMA) OF PREGNANCY**

**Key Points**
- Atopic dermatitis of pregnancy (ADP) is an intensely pruritic eruption characterized by eczematous plaques or papular lesions involving the trunk and extremities.
- The mainstay of therapy is **topical steroids and emollients**.
- There is no associated maternal or fetal morbidity or mortality.

**Diagnosis/Definition**
ADP is characterized by intense itch accompanied by lichenified plaques or papular lesions in patients with a personal or family history of atopy and/or elevated IgE levels. The eruption most commonly presents before the third trimester of pregnancy in 75% of patients with onset occurring in all three trimesters and is a diagnosis of exclusion [27]. Recurrence in subsequent pregnancies is expected due to the background of atopy. The eruption consists of atopic dermatitis-like plaques and/or prurigo-like nodules accompanied by excoriations and secondary skin infections (Figure 43.2). ADP classically involves the trunk and extremities in typical atopic sites, such as the neck, décolletage, or flexural surfaces of extremities. Atopic dermatitis (eczema) of pregnancy, PFP, and PP have been grouped into one category, AEP [28,29]. Characteristic atopic clinical findings are key for diagnosis as histopathologic findings are nonspecific and DIF reveals no immunoreactive deposition [30].

**Symptoms**
ADP is accompanied by intense pruritus, which can lead to excoriations and secondary skin infections.

**Epidemiology/Incidence**
ADP is the most frequent dermatosis in pregnancy [22,27,31].

**Etiology/Basic Pathology**
Although causally linked to a personal or family history of atopy, there is no definitive evidence currently. One theory reflects a deterioration of existing atopic dermatitis or an exacerbation of a quiescent atopic state due to a TH2 shift in cytokine expression during pregnancy [22,31].

**Pregnancy Considerations**
There are no reports of adverse maternal or fetal outcomes in ADP. There is inadequate evidence to prescribe specific dietary intake for pregnant women to prevent atopic dermatitis in the newborn [32,33].

**Management**

**Workup**
The diagnosis of ADP is made clinically due to the characteristic clinical atopic presentation. Other specific dermatoses of pregnancy must first be ruled out. Sparing of striae and time of onset differentiate from PEP. Elevated IgE levels may be present in 20% to 70% of cases but are not diagnostic [27]. Total serum bile acid levels must be in the normal range. The relative nonspecific histopathologic changes of ADP do not discriminate among other pruritic dermatoses of pregnancy [34]. If PG is a diagnostic consideration, histopathologic exam and DIF testing may be performed in equivocal cases.

**Therapy**
Treatment strategies vary depending on the severity of the patient’s clinical findings and symptoms. The mainstay of therapy for ADP is **mid- to high-potency topical steroids** accompanied by liberal use of emollients with or without antihistamines [27,30]. Topical calcineurin inhibitors—tacrolimus and pimecrolimus—are relative safe (FDA category C) alternatives to topical steroids [35]. If necessary, first-generation antihistamines can safely be used in the first trimester of pregnancy, and second-generation antihistamines can be used in the second or third trimester of pregnancy [8]. In severe cases, a tapered course of systemic corticosteroids (CS) may be required in addition to treatment with phototherapy (UVB) [30]. In recalcitrant cases, systemic immunosuppressives, such as cyclosporine and azathioprine, may be considered while avoiding methotrexate and mycophenolate mofetil [35].
PRURITIC FOLLICULITIS OF PREGNANCY

Key Points
- PFP is a benign eruption presenting in the second or third trimester.
- There is no underlying infectious etiology.
- There are no adverse maternal or fetal outcomes.
- The mainstay of therapy is topical corticosteroids.

Historic Notes
PFP was originally described by Zoberman and Farmer in 1981 in a series of six pregnant patients [36]. It is now considered to be a part of the broad category of AEP [27,30].

Diagnosis/Definition
PFP is characterized by pruritic, follicular papules with some discrete pustules in a primarily truncal distribution (Figure 43.3). The eruption occurs anywhere from the fourth to ninth month of gestation and resolves by one to two months postpartum. The rash may recur with subsequent pregnancies. Histopathological examination of affected skin shows a sterile folliculitis [36]. Immunoreactive deposit is not detected in DIF in PFP [22,36,37].

Symptoms
PFP is usually accompanied by mild-to-moderate pruritus.

Epidemiology/Incidence
There are no formal data available that document the incidence of PFP, but estimated incidence ranges from 1:9 to 1:3000 pregnancies [22,38]. This entity may be underreported because of frequent mistaken diagnoses of bacterial folliculitis [37,39,40].

Etiology/Basic Pathology
The underlying etiology of PFP is unknown. The vast majority of case reports fail to reveal any causative organism by special staining during histopathological examination or by culture [19,30,36,37,39,41]. Some have proposed a hormone-related etiology based on the similarity of PFP to steroid acne [19,42], but a recent controlled, prospective study did not show any change in androgen levels in patients with PFP [22].

Pregnancy Considerations
There is one case report of premature delivery secondary to placental abruption at 32 weeks [41]. There is a reported increase in the male-to-female birth ratio [22]. Otherwise, there are no reports of adverse maternal or fetal outcomes in PFP.

Management
Workup
The diagnosis of PFP relies mostly on its clinical features. When follicular lesions are present, they need to be differentiated from exacerbation of acne vulgaris and bacterial folliculitis.

Therapy
The mainstay of therapy is mid- to high-potency topical corticosteroids [22,30,36,39]. The reader is referred to the guideline for PEP for a discussion on the use of topical corticosteroids during pregnancy. Narrow-band UVB phototherapy, which depresses certain components of the cell-mediated immune system, is a safe and effective alternative treatment [43].

PRURIGO OF PREGNANCY

Key Points
- PP is an intensely pruritic eruption confined mostly to the extremities.
- The mainstay of therapy is topical steroids.
- There is no associated maternal or fetal morbidity or mortality.

Historic Notes
PP was first described by Nurse in 1968 [44]. His case series of 31 patients is the largest group of women with PP to be described to date. A synonym for this skin disease is prurigo gestationis of Besnier. It is now considered to be part of AEP [27,30].

Diagnosis/Definition
PP is diagnosed by its clinical features. The eruption consists of pruritic papules occurring on the extensor surface of the extremities and occasionally the abdomen (Figure 43.4). Excoriation is often present. The lesions appear between the 25th and 30th weeks of gestation. In the original description of this disease, there was no tendency toward recurrence in subsequent pregnancies. However, others have found that this is not the case [34]. The eruption resolves in the postpartum period, but there have been a few patients in which lesions have persisted for as long as three months after delivery [44]. A skin biopsy shows nonspecific histopathological changes.

Symptoms
The papules are intensely pruritic.
Epidemiology/Incidence

In Nurse’s original report, the incidence was calculated as 1 in 300 pregnancies. A more recent prospective analysis of pruritic eruptions during pregnancy yielded an incidence of PP of 1 in 450 pregnancies [38].

Etiology/Basic Pathology

There is no definitive evidence regarding the etiology of PP. One theory is that women who are affected have an underlying predisposition to atopy either by personal history or family history and that this predisposition is unmasked during pregnancy [45]. Evidence to support this theory is that some women with PP have elevated serum IgE levels [22,45]. Evidence for atopy by personal and/or family history has been present in some series [22,45] and absent in others [38]. There have not been any significant changes detected in levels of beta-HCG, estradiol, or cortisol in women with PP versus controls [22,38].

Risk Factors/Associations

There may be an association between PP and a personal or family history of an atopic diathesis (atopic dermatitis, allergic rhinitis, asthma) [22,45].

Complications

There are no large-scale epidemiologic studies investigating maternal or fetal morbidity. No case series has ever reported any associated fetal or maternal complications [22,44,45] except for one patient who exhibited intrauterine growth restriction [38].

Management

Workup

The diagnosis of PP rests on the clinical features of the eruption. In all cases, DIF has been negative [22,38,45] and therefore is not indicated.

Therapy

Therapeutic options for PP are similar to that of ADP. The mainstay of therapy for PP is mid- to high-potency topical steroids [22,30,38,42,44,45].

PEMPHIGOID GESTATIONIS
(HERPES GESTATIONIS)

Key Points

- Pemphigoid gestationis (PG) is a very rare autoimmune blistering disease in which patients develop autoantibodies against components of collagen XVII—primarily BP180, a transmembrane protein found in the basement membrane zone of the skin
- Patients develop extremely pruritic urticarial and blistering lesions, involving the periumbilical and umbilical skin, typically in the second and third trimesters that usually resolve after several weeks or months after parturition
- Circulating autoantibodies are detectable in more than 92% of the cases using a commercially available ELISA test

Historic Notes

This entity was originally described by English dermatologist John Laws Milton, the founder of London’s St John’s Hospital for Diseases of the Skin, in 1872 [46]. The designation pemphigoid gestationis has become more in favor over herpes gestationis recently to highlight its close resemblance to bullous pemphigoid with respect to its clinical, histologic, serologic, and immunofluorescent findings.

Diagnosis/Definition

Skin lesions range from urticarial and edematous papules and plaques that may be annular or polycyclic to grouped (i.e., herpetiform) frank tense subepidermal blisters (Figure 43.5).
Typically, lesions begin on the abdomen involving the periumbilical and umbilical skin in contrast to PEP, spreading centripetally to the extremities, including the palms and soles. As a rule, face and mucosae are spared. PG usually appears in the second and third trimesters with a mean gestational age of onset that ranges from 21 to 28 weeks [47]. Although clinical course varies, there is a trend for improvement of the disease near parturition and exacerbation immediately after corresponding to the hormonal fluctuation during this period. The disease usually remits within weeks to months after parturition, but a small percentage of patients have an unremitting chronic course. The disease usually recurs during subsequent pregnancies, typically earlier in onset with more severity. The diagnosis is based on clinical, histologic, serologic, and/or immunofluorescent studies. As circulating autoantibodies are detectable in more than 92% of the cases, a commercially available ELISA test is becoming the confirmatory test of choice [48].

### Symptoms

Similar to other dermatoses of pregnancy and classic bullous pemphigoid, severe pruritus is a significant symptom for patients with PG. The subepidermal blisters may also cause pain.

### Epidemiology/Incidence

PG is a very rare autoimmune blistering disease with an approximate incidence of 1 in 50,000 births. There is no racial predilection of the disease.

### Genetics

Although there is no known genetic basis for the disease, expression of major histocompatibility complex (MHC) II HLA-DR3 or HLA-DR4 are highly associated with developing PG as most patients express either of the two MHC [47].

### Etiology/Basic Pathology

In contrast to other dermatoses of pregnancy, the pathomechanism of PG has been well delineated. Patients with PG develop autoantibodies against components of collagen XVII in the basement membrane zone of the skin, primarily against a 180 kDa transmembrane protein (BP180) and to a lesser extent 230 kDa intracellular protein (BP230). Once the autoantibodies bind to these antigens, complement cascade is triggered that recruits additional inflammatory mediators, resulting in local tissue injury and subsequent blisters. Characteristic histopathologic findings consist of a subepidermal blister accompanied by numerous eosinophils. On perilesional skin, linear deposition of C3 is uniformly detected, and linear deposition of IgG is detected in about half of the cases [47,48].

### Complications

PG is associated with prematurity in about 20% of the cases and small gestational age weight at birth. Passive transfer of antibodies to the infant occurs in about 5% to 10% of the cases that result in transient neonatal disease with no adverse sequelae [47,48].

### Management

#### Workup

A patient suspected of having PG should undergo lesional and perilesional skin biopsies for routine histologic examination and direct immunofluorescence study, respectively. Alternatively, because the sensitivity of serologic testing is relatively high, ELISA can be ordered as an additional confirmatory test or in lieu of the immunofluorescent studies.

#### Therapy

In mild cases, topical steroid may suffice to control the symptoms and skin lesions. In most cases, however, systemic steroid is required to sufficiently control the disease (e.g., prednisolone 20 to 40 mg daily or 1–2 mg/kg/day). In recalcitrant unremitting cases, other systemic agents used in autoimmune diseases may be considered such as azathioprine, rituximab, intravenous immunoglobulin, and plasmapheresis [49].

#### IMPETIGO HERPETIFORMIS (PUSTULAR PSORIASIS OF PREGNANCY)

### Key Points

- Impetigo herpetiformis (IH) represents pustular psoriasis that occurs during pregnancy.
- Most patients have no prior history of psoriasis.
- There is an increased risk of placental insufficiency and fetal loss.
- Patients are at risk for recurrence of disease with subsequent pregnancies.
- The mainstay of therapy is oral corticosteroids.

### Historic Notes

This disease was first described in 1872 by Von Hebra in a series of five pregnant women, 40 years before the first description of generalized pustular psoriasis [50].

### Diagnosis/Definition

IH is characterized by symmetric, erythematous patches with peripheral superficial sterile pustules (Figure 43.6). There is no underlying infectious etiology despite the name this disorder was given. The eruption begins over the interiginous and flexural skin and expands outward. Older lesions may become crusted or secondarily infected.

### Symptoms

Patients may report very mild pruritus or burning at the sites of the lesions; however, most are asymptomatic. There may be accompanying fever, malaise, diarrhea, and vomiting.

### Epidemiology/Incidence

There are no formal epidemiological data. IH is very rare with only about 100 cases being reported in the literature. The eruption most often occurs in the third trimester but can occur as early as the first trimester. Most women do not have a prior history of psoriasis.

### Genetics

Generalized pustular psoriasis is associated with HLA types B17 and Cw6 [2].
Dermatoses of pregnancy

Etiology/Basic Pathology
IH is considered a variant of pustular psoriasis that occurs during pregnancy [24,51,52]. The basic underlying etiology is unknown. Many theories exist including hormonal dysregulation and electrolyte imbalance, but these are based on a few case reports. Histopathology of the skin shows a characteristic sterile pustule containing polymorphonuclear neutrophils in the epidermis referred to as a spongiform pustule of Kogoj, which is indistinguishable from findings that are seen in pustular psoriasis. There may also be elongation of the rete ridges and overlying parakeratosis.

Risk Factors/Associations
Patients usually do not have a prior history of psoriasis, and there is no evidence that having such a history increases the risk of IH in pregnancy [24].

Complications
The most important complication is placental insufficiency and fetal death, the etiology of which is unknown [24,51]. There may be hypocalcemia or decreased vitamin D levels as a result of hypoparathyroidism or hypoalbuminemia [24,51,53]. If severe, these changes may lead to tetany or seizure.

Management

Principles
Pregnancy is speculated to be a trigger for IH [24]. The effect of the disease on the pregnancy is discussed above.

Workup
Workup includes skin biopsy for routine histopathology as well as a second specimen for DIF in order to rule out other pregnancy-specific dermatoses, such as HG. When the presentation is accompanied by systemic symptoms, systemic infection must be ruled out with blood cultures as well as bacterial and viral cultures of one or more pustules. Serum calcium, vitamin D, and hypoparathyroid levels should be monitored. The patient should be questioned regarding the history of skin eruptions during any previous pregnancies.

Prevention
None.

Preconception Counseling
Any patient with a history of IH should be counseled that it might recur with subsequent pregnancies.

Therapy
The mainstay of therapy of IH is corticosteroids, usually in the form of prednisone at a dose of 15 to 30 mg/day. Doses as high as 60 to 80 mg/day may be required [24]. Evidence for varying levels of effectiveness is based on case reports [50–52,54]. Once the disease is under control, steroids may be tapered very slowly. Disease rebound is common with rapid tapering.

When IH is insufficiently controlled with CS alone, the next therapeutic option is cyclosporine A (CsA). Doses of 3 to 10 mg/kg/day have been reported in the treatment of IH [54–56]. Again, medication should be tapered to the lowest possible dose that results in control of the disease. The mechanism of action is inhibition of calcineurin with resultant decrease in interleukin 2 production by CD4+ T-cells. CsA also inhibits interferon-γ production by T-cells. CsA is pregnancy category C. The most serious adverse effects are renal dysfunction and hypertension [8]. Renal function and blood pressure should be monitored during therapy. In a study of transplant recipients treated with CsA during pregnancy there was no evidence of teratogenicity [57]. However, 44.5% of infants were born at less than 37 weeks gestation, and 44.3% weighed less than 2500 g at birth [57]. CsA is excreted in human breast milk and breast-feeding should be avoided during therapy. Biologic therapies may be considered as an alternative to cyclosporine or next-in-line therapy. Tumor necrosis factor (TNF)-α inhibitors and ustekinumab are pregnancy category B drugs. As no significant pregnancy adverse outcomes have been observed, TNF-α inhibitors, such as infliximab, may be considered even as the first-line therapy [58]. No data are available on treatment safety during pregnancy for newer biologic agents, such as brodalumab, ixekizumab, tofacitinib, and apremilast.

Antepartum Testing
Patients must be monitored closely with fetal ultrasound and fetal testing because of the risk of placental insufficiency [50].
CUTANEOUS MELANOMA

See Chapter 42, “Cancer.”

Key Points
- Pregnancy at the time of diagnosis or subsequent to the diagnosis of melanoma has no impact on overall survival, tumor thickness, or disease-free survival.
- Pregnant women who are diagnosed with melanoma should not be counseled or managed any differently than a nonpregnant woman with a similar stage of disease.

Diagnosis/Definition
Cutaneous melanoma is a malignant neoplasm of melanocytes that arises in the skin. Melanomas often display irregularities in color, border, and symmetry although these observations are neither sensitive nor specific (Figure 43.7). Even the most experienced dermatologist may have difficulty differentiating a benign pigmented lesion from a malignant one. The gold standard for the diagnosis of melanoma is excisional biopsy of the entire lesion for tissue pathology. Biopsy specimens of all clinically pigmented lesions should be evaluated by an experienced dermatopathologist.

Symptoms
Melanomas are usually asymptomatic. They may rarely itch or bleed spontaneously.

Epidemiology/Incidence
In the United States, the lifetime risk of developing melanoma is about 2.4% (1 in 40) for Caucasians, 0.5% (1 in 200) for Hispanics, and 0.1% (1 in 1000) for African-Americans [59]. Although the overall incidence is low for all cancers during pregnancy, melanoma is the most common cancer observed during pregnancy, followed by cervical and breast carcinoma [60,61]. The estimated incidence of melanoma during pregnancy is between 2.8 and 5 in 100,000 [62].

Figure 43.7  Melanoma. A 25-year-old G2P1 with a new, irregularly pigmented, asymmetric lesion on her back that had been gradually expanding over the past several months. Note the irregular borders.

Genetics
A rare group of patients with a family history of melanoma and many moles may carry germline mutations in CDKN2A and CDK4. An individual who carries one of these mutations has a 60% to 90% lifetime risk of melanoma [63]. BRAF and c-KIT represent known somatic mutations for which systemic therapies have been developed, interfering with the signaling pathway these mutations turn on.

Classification
There are four main clinical types of melanoma. They are superficial spreading, acral lentiginous, lentigo maligna, and nodular melanoma. The clinical type bears no significance on the prognosis in melanoma. Rather, the Breslow depth, which is a measure of tumor thickness, and ulceration are the two major factors that have been shown to impact prognosis [64]. In addition to Breslow depth, which is a measure of tumor thickness, ulceration, mitotic rate in thin melanomas, and although still controversial, sentinel lymph node status, are the major factors that have been shown more recently to impact prognosis [65,66].

Risk Factors
The major risk factors are fair skin, blue or green eyes, blond or red hair, inability to tan, intense intermittent sun exposure (especially during childhood), use of tanning beds, and inherited mutations in CDKN2A or CDK4 [63].

Complications
Melanoma is a malignant neoplasm that can metastasize to regional lymph nodes as well as viscera. In general, the thicker the primary cutaneous melanoma, the higher the likelihood for metastasis at the time of diagnosis.

Pregnancy Considerations
For many years, it was believed that pregnancy had an adverse impact on survival in patients diagnosed with malignant melanoma (MM). This belief was based on case reports and uncontrolled series in which confounding variables were not accounted for, namely, tumor thickness at the time of diagnosis [62,66]. Several large, retrospective, controlled cohort studies of women who were diagnosed with melanoma during their pregnancy have confirmed that this is not the case [52,57–59]. In fact, these recent large cohort studies have shown that there is no difference in overall survival or tumor thickness between pregnant and nonpregnant age- and disease stage-matched patients [62,67–69]. The disease-free survival rate is the same in pregnant and nonpregnant women [68,69]. Pregnancy in women who have been previously diagnosed with melanoma does not affect overall survival [52,59,70]. An important point related to pregnancy and melanoma is the concept that benign nevi may darken and change during pregnancy. There has been debate in recent years regarding this belief. In fact, there has been no study to date that has documented a significant change in size or color of benign nevi during pregnancy in normal, healthy women. The clinical lesions that are reported by patients to darken or change during pregnancy are usually nonpigmented lesions, such as dermatofibromas or skin tags [71]. Photographic documentation and blinded comparison by physicians do not
show any change in size of nevi between the first and third trimesters of pregnancy [72]. Women with the dysplastic nevus syndrome (DNS) may have an increased rate of change in clinically dysplastic nevi with pregnancy [73], but women with DNS represent only a very small portion of the population. Histopathologic study of nevi removed during pregnancy fails to detect a statistically significant difference in criteria for atypia [71]. Therefore, any nevus that changes during pregnancy should be considered suspect and be carefully considered for excisional biopsy, not observation. The belief that nevi may normally darken and change during pregnancy may lead to a false sense of security and a delay in the diagnosis of melanoma [66,71,72].

**Management**

**Pregnancy Management**

There is no difference in pregnancy outcomes, including cesarean delivery, length of stay, risk of low birth weight, prematurity, or neonatal death [66]. Pregnant women who are diagnosed with melanoma should not be counseled any differently than nonpregnant women with a similar stage of disease with respect to both pregnancy outcomes and their overall prognosis [66,69]. There are approximately 22 cases of placentation metastases of melanoma reported in the literature. Indeed, of all malignancies that tend to metastasize to the placenta, melanoma is the most common [66]. However, metastasis to the fetus and/or placenta is an extremely rare event and has occurred exclusively in the setting of hematogenous dissemination of metastatic disease in the mother [74–76]. **Placental involvement** implies a fatal prognosis for the mother and approximately 22% risk of metastasis to the fetus [76].

**Workup**

The extensiveness of the workup of primary cutaneous melanoma is primarily based on tumor thickness at the time of diagnosis. Initial diagnosis is made by tissue pathologic study. It is strongly recommended that all suspicious lesions be removed by excisional biopsy with narrow margins for diagnostic purposes [77]. Once the diagnosis of melanoma is made, all patients should have a thorough review of systems and physical exam with special attention given to the lymph nodes. There is no evidence that routine laboratory tests and imaging studies detect occult metastases in asymptomatic patients with tumors less than 4.0 mm in thickness [63,66]. Therefore, CXR, serum lactate dehydrogenase, and hemoglobin are reserved for patients who are symptomatic or have tumors that are thicker than 4.0 mm at the time of initial diagnosis. Patients should be taught to give themselves monthly self-exams and should be shown one to four times per year for the first two years after the initial diagnosis and then one to two times yearly thereafter [77]. The goal of follow-up is to detect recurrence or a new primary lesion. Screening tests should be ordered based on history and physical examination findings during follow-up care. **Sentinel lymph node biopsy** in melanoma is used as a staging procedure. It is used to detect occult nodal metastases at the time of diagnosis and is generally reserved for patients with tumors that are 1.0 mm or greater in thickness and for lesions that are less than 1.0 mm but are associated with presence of an ulcer and/or mitotic figures greater than 1 mm² [63]. Sentinel lymph node biopsy is typically performed at the time of definitive excision. This procedure is considered safe to perform during pregnancy [66]. For patients with microscopic or clinically apparent nodal disease, a full metastatic work up is indicated [3], including blood work and CT or MRI of the chest, abdomen, and pelvis. MRI is preferable in pregnant patients because it is the safer alternative [66].

**Prevention**

General preventative measures include the use of sun protection via sunscreens and protective clothing, especially during childhood and adolescence. Regular skin examination by a physician is recommended. Melanomas that are detected by a physician are diagnosed at an earlier stage than those detected by patients; however, a direct reduction in mortality has not been documented [64].

**Preconception Counseling**

Because melanomas tend to recur within the first two years after diagnosis, women should be counseled to wait this length of time before conceiving [66]. Again, there is no evidence that pregnancy results in a higher rate of recurrence, but it seems unwise to conceive if there is any risk for recurrence of a potentially fatal disease. Additionally, in patients diagnosed with melanoma, future use of oral contraceptives and hormone replacement therapy has not been shown to enhance the risk for developing melanoma [69].

**Therapy**

The treatment of melanoma is primarily surgical. After the initial diagnostic biopsy, **excision of the primary lesion with 0.5 to 2 cm margins** depending on tumor thickness is recommended [53,66]. Patients with evidence of metastasis had limited therapeutic options historically, but significant advances in targeted molecular therapy have resulted in several FDA-approved systemic agents BRAF and MEK inhibitors, such as vemurafenib and trametinib, with more expected to be approved [78]. Data on treatment safety of these new targeted therapies during pregnancies are not known. One case of successful delivery of a premature healthy baby exposed to vemurafenib has been reported [79].

**REFERENCES**

73. Ellis DL. Pregnancy and sex steroid hormone effects on nevi of patients with the dysplastic nevus syndrome. *J Am Acad Dermatol* 1991; 25: 467–82. [II-3]
Multiple gestations
Edward J. Hayes and Michelle R. Hayes

KEY POINTS
- Determination of choriocity by early (preferably first trimester) ultrasound is of paramount importance for appropriate management of multiple gestations.
- Preterm delivery is the largest reason for the increased morbidity and mortality associated with multiples.
- No intervention has been consistently shown to prevent preterm birth in multiple gestations. Although tests have been developed to determine twin gestations’ risk for early delivery, because there is no proven intervention, screening cannot be recommended. The most promising therapy at this point is vaginal progesterone for short cervical length with insufficient data for a recommendation.
- Multifetal pregnancy reduction should be offered in higher-order gestations (quadruplets or higher) to decrease the likelihood of a very premature delivery.
- For noninvasive aneuploidy screening, nuchal translucency (NT) testing can be used in any multifetal gestation. Sequential screening (NT and serum analytes) can be used in twin gestations. Cell-free DNA screening is not recommended for women with multiple gestations.
- Discordant growth between multiples may be a marker for genetic or structural anomalies, infection, twin-twin transfusion, or placental issues; however, evidence of FGR, not discordance, best predicts adverse neonatal outcome.
- Multiples have higher rates of preeclampsia. Although the United States Preventative Services Task Force recommends starting all patients with multiple gestations on aspirin, 81 mg per day, starting at 16 weeks, to decrease the likelihood of developing preeclampsia, this recommendation is not uniformly accepted given limited data specific to aspirin in multiple gestations.
- A single fetal death in multiple gestations should not mandate immediate delivery; the risk of disseminated intravascular coagulation (DIC) is theoretical, and if they are monochorionic, adverse effects on the remaining fetus have already occurred.
- Routine antepartum testing has not been proven to be advantageous in multiple gestations without coexisting morbidity.
- Chorionicity and amnionicity of otherwise uncomplicated twin gestations determine timing of delivery. Monoamniotic twins (MA/MC) should be delivered at around 32 to 34 weeks. Monochorionic/diamniotic twins (MC/DA) should be delivered at around 34 to 37 weeks. Dichorionic/diamniotic twins (DC/DA) should be delivered around 37 0/7–37 6/7 weeks.
- Twin-twin transfusion syndrome has significant mortality (>70%) if left untreated, particularly if diagnosed in the second trimester. Laser coagulation is the treatment of choice for stages II–IV between 16 and 24 weeks gestation in the United States.

DEFINITION
Multiple gestation is a gestation carrying >1 fetus. The overwhelming majority are twins. There are two types of twins:
- Monozygotic (MZ) twins are formed when a single fertilized ovum splits into two individuals who are almost always genetically identical unless after their division there is a spontaneous mutation.
- Dizygotic (DZ) twins are formed when two separate ova are fertilized by two different sperm resulting in genetically different individuals.

EPIDEMIOLOGY/INCIDENCE
It is important to differentiate the natural from the actual incidence of multiple gestations. Natural incidence of multiple gestations (Figure 44.1):
- MZ twinning occurs at a constant rate of about 4 per 1000 (1/250).
- DZ twinning rates vary with the individual’s characteristics, such as race (low in Asians, high in blacks), age (increases with advanced maternal age), parity (increases with parity), and family history (especially on maternal side). The “natural” incidence of twins and triplets in the United States as reported in 1973 was 1 in 80 and 1 in 800, respectively [1].

Actual incidence of multiple gestations has been heavily influenced by use of assisted reproductive technologies (ART) since the 1980s. Currently >50% of multiple gestations in developed countries are from ART. The proportion of live births that are multiple gestations in the United States has increased significantly over the last three decades in association with the increase use of ART treatments with a 65% increase in twins and a 500% increase in triplets and higher-order births, which peaked in 1998 [2]. Understanding the significant morbidity and mortality associated with higher order multiples, there has been a 70% reduction in the transfer of three or more embryos during an IVF cycle. This has resulted in a 33% decrease in the proportion of triplets and higher-order births attributable to IVF [3] from 193.5 per 100,000 births in 1998 to 119.5 in 2013. In contrast, the twin birth rate has continued to increase to 33.7 per 1000 births in 2013, a U.S. record [4]. Although the vast majority of these pregnancies are DZ, MZ twin rates increase with ART to 3%–5% [5], stressing the importance of determining chorionicity even when multiples were conceived via ART.

ETIOLOGY (TABLE 44.1)
DZ twins are formed by two distinct fertilized ova and always have separate chorion and amnion (dichorionic/diamniotic, DC/DA).
Multiple gestations

MZ twins are formed from the division of one fertilized egg. The type is determined by the timing of the fertilized ovum division.

**DIAGNOSIS**

The clinical signs for suspecting multiple gestations are a uterus larger than dates and pregnancy that has resulted from ART. The accuracy of diagnosing twins on clinical criteria is poor as 37% of women who do not undergo routine ultrasound screening will not have their twins diagnosed by 26 weeks, and 13% of multiples will only be diagnosed at the time of admission for delivery [6].

Ultrasound is 100% accurate in diagnosing multiple gestations [6]. The best time for accurate diagnosis is the first trimester as this is the optimum time to determine not only fetal number, but especially chorionicity and amnionicity.

Table 44.1 Timing of Zygote Division and Types of Twins

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Timing of Division</th>
<th>Type of Twins</th>
<th>Characteristics</th>
<th>Picture</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Day 1–3</td>
<td>Dichorionic diamniotic (DC/DA)</td>
<td>Two placentas with two chorions and two amnions</td>
<td>![Picture](Dichorionic diamniotic (fused placentae))</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Day 3–8</td>
<td>Monochorionic diamnionic (MC/DA)</td>
<td>![Picture](Monochorionic diamnionic (fused placentae))</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Day 8–13</td>
<td>Monochorionic monoamniotic (MC/MA)</td>
<td>![Picture](Monochorionic monoamniotic)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Day 13–15</td>
<td>Conjoined twins</td>
<td>Fused twins</td>
<td>![Picture](Conjoined twins)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Figure 44.1 Natural incidence of twin gestations.

MZ twins are formed from the division of one fertilized egg. The type is determined by the timing of the fertilized ovum division.

**DIAGNOSIS**

The clinical signs for suspecting multiple gestations are a uterus larger than dates and pregnancy that has resulted from ART. The accuracy of diagnosing twins on clinical criteria is poor as 37% of women who do not undergo routine ultrasound screening will not have their twins diagnosed by 26 weeks, and 13% of multiples will only be diagnosed at the time of admission for delivery [6].

Ultrasound is 100% accurate in diagnosing multiple gestations [6]. The best time for accurate diagnosis is the first trimester as this is the optimum time to determine not only fetal number, but especially chorionicity and amnionicity.

Table 44.1 Timing of Zygote Division and Types of Twins

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Timing of Division</th>
<th>Type of Twins</th>
<th>Characteristics</th>
<th>Picture</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Day 1–3</td>
<td>Dichorionic diamniotic (DC/DA)</td>
<td>Two placentas with two chorions and two amnions</td>
<td>![Picture](Dichorionic diamniotic (fused placentae))</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Day 3–8</td>
<td>Monochorionic diamnionic (MC/DA)</td>
<td>![Picture](Monochorionic diamnionic (fused placentae))</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Day 8–13</td>
<td>Monochorionic monoamniotic (MC/MA)</td>
<td>![Picture](Monochorionic monoamniotic)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Day 13–15</td>
<td>Conjoined twins</td>
<td>Fused twins</td>
<td>![Picture](Conjoined twins)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Determination of chorionicity and zygocity is paramount for correct risk assessment, counseling, and management of complications (e.g., TTTS, FGR, single fetal death). In addition, this determination will help future medical care of the babies for genetic component of diseases and organ transplantation compatibility.

**Determination of chorionicity and amnionicity in the first trimester** is shown in Figure 44.2. Determination of chorionicity and amnionicity status after first trimester is shown in Figures 44.3 and 44.4. In the 30%–40% of cases in which there are clearly two placentas or differing fetal sex, the pregnancy is DC/DA and dizygotic. In the majority of cases, the best ultrasound characteristic to distinguish chorio- and amnionicity is the twin peak sign. Twin peak sign (also called lambda or delta sign) is a triangular projection of tissue with the same echogenicity as the placenta extending beyond the chorionic surface of the placenta [7] (Figure 44.4). DNA fingerprinting through polymorphisms or other means can also determine zygocity, but it is invasive and therefore associated with complications.

**COMPLICATIONS**

The incidence and severity of complications is related to chorionicity and amnionicity. ART multiple pregnancies are associated with a higher incidence of fetal/neonatal and maternal complications. Complications more common in all types of multiple gestations compared to singleton gestations include the following:

**Fetal**

*Spontaneous Pregnancy Loss*

A significant number of multiple gestations diagnosed in the first trimester undergo spontaneous reduction of one sac in the first trimester, referred to as the “vanishing twin.” The rates of wastage of at least one gestation is increased compared to singletons both in the first and even the second trimester and is directly correlated with the initial number of gestational sacs, i.e., about 20%–50% of twins, 53% of triplets, and 65% of quadruplets [8]. Because the MSAFP is elevated in pregnancies with vanishing twins, this test is not accurate for screening and should not be performed subsequently.

---

**Figure 44.2** Determination of chorionicity and amnionicity in the first trimester.

**Figure 44.3** Determination of chorionicity and amnionicity after the first trimester.
risk of miscarriage of the whole pregnancy, especially in the first but also in the second trimester, is increased.

Higher Rates of Chromosomal and Congenital Anomalies
Due to the increased number of fetuses, particularly dizygotic, the risk of having one fetus affected by a trisomy is increased above the baseline risk of a singleton [9]. Therefore, the Downs syndrome risk of a 35-year-old singleton mother is obtained in twins at about age 31 to 33 [10], and for triplets, this risk is obtained at about age 28 [11]. Structural defects occur two to three times more commonly in live-born MZ twins than in DZ twins or singletons [12]. Only in 5% to 20% are both MZ twins affected.

Fetal Growth Restriction and Discordant Growth
Discordant growth of multiples is usually defined as a 20%–25% reduction in EFW of the smaller compared to the larger fetus (difference of larger minus smaller EFW, divided by larger EFW). Approximately 14% of DCDA twins have 20% discordance [13]. Discordance may be a marker for structural or genetic anomalies, infection, twin-twin transfusion syndrome, or placental issues. However, it is not the discordance per se, but evidence of **FGR of one fetus** that predicts adverse neonatal outcome [14]. The risk of mortality or neonatal morbidity is higher among neonates in SGA-discordant twins than in AGA-discordant twins (20% vs. 6%) [15].

Single Fetal Demise in Multiple Gestations
Up to 5% of twins and 17% of triplets in the second or third trimester undergo spontaneous loss of one or more fetuses [16]. This has been associated with a slight increase in risks of preterm birth and growth restriction in the remaining fetus. Other impacts on the remaining fetuses is dependent on chorionicity:

- Dichorionic twins: No significant neurologic morbidity in the remaining fetus after the death of one twin [17].
- Monochorionic twins: Due to vascular anastomoses, the remaining fetus is at significant risk of morbidity (about 25% neurologic) and mortality (about 10% perinatal) due to significant hypotension that occurs at the time of the demise.

Complications Specific to Monochorionic Gestations
Twin-twin transfusion syndrome (TTTS), acardiac twins, monoamniotic twins, and conjoined twins are all complications associated with monochorionicity. They are described below.

Preterm Birth (PTB)
PTB is the main reason for the increased morbidity and mortality associated with multiples. Increasing numbers of fetuses are inversely associated with gestational age at birth, so that about 50% of twins deliver preterm, and most of pregnancies carrying >4 fetuses do not even reach viability. Also, the way the multiples were conceived plays a role in determining the gestational age of delivery because twins conceived after in vitro fertilization are more likely delivered prior to 32 weeks than spontaneously conceived twins (OR 1.52 (1.18–1.97) [18]. Earlier delivery explains why multiples are 10 times as likely to be very low birth weight than singletons (11.6% vs. 1.1%) [19]. However, the earlier gestational age at delivery does not solely explain the higher rates of morbidity [20] and mortality in multiples for twins may have a higher rate of RDS when matched with gestational-age matched singletons [21] (Table 44.2).

Maternal
In addition to above: heartburn, hemorrhoids, tiredness, anxiety, hyperemesis gravidarum, anemia, postpartum hemorrhage, postpartum depression, death, as well as the following:

Preeclampsia
Multiples have a higher rate of preeclampsia, whose incidence is inversely proportional to the total fetal number. Increasing incidence of preeclampsia with twins (8%), triplets (10%), and quadruplets (12%) has been reported [22]. Multiples, besides having a higher rate of preeclampsia, are more likely to manifest this disease in an atypical fashion [23]. Multiple gestations that are a result of ART are at greater risk of developing hypertensive complications than spontaneous multiple gestations (relative risk, 2.1) [24].

Abruptio Placentae
It is more common in multiples and exhibits a correlation to the number of fetuses (1.2% of twins; 1.6% of triplets) [19].

Thrombocytopenia
Up to one third of triplet gestations can be complicated by thrombocytopenia, and unlike singletons with which the
number one cause of thrombocytopenia is gestational, severe preeclampsia is the most common cause in triplets [25].

Acute Fatty Liver
In contrast to singleton gestations in which the rate of fatty liver is 1 in 10,000, the rate in triplets is up to 7% [26].

Gestational Diabetes
There is a mild correlation between twins and gestational diabetes when compared to singletons although insulin requirements between these two groups are not significantly different [27]. A significant association is demonstrated with triplets with a gestational diabetes rate of 22% [28].

Peripartum Hysterectomy
There is a significantly increased risk of emergent peripartum hysterectomy compared to singletons [29].

Pregnancy Considerations
Compared to singleton gestations, physiologic changes in twins include a 50%–60% increase in maternal blood volume (40%–50% in singletons) leading to higher incidence of anemia, higher increase in cardiac output, slightly lower diastolic blood pressure, and more discomfort, such as pressure, difficulty in ambulation, etc.

Pregnancy Management
Nutrition
The recommended weight gain for twin pregnancies starting with normal BMI is around 35–40 lbs. Diet should include an increase in caloric intake by 300 kcal above singletons (600 kcal above nonpregnant state), or caloric intake for twins is 40–45 kcal/kg each day. Extra supplementation above that supplied by a prenatal vitamin has been suggested for folic acid (1 mg/day) and iron (60 mg/day) as well as possibly magnesium and zinc. Less data for a recommendation is available for omega-3 fatty acids and vitamin D [30].

Low-Dose Aspirin
The United States Preventive Services Task Force recommends low dose aspirin initiated between 12 and 28 weeks in women with multiple gestations. They surmise that there is a substantial net benefit with reduced risk of preeclampsia, preterm birth, and fetal growth restriction without increasing the risk for placental abruption, postpartum hemorrhage, or fetal intracranial bleeding [31]. Other societies, such as ACOG and SMFM, also now recommend low-dose aspirin for multiple gestations.

Prenatal Diagnosis
First trimester: Nuchal translucency and maternal age identify about 75%–85% of trisomy 21 and 66.7% of trisomy 18 pregnancies with a 5% false positive rate in twin gestations [32–34]. However, only nuchal translucency alone has been validated for the detection of these disorders in higher order gestations [35]. In a recent meta-analysis, a first trimester combined test in twins had a pooled sensitivity of 0.893 [95% confidence interval (CI) 0.797–0.947] and a pooled specificity of 0.946 [95% CI 0.933–0.957]. The performance of the test was good (summary receiver operating characteristic area under the curve: 0.817). In dichorionic twins, sensitivity and specificity were 0.862 [95% CI 0.728–0.936] and 0.952 [95% CI 0.942–0.96], respectively. In monochorionic twins, the sensitivity and specificity were 0.874% [95% CI 0.526–0.977] and 0.954% [95% CI 0.943–0.963], respectively [36]. Cell-free DNA screening is not recommended for women with multiple gestations [37].

Chorionic villus sampling can be performed between 10 and 12 weeks. It has the same risks as amniocentesis in multiples [38] and has a 1.1 rate of twin-twin contamination [39]. Second Trimester: Serum screening for neural tube defects with MSAFP using a cutoff of 4.5 MoM has a detection rate of 50% to 85% with a 5% false positive rate. Maternal serum marker screening for Trisomy 21 is 63% sensitive in twin gestations (71% when both twins were affected and 60% when one was affected) with false positive rates of 10.8% [40]. Genetic amniocentesis has been reported to have a loss rate with multiples similar to singletons [41]. At sampling of the first sac, indigo carmine (not available in the United States) or Evan's blue can be injected; a clear sample obtained from the second sac ensures that two different sacs have been sampled. Methylene blue dye should not be used because of the risks of fetal hemolytic anemia, small intestinal atresia, and fetal demise. If gestation is MC, sampling of one sac is suggested. Methylene blue dye should not be used because of the risks of fetal hemolytic anemia, small intestinal atresia, and fetal demise. If gestation is MC, sampling of one sac is suggested for karyotype.

Prediction of PTB
Transvaginal ultrasound (TVU) cervical length (CL) performed between 18 and 24 weeks gestation is a strong predictor of preterm delivery in asymptomatic women with twin gestations. A CL <20 mm increases the pretest probability of preterm birth prior to 32 weeks from 6.8% to 42.4% whereas a CL >20 mm decreased the risk to 4.5% [42]. However, because there is currently no beneficial intervention if this screening test is positive, routine TVU CL screening of multiples at risk for preterm delivery cannot be currently recommended, but this recommendation may soon change. Several other tests for prediction of PTB have been investigated in twin gestations, and none have been so far shown to be helpful in preventing preterm delivery [43].
PREVENTION AND MANAGEMENT OF COMPLICATIONS
Selective Termination of an Anomalous Fetus
Selective termination of an anomalous fetus is usually performed in the second trimester due to the time of diagnosis of the fetal anomaly.

In DC pregnancies, the procedure consists of injection of potassium chloride into the fetal heart transabdominally. The loss rate of the entire pregnancy is about 4% of those performed prior to 24 weeks with a difference if twins were reduced vs. higher order multiples (2.4% vs. 11.1%) and if more than one fetus is terminated (2.6% loss if one fetus vs. 42.9% if two) [44]. In a recent review of twin dichorionic pregnancies discordant for fetal anencephaly, there was no difference in survival of the nonaffected twin between those who elected selective termination versus expectant management; however, there was a statistically significant difference between both groups in mean gestational age at delivery (38.0 weeks vs. 34.9 weeks) [45].

In MC pregnancies, potassium chloride should not be used as it crosses to the other fetus through the placental anastomoses and causes fetal death therefore of both fetuses. Cord ligation or occlusion with clips, diathermy, or other means have been used with insufficient data for effective comparison.

Preterm birth (see also Chapter 17 in Obstetric Evidence Based Guidelines).

Prevention of Multiple Gestations
The incidence of multiple gestation is increased with both ovulation induction, which represent the majority of ART multiples, and IVF. Unfortunately, it is difficult to prevent multiple gestations with ovarian stimulation. Excessive stimulation and insemination in the presence of excessive number of ripe follicles should be avoided. Transfer of one embryo almost guarantees avoidance of multiple gestation and is associated with rates of successful pregnancy similar to transfer of >1 embryos with modern techniques. Many developed countries have laws that allow the transfer of only one or a maximum of two embryos. No more than three embryos should ever be transferred even in the woman with poor prognosis (i.e., >40 years old). The successful outcome of ART should be based on the rate of healthy term singleton per cycle.

Weight Gain
There have been several observational studies that suggest improved perinatal outcomes, decreased preterm birth rates, and larger birth weights in women with twin pregnancies who meet the Institute of Medicine weight gain guidelines [46,47].

Multifetal Pregnancy Reduction
The goal of first-trimester fetal reduction is to decrease the number of fetuses in higher order gestations, thereby lessening the likelihood of a premature delivery and the associated morbidity and mortality. A review of nonrandomized trials in the Cochrane database concluded that pregnancy reduction from triplets to twins versus expectant management appears to be associated with reduction in pregnancy loss, birth before 36 weeks, cesarean birth, low birth weight infants, and neonatal deaths, similar to spontaneously conceived twins [48]. Maternal morbidity has also been shown to be decreased: 14% of twin pregnancies remaining after multifetal reduction developed preeclampsia compared with 30% of unreduced triplet pregnancies [49]. As reduction involves termination of one triplet fetus, overall perinatal survival is not different and might actually be slightly decreased, but improvements in morbidity and mortality are seen in “remaining” twin fetuses compared to nonreduced triplets and yield a higher rate of “intact” normal babies in the reduced-to-twins compared to the nonreduced triplets. In light of both improvement in maternal morbidity and fetal and neonatal morbidity and mortality, it is reasonable to offer reduction to all patients with higher order (triplets or higher) multiples. More than 90% of women who underwent pregnancy reduction would opt for the procedure again.

Triplets with a MC twin pair present a unique situation. Reduction of the MC twin pair is associated with significantly decreased early preterm birth and its associated long-term morbidity. On the other hand, miscarriage rate is lowest with expectant management and affords the parents the highest chance of a live born infant [50]. Again, parents should be informed of their options and allowed to decide regarding reduction according to their own personal wishes and priorities.

Bed Rest
Either prophylactic (before symptoms) or therapeutic (with symptoms of PTL) bed rest does not prevent PTB in multiple gestations [51]. Compared to normal activity, prophylactic bed rest in the hospital increases the rate of delivery before 34 weeks by 84% [44,52] in uncomplicated twin pregnancies. There is no reduction in low birth weight or perinatal mortality.

Progesterone
In a meta-analysis of the randomized trials, neither 17-hydroxyprogesterone caproate or vaginally administered natural progesterone reduced the incidence of adverse perinatal outcome in unselected uncomplicated asymptomatic twin pregnancies. In the subgroup of women with a TVU CL ≤25 mm at time of randomization or less than 24 weeks, vaginal progesterone reduced the incidence of adverse perinatal outcome [53]. However, the numbers were small, and further research is needed to confirm benefit in this subgroup of twins. In higher order multiples, progesterone use was associated with a significant increased rate of mid-trimester fetal loss [54].

Cerclage
Cerclage, either history-indicated [55] or ultrasound-indicated for short TVU CL [56] does not prevent PTB in twins and triplet [57] gestations.

Home Uterine Activity Monitoring
Home uterine activity monitoring has not been proven to decrease the incidence of preterm birth in multiple gestations [58], and therefore, this costly screening intervention should not be undertaken.

Prophylactic Tocolysis
Prophylactic tocolysis has no proven effect on the incidence of preterm birth, low birth weight, or neonatal mortality (all similar incidences with placebo) in twin gestations, and therefore this practice should be avoided [59].
Preterm Labor (PTL)

Women with multiple gestations and PTL should be delivered if any of the following are present: ≥34 weeks gestation, PPROM, chorioamnionitis, or nonreassuring testing. If <34 weeks and none of the above criteria are present, management of multiples presenting <34 weeks in threatened PTL should be based on TVU CL because this directly correlates with delivery within 7 days in women with regular painful contractions at 24–36 weeks [60]:

a. >25 mm: 0%
b. 21–25 mm: 7%
c. 16–20 mm: 21%
d. 11–15 mm: 29%
e. 6–10 mm: 46%
f. 1–5 mm: 80%

Administration of one course of antenatal corticosteroids to women with singleton gestations at risk for delivering between 24 and 34 weeks gestation has been shown to decrease the incidence of neonatal death, respiratory distress syndrome, intraventricular hemorrhage, and necrotizing enterocolitis [61]. Although the data in multiples is limited, ACOG recommends one course of betamethasone (12 mg 2/d x 2 doses) be administered to all patients who are between 24 and 33 6/7 weeks and at high risk (e.g., CL ≤20 mm) of delivery within 7 days [62].

In light of recent meta-analysis of randomized trials showing that prenatal administration of magnesium sulfate reduced the occurrence of cerebral palsy [63–65], it is reasonable to offer magnesium for neuroprotection for those multiples at risk to deliver at 23 0/7 to 31 6/7 weeks within the next 30 minutes to 24 hours in an ACOG-endorsed protocol [66]. Tocolytics have not been sufficiently studied in multiple gestations (no specific trials) with PTL to assess their efficacy in PTB prevention. They should be used judiciously due to higher incidence of side effects in multiple, i.e., pulmonary edema, compared to singleton gestations.

Preterm Premature Rupture of Membranes (PPROM)

Women with multiple gestations and PPROM should be delivered if any of the following are present: ≥34 weeks gestation, PTL, chorioamnionitis, or nonreassuring testing. If less than 34 weeks and none of the above criteria are present, expectant management with antibiotics, usually ampicillin and a macrolide, together with corticosteroids and magnesium sulfate for neuroprotection as above. Tocolysis should not be used in PPROM patients.

Subsequent Pregnancy Outcomes after Preterm Delivery of Twins

Prior spontaneous PTB of twins is a risk factor for PTB if the woman is now carrying a singleton only if the prior birth of twins occurred before 34 weeks [67].

FGR/Discordant Twins

If neither fetus of a DC/DA pregnancy is growth restricted (EFW <10% for GA), no significant change in management needs to be done as there is no increased risk in adverse perinatal outcomes [68]. If one fetus is growth restricted, then review all prenatal exposures, perform specialized ultrasound examination for anomalies, consider amniocentesis for karyotype [43], and consider twice weekly NSTs and weekly umbilical artery Doppler velocimetry. See also Chapter 45. Consider delivery of twins if one twin has REDF of UA at >30–32 weeks, AEDF of UA at 32–34 weeks, or abnormal (but not REDF or AEDF) UA Doppler at 34–36 weeks.

Single Fetal Death

Single fetal death is associated with significant complications for the remaining twins in DC and even more MC pregnancies (Table 44.3) [69]. Management therefore depends on chorionicity and gestational age.

- Dichorionic gestation:
  - <12 weeks: Usually no consequences, so no intervention needed.
  - >12 weeks: Immediate delivery has no benefit for the remaining fetus and the often-quoted maternal risk has not been demonstrated.

- Monochorionic gestation:
  - <12 weeks: Associated with high risk of loss of other twin with no intervention studied.
  - >12 weeks: Associated with about 10% risk of intrauterine death and additional 25% risk of neurologic complications in other twin. This risk results from the spontaneous transfer of blood from the viable twin to the demised twin, which results in profound hypotension in the survivor. At the time the demise is discovered, the greatest harm has most likely already occurred in the remaining fetus, and there seems to be no benefit in immediate delivery, especially if the surviving fetus(es) are very preterm and otherwise healthy. In such cases, allowing the pregnancy to continue may provide the most benefit. The coagulopathy risk for the mother is minimal, probably <2%.

Twin-Twin Transfusion Syndrome (TTTS)

Incidence

TTTS occurs in about 10% of MC/DA pregnancies and therefore in about 1/2500 pregnancies. Rare cases have been reported in MA/MC pregnancies.

Etiology

All monochorionic pregnancies have one placenta only, all with anastomoses of artery-to-artery (AA), vein-to-vein (VV), and artery-to-vein (AV) of the two twins. TTTS may not occur in MC/MA gestations because of more AA and less AV anastomoses than in MC/DA gestations. An imbalance of arterial circulation of one twin (donor) to the venous circulation of another (recipient) probably through an AV anastomosis can lead to TTTS. More than 50% of TTTS placenta have ≥1 velamentous cord insertion, possibly associated with this imbalance. The donor twin develops anemia and resultant effects (e.g., IUGR, oligohydramnios), and the recipient twin has polyhydramnios, becomes polycythemic, and can develop heart failure.

Table 44.3 Consequences of Single Fetal Death in Twin Pregnancies, according to Chorionicity

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>DC</th>
<th>MC</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Co-twin death</td>
<td>3%</td>
<td>15%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PTB</td>
<td>54%</td>
<td>68%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abnormal postnatal cranial imaging</td>
<td>16%</td>
<td>34%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neurodevelopmental impairment</td>
<td>2%</td>
<td>26%</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Source: Adapted from Hillman SC, Morris RK, Kilby MD. Obstet Gynecol, 1118, 928–40, 2011.
Diagnosis
The antepartum diagnosis requires ultrasound. The criteria are MC/DA gestation (see above) with oligohydramnios (maximum vertical pocket (MVP) <2 cm) in one sac and polyhydramnios (MVP >8 cm) in the other. Supporting (but NOT diagnostic) criteria can be the presence of same sex twins with a single placenta and significant discordance in fetal growth. It is important to rule out other etiologies for similar findings, such as FGR of just one twin with a normal other twin, chromosomal or structural abnormalities, infection, etc.

Screening
All MC/DA twin gestations should have serial sonographic evaluation of MVP every 2 weeks from 16 weeks until delivery to monitor for development of TTTS (Figure 44.5) [70]. Screening for congenital heart disease is warranted in all monochorionic twins, in particular those complicated by TTTS.

Staging
Staging is described in Table 44.4 [71].

Prognosis and Counseling
The natural history of TTTS is associated with poor prognosis and depends mostly on gestational age at diagnosis and stage of disease. About 5% of TTTS, especially in early stages, can regress. Survival with diagnosis at less than 26 weeks without treatment is 30% [72]. Survival can often be with severe morbidity, including neurologic, cardiac, ischemia/necrosis of extremities, renal cortical necrosis, etc. Extensive counseling is necessary in cases of TTTS given the gravity of the condition and the paucity of level 1 data on best management.

Therapy
Therapy for TTTS depends on the stage (Figure 44.6).

STAGE I
The natural history of stage 1 TTTS is that more than 75% of cases regress or remain stable without intervention with a

Table 44.4 Staging for TTTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Quintero Staging</th>
<th>Ultrasound Findings</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Stage 1</td>
<td>MC/DA gestation with oligo (MVP &lt;2 cm) and polyhydramnios (MVP &gt;8 cm)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage 2</td>
<td>Absent (empty) bladder (in donor)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage 3</td>
<td>Abnormal Doppler*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage 4</td>
<td>Hydrops</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stage 5</td>
<td>Death of one twin</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Defined as either umbilical artery absent or reversed diastolic flow, ductus venosus absent or reversed diastolic flow, or umbilical vein pulsatile flow.


Figure 44.5 Algorithm for screening for TTTS. See text for details. MVP, maximum vertical pocket; TTTS, twin-twin transfusion syndrome. (Adapted from Simpson L, for the Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine. Am J Obstet and Gynecol, 3–17, 2013.)
perinatal survival rate of 86%. Therefore, expectant management with close follow-up at least weekly is the treatment of choice [73].

STAGES II, III, and IV

Most experts consider fetoscopic laser coagulation to be the best approach to treating advanced disease in continuing pregnancies less than 26 weeks. Laser therapy involves coagulation of the placental vessels transferring blood from the donor to the recipient twin. This can be done selectively, treating only those vessels visualized on the placental surface or by laser coagulation of the entire vascular equator. However, a meta-analysis of the two RCTs showed no significant survival benefit, and the long-term neurologic outcomes in the Eurofetus trial were not different than in nonlaser treated (amnioreduction) group. Of note, there were 12 voluntary terminations in the laser group of the largest trial, which, if eliminated, would result in no benefit from laser compared to amnioreduction [74]. It is important to counsel the patient that laser treated TTTS has a 30%–50% chance of perinatal death and a 5%–20% risk of long-term neurologic handicap. This procedure should be undertaken for Quintero Stage II–IV disease between 16 0/7 weeks and 24 weeks in the United States (the upper threshold for gestational age has been set by the FDA), and 25 6/7 elsewhere based on data [75]. Laser coagulation of the entire vascular equator has been shown to be superior to selective vessel coagulation when examining the outcomes of overall survival rate and recurrent TTTS [76]. Steroids for fetal maturation should be considered at 24 0/7 to 33 6/7 weeks, particularly in pregnancies complicated by stage ≥III TTTS and those undergoing invasive interventions.

STAGE V

The woman should be counseled regarding cotwin 10% risk of death and 10%–30% risk of neurologic complications. Expectant management is usually considered unless gestational age is near-term or term.

Other possible interventions have been studied for women with TTTS. Amnioreduction involves removing with a 20- to 22-gauge needle excess fluid from the polyhydramniotic sac so to restore MVP <8. Although in 20% of cases one amnioreduction is sufficient to resolve TTTS, in the other cases, it might need to be performed serially as often fluid quickly reaccumulates. The theory behind its efficacy is that it prevents preterm delivery due to polyhydramnios and also helps to stabilize the flow in arterial–venous connections and thereby slows the rate of blood transfer and fluid reaccumulation [77]. The meta-analysis of the RCTs that compared amnioreduction to laser showed similar results as shown above, so amnioreduction can be considered, especially in cases in which laser therapy is not available.

Septostomy involves purposefully perforating the intertwine membrane under ultrasound guidance with a 22-gauge needle, thus allowing equalization of pressure in the two sacs. One RCT did not find it superior to amnioreduction [78].

Selective fetocide via bipolar diathermy can allow the survival of one twin without neurologic complications [79]. The most common indication for selective fetocide in twin-twin is one of the twins has an anomaly or hydrops with impending fetal death. There are no trials available. The rate of loss or PPROM within 2–3 weeks of the procedure of the remaining twin is about 20%.

There is insufficient evidence to evaluate the efficacy of other interventions reported for TTTS, such as transfusion therapy, indomethacin, digoxin, etc. Cerclage placement for
short cervix at the time of laser therapy has not been shown to be beneficial in limited data [80].

**ACARDIAC TWIN**

Acardiac twin (also called twin reversal arterial perfusion—TRAP—syndrome) is a MZ, MC pregnancy characterized by a fetus lacking a normal developed heart and usually a head (“acardiac twin”). It occurs in 1% of MC twins or about 1/35,000 pregnancies. This acardiac fetus survives in utero due to placental anastomoses shunting blood flow from the “pump twin.” Diagnosis needs ultrasound Doppler confirmation of blood being pumped in from the “pump” twin. The “pump twin” can develop a high cardiac output state and subsequent failure, resulting in intrauterine or neonatal death of this normal twin in about 35%–50% of cases [87].

Due to the rarity of the condition, there are no trials available. As cardiac failure is more common when the EFW of the acardiac twin is >70% of the EFW of the pump twin, interventions to “terminate” in utero the acardiac twin have been proposed for EFW of acardiac >70% together with “pump” twin compromise. Of all the proposed techniques, ultrasound-guided laser coagulation or radiofrequency ablation of intrafetal vessels seems to be the first line of treatment in centers experienced with these techniques. Cord ligation and occlusion have also been reported with some success [88].

**CONJOINED TWINS**

Conjoined twins are an anomaly linked to MZ twining with incidence of 1 in 50,000 to 1 in 10,000 births [89]. Classification is based on the site of connection with the suffix -pagus added. Of those diagnosed in utero, 28% will die prior to delivery, 54% die immediately after birth with only an 18% survival rate [90]. Diagnosis of shared anatomy is imperative to management and prognosis [31]. Due to rarity of the condition, there are no trials available. Voluntary termination would be considered if cardiac (thoracopagus) or cerebral (craniopagus) fusion due to poor outcome [32] or if the pregnancy outcome due to the level of deformity is unacceptable to the parents. If pregnancy is continued, planned cesarean at term is recommended.

**ANTEPARTUM TESTING**

Ultrasounds

An ultrasound should be performed in the first trimester assessing viability, gestational age, and chorionicity. An ultrasound should be performed between 18 and 20 weeks assessing gestational age, chorionicity (if not done previously), placental cord insertion sites, fetal anatomic surveys, and fetal gender. Twins grow at the same rate as singletons up to 28–32 weeks, and then the growth of twins slows so that fetal twin charts are best used for management. No uniform frequency of fetal growth scans. Sonographic assessment for twin growth can be performed every 4 weeks from 18 to 20 weeks until delivery. If discordance or IUGR is diagnosed, then frequency is increased to every 3 weeks. Multiple methods to assess amniotic fluid by ultrasound in multiples has been described, including subjective assessment, total AFI, individual AFI, maximum vertical pocket (MVP), two-diameter pocket, and others. The MVP technique, using <2 cm for polyhydramnios and >8 cm for polyhydramnios, is accurate in assessing amniotic fluid volume.

**Fetal Surveillance**

Routine antepartum testing has not been proven to be valuable in the management of multiple gestations; therefore, antepartum fetal surveillance in multiple gestations is recommended in all situations in which surveillance would ordinarily be performed in a singleton pregnancy (e.g., FGR, maternal disease, decreased fetal movement, etc.) [43]. Some
start NSTs in all twin gestations at around 32–34 weeks, but there is no firm evidence for or against this intervention. Doppler flow studies are not routinely beneficial [91] but probably have the same benefit in fetal morbidity and mortality in cases of twin FGR as in cases of singleton FGR.

DElIVERY

Timing of Delivery

Timing of delivery is about 37 0/7–37 6/7 weeks for uncomplicated DC/DA twin pregnancies as it is associated with similar maternal outcomes and lower incidence of serious adverse infant outcomes compared to expectant management until 38 weeks. Although there are no RCTs to suggest the best timing of delivery for other twins or higher order multiple gestations, Table 44.5 offers some guidance based on non-RCT data [92–94]. Timing of delivery should not be based on fetal lung maturity testing. If this is done nonetheless, as disparity in lung maturity occurs usually in only 5% of twins, just one gestational sac may be sampled for assessment of lung maturity. In certain circumstances, such as diabetes or growth discordance, a bigger difference in maturity discordance may necessitate sampling both sacs.

Route of Delivery

Twins

There are no trials for twins presenting vertex/vertex (40% of twin pregnancies) with trial of labor usually suggested as this has been shown to be safe. In twin pregnancy at 32 0/7 weeks and beyond with the first twin in cephalic presentation, there is no benefit to planned cesarean section over trial at vaginal delivery in perinatal outcomes [95]. Attempt at vaginal twin delivery has been supported especially for twins with EFW of >1500 g.

Table 44.5 Delivery Timing for Twins

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type of Twin Pregnancy</th>
<th>Suggested Timing of Planned Delivery</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DC/DA twins uncomplicated</td>
<td>37 0/7 to 37 6/7 weeks&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DC/DA twins with one growth restricted twin with normal UA Doppler</td>
<td>36 0/7 to 36 6/7 weeks&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DC/DA twins with one growth restricted twin with abnormal UA Doppler (but some forward diastolic flow)</td>
<td>34 0/7 to 34 6/7 weeks&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DC/DA twins with one growth restricted twin with absent UA Doppler</td>
<td>32 0/7 to 33 6/7 weeks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DC/DA twins with one growth restricted twin with absent UA Doppler</td>
<td>30 0/7 to 31 6/7 weeks&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DC/DA twins complicated by maternal comorbidity, such as preeclampsia</td>
<td>32 0/7 to 34 6/7 weeks&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MC/DA twins uncomplicated</td>
<td>34 0/7 to 37 6/7 weeks&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MC/DA with one growth restricted twin</td>
<td>32 0/7 to 34 6/7 weeks&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MC/MA twin gestation</td>
<td>32 0 days to 33 6/7 weeks&lt;sup&gt;c&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


and can only be performed with adequate experience of the obstetrician and continuous availability of expert anesthesia, usually in or very close to an operating room. Interval between first and second twin deliveries is not critical as long as the second twin is monitored continuously and accurately. Oxytocin may need to be (re)started as contractions often diminish, and amniotomy should be performed only when presenting part is engaged. Total breech extraction is associated with shorter maternal stay and lower neonatal pulmonary disease, infection, and ICN stay compared to podalic version in retrospective studies [96,97].

There are no trials for twins presenting with first twin nonvertex (about 26%) with recommendation for CD made based mostly on data from singleton gestations.

**Triplets and Higher Order Multiples**

Because vaginal delivery of triplets is usually associated with an increased risk for stillbirth, neonatal, and infant deaths as compared to caesarean delivery [98], *cesarean delivery is the route of choice*. Some centers have recently reported similar outcomes for trial of labor or CD for triplets, but these series are small and not RCTs.

Delayed Interval Delivery

Preterm labor or PPROM can result in the delivery of only one twin or other multiple gestation fetus(es). Delaying the delivery of the remaining fetus(es) may result in decreased morbidity and mortality of these remaining fetuses with no trials to fully assess the effect of this intervention. Delayed delivery should not be attempted if MC gestation, abruptio, preeclampsia, chorioamnionitis, need of CD, or other indications for delivery are present, making only about 25% of multiple deliveries in the second trimester candidates for this attempt. Delayed delivery is not very successful and does not result in significant improvements at >28 weeks (delay <2 weeks even with success). Although tocolytics, antibiotics, and cerclage are often used, there is no firm evidence of their benefit. Delayed delivery is associated with decreases in perinatal and infant mortality with average gain of about 2–5 weeks if successful. The interval between delivery is inversely correlated with gestational age of first delivery [99].

**Neonatal**

There is probably no significant difference between multiples and singletons in odds of death and long-term outcomes (intraventricular hemorrhage, retinopathy of prematurity, necrotizing enterocolitis) at a given gestational age in those unaffected by FGR [100].

REFERENCES


MATERIAL FETAL EVIDENCE BASED GUIDELINES

48. Dodd JM, Crowther CA. Reduction of the number of fetuses for women with triplet and higher order multiple pregnancies. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2003; 2(2): CD003932. [Review/Meta-analysis]


67. Rafael TJ, Hoffman MK, Leiby BE, Berghella V. Gestational age of previous twin preterm birth as a predictor for subsequent singleton preterm birth. AJOG 2012; 206: 156.e1–6. [II-1]


Fetal growth restriction
Shane Reeves and Henry L. Galan

KEY POINTS

- Fetal growth restriction (FGR) is defined as a sonographic estimated fetal weight (EFW) <10th percentile for gestational age. Screening and diagnosis of FGR are based on ultrasound biometry that is dependent on accurate dating by an early ultrasound (preferably first trimester).
- FGR may be due to normal genetic (constitutional) reasons in about 70% of the cases and to pathologic reasons in about 30% of the cases.
- Umbilical artery (UA) Doppler ultrasound is effective in differentiating between pathologic FGR (abnormal UA Doppler) and a constitutionally small fetus but not effective as a general screening modality.
- Risk factors associated with FGR are numerous and include maternal, fetal, and placental factors (Table 45.1).
- Complications of FGR occur in utero and in later life (Table 45.2):
  - Fetus: oligohydramnios, nonreassuring fetal heart testing (NRFHR), and death.
  - Neonate: preterm birth and its consequences: respiratory distress syndrome (RDS), intraventricular hemorrhage (IVH), necrotizing enterocolitis (NEC), sepsis, hypoglycemia, electrolyte disturbances, hyperviscosity syndrome, neurodevelopmental delay, and death.
  - Infant and child (as well as later in life): impaired gross motor development, cerebral palsy, lower intelligence quotient, mental retardation, speech/reading disabilities, learning deficits, poor academic achievement, and suicide.
  - Adult: hypertension, coronary artery disease, diabetes, obesity, social and financial problems.
- Maternal complications:
  - FGR may precede the onset of preeclampsia in 50% of cases.
  - Risk of cesarean delivery when necessitating delivery before 32 weeks is as high as 90%.
  - Loss of time from work for increased fetal surveillance.
- Effective prevention strategies for FGR include the following:
  - Early (<20 weeks) ultrasound.
  - Identification and treatment of modifiable risk factors (e.g., smoking and other toxic exposures, medical disorders, etc.).
  - Recurrence risk of FGR in sequential singleton pregnancies approaches 25%. A low-dose aspirin reduces the incidence of recurrent FGR by 10%, especially (decrease up to 56%) if >75 mg and started before 16 weeks.
  - Avoidance of a short interpregnancy (e.g., <12 months).
- Workup of FGR should include the following:
  - Review of risk factors (Table 45.1).
  - Evaluation of fetal anatomy, placenta, amniotic fluid ultrasound.
  - Assessment of the UA by Doppler.
- Workup of FGR may also include the following:
  - Infectious workup, including maternal serum IgG and IgM of cytomegalovirus (CMV), toxoplasmosis, and possibly herpes simplex virus (HSV). Rubella immunity should be ascertained.
  - Amniocentesis to rule out aneuploidy (karyotype) and infection (PCR for CMV, toxoplasmosis, and possibly HSV).
  - Antiphospholipid antibodies may be checked, but if positive, there is no intervention proven to alter outcome.
  - Maternal workup for preeclampsia should be performed or evaluation for any disease possibly associated with FGR should be done.
- FGR Management:
  - Fetal therapy is limited. Intervention studies have not shown benefit.
  - Control or elimination of risk factors is recommended (e.g., stop drug abuse or smoking, avoid physically strenuous activity, control maternal disease).
  - UA Doppler velocimetry is the cornerstone of FGR follow-up and management as it is associated with a significant reduction in labor inductions, cesarean delivery, and perinatal mortality.
  - In early severe FGR, delivery based on an absent or reversed a-wave in the ductus venosus may reduce neurodevelopmental delay.
  - If delivery is anticipated within a 7-day period and between 24 and 34 weeks gestation, maternal steroid administration is recommended for fetal benefit.
  - Timing delivery of the FGR fetus should be individualized on the basis of gestational age, Doppler velocimetry, growth, and biophysical testing.
  - Gestational age is the most important determinant of survival until approximately 30–32 weeks.
  - Abnormal biophysical testing, such as electronic fetal heart rate monitoring (EFM), showing absent variability with a biophysical profile score (BPS) ≤4 or recurrent late decelerations is consistent with a hypoxemic and academic fetus at risk for impending death. These are usually the only findings warranting delivery before 30–32 weeks. Such findings warrant consideration of delivery based on gestational
age and patient desires and supersedes any Doppler velocimetry findings.

- In the presence of NST reactivity and/or BPS of 8 or 10, a FGR fetus with UA reverse end-diastolic flow (REDF) should be delivered at approximately 32 weeks. Delivering <32 weeks for hypothetical avoidance of fetal hypoxia (e.g., in presence of abnormal fetal Doppler studies) has not been associated with improved perinatal outcomes.

**DEFINITIONS/DIAGNOSIS**

FGR is diagnosed when the sonographic EFW is <10th percentile for gestational age on a standardized population growth curve. So both screening and diagnosis of FGR are based on ultrasound biometry, and they rely on accurate dating by an early ultrasound (preferably first trimester).

**Table 45.2 Complications Associated with FGR**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Fetal</th>
<th>Neonate</th>
<th>Child</th>
<th>Adult</th>
<th>Mother</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Oligohydramnios</td>
<td>Iatrogenic or spontaneous preterm birth</td>
<td>Neurodevelopmental and cognitive delay</td>
<td>Hypertension</td>
<td>Preeclampsia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nonreassuring fetal heart rate testing (NRFHR)</td>
<td>Its consequences (RDS, IVH, NEC, sepsis, etc.)</td>
<td>Cerebral palsy, impaired gross motor development</td>
<td>Coronary artery disease</td>
<td>Cesarean delivery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fetal death</td>
<td>Low Apgar score</td>
<td>Stroke</td>
<td>Type II diabetes mellitus</td>
<td>Lost time at work</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Low Apgar score</td>
<td>Hypoglycemia</td>
<td>Type II diabetes mellitus</td>
<td>Obesity</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Seizures</td>
<td>Hyperviscosity disturbances, acidosis</td>
<td>Low socioeconomic status</td>
<td>Obesity</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Death</td>
<td>Hypoglycemia</td>
<td>Poor academic achievement</td>
<td>Suicide</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Seizures</td>
<td>Short stature</td>
<td>Financial problems</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Death</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fetal</td>
<td>Neonate</td>
<td>Child</td>
<td>Adult</td>
<td>Mother</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oligohydramnios</td>
<td>Iatrogenic or spontaneous preterm birth</td>
<td>Neurodevelopmental and cognitive delay</td>
<td>Hypertension</td>
<td>Preeclampsia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nonreassuring fetal heart rate testing (NRFHR)</td>
<td>Its consequences (RDS, IVH, NEC, sepsis, etc.)</td>
<td>Cerebral palsy, impaired gross motor development</td>
<td>Coronary artery disease</td>
<td>Cesarean delivery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fetal death</td>
<td>Low Apgar score</td>
<td>Stroke</td>
<td>Type II diabetes mellitus</td>
<td>Lost time at work</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Low Apgar score</td>
<td>Hypoglycemia</td>
<td>Type II diabetes mellitus</td>
<td>Obesity</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Seizures</td>
<td>Hyperviscosity disturbances, acidosis</td>
<td>Low socioeconomic status</td>
<td>Suicide</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Death</td>
<td>Seizures</td>
<td>Poor academic achievement</td>
<td>Financial problems</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Death</td>
<td>Short stature</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fetal</td>
<td>Neonate</td>
<td>Child</td>
<td>Adult</td>
<td>Mother</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oligohydramnios</td>
<td>Iatrogenic or spontaneous preterm birth</td>
<td>Neurodevelopmental and cognitive delay</td>
<td>Hypertension</td>
<td>Preeclampsia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nonreassuring fetal heart rate testing (NRFHR)</td>
<td>Its consequences (RDS, IVH, NEC, sepsis, etc.)</td>
<td>Cerebral palsy, impaired gross motor development</td>
<td>Coronary artery disease</td>
<td>Cesarean delivery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fetal death</td>
<td>Low Apgar score</td>
<td>Stroke</td>
<td>Type II diabetes mellitus</td>
<td>Lost time at work</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Low Apgar score</td>
<td>Hypoglycemia</td>
<td>Type II diabetes mellitus</td>
<td>Obesity</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Seizures</td>
<td>Hyperviscosity disturbances, acidosis</td>
<td>Low socioeconomic status</td>
<td>Suicide</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Death</td>
<td>Seizures</td>
<td>Poor academic achievement</td>
<td>Financial problems</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Death</td>
<td>Short stature</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fetal</td>
<td>Neonate</td>
<td>Child</td>
<td>Adult</td>
<td>Mother</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oligohydramnios</td>
<td>Iatrogenic or spontaneous preterm birth</td>
<td>Neurodevelopmental and cognitive delay</td>
<td>Hypertension</td>
<td>Preeclampsia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nonreassuring fetal heart rate testing (NRFHR)</td>
<td>Its consequences (RDS, IVH, NEC, sepsis, etc.)</td>
<td>Cerebral palsy, impaired gross motor development</td>
<td>Coronary artery disease</td>
<td>Cesarean delivery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fetal death</td>
<td>Low Apgar score</td>
<td>Stroke</td>
<td>Type II diabetes mellitus</td>
<td>Lost time at work</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Low Apgar score</td>
<td>Hypoglycemia</td>
<td>Type II diabetes mellitus</td>
<td>Obesity</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Seizures</td>
<td>Hyperviscosity disturbances, acidosis</td>
<td>Low socioeconomic status</td>
<td>Suicide</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Death</td>
<td>Seizures</td>
<td>Poor academic achievement</td>
<td>Financial problems</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Death</td>
<td>Short stature</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Table 45.1 Risk Factors Associated with FGR**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Maternal</th>
<th>Fetal</th>
<th>Neonate</th>
<th>Child</th>
<th>Adult</th>
<th>Mother</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Hypertension (20%–30%)</td>
<td>Genetic diseases(^a)</td>
<td>Iatrogenic or spontaneous preterm birth</td>
<td>Neurodevelopmental and cognitive delay</td>
<td>Hypertension</td>
<td>Preeclampsia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Preeclampsia</td>
<td>Aneuploidy(^a)</td>
<td>Its consequences (RDS, IVH, NEC, sepsis, etc.)</td>
<td>Cerebral palsy, impaired gross motor development</td>
<td>Coronary artery disease</td>
<td>Cesarean delivery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chronic hypertension</td>
<td>Fetal malformations (1%–2%)</td>
<td>Low Apgar score</td>
<td>Stroke</td>
<td>Type II diabetes mellitus</td>
<td>Lost time at work</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secondary hypertension</td>
<td>Multiple gestation (3%)</td>
<td>Hypoglycemia</td>
<td>Obesity</td>
<td>Suicide</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gestational diabetes</td>
<td>Fetal infection (5%–10%)</td>
<td>Hyperviscosity disturbances, acidosis</td>
<td>Low socioeconomic status</td>
<td>Financial problems</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Autoimmune disease</td>
<td>CMV</td>
<td>Seizures</td>
<td>Poor academic achievement</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Antiphospholipid syndrome</td>
<td>Toxoplasmosis</td>
<td>Death</td>
<td>Short stature</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lupus</td>
<td>Rubella</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maternal cardiac disease</td>
<td>Malaria</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Congenital heart disease</td>
<td>HSV</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Heart failure</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pulmonary disorders</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cystic fibrosis</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>COPD</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Uncontrolled asthma</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Renal disease</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chronic renal insufficiency</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nephrotic syndrome</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chronic renal failure</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gastrointestinal disease</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ulcerative colitis</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Crohn's disease</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Malabsorptive disorders</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gastric bypass</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Toxic exposure</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Smoking</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alcohol</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cocaine</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stimulants</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Malnutrition</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Living at high altitudes</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Low socioeconomic status</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Race</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Extremes of maternal age</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fetal</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Genetic diseases(^a)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aneuploidy(^a)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fetal malformations (1%–2%)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Multiple gestation (3%)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fetal infection (5%–10%)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CMV</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Toxoplasmosis</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rubella</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Malaria</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HSV</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Placental</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abruptio</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Placental mosaicism</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Placenta accreta</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chorioangioma</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Implantation abnormalities with abnormal analytes on serum screening</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Abbreviations:** CMV, cytomegalovirus; COPD, chronic obstructive pulmonary disease; FGR, fetal growth restriction; HSV, herpes simplex virus.

\(^a\)Incidence of genetic diseases or aneuploidy is about 5% to 20%.
<10th percentile for a given gestational age. **Low birth weight (LBW)** is defined as <2500 g. For FGR in a multiple gestation, please refer to Chapter 44.

The categorization of FGR as <10th percentile has often been criticized secondary to the inclusion of many fetuses that are constitutionally small and not at risk for poor perinatal outcome [2]. In fact, the majority of fetuses (up to 70%) with an EFW of <10th percentile are normally grown and not at risk for adverse perinatal outcome, and the remaining 30% truly have pathologic FGR, and these fetuses (and neonates) are most at risk [3,4]. It is also possible to have a fetus that is above the 10th percentile on a population growth curve who is still at risk for poor perinatal outcome secondary to not meeting its individualized growth potential [5]. **Severe FGR** can be defined as that associated with EFW <3rd percentile; the majority of these cases are associated with pathologic reasons for FGR. **UA Doppler ultrasound** is not helpful for screening but most effective in differentiating between pathologic FGR (abnormal UA Doppler) and a constitutionally small fetus [6].

### EPIDEMIOLOGY/INCIDENCE

By definition, 10% of fetuses will be diagnosed as FGR by population growth charts. FGR complicates about 4% to 8% of pregnancies in developed countries and up to 25% of pregnancies in undeveloped countries [7]. Birth weight <3rd percentile carries the highest risk for perinatal morbidity [UA blood pH <7.0, grade 3 or 4 IVH, respiratory distress, NEC, and sepsis] and mortality when compared against other cutoffs [8].

Approximately 35% of infants identified as FGR have abnormal UA Doppler evaluation [9], and this was recently confirmed in the large PORTO trial showing 400 of 1119 FGR fetuses to have an abnormal UA waveform [4]. An additional percentage (about 20%) will have only an abnormal middle cerebral artery (MCA) Doppler, but normal UA Doppler flow. These fetuses are also at an increased risk of poor perinatal outcome [10]. So >30%, and possibly up to 50%, of FGR cases are at risk for poor perinatal outcome.

### GENETICS/INHERITANCE/RECURRANCE

Because there are multiple risk factors associated with IUGR (Table 45.1), the recurrence risk is largely linked to the underlying etiology in the affected pregnancy. When looking at unselected pregnancies affected by LBW, the recurrence risk of another small child is increased [11–15]. When the prior neonate was SGA, the risk of SGA in a subsequent singleton pregnancy is about 24%, and it is about 17% if the subsequent pregnancy is a twin gestation [15,16]. Recurrence of FGR in cases associated with aneuploidy is low, but the risk of aneuploidy in subsequent pregnancies is higher than the risk of maternal age alone. In fact, the risk of aneuploidy recurrence is approximately 1% in women who have aneuploidy in the first pregnancy at a maternal age of <30 years [17–19]. The majority of FGR fetuses do not have a genetic change that can help predict inheritance and recurrence, but if a genetic syndrome is discovered as the cause, proper counseling regarding recurrence is indicated. When the cause of FGR is an intrauterine infection from a viral source, the recurrence risk is low, as the patient will have attained immunity prior to her subsequent pregnancies. In summary, the risk of recurrence is situation-dependent, and counseling regarding future risks will need to be based on the individual circumstances for each case.

### CLASSIFICATION

FGR has been classified as asymmetric or symmetric. Asymmetric FGR refers to a reduction in abdominal circumference (AC) relative to other measures, such as head circumference (HC). Often, an HC/AC ratio >95th percentile is used as a cutoff. Symmetric FGR is characterized by a similar reduction in all biometric measurements. Usually, the etiology is present from the beginning of the pregnancy, and it can include aneuploid or euploid genetic diseases, viral infection, drug/toxic exposure, and/or placental causes.

This classification has been traditionally used as a tool to distinguish between etiologies with asymmetry pointing to a placental cause; however, early onset of placental disease may also lead to symmetric FGR, making the classification less helpful. The classification system has been predictive of outcome as asymmetric FGR has a stronger association with major anomalies, hypertensive disorders of pregnancy, cesarean delivery, lower birth weight, perinatal mortality, earlier gestational age at delivery, and poor postnatal outcome compared to symmetric FGR [20,21]. However, the value of the classification system is often criticized because both types are at risk for poor perinatal outcome, and Doppler velocimetry and antenatal monitoring are better predictors of pregnancy outcome in either form of FGR [21]. Although the segregation into asymmetric and symmetric FGR may help to stratify risk, the clinical use of such a classification system has yet to be determined.

### ETIOLOGY/BASIC PATHOPHYSIOLOGY

There are two scenarios that can lead to an FGR fetus, and it is very important to distinguish between them. The so-called “constitutional” FGR fetus is the one with an EFW below the 10th percentile for gestational age but otherwise healthy. This baby characteristically grows at a constant velocity that usually parallels a specific percentile throughout the pregnancy. More importantly, this baby is not prone to develop any fetal or perinatal complications, has a normal postnatal outcome, and does not need therapy. Ultrasound shows normal amniotic fluid and UA Doppler patterns. Some ethnic groups are more likely to show FGR babies if race-adjusted charts are not used.

Some FGR fetuses are not healthy because of one or more disorders (Table 45.1) contributing to the FGR weight. Although the causes of FGR are diverse, many of them lead to a common pathway: compromise of the uteroplacental perfusion. Over time, the supply of nutrients and oxygen mismatch the fetal requirements that the normal process of growth entails. Then, the normal accretion of tissue decreases, and components of fetal structure and physiology are removed from the tissue to undertake abnormal biochemical pathways (proteolysis, gluconeogenesis, and beta-oxidation), which are the results of an adaptive attempt to maintain a supply of energy substrates to support vital functions in an adverse environment, giving up on fetal growth. Placental apoptosis is increased. Such biochemical phenomena translate into sonographically recognizable traits, such as decreased growth. Often altered fetal proportion is evident because places of normal fat accretion, such as the abdominal wall, will show lack of it with the resultant...
small AC at ultrasound. At the same time, in an attempt to maintain blood supply to critical tissues (brain, heart, adrenals), the fetal circulation decreases in some not-so-critical organs, such as the splanchnic circulation and fetal kidneys, often generating oligohydramnios. This pattern of redistribution of the fetal blood flow is detected by Doppler analysis showing less diastolic flow (increased impedance) in the UA. At times, increased diastolic flow in the MCA develops as “brain-sparing” changes try to maintain adequate oxygenation and nutrition to the fetal brain circulation. Compared to an appropriate for gestational age (AGA) fetus, metabolic changes associated with the FGR fetus are lower pH, pO2, glucose, LDH, cholesterol, fatty acids, triglycerides, growth factors (e.g., insulin-like GF), insulin, most amino acids, and increased pCO2, lactic acid, and bilirubin. Finally, the process may be so severe that heart failure ensues and the fetus can die in utero.

The causes of FGR can be divided into three basic categories: maternal factors, fetal factors, and placental factors (Table 45.1). Although the pathophysiology of each factor is different, maternal factors (e.g., maternal medical disease) and placental factors may have a common final pathway of decreased placental perfusion and transfer of nutrients across the placenta to the fetus. Fetal factors describe scenarios in which growth is reduced secondary to genetic, chromosomal, or infectious causes. Details of how each of these contributes to FGR are outlined below.

Maternal Factors
Several maternal characteristics, including age, weight, height, race, and parity contribute to fetal growth [22]. These factors would largely be considered constitutional determinants of growth, and fetuses that are labeled FGR secondary to normal inheritable maternal characteristics would not be at risk for adverse pregnancy outcome. However, multiple other maternal factors have been associated with pathological growth inhibition. These include factors listed in Table 45.1 [1].

Many maternal medical conditions can lead to FGR with one of the leading causes being maternal hypertension in pregnancy (chronic hypertension, preeclampsia, and chronic hypertension with superimposed preeclampsia) [23,24]. In a recent randomized trial of delivery timing in FGR, the rate of maternal hypertensive disease complicating pregnancy was 70% [24]. Autoimmune disorders, chronic renal disease, pregestational diabetes, and chronic lung disease are other maternal factors that have been associated with FGR [25–27]. Thrombophilia due to antiphospholipid antibody syndrome has been associated with FGR in retrospective but not prospective studies (see Chapter 27), but hereditary thrombophilias (Factor V Leiden, Prothrombin gene mutation, and MTHFR mutations) have not [28–31].

In addition to maternal medical disorders, substance abuse, malnutrition, and pharmacotherapy have been associated with FGR. The leading cause of preventable FGR is tobacco consumption, and approximately 13% of growth restriction can be attributed to this drug [32]. Other illicit drug use, such as alcohol, cocaine, and narcotics, has been associated with FGR [33–36]. Not only is substance abuse associated with FGR, but poor nutritional status can inhibit growth. Longitudinal data from women who conceived and gave birth during times of famine suggests an association between FGR and maternal malnutrition [37,38]. Additionally, factors generally associated with poor nutritional status, such as low maternal weight, severe caloric restriction, poor weight gain, and obesity, can all lead to pathological growth of the fetus [39,40]. Also, multiple medications have been associated with growth restriction, and a complete list would be out of the scope of this chapter. However, antineoplastic medications, antiepileptic drugs, and repeat courses of glucocorticosteroids that can cross the placenta have all been implicated as agents that increase the risk of FGR [41].

Fetal Factors
Multiple fetal factors affect growth. Between 4% and 25% of fetuses with FGR will have an abnormal karyotype [42,43]. Trisomy 18 is particularly at risk for FGR as 35% of these fetuses will measure <10th percentile [44]. Other chromosomal anomalies, particularly trisomies, triploidy, translocations, and sex chromosome abnormalities, are also at high risk for FGR. Other than chromosomal aberrations, genetic disorders, such as uniparental disomy, and imprinting disorders are rare causes of FGR [41]. Many genetic disorders can lead to major structural malformations, and the findings of these on ultrasound will increase the risk of growth abnormalities to 22% [45]. Fetal infection has been associated with FGR, but data on the exact incidence of fetal infection in FGR are scant. Known infections that have been associated include cytomegalovirus, varicella, herpes simplex virus, malaria, human immunodeficiency virus, rubella, and syphilis [1]. Malaria is the most common cause of FGR worldwide.

Placental Factors
Placental risk factors for FGR include placental abruption, maternal floor infarct, placental mosaicism, velamentous cord insertion, and placenta accreta [1].

COMPLICATIONS
FGR is associated with morbidity and mortality to the fetus and infant (Table 45.2) [20,46–49]. FGR is the largest category associated with stillbirth accounting for up to 43% of stillbirths and has also been found in the majority of stillbirths considered “unexplained” [50]. Pregnancies complicated by SGA have a fivefold increased risk of stillbirth beyond 37 weeks. Furthermore, using cumulative risk analyses, there is a significant risk of stillbirth for each week of gestation >37 weeks [51]. Using delivery and birth weight data to estimate the risk of stillbirth overestimates the contribution of SGA as a fetus may be dead for several days. When SGA-associated stillbirth risk was studied on the basis of population, ultrasound, and individualized norms, population norms had the lowest adjusted OR (9.2; 95% CI 6.3–13.39) compared to ultrasound (10.79; 95% CI 8.11–14.35) and individualized groups (11.27; 95% CI 8.4–15.12) [52]. Perinatal death may be increased up to 100 times compared to normally grown babies. Additionally, intrapartum asphyxia has been reported to complicate 50% of pregnancies with FGR [53]. In addition to stillbirth, FGR increases the risk of preterm birth, NEC, and RDS [54,55]. Preterm infants with birth weight <3rd percentile carry the highest perinatal morbidity and mortality risk. When matched for gestational age at both term and preterm gestations, the smallest infants are at the highest risk for low Apgar score, acidosis, intubation, seizures, and death in the first 28 days of life [8].
The impact of FGR goes beyond the neonatal period. Children who were born with growth restriction have a higher risk of cerebral palsy, short stature, and cognitive delay [56]. In later life, adults who had FGR have a higher incidence of hypertension, coronary artery disease, stroke, Type II diabetes mellitus, and obesity [57]. Other than medical diseases, there is an increased risk of low socioeconomic status, suicide, and financial distress in later life [46]. Clearly, the implications of IUGR are grand, and rather than having complications limited to the peripartum period, the effects of IUGR may be lifelong.

The primary risk to the mother is cesarean section with a reported cesarean section rate of 43% if induction is performed in fetuses that have an EFW <5th percentile [38]. Rates as high as 90% were reported in the GRIT study [59]. Maternal hypertensive disease complicates up to 70% of early severe FGR (<32 weeks) with preeclampsia complicating 50% of all FGR cases [24].

The risk of recurrence for FGR in a subsequent pregnancy approaches 25%. This was recently evaluated in a large population-based study of pregnant women who delivered two sequential singleton pregnancies with a population incidence of FGR of 5% (FGR defined as birth weight of <5th percentile). If the first pregnancy was AGA, the recurrence risk was 3.4%. In contrast, a diagnosis of FGR in the first pregnancy carried a recurrence risk of 23% [16].

MANAGEMENT

Regarding the majority of recommendations for FGR management and delivery, it is important to recognize that these are based primarily on retrospective studies and expert opinion, rather than from level 1 data from RCTs.

Prevention

Gestational Age Determination

Because gestational age is the primary component dictating whether a fetus is measuring small, accurate determination of an estimated date of confinement (EDC) is paramount. First-trimester ultrasound <13 weeks and 6 days is the most precise method to determine the EDC. For precise estimation of gestational age by ultrasound, see Table 2 in Chapter 4 of Obstetric Evidence Based Guidelines.

Pregnancy Interval

A short interpregnancy interval has been associated with FGR. If conception occurs less than 6 months from a delivery, there is a 30% increase in FGR [60,61]. The optimal timing to decrease rates of FGR is an interpregnancy interval of 18 to 23 months [61].

Substance Cessation

Cessation of maternal substance abuse should be strongly encouraged. Women who quit smoking prior to 16 weeks will have the risk of FGR similar to women who never smoked at all [62]. Smoking cessation interventions reduce LBW (RR 0.83, 95% CI 0.73–0.95) and preterm birth (RR 0.86, 95% CI 0.74–0.98) [63]. Cessation of other substances in pregnancy or prior to conception also helps to reduce the risk of pathological FGR.

Nutrition

In low-risk women, significant dietary management does not prevent FGR. In this population, ineffective methods include individualized nutritional advice [64]; increased fish, low-fat meats, grains, fruits, and vegetables [65]; low-salt diet [66]; iron supplementation [67]; and calcium supplementation [68]. Dietary supplements that may be beneficial include magnesium [69] and vitamin D [70]. Vitamin D levels have recently been reported to be low in patients with SGA in early onset severe preeclampsia, but supplement trials showing benefit are lacking [71]. In general, evidence is still limited for the use of dietary supplements to specifically reduce the risk of FGR, and they cannot be recommended for clinical use at this time.

In high-risk women with nutritional deficiencies, increasing caloric intake with low-protein supplementation reduces the risk of FGR by 32%. In the absence of nutritional deficiency, high-protein supplementation may lead to higher rates of FGR and should be avoided [72].

Control of Maternal Medical Disorders

Modification of maternal risk factors for FGR can be performed as a primary preventative factor. Hypertension has been associated with an increased risk of FGR, but placing women on antihypertensive medication when the blood pressure is between 140–169/90–109 has not been shown to improve the rate of preeclampsia, FGR, preterm birth, or stillbirth [73]. However, it does decrease the rates of severe hypertension. The recently published Control of Hypertension in Pregnancy Study (CHIPS trial) was a RCT trial to test if less-tight control (target diastolic blood pressure, 100 mmHg) or tight control (target diastolic blood pressure, 85 mmHg) of chronic hypertension in pregnancy demonstrated differences in maternal and fetal outcomes. No differences were seen between groups for birth weight <10th or <3rd percentiles or any other maternal or fetal outcomes although less-tight control was associated with a significantly higher frequency of severe maternal hypertension [74]. Current Task Force on Hypertension in Pregnancy (ACOG) recommendations are to continue with existing guidelines for management of women with mild-to-moderate hypertension (defined as systolic BP ≥140 mmHg but <160 mmHg or diastolic BP ≥90 mmHg but <110 mmHg), i.e., no need to lower BP further if SBP <160 and DBP <105; and this is endorsed by the Society of Maternal-Fetal Medicine [75]. For women with persistent chronic hypertension with systolic BP ≥160 mmHg or diastolic BP >105 mmHg, antihypertensive therapy is recommended. Controlling diabetes, autoimmune disorders, and other medical illnesses is important for both maternal and fetal health.

Aspirin

Aspirin therapy has been shown to be effective for reducing the risk of FGR in women determined to be at moderate-to-high risk for this disorder (e.g., those with hypertensive disorders or prior FGR). The benefit of aspirin seems to be largest in early gestational ages. Low-dose (e.g., 81–150 mg) aspirin is associated with a 56% decrease (RR 0.44, 95% CI 0.30–0.65) in FGR when initiated prior to 16 weeks, and it has no effect (RR 0.98, 95% CI 0.87–1.00) when initiated after this gestational age [76]. A dose of >75 mg is associated with the largest benefit [77]. Aspirin prophylaxis reduced the recurrence of FGR in subsequent pregnancies in mothers who have had a prior FGR pregnancy [76].

Screening for FGR

Serum Analytes

Abnormalities of trophoblastic invasion have also been suggested by many to be involved in abnormal fetal growth, and
clues to aberrant placental cellular processes may be elicited through investigating maternal serum screening for aneuploidy. First-trimester analytes have been shown to be associated with abnormal fetal growth and abnormal pregnancy outcomes as low PAPP-A levels significantly increase the risk of FGR [78,79]. If the PAPP-A level is below the fifth percentile, the sensitivity of detecting birth weight <10th percentile is only 10.4%, and the positive predictive value is only 18.7%. The negative predictive value is at 91.3% [79,80]. Second-trimester quadruple screen analytes associated with FGR include AFP > 2.0 multiple of the medians (MoMs), uE3 < 0.5 MoMs, and an inhibin A > 2.0 MoMs [81]. The risk of birth weight <10th percentile increases as the number of abnormal markers increases [82]. However, like PAPP-A, the sensitivity and positive predictive value of combining second-trimester markers to screen for FGR is low, questioning its clinical use as a screening test.

**Fundal Height**

Fundal height measurement is commonly used to screen for FGR, but data of effectiveness is mixed [83,84]. Maternal central adiposity and leiomyomata uteri are factors that affect the use of fundal height as a screening tool. A recent Cochrane systematic review concluded that there is insufficient evidence to determine if fundal height is effective in detecting FGR and that they could not recommend change in practice [85]. Fundal height measurement is an inexpensive and easy tool to use during prenatal visits (see also Chapter 2 of Obstetric Evidence Based Guidelines). When the risk of FGR is high, ultrasound should be the primary modality used to screen for fetal growth abnormalities.

**Ultrasoundographic Growth Curve**

The identification of a population at risk for poor perinatal outcome depends largely upon the screening tool used. The tool most often used to determine if a fetus has FGR is the ultrasoundographic growth curve. Standardized population growth curves can be created in a multitude of ways. Ideally, the optimal growth standard will be able to identify fetuses that are at the highest risk for adverse neonatal and fetal outcome. Data exist showing that race and regional differences affect mean birth weight [86–89]. In fact, individual regional differences in birth weight parallel the nadir of newborn mortality in those regions. In other words, one region in Europe will have a modal birth weight of 3446 g with the lowest perinatal mortality occurring at 3888 g. Another region will have a modal birth weight of 3622 g with a perinatal mortality nadir at 4305 g [90]. This suggests that an “ideal birth weight” exists, and this weight is dependent upon unique population characteristics. Creating a growth standard that is population-specific will better identify fetuses that fall out of the range of “normal” for that population.

A birth weight standard is created using cross-sectional data of newborn birth weight per gestational age strata. This has been criticized secondary to the known association between FGR and preterm gestations [91]. Fetal weight can be determined using mathematical modeling of measurable parameters, and this has been used to generate multiple in utero fetal weight standards [92–95]. Studies indicate that using birth weight data, rather than EFW data, to generate fetal growth standards will underestimate the amount of FGR fetuses and overestimate the number of large for gestational age (LGA) fetuses [96–98]. Additionally, fetal weight standards have been shown to better predict perinatal outcomes of PTB, RDS, bronchopulmonary dysplasia, IVH, and retinopathy of prematurity [54,99]. However, a birth weight-derived growth curve is more predictive of neonatal mortality [99]. The difference in predictive ability for each standard probably lies in the fact that the fetuses identified as FGR by a birth weight standard are the smallest neonates using either schema, and these would be the ones at highest risk for demise and adverse perinatal outcome. However, a growth curve created from birth weight alone will miss a significant portion of infants at risk for poor outcome, and evidence supports using a standardized growth curve generated from EFW by ultrasound.

The creation of a customized growth curve using factors that are known to affect birth weight including maternal height, weight in early pregnancy, parity, and ethnic group has been proposed [5]. Using coefficients of variation, and a log polynomial equation, a growth curve is generated for each individual pregnancy, and deviation from this curve identifies fetuses with abnormal growth. In European populations, when comparing this growth standard to ones created using birth weight data, the customized growth model is better able to predict poor perinatal outcome including stillbirth, neonatal death, Apgar score of less than four at five minutes, cesarean section, admission to the neonatal intensive care unit, and neurologic morbidity [100–102]. However, in a U.S. population study, if the birth weight standard is customized to race, the birth weight standard is superior to the customized model in predicting poor perinatal outcome [103]. The mixed data in different populations suggest that individual populations need more study to determine the optimal growth chart for predicting adverse outcomes.

The effect of the use of these personal customized growth charts, with the diagnosis of FGR based on a change in an already established preexisting growth pattern, has not been assessed in any trial. Race/gender-specific nomograms of weight for gestational age make the diagnosis of FGR more accurate, but there are no trials to show change in outcome. The Royal College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists have adopted the customized standard to identify fetuses at risk for poor perinatal outcome [104]. However, comparing an in utero standard to the customized growth model showed that they were similar in their ability to predict stillbirth and neonatal death, and both were better at predicting these outcomes than a birth weight standard [105]. There is no RCT to assess the benefits and harms of using population-based growth charts compared with customized growth charts as a screening tool for detection of fetal growth restriction in pregnant women [106]. Evidence supports the use of either the customized growth model or an in utero EFW standard by ultrasound to identify fetuses at risk for poor perinatal outcome secondary to FGR.

Table 56.9 describes suggested ultrasound frequency for different conditions for monitoring for FGR and fetal condition in general.

In low risk women, ultrasound examinations at 28–32 weeks and at 36–37 weeks significantly increase the detection of FGR fetuses and decrease the likelihood of newborns with growth restriction although they do increase the rate of antenatal intervention [107,108]. Performing a growth ultrasound at 36 vs. 32 weeks is more sensitive (61% vs. 32%) in detecting severe FGR but not associated with significant differences in perinatal outcomes [109] (see Chapter 4 in Obstetric Evidence Based Guidelines).
Uterine Artery Doppler

Uterine artery Doppler interrogation has been used to stratify the risk of subsequent growth abnormalities in pregnancies at high and low risk for the development of FGR. Measurement of the uterine artery blood flow is determined through interrogation of uterine vessels bilaterally at the bifurcation from the internal iliac artery. There is a progressive decrease in uterine artery vascular impedance with advancing gestational age felt to be secondary to progressive trophoblast invasion and induction of uterine artery vascular remodeling (loss of muscularis layer) [110]. The presence of a protodiastolic notch or an elevated index of resistance (systolic/diastolic [S/D] ratio, pulsatility index [PI], or resistive index [RI]) has been used to predict the onset of FGR.

Abnormal first-trimester uterine artery Doppler waveforms have shown a correlation with aberrant growth. In the first trimester, notching is seen in the majority of all patients with 55% to 63% having bilateral notching and an additional 18% with unilateral notching [111–113]. Therefore, this characteristic pattern is not as helpful. When using an abnormal PI in the first trimester, the sensitivity for FGR is only 12% [111], and the sensitivity for severe FGR requiring delivery at <34 weeks is only 24% [111,112]. Despite its poor performance as a screening tool in the first trimester, using the information to initiate preventative measures may be beneficial. In women with abnormal uterine artery Doppler evaluation, giving low-dose aspirin prior to 16 weeks significantly reduced the incidence of FGR. Similar to data without using uterine artery Doppler, the benefit was not seen after this gestational age [76]. This is obviously not clinically effective if one already offers low-dose aspirin to women based on risk factors such as hypertension, prior preeclampsia, or prior FRG as discussed above.

Screening at a later gestational age improves the test characteristics. When comparing first- and second-trimester results, uterine artery Doppler notching or elevated PI was more predictive of FGR in the second trimester [114]. Timing in the second trimester is also important as investigators have shown that the test characteristics are better at 22 weeks than at 18 weeks [115]. When the uterine artery Doppler PI is >1.55 between 22 and 24 weeks, 47% of these pregnancies will develop preeclampsia, FGR, or fetal death [116]. When using Doppler as a screening tool in a population with abnormal serum analytes (AFP >3.5 MoMs, or HCG >5.3 MoMs), the sensitivity increases to 94% with a positive predictive value of 67% [117]. However, it is rare for patients to have these abnormal AFP or HCG values, and the use of combining serum markers and uterine artery Doppler has been less predictive in other studies [118,119]. There certainly is a relationship between abnormal uterine artery Doppler blood flow and FGR. The test performs best at gestational ages between 22 and 24 weeks in populations determined to be at high risk for preeclampsia and FGR. However, the sensitivity, negative predictive value, and positive predictive value for predicting FGR may be too low to be clinically useful and presently is not recommended for routine screening in the clinical setting [120].

Additionally, no therapeutic measure has been shown to be useful at this gestational age. An argument can be made to initiate low-dose aspirin therapy prior to 16 weeks in all women at high risk for the development of preeclampsia and FGR. Use of uterine artery Doppler to determine the optimal management of surveillance of growth has yet to be determined.

UA Doppler

UA Doppler is predictive of FGR in the second trimester, and abnormal values in a high-risk population will increase the development of FGR later in pregnancy [6]. Nonetheless, UA Doppler cannot be used for screening for FGR due to its poor sensitivity and positive predictive value as well as lack of standardization for gestational age at screening, technique and abnormal screening criteria [120].

Diagnosis

When using ultrasound as a screening tool, the diagnosis of FGR is made when the EFW is <10% for gestational age (see section titled “Definitions/Diagnoses”).

Workup

For all fetuses presenting as FGR, the first step is to confirm the gestational age and ensure that the fetus is truly measuring small. As knowing the appropriate gestational age is key in making the diagnosis, it is particularly difficult when a patient presents for her first ultrasound later in pregnancy and is found to have a fetus measuring small for the proposed gestational age. In these instances, the cerebellar diameter can be used to assist in stratifying risk. In both FGR and LGA fetuses, the cerebellar diameter is largely conserved, and this can help identify a fetus that is measuring small when gestational age is uncertain [121]. For biometry, particular attention should be paid to the AC and to the HC/AC ratio. Asymmetric growth with a lagging AC (<5th percentile) should increase the suspicion for early growth abnormalities as this is often the first clue to pathological growth inhibition [122].

Identification of risk factors, especially modifiable risk factors, can be obtained by review of the medical history (Table 45.1). Maternal blood pressure can be obtained and, if abnormal, exclusion of preeclampsia is warranted. Any substance abuse should be discussed, and cessation of these substances should be encouraged. The identification of maternal diseases that increase the risk for FGR is helpful because optimal management of those disorders may improve growth in the fetus for the remainder of the pregnancy.

Detailed ultrasound evaluation should be performed by a center skilled in such assessments with special attention paid to identify fetal anomalies. Additionally, evaluation of the fetus for evidence of chromosomal abnormalities and intrauterine infection should be performed. The placenta, placental umbilical cord insertion, amniotic fluid, and biometry should be scrutinized. UA Doppler evaluation should be performed. Depending on these results, Doppler assessment of other vessels including the MCA, ductus venosus (DV), and umbilical vein may be considered, but there is not enough information to justify routine use of these Doppler studies. A fetal echocardiogram should be considered if inadequate heart views (four chamber and outflow tracts) are obtained [123].

Amniocentesis should be offered to rule out aneuploidy (karyotype) and infection (PCR for CMV, toxoplasmosis, and HSV), especially if no other causes are identifiable and the FGR is severe (e.g., EFW <5%), diagnosed at early gestational age such as <24 weeks, and/or associated with fetal anomalies or hydranios. If the placental image on ultrasound is abnormal, placental biopsy (late CVS) may be considered to evaluate for placental mosaicism, which is present in up to 15% of placentas in cases of FGR [124].
An infectious workup including maternal serum IgG and IgM for CMV, toxoplasmosis, and HSV may be offered. Rubella immunity should be ascertained by checking IgG from earlier prenatal care or new testing if this is unavailable. If amniotic fluid is available, FGR for CMV, toxoplasmosis, and HSV can be performed. History should dictate any other further infectious workup for agents associated with FGR.

There is insufficient evidence to recommend an inherited thrombophilia workup because an association between inherited thrombophilia is not proven in the better studies, and there is no intervention proven to be beneficial [28,29] (see “Maternal Factors” above and see Chapter 27). Antiphospholipid antibodies (anticardiolipin IgG and IgM, lupus anticoagulant, and beta-2 microprotein IgM and IgG) may be checked, especially for counseling regarding etiology and a future pregnancy.

Counseling
When first sharing the diagnosis of FGR with a family, it is useful to begin with the fact that the majority of fetuses less than the 10th percentile are going to be small but normal (constitutionally small) and not at significant risk for adverse outcomes [3,4]. This provides some comfort following the initial patient anxiety that develops after they have been told that their fetus is growth-restricted. The clinician should discuss prognosis, complications, options regarding pregnancy termination, thresholds for delivery, timing of administration of antenatal corticosteroids, and the planned frequency and type of antenatal surveillance. Recommendations resulting from these discussions should be documented in the patient’s chart [123]. Prognosis depends largely upon the underlying etiology. Aneuploidy, fetal malformations, and intrauterine infection are associated with a worse prognosis. In instances in which these factors are absent, gestational age at delivery, amniotic fluid volume, absent/reversed end-diastolic flow of the UA, and birth weight are independent predictors of adverse neonatal outcome [47]. More specifically, gestational age is one of the best predictors of outcome, and prior to 29 weeks and 2 days, it is the leading predictor of intact survival. Beyond this age, birth weight above 600 g, DV Doppler, and cord artery pH were the strongest predictors of intact survival and neonatal mortality in one study [125].

Complications of FGR include PTB, and in the newborn that was born small, the risk of the diseases of prematurity are higher than in age-matched controls [126]. Additionally, birth weight has been linked to fetal and newborn mortality and multiple neonatal morbidities [8]. Counseling should include a detailed discussion regarding weighing the risks of prematurity secondary to an iatrogenic delivery against the risks of stillbirth while remaining in utero. Multiple tools are available to help distinguish when the risk of remaining in utero is higher than the risk of delivery or vice versa, and these are discussed below.

Interventions for FGR Pregnancies
Avoidance of Toxins
Discontinuation of toxins known to be associated with FGR should be stressed. When the toxins are the result of substance abuse, such as in smoking, strong counseling should be performed to encourage cessation of the substance associated with FGR (Table 45.1). Very rarely, if the toxin is a pharmacotherapy, weighing the potential risks of cessation of the medication with continued exposure to the fetus should be performed. Discussion of alternative therapies should be considered. However, once the fetus is identified as FGR, data is lacking on whether cessation of the offending agent will improve growth during the remainder of pregnancy, but biological plausibility exists, and cessation should still be encouraged.

Therapy for Medical Conditions
Proper treatment of chronic hypertension, preeclampsia, diabetes, or other medical condition is important, but there are no trials to prove a beneficial effect on FGR.

Bed Rest
Bed rest has long been used by obstetricians as a tool for improving pregnancy outcome even though data is lacking to support its use. The only RCT showed no difference in birth weight (RR 0.43, 95% CI 0.15–1.27) or neonatal outcomes when bed rest was compared to ambulation in patients with FGR [127]. In a recent summary of Cochrane reviews of bed rest in which six RCTs were identified, there was no support found for “therapeutic” bed rest for threatened abortion, hypertension, preeclampsia, preterm birth, multiple gestations, or impaired fetal growth [128]. Therefore, there is insufficient evidence to support the use of bed rest to treat patients with FGR. Hospitalization for bed rest is possibly dangerous (e.g., associated with venous thromboembolism), expensive, and inconvenient for the pregnant woman.

Nutrient Therapy
Improving nutrient delivery to the fetus by increasing maternal intake of these nutrients has been widely studied. Some nutrient supplementation may be beneficial in preventing FGR, and others are not. Docosahexaenoic acid has been shown in a large RCT to result in larger birth weights if patients continue with the supplementation in pregnancy [129]. Maternal micronutrient therapy with the UNICEF/WHO/UNO international multiple micronutrient preparation has been shown to increase birth weight in regions where nutritional supplementation is rare [130]. Long-chain polyunsaturated fatty acid supplementation has not been shown to improve birth weight [131]. Although supplementation may improve birth weight prior to the development of FGR, once there is FGR, there is insufficient evidence that supplementing the mother with amino acids, minerals, vitamins, glucose, or energy supplementation improves birth weight [132].

Betamimetics
The theoretical basis for using betamimetic therapy for impaired fetal growth is promoting fetal growth by increasing the availability of nutrients and by decreasing vascular resistance. In fetuses diagnosed with FGR, the administration of betamimetics is not associated with improvement in birth weight or neonatal morbidity and mortality [133]. Betamimetics are associated with several complications and therefore should not be used for this indication.

Calcium Channel Blockers
There is currently insufficient evidence to promote the use of calcium channel blockers for FGR. Calcium channel blockers may theoretically increase uteroplacental perfusion and, therefore, improve nutrient and oxygen delivery to a fetus that is at risk or currently growth-restricted. Only one study has been published which 100 smoking women were randomized...
to either flunarizine or placebo. The treatment group had a higher mean birth weight, but no other significant differences were seen [134].

**Aspirin**

In high-risk populations, such as in women with a first-trimester uterine artery Doppler PI that is abnormal, low-dose aspirin has been shown to decrease the incidence of FGR when initiated prior to 16 weeks [76,77]. After this gestational age, and once FGR is established, aspirin has no proven benefit.

**Heparin**

There is insufficient evidence to assess the effect of heparin therapy in FGR pregnancies. In an RCT with heterogenous inclusion criteria for FGR including fundal height <10%, heparin was associated with better growth and almost a week-later gestational age at delivery compared to a Chinese root called Dan-shen [135].

**Oxygen**

There is insufficient evidence to evaluate the benefits and risks of maternal oxygen therapy for suspected impaired fetal growth. A Cochrane analysis showed that oxygen administration to pregnancies with suspected FGR decreased the rates of perinatal mortality (33% vs. 65%; a 50% reduction) compared to no oxygenation [136]. In all studies, birth weights were higher in the oxygen group, despite similar (average range: 10–20 days) intervals to delivery. No significant side effects or adverse outcomes have been reported. Higher gestational age in the oxygenation groups may have accounted for the difference in mortality rates. Also, two of the studies did not use placebos, there was no blinding, and the small number of patients does not allow a thorough assessment of effect [136].

**Plasma Volume Expansion**

There is insufficient evidence to assess the effect of increase in maternal fluid intake (either IV or orally) on FGR. In pregnancies complicated by FGR, maternal volume expansion is lower than in pregnancies with normally grown fetuses [137]. Expanding maternal plasma volume once FGR has been identified was evaluated in only one very small trial in patients with AEDF of the UA. Compared to no volume expansion, volume expansion in women with FGR fetuses with AEDF of the UA was associated with a decrease (2/7 vs. 6/7) in perinatal mortality. There was no difference in the gestational age at delivery and mean birth weight [138].

**Abdominal Decompression**

There is insufficient evidence to assess the effect of this intervention as all trials are old, and they contain serious bias. Abdominal decompression consists of a rigid dome placed about the abdomen and covered with an airtight suit with the space around the abdomen decompressed to –50 to –100 mmHg for 15 to 30 seconds out of each minute for 15–30 minutes once to thrice daily or with uterine contractions during labor. This is thought to “pump” blood through the intervillious space. Therapeutic abdominal decompression is associated with reductions in persistent preclampsia, “fetal distress” in labor, low birth weight, Apgar scores less than six at one minute, and perinatal mortality (7% vs. 40%) [139].

**Nitric Oxide Donors**

There is insufficient evidence to recommend the use of nitric oxide donors to fetuses with FGR. L-Arginine is a precursor to nitric oxide and may play a role in placental blood flow. In one randomized study evaluating pregnancies with FGR, administration of this compound did not increase mean birth weight or duration of pregnancy [140]. Alternatively, two other nonrandomized studies showed improvement in fetal growth when L-arginine was given, either orally or intravenously, to pregnancies with suspected FGR [141,142].

**ANTEPARTUM TESTING**

See also Chapter 56, “Antepartum testing.”

**Ultrasound**

**Intervals of Growth Assessment**

Repeated in utero growth assessments through ultrasound have been used to monitor pregnancies complicated by FGR. Most growth curves are derived from cross-sectional data on large populations, and this gives the appearance of a continuous, smooth pattern of fetal growth. In truth, fetuses do not demonstrate growth in this fashion. Data on child growth through 22 months of age shows that infants will have long periods of stasis punctuated by short bursts of growth [143]. Fetuses show a similar saltatory pattern of growth in which EFW and anthropometric measures will show no demonstrable change over multiple intervals of assessment. In fact, when assessing growth every two to three days in normal fetuses, measures of femur length, AC, and biparietal diameter will show no growth for periods greater than two weeks, and all measures will have some growth by four weeks [144].

**Absence of growth in two weeks is therefore a normal phenomenon.** Additionally, mathematical modeling has shown that due to the error inherent to ultrasound, the false positive rate of diagnosing FGR when assessing a fetus at two-week intervals is significantly higher than at three-week intervals. The error rate is also gestational age-dependent. As gestational age advances, when assessing every 2 weeks, the false positive rate increases from 12% at 28 weeks to 24% at 38 weeks [145]. The optimal timing for repeat assessment of fetal growth has yet to be determined, but based on available data, repeat assessment should be performed no earlier than every three weeks and only rarely every two weeks. Table 56.9 describes suggested ultrasound frequency for measuring biometry in pregnancies with FGR.

**Doppler Velocimetry**

Ultrasound evaluation of fetal blood vessels using pulsed-wave (PW) Doppler velocimetry is the cornerstone of management and follow-up of FGR. PW Doppler velocimetry of any given larger conduit vessel provides information about the downstream vascular bed impedance to blood flow. In FGR, the UA is the most commonly interrogated fetal vessel. The flow velocity waveform in the umbilical artery demonstrates a progressive increase in diastolic flow across gestation, and after 15–16 weeks, forward diastolic flow should always be present. Nomograms of umbilical artery indices of resistance have been published and are available online at no cost (http://perinatology.com/calculators/umbilical artery.htm). The middle cerebral artery (MCA) vessel is the next most commonly interrogated vessel, reflecting changes in the cerebral vascular bed. A third vessel becoming more
commonly interrogated over the past decade is the ductus venosus (DV). The inferior and superior vena cava (IVC, SVC) and hepatic veins (right, middle, and left) constitute the central venous structures in the fetus. These vascular structures are characterized by a triphasic Doppler waveform (systolic, diastolic, and atrial kick) that reflects changes in the central venous pressures as they relate to function of the right side of the fetal heart as well as fetal breathing. Doppler waveforms in these three vessels (UA, MCA, and DV) and the clinical implications are discussed further below.

**UA Doppler Velocimetry.** The UA Doppler flow patterns are predictive of fetal outcome. A decrease in UA end-diastolic velocity with elevated resistance indices but with forward end-diastolic flow (EDF) is associated with abnormalities in 30% of fetal vessels [146]. If the disease process continues with an increase in placental vascular resistance, this may first lead to absent (AEDF) and then to reversed end-diastolic flow (REDF) [147]. By the time fetuses reach AEDF/REDF, 60%–70% of villous vessels are abnormal, and 50% or more of fetuses will be hypoxicem [148,149]. Fetuses with absent or reversed end-diastolic flow (AREDF) of the UA have higher incidences of perterm delivery, stillbirth, neonatal mortality, low arterial pH, bronchopulmonary dysplasia, NEC, and severe neurologic morbidity [150–153]. Thus, UA Doppler surveillance of the FGR fetus will help to identify the fetus that has FGR and is at risk rather than one that is constitutionally small. In women with normal Doppler studies and AF volume, twice weekly nonstress tests (NSTs) are associated with higher incidence of labor induction at an earlier gestational age with no difference in infant morbidity or composite perinatal outcome compared to UA Doppler fortnighty in a small RCT [154]. **UA Doppler assessment of pregnancies at high risk for placental insufficiency (such as those with FGR) reduces the incidence of perinatal death (1.2% vs. 1.7%, a 29% decrease), induction of labor (11% decrease), and cesarean delivery (10% decrease) compared to no Doppler or other mode of testing (e.g., CTG and/or biophysical profile, BPS) [155].**

**Limitations of UA Doppler:** Although there is level 1 evidence for use of UA in FGR management, none of the studies provide specific guidance on the optimal frequency of UA interrogation (e.g., weekly, twice weekly, every two weeks) or a specified intervention protocol and there is no guidance on the type or frequency of concomitant biophysical testing (e.g., NST, BPS).

**MCA Doppler Velocimetry.** During instances of placental dysfunction that leads to fetal hypoxia, blood flow resistance in the fetal brain decreases, a phenomenon called “brain-sparing.” MCA Doppler evaluation has been used as an adjunct to UA blood flow assessment, in which fetuses that show evidence of decreased resistance to flow in the brain are at higher risk of poor perinatal outcome. In fact, prior to 34 weeks, the prediction of poor perinatal outcome is improved over UA Doppler assessment alone when the MCA PI is decreased [156,157]. This helps to further identify fetuses at risk and separate them from fetuses that are constitutionally small. The cerebroplacental ratio (CPR), calculated as CPR = MCA PI/UA PI, has an improved adverse outcome predictive capacity compared to MCA Doppler alone [158,159].

One limitation of the UA Doppler assessment is that after 34 weeks, the UA in FGR may not become abnormal and the only fetal vessel that may show a Doppler waveform abnormality is the MCA. Several studies have now shown that late preterm/early term FGR fetuses with a normal UA waveform but an abnormal MCA waveform demonstrate higher rates of neurodevelopmental compromise, later behavioral problems, and a higher rate of nonreassuring EFM patterns leading more frequently to cesarean delivery (58% vs. 24%) [160–162].

**Limitations of MCA Doppler:** Although use of the MCA can change counseling in FGR pregnancies in terms of risk of adverse outcomes, unlike the UA Doppler, there is insufficient evidence (no RCT) to recommend routine use of MCA for management (e.g., timing of delivery) of FGR due to a lack of data showing improvement in outcomes.

**Venous Doppler (DV) Velocimetry and Sequential Changes.** Doppler assessment of the fetal venous system can also help to identify fetuses at risk for poor perinatal outcome. In FGR, when the NST is nonreactive, absent a-wave flow in the DV has better predictive ability for acidemia and significant neonatal morbidity than a contraction stress test [163]. Interest in the venous system expanded with demonstration that venous back flow during the atrial contraction in precordial venous structure (e.g., ductus venosus and IVC) is reflective of fetal metabolic acidemia [164,165]. In the presence of A/REDF of the UA, pulsations of the umbilical vein or absent/reversed flow of the a-wave of the DV increase the risk of acidemia, IVH, neonatal death, stillbirth, and neonatal death [166–169].

Subsequent studies were published to address the relationship between various longitudinal Doppler changes in multiple vessels (e.g., elevated UA PI, UA AEDF, UA REDF, elevated MCA PI, elevated DV, DV A/R a-wave, cardiac outflows) and biophysical testing (NST and BPS) in severe and early FGR fetuses (delivered <32 weeks) in order to better understand the progressive nature of the FGR pathologic process [170–172]. Collectively, these studies demonstrated two specific findings: 1) Doppler waveforms in the different vessels tended to become abnormal in sequential fashion with UA and MCA Doppler abnormalities consistently preceding DV changes, and 2) Abnormal venous Doppler changes (especially the DV) occurred in up to 70% of FGR 7 days to 24 hours prior to biophysical profile or FHR tracing abnormalities. Furthermore, there is a striking relationship between the ductus venosus and short-term variability [172]. As the DV systolic-to-atrial ratio became abnormal, so did the STV in a nearly mirror image fashion (inverse relationship). This may represent perhaps the first clear link between an abnormal Doppler vessel and the fetal heart rate parameter of short-term variability (balance between the parasympathetic and sympathetic autonomic nervous system) in the fetus and contributed to the impetus to conduct a RCT in Europe (TRUFFLE trial; see below). The more recently published PORTO study showed evidence that there is no particular dominant pattern of sequential changes in the FGR fetus, including no evidence that the DV becomes abnormal just prior to an abnormal CTG [173]. The PORTO study was a large, seven-center, observational study in which data was prospectively collected, a major strength. However, a limitation of this study, as cited the authors, is that the majority of their FGR fetuses were enrolled late (30 weeks) and delivered in the early term period on average (37 weeks). Thus, this cohort may behave differently in terms of Doppler patterns than the severe, early FGR fetuses described in the above studies.

The Trial of Umbilical Fetal Flow in Europe (TRUFFLE study) is the only RCT so far to assess the effect of using venous Doppler for clinical management in FGR [24]. Severe
and early FGR pregnancies enrolled at <32 weeks were randomized to one of three groups for timing of delivery: 1) Reduced cardiotocographic FHR STV (CTG STV), 2) Early DV changes (DV PI >95th percentile but with forward atrial-wave flow), and 3) Late DV changes (a-wave at [absent] or below [reversed] baseline). The primary end point of the study was survival without cerebral palsy or neurosensory impairment or a Bayley III developmental score <85 at 2 years of age. The mean gestational age at delivery of 30.7 weeks and the mean birth weight of 1019 g with an overall survival of nearly 70% in each group confirms the early and severe nature of the FGR in the study subjects. There was no difference among the three groups overall for survival without neuroimpairment. However, when addressing the individual components of neurological outcomes among survivors, those infants randomized to the late DV changes group demonstrated improved Bayley III scores at 2 years of age (5% neuroimpairment) compared to the CTG STV group (15% neuroimpairment). There was no difference between the early and late DV groups [24].

Limitations of Venous and DV Doppler Velocimetry. There were several limitations of the TRUFFLE study including the following: 1) The survival and outcomes were much better than anticipated and, thus, the sample size for detecting differences may have been underestimated. 2) Monitoring frequency among centers varied. The frequency of monitoring (UA Doppler and CTG) was set at a minimum of once per week but left to local protocols. 3) Delivery criteria after 32 weeks varied among centers. After 32 weeks, delivery was based on local policy and could be based on CTG STV, elevated PI, or A/REDf in UA or DV changes. Perhaps the group delivered <32 weeks should have been assessed separately rather than including outcomes of those delivering after 32 weeks. 4) All study groups had UA Doppler performed; however, it was specifically stated that the CTG STV group did not have DV Doppler performed. This is a major limitation because it results in a blending of study groups rather than a true comparison of different delivery criteria. For example, an abnormality in the DV has been shown to occur in 50%–70% of cases prior to an abnormal CTG or BPS and these should have been eliminated from the TRUFFLE CTG STV group in order to allow for a true comparison of CTG versus DV. 5) Finally, there is limitation of generalizability of this study to the U.S. population in which computerized CTG and assessment of STV is not nearly universally performed.

In summary, UA Doppler assessment is beneficial in managing pregnancies that have FGR [155]. Most data suggest that once FGR is diagnosed, weekly UA Doppler surveillance should be performed. However, the exact UA Doppler flow pattern that should initiate timing of delivery has yet to be fully elucidated in the literature (Figure 45.1). MCA Doppler can be used as an adjunct to identify fetuses at risk for poor outcome, but the optimal timing of delivery when the MCA PI is abnormal has yet to be determined. Using venous Doppler abnormalities (specifically absent or reversed a-wave flow) in pregnancies with early and severe FGR as an indicator for delivery reduces neuroimpairment at 2 years of age. However, given the above limitations of the TRUFFLE study, applying the DV to determine the timing of delivery across the broad range of 24–32 weeks requires further research. It is reasonable to apply DV Doppler for timing of delivery beyond 29 weeks as combined European and U.S. data show that the most important predictor for intact survival prior to 29 weeks is gestational age [174].

Fetal Kick Counts
Although there are no RCTs to assess the efficacy of fetal kick counts specifically in FGR pregnancies, they are still commonly recommended in guidelines (e.g., RCOG, ACOG). Although several methods have been described for maternal assessment of fetal activity, a simple technique is for the mother to lay on her side and record any distinct fetal movements once or twice daily. Although most fetuses will achieve this degree of movement within the first 5–10 minutes, failure to achieve 10 movements within a two-hour period warrants further evaluation of the fetus with nonstress testing (see also Chapter 56).

NST/Cardiotocography
Monitoring of the fetal heart rate is commonly referred to as NST or as cardiotocography (CTG). CTG has not been well evaluated with high-quality studies in FGR. When comparing CTG with no CTG, there is no difference in the prediction of perinatal mortality, preventable deaths, or cesarean sections [175]. There is limited evidence from randomized controlled trials to inform best practice for fetal surveillance regimens and even their frequency when caring for women with pregnancies affected by FGR [176]. Computerized CTG may improve perinatal mortality when compared to traditional CTG [175]. However, this analysis was not limited to FGR fetuses, and the benefit of antenatal CTG has yet to be fully investigated in this population. In many management schemas, CTG has been cited as a standard monitoring tool, despite the lack of rigorous studies proving its efficacy [1]. Nonreactive and abnormal CTG has been associated with acidosis and hypoxemia [177,178], and this justifies its use as a screening tool for fetal well being.

Biophysical Profile Score
Evidence from RCTs does not support the use of BPS as a test of fetal well being in high-risk pregnancies [179]. In high-risk pregnancies (including FGR, post-term pregnancies, hypertensive disorders, or other conditions), when comparing a BPS to other tests of fetal well being, there is no difference in perinatal deaths or low Apgar scores [179]. Although the overall incidence of adverse outcomes was low, there are no significant differences between the groups in perinatal deaths (RR 1.33, 95% CI 0.60–2.98) or in Apgar score <7 at five minutes (RR 1.27, 95% CI 0.85–1.92). Combined data from the two high-quality RCTs suggest an increased risk of cesarean section in the BPS group (RR 1.60, 95% CI 1.05 to 2.44) [179]. The impact of the BPS on other interventions, length of hospitalization, serious short-term and long-term neonatal morbidity, and parental satisfaction requires further evaluation. In FGR alone, RCTs are lacking to prove the value of the BPS, but it is still mentioned as a surveillance tool in these pregnancies [1]. This is justified in that fetal death within one week of a normal score on BPS testing is rare, estimated at about <0.1% in one study [180]. Furthermore, in severe and early FGR, STV, accelerations (reactive NSTs) are delayed and additional testing with the BPS that does not rely on external fetal monitoring may be useful.

Amniotic Fluid Volume
Assessment of amniotic fluid (AF) volume is an essential component of antepartum testing with either the NST or the BPS (see Chapter 56). AF is an indirect measure of fetal
Consider delivery for:
- Signs of acidemia on BPP or NST regardless of Doppler findings
- ≥3 wks of absent growth >32 wks

EFW <10th percentile

Check BPP/NST, umbilical artery Doppler

<24 weeks

Nonviable at this gestational age if delivery occurs. Return at 24 weeks with the above assessment

≥29–30 wks: consider checking DV flow
Give corticosteroids

UA-AREDF

UA REDF: delivery at 32 wks
UA AEDF: delivery at 34 wks

≥29–30 wks: no A/R of DV a-wave

≥29–30 wks: A/R of DV a-wave

Check serial UA and DV
Check NSTs twice daily
If NST NR, check BPP

25–34 weeks

No UA-AREDF

Test weekly BPP or twice weekly NST as outpatient
Check growth every 3 weeks
Check UA Doppler weekly

>34 weeks

No UA-AREDF

Move toward delivery

Evidence of decreased MCA resistance or UA resistance >95th percentile

Normal testing

Deliver at 37 0/7–38 0/7 wks

Deliver 38 0/7–39 6/7 wks

UA-AREDF

UA REDF: delivery at 32 wks
UA AEDF: delivery at 34 wks

≥29–30 wks: no A/R of DV a-wave

≥29–30 wks: A/R of DV a-wave

Consider moving toward delivery
Consider waiting 48 hours for corticosteroids
Continuous EFM while waiting for corticosteroids benefit

Figure 45.1 Algorithm of the management of FGR based on gestational age and surveillance. Normal Testing is defined as normal UA Doppler studies and reactive NST or BPP of 6/8 or 8/10 or higher. Signs consistent with fetal acidemia on the NST are defined as persistent absent variability and/or repetitive FHR decelerations (category III FHR tracing), or a persistent biophysical profile of <6. Abbreviations: AEDF, absent end-diastolic flow; A/R, absent or reversed; AREDF, absent or reversed end diastolic flow; BPP, biophysical profile; DV, ductus venosus; EFW, estimated fetal weight; MCA, middle cerebral artery; NST, non-stress test; REDF, reversed end-diastolic flow; UA, umbilical artery.
vascular status and reflects the degree of fetal renal perfusion. Although low AF (anhydramnios or oligohydramnios) itself is a poor screening tool for FGR, it may be the first sign detected in a growth-restricted fetus. Up to 96% of fetuses with an AF MVP less than 1 cm in depth may be FGR [181]. The reduction in AF results from the progressive redistribution of blood flow toward the fetal heart, brain, and adrenal glands and away from lungs, digestive tract, kidneys, and torso. This has been well described in lambs with induced hypoxia and also in FGR in humans [182–184]. Further, the relationship of oligohydramnios and progressive worsening of both arterial and venous Doppler velocimetry findings has been previously described in the human FGR fetus [171].

**Estriol Levels**

Compared to concealed levels, knowledge of plasma estriol levels does not affect perinatal mortality (3% in each group) in women with FGR, hypertension, or adverse obstetric history [185].

**Interval of Fetal Testing**

Testing should start usually on the diagnosis of FGR. On the basis of the evidence above, UA Doppler evaluation is recommended, usually initially on a weekly basis with the option of increased Doppler frequency in the presence of abnormal UA Doppler flow.

The other testing modalities and their testing interval are not supported by level 1 evidence. Some experts suggest monitoring with NSTs twice a week with once weekly amniotic fluid assessment, or BPSs weekly in pregnancies with FGR and normal UA Doppler. In the presence of abnormal UA Doppler, more frequent testing with NST/AFV and/or BPS can be considered. The NST will not show reactivity usually before 32 weeks, so a category III tracing may be used as criteria for delivery. The data on BPS screening are mostly from term pregnancies with very little data on the effectiveness of BPS monitoring on very preterm (e.g., <28 weeks) FGR.

**DElIVERY**

**Preparation: Steroids and Magnesium Sulfate**

When fetal testing in the FGR fetus suggests need for delivery at 24 to 34 weeks, several strategies should be considered. If delivery is anticipated within seven days, steroids for fetal maturity should be administered to the mother. Either betamethasone or dexamethasone can be used. Betamethasone 12 mg IM q24h × 2 doses (one course) is associated with decrease in RDS, IVH, NEC, and perinatal mortality [186]. A single “rescue” course can be considered >14 days from the first course if pregnancy is still <32 weeks [187,188]. Steroids can temporally affect NST, BPS, and Doppler testing (see also Chapter 17 in Obstetric Evidence Based Guidelines). The evidence for safety and effectiveness of steroids specifically in FGR pregnancies is limited [189]. One recent, relatively small, retrospective study comparing steroids to no steroids in severe and early FGR pregnancies (delivered <32 weeks gestation) failed to show any immediate neonatal benefit of steroids (except for improved cord pH and 5-minute Apgar score) or long-term infant benefit (no improvement in Griffith’s score at 2 years of age) [190]. Thus, further investigation of steroid benefit in FGR is needed in this early severe FGR group. However, in contrast to this study, an older and larger (n = 19,759 VLBW cases) study from the Vermont Oxford Database of FGR fetuses between 501 and 1500 g, antenatal steroids were associated with significant reductions in RDS, IVH, and severe IVH but not in necrotizing enterocolitis [191].

Although no study has addressed the benefit of magnesium sulfate and neuroprotection in FGR pregnancies alone, this medication should be administered for neuroprotection based on published protocols [192–194]. Lastly, delivery should be accomplished at a facility that has neonatal intensive care unit capabilities [1].

**Timing**

The timing of delivery of the FGR fetus should be based mostly on gestational age and all antepartum testing factors and in general not just one test. A possible management algorithm is shown in Figure 45.1. Given the current state of the literature and absence of strong data that specifically delineates the optimal timing of delivery, this proposed strategy for managing pregnancies complicated by FGR is largely based on Level II evidence and expert opinion and subject to change as new evidence accumulates. Retrospectively, the largest predictors of perinatal outcome are gestational age at delivery, birth weight, AREDF of the UA, abnormal DV blood flow, nonreassuring CTG or BPS, and placental villitis [195,196].

Delivery timing is optimally determined by RCTs testing different strategies. To date, there have been two RCTs of timing delivery in the early FGR pregnancy (GRIT and TRUFFLE studies) and one RCT in the late preterm/early term FGR pregnancy (DIGITAT study).

**Growth Restriction Trial (GRIT study):** In the GRIT study, 548 patients with FGR (>90% singletons, >70% with abnormal UA Doppler) at 24 to 36 weeks were randomized to delivery after 48 hours of steroid administration versus expectant management [59,196]. In the group randomized to expectant management, delivery criteria and surveillance strategies were not based on a protocol or described in detail. Patients moved toward delivery when the clinicians managing the pregnancy felt that pregnancy prolongation was no longer safe.

Immediate delivery after 48 hours of steroids was associated with similar incidence of perinatal death (10%) compared to delayed delivery (9%) (delay in delivery was an average of only four days later). Incidence of fetal (0.7% vs. 3.1%) and neonatal (77% vs. 4.1%) deaths as well as death and disability at two years of age (19% vs. 16%) were similar in the two groups (59,196). Trends for ventilation >24 hours, IVH and NEC tended to favor delayed delivery. Disability in babies younger than 31 weeks was higher in those delivered immediately (13%) compared to those in the delayed group (5%) [196]. At age 6 to 13 years, there was not a clinically significant difference between groups in standardized school-based evaluations of cognition, language, motor performance, and behavior [197].

**Limitations of the GRIT Study:** This trial has been criticized for several reasons, including the following: 1) There was no clearly defined surveillance strategy or explicit delivery indications described in the expectantly managed group; 2) the expectant management group only gained an average of four days, which may explain the lack in differences shown; and 3) the immediate delivery group average time to delivery was 0.9 days (range of 0.4–1.3 days), and thus fetuses did not likely benefit from steroid administration. However,
the trial suggests that early delivery does not necessarily prevent neurodevelopmental damage from fetal metabolic deterioration inherent to FGR. Also, as no specific protocol based on fetal testing (either Doppler, CTG, or other) was followed, specific recommendations cannot be made from this important RCT except that delivering early for hypothetical avoidance of fetal hypoxia might not improve outcome with the authors recommending that the “obstetrician should delay.”

**TRUFFLE Study:** The TRUFFLE study details, findings, and limitations are described in detail above. This study provides some evidence in support of delivery of the FGR fetus prior to 32 weeks based on either an absent or reversed a-wave in the DV. More specifically, there may be a reduction in neurodevelopmental delay at 2 years of age compared to delivery based on CTG alone.

**DIGITAT study:** The DIGITAT study is a multicenter RCT of induction of labor (IOL) versus expectant management (EM) of FGR fetuses (defined as an EFW <10th percentile) greater than 36 weeks gestation with the primary outcome being a composite adverse neonatal outcome. IOL infants delivered 10 days earlier and weighed 130 g less [198]. There were no differences in the composite neonatal outcomes between the IOL and EM groups (5.3% vs. 6.1%; 95%CI –4.3 to 3.2). Although there were no differences for any maternal outcomes between the two groups, including no difference in cesarean delivery, there was a significantly higher rate of preeclampsia in the expectant management group with a rate of 3.7% in the IOL and 7.9% in the EM group (difference in percentage –4.2 with 95%CI of –7.7 to 0.6). A two-year follow-up study did not reveal any differences in neurodevelopmental outcomes [199].

**Limitations of the DIGITAT trial:** There were several limitations of the DIGITAT study. Although UA Doppler studies were performed and rates of abnormal UA Doppler in each group reported, the outcome data were not analyzed (or at least reported) in the subgroup of patients with an abnormal UA Doppler. This would have helped separate which FGR fetuses were pathologically small from those constitutionally small. In addition, had MCA Doppler velocimetry been performed, this could have further identified constitutionally small from pathologically small fetuses. Oligohydramnios was defined as an AFI of <5 cm, which has been shown to result in a greater number of interventions with no improvement in outcomes. As a result, the oligohydramnios rates were quite high in each group (IOL 31% and EM 34%). The report did not indicate what was done with oligohydramnios and, in the expectant management group, delivery indications were left to the local standard of each center. Finally, there was no report of neonatal outcomes by birth weight percentile. For example, there was a significantly lower rate of birth weight <3rd percentile in the IOL group (13%) compared to the EM group (31%), and it would be useful to know if outcomes were different between those groups.

The following recommendations are based primarily on nontrial evidence (Level II and Level III).

**At <24 weeks,** FGR is associated with poor outcome, and counseling regarding termination can be offered in some states. Transfer to a tertiary care center is recommended if pregnancy is continued. Delivery of a severe FGR fetus at <25 weeks is associated with a dismal prognosis [174], and delivery for nonreassuring FHR (NRFHR) testing at this gestational age is unlikely to improve survival.

**At any gestational age,** in particular after 23 to 24 weeks, NRFHR consistent with category III patterns (e.g., recurrent late decelerations or bradycardia with absent variability) on monitoring should prompt decision for delivery. Absent/minimal (<5 beats) variability ≥32 weeks in the presence of FGR should also be an indication for considering delivery. If BPS testing is employed, a **BPS <6** is an indication for delivery. **If the managing physician is not willing to deliver the fetus for a BPS of 4 or less** (e.g., in cases of FGR <28 weeks), a **BPS should not be performed.** In a FGR pregnancy in which the fetus has normal UA Doppler, the fetus may be constitutionally small, and UA Doppler could be performed every 1–2 weeks with continued weekly biophysical assessment (BPS or NSTs; see below). Otherwise, if UA Doppler is abnormal, but with forward end-diastolic flow, weekly UA Doppler with continued biweekly NSTs and/or BPs are suggested.

At **24 to 31 6/7 weeks,** the FHR tracing may not show accelerations or more than minimal variability even in normal fetuses, but delivery is always indicated for recurrent late decelerations or bradycardia on monitoring. It is unclear when in the progression of pathologic changes is delivery best indicated at this gestational age because a **very preterm delivery could prevent in utero deterioration or death but be associated with the morbidity and mortality of extreme prematurity.** Whenever possible (in the absence of recurrent late decelerations or bradycardia), **delivery should be postponed after 48 hours of steroids for fetal maturity.** At <30 weeks, gestational age and birth weight are the largest predictors of outcome, and antenatal surveillance tools may not contribute significantly to survival [174,200,201].

**Between 24 and 34 weeks,** weekly UA Doppler evaluation will be the mainstay of surveillance with either twice weekly NSTs with weekly amniotic fluid assessment or weekly BPSs. MCA Doppler velocimetry can help to identify fetuses that are pathologically FGR and the patient with an abnormal fetal MCA blood flow should be counseled about the increased risks in pregnancy and the newborn period. However, **MCA Doppler should not be used to time delivery** as this has not been tested in clinical trials. If there is evidence of AREDF of the UA, DV Doppler evaluation can be performed, and the patient should be hospitalized for corticosteroid administration and daily monitoring. Delivery for an absent or reversed a-wave in the DV can be considered at ≥29–30 weeks as this has been shown to improve 2-year neurodevelopmental outcomes compared to abnormal CTG STV alone. Prior to this time, gestational age has been shown to be the most important factor for intact survival [174].

At **32 to 33 6/7 weeks,** REDF in the UA and **BPS <6** are indications for delivery 48 hours after steroids have been given [123] with continuous EFM showing no evidence of decelerations. With UA AEDF, reversed flow of the a-wave of the DV is a strong predictor of fetal acidemia and poor perinatal outcome [166–168], and delivery should also be considered when ≥29–30 weeks. Usually tocolysis should not be used for PTL or PPROM in the presence of FGR unless FHR tracing is reassuring and 48 hours are needed to obtain the benefit of steroid administration.

At ≥34 weeks, FGR should be delivered if there is a **BPS <6,** oligohydramnios with SDP <2, AEDF or REDF in UA, or absent/reversed flow of the a-wave in the DV [123].

If the UA S/D, PI, or RI are at or above the 95th percentile, but flow during diastole is still present, delivery should...
be considered at around 37 weeks. In singleton gestations with FGR at 36 to 41 weeks, induction at around 37 weeks was associated with similar maternal outcomes, incidences of cesarean delivery, and neonatal morbidity and mortality compared to expectant management [198]. The incidence of birth weight <3rd percentile is decreased from 31% with expectant monitoring to 13% with induction. If the CTG and/or BPS remain reassuring, delivery at approximately 38 0/7 to 9 6/7 weeks can be performed for the remainder of FGR fetuses. Some recommend delivery at 39 weeks (by EDC) of the FGR fetus with otherwise normal testing if dating is accurate (i.e., based on first-trimester ultrasound) and this is supported in a practice bulletin by the ACOG, which shows that perinatal mortality and infant mortality at 1 year of age, in general, is lowest for those infants born between 39 and 40 weeks [202].

**Multiple Gestation and FGR**

There are no trials of timing delivery in either monochorionic/diamniotic or dichorionic/diamniotic twin gestations affected by one or two FGR cotwins. Assuming that fetal surveillance has continued to be reassuring, recommendations based on expert opinion are provided by a committee opinion document from the ACOG [203]. In DC/DA twin gestations with isolated FGR, delivery in the late preterm (36 0/7 to 36 6/7 weeks) is suggested. If DC/DA twins have concurrent conditions, such as abnormal Doppler studies or maternal comorbidities (e.g., preeclampsia or chronic hypertension), delivery in the late preterm period is suggested (32 0/7–34 6/7 weeks). Because of the higher rate of fetal demise in the third trimester, even without FGR, in monochorionic/diamniotic twins, delivery in the late preterm period is recommended. Consider delivery of twins if one twin has REDF of UA at >32 weeks, AEDF of UA at 32–34 weeks, or abnormal (but not REDF or AEDF) UA Doppler at 34–36 weeks. For more details, see Table 45.3 and also Chapters 44 and 56.

**Mode of Delivery**

There is insufficient evidence to assess the mode of delivery associated with the best outcomes for the FGR fetus. The TRUFFLE and GRIT studies of early and severe FGR showed cesarean delivery rates that were quite high (90% or greater). However, some evidence exists showing that pregnancies with suspected FGR that require delivery can be safely induced if there is a reassuring fetal tracing, normal oxytocin contraction test (OCT), and normal BPS [204]. Fetuses with abnormal UA Doppler velocimetry are more likely to fail the OCT and require a cesarean section, but vaginal delivery is possible in 40% to 60% of these patients with FGR [58,205]. When induction of labor is performed, especially at or after 36 weeks, the rate of cesarean section does not increase [198]. The decision for either induction of labor or planned cesarean delivery should account for numerous variables like fetal hemodynamic status, monitoring, cervical ripening, and parent desires. A trial of labor for the vertex FGR fetus can only be attempted if fetal monitoring is reassuring. The placenta should be sent for pathologic evaluation after delivery of an FGR fetus.

**NEONATOLOGY MANAGEMENT**

FGR neonates frequently require assistance with ventilation and feeding, especially if born preterm. FGR neonates <32 weeks or <1500 g require special care, usually in a tertiary care center. Workup of the etiology of FGR should be completed if not already done prenataly. Hypoglycemia, polycythemia, and coagulopathies are common, and may need treatment. Involvement of the neonatology team on counseling the patient prior to delivery on expectations in the intensive care unit may be helpful for families.

**FUTURE PREGNANCY PRECONCEPTION COUNSELING**

Recurrence risks are dependent upon the etiology, but when the etiology is uncertain, the rate of recurrence is increased to as high as 24% [13,15,16]. The next pregnancy is also at increased risk for fetal death if FGR necessitated PTB [206]. When the first pregnancy had FGR, several interventions are available to prevent recurrence of FGR (Table 45.4) [207]. The subsequent pregnancy should have initiation of low-dose aspirin prior to 16 weeks (unless the cause has been identified and is either nonrecurrent or treatable otherwise) [76]. In the subsequent pregnancy, screening for FGR with ultrasound surveillance of fetal growth should be performed at regular intervals.

**Table 45.3** Intervention to Prevent Recurrent FGR

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Preconception</th>
<th>Prenatal</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• Adequate spacing of pregnancies (e.g., 18–24 months between last delivery and next conception)</td>
<td>• Accurate dating by first trimester sonography</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Optimization of maternal medical conditions, such as diabetes and rheumatologic disease, smoking cessation</td>
<td>• Low-dose aspirin (81–150 mg) started at &lt;16 wk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Women with nutritional deficiencies, especially in developing countries.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Supplementation of 500 to 1000 calories with low (&lt;25%) protein content</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Women living in areas endemic for malaria.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Antimalarial prophylaxis</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Table 45.4** Timing of Delivery in Twin Pregnancy Complicated by FGR

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Monochorionic/Diamniotic Twins</th>
<th>Dichorionic Twins</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Twins with isolated FGR, normal NST, normal MVP and normal UA Doppler</td>
<td>36 0/7–36 6/7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Twins with isolated FGR, normal NST, normal MVP and elevated PI &gt;95th % or elevated S/D ratio &gt;95th % of the UA Doppler</td>
<td>34 0/7–36 6/7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Twins with concurrent findings including oligohydramnios, abnormal UA Doppler results (either AEDV or REDV)</td>
<td>32 0/7–34 6/7 weeks</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
REFERENCES


Abalos E, Duley L, Steyn D et al. Antihypertensive drug therapy for mild to moderate hypertension during pregnancy. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2007; 1: CD002522. [Meta-analysis; 19 trials, n ranging from 77 to 20,000; Level II]


Alver J, Brooke OG. Fetal growth in different racial groups. *Arch Dis Child* 1978; 53: 27–32. [II-2]

Fetal Growth Restriction


134. Janssens D. Prevention of low birth weight by flunarizine given to smoking mothers. Arch Gynecol 1985; 237(Suppl. 1): 397. [RCT, n = 100]


155. Alfirevic Z, Stampilija T, Gyte G. Fetal and umbilical Doppler ultrasound in high-risk pregnancies. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2010; 1: CD007529. [I; meta-analysis, 18 RCTs, n = 10,000]


FETAL GROWTH RESTRICTION

431


183. Arabin B, Bergman PL, Saling E. Simultaneous assessment of blood flow velocity in uteroplacental vessels, the umbilical artery, the fetal aorta and the fetal common carotid artery. *Fetal Ther* 1987; 2: 17–26. [Level II]


185. Duenhoelter JH, Whalley PJ, MacDonald PC. An analysis of the utility of plasma immunoreactive estrogen measurements in determining delivery time of gravidas with a fetus considered at high risk. *Am J Obstet Gynecol* 1976; 125: 889–98. [I, RCT, n = 622 women with high risk pregnancies, including fetal growth restriction, hypertension, adverse obstetric history. RCT by hospital # to plasma estriol level either revealed or concealed]


Fetal macrosomia
Oscar A. Viteri and Suneet P. Chauhan

KEY POINTS
• Although clinical and sonographic estimated fetal weight (EFW) can identify newborns with weight ≥4000 g (definition of fetal macrosomia), both methods are poor at detecting neonates who will weigh ≥4500 g.
• Prevention of macrosomia is obtained in women with gestational diabetes (GDM) with the following:
  ◦ Diet and glucose monitoring with insulin if needed compared to no treatment or diet only.
  ◦ Postprandial blood glucose monitoring compared to preprandial in GDM requiring insulin therapy.
  ◦ Strict glucose control with fasting blood sugar <90 and two hours postprandial <120.
• Bariatric surgery prior to pregnancy is associated with decreased odds of macrosomia in obese women (body mass index >30 kg/m²).
• Prenatal exercise reduces the odds of delivering a macrosomic newborn.
• Among uncomplicated pregnancies, induction for suspected macrosomia is associated with a reduced risk for shoulder dystocia and increased risk of vaginal delivery without increasing the likelihood of cesarean delivery when compared with expectant management. The likelihood of neonatal brachial plexus palsy (NBPP) is not influenced by induction for suspected macrosomia.
• There is insufficient evidence to recommend best management of suspected macrosomia among pregnancies complicated by diabetes mellitus, prior cesarean delivery, or shoulder dystocia because of the lack of randomized trials and the inaccuracy of predicting birth weight. The American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (ACOG) suggests a planned cesarean for women with no diabetes and an EFW of ≥5000 g, and for those with diabetes and an EFW of 4500 g, but these suggestions are not based on level 1 evidence.

DEFINITION
A fetus with EFW ≥4000 g can be presumed to be macrosomic. Macrosomic newborns can be classified as grades I (birth weight 4000–4499 g), II (4500–4999 g), and III (≥5000 g) [1]. This classification is clinically relevant because the grades are associated with different types of complications. Instead, a fetus is large for gestational age (LGA) when his/her EFW is estimated to be >95% for gestational age.

EPIDEMIOLOGY/INCIDENCE
The prevalence of macrosomia in developed countries has decreased significantly, affecting 1.3% to 1.5% of all pregnancies [2]; however, 5% to 10% of macrosomic fetuses are associated with maternal diabetes. The rate of neonates in the United States weighing ≥4000 g was 10.2% in 1996, 9.2% in 2002, and 8.0% in 2013, [3] continuing to decrease over 19 years. For newborns weighing ≥5000 g, the decrease in the prevalence has been notable as well (from 0.16% in 1996 to 0.13% in 2002 and 0.10% in 2008) [3,4]. In China, the prevalence of macrosomia increased from 6.6% in 1996 to 9.5% in 2000, then decreased to 7.0% in 2010 [5]. Similarly, in Korea, the frequency of macrosomia was reduced from 6.7% to 3.5% between 1993 and 2010 [6]. In some countries, such as Denmark, however, macrosomia is increasing. From 1998 to 2008, that country’s rate of macrosomia (live births weighing >4000 g) has increased from 5.2% to 5.8% [7]. In developing countries, the prevalence of macrosomia is typically 1% to 5%, but ranges from 0.5% to 14.9% [8].

RISK FACTORS
Hispanic women, maternal obesity, maternal birth weight >8 lb, grand multiparity (≥5 deliveries), prior macrosomic fetus, abnormal 50-g glucose screen but normal three-hour glucose test, diabetes (pre- or gestational diabetes), gestational age ≥40 weeks, advanced maternal age, male infant sex, and excessive weight gain during pregnancy are well known risk factors [8,9]. Intrapartum hydramnios [10] and second stage of labor ≥120 minutes [11] are other risk factors for macrosomia. The majority of newborns with birth weights ≥4500 g do not have any known risk factors [9].

COMPLICATIONS
The maternal complications with macrosomic fetuses include prolonged labor, operative vaginal delivery, cesarean delivery, postpartum hemorrhage, and vaginal lacerations [9]. Compared to newborns with birth weights of 3000 to 3999 g, neonatal complications for grade I macrosomia include breech presentation, induction, meconium staining, dysfunctional/prolonged labor, cephalopelvic disproportion, and cesarean delivery. For grade II macrosomia, the complications are also Apgar scores ≤3 at 5 minutes, assisted ventilation >30 minutes, birth injuries, meconium aspiration, and hyaline membrane disease. For grade III macrosomia, there is also a significantly higher likelihood of neonatal and infant mortality [1].

MANAGEMENT
Prevention of Macrosomia
In diabetic women, a significant decrease in the rate of macrosomia can be obtained with the following:
• Diet and glucose monitoring with insulin if needed compared to no treatment or diet only [12].
• Postprandial versus preprandial blood glucose monitoring in GDM requiring insulin therapy [13].
• **Continuous glucose monitoring** compared to standard antenatal care with intermittent self-monitoring [14].

• **Management of GDM with fasting blood sugar <90 and 2-hour postprandial <120**, versus modified blood sugar goal based on whether the abdominal circumference is <75% versus ≥75% for gestational age (if abdominal circumference ≥75%, the fasting blood sugar should have been in this study <80 and 2-hour postprandial <100) [15].

• **Treatment**, including nutrition instruction, diet, glucose testing, and insulin if necessary, of mild or borderline GDM, defined by abnormal one-hour glucose challenge test but normal two-hour glucose tolerance test [16,17].

In nondiabetic women, rates of macrosomia were decreased with the following:

• **Bariatric surgery** in eligible obese women [18,19]. Compared to obese women who had not undergone bariatric surgery, those receiving the procedure had lower odds of macrosomia (OR 0.46; 95% CI 0.34–0.62).

• **Prenatal exercise** reduced the odds of having a macrosomic newborn by 31% (OR 0.69, 95% CI 0.55–0.86) [20].

In limited data, the rate of macrosomia was not significantly decreased with the following:

• Administering insulin twice daily versus four times daily in women with pre- and gestational diabetes [21]

• Use of insulin or glyburide in the management of GDM not controlled adequately on diet [22]

• Use of glyburide or metformin as alternatives to insulin therapy [23]

**Screening**

During labor, the detection of neonates weighing at least 4000 g is similar with clinical or sonographic EFWs although the likelihood ratio with clinicians’ estimate was 15, and with **measurements of biometric parameters** it was 42 (i.e., better) [24]. Neither clinical nor sonographic EFW can accurately identify neonates that weigh 4500 g or more [25,26], systematically overestimating the actual birth weight. However, the overall proportion of clinically estimated fetal weights that are within 10% of the actual birth weight is significantly lower than that for sonographic methods across all birth weights (35% vs. 68%, p < .001) and for macrosomic babies (76% vs. 100%, p = .009) [27]. Routine use of third trimester ultrasound provides a high detection of large-for-gestational age fetuses (sensitivity 70%, 95% CI 85%–795% and specificity 70%, 95% CI 68%–72%) [28].

**Management of Suspected Macrosomia**

Whenever macrosomia is suspected, the pregnancy should be classified into one of the following groups: 1) uncomplicated, 2) pregestational or gestational diabetes, 3) prior cesarean delivery, or 4) history of shoulder dystocia (Figure 46.1).

**Uncomplicated**

Induction of labor at 37 0/7 to 38 6/7 weeks for suspected fetal macrosomia (EFW ≥4000 g) in nondiabetic women has been **associated with a reduced risk for shoulder dystocia** (RR 0.32, 95% CI 0.12–0.85) and **associated morbidities** (RR 0.32, 95% CI 0.15–0.71) when compared to expectant management without increasing the risk for cesarean. In fact, induction of labor was associated with **increased likelihood of vaginal delivery** (RR 1.14, 95% CI 1.01–1.29) [29]. Thus, the number needed to treat to prevent one case of shoulder dystocia is 25 [30]. There were no cases of neonatal brachial plexus palsy (NBPP) in either group. Thus, there is no evidence that induction for suspected macrosomia influences the rate of NBPP. Although the ACOG practice bulletin on fetal macrosomia [9] suggests that planned cesarean delivery should be considered if the EFW is at least 5000 g, there is insufficient evidence to assess this intervention, and there are insufficient reports on the peripartum outcomes when the fetus is suspected to have grade III macrosomia [4].

**Diabetes**

In insulin-requiring diabetic pregnancies, **induction at about 38 weeks**, compared to expectant management until 42 weeks, is associated with a significant decrease in the rate of macrosomic fetuses, but the limited sample size does not permit drawing “firm conclusions” [31,32].
A retrospective study concluded that a protocol involving induction for EFW ≥90% but <4250 g and cesarean delivery for sonographic weight ≥4250 g decreases the rate of shoulder dystocia by 50% but increases the rate of cesarean delivery by 16% [33]. Although the ACOG practice bulletin on fetal macrosomia [9] suggests that cesarean delivery among diabetics is indicated if the EFW is ≥4500 g, others have set the threshold at ≥4000 g [31,33] or at ≥4250 g [31] (see also Chapter 4).

Prior Cesarean Delivery

The majority of patients attempting vaginal birth after cesarean delivery (VBAC) can successfully deliver a macrosomic fetus [34–36]. The rate of uterine rupture may be higher (3.6%) for a macrosomic trial of labor with prior cesarean delivery, if the patient has not delivered vaginally before [37]. Thus, obstetric factors (prior deliveries, need for induction, etc.) should be considered when attempting VBAC with suspected macrosomia (see Chapter 14 in Obstetric Evidence Based Guidelines).

Prior Shoulder Dystocia

Women with prior shoulder dystocia are at much higher risk (about 12%–15%) of recurrence [38,39] (see Chapter 25 in Obstetric Evidence Based Guidelines). In the general obstetric population, the likelihood of brachial plexus injury is 1.4/1000 births, but among women who had prior shoulder dystocia and deliver vaginally, it is 13/1000 if there is no recurrent dystocia. If there is recurrent shoulder dystocia, the likelihood of brachial plexus injury is 45/1000 [39].

There are no randomized trials [4] on how to manage these pregnancies, but it is reasonable to discuss cesarean delivery at term when managing a patient with a prior shoulder dystocia because the likelihood of recurrent shoulder dystocia is quite high (about 12%–15% vs. 1% in general population) as is the risk of neurologic injury (see Chapter 25 in Obstetric Evidence Based Guidelines).

REFERENCES

12. Cashioner CA, Hiller JE, Ross JR et al. Effect of treatment of gestational diabetes mellitus on pregnancy outcomes. *N Engl J Med* 2005; 352: 2477–86. [RCT, n = 1000. Impaired glucose tolerance (defined following 75-g OGTT as fasting <7.0 mmol/L, 2 hours between 7.8 mmol/L and 11.0 mmol/L). Diet, glucose monitoring, and insulin as needed vs. routine care]
Cytomegalovirus

Timothy J. Rafael

KEY POINTS

- Cytomegalovirus (CMV) is the most common cause of viral intrauterine infection, affecting 0.5% to 1.5% of all neonates.
- In most of the cases, pregnant women acquire CMV by exposure to children in their home or from occupational exposure to children.
- Approximately 1%–4% of immunoglobulin G (IgG)-negative women acquire CMV infection during pregnancy. Approximately one third (range 30%–65%) of pregnant women with a primary infection transmit CMV infection to their fetus. The rate of transmission increases with increase in gestational age (highest in the third trimester), but the severity of disease is instead inversely proportional to gestational age (the infant is most affected when maternal infection is in the first trimester). Overall, about 15% to 20% of infected infants develop sequelae (so about 5%–8% of infants of infected mothers have sequelae).
- Complications of affected infants with congenital CMV infection include jaundice, petechiae ("blueberry muffin baby"), thrombocytopenia, hepatosplenomegaly, growth restriction, microcephaly, intracranial calcifications, nonimmune hydrops, and preterm birth as well as late complications, such as hearing loss, mental retardation, delay in psychomotor development, chorioretinitis, optic atrophy, seizures, expressive language delays, and learning disabilities. Long-term mortality for severely affected infants is about 5%.
- Prevention (including avoiding intimate contact with children, frequent handwashing, and glove use) is associated with an 84% decrease in CMV seroconversion during pregnancy.
- CMV screening in pregnancy is not routinely recommended in most countries until an appropriate fetal intervention is proven to decrease neonatal disease in cases of maternal CMV infection.
- Maternal diagnosis of CMV infection is by serum IgM+.
- Fetal diagnosis of CMV infection is by detection of virus in amniotic fluid (AF) by polymerase chain reaction (PCR) testing.
- Presence or absence of fetal abnormalities on ultrasound can help counseling (Table 47.2), but ultrasound is very insensitive and poorly predictive of an affected (symptomatic) child.
- There is no in utero therapy for CMV supported by level 1 data. Hyperimmune globulin has not been found to be effective at preventing vertical transmission of CMV in a randomized controlled trial. Gancyclovir has not been evaluated in an RCT. Gancyclovir and CMV-specific hyperimmune globulin are not supported by sufficient evidence for recommendation at this time, and should not be used outside of a research-type setting.

PATHOGEN

CMV is a double-stranded DNA virus of the herpes family [1].

INCIDENCE/EPIEMIDEMIOLOGY

CMV is the most common cause of viral intrauterine infection, affecting 0.5% to 1.5% of all neonates in different parts of the world [2,3]. The birth prevalence of symptomatic congenital CMV is about 1 in 1000 [4]. The prevalence of CMV infection varies according to socioeconomic background. Overall in the United States, the seropositivity rate is approximately 50%; by background, it is 40% to 50% for women of middle and high, and 60% to more than 80% for women of lower socioeconomic background. The overall age-adjusted seroprevalence of CMV did not change significantly from 1988–1994 to 1999–2004 [5].

TRANSMISSION/RISK FACTORS/ASSOCIATIONS

Transmission usually occurs from close contact with contamination from urine, saliva, blood, semen, and cervical secretions [4]. Risk factors are low socioeconomic status, exposure to infective individuals, multiple partners, extremes of age, multiparity, and blood transfusion. Only cellular blood products that contain leukocytes are capable of transmitting CMV, and the risk factor is 0.1% to 0.4% per unit in immunocompetent recipients [6]. The incidence of cases with congenital disease following maternal recurrent infection has been shown to be increased with immunodeficiency, hormonal exposure, nutritional deficiency, and genital tract infections [7]. Although sexual transmission of CMV can occur, in most cases pregnant women acquire CMV by exposure to children in their home or from occupational exposure to children. Data extrapolated to the U.S. population estimate that every two years between 31,000 and 168,000 susceptible pregnant women will be exposed to CMV by an infected child [8].

SYMPTOMS

CMV is usually asymptomatic or with symptoms so mild that it goes undiagnosed. The symptoms might include a mononucleosis-like or flu-like syndrome, malaise, fatigue, lymphadenopathy, or persistent fever, and abnormal laboratory values (lymphocytosis, or increased aminotransferase levels). Rarely, hepatosplenomegaly, cough, headache, rash, and gastrointestinal symptoms can occur [9]. The presence of symptoms or laboratory abnormalities is highly suggestive of primary infection [10].

PATHOPHYSIOLOGY/CLASSIFICATION

General

The CMV virus leads to infected large cells with intranuclear inclusions. It has a 4- to 8-week period of incubation
and 3- to 12-month-long viremia (infants can shed virus for up to 6 years). Serious disease occurs only in immunocompromised adults or fetuses. The transmission of the virus to the fetus can follow either a primary or recurrent infection. Approximately 1%–4% of immunoglobulin G (IgG)-negative women acquire CMV infection during pregnancy [11]. Approximately one third (range 30%–65%) of pregnant women with a primary infection transmit CMV infection to their fetus (Figure 47.1) [2,3]. Even periconception infection a week before or up to five weeks after the last menstrual period (LMP) is associated with this rate of transmission although these rates may not be as high as previously thought [12]. The rate of transmission increases with increase in gestational age (highest in third trimester), but the severity of disease is instead inversely proportional to gestational age (infant is most affected when maternal infection is in first trimester) (Table 47.1) [13]. In fact, one series reported no affected neonates if fetuses were infected after 26 weeks if the ultrasound findings are normal [14]. The risk of congenital CMV disease at birth is mainly associated with maternal primary infection, but the presence of maternal antibodies before conception does not prevent transmission in all cases even if it is protective in most cases.

**Primary Infection**

Fetal infection generally (99.5%) occurs following maternal primary infection and rarely following recurrent CMV infection (Figure 47.1). Of the women who are not immune (IgG–, IgM–) for CMV at the beginning of pregnancy, about 2% acquire maternal infection. Transplacental transmission may occur weeks or months after primary maternal CMV infection and can be isolated from the AF by a PCR DNA technique to positively identify intrauterine transmission of CMV. Overall, about 15% to 20% of infected infants develop sequelae (so about 5%–8% of infants of infected mothers have sequelae).

**Recurrent Infection**

Recurrent infections can occur with immunosuppression and during pregnancy. Recurrent infections during pregnancy are most often asymptomatic and primarily caused by the reactivation of the endogenous virus but can also be caused by a low-grade chronic infection or reinfection by a different strain of CMV [15]. The risk of vertical transmission with recurrent infection is about 1.4% (range 0.5%–2%) [3]. Recurrent infection is responsible for only 0.5% of CMV congenital infections. Neonates infected from recurrent maternal infection have no symptoms at birth, do not have CMV in urine, and have a <10% risk of sequelae (hearing loss and chorioretinitis) [9].

**Clinical Neonatal Findings and Complications**

Clinical findings of symptomatic congenital CMV infection include jaundice, petechiae (blueberry muffin baby), thrombocytopenia, hepatosplenomegaly, growth restriction, microcephaly, intracranial calcifications, nonimmune hydrops, and preterm birth [1,16]. Primary and recurrent CMV has also been suggested as causes of isolated idiopathic IUGR [17]. CMV disease has late complications such as hearing loss, mental retardation, delay in psychomotor development, chorioretinitis, optic atrophy, seizures, expressive language delays, and learning disabilities [18]. CMV is the most common cause of congenital sensorineural hearing loss [19]. It appears that moderate or severe outcomes, when present, are identified by 1 year of age. Most impairment detected for the first time after 1 year of age appears to be milder in nature [20]. Long-term mortality for severely affected infants is about 5%.

---

**Figure 47.1** Natural history of CMV perinatal infection. Abbreviations: AF, amniotic fluid; CMV, cytomegalovirus; IgM, immunoglobulin M; PCR, polymerase chain reaction. *The prognosis is better for mothers with recurrent disease, with fetus having low risk of infection and low risk of developing sequelae. In fact, vertical transmission after recurrent infection is 0.5%–2%. From Dollard SC, Grosse SD, Ross, DS. *Rev Med Virol*, 17, 5, 355–63, 2007; Kenneson A, Cannon MJ. *Rev Med Virol*, 17, 253–76, 2007.*

**Table 47.1** Pooled Likelihood of Congenital Infection by Timing of Maternal Infection

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Maternal Infection</th>
<th>Probability of Congenital Infection (%)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Preconception*</td>
<td>5.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Periconception*</td>
<td>16.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>First trimester</td>
<td>36.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Second trimester</td>
<td>40.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Third trimester</td>
<td>65</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*In their cohort, Picone et al. define the “preconception” time period as 2 months to 3 weeks before the date of conception and “periconception” as 3 weeks before to 3 weeks after the date of conception. Please note that the above table represents their data combined with other existing literature, in which the definitions of pre- and periconception vary slightly.

---

**PREGNANCY MANAGEMENT**

**Counseling/Prognosis**

Counseling should include at least the natural history of the disease, the chances of vertical transmission, prognosis, and complications (Figure 47.1 and Table 47.2) [4,21]. A quantitative PCR count of ≥10⁵ genome equivalents/mL of AF is a certain sign of congenital infection, and ≥10⁶ genome equivalents/mL can predict symptomatic infection (Figure 47.2) [22]. In cases of severely injured fetuses on ultrasound, there is a high likelihood of sequelae, and pregnancy termination
can be offered as a management option [23]. When no ultrasonographic abnormalities are detected, the incidence of postnatal neurologic abnormalities is about 15% to 20% [24,25].

**Prevention**

**Hygiene**

Despite a higher prevalence of CMV-related childhood morbidity and mortality when compared with other infections, a recent survey study demonstrated only 13% of women being aware of congenital CMV. Most women practice behaviors that may place them at risk when interacting with children (e.g., kissing on lips, sharing utensils, sharing food, changing diapers, wiping child’s nose, handling child’s toys) [26]. Compared with no prevention, prevention (including avoiding intimate contact with children, frequent hand washing, and glove use) is associated with an 84% decrease in CMV seroconversion during pregnancy, especially in women in contact with children in day care facilities [27]. Following the administration of oral and written hygienic information to susceptible pregnant women, seroconversion rates during pregnancy have been reported to be as low as 0.26% [28].

**Vaccine**

A live-attenuated CMV vaccine is available but may be reactivated, and safety issues have not been resolved. In a trial including CMV-seronegative women of childbearing age, a glycoprotein B vaccine demonstrated a 50% efficacy in preventing CMV infection. One congenital infection occurred in the vaccine group, and three infections occurred in the placebo group although the sample size was not large enough to test the efficacy in reducing congenital infection [29]. Although this vaccine may have the potential to decrease incident cases of congenital CMV infection, it is likely that a CMV vaccine will not be available clinically for several years.

---

**Table 47.2** Chance of Affected (i.e., Symptomatic) Neonate Depending on Clinical Scenario of CMV Infection

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Maternal Fetal Ultrasound</th>
<th>Affected Infant (reference)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Confirmed infection (e.g., seroconversion, with positive IgM)</td>
<td>Unknown Normal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unknown Confirmed infection (e.g., positive AF PCR)</td>
<td>Abnormal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Confirmed infection (e.g., positive AF PCR)</td>
<td>Normal</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Abbreviations:** AF, amniotic fluid; PCR, polymerase chain reaction.
Screening

Serum

CMV screening in pregnancy is not routinely recommended in most countries even in women who are seronegative, mainly given the lack of proven intervention if seroconversion is detected [1].

If an appropriate fetal intervention is proven to decrease neonatal disease in cases of CMV, screening with IgM and IgG levels should be performed on all pregnant women between 8 and 12 weeks. IgM is 75% sensitive and persists for four to eight months. Seronegative women should be provided with basic information on how to avoid infection [28]. A second and possibly a third antibody control at 18 to 20 weeks and at 30 to 32 weeks could be recommended. IgG-positive and IgM-negative women with high IgG avidity index (e.g., >65%) could be assured of no risk of primary infection, which causes the majority of sequelae in the fetus [30]. No further controls would be necessary [11]. Currently, however, there is no in utero therapy for CMV supported by level 1 data, and therefore routine CMV screening in pregnancy cannot be recommended [11].

Ultrasound Fetal Findings

These findings are growth restriction, ventriculomegaly, oligohydramnios, echogenic bowel, choroid plexus cyst (unilateral), pleural effusion, brain and liver calcification, and hydrops fetalis [24]. Microcephaly, hydrocephaly, and intracranial calcifications are signs of high risk for neonatal sequelae [18]. A fetal cerebral periventricular “halo” seen on ultrasound examination is also suggestive of fetal infection and may be associated with white-matter lesions [31]. The limitations of ultrasound are well known. Fetal abnormalities may become evident late, change, or disappear during pregnancy, and not all symptoms of congenital infection disease are detectable by ultrasound. Ultrasound detects fetal abnormalities in only 8.5% of women with primary CMV infection and in 15% of congenitally CMV-infected fetuses. If fetal ultrasound abnormalities are detected, symptomatic CMV infection is present in 35% of neonates of primary-infected mothers and 78% of congenitally infected neonates (Table 47.2) [21].

Investigations/Diagnosis/Workup

Maternal primary CMV infection is diagnosed by IgM-serum, which persists for four to eight months. Although seroconversion is a reliable method for diagnosing primary CMV infection, the diagnosis can be problematic. The rise in CMV-specific antibodies may be delayed for up to four weeks, and the presence of CMV-specific IgM can be found in up to 10% of women with recurrent disease. Of newly found IgM+ women, approximately 50% will be found on follow up immunoblot testing to be IgM negative with high CMV IgG avidity and can be provided some reassurance [32]. Although CMV can be transmitted to the fetus both by primary and secondary (recurrent) infection, invasive prenatal diagnosis should be offered to women with primary infection as they are at higher risk for fetal infection. In recurrent infection, the presence of maternal CMV IgG offers good protection, and fetal infection occurs only in 0.5% to 1% of cases [22].

At present, detection of virus in AF by PCR testing is the most accurate means of diagnosis for CMV infection in the fetus with sensitivities ranging from 80% to 100% [25]. Amniocentesis provides a direct method of diagnosing intrauterine CMV infection because the infected fetus excretes the virus via urine into AF. The sensitivity of detecting a true infection by sampling the AF increases after 21 weeks gestation and after a minimum of 6 weeks interval following maternal primary infection, so that if an amniocentesis is performed before this interval, it should be repeated later [7,25]. It does not appear that amniocentesis, in and of itself, is implicated in iatrogenic CMV infection of the fetus [33].

CMV DNA detected in AF reveals a history of viremia but it does not directly demonstrate the current fetal condition [19]. Quantitative PCR in amniotic fluid can help predict infection and later sequelae (Figure 47.2). Infected fetuses may also have abnormal ultrasound findings. Normal fetal ultrasound does not rule out severe neurological damage. Percutaneous umbilical blood sampling (PUBS) should be avoided and has been used in the past to diagnose the fetus with a high suspicion for CMV and negative PCR. The use of viral culture has decreased also because it takes 2 to 6 weeks to obtain final results.

Neonatal diagnosis is based on detection of PCR in body fluids, in particular in urine.

Therapy

CMV-Specific Hyperimmune Globulin

There is insufficient evidence to recommend CMV-specific hyperimmune globulin for prevention or treatment of CMV congenital infection. In a nonrandomized study, CMV hyper-immune globulin IV 100 U/kg every month until delivery to the mother for prevention of vertical transmission in primary maternal CMV infection was associated with a decrease in the incidence of infected neonates from 40% in controls to 16% [34]. Maternal CMV hyperimmune globulin 200 U/kg IV to the mother (with additional AF or umbilical cord infusions for persistent ultrasound findings) for therapy of known CMV DNA+ fetuses was associated with a decrease in the incidence of symptomatic CMV disease at birth from 50% in controls to 3% [34]. Follow-up to this study demonstrated a resolution of abnormal ultrasound findings in three treated fetuses, who subsequently had normal sensory, mental, and motor development at four to seven years of age [35]. In the original study, almost all these women were infected in the first or second trimester. A case of resolution of hydrops secondary to CMV fetal infection with CMV-specific hyperimmune globulin has been reported [36]. These findings were not validated in a randomized, placebo-controlled, double-blind study conducted in Italy [37]. This study randomized 124 pregnant women with primary CMV infection at 5–26 weeks to monthly hyperimmune globulin (100 U/kg) or placebo until 36 weeks gestation or until detection of CMV in amniotic fluid. The rate of congenital infection was 30% in the placebo group (p = .13). There was no significant difference between the two groups in viral DNA load in the amniotic fluid of infected fetuses or with respect to viral DNA in the urine or blood in infected newborns. Obstetrical complications (preterm birth, preeclampsia, and fetal growth restriction) occurred in 13% of the women in the hyperimmune globulin group compared with 2% in the placebo group (p = .06). Therefore, at this time, the use of hyperimmune globulin for the prevention of vertical transmission of CMV is not recommended outside of a research setting [11]. Two randomized, phase 3 studies for the prevention of congenital infection are currently
underway, one sponsored by the NICHD in the United States (ClinicalTrials.gov NCT 01376778) and the other sponsored by Biostest in Europe. Further analyses will be forthcoming [38].

Ganciclovir and Valacyclovir

Ganciclovir inhibits viral DNA polymerase, and has been used successfully in adults, especially immunocompromised (AIDS, transplant, etc.) patients. There are no randomized controlled trials evaluating fetal therapy with ganciclovir. Ganciclovir administration into the umbilical vein and anticytomegalovirus (SCCMV) primary infections during pregnancy: Description and outcome. Prenat Diagn 2013; 33: 751–8. [II-3]

6. There are no randomized controlled trials evaluating fetal therapy with valacyclovir. Valacyclovir (8 g/day orally for a median of 7 weeks) given to women with congenitally CMV-infected fetuses at about 30 weeks of gestation was associated with about a 50% normal child outcome at 1 year to 5 years of age in one nonrandomized study [41]. A recent pediatric trial examining 6-week versus 6-month regimens of valganciclovir for the treatment of symptomatic congenital CMV infants found that the 6-month regimen did not improve hearing in the short term, but appeared to modestly improve hearing and developmental outcomes in the longer term, when compared to the 6-week regimen [42].

REFERENCES


Toxoplasmosis
Corina N. Schoen and Timothy J. Rafael

KEY POINTS
- Maternal infection starts with ingestion (from food, water, hands, or insects) of cysts from uncooked/undercooked meat of infected animals or contact with oocysts from infected cats or contaminated soil.
- Fetal/neonatal disease is more severe if maternal infection occurs in the first trimester, and the incidence of maternal-fetal transmission is directly proportional to gestational age (low in first trimester, high in third trimester).
- Prevention by educating women to avoid exposures has been shown to decrease the incidence of the disease and remains the most important of interventions.
- Prenatal and/or neonatal screening is controversial and is not adopted in most countries because of low incidence, concerns with poor/difficult diagnosis, availability of diagnostic and therapeutic services, population compliance, and high risk of terminating false-positive fetuses.
- The principle method used to diagnose and evaluate timing of congenital infection is based on detection of specific antibodies and by monitoring the immune response. Maternal infection is diagnosed by sending maternal serology to a reference laboratory. Fetal congenital infection is diagnosed by amniotic fluid (AF) polymerase chain reaction (PCR).
- Correct interpretation of serologic testing carried out in a reference laboratory decreases unnecessary anxiety and even terminations.
- If maternal infection is confirmed by a reference laboratory, start spiramycin 3 to 4 g/day.
- If AF PCR is positive, start sulfadiazine, pyrimethamine, and folinic acid.

PATHOGEN
Toxoplasma gondii (TG) is an obligate intracellular protozoan (parasite).

INCIDENCE/EPIEMIOLOGY
The incidence of primary acute maternal infection is 0.01% to 0.1% in the United States and United Kingdom. The prevalence of past infection is approximately 22% in the United States [1,2] and as high as 44% in France/Europe [3]; 50% to 70% in Latin American countries; and 5% to 35% in Asia, China, and Korea. Once immune, immunity lasts for life [4].

The incidence of congenital infection is approximately 1.5 cases per 1000 live births worldwide, 0.5 to 1.5 per 1000 live births in France/Europe [5,6], and 0.7 per 1000 live births in the United States [6,7].

SYMPTOMS
There are almost never maternal symptoms; occasionally flu/mononucleosis-like fever, fatigue, rash, and lymphadenopathy (around head and neck) can be associated with maternal infection. Rarely pregnant women will present with visual changes due to chorioretinitis from recently acquired infection or reactivation of chronic infection [8].

PATHOPHYSIOLOGY
TG can infect any mammal, which serves as an intermediate host. The definitive host is the cat (the only one that can support both sexual and asexual reproduction). The parasite can exist as

1. Trophozoite (invasive form)
2. Cyst (latent form)
3. Oocyst (only in cats)

Sexual reproduction occurs in the small intestine of the cat that has eaten tissue cysts containing TG. Only during this first exposure is the cat infectious as these oocysts are produced for two weeks and contain infectious sporozoites. The oocysts require one to five days to become infected, and after two weeks, the cat is not infectious and becomes immune. Oocysts can remain infectious for years in soil. Human infection starts with ingestion (from food, water, hands, or insects) of cysts from uncooked/undercooked meat of infected animals (e.g., lamb and mutton) or contact with oocysts from infected cats (who get it from infected mice, etc.) or contaminated soil. The infected oocysts become infective inside the pregnant woman in 4 to 10 (average 7) days, leading to parasitemia. Eventually, TG can infect and live forever in striated muscle or brain. Only a very few cases of congenital toxoplasmosis transmitted by mothers who were infected prior to conception have been reported; they can be attributed to either reinfection with a different strain or to reactivation of chronic disease. This reactivation is very rare but can occur, especially in an immunocompromised woman. Immunocompetent women with prior toxoplasmosis can be reassured that the risks to the subsequent fetus/neonate are miniscule, especially >9 months after infection [4].

MATERNAL-FETAL TRANSMISSION
Primary maternal TG infection in pregnancy can lead to fetal infection with this rate highly dependent on gestational age of maternal infection [4] (Table 48.1) (Figure 48.1). Overall, the vertical transmission rate ranges from approximately 20% to 50% [9,10]. A recent meta-analysis based on 20 cohorts worldwide reports transmission rates of approximately 20% [10]. This analysis did not include many European cohorts included in an individual patient data meta-analysis by the SYROCOT study group, which reports much higher transmission rates ranging from 16% to 52% [9].
Of congenitally infected fetuses who are PCR positive by amniocentesis, 74% to 81% manifest only subclinical infection (only serologically positive) whereas 19% to 26% have fetal/childhood illness even if they received treatment [9,11]. Overall, about 7% of fetuses of primary infected mothers are affected. Fetal/neonatal disease is more severe if maternal infection occurs in the first trimester, but more common if maternal infection occurs in the third trimester. A fetus has a <1/1000 risk of being affected if infected at less than 4 weeks gestational age.

**COMPLICATIONS**

Fetal/neonatal complications are present in 36% of cases in one series and include ventriculomegaly, increased placental thickness, hepatomegaly, ascites, intracranial calcifications, hydrocephalus, microcephaly, and hepatosplenomegaly [12].

In the neonate, TG congenital infection is associated with neonatal chorioretinitis [11] (most prevalent consequence of TG), deafness, decreased IQ, and subsequent blindness, seizure disorders, and delay in neuropsychomotor development [4].

Congenital infection may also be associated with an increased risk of preterm birth (PTB) (OR 3.49, 95% CI 1.91–6.37), abortion (OR 6.63, 95% CI 4.56–9.65), stillbirth (OR 4.63, 95% CI 2.72–7.90), and intrauterine growth restriction (IUGR) (OR 4.49, 95% CI 2.10–9.57) compared to uninfected controls. Neonatal death is rare [10].

**PREGNANCY MANAGEMENT**

**Principles**

*Counseling* regarding basic pathophysiology, maternal-fetal transmission, complications, and preventive/therapeutic management should be done. Termination can be offered, especially if the fetus is definitively positive (PCR-positive AF) and the infection occurred in the first trimester (worse prognosis).

**Prevention**

Prevention has been shown to decrease the incidence of the disease and remains the most important of interventions (Table 48.2). Although many U.S. obstetricians are counseling adequately regarding avoidance of cat litter, more information needs to be provided to patients regarding avoidance of raw or undercooked meat, gardening, and washing fruits and vegetables [13]. *Prenatal education* can effectively change pregnant women’s behavior as it increases pet, personal, and food hygiene [14]. Observational studies suggest prenatal education may have a positive effect on the congenital toxoplasmosis rate, but there is limited evidence from RCTs supporting this [15].

**Screening**

*Serum*

Routine toxoplasmosis screening programs for pregnant women have been established in some European countries, such as France and Austria. In the United Kingdom and the United States, no prenatal or neonatal screening for TG is formally recommended by appropriate medical societies but not without controversy [16,17]. Prenatal maternal screening has not been recommended in the United States because of low incidence, concerns with poor/difficult diagnosis, availability of diagnostic and therapeutic services, population compliance, and high risk of terminating false positive fetuses. If prenatal screening is implemented, it should start

---

**Table 48.1** Likelihood of Congenital Infection by Timing of Maternal Infection

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Maternal Infection</th>
<th>Probability of Congenital Infection (%)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Preconception†</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>First trimester</td>
<td>10–25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Second trimester</td>
<td>30–55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Third trimester</td>
<td>60–80</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


†Usually within nine months of conception.

---

**Table 48.2** Prevention of Congenital Toxoplasmosis

- Avoid raw or undercooked meat or eggs of any origin
- Use gloves when in contact with soil
- Wash fruits and vegetables before eating
- Avoid changing cat litter, wash hands after handling cats/litter
- Keep pet cats indoors and use commercial pet food

---

**Figure 48.1** Natural history of toxoplasmosis in pregnancy.
preconception or at least in the first trimester and be repeated every month (or at least every trimester) in all IgG-negative mothers (Figure 48.2). Neonatal screening in the United States would detect about one positive neonate for every 12,000 screened mothers. The infected woman could receive treatment that may prevent severe sequelae, but this would probably not be cost-effective. In a decision analysis applying the French prenatal screening protocol to a U.S. population, monthly maternal screening was predicted to have a cost savings of $620 per child screened. Although accounting for low prevalence of maternal toxoplasmosis in the United States, the study did not account for a high false positive antibody screen likely to be encountered in this population [18]. Further study should be performed before clinical guidelines against screening, at least in the United States.

Ultrasound
Ultrasound findings associated with TG congenital infection can include intracranial calcifications, microcephaly, ventricular dilatation and hydrocephalus, ascites, hepatosplenomegaly, and increased placental thickness [19].

Workup/Diagnosis
The principle method used to diagnose and evaluate the timing of congenital infection is based on detection of specific antibodies and monitoring the immune response (Figure 48.2). IgG antibodies usually appear within two weeks of infection and persist in the body indefinitely. IgM antibodies are considered to be a sign of recent infection and can be detected by enzyme immunoassays (EIAs) or an immuno-sorbent agglutination assay test (IAAT) within two weeks of infection. They often remain positive for up to one to two years. A positive IgM antibody test result at any time does not necessarily mean the infection was acquired recently; this needs to be confirmed at a reference laboratory. Only approximately 22%–40% of positive IgM results obtained at nonreference laboratories in the United States are deemed to have had a recent acute infection [8,20]. IgA antibodies may also persist for more than one year, and their detection is informative mainly for the diagnosis of congenital toxoplasmosis. IgE antibodies increase rapidly and remain detectable for less than four months after infection, which is a very short time to use them for a diagnostic test.

The Sabin–Feldman dye test (SFDT) is still considered the “gold standard” [4]. It detects the presence of anti-TG-specific antibodies (total Ig). The absolute antibody titer is also important: values over 250 IU/mL are considered highly suggestive of recent infection. IgG avidity testing is based on the increase in functional affinity (avidity) between TG-specific IgG and antigen over time as the host immune response evolves. Pregnant women with high avidity antibodies are those who have been infected at least three to five months earlier [21]. In a prospective cohort of 139 women, an avidity index above 30% was not associated with any positive amniocentesis or congenital infection [22]. Current testing cannot define which specific strain of TG caused the antibody response, so that reinfection with the same or different strains cannot be determined.

Maternal infection is diagnosed by sending maternal serology to a reference laboratory (in the United States: Jack Remington, Palo Alto: 650-853-4828; FAX 650-614-3292; http://www.pamf.org/serology/clinicianguide.html). It is best to make the diagnosis based on two different serum specimens collected at least four weeks apart. Usually, the reference laboratory reports serologic results with a high possibility of infection if there is the following:

- Seroconversion during pregnancy
- Increase in both specific IgG titer (>3-fold) and dye test titer (>3-fold)
- Presence of specific IgM and dye test ≥300 IU/mL

Correct interpretation of serologic testing done in a reference laboratory decreases unnecessary anxiety and even terminations [23].

Fetal congenital infection is diagnosed by AF PCR. The specificity and positive predictive value of AF samples are close to 100%. Sensitivity is around 70% to 80% but is best when maternal infection occurs between 17 and 21 weeks of pregnancy. Real-time PCR appears to have a sensitivity of 92%, negative predictive value of 98%, and may not be as gestational-age dependent as conventional PCR [24]. However, a negative AF PCR does not always completely rule out congenital infection. AF PCR should obviously be done after 15 weeks. Ultrasound can also aid in diagnosis of fetal infection (see section titled “Complications”), but it has very poor sensitivity and specificity.

Therapy
If maternal infection is detected, counsel regarding the risks along with possibility of termination (especially in first trimester) and management.

If maternal infection is confirmed by a reference laboratory, start spiramycin 3 to 4 g/day (1 g every eight hours). This is available in the United States only by the Food and Drug Administration (FDA) when Palo Alto serology is positive. Spiramycin concentrates in the placenta and therefore may not be reliable for treatment of infection in the fetus [8].

---

**Figure 48.2** Laboratory diagnosis of congenital toxoplasmosis. (Modified from Rorman E, Zamir CS, Ristikis I et al. Reprod Toxicol; 21, 4, 458–72, 2006.)
If AF PCR is positive, start sulfadiazine (initial dose of 75 mg/kg, followed by 50 mg/kg every 12 hours with a maximum of 4 g/day), pyrimethamine (50 mg every 12 hours for two days followed by 50 mg daily) and folinic acid (leucovorin) 10 to 20 mg with each dose of pyrimethamine (decreases bone marrow toxicity) and one week after completion of pyrimethamine therapy [8]. Length of therapy is controversial and has varied for a minimum of 28 days (with ½ dose until term) versus continuing therapy as is until term. Treatment with pyrimethamine and sulfadiazine to prevent fetal infection is contraindicated during the first trimester (pyrimethamine is teratogenic), but at this time, sulfadiazine can be used alone [25,26]. This treatment should be stopped in the last few weeks of pregnancy. This is the basic treatment protocol recommended by the WHO and CDC [4]. Other drugs, such as spiramycin (3–4 g/day × 3–4 weeks), are recommended in certain circumstances. It is important to note that, at this time, treatment with sulfadiazine–pyrimethamine has not yet been shown to be superior to spiramycin alone for treatment of congenital TG. Spiramycin is used to prevent placental infection; it is used in European countries, but in the United States, it is not approved by the FDA. Mode of delivery should not be influenced by maternal infection as cesarean delivery does not reduce the risk of congenital infection [27].

Treatment decreases complications of TG, but possibly not fetal infection. In a meta-analysis of 7055 women with toxoplasmosis acquired during pregnancy, the pooled rate of congenital TG who received treatment was 16%. The rate of vertical transmission was similar for both spiramycin-only and spiramycin + sulfadiazine regimens (13%) [10]. It is estimated that for every three congenitally infected fetuses that are treated, one case of serious neurological sequelae is prevented [28]. In one study, fetuses/neonates treated and subsequently followed for 12 to 250 months had a 17% rate of congenital TG with 74% of the children asymptomatic, 26% developing chorioretinitis (72% peripheral and unilateral), and all except one child having age-appropriate neurological and intellectual development [11]. In another prospective trial following treated children for a median of 10.5 years, although 30% had at least one ocular lesion, the majority of lesions caused little or no visual impairment [19]. Other long-term follow up of ante- and postnatally treated individuals suggests that in the majority of cases, congenital TG may actually have little effect on overall quality of life and visual function [29,30]. Despite these encouraging findings, well-designed randomized controlled trials are needed to elucidate the optimal treatment regimen and duration in affected pregnancies, optimally taking into account gestational age at seroconversion.

REFERENCES


Parvovirus
Timothy J. Rafael

KEY POINTS
• The incidence of acute primary maternal parvovirus B19 infection during pregnancy is about 1% to 1.5%.
• The major means of infection is by contact with young infected children. The infection is usually asymptomatic in the adult (and pregnant woman).
• About 25% to 30% of fetuses of mothers with primary parvovirus B19 infection become infected themselves by vertical transmission.
• Perinatal complications of fetal infection occur in about 10% of fetuses and include fetal anemia and myocarditis, leading to hydrops (2%–6%) and occasionally fetal death if infection occurs <20 weeks.
• Screening is not recommended because 1/5000 screened women would be at risk for fetal hydrops from parvovirus B19.
• Maternal infection is usually diagnosed by IgM+ or by IgG seroconversion.
• Fetal ultrasound can screen for development of anemia and/or hydroptic changes in the infected mother by increased peak systolic velocity (PSV) of the middle cerebral artery (MCA) using a threshold of ≥1.50 multiples of the median (MoM). If MCA PSV values are <1.50 MoM, it is suggested to continue weekly ultrasound scans for 10 to 12 weeks after the exposure.
• If MCA PSV is ≥1.50 or fetal hydrops is seen on ultrasound, fetal transfusion is indicated even though the incidence of spontaneous resolution of hydrops is about 30% because survival with transfusion is >75%–85%.
• In cases of fetuses transfused in utero for parvovirus B19-induced hydrops, there are differing data regarding long-term outcomes among survivors. There does not appear to be an increased risk of infant or childhood morbidity and mortality following parvovirus infection during pregnancy in general. In cases of fetal anemia or hydrops undergoing transfusion, however, there may be an increased risk of severe neurodevelopmental delay. Patients need to be counseled regarding the overall uncertainty regarding long-term neurodevelopmental outcomes among survivors.

PATHOGEN
Human parvovirus B19 is a single-stranded DNA virus. Parvovirus B19 is the only known parvovirus that is a human pathogen.

INCIDENCE/EPIEMIOLOGY
The incidence of acute primary maternal parvovirus B19 infection during pregnancy in susceptible women is about 1% to 1.5% [1,2]. The parvovirus B19-specific immunoglobulin G (IgG) seroconversion incidence in susceptible pregnant women (primary infection) is about 1%–1.5% during endemic periods and about 13%–13.5% during epidemic periods [2]. Approximately 50% to 75% of women of reproductive age are IgG+ (immune) for parvovirus B19 with approximately 25% to 30% of women being susceptible to parvovirus B19 infection during pregnancy [1].

RISK FACTORS/ASSOCIATIONS
The infection is more common in the winter and spring. The risk of infection is associated with the level of contact with young infected children. The highest infection rates occur in schoolteachers, day care workers, and women with nursery or school-aged children in the home. Around 50% to 80% of susceptible household members and 20% to 30% of individuals exposed in a classroom acquire acute infection from an infected child. Adverse prognostic factors are older maternal age, maternal immunity and seroconversion, raised maternal serum alpha-fetoprotein (MSAFP), and ultrasound findings.

SYMPTOMS
In adults, at least half of the infections are asymptomatic [2]. About 30% may have flulike symptoms, arthralgias, and adenopathy. Parvovirus B19 causes a common exanthematous disease in children 5 to 14 years old, called fifth disease or erythema infectiosum. Children have symptoms such as low-grade fever and “slapped-cheeks” rash and are usually diagnosed just based on these symptoms.

PATHOPHYSIOLOGY
Parvovirus B19 is mainly transmitted by respiratory droplets. The incubation period for erythema infectiosum is 13 to 18 days, and infectivity is greatest 7 to 10 days before the onset of symptoms. The major target cells for parvovirus B19 are erythroid progenitors bearing the main cellular parvovirus B19 receptor P blood group antigen globoside on their surface (Figure 49.1). The virus is believed to cause arrest of maturation of red blood cell (RBC) precursors at the late normoblast stage and causes a decrease in the number of platelets. The virus causes infection and lysis of erythroid progenitor cells by apoptosis, leading to hemolysis and transient aplastic crisis. Subsequent fetal anemia is thought to be responsible for the development of skin edema and effusions. Hepatitis, pleuritis, and myocarditis leading to heart failure may contribute to the development of fetal hydrops [2–4]. Parvovirus B19 has been demonstrated to carry an apoptosis-inducing factor and to induce cell-cycle arrest. Cells in the S-phase of DNA mitosis are particularly vulnerable to parvovirus B19, and the fetus is at risk because of the vast number of cells in active mitosis, shorter half-life of RBCs, and immature immune system.
MATERNAL-FETAL TRANSMISSION

About 25% to 30% of fetuses of mothers with primary parvovirus B19 infection become infected themselves by vertical transmission (Figure 49.2). About 90% have no sequelae from this intrauterine infection [2]. Although it is not easy to determine the exact timing of transmission of parvovirus B19 infection to the fetus, it is likely that parvovirus B19 infects the fetus during or immediately after maternal viremia even in the early stages of gestation. Parvovirus B19 can persist until term or after birth even when infection occurs early in gestation.

| Maternal primary parvovirus infection (incidence 1%–1.5% if susceptible) |
| 25%–30% |
| Fetal infection |
| ~90% No sequelae |
| ~10% Fetal anemia |
| 2%–6% (of all fetuses infected) (1%–4% of all mothers infected) Fetal hydrops |
| 1%–6% (of all fetuses/mothers infected) Fetal/neonatal death (if infection <20 weeks) |

Figure 49.2 Natural history of parvovirus infection in pregnancy.

COMPLICATIONS

Of the infected fetuses, about 5% to 20% can develop anemia, of which 30% to 50% develop hydrops fetalis (about 2%–6% of all infected fetuses) with some series showing hydrops rates as high as 66% of anemic fetuses [5] (Figure 49.2). Overall, the data suggest a rate of 1% to 4% for fetal hydrops in infected mothers [3] with rates as high as 8%–10% with infections occurring between 9 and 20 weeks [6]. The risk of fetal death is 1% to 6% of all infected fetuses [7]. Fetal death occurs almost exclusively in hydropic cases diagnosed at <20 weeks [8], especially if cases ≥20 weeks are treated with timely transfusion (90% survival) [7]. Early embryonic/fetal death may manifest as miscarriage. A recent case-control study demonstrated an increased association of first trimester miscarriage with positive Parvovirus IgM women (OR 1.71, 95% CI 1.02–2.86) [9]. Overall for infected mothers <20 weeks, there is an approximate 10% risk for fetal loss. Although acute parvovirus infection may occur relatively commonly during pregnancy, an adverse fetal outcome is an uncommon complication [4,10,11]. Rarely, parvovirus has been detected in fetuses with hydrocephalus (possibly from vasculitis), but it is unclear if malformations seen with parvovirus are just coincidental and not related to the viral infection. Parvovirus B19 may be an important cause of fetal death not always associated with fetal hydrops. All cases of fetal death, especially those associated with hydrops, should be considered for testing for parvovirus B19 by polymerase chain reaction (PCR). Maternal serology might be a less sensitive determinant for parvovirus B19-associated fetal death because immunoglobulin M (IgM) response generally lasts for two to four months, and parvovirus B19 infection can already be persistent in fetuses during the early stages of pregnancy, eventually leading to fetal death months later (see also Chapter 54). The more mature immune response in older fetuses could delay any pathogenic consequences of parvovirus B19 infection, resulting in a lower rate of hydrops than in younger fetuses [12,13].

ULTRASOUND FETAL FINDINGS

Sonographically detectable markers of fetal compromise include pericardial or pleural effusion, ascites, abdominal wall/skin edema, bilateral hydroceles, oligohydramnios or hydramnios, increased (>95th percentile) cardiac biventricular outer diameter, and, rarely, hydrocephalus, microcephaly, and intracranial and hepatic calcifications [3,4].

PREGNANCY MANAGEMENT

Counseling/Prognosis

Counseling should include the natural history of the disease, including vertical transmission, chances of fetal disease (anemia and hydrops), prognosis, and possible interventions. The long-term outcome of fetuses affected after 20 weeks is very good.

Prevention

Avoidance of contact with infected children—or (better) children in general—is the best prevention. This is not always feasible. No specific antiviral therapy or vaccine is available for parvovirus B19 infection. Frequent hand washing is effective in preventing disease transmission [2]. Intravenous
IMMUNOGLOBULIN (IVIG) prophylaxis is reasonable to consider for documented exposures in immunocompromised patients although it is not currently recommended for prophylaxis in pregnancy.

**Screening**
Universal screening is not recommended as the risk of fetal hydrops from parvovirus infection is about 1/5000 screened pregnancies, making screening not warranted. Screening may be warranted in pregnant women who take care of young children, especially during epidemics [3].

**Workup/Diagnosis**
Workup includes determination of serum IgG and IgM. Maternal infection is usually diagnosed by IgM+ or by IgG seroconversion. IgM appears by 3 days of an acute infection, peaks at 25 to 30 days, and disappears by 4 months. Serum IgG appears a few days after IgM, and coincides with resolution of maternal symptoms. The detection of viral DNA by PCR is another means of diagnosis. Electron microscopy (EM) is also possible whereas virus culture usually fails. Increased MSAFP has also been used as a prognostic factor for poor outcome [14] although this has been questioned in recent studies [5].

Once maternal infection has been diagnosed, fetal ultrasound can screen for development of anemia and/or hydropic changes. Anemia can be detected by increased PSV of the MCA prior to the appearance of sonographically detectable markers of hydrops [15]. This is based on the observation (first in rhesus immunization, in which the mechanism leading to anemia is different) that with fetal anemia there is an increase of fetal cardiac output to maintain adequate oxygen delivery to tissues, leading to increased blood flow velocities also in anemic fetuses with hydrops from parvovirus B19. MCA PSV using a threshold of ≥1.50 MoM has a high sensitivity (100%) and specificity (100%) for detecting fetal anemia [15]. If MCA PSV values are <1.50 MoM, it is suggested to continue weekly ultrasound scans for 10 to 12 weeks after the exposure [16] to follow those fetuses that potentially are at high risk for anemia and hydrops (Figure 49.3). The peak incidence of hydrops is at about four to six weeks after maternal infection. Fetal surveillance should be initiated no later than four weeks after the onset of illness or estimate of seroconversion [2]. In cases of elevated MCA PSV but no hydrops, surveillance should be increased with ultrasound scans two to three per week to detect any sign of hydrops or umbilical cord sampling performed.

Fetal diagnosis is by amniotic fluid (AF) PCR+. There is at present no need for percutaneous umbilical blood sampling (PUBS) for diagnosis.

**Therapy**
There are no trials evaluating therapeutic interventions. No antiviral therapy is available.

Treatment should be directed at fetuses with abnormal MCA PSV and/or hydropic changes. In these fetuses, anemia and even hydrops can resolve spontaneously over four to six weeks (about 30% spontaneous resolution for hydrops) [17]. Resolution is more common in older (>20 weeks) fetuses because of a more mature immune system.

Intervention for anemic and/or hydropic fetuses is gestational-age dependent:
- Between 24 and 33 6/7 weeks, steroids for fetal lung maturity should be given. Fetal cordocentesis to document anemia and transfusion as necessary improve outcome in anemic and/or hydropic fetuses. Frequently, one transfusion is sufficient [2,5].
- Before 24 weeks, with severe hydrops, termination may be offered, but transfusion can be beneficial with apparently minimal to no significant sequelae if successful.
- After 34 weeks, delivery should be considered.

If cordocentesis is performed, anemia could be detected before a critical decrease of hemoglobin of <6 g/dL and before the development of severe hydrops. Blood sampling can allow testing for fetal hemoglobin/hematocrit and leukocyte and platelet counts. Once sonographic signs of hydrops are present, transfusion is indicated using erythrocytes. Platelets should also be ready at the time of PUBS as multiple series have demonstrated a concomitantly high incidence of fetal thrombocytopenia at the time of transfusion [18–20]. An example of a step-by-step guide for both the set up and performance of fetal blood transfusion is described in detail elsewhere [16]. Several nonrandomized but controlled studies suggest a significant benefit of transfusion of fetuses with anemia and/or hydrops from parvovirus infection compared with conservative treatment [4,7,21]. Overall, in cases of hydrops, although approximately 30% can resolve without treatment, death may occur in up to 50% of untreated fetuses compared with a 75%–85% survival rate with one or more transfusions [17,22]. Intracardiac transfusion is a last resort alternative to intraumbilical cord transfusion, particularly when intraumbilical cord transfusion is not possible because of risks of bradycardia and cardiac arrest of this procedure [23,24].
NEONATE AND LONG-TERM FOLLOW-UP
Infants born to IgM+ mothers are born IgG+ (mostly maternal), and 25% stay IgG+ at one year as they were infected and have become immune. Regarding long-term outcomes of children born to women infected with parvovirus during pregnancy, a recent large registry did not find an increased risk of infant or childhood morbidity and mortality [25]. Although the general health status of survivors is no different compared with the general population, there is conflicting evidence regarding incidences of developmental delay. Some trials illustrate an incidence of developmental delay similar to the general population even in cases of fetuses transfused in utero for parvovirus B19-induced hydrops [26,27]. More recent data of survivors aged six months to eight years demonstrated a 32% incidence of psychomotor developmental delay, independent of pretransfusion hemoglobin, platelet, or blood pH values [28]. A related cohort of 28 children (all of whom had fetal hydrops and received one intrauterine transfusion) had an 11% incidence of severe developmental delay [29]. **Patients need to be counseled regarding the overall uncertainty regarding long-term neurodevelopmental outcome among survivors.** Two phases of the infantile infection are described: a first phase of viremia of two to three days, accompanied by fever and myalgia; a second phase that can last several weeks, with dermatological signs, such as erythema infectiosum, vasculitis, arthralgias, or arthritis. Long-term persistence of the virus in the neonate may be responsible for chronic manifestations.

REFERENCES
2. Lamont RF, Sobel JD, Vaisbuch E et al. Parvovirus B19 infection in human pregnancy. BJOG 2011; 118: 175–86. [Review]
Herpes
Timothy J. Rafael

KEY POINTS
• Around 20% to 30% of pregnant women have immunoglobulin G (IgG) for herpes simplex virus (HSV)-2 (prior infection) and are therefore infected with it with intermittent shedding from the vaginal mucosa. About 2% to 4% of IgG-negative women seroconvert (acquire HSV and convert to IgM+) during pregnancy, and 90% of these women are undiagnosed because they are asymptomatic.
• Most neonatal infections result from contact with infected maternal genital secretions during delivery. Transplacental HSV vertical transmission is rare. Primary first-episode infection, defined as HSV confirmed in a person without prior HSV-1 or HSV-2 antibodies, can lead to a 25% to 50% vertical transmission rate if delivery occurs vaginally during this episode and therefore represents the most important clinical scenario to avoid. Vaginal delivery during recurrent infection is associated with a <1% incidence of neonatal HSV infection.
• Prevention of maternal infection is the most important management strategy.
  ◦ Universal maternal screening with HSV-1 and HSV-2 specific serology has not been tested in a trial and is controversial.
  ◦ If the woman is seronegative, the partner should be tested. If he is seropositive, avoidance of direct orogenital contact, use of condoms, the possibility of abstinence, and medical suppression of the partner should be discussed.
  ◦ If the woman is seropositive or has a history of HSV, education, suppression with acyclovir or valacyclovir from 36 weeks until delivery, examination for lesions in labor with cesarean delivery (CD) if they are present, and avoidance (if possible) of artificial rupture of membranes (AROM), scalp electrodes, vacuum extractors, and forceps should be recommended.
• Diagnosis of genital herpes is most sensitive with polymerase chain reaction (PCR) assay of genital lesions (typed to determine whether HSV-1 or HSV-2 is the cause of the infection). Type-specific (HSV-1 and HSV-2) glycoprotein G-based serologic testing should also be sent.
• Women with primary or first-episode genital HSV in pregnancy should receive acyclovir 400 mg po tid × 7–10 days or valacyclovir (Valtrex) 1 g po tid × 7–10 days (treatment can be extended in case of incomplete healing) and receive suppression with acyclovir 400 mg po tid or valacyclovir 500 mg po bid at 36 weeks until delivery.
• Women with reactivation (recurrent) symptomatic HSV should receive either acyclovir 400 mg po tid × five days or valacyclovir (Valtrex) 500 mg po bid × three days and receive suppression with acyclovir or valacyclovir at 36 weeks until delivery.
• Regarding mode of delivery:
  ◦ If any genital lesion suspicious for HSV is seen at the time of labor, a CD should be performed.
  ◦ Some clinicians advocate offering CD even for women with primary HSV within six weeks of delivery despite maternal therapy.
  ◦ An indicated CD for active genital HSV should be performed before membrane rupture or as soon as possible (ideally within 4–6 hours) following rupture of membranes. A CD may be of benefit regardless of duration of membrane rupture.
• Neonatal HSV causes disseminated or CNS disease (seizures, lethargy, irritability, tremors, poor feeding, temperature instability, and bulging fontanelles) in approximately 55% of cases. Up to 30% of infants will die and more than 50% can have neurologic damage despite antiviral therapy.

PATHOGENS
HSV-1 and HSV-2 are both DNA viruses.

INCIDENCE/EPIEMIOLOGY
Genital herpes is an infection (HSV-1 or HSV-2) causing ulceration in the genital area. In the United States, approximately 22% of pregnant women have IgG for HSV-2 [1] (prior infection) and are therefore infected with it with intermittent shedding from the vaginal mucosa; 63% are HSV-1 seropositive, 13% have both HSV-1 and HSV-2, and 28% are seronegative [1]. These numbers are similar to more recent data from a single institution [2]. Approximately 12% to 20% of couples in early pregnancy are discordant for HSV with the woman at risk to get primary infection from her partner [3]. About 2% to 4% of IgG-negative women seroconvert (acquire HSV) during pregnancy [4], and 75% to 90% of HSV-2 infected people are not aware of having the infection [3]. Approximately 0.1% to 1% of pregnant women carry HSV in their genitalia. The incidence of neonatal herpes is 1/60,000 live births annually in the United Kingdom and 12–60/100,000 live births annually in the United States [3].

RISK FACTORS/ASSOCIATIONS
Risk factors for maternal HSV infection are immunocompromise, other sexually transmitted diseases (STDs), and risk factors for STDs. Risk factors for neonatal HSV infection are HSV in the genital tract at the time of delivery, primary HSV infection, and invasive obstetrical procedures [3].
SYMPTOMS
About 70% of newly acquired HSV infections among pregnant women are asymptomatic, and 30% of women have clinical presentations that range from minimal lesions to widespread genital lesions associated with severe local pain, dysuria, sacral paresthesia, tender regional lymph node enlargement, fever, malaise, and headache (rarely meningitis).

CLASSIFICATION/PATHOPHYSIOLOGY
HSV infection causes intranuclear inclusion bodies and multinucleated giant cells. Overall, HSV-1 causes about 90% of oral infections, and 10% of genital infections, and HSV-2 causes 10% of oral and 90% of genital infections although among college-age populations, the majority of new cases of genital HSV are caused by HSV-1 [3]. Types of infection include the following:

Primary First Episode
Primary first episode infection is defined as herpes simplex virus confirmed in a person without prior HSV-1 or HSV-2 antibodies. About 2% to 4% of these seronegative women seroconvert to HSV-1 or HSV-2 during pregnancy (only 30% have symptoms—if symptoms are present, they are severe—and 50% have recurrence within 6 months), with no fetal consequences unless they convert shortly before labor and deliver vaginally; viral shedding is very high with primary infection with 50% to 80% of cases of neonatal HSV infection resulting from women who acquire genital HSV-1 or HSV-2 infection near term [5].

Nonprimary First Episode
Nonprimary first episode infection is HSV-2 confirmed in a person with prior findings of HSV-1 antibodies or vice versa. About 1.5% to 2% of HSV-1 IgG+ women seroconvert to HSV-2+ whereas the risk of conversion from HSV-2 IgG to HSV-1+ is <1%. If symptoms are present, they are usually milder than first episode primary infection.

Reactivation (Recurrent) Genital Herpes
Reactivation (recurrent) genital herpes is caused by reactivation of latent HSV, usually HSV-2. If symptoms are present, they last 7 to 10 days, are mild, with low viral load shedding for three to five days. Some clinicians distinguish another category within this one, called first-recognized recurrence, which is HSV-1 (or HSV-2) confirmed in a person with prior findings of HSV-1 (or HSV-2) antibodies, but this is not clinically different from reactivation disease.

More than 90% of HSV episodes in pregnancy are either recurrent or nonprimary first episode HSV. Intimate contact between a susceptible person (without antibodies against the virus) and an individual who is actively shedding the virus or with body fluids containing the virus is required for HSV infection to occur. Contact must involve mucous membranes or open or abraded skin. HSV invades and replicates in neurons as well as in epidermal and dermal cells. Virions travel from the initial site of infection on the skin or mucosa to the sensory dorsal root ganglion, where latency is established. Viral replication in the sensory ganglia leads to recurrent clinical outbreaks. These outbreaks can be induced by various stimuli, such as trauma, ultraviolet radiation, extremes in temperature, stress, immunosuppression, or hormonal fluctuations. Viral shedding, leading to possible transmission, occurs during primary infection, during subsequent recurrences, and during periods of asymptomatic viral shedding.

Maternal-Fetal Transmission
Maternal-fetal transmission of HSV usually occurs at delivery from contact with infected genital secretions. Women with a history of HSV can have viral shedding at the time of delivery. HSV-2 is detected in genital secretions at term by PCR assay in 8% to 15% of HSV-2 seropositive women, most of whom have no clinically detectable lesions at the time [5]. Vaginal delivery during first episode primary infection is associated with a 25% to 50% incidence of neonatal HSV infection. Vaginal delivery during recurrent infection is associated with a <1% incidence of neonatal HSV infection [3]. The infant of the mother with primary HSV in the third trimester lacks the protection of transplacental type-specific antibodies (which take 6 to 12 weeks to fully protect the infant) and is at risk of exposure during delivery when viral shedding could be of greatest load. The major sites of intrapartum viral entry are the neonatal eyes, nasopharynx, or a break in skin.

Transplacental infection is rare. First-episode primary infection during pregnancy can lead to microcephaly, ventriculomegaly, spasticity, echogenic bowel, hepatosplenomegaly, and flexed extremities [6].

COMPLICATIONS
In the mother, primary infection can lead to severe symptoms and occasionally to disseminated disease, hepatitis, and encephalitis.

Factors that influence the risk of fetal infection include primary maternal infection, gestational age, delivery mode, status of membranes, and maternal antibodies. Primary, rather than recurrent genital HSV, is the main risk factor for neonatal HSV. In the first episode, if genital herpes lesions are present at the time of delivery and the baby is delivered vaginally, the risk of neonatal herpes is 25% to 50%, calculated in different studies. The risk of neonatal infection in women with established infection and recurrence at term is <1% [5]. The risk of neonatal infection from postnatal transmission without prevention is 15% [7]. Neonatal HSV causes disseminated or CNS disease (seizures, lethargy, irritability, tremors, poor feeding, temperature instability, and bulging fontanelles) in approximately 55% of cases. Up to 30% of infants will die and more than 50% can have neurologic damage despite antiviral therapy [5]. Prenatal ultrasonography can detect microcephaly, hydrocephaly, intracranial calcification, and placental calcifications that result from a chronic fetal infection [6].

PREGNANCY MANAGEMENT
Pregnancy Considerations
The course of HSV infection in pregnancy is similar to that in nonpregnant women.

Counseling/Prognosis
Prevention, natural history, incidence of vertical transmission and sequelae, prognosis, and therapeutic options should all
be reviewed with the pregnant woman with maternal HSV infection, especially if primary.

Prevention
Prevention of maternal infection includes avoidance of sexual contact with infected individuals. A preventive strategy for maternal infection involving universal screening has been proposed (Figure 50.1) [8]. Condoms can usually prevent infection from infected male partners if the condom covers the lesion(s). For prevention of fetal/neonatal infection, avoidance of vaginal delivery at times of primary infection is most important. If any genital lesion suspicious for HSV is seen at time of labor, a CD should be performed. About 46% of these lesions test positive by PCR. Clinical diagnosis by visual exam fails to identify all women with HSV in their genital secretions [9]. No scalp electrode, forceps, or vacuum should be used if viral shedding is possible. Prevention of neonatal infection is critical as neonatal treatment is poorly effective at avoiding long-term CNS complications (see also section titled “Therapy”).

Screening
Universal screening is not generally offered to pregnant women but has been recently proposed (Figure 50.1). There has been no evidence that screening women to identify pregnancies at risk of new infections will effectively decrease incidence of infection at term as such a study would require thousands of women. Screening to identify pregnant women with asymptomatic herpes infections may have no value at present without any known safe and effective interventions to prevent an already unlikely neonatal transmission. All pregnant women should be asked about their own and their partner’s histories of genital (and oral) herpes and examined for evidence of active herpes at delivery. Asymptomatic pregnant women with positive partners as well as HIV-positive pregnant women should be offered type-specific serologic testing.

Workup/Diagnosis
Diagnosis of genital herpes relies on laboratory confirmation with HSV culture or PCR assay of genital lesions (typed to determine whether HSV-1 or HSV-2 is the cause of the infection). Type-specific (HSV-1 and HSV-2) glycoprotein G-based serologic testing should also be sent. PCR assays are more sensitive and are now preferred, but lack of HSV detection by PCR does not indicate lack of HSV infection because viral shedding is intermittent. HSV culture should be done within 48 to 72 hours of appearance of the lesion. If the serology type-specific result is discrepant from the culture or PCR result, a new infection is diagnosed [3]. If a new infection is suspected and the virus is not isolated from the lesion, serologic testing should be repeated in six weeks. HSV antibodies appear during the first weeks after infection, and persist for life [8]. Tzanck smear (Wright’s stain with material from the vesicle) is diagnostic with multinucleated giant cells and viral inclusions. An option exists for rapid HSV PCR at the time of delivery [10], but until this has been validated by prospective trials, it is not currently recommended.

Therapy
Antiviral Drugs
Acyclovir and the other HSV antivirals have, as a mechanism of action, the specific inhibition of viral thymidine kinase [11]. They cross the placenta but do not accumulate in the fetus. All these antivirals are safe for the fetus (category B) as exposure to acyclovir and valacyclovir do not appear to increase the overall risk of birth defects [12], although recent data raises the possibility of an association with first trimester exposure and gastroschisis [13].

Figure 50.1 Testing and counseling women regarding HSV. Abbreviations: AROM, artificial rupture of membranes; HSV, herpes simplex virus; IgG, immunoglobulin G; IgM, immunoglobulin M. (Adapted from Brown ZA, Gardella C, Wald A et al. Am Coll Obstet Gynecol, 106, 845–56, 2005.)
Valacyclovir (Valtrex) is the prodrug of acyclovir and requires hepatic metabolism to become active. As for famciclovir, valacyclovir has better absorption, longer half-life, and decreased duration of pain and shedding compared to acyclovir.

Famciclovir is the prodrug of penciclovir and also requires hepatic metabolism to become active. As there are very limited studies in pregnant women taking famciclovir, acyclovir and valacyclovir are preferred.

Trials in nonpregnant adults show no differences in outcomes with any of these drugs for primary HSV.

Primary or First Episode HSV
Women with primary or first-episode genital HSV in pregnancy should be treated with the following:

- Analgesia (topical and systemic)
- Hygienic support to avoid secondary yeast and bacterial infection
- Antiviral therapy (hastens lesion healing and decreases viral shedding) with either of the following:
  - Acyclovir 400 mg po tid × 7–10 days
  - Valacyclovir (Valtrex) 1 g po bid × 7–10 days

Either regimen duration may be extended if healing is incomplete after 10 days.

These women should receive suppression with acyclovir 400 mg po tid or valacyclovir 500 mg po bid at 36 weeks until delivery. Suppression decreases the incidence of recurrent genital lesions at term, viral shedding, and therefore the need for CD. There is insufficient evidence to justify suppression based on neonatal HSV because this outcome is so rare. It is worth noting that suppression does not always eliminate all viral shedding as illustrated by a case series of eight neonates infected with HSV, in which five of the mothers were on suppressive therapy at the time of delivery [14].

Complicated HSV Infection
Women with disseminated genital HSV, pneumonitis, hepatitis, or CNS complications should receive the following:

- IV acyclovir 5 to 10 mg/kg body weight q8h until clinical improvement, followed by oral antiviral therapy for 10 days of total therapy

History of HSV
Women with a history of HSV with reactivation (recurrent) symptomatic HSV during pregnancy should be treated with the following:

- Analgesia (topical and systemic) as needed
- Hygienic support to avoid secondary yeast and bacterial infection as needed
- Antiviral therapy (hastens lesion healing, and decreases viral shedding) with either of the following:
  - Acyclovir 400 mg po tid × five days
  - Valacyclovir (Valtrex) 500 mg po bid × three days, or 1 g po qd for five days

These women should receive suppression (see dosages above) with acyclovir or valacyclovir at 36 weeks until delivery or starting even earlier if there are frequent recurrent episodes. In women with recurrent genital herpes, antiviral suppressive medication initiated from 36 weeks until delivery reduces viral shedding and recurrences at delivery and reduces the need for CD. There is insufficient evidence, given the rarity of this outcome, to assess if antiviral prophylaxis reduces the incidence of neonatal HSV [15].

There is insufficient evidence to assess suppression in women with a history of genital HSV and no recurrence during pregnancy, but suppression might be a reasonable option after counseling [8]. Four out of seven RCTs evaluating suppression included women with a history of genital HSV but not necessarily a recurrence during the index pregnancy [15].

Mode of Delivery
- With active genital lesions or prodromal symptoms of HSV (either primary or reactivation), especially in women presenting with first episode genital herpes lesions at the time of delivery, cesarean section is recommended [11]. Some clinicians advocate offering CD even for women with primary HSV within six weeks of delivery, despite maternal therapy [3].
- For an indicated CD, it should be performed before membrane rupture or as soon as possible (ideally within 4–6 hours) following rupture of membranes. A CD may be of benefit regardless of duration of membrane rupture.
- A reactivation/recurrent episode of genital herpes occurring during pregnancy is not an indication for delivery by cesarean section. In women with a history of genital HSV but without active genital lesions or prodromal symptoms at the time of labor, CD is not indicated.

Postpartum/Neonate
Seventy percent of mothers of HSV-infected neonates are asymptomatic. Neonates with infection manifest symptoms at the end of the first week of life with skin lesions, cough, tachypnea, cyanosis, jaundice, seizures, and disseminated intravascular coagulation (DIC). The classic triad is skin lesions, chorioretinitis, and CNS abnormalities. Severe HSV neonatal infection can lead to a 30% incidence of death and more than 50% incidence of mental problems/neurologic damage in survivors despite antiviral therapy [5].

A neonate born to a mother with an active HSV lesion requires contact precautions, which should be maintained until all cultures are finalized. This information must be communicated with all members of the health care team, including obstetricians, pediatricians, and nurses. Mothers with HSV at the time of delivery should wash their hands and cover any lesions, but can handle their neonate. Acyclovir is compatible with breast-feeding.

REFERENCES
Varicella
Timothy J. Rafael

KEY POINTS
• As about 95% of pregnant women are immune (VZV IgG+) to varicella, primary maternal varicella zoster virus (VZV) infection (chickenpox) occurs in about 0.5–3/1000 pregnancies.
• Pneumonia can occur in up to 10% of pregnant women with chickenpox.
• Congenital varicella syndrome (CVS) occurs in 0.4% to 2% of all maternal infections, usually if maternal VZV infection occurs at <20 weeks of gestation.
• CVS includes congenital limb hypoplasia, dermalomal skin scarring, intrauterine growth restriction (IUGR), and occasionally damage to the eyes (chorioretinitis, cataracts) and central nervous system (microcephaly, cortical atrophy, leading to mental retardation).
• All pregnant (and reproductive-age) women should be asked at their first prenatal visit if they have had a chickenpox infection. All women who did not have chickenpox in the past, are unsure about their history, or had only one dose of the varicella vaccine, should have VZV IgG serology. VZV IgG-negative women should receive the vaccine postpartum.
• Diagnosis of maternal chickenpox is usually made based on clinical findings alone, and confirmed by VZV IgM.
• Ultrasound can help in the diagnosis and estimation of the probability of CVS. At least five weeks should be allowed between the onset of maternal symptoms and fetal ultrasound. Fetal infection can be diagnosed by VZV DNA in amniotic fluid, but this does not predict risk of CVS.
• VZV-seronegative pregnant women exposed to VZV should receive VZV IgG (also known as VariZIG™).
• Pregnant women who develop chickenpox should receive oral (or intravenous [IV] if severe) acyclovir within 24 hours of rash and should avoid contact with susceptible individuals, such as other pregnant women or children. Varicella zoster immune globulin (VariZIG™) has no therapeutic effect once chickenpox has developed.
• Delivery should be delayed until five days after the onset of maternal illness to allow for passive transfer of maternal IgG. Neonates born to women who develop chickenpox between five days before and two days after delivery should receive VZV IgG. If neonatal infection occurs, the neonate should receive acyclovir.
• Pregnant women who develop pulmonary chickenpox should be immediately hospitalized in isolation and should receive IV acyclovir.
• Maternal shingles (Herpes Zoster) is not a risk for the infant who is protected from passively acquired maternal antibodies.
• Nonimmune women should be offered postpartum varicella vaccination. The vaccine is considered safe in breast-feeding women. Conception should be delayed until one month after the VZV vaccine was given (live attenuated vaccine).

PATHOGEN
VZV is a DNA virus of the herpes family.

INCIDENCE/Epidemiology
As about 95% of pregnant women are immune (VZV IgG+) to varicella, primary maternal VZV infection (commonly called chickenpox or VZD) is uncommon and estimated to complicate about 0.5–3/1000 pregnancies. Women from tropical areas are more susceptible (50% immunity only) to the development of chickenpox. VZV vaccine was licensed in 1995 and decreased the incidence of disease by 85% to 90% in the decade following licensure [1].

RISK FACTORS/ASSOCIATIONS
Maternal varicella infection is associated with contact with infected individuals, which usually are children if not immunized. Risk factors for varicella pneumonia are cigarette smoking, >100 skin lesions, advanced gestational age, history of chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD), immunosuppression, and household contact.

SYMPTOMS
Pruritic rash with maculopapular skin lesions in crops, which become vesicles and pustules and later crust over, along with fever and malaise.

PATHOPHYSIOLOGY
VZV is highly contagious and transmitted by respiratory droplets and direct personal contact with vesicle fluid or indirectly via fomites. The incubation period is about 15 (10–21) days. The disease is infectious 48 hours before the rash appears and continues to be infectious until the vesicles crust over (Figure 51.1). The rash lasts 7 to 10 days. Chickenpox (or primary VZV infection) is a common childhood disease that usually causes a mild infection, leading to the 90% seropositivity of pregnant women. After the primary infection, the virus remains dormant in sensory nerve root ganglia and can be reactivated to cause a vesicular erythematous skin rash known as herpes zoster (commonly called shingles).

MATERNAL-FETAL TRANSMISSION
Primary maternal infection leads to an about 8% vertical transmission, causing primary fetal infection. Of these,
about 10% develop CVS (0.4%–2% of all maternal infections) usually if maternal VZV occurs <20 weeks of gestation [2].

**COMPLICATIONS**

**Maternal**

Although varicella infection is much less common in adults than in children, in adults it is more often associated with pneumonia, hepatitis, and encephalitis. Historically pneumonia can occur in up to 5% to 10% of pregnant women with chickenpox, and the severity seems increased in later gestation. More recent data points to a lower incidence of 2.5% for varicella pneumonia during pregnancy [3]. Pulmonary symptoms start two to six days after the rash, with a mild cough leading to hemoptysis, chest pain, dyspnea, and cyanosis. The mortality rate with treatment for varicella pneumonia is now <1%.

**Fetal**

Sequelae are dependent on fetal age at the time of infection. In up to 98% of cases of maternal infection, the fetus remains healthy without clinical signs of illness, but when infection occurs, it can result in CVS, neonatal varicella, or asymptomatic seroconversion.

The overall rate for CVS when maternal infection occurs in the first 20 weeks of gestation has been demonstrated to be about 0.4% to 2% [1,2,4–6]. CVS is characterized by congenital limb hypoplasia, dermatomal skin scarring, rudimentary digits, IUGR, and occasionally damage to the eyes (chorioretinitis, cataracts) and central nervous system (microcephaly, cortical atrophy, leading to neurodevelopmental delay). It is hypothesized that CVS may reflect disseminated infection in utero or consequences of failure of virus–host interaction to result in establishment of latency as normally occurs in postnatal VZV infection [1]. Prenatal ultrasound findings can include limb deformity, microcephaly, hydrocephalus, soft tissue calcification, and IUGR [7].

CVS with maternal infection >20 weeks is very rare as it has only been reported in <10 case reports (<1/1000 risk) [4]. Maternal infection after 20 weeks and up to 36 weeks may present as shingles in the first few years of infant life as a reactivation of the virus after a primary infection in utero.

If maternal infection occurs one to four weeks before delivery, up to 50% of babies are infected, and up to 23% of these develop clinical varicella. Severe chickenpox occurs more often if the infant is born within seven days of onset of the mother’s rash when cord blood VZV IgG is low. Both intrauterine and peripartum VZV infection predispose to development of childhood zoster. Historically, neonates born to mothers who contract chickenpox between five days before delivery and two days after delivery have a 17% to 30% chance of developing neonatal varicella [8]. Before VZV immunoglobulin was available, the risk of death among these neonates was as high as 31% with current rates decreasing to 7% when the use of varicella immunoglobulin was introduced and neonatal intensive care improved [1]. Since the advent of routine varicella vaccination, the overall incidences of both CVS and neonatal varicella appear to be further decreasing [9]. There are no fetal consequences for herpes zoster because the viral load is very low, and the mother has already VZV IgGs that cross the placenta and protect the fetus.

**PREGNANCY MANAGEMENT**

**Pregnancy Considerations**

Chickenpox is a more severe disease in the adult than in the child. In pregnant women, frequency of VZV, frequency of pneumonia, and mortality are not increased compared to nonpregnant adults. Pneumonia may be more severe in pregnant women with up to an overall 5% risk of maternal death even with therapy although a more recent study reported no maternal deaths among 23 cases of VZV pneumonia diagnosed during pregnancy [3].

**Counseling**

Natural history, incidence of vertical transmission and sequelae (mostly occurring if maternal infection occurs <20 weeks), prognosis, and therapeutic options should all be reviewed with the pregnant woman with primary maternal VZV infection (Table 51.1).

**Prevention**

VZV-seronegative pregnant women should avoid exposure to individuals with chickenpox. A live attenuated varicella vaccine (Varivax®, Merck, New Jersey) has demonstrated to be safe in preventing chickenpox in adults. In the United States and in some European countries, seronegative women presenting for preconception counseling or women undergoing infertility treatment may be offered vaccination. The vaccine is not available in the United Kingdom for these indications. Varicella vaccine is contraindicated in pregnant women. If a woman accidentally receives VZV vaccine within a month of conception or in pregnancy, the incidence of fetal infection and complications does not appear to be increased from baseline, and termination should not be recommended. In one registry, among 131 live births to VZV-seronegative women, there was no evidence of CVS, and the major birth defect rate was not statistically increased [10]. Nonimmune health workers exposed to VZV should minimize patient contact from days 8 to 21 post contact.
Table 51.1 Counseling Advice for Pregnant Women at Risk

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Maternal Rash Appears</th>
<th>Risk for Varicella Embryopathy</th>
<th>Counseling Advice</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>First 20 wks</td>
<td>0.5% to 2% above the baseline risk</td>
<td>VZV IgG ASAP or at most within 10 days after contact if the woman is seronegative. Ultrasound 5 wks after maternal rash appears to detect defects.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21–28 wks</td>
<td>Rare</td>
<td>VZV IgG ASAP or at most within 10 days after contact if the woman is seronegative. Ultrasound 5 wks after maternal rash appears to detect defects.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>After 28 wks</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>VZV IgG ASAP, or at most within 10 days after contact if the woman is seronegative to prevent varicella complications. Explain baseline risk.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Five days before or two days after birth</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>If possible, delay the delivery until 5–7 days after the onset of maternal rash. Administer VZV IgG to neonate if exposed. IV Acyclovir is warranted for severe cases. IV Acyclovir 10–15 mg/kg every 8 hr for 5–10 days and antibiotics as needed.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Maternal varicella pneumonia

Blood gas, mechanical ventilation, and supportive therapy as needed.

Abbreviations: ASAP, as soon as possible; VZV, varicella zoster virus.

Screening
Routine serologic screening of all pregnant women is currently not recommended. All pregnant (and preconception reproductive-age) women should be asked at the first prenatal visit if they have had a prior chickenpox infection. Over 97% of women who report a prior varicella infection with a typical presentation have VZV IgG and are therefore immune. All women who did not have chickenpox in the past, are unsure about their history, or had only one dose of the varicella vaccine, should have VZV IgG serology. In the United States, of women who are uncertain or give negative histories, approximately 80% to 90% have VZV IgG [11]. If testing is done in the preconception period, women can be offered two doses of the varicella vaccine at least one month apart. Pregnancy should be delayed one month after vaccination. Based on a decision model, the above prenatal screening (selective serotesting) with postpartum vaccination of susceptibles would seem cost-effective [12].

Workup/Diagnosis
Diagnosis of maternal chickenpox is usually made based on clinical findings alone. Diagnosis can be confirmed by VZV IgM newly positive by ELISA (enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay) or by VZV antigen (Ag) in skin/vesicular lesions by immunofluorescence antibody (Ab) to membrane Ag. Fetal infection can be diagnosed by VZV DNA detected by polymerase chain reaction (PCR) in amniotic fluid, but its presence has a poor predictive value for both fetal disease and disease severity [1]. The presence of fetal varicella-specific IgM, which remains in the blood for four to five weeks, is diagnostic [13]. Ultrasound can help in diagnosis and estimation of probability of CVS. At least five weeks should be allowed between the onset of maternal symptoms and fetal ultrasound to avoid false negative results. Initial PCR testing of amniotic fluid at 17 to 21 weeks may be negative with normal ultrasound findings, suggesting a low risk of CVS. Positive PCR at 17 to 21 weeks with normal ultrasound should lead to a repeat ultrasound at 22 to 26 weeks. A normal ultrasound at that stage makes CVS very unlikely. In contrast, an abnormal ultrasound suggests a high likelihood of CVS [14,15].

Therapy

Exposure

• VZV-seronegative pregnant women exposed to VZV should receive VZV IgG (VariZIG™) ideally as soon as possible (Table 51.1) and within 96 hours (4 days) of exposure up to a period of 10 days postexposure. In 2012, the Food and Drug Administration approved VariZIG™, a varicella zoster immune globulin preparation for use in the United States for postexposure prophylaxis for individuals at high risk for severe disease and subsequently extended the period for administration from 4 days to 10 days [16]. VariZIG can be obtained 24 hours a day from the sole authorized U.S. distributor (FFF Enterprises, Temecula, California, 1-800-843-7477 or online at http://www.fffenterprises.com). The recommended dose is 125 units/10 kg of body weight up to a maximum of 625 units IM (five vials) [17]. This may not prevent but may attenuate symptoms up to 10 days after exposure. It probably does not affect fetal infection, and it is expensive.

Chickenpox

• Pregnant women who develop chickenpox should receive oral acyclovir within 24 hours of rash. Oral acyclovir (800 mg, 5 times daily for 7 days) reduces the duration of fever and symptoms of varicella infection in immunocompetent adults if commenced within 24 hours of developing the onset of rash [18]. Administration of acyclovir does not appear to be teratogenic. Acyclovir is prescribed to treat extensive varicella at the high dose of 15 mg/kg of body weight or 500 mg/m² IV every 8 hours. Major side effects often include local tissue irritation, transient elevation of hepatic transaminases, CNS toxicity, and renal dysfunction. Transplacental passage of acyclovir is prompt and therapeutic levels reach the
placenta and fetal blood [13]. There is no information about whether giving acyclovir or valacyclovir to pregnant women with varicella reduces the already low risk for CVS [1].

- Pregnant women who develop chickenpox should avoid contact with susceptible individuals, such as other pregnant women or children.
- Pregnant women who develop chickenpox should undergo symptomatic treatment and maintain hygiene to avoid bacterial superinfection.
- VZV IgG has no therapeutic effect once chickenpox has developed.
- If maternal infection occurs at term, there is a significant risk of varicella in the newborn. Delivery should be delayed until five days after the onset of maternal illness to allow for passive transfer of maternal IgG. Infants delivered when maternal symptoms develop five days prior to two days after delivery are at 17% to 30% risk of getting neonatal varicella, and of these, about 7% can die. Neonates born to women who develop chickenpox between five days before and two days after delivery should receive VZV IgG. If neonatal infection occurs, the neonate should receive acyclovir.
- If there is neonatal exposure in the first seven days of life (e.g., from an infected sibling), no intervention is required if the mother is immune; however, the neonate should be given VZV IgG if the mother is not immune to varicella. Neonates who develop chickenpox in the first 14 days of life should receive IV acyclovir.
- Pregnant women who develop pulmonary chickenpox should be immediately hospitalized in isolation. They should receive IV acyclovir 10 to 15 mg/kg every 8 hours × 7 days within 72 hours of symptoms (decreases severity and mortality).

Maternal Shingles (Herpes Zoster)
Despite maternal varicella being associated with the aforementioned fetal/neonatal risks, congenital varicella has never been documented in association with maternal herpes zoster infection. Should treatment be deemed necessary for zoster during pregnancy (e.g., moderate to severe rash, acute neuritis), PO acyclovir (800 mg 5 times daily for 7–10 days) or valacyclovir (1000 mg 3 times daily for 7 days) can be used [19]. Maternal shingles is not a risk for the infant who is protected from passively acquired maternal antibodies [5].

Nonimmune Women
Nonimmune women should be offered postpartum varicella vaccination (two doses, one month apart). The vaccine is considered safe in breast-feeding women. Conception should be delayed until one month after the VZV vaccine was given (live attenuated vaccine).

Clinical Neonatal Findings of CVS [15]
- Skin scarring in a dermatomal distribution, 73%
- Neurological abnormalities (microcephaly, cortical atrophy, neurodevelopmental delay), 62%
- Eye defects (microphthalmia, chorioretinitis), 52%
- Hypoplasia of the limbs, 46%
- Muscle hypoplasia, 20%
- Gastrointestinal abnormalities, 19%
- Genitourinary abnormalities, 12%
- Internal organs effects, 13%
- Developmental delay, 12%

REFERENCES
Fetal and neonatal alloimmune thrombocytopenia

Kelly M. Orzechowski

KEY POINTS

• Fetal and neonatal alloimmune thrombocytopenia (FNAIT) is a disorder resulting in fetal platelet destruction (thrombocytopenia) from maternal antibodies against fetal human platelet antigens (HPAs) inherited from the father.

• Diagnosis is usually made retrospectively after a first affected infant.

• The most serious complication is the 10%–30% risk of intracranial hemorrhage, which usually occurs antepartum in the third trimester.

• The neonatal mortality from intracranial hemorrhage (ICH) is 5% to 13%.

• Only HPA-1a antigen and past history of ICH predict a more severe thrombocytopenia.

• Goal of management is to prevent ICH in the fetus and neonate. Keeping fetal/neonatal platelets >20,000/μL achieves this goal.

• Routine universal maternal screening is not cost-effective and is not recommended.

• Intravenous immunoglobulin (IVIG) is associated with a 75% response rate and a very rare risk of ICH with half of the nonresponders showing improvement with the addition of a high dose of prednisone.

• Fetal blood sampling (FBS) with or without platelet transfusion is associated with a 1% to 2% risk of fetal loss per procedure with a cumulative pregnancy loss rate of 5%–10%.

• Management is usually based on IVIG therapy with FBS as needed as determined by prior history of ICH and associated risk (Figure 52.1).

DEFINITION

Fetal and neonatal alloimmune thrombocytopenia (FNAIT) is fetal/neonatal thrombocytopenia due to platelet destruction from maternal antibodies against fetal human platelet antigens (HPAs) inherited from the father. It is also called neonatal alloimmune thrombocytopenia (NAIT), alloimmune thrombocytopenia (AIT), or fetal maternal alloimmune thrombocytopenia (FMAIT).

EPIDEMIOLOGY/INCIDENCE

1/1000 to 1/1500 births [1]. NAIT is the most common reason for severe thrombocytopenia and/or ICH in term newborn.

ETIOLOGY/BASIC PATHOPHYSIOLOGY

The fetus inherits paternal human platelet antigens (HPAs) that are not present on maternal platelets. Maternally produced anti-HPA IgG antibodies can cross the placenta, resulting in destruction of fetal platelets and thrombocytopenia.

Maternal platelet count and function is normal (although 10% of women with NAIT may have gestational thrombocytopenia). Most maternal-fetal HPA incompatibilities will not become sensitized [1].

• FNAIT is similar to RBC Rh disease:
  • Like red blood cells, platelets have specific surface proteins called antigens.
  • Fetus inherits paternal antigens that the mother lacks (platelet antigen incompatibility).
  • Mother develops antibodies (becomes sensitized) to fetal platelet antigens during pregnancy.
  • Maternal IgG antiplatelet antibodies cross the placenta and coat fetal platelets, resulting in sequestration and destruction of platelets in the fetal reticuloendothelial system.

• FNAIT differs from Rh disease:
  • Antiplatelet IgG production can occur in first pregnancy.
  • First born children are often affected because antiplatelet IgG production can occur in a first pregnancy; nulliparous women account for 20%–60% of cases.
  • Maternal antibody titers do not predict pregnancy outcome.

GENETICS/INHERITANCE

• HPA-1b is due to a single base pair change of cytosine to thymine at position 196 (proline to leucine) in platelet glycoprotein IIIa [2].
• Platelet antigens are inherited in the fetus in an autosomal codominant fashion.

CLASSIFICATION

Alloantigens are antigens present in the majority of individuals in a population but absent in a some individuals. There are 24 recognized platelet-specific alloantigens numbered in the order in which they were discovered.

• 12 of the platelet alloantigens are grouped into biallelic systems (HPA 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 15), which are further divided into subcategories “a” for high frequency and “b” for low frequency. The old and new nomenclature is described in Table 52.1.
  • 97%–98% of Caucasian women express HPA-1a: 68% are homozygotes (HPA-1a1a), and 29% are heterozygotes (HPA-1a/HPA-1b)
  • Only 2% of Caucasian women are HPA-1a negative (HPA-1b/1b) [3].
  • Only 10% of HPA-1a negative pregnant women develop anti-HPA-1a IgG antibodies [3].
Figure 52.1 Suggested antenatal management for FNAIT. Abbreviations: FBS, fetal blood sampling; fetal and neonatal alloimmune thrombocytopenia; ICH, intracranial hemorrhage; IVIG, intravenous immunoglobulin therapy; EGA, estimated gestational age. (Adapted from Pacheco LD, Berkowitz RL, Moise KJ. Obstet Gynecol, 118, 1157–63, 2011.)
Rarely, alloantibodies may also be made against human leukocyte antigens (HLAs).

- Human leukocyte antigens (HLAs) are proteins located on white blood cells and other tissues, including platelets.
- There are three HLA groups (HLA-A, HLA-B, and HLA-DR), each with many different proteins designated numerically (e.g., HLA-A1, HLA-A2, etc.).
- HLA is inherited as a “set” of the three HLA groups: A, B, DR.
- Each HLA set is a haplotype, and a haplotype is inherited from each parent.

Of HPA-1a negative pregnant women who develop anti-HPA-1a IgG antibodies, ~1/3 are positive for the HLA-DR antigen B3*0101 (which is linked to HPA-1a). These women are at high risk to become immunized against HPA-1a when they carry an HPA-1a positive fetus [3].

The frequency of HPAs varies worldwide. In the Asian populations, HPA-5b incompatibility is the most common cause of FNAIT.

### NATURAL HISTORY/COMPLICATIONS

The natural history of FNAIT ranges from mild asymptomatic fetal/neonatal thrombocytopenia to severe thrombocytopenia leading to intracranial hemorrhage with potentially severe perinatal morbidity and mortality.

- 90% affected neonates have diffuse petechiae.
- 10% to 30% ICH [4,5].
  - ~50% occur antenatally, most often in the third trimester at around 30 to 35 weeks, but as early as 20 weeks.
  - Mostly intraparenchymal, leading to encephalomalacia.
  - May result in porencephalic cysts (which may be seen by ultrasound).
  - Sometimes intraventricular hemorrhage (IVH), leading to arachnoiditis +/- hydrocephalus.
- 5% to 13% neonatal mortality.
- First case in family usually detected shortly after birth (due to petechiae, bleeding, or incidentally).

### DIAGNOSIS

The diagnosis is most often made retrospectively after delivery of an infant with thrombocytopenia or fetal/neonatal ICH. Occasionally FNAIT may be diagnosed via family history if the mother’s sister had an affected child or if prenatal screening was performed.

#### Indications for Testing

- Neonate with petechiae and ecchymosis, unexplained thrombocytopenia.
- Fetus with unexplained ICH, hydrocephalus, or porencephalic cyst.
- Woman incidentally found to be HPA-1a negative.
- Family history of NAIT.

#### Diagnostic Criteria: Fetal or neonatal thrombocytopenia (<150,000 platelets/μL) plus identification of a paternal, fetal, or neonatal platelet antigen with identification of maternal antibodies to that specific antigen.

- **Serologic Testing**
  - Test parents in reference laboratory (e.g., Blood Center of Southeastern Wisconsin).
  - **Initial testing:** Maternal platelet antibody.
    - If maternal antibody positive, perform paternal and maternal human platelet antigen testing simultaneously.
    - Reference laboratories vary in the number of platelet alloantigens screened. They typically test for HPA-1a and b, 3a and b, 4a and b, and 5a and b but cannot test for every platelet antigen.

Therefore, diagnosis is made if mother is antibody positive (specific to father and fetal platelet antigen) and antigen negative.

The father’s antigen zygosity determines the risk of recurrence in subsequent pregnancies: 100% if father is homozygous, 50% if heterozygous. This documentation of paternal, maternal, and neonatal serologic diagnosis should be always reviewed to guide management in the next pregnancy.

### PREVENTION AND SCREENING

Some have advocated routine universal maternal serologic screening for platelet antigens to identify pregnancies at risk.
for FNAIT before it happens in the first pregnancy without warning [6]. However, screening for HPA-1a alloimmunization detects about two cases in every 1000 pregnancies. Severe NAIT occurs in about 31% of these immunized pregnancies, and perinatal ICH in about 10% of pregnancies with severe NAIT. Therefore, nearly 15,000 pregnancies would need to be screened to identify one case of ICH for possible prevention [7].

Rationale Against Routine Maternal Serologic Screening

- 25% of FNAIT is NOT caused by the most common antigen.
- Maternal immune response is influenced by other factors (e.g., HLA type).
- Only a minority of infants of mothers negative for platelet antigen will develop significant thrombocytopenia.
- Three are many false negatives and false positives.
- No major organizations consider maternal HPA-1a typing an appropriate routine prenatal screening test.
- Screening by fetal ultrasound is not useful because fetal thrombocytopenia cannot be detected by ultrasound, and when it is so severe as to cause fetal ICH, it is too late for effective intervention.
- Screening is not cost-effective, given the low prevalence of NAIT (1/1000 births) and the inability to predict the risk of fetal ICH in pregnancies at risk but with no history of a previously affected neonate.
- A prospective epidemiologic study estimated that it would cost approximately $100,000 to detect one severe case of NAIT and approximately $2,000,000 to prevent a case of intracranial hemorrhage, assuming that early detection allowed successful intervention [8].

Since there is no consensus regarding utility of screening unaffected women for alloimmune antiplatelet antibodies, active management of the disease is usually confined to women who have had a previously affected fetus.

- Clinical history of affected sibling is the best indicator of risk in current/future pregnancy.
- Recurrence in subsequent pregnancy is generally of greater severity, but newer data challenges this concept. In a recent study, neonatal platelet counts in two of three subsequent pregnancies were not worse than the index pregnancy in the absence of treatment [9]. Thus, studies of increased platelets in subsequent pregnancies may not necessarily always be due to treatment effect. These findings support the current management strategies, which favor less invasive treatments.
- There is no correlation between platelet count at cordocentesis and degree of thrombocytopenia in a previously affected infant. How severe NAIT was in the last pregnancy is not as predictive.
- Only HPA-1a alloimmunization and past history of ICH predict a more severe thrombocytopenia.
- Prior ICH: greatest risk, only true predictor of severity.
- Fetal platelets in first-monitored pregnancy: 70% <50,000/μL at first percutaneous umbilical blood sampling (PUBS); 50% <20,000/μL, 50% <24 weeks. If the count is >50,000/μL on first PUBS, it is still possible that it will decrease later (in HPA-1a, fetal platelets decrease as much as about 23,000/μL/week) [2].
- The father’s antigen zygosity and neonatal antigen determines the risk of recurrence in subsequent pregnancies: 100% if father is homozygous, 50% if heterozygous.

**MANAGEMENT**

Optimal management of NAIT has not been determined, and no one therapy is proven to be 100% effective [5,10]. Studies on which to base treatment are largely observational or small RCTs due to the low incidence of FNAIT. There are some RCTs and several case series that can help guide management. The current preferred approach recommends risk-stratified management with IVIG and prednisone without FBS [5]. This is an empiric approach, which tries to avoid FBS, which is associated with significant complications and pregnancy loss. However, the debate between empiric treatment and treatment guided by measurement of the fetal platelet count using FBS is not yet resolved. Either approach is acceptable until the issue is resolved by further clinical trials.

**Principles**

- **Goal:** prevent hemorrhage, specifically ICH, in fetus and neonate.
- **ICH** is rare with platelets >20,000/μL; therefore, the goal is to keep platelets >20,000/μL. The normal platelet count of a fetus ≥18 weeks is ≥150,000/μL, as in an adult.
- **FBS** with direct measurement of fetal platelet count is the only method to assess disease severity, but given its risks, it’s currently rarely used.

There are two antenatal treatment options:

1. *Intravenous immunoglobulin* with or without corticosteroids (preferred option) (Figure 52.1).
   - >$1000/dose.
   - Most common initial therapy in North America.
   - Pooled blood product, but risks of hepatitis and HIV transmission are minuscule (donor screening and viral inactivation procedures decrease risk).
   - Usually given as *weekly infusion* over 6 to 12 hours.
   - IVIG has unclear mechanism of action, but is theorized to work via the following:
     - Fc-receptor saturation in the placenta with a reduction of antibody transfer across the placenta (most probable main mechanism).
     - Fc-receptor blockade on macrophages leading to inhibition of uptake of the antibody-coated platelets by fetal macrophages. Endothelial stabilization prevents damage by maternal platelet antibodies (low platelets not a cause of ICH).
     - Suppression of maternal IgG antibody production.
   - IVIG can not only prevent/improve thrombocytopenia in the majority of cases, but it also prevents ICH. There are only *very rare reports of IVIG failures to prevent ICH* [11].
   - Side effects: headaches and febrile reactions (pretreat with benadryl and acetaminophen).
   - Only way to monitor efficacy of IVIG treatment is via FBS.
   - 75% respond to weekly IVIG; half of the nonresponders improve with the addition of high-dose prednisone (1 mg/kg = 60 mg/day) [12]. Dexamethasone has been associated with oligohydramnios and FGR [12].
   - IVIG is administered with or without steroid administration. Side effects of maternal steroid administration include osteoporosis, impaired glucose tolerance and gestational diabetes, depressed immunity, mood swings, and gastrointestinal irritation.
2. Repeated intrauterine transfusion of antigen-compatible platelets via FBS.
   - FBS as the main treatment option has largely been abandoned due to significant procedure-related risk.
   - In the past, weekly in utero transfusion of platelets via FBS was often required after 20 weeks.
   - Goal was to prevent undertreatment, which can result in risk of ICH in utero, and to avoid overtreatment, which is expensive and can cause adverse maternal side effects.
   - Empiric therapy has not been compared with fetal cordocentesis-induced treatment in a randomized trial.
   - Risk of increasing sensitization due to fetomaternal hemorrhage.
   - Risk of fetal hemorrhage is at least 1% to 2% per procedure and 5% to 10% cumulative loss for each pregnancy [13–15]. Procedure-related fetal loss rates are higher when the first IUT occurs <20 weeks (5% versus 1%) [16].
   - FBS is now used primarily to assess response to IVIG therapy (typically performed around 32 weeks) or to determine eligibility for vaginal delivery (at about 36–37 weeks) [5].
   - If FBS is performed to guide IVIG (and/or steroid) therapy (usually between 20 and 35 weeks), the following principles are generally followed:
     - If adequate (platelet count ≥50,000/μL), continue current regimen to term.
     - If the first fetal platelet count is >20,000/μL while on IVIG, the chance of platelet count >20,000/μL at a later sampling is 89%, and if the first count is ≥20,000/μL, this chance is only 51% [17]. Therefore, if the response is adequate (>50,000 μL), continue current regimen [17].
     - If inadequate platelet count <50,000/μL, increase therapy depending on current treatment (up to maximum of IVIG 2 g/kg/week + prednisone 1 mg/kg/d).
   - FBS Technique:
     - Have platelets ready at any FBS with slow transfusion started after sampling even before platelet count (PC) is available to minimize risk of fetal hemorrhage.
     - Transfuse maternal platelets (antigen negative), packed, washed, and irradiated. Transfusion volume: aim for 200 to 400,000 platelets to avoid volume overload by using the equation in Table 52.2.
     - Typical volume of platelet concentrate transfused is 5 to 15 mL.
     - Goal: platelets >50,000/μL and usually 200,000 to 400,000/μL.
     - Because of risk of emergent delivery, corticosteroids for fetal lung maturity before FBS are suggested at ≥24 weeks.
     - In fetuses with platelets >80,000/μL at first FBS and not treated, follow-up FBS showed decreases of at least 10,000/μL/wk.

### Table 52.2 Calculations for Fetal Platelet Transfusion for FNAIT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Platelet Goal</th>
<th>Volume to Infuse</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>100,000</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>150,000</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>200,000</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>250,000</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>300,000</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>350,000</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>400,000</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Abbreviation: FNAIT, neonatal alloimmune thrombocytopenia

*If volume is given in milliliters, just divide by mL volume × 1000; that is, if given total platelets is 6 million in 55 mL, then (6,000,000/55,000) = platelet count from lab. The factor of “2” is used in the numerator of the equation to allow for possible platelet sequestration in the fetal spleen or liver. Then one can use the following chart to fill in, according to initial fetal platelet count obtained at PUBS.*

RISK-BASED FETAL THERAPY FOR PREGNANCIES AT RISK FOR FNAIT

There is insufficient data to assess different types of interventions for the pregnancy with NAIT. Current preferred management is based upon the risk of ICH. Fetuses at highest risk are those with a sibling affected by ICH [5,18]. The earlier the ICH occurred in the sibling, the greater the risk for intracranial hemorrhage in the currently affected fetus.

Risk is based on history of ICH in past pregnancy as defined below [5]:

1. **Standard risk** – Previous child had thrombocytopenia without intracranial hemorrhage.
2. **High risk** – Previous child had an intracranial hemorrhage in the third trimester or neonatal period.
3. **Extremely high risk** – Previous child had an intracranial hemorrhage in the second trimester.

### Standard Risk = Criteria for NAIT is Met; Previous Siblings with Thrombocytopenia But NO In Utero ICH (Figure 52.1)

A. At 20 weeks gestation, begin IVIG at 1 g/kg/week with prednisone 0.5 mg/kg/day.
   - Alternative regimen: IVIG at 2 g/kg/week [18]; this option was shown to be comparable in a RCT [19].
   - Consider starting at the higher dose (2 g/kg/week) if the initial platelet count of the affected neonate was <20,000/μL at birth [17].
   - Some advocate using IVIG only as initial therapy due to the side effects of prednisone.
   - Treatment can be tailored to the patient after discussion of adverse effects of both arms.

B. At 32 weeks, escalate therapy to IVIG at 2 g/kg/week with prednisone 0.5 mg/kg/day.
   - Previous data recommended FBS to assess therapy at 32 weeks, but therapy prevented ICH in all 73 patients [19]. Additional expanded data from those authors showed only 3 cases of mild grade I ICH out of 100 cases, which is similar to group of normal term neonates [5,18].
   - Thus, current recommendation is **escalate therapy without FBS** [5].
C. Delivery at 37–38 weeks by cesarean section [5].
• For those desiring vaginal delivery, perform FBS at 37 weeks (see FBS technique above). Vaginal delivery at 37–38 weeks only recommended if PUBS ≥37 weeks reveals >100K platelets.

High Risk = Previous Sibling Had In Utero ICH in the third trimester or neonatal period (Figure 52.1) [5,18]

A. At 12 weeks gestation, begin IVIG at 1 to 2 g/kg/week (Figure 52.1).
B. At 20 weeks gestation, either add prednisone 0.5 mg/kg/day OR increase the dose of IVIG to 2 g/kg/week.
C. At 28 weeks gestation, give IVIG 2 g/kg/week AND prednisone 0.5 mg/kg/day.
D. Deliver at 35–36 weeks by cesarean section.
• For those desiring vaginal delivery, perform FBS at 35 weeks (see FBS technique above). Vaginal delivery only recommended if PUBS ≥35 weeks reveals >100K platelets.

Very High Risk = Previous Sibling Had In Utero ICH <28 weeks (Figure 52.1) [5,18]

A. At 12 weeks gestation, begin IVIG at 2 g/kg/week (Figure 52.1).
B. At 20 weeks gestation, add prednisone 1 mg/kg/day.
C. Deliver at 35–36 weeks by cesarean section.
• For those desiring vaginal delivery, perform FBS at 35 weeks (see FBS technique above). Vaginal delivery only recommended if PUBS ≥35 weeks reveals >100K platelets.

Other Clinical Concerns/Issues Regarding Therapy
• Patients should avoid activities (i.e., sports) that could result in potential trauma.
• External cephalic versions and NSAIDs are contraindicated.
• There are reported cases of ICH while receiving IVIG treatment [11,19], so that IVIG should be considered a highly effective but not a perfect therapy to prevent ICH (and in some situations FBS and possible transfusions may still be indicated).
• Women with prior IVIG administration should have their serum checked for HTLV I+II and HepC antibodies.

Other Clinical Scenarios (Figure 52.1)
1. Personal history of fetal intracranial hemorrhage/neonatal thrombocytopenia and HPA incompatibility but no antibodies: does NOT meet criteria for NAIT [5].
• Perform serially testing of maternal serum for anti-HPA antibodies at 12, 24, and 32 weeks of gestation by both a panel of platelets expressing common HPA antigens and cross-matching against paternal platelets to detect alloimmunization to a rare antigen carried by the father [5]. If antibodies are detected, treatment is initiated.

2. Personal history of fetal intracranial hemorrhage/neonatal thrombocytopenia, but no HPA incompatibility and no antibodies: does NOT meet criteria for NAIT [5].
• Consider maternal serum for anti-HPA antibodies at 30 weeks of gestation to check for development of previously undetected antibodies.

3. No personal history of fetal intracranial hemorrhage or neonatal thrombocytopenia, but HPA incompatibility [5].
• Routine screening for HPA incompatibility is not recommended.

COUNSELING
Prognosis, natural history and complications, and management criteria should all be reviewed with the family. All patients should be advised that the optimal management of NAIT has not been determined and that no one therapy has proven to be 100% effective.

INVESTIGATIONS AND CONSULTATIONS
With heterozygous father, consider amniocentesis to determine fetal antigen status by PCR (CVS only if mother would terminate affected fetus). Multidisciplinary management should involve a hematologist and the blood bank.

FETAL MONITORING/TESTING
Serial ultrasounds may be performed every 4–6 weeks to evaluate for ICH, but if ICH is detected, it is too late for intervention to prevent severe sequelae.

ANESTHESIA
No special precautions, since maternal platelets are usually normal, but 10% of women with FNAIT have gestational thrombocytopenia.

DELIVERY
• Avoid fetal trauma: avoid maternal abdominal trauma, external cephalic version, fetal scalp lead, vacuum, or forceps.
• There is no evidence to prove that cesarean delivery prevents ICH.
• If platelet count >100,000/μL at the 35–37 weeks FBS and patient is compliant with the effective therapy, vaginal delivery can be allowed. Therefore, in cases with platelets >100,000/μL at 35–37 weeks, trial of labor and attempt at vaginal delivery can be considered [18].

NEONATOLOGY MANAGEMENT
• Maternal platelets (Ag negative, obtained by plasmapheresis, plasma depleted, washed, irradiated, and packed) should always be available for transfusion after delivery.
• Neonatal treatment is with IVIG, IV steroids, and antigen-compatible platelets until platelet count recovers, usually by 7 to 10 days of age.
• The volume of platelets transfused can be calculated as blood volume × (desired platelet count – actual platelet count/platelet concentration). For a term neonate, this equates to 1 cc platelet = increase platelet count by 5000/μL.
(10 cc = 50,000; 20 cc = 100,000). Often neonatologists choose to transfuse 10 cc of platelets per kg of neonatal weight.

FUT URE PREGNANCY PRECONCEPTION COUNSELING

Management, events, and outcome of the pregnancy should be reviewed with the family postpartum (after discharge of the neonate). As stated above, the natural history of NAIT is that, if it recurs (depending on father’s zygocity), it is more severe than in the previous pregnancy.

- Recurrence risk is close to 100% of antigen (+) fetuses/neonates.
- For women with high-risk and extremely high-risk prior pregnancies, options include sperm donation using an HPA-1b/1b donor or in vitro fertilization (IVF) with pre-implantation genetic diagnosis (PGD) if the partner is a HPA heterozygote (HPA-1a/1b).

REFERENCES

**KEY POINTS**

- The formation of maternal antibodies to fetal red blood cell (RBC) antigens is called **RBC alloimmunization** and can lead to hemolytic disease and anemia of the fetus and neonate.
- The most common antigens causing alloimmunization in the United States today are Rh(D) and Kell. Rh(D) alloimmunization occurs when a pregnant woman develops an immunological response to a paternally derived Rh(D) antigen foreign to the mother and inherited by the fetus. The IgG antibodies cross the placenta, bind to the antigens on the fetal RBCs, and can lead to hemolysis. Kell alloimmunization is usually caused by previous blood transfusions but may also occur by maternal-fetal hemorrhage during pregnancy.
- **Anti-D immune globulin** prophylaxis prevents >99% of cases of Rh(D) alloimmunization if given **both antepartum and postpartum**. It should be given to all Rh(D)-negative women with a negative antibody screen at **28 weeks** and, if the neonate is Rh(D) positive, within **72 hours after birth**. Anti-D immune globulin can be given as late as **28 days postpartum** if previously not given but indicated. Anti-D immunoglobulin prophylaxis in the United States and other countries is **300 μg** (1 μg = 5 IU) at 28 weeks as well as after delivery if the neonate is Rh(D) positive. A **100-μg** dose administered at 28 and 34 weeks is also used. However, there are no trials to directly compare the different regimens.
- Mothers who are weak D positive (formerly called Du) **do not need anti-D prophylaxis**. A **Kleihauer–Betke (KB) test** should be done to determine the number of fetal cells that has entered the maternal circulation and hence the appropriate dose of **anti-D immune globulin** in certain high-risk situations (abdominal trauma, abruption, manual extraction of the placenta, etc.), or when the 100-μg dose is used, after delivery of an Rh(D)-negative, nonalloimmunized woman.
- Currently, there is no prophylactic immune globulin to prevent alloimmunization from Kell or other antigens except Rh(D).
- If Rh(D) antibodies are detected in the maternal circulation on the antibody screen, the patient is considered alloimmunized. Management of the alloimmunized pregnancy is shown in **Figure 53.1**. This is based initially on genotyping of the fetus’ father and, if necessary, fetal Rh(D) status determination, usually by polymerase chain reaction (PCR) from amniocytes. Maternal blood for fetal DNA testing is also available. The critical titer for Rh(D) antibody should be determined in each laboratory.
- Ultrasound using the middle cerebral artery peak systolic velocity (MCA-PSV) **has 100% sensitivity** for detecting significant fetal anemia (95% CI: 0.86–1.00) and is the screening method of choice in RBC alloimmunized pregnancies if available and quality assurance can be confirmed. Compared with amniocentesis for delta OD450, the MCA-PSV assessment is associated with approximately 70% to 80% reduction in the number of invasive tests. Screening with MCA-PSV can be started as early as 15 weeks. If the **MCA-PSV is ≥1.5 multiple of the median (MoM)**, **fetal blood sampling (FBS) is indicated**. When a cordocentesis is performed at >24 weeks gestation, corticosteroids for fetal lung maturation should be considered before the procedure. Blood transfusions should be initiated for fetal hemoglobin <5th percentile.

**DEFINITION**

**RBC alloimmunization,** formerly known as isoimmunization or erythroblastosis fetalis, is the formation of maternal antibodies to fetal RBC antigens [1]. Maternal RBC alloimmunization can cause hemolytic disease of the fetus and neonate.

**EPIDEMIOLOGY/INCIDENCE**

The most common antigen causing alloimmunization is Rh(D) followed closely by the Kell antigen [2,3]. The Rh(D)-negative blood group is found in about 15% of whites, 3% to 5% of black Africans, and is rare in Asians. Spontaneous fetomaternal hemorrhages occur in increasing frequency and volume with advancing age. In 3%, 12%, and 46% of women, 0.01 mL or more of fetal cells in each of the three successive trimesters have been noted using the Kleihauer assay [4]. The risk of Rh(D) alloimmunization during or immediately after a first pregnancy is about 0.7% to 1%. The risk of fetal anemia from RBC alloimmunization is about 0.35%, of which about 10% of cases require transfusion. Rh(D) alloimmunization affects 6.7 out of every 1000 live births [5].

The Kell (K1) antigen is found on red cells of 9% of Caucasians and 2% of people of African descent. Kell alloimmunization occurs in 1 to 3 per 1000 fetuses [6].

**GENETICS**

Rh(D)-negative pregnant women have a deletion of the sequence on both copies of the short arm of chromosome 1. The Kell glycoprotein is a type II membrane protein with homology to zinc endopeptidases (M13 family) [7].

---

**Hemolytic disease of the fetus/neonate**

Danielle L. Tate, Jacques E. Samson, and Giancarlo Mari
Etiology/Basic Pathophysiology

Maternal Rh(D) alloimmunization occurs when a pregnant woman develops an immunologic response to a paternally derived RBC antigen—for example, Rh(D), that is foreign to the mother and inherited by the fetus. The immunoglobulin G (IgG) antibodies cross the placenta, bind to the antigens present on the fetal RBCs, and can cause hemolysis. Hemolysis then causes anemia which, if severe, leads to fetal cardiac failure, edema, hydrops, and eventually fetal death. Other antigens (“irregular antigens”) than Rh(D) can cause RBC alloimmunization.

Alloimmunization of the Kell antigen may be caused by previous blood transfusion or by maternal-fetal hemorrhage during the pregnancy with a fetus who is a Kell antigen carrier [8,9]. The Kell glycoprotein is expressed very early in erythropoiesis [10]. Antibody to Kell appears to inhibit erythropoiesis, suggesting another functional role for Kell in addition to its endopeptidase activity [11].

Natural History

About 17% of Rh(D)-negative women who do not receive prophyaxis become immunized. Over 90% of this immunization occurs from fetomaternal hemorrhage at delivery, and the majority of the remaining 10% occurs in the third trimester. Most of this immunization is caused by <0.1 mL of fetomaternal hemorrhage. Before anti-D immune globulin prevention, hemolytic disease of the fetus/neonate affected 9% to 10% of pregnancies, and was a major cause of perinatal mortality. The risk of RBC alloimmunization from different clinical situations is shown in Table 53.1.
Anti-K1 is responsible for severe neonatal anemia in approximately 40% of K1-positive babies of women with anti-K1 [12].

**PREVENTION (ANTI-D IMMUNOGLOBULIN)**

The ABO type, the Rh(D) status, and the antibody screen should be determined in all pregnant women at the initial prenatal visit. If the woman is Rh-negative and the antibody screen is negative, the patient should receive Rh(D) immune globulin. Anti-D immunoglobulin prophylaxis properly given prevents >99% of cases of alloimmunization. The American Association of Blood Banks recommends a repeat antibody screen prior to administration of antenatal anti-D immune globulin as this second screening test has the advantage of detecting those rare cases in which immunization occurs early in pregnancy. However, given the low incidence (0.18%) of alloimmunization occurring prior to 28 weeks and the unknown cost-effectiveness of routine repeat screening, the practice of screening prior to administration of anti-D immune globulin remains controversial [13]. After delivery, if the neonate is Rh(D) positive, the patient should receive immune globulin. If the patient has never received immune globulin and the screening test is positive, the patient is at risk for having an anemic baby in the current pregnancy (if she has not delivered yet) or in a future pregnancy if she already has delivered. Usually, the effect of the immune globulin is not present 12 weeks after its administration.

Anti-D immune globulin prophylaxis properly given prevents the majority of cases of alloimmunization. Despite recommendations, 0.1% to 0.2% of susceptible women still become alloimmunized, largely due to either failure of implementation of immunoprophylaxis protocols or spontaneous immunization in the setting of these protocols [13]. Anti-D immune globulin is extracted by cold alcohol fractionation from plasma of individuals with high-titer D IgG antibodies. The risk of transmission of viral infections or side effects is minimal to absent and clinically not a significant factor. Unfortunately, there is no immune globulin available for prevention of RBC antigens other than Rh(D).

The accepted regimens of anti-D immune globulin prophylaxis are 1) 100 μg at 28 and 34 weeks and after delivery if the neonate is Rh(D) positive, or 2) 300 μg at 28 weeks and after delivery if the neonate is Rh(D) positive and delivery occurs at least three weeks after the first administration. There are no trials to directly compare these two different regimens, but they probably both achieve >99% prevention of Rh(D) alloimmunization.

The half-life of anti-D immune globulin is 16 to 24 days. When the 300 μg dose is used and delivery does not occur within 12 weeks of injection, a second 300 μg dose of anti-D immunoglobulin should be given. The antibody titer obtained at term is occasionally still positive (1:1, 1:2 titer) after anti-D immunoglobulin at 28 weeks gestation.

When indicated, a second dose of immune globulin is administered after delivery, even in cases of preterm delivery.

Mothers who are weak D positive with D present in reduced quantities (formerly called Du) do not need anti-D prophylaxis. Mothers who are partial D positive (lacking some epitopes of D) should receive anti-D immunoglobulin, since they are at risk for hemolytic disease [14]. In those cases where the father of the fetus/neonate is definitely known to be Rh(D) negative, neither antepartum nor postpartum anti-D prophylaxis is administered.

**Evidence for Dosing and Timing**

*After Birth (Postpartum)*

Anti-D immune globulin given within 72 hours after birth is associated with a 96% decreased incidence of Rh(D) alloimmunization six months after birth, and with a 88% decreased incidence of Rh(D) alloimmunization in a subsequent pregnancy in Rh(D)-negative women who have given birth to an Rh(D)-positive infant [15]. These benefits are seen regardless of the ABO status of the mother and baby. Higher doses (up to 200 μg) are more effective than lower doses (up to 50 μg) in preventing Rh(D) alloimmunization [15]. Anti-D immune globulin can be given as late as 28 days postpartum if indicated but not previously given. Anti-D immune globulin is given to all Rh(D)-negative women after confirmation from cord blood of Rh(D)-positive status of the neonate.

Even when immune globulin is correctly administered and with higher doses, alloimmunization can still occur (antepartum) in up to 2% of these women if only postpartum anti-D is administered.

*Before Birth (Antepartum)*

The addition of anti-D immune globulin 100 μg (500 IU) prophylaxis at 28 and 34 weeks lowers this risk (about 1%–2%) to about 0.2% without any adverse effects [16–18]. When women receive anti-D immune globulin at 28 and 34 weeks gestation, there is a trend for less immunization 1) for all women (RR: 0.42, 95% CI: 0.15–1.17); and 2) for women giving birth to an Rh-positive infant (RR: 0.41, 95% CI: 0.16–1.04), compared with no prophylaxis [16–18]. In trials that used a 100-μg dose of anti-D immune globulin, there was a nonsignificant reduction in immunization in 2 to 12 months following birth of an Rh-positive infant in women who had received anti-D (RR: 0.14, 95% CI: 0.02–1.15). However, women receiving anti-D were significantly less likely to have a positive KB test (which detects fetal cells in maternal blood) both in pregnancy (RR: 0.60, 95% CI: 0.41–0.88) and at the birth of an Rh-positive infant (RR: 0.60, 95% CI: 0.46–0.79) [17]. No data were available for the risk of Rh(D) alloimmunization in a subsequent pregnancy. No differences were seen for neonatal jaundice.
There are no trials using the 300-μg dose or trials comparing just 28-week versus both 28- and 34-week prophylaxis. Even with antepartum and postpartum prophylaxis, the risk of Rh(D) alloimmunization remains because of inadvertent antepartum or postpartum omission, failure to use the drug for other antenatal complications, and insufficient dosing at delivery in cases of large fetomaternal hemorrhage. **Practice guidelines in the United States** recommend that anti-D immune globulin be administered early in the third trimester: 300 μg at 28 weeks. This practice reduces the incidence of antenatal alloimmunization from 2% to 0.1% [2,3]. In the United Kingdom, 100 μg of anti-D immune globulin is given at 28 and 34 weeks [14]. In Canada, 100 to 120 μg is administered at 28 and 34 weeks. Studies have shown improved compliance with the single dose protocol over the two-dose protocol [19].

**Special Clinical Situations**

In addition to antepartum and postpartum prophylaxis, other indications for the use of anti-D immune globulin include those situations in which there is significant risk of fetomaternal hemorrhage. These indications are listed in Table 53.1. A repeat dose is unnecessary after prophylaxis if delivery occurs <3 weeks from the last dose.

**Anti-D immune globulin 300 μg protects against 30 μL of fetal whole blood or 15 mL of fetal RBCs in the maternal circulation.**

In certain high-risk situations in which excessive fetomaternal bleeding may have occurred (e.g., abruption, manual removal of the placenta, abdominal trauma), this dose may be inadequate, and a KB test should be done to determine the amount of fetal cells that have entered the maternal circulation and, hence, the appropriate dose of anti-D immune globulin to be given. Some clinicians have advocated the KB test for all Rh(D)-negative women at delivery, since 50% of cases requiring more than the standard postpartum dose of anti-D immunoglobulin can be missed by high-risk situation screening only [20]. The risk of fetomaternal hemorrhage >30 mL is about 0.1% to 0.2%.

The anti-D immunoglobulin available in the United States and other countries (RhoGAM, Rhoophylac, WinRho, and BabyRho-D) are all very effective with none shown to be significantly more effective in the prevention of hemolytic disease than the others. Thus cost and route of administration—intramuscular (IM) or intravenous (IV)—may be the only factors determining choice.

**MANAGEMENT OF RBC ALLOIMMUNIZED PREGNANCIES**

**Counseling**

If Rh(D) antibodies are detected in the maternal circulation, for example, positive indirect Coombs, the patient is considered alloimmunized. Among Rh(D) alloimmunized pregnancies, mild-to-moderate hemolytic anemia and hyperbilirubinemia occur in 25% to 30% of fetuses/neonates, and 25% of these can develop hydrops [21].

**With correct management, the perinatal survival rate in cases of anemia is >90%; when fetal hydrops is present, the survival rate is >80%.** There is no trial that has assessed the best management for RBC alloimmunized pregnancies; however, fetal transfusion is probably the most beneficial of all the available therapies. Although it is reported that the risk of fetal demise is between 1% and 2% for each FBS, there are situations in which the risk is much higher, such as when cordocenteses and transfusions are performed at gestational ages (GAs), as early as 15 to 18 weeks.

**Workup/Investigations Required**

Management of the alloimmunized pregnancy is shown in Figure 53.1. In patients at risk for fetal anemia because of red cell alloimmunization, it is important to perform a first-trimester ultrasound to establish the GA. Assessment for risk of fetal anemia depends on history of previous Rh complications in pregnancies, titer of RBC antibodies, and MCA-PSV values [22,23].

The genotype of the fetus’ father can be determined by **zygosity testing.** The most likely zygosity can also be predicted by evaluating the pattern of C, D, and E loci since they are inherited together and some combinations are more common than others, but this is not 100% exact and not very useful clinically. If the father is Rh(D) negative, no further testing or intervention is necessary. If the father is heterozygous for the Rh(D) antigen, fetal Rh(D) testing is indicated. If the father is Rh(D) homozygous, the fetus is assumed to be Rh(D) positive and no fetal Rh(D) testing is necessary. Of course, the paternity should be certain; otherwise, fetal testing is indicated.

**Fetal Rh(D) status can be determined by PCR from amniocytes with >95% accuracy (sensitivity and specificity).** This is available in the United States in several centers. One of them is the Blood Center of Southwestern Wisconsin (http://www.bloodcenter.com). This is also available for many other antigens, such as c, E, Kell, M, N, etc. Chorionic villus sampling (CVS) is not advised as it results in high risk of worsening alloimmunization from fetomaternal hemorrhage. Determination of fetal Rh(D) status can also be obtained noninvasively as early as 38 days gestation with fetal DNA analysis from maternal blood [24–26]. This can be done through the International Blood Group Reference Laboratory in Bristol, United Kingdom (Molecular.Diagnostics@nhsbt.nhs .uk; http:/ /ibgrl.blood.co.uk/) or in the United States through laboratories.sequenom.com. Accuracy of noninvasive Rh(D) genotyping is >99.3% when testing is performed at 11 weeks gestation or greater [27]. Currently, the Rh(D) antigen is the only antigen available for testing through cell-free fetal DNA analysis from maternal blood in the United States. Kell, c, and E antigen testing is available in Europe [28].

**Rh(D) antibody titers correlate somewhat with risk of anemia/hydrops, with 1:16 = 10%, 1:32 = 25%, 1:64 = 50%, and 1:128 = 75% risk of anemia. The critical titer should be determined in each laboratory.** Unfortunately, large differences in titer can be seen in the same woman between laboratories. In most laboratories, the critical titer is ≥1:16 in albumin or ≥1:32 in indirect antiglobulin (indirect Coombs test). If the titer is less than 1:16, the fetus is not in jeopardy at that time. However, **serial titers should be obtained every four weeks.** If the patient has had a prior affected pregnancy, and the fetus is known to be Rh(D) positive, titers are not necessary. The MCA-PSV is used to detect those fetuses that are going to develop anemia [29]. The presence of additional antibody(ies) with anti-D increases the need for intrauterine fetal transfusions [30].

**Ultrasound is the screening method of choice for fetal anemia.** With fetal anemia, decreased blood viscosity leads to increased venous return and consequent increase in cardiac output with increased blood flow velocity in all vessels. Degrees of blood velocity (Table 53.2) correlate with
Compared with amniocentesis for $\Delta OD_{450}$, the MCA-PSV assessment is associated with a 70% to 80% reduction in the number of invasive tests [23]. The MCA-PSV is more accurate than amniocentesis in detecting fetal anemia [32,34–36].

The correction of fetal anemia with intrauterine transfusion decreases significantly and normalizes the value of fetal MCA-PSV [37,38] because of an increased blood viscosity and an increased oxygen concentration in fetal blood. The MCA-PSV may be used in fetuses previously transfused [39,40].

Accuracy with the MCA-PSV can only be achieved with appropriate training and quality assurance. If adequately trained sonographers are not available, screening for anemia should be done with amniocentesis (see below). Screening with MCA-PSV can be started as early as 15 weeks [41]. The MCA-PSV can also be used for other causes of anemia, including parvovirus infection, nonimmune hydrops, fetal–maternal hemorrhage, and twin–twin transfusion syndrome.

The steps for the correct measurement of the MCA-PSV are the following: 1) An axial section of the head is obtained at the level of the sphenoid bones; 2) color Doppler evidences the circle of Willis; 3) the circle of Willis is enlarged; 4) the color box is placed around the MCA; 5) the MCA is zoomed; and 6) the MCA flow velocity waveforms are displayed and the highest point of the waveform (PSV) is measured. The waveforms should be all similar. The above sequence is repeated at least three times in each fetus.

There should be an absence of fetal movement or fetal breathing during measurement of the MCA-PSV.

Severe intrauterine growth restriction also shows an increased MCA-PSV [42]. Therefore, this should be taken into account when the MCA-PSV is used to diagnose fetal anemia. However, it is very unlikely that an anemic fetus is also a severe IUGR fetus.

Moderate-to-severe anemia may also be suggested by hydropic signs (at least two of pericardial or pleural effusion, ascites, or skin edema), an increase in the size of fetal liver or placental thickness, or tricuspid regurgitation.

Amniocentesis for $\Delta OD_{450}$ measurement is currently not used anymore unless accurate MCA screening is not available. The $\Delta OD_{450}$ measurement can be evaluated using either the Liley [43] or Queenan [44] charts. There is controversy over which one is best before 27 weeks, the “extended” Liley curve or the Queenan curve [45]. The guidelines for the amniocentesis are arbitrary and serial MCA-PSV measurements are superior in terms of sensitivity, specificity, and positive and negative predictive values to both the Liley and the Queenan curve [31].

If the MCA-PSV test cannot be done and the patient opts for an amniocentesis, the following are general guidelines for managing the Liley curve readings:

- **Zone 1:** repeat amniocentesis in two to four weeks. If zone 1, follow with ultrasound every one or two weeks until delivery.
- **Zone 2 (low/middle third):** repeat amniocentesis in about two weeks. If low zone 2, follow with ultrasound every week until delivery. If upper third zone 2, consider FBS.
- **Zone 2 (upper third):** consider FBS or repeat amniocentesis in 7 days. If again upper third zone 2 or higher, FBS.
- **Zone 3:** FBS.

The advantage of using Queenan’s curve is that it can be used following 14 weeks gestation. Amniocentesis is associated with a 2% to 3% (up to 15%) risk of fetomaternal

---

### Table 53.2 Expected Peak Velocity of Systolic Blood Flow in the Middle Cerebral Artery as a Function of Gestational Age

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Week of Gestation</th>
<th>1.00</th>
<th>1.29</th>
<th>1.50</th>
<th>1.55</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>23.2*</td>
<td>29.9</td>
<td>34.8</td>
<td>36.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>25.5</td>
<td>32.8</td>
<td>38.2</td>
<td>39.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>27.9</td>
<td>36.0</td>
<td>41.9</td>
<td>43.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24</td>
<td>30.7</td>
<td>39.5</td>
<td>46.0</td>
<td>47.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>33.6</td>
<td>43.3</td>
<td>50.4</td>
<td>52.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28</td>
<td>36.9</td>
<td>47.9</td>
<td>55.4</td>
<td>57.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>40.5</td>
<td>52.2</td>
<td>60.7</td>
<td>62.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32</td>
<td>44.4</td>
<td>57.3</td>
<td>66.6</td>
<td>68.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34</td>
<td>48.7</td>
<td>62.9</td>
<td>73.1</td>
<td>75.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36</td>
<td>53.5</td>
<td>69.0</td>
<td>80.2</td>
<td>82.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>38</td>
<td>58.7</td>
<td>75.7</td>
<td>88.0</td>
<td>91.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40</td>
<td>64.4</td>
<td>83.0</td>
<td>96.6</td>
<td>99.8</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Data shown are in cm/sec (median).

### Table 53.3 Reference Ranges for Fetal Hemoglobin Concentrations as a Function of Gestational Age

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Week of Gestation</th>
<th>1.16</th>
<th>1.00</th>
<th>0.84</th>
<th>0.65</th>
<th>0.55</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>12.3*</td>
<td>10.6</td>
<td>8.9</td>
<td>6.9</td>
<td>5.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>12.9</td>
<td>11.1</td>
<td>9.3</td>
<td>7.2</td>
<td>6.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>13.4</td>
<td>11.6</td>
<td>9.7</td>
<td>7.5</td>
<td>6.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24</td>
<td>13.9</td>
<td>12.0</td>
<td>10.1</td>
<td>7.8</td>
<td>6.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>14.3</td>
<td>12.3</td>
<td>10.3</td>
<td>8.0</td>
<td>6.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28</td>
<td>14.6</td>
<td>12.6</td>
<td>10.6</td>
<td>8.2</td>
<td>6.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>14.8</td>
<td>12.8</td>
<td>10.8</td>
<td>8.3</td>
<td>7.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32</td>
<td>15.2</td>
<td>13.1</td>
<td>10.9</td>
<td>8.5</td>
<td>7.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34</td>
<td>15.4</td>
<td>13.3</td>
<td>11.2</td>
<td>8.6</td>
<td>7.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36</td>
<td>15.6</td>
<td>13.5</td>
<td>11.3</td>
<td>8.7</td>
<td>7.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>38</td>
<td>15.8</td>
<td>13.6</td>
<td>11.4</td>
<td>8.9</td>
<td>7.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40</td>
<td>16.0</td>
<td>13.8</td>
<td>11.6</td>
<td>9.0</td>
<td>7.6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Notes: The values at 1.16 and 0.84 multiples of the median correspond to the 95th and 5th percentiles, respectively (the normal range). Mild anemia: hemoglobin concentration between 0.84 and 0.66 MoM; moderate anemia: hemoglobin concentration between 0.65 and 0.55 MoM; severe anemia: hemoglobin concentration <0.65 MoM.\*\*Data shown are in g/dL (median).
hemorrhage. Following fetal transfusions the maternal antibody titer rises significantly.

Fetal Intervention

An IV fetal transfusion is indicated when the MCA-PSV is ≥1.5 MoM (Table 53.2). Other ultrasonographic signs of hydrops may also suggest fetal anemia, or if ΔOD450 is being used for screening instead of the MCA-PSV, a value in the upper third of zone 2 or zone 3 is an indication for FBS.

Fetal blood sampling (FBS) is the only procedure that allows for direct access to fetal circulation and is the procedure of choice when invasive testing is planned for suspected severe fetal anemia. There is an overall high success rate with blood samples obtained in >98% of patients in the setting of a fetal loss rate of approximately 1.3% [46]. Table 53.4 shows an example of FBS transfusion setup. Table 53.5 shows an example of a step-by-step guide to perform FBS [28]. Transfusion is performed usually at the umbilical vein either at the placental insertion or inside the abdomen. Intraperitoneal transfusion is rarely performed, and it is contraindicated in the hydropic fetus because of the poor absorption of blood. Corticosteroids for fetal maturation should be considered before the procedure when FBS is performed at or after 24 weeks. Type O, Rh(D) negative, cytomegalovirus negative, washed, leukoreduced, irradiated packed RBCs cross-matched against maternal blood should be used. The blood usually contains 75% to 85% RBCs to allow minimal blood volume for the transfusions [47].

The procedure is performed under continuous ultrasound guidance. Although some providers elect to use prophylactic antibiotics, no trial has evaluated optimal class, timing, or dosing of antibiotics to prove the efficacy of this practice. Therefore, there is no recommendation of prophylactic antibiotic use in these procedures. Following 24 weeks, the procedure should be performed in a location close to the OR and the anesthesiologist consulted should an emergency occur. Tubing and syringes should be heparinized. Maternal skin can be anesthetized with 1% lidocaine at the point of needle entry. A 20- (usually after 28 weeks) or 22-gauge (usually <28 weeks) needle is used for the procedure. After entering the umbilical vein, a sample of fetal blood is withdrawn and the hemoglobin immediately (within one or two minutes) determined. Fetal blood is confirmed by a mean corpuscular

---

**Table 53.4 Sample Guide for Preparing for Fetal Blood Transfusion**

- Obtain O negative, CMV-negative, irradiated packed red blood cells from the blood bank. O positive blood may be needed when antibodies to the c antigen are present because the rate of O negative and c negative blood is very rare (0.0001%).
- Under sterile conditions open.
  - Four drapes or single sterile drape
  - Towel clips as needed
  - Twenty- or 22-gauge spinal needle (22-gauge for transfusions <24–28 weeks of gestation or if thrombocytopenia is suspected) prepared with heparin to prevent clot formation
  - Length of needle is determined ahead by measuring distance on ultrasound from maternal abdominal wall to cord insertion site.
  - Sterile ultrasound probe cover
  - Sterile ultrasound gel
  - A skin preparation solution (chlorhexidine-alcohol solution)
  - Eight to 10 1-mL syringes flushed with heparin to avoid clot formation
  - One 1-mL syringe for paralytic agent (atracurium or vecuronium)
  - Five to 10 20-mL syringes (for storing blood)
  - Four 12-mL syringes
  - One 3-mL syringe
  - Three needles 18 or 20 gauge for drawing blood from blood bank into 20-mL syringes
  - A 5.5-inch small bore extension set with t-connector and luer adaptor
  - Three-way stopcock
  - Fill two 5-mL syringes with physiological saline solution.
  - Flush 1-mL syringes with heparin, save one unflushed 1-mL syringe for vecuronium (or atracurium).
  - Draw up normal saline to make 3 saline flushes, remove air bubbles by holding syringes upright and tapping to release bubbles to top, attach small bore connection tubing, and flush air through.
  - Reconstitute vecuronium with 10 mL of normal saline.
  - Draw up 1 mL of vecuronium and 9 mL of normal saline in a 12 mL syringe.
  - Transfer 1 mL of vecuronium mixture to a unheparinized 1 mL syringe.
  - Mark both the 12 mL and 1 mL syringes with vecuronium to avoid confusion.
  - Usual dose of vecuronium is 0.1 mg/kg and atracurium is 0.4 mg/kg.
  - Draw up 2% lidocaine in 3-mL syringe, attached to 22- or 25-gauge needle for injection at puncture site for maternal local anesthesia.
  - Care should be taken to maintain sterility when drawing up solutions: either have an assistant holding saline, vecuronium, lidocaine, and blood from blood bank or use single operator technique keeping one hand sterile and one hand unsterile.
  - Attach intravenous connection tubing to unit of packed red blood cells.
  - Attach stopcock, taking care to maintain sterility on one end of the stopcock.
  - Fill 20-mL syringes with blood by opening stopcock.
  - Remove any air bubbles that may be present by holding syringes upright and tapping side of syringe to release air bubbles.
  - Have tubes available to send for laboratory studies.
  - Remember to include not only initial, midway, and final blood counts plus any additional tubes for genetic studies, liver function studies, or other tests.

*Source:* Adapted from Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine (SMFM); Mari G; Norton ME; Stone J et al. Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine (SMFM) Clinical Guideline #8: The fetus at risk for anemia—Diagnosis and management. AJOG, 212, 697–710, 2015.

*Abbreviation:* CMV, cytomegalovirus.
Table 53.5  Example of a Fetal Blood Sampling Procedure Steps

- Obtain maternal sample of blood.
- Precalculate amount of fetal transfusion needed based on different possible fetal hematocrit values (see text).
- Perform ultrasound to select site.
  - Placental cord insertion, free loop, umbilical cord insertion or intrahepatic vein.
  - Obtain measurement from maternal abdomen to umbilical vein site of puncture to ensure correct needle length.
  - Document fetal heart rate.
- Have sonographer and assistant ready in addition to main operator.
- Intravenous access and use of antibiotics is not always necessary and is at the preference of the operator.
- Under aseptic conditions prepare patient with antibacterial solute and place drapes leaving abdomen exposed.
- Cover ultrasound transducer with sterile cover.
- Identify site of puncture.
- Give local anesthesia to patient (mother).
- Inject fetus with intramuscular paralytic agent if necessary (vecuronium or atracurium).
- Use 20- or 22-gauge needle to enter umbilical vein.
- Remove stylet.
- If flow is immediate, obtain sample in 1-mL syringe and send to laboratory.
- If flow is not immediate and you think you are in Wharton’s jelly, slowly and carefully reposition the needle to enter into the vein.
- Some operators document flow by injecting saline: if that is done prior to obtaining fetal blood sample, discard first 1-mL fetal blood because it may be diluted with saline.
- Document fetal blood sample by comparing maternal (previously drawn and analyzed) and fetal hematocrit and MCV. This may not be necessary if sampling a free loop or the intrahepatic vein or if document flow with saline.
- Attach tubing to transfuse slowly; assistant can push blood slowly; watch segment of umbilical cord to see if blood is flowing through umbilical vein. A small slow transfusion of blood may be performed prior to obtaining confirmatory results of fetal blood from the laboratory to prevent clot from forming.
- When the fetal hematocrit returns and a transfusion is needed, calculate the amount of blood needed to transfuse based on precalculations.
- Intermittently obtain fetal heart rate.
- When transfusion is complete, obtain final hematocrit, and draw any other blood needed for workup.
- After the transfusion is complete and the needle is removed, watch the puncture site for streaming and check fetal heart rate for bradycardia.
- Monitor the patient and fetus after transfusion for at least 1–2 hours.

Source: Adapted from Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine (SMFM); Mari G; Norton ME; Stone J et al. Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine (SMFM) Clinical Guideline #8: The fetus at risk for anemia—Diagnosis and management. AJOG, 212, 697–710, 2015. Abbreviations: GA, gestational age; MCV, mean corpuscular volume.

If performing intraperitoneal transfusion, calculate amount of blood needed by the following formula: GA (weeks) – 20 × 10. For example, at 30 weeks, 30 – 20 = 10 × 10 = 100 mL blood.

Intravenous immunoglobulin in addition to fetal transfusion has been studied insufficiently and is not currently recommended [52].

Hematocrit decreases about 1 point per day posttransfusion in the anemic alloimmunized fetus, and this knowledge helps to assess when to repeat the transfusion. The timing of the second FBS can also be aided again by MCA PSV monitoring [39] while MCA PSV is not reliable after the second transfusion has been done. If the fetus is nonhydropic, the second transfusion is often necessary 14 days after the first, but after the second/third transfusion, longer intervals of three weeks or more may be possible as the fetal RBCs are replaced by adult RBCs. Following three transfusions, 99% of the fetal blood is represented by the adult transfused blood. Maternal phenobarbital 30 mg three times per day for 7 to 10 days to enhance fetal liver maturity and ability to conjugate bilirubin is still unconfirmed by large studies [53].

Fetal Monitoring/Testing

Fetal testing with nonstress tests (NSTs) or biophysical profiles (BPPs) at least weekly is started around 32 weeks or earlier if indicated. Its benefit has not been confirmed in a specific trial. Fetuses with very severe anemia (hemoglobin ≤2 g/dL) due to RBC alloimmunization may develop brain
injury (e.g., intracerebellar hemorrhage). Therefore, some studies have advocated fetal neuroimaging by ultrasound and/or MRI [54].

The surfactant/albumin ratio for fetal lung maturity (FLM) cannot be used since high amniotic fluid bilirubin can affect this result. The other tests for FLM are reliable (see also Chapter 57).

Delivery
See Figure 53.1 for the timing of delivery [46]. The mode of delivery depends on obstetrical indications.

Anesthesia
There are no specific anesthesia precautions.

Neonatology Management
Anemic neonates are usually treated with transfusions or exchange transfusions as necessary. They often need light therapy for hyperbilirubinemia. Breast-feeding is not contraindicated. A hearing screening test is indicated during the neonatal period and at two years of age given that hyperbilirubinemia can cause sensorineural hearing loss.

Long-Term Outcomes
Children who survive severe hemolytic disease (even with hydrops and/or necessitating transfusions) often have a normal neurologic outcome [28,55]. In the largest series evaluating outcome at an average of eight years of age of survivors of hemolytic disease of the fetus/newborn, the incidence of neuro-developmental impairment was 4.8%. The incidence of severe developmental delay (3.1%) was similar to the general population (2.3%). Smaller series have reported 8% and 10% incidences of neurological impairment [56]. Prevention of hydrops was the suggested management to avoid long-term handicap.

OTHER “ATYPICAL” ANTIBODIES
There are many atypical (irregular) blood group antibodies that are capable of producing hemolytic disease. Given their rarity, and the absence of large studies or any trial, the management of antibodies known to cause hemolytic disease other than Rh(D) is based on poor evidence. Many aspects of management are unknown or similar to Rh(D) alloimmunization except for the details below. It should be acknowledged that the critical titer for antibodies other than Rh(D) has not been well established.

Kell Alloimmunization
The incidence of Kell alloimmunization is about 0.1% to 0.3% in pregnant women. Kell alloimmunization is usually caused by prior transfusion. Over 90% of partners of Kell-immunized women are Kell negative. In the white population, only 9% of fathers are Kell positive, and only 0.2% are homozygous. Maternal titers do not correlate well with Kell alloimmune disease. Severe anemia can be diagnosed in fetuses whose mothers had a titer as low as 1:2. ΔOD₄50 levels also do not correlate with fetal anemia. This is because fetal anemia is not caused by hemolysis but by suppression of erythropoiesis at the progenitor-cell level. Anti-Kell antibodies specifically inhibit the growth of Kell-positive erythroid burst-forming units and colony-forming units [11]. In fact, anti-Kell anemic fetuses have lower reticulocyte counts and bilirubin levels compared to anti-D anemic fetuses. The Kell blood group is complex, consisting of over two dozen antigens. Kell 1 (Kell or K1) and its allelic partner Kell 2 (Cellano or K2) are strong immunogens. Poor fetal outcome occurs in about 1.5% to 3% of Kell-alloimmunized pregnancies, an incidence that is possibly higher than that of other RBC antigens. The management of Kell sensitization is somewhat controversial. Genotyping of the father of the baby (FOB) is extremely important. Most will be Kell negative, and if pregnancy is certain, no further testing is necessary. The vast majority of Kell-positive FOBs are heterozygote, so the fetal Kell status needs to be determined, usually by amniocentesis PCR. MCA-PSV screening is predictive and accurate for the diagnosis of fetal anemia from Kell alloimmunization [23,57]. MCA-PSV monitoring should start at 15 weeks and be performed as suggested in Figure 53.1. ΔOD₄50 measurements from amniocentesis are inaccurate and should not be used.

Other CDE System Antigens
C (small): This antigen carries a 65% risk of hemolytic disease; 80% of FOBs are positive of which half are homozygous, half heterozygous.

C (big): This antigen is associated with a 32% risk of hemolytic disease.

E (big): E-positive individuals have a 31% risk of hemolytic disease. Maternal titers do not correlate well with fetal hemolytic disease.

MNS Antigen System
Only 1% of titers ever rise to ≥1:64. Fewer than 100 cases of severe anemia as a result of anti-M alloimmunization have been reported worldwide to date such that even if sensitized the incidence of severe anemia is probably <1%.

Others
Other rare, but potentially lethal, antigens are Duffy (Fya, Fyb, Fy3, etc.), and Kidd as well as others.

REFERENCES


18. Lee D, Rawlinson V. Multicentre trial of antepartum low-dose anti-D immunoglobulin. Transfus Med 1995; 5: 15–9. [RCT, n = 2541 Rh-D negative primigravidas. 50 mg (250 IU) anti-D intra-muscularly at 28 and 34 weeks gestation (n = 952). Control group had no placebo (n = 1068)]


Nonimmune hydrops fetalis
Katherine Connolly and Joanne Stone

KEY POINTS

- Fetal hydrops is defined as the accumulation of fluid in two or more fetal extravascular compartments, including ascites, pleural effusion, pericardial effusion, and skin edema. These findings are commonly accompanied by polyhydramnios and placentomegaly.
- Nonimmune hydrops fetalis (NIH) is defined by the absence of maternal antibodies against fetal cells (negative indirect Coombs test in maternal serum).
- Because of the wide use of anti-Rh prophylaxis, currently most cases (90%) of fetal hydrops are nonimmune in origin. The frequency of NIH has been estimated between 1/2000 and 1/3000 births.
- The prognosis is often dismal with an overall perinatal mortality of 50% to 100%, which is related to the etiology, gestational age at presentation, the presence of early and significant pleural effusions, and the availability of treatment for certain conditions (e.g., parvovirus B19–induced NIH). Current data indicate that, among those who survive the neonatal period, 50% are free of long-term sequelae at one year of age.
- NIH is a condition associated with a large number of causes. In general, etiology may be suspected or confirmed prenatally in 50% to 80% of cases. Chromosomal abnormalities account for a significant fraction of cases of NIH before 24 weeks while structural abnormalities of the heart and infectious conditions are more frequently found after 24 weeks gestation. After delivery, 5% of newborns remain classified as idiopathic. Following is a simplified etiologic summary:
  - Cardiovascular anomalies: 20%
  - Noncardiovascular anomalies: 15%–25%
  - Chromosomal abnormalities: 15%–20%
  - Infection: 10%–15%
  - Hematologic disorders: 5%–15%
  - Complications of monochorionic twins: 5%
  - Genetic syndromes: 1%
  - Metabolic syndromes: 1%–5%
  - Overlapping of these conditions is frequent (e.g., a fetus with trisomy 21 and cardiac structural malformations)

- Evaluation of cases with NIH should be exercised according to local resources, and when required, cases must be transferred to a tertiary center where advanced diagnostic tests/procedures and potential treatments are available.
  - Always make sure that antibody screening (indirect Coombs) is negative (even in Rh-positive patients).
  - Because of the broad spectrum of the disease, efforts should be made to establish whether a treatable condition is present. Likewise, identification of recurrent causes of the disease is mandatory to provide appropriate counseling.

- Suggested evaluation may include the following:
  - Detailed history (recent flu-like symptoms, ethnic background, family history)
  - Ultrasound to evaluate fetal anatomy, amniotic fluid volume, placenta, umbilical cord, echocardiogram and middle cerebral artery peak systolic velocity to search for cardiac and extracardiac malformations, arrhythmias and fetal anemia.
  - Maternal laboratory tests:
    - Blood type and antibody screening to rule out immune-mediated anemia.
    - CBC with red blood cell indices and hemoglobin electrophoresis to look for thalassemias.
    - Serology for parvovirus, CMV, rubella.
    - Nontreponemal tests for syphilis (RPR).
    - Kleihauer–Betke to exclude fetal anemia for fetomaternal hemorrhage.
    - Other tests may be necessary if there is a suggestive history (e.g., HSV, Listeria monocytogenes) or the etiology of the condition remains elusive. On the other hand, the workup may be concise or stopped if the etiology arises soon after initial evaluation of the patient.
  - Amniocentesis to perform fetal karyotype with microarray, PCR for parvovirus B19, toxoplasmosis and CMV as needed. It is a good practice to freeze and store amniotic fluid with the aim to test for rare conditions such as lysosomal storage disease.
  - In cases still idiopathic after the workup above has been completed, consideration should be given to testing for lysosomal storage disorders (LSD) as up to 30% of idiopathic cases may have LSD as etiology.

- Management of NIH is based on the etiology and may include the following:
  - Treatment of conditions that benefit from maternal interventions (e.g., penicillin for syphilis-induced NIH) or fetal interventions (e.g., intrauterine blood transfusion for parvovirus B19–induced fetal anemia/thrombocytopenia).
  - Rarely, the mother may develop generalized edema, which could be life-threatening (mirror syndrome).
  - Termination of pregnancy in regions where this option is permitted.
  - Fetal monitoring: nonstress test, biophysical profile, Doppler studies of umbilical artery and middle cerebral artery as well as heart and venous system as feasible and necessary.
  - Antenatal steroids to reduce the likelihood of neonatal complications associated with preterm delivery.
• Delivery if there is evidence of fetal or maternal deterioration (e.g., mirror syndrome). Delivery may be preceded by interventions aimed to reduce the frequency of fetal cardiac failure, dystocia, and fetal trauma (e.g., aspiration of excessive pericardial, pleural or peritoneal fluid). NIH increases the risk of postpartum hemorrhage and retained placenta.

DIAGNOSIS/DEFINITION
Hydrops fetalis is the end stage of many different disorders, characterized by the pathologic accumulation of fluid in body cavities or tissues. The diagnosis of NIH is established if at least two of the following conditions are present: hydrothorax, ascites, pericardial effusion, and skin edema (>5 mm measured at the level of skull or chest wall) (Figure 54.1). These diagnostic findings can be associated with polyhydramnios (in 40%-75% of cases) and placentomegaly (placental thickness ≥4 cm in the second trimester or ≥6 cm in the third trimester) [1]. Immune hydrops is associated with isoimmunization to an RBC antigen (e.g., Rh disease) (see Chapter 53) while nonimmune hydrops (NIH) includes all other etiologies.

EPIDEMIOLOGY/INCIDENCE
The incidence of NIH ranges between 1/1700 and 1/3000 at birth [2,3] and as high as 0.5% in tertiary referral centers. The incidence may be as high as 1/150 on ultrasound since the high rate of intrauterine demise makes the hydrops incidence at birth an underestimation. NIH may account for up to 3% of perinatal mortality. When Potter described for the first time NIH in 1943, its incidence was very low compared to fetal hydrops for isoimmunization. After the introduction of anti-D prophylaxis, however, the incidence of Rh(D) alloimmunization has significantly decreased. Thus, NIH now represents 90% of all hydrops cases [1].

ETIOLOGY/BASIC PATHOPHYSIOLOGY
NIH is the final phenotype of hundreds of different disorders. The exact pathogenesis depends on the underlying

Figure 54.1 Diagnostic criteria for hydrops: need ≥2 of these four: (a) skin edema, (b) pleural effusion, (c) ascites, and (d) pericardial effusion.
No immune disorder, but the common disorder is an imbalance in the regulation of fluid movement between the vascular and interstitial spaces [1]. There are three basic mechanisms by which this occurs: impaired lymphatic flow, cardiac failure, and extravasation (either increased intravascular hydrostatic pressure, decreased intravascular osmotic pressure, or both) (Figure 54.2). These various etiologic factors and complex mechanisms lead to extra-accumulation of fluid in the fetal interstitial space with 10% to 20% of hydrops causes still undetermined after workup [4]. The complex physiopathology of hydrops makes it a challenge for the obstetrician to investigate its etiology and decide upon the management.

**ASSOCIATIONS/POSSIBLE ETIOLOGIES/ DIFFERENTIAL DIAGNOSIS (TABLE 54.1) [2–4]**

**Cardiovascular Disorders (20%)**

The main causal association of NIH is with fetal cardiovascular disease [5]. The most common disorders involved are tachyarrhythmias (40%), cardiac structural malformations (20%), high-output cardiac failure (15%), and bradyarrhythmias (6%) resulting from congenital heart malformation or maternal connective disorders (antibody mediated).

Fetal arrhythmias are the leading cause of cardiac disorders associated with NIH (40%) [6]. Most of them are secondary to tachyarrhythmias, and another fraction is the result of heart block. The most frequent tachyarrhythmia is supraventricular tachycardia, followed by atrial flutter and atrial fibrillation. Etiopathogenic disturbances induced by arrhythmias include reduction of the stroke volume, end-diastolic overload, and systemic venous congestion. These conditions are susceptible to in utero treatment with antiarrhythmic drugs administered to the mother or the fetus, which improve survival. The first-line drug is digoxin. Alternatives are flecainide, amiodarone, verapamil, and adenosine. Maternal administration of these drugs is frequently hampered by difficulties associated to an enlarged placenta [7]. Therefore, direct administration to the fetus has been suggested as an alternative, particularly in cases where there is no fetal response to maternal oral administration of medications.

Bradyarrhythmias are most commonly the result of congenital heart block, either from an autoimmune cause or structural abnormalities affecting cardiac conduction. Transplacental passage of maternal antibodies associated with autoimmune diseases is seen in 30%–50% of these cases. They can be present in association with anti-Sjogren's-syndrome-related antigen A (anti Ro) or the combination or anti-Ro/SSA and anti-La/SSB antibodies (see Chapter 25) [1]. Structural abnormalities, such as endocardial cushion defects in the setting of a heterotaxy syndrome, can also interfere with cardiac conduction and lead to heart block. Complete fetal heart block yields to fetal hydrops when the fetal heart rate is below 60 beats per minute. There have been several case reports showing successful progression to hydrops after maternal administration of beta-sympathomimetics, such as terbutaline, although data are very limited [8,9]. Corticosteroids were studied as possible treatment for fetal heart block and were shown not to be effective in reversing third-degree block nor preventing progression from second- to third-degree block [10]. At this time, in utero treatment of fetal hydrops as a result of fetal bradyarrhythmia is not recommended [1].

Structural abnormalities leading to NIH are most commonly right heart defects but can also include atrioventricular septal defects (AV canal), hypoplastic left ventricle, large ventricular septal defects, atrial septal defects, Ebstein anomaly, and premature closure of the ductus arteriosus [2,11]. The pathophysiology underlying the NIH associated with these conditions is diverse and complex but is mainly attributable to an increase in the systemic venous pressure resulting from obstruction of right heart output as well as the transmission of systemic arterial pressure to the right heart by means of several pathologic shunts, including the primary...
Table 54.1 Conditions Associated with Nonimmune Fetal Hydrops and Suggested Workup

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Conditions Associated with NIHF</th>
<th>Suggested Workup</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Cardiovascular</strong> (20%)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fetal arrhythmias</td>
<td>Expert fetal <strong>echocardiogram</strong> for morphological and functional study, with 2D, M-mode, pulsed Doppler, color Doppler, including functional assessment of output tracts, ductus arteriosus and the fetal venous system (ductus venosus)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Supraventricular tachycardia, atrial flutter, heart block with bradyarrhythmia, Wolff-Parkinson-White, nonconducted premature atrial contractions, others</td>
<td><strong>Accurate fetal anatomical ultrasound</strong>, including the umbilical cord and placenta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Structural</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Atrioventricular septal defects, hypoplastic left ventricle, hypoplastic right ventricle, large ventricular septal defects, atrial septal defects, Ebstein anomaly, premature closure of the ductus arteriosus, closure of the foramen ovale, tetralogy of Fallot and its variants, truncus, transposition of the great vessels, severe atrioventricular or arterial valve insufficiency, others</td>
<td>Color and pulsed Doppler of peripheral vessels including umbilical cord, placenta, cranial venous system (especially the base of the skull, under the hemispheres), and middle cerebral artery peak systolic velocity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mass</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cardiac rhabdomyoma, pericardial/intrapericardial/intracardiac teratoma</td>
<td><strong>Accurate fetal anatomical ultrasound</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>High cardiac output failure</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chorioangioma (&gt;5 cm), aneurymsmal malformation of the vein of Galen, large sacrococcygeal teratoma, umbilical cord aneurysms, neuroblastoma, vena cava obstruction</td>
<td><strong>Consider thoracocentesis or paracentesis with biochemical, cytological, and microbiological analysis</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vascular disorders</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cardiomyopathy, peripheral artery thrombosis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Extracardiac anomalies</strong> (15%–25%)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thorax</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Congenital pulmonary airway malformation (e.g., CCAM, pulmonary sequestration), congenital diaphragmatic hernia, pulmonary lymphangiectasia, chylothorax, bronchogenic cyst, any thoracic tumors</td>
<td><strong>Amniocentesis</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Urinary</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Posterior urethral valves, urethral stenosis/atroresia, prune-belly syndrome, congenital nephropathy</td>
<td><strong>RPR, serology for parvovirus B19, CMV, toxoplasmosis, rubella</strong>, and others if suspected</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gastrointestinal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Volvulus-atesia, malrotation, duplication, meconium, peritonitis, hepatic fibrosis, cholestasis, biliary atresia, cloacal dysgenesis, hemochromatosis</td>
<td><strong>Amniocentesis</strong>: PCR (or culture) of fluid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Skeletal dysplasias</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thanatophoric dysplasia, short rib-polydactyly, osteogenesis imperfecta, achondrogenesis, hypophosphatasia</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Chromosomal abnormalities</strong> (15%–20%)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45x (or mosaic 45X/46XX), trisomy 21, trisomy 18, trisomy 13, triploidy, others</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Infections (10%–15%)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parvovirus B19, CMV, syphilis, toxoplasmosis, rubella, lysteria, adenovirus, coxsackie B, others</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Hematologic</strong> (5%–15%)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Excessive red cells loss</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>α-Thalassemia, G6PD-deficit, fetomaternal transfusion, TTTS, fetal hemorrhage, red cell enzyme deficiencies, congenital leukemia, others</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Underproduction</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fetal liver and bone marrow replacement syndromes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Congenital leukemia</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parvovirus B19</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Red cell aplasia</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Monochorionic twin pregnancy</strong> (5%)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Twin-twin transfusion syndrome (TTTS); TRAP sequence</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Continued*
or secondary closure of the foramen ovale. The presence of heart failure in the setting of structural heart abnormalities is poor with a combined fetal and neonatal mortality rate of 92% [12].

Chromosomal Abnormalities (15%–20%) [5,13,14]
The incidence of chromosome abnormalities is inversely proportional to GA at diagnosis of NIH, with 50% to 75% incidence when NIH is diagnosed <20 weeks [13]. Turner and Down syndromes account for 90% of all aneuploidies associated with hydrops although many other chromosomal abnormalities such as trisomy 18 and 13, 45X/46XX mosaicism, triploidy, and tetraploidy have been reported. The main features of Turner syndrome are cystic hygroma and tubular coartation of aorta, suggesting both lymphatic and cardiac etiology of hydrops [15]. The mere finding of a cystic hygroma in the first trimester strongly suggests aneuploidy (60% of risk) [15], but it needs to be differentiated from an increased nuchal translucency (NT) because of other etiologies (e.g., congenital heart defects). Due to the high incidence of aneuploidy in cases of NIH, prenatal diagnostic testing with karyotype, fluorescence in situ hybridization, and microarray analysis is recommended even in the setting of severe anemia [1].

Extracardiac Anomalies (15%–25%)

Thoracic (5%–10%) [16,17]
Congenital pulmonary airway malformation (CPAM) (previously also called congenital cystic adenomatoid malformation, CCAM), pulmonary sequestration, and congenital diaphragmatic hernia (CDH) are the most common causes of NIH in this category. Other less common causes in this category are lymphangiectasia, bronchogenic cyst, and other thoracic tumors.

Proposed pathophysiologic mechanisms for these cases are the compression of the mediastinum due to the presence of a large lesion or effusion with resultant obstruction of lymphatic or venous return. This obstruction leads to cardiac failure. Compression of the esophagus may also lead to associated polydramnios. CDH produces compression of venous return especially when the liver is herniated in the chest and worse prognosis is expected when it is associated with hydrops. Not only are these fetuses at risk for NIH due to obstruction of cardiac output but those cases with substantial lung compression before 24 weeks are at risk for pulmonary hypoplasia.

Primary hydrothorax is the accumulation of lymphatic fluid in the pleural cavity without any other demonstrated anomaly (mass or chromosomal abnormality). The most common cause of primary hydrothorax in neonates is chylothorax, characterized by a milky pleural fluid for the high concentration of lymphocytes. This fluid may be sampled and the diagnosis is made by the presence of >80% lymphocytes in the absence of infection. With thoracoamniotic shunt placement, survival exceeds 50% in this setting [18].

Similar management has been proposed for fetuses with pulmonary sequestration and CPAM since the development of hydrops in this setting is associated with poor prognosis if untreated. Macrocystic lesions in fetuses with hydrops may be treated expectantly or with needle drainage or thoracoamniotic shunt placement. For microcystic lesions in fetuses with hydrops, management options include expectant management, steroid administration, or open fetal surgery. In a nonrandomized study comparing steroid treatment with fetal surgery, there was a statistically significant increase in resolution of hydrops in the steroid group although no difference in survival was seen [19]. Intraperitoneal injection of OK-432, a sclerosant product obtained from group A Streptococcus pyogenes, has been shown to have promising results in three studies reported so far [17]. The practice of serial thoracentesis (e.g., every 48 hours) is discouraged.

Genitourinary (3%)
Urinary tract anomalies may be associated with ascites but rarely present generalized hydrops. Lower tract obstruction produces bladder overdistention that frequently leaks into the abdominal cavity. More rare causes of ascites are the rupture of a dilated renal pelvis or renal thrombosis. Congenital nephrotic syndrome of Finnish type, a rare fatal autosomal recessive disease, can be associated with fetal hydrops due to hypoproteinemia and diagnosed by serum or amniotic fluid α-fetoprotein.

Gastrointestinal (1%)
The primary gastrointestinal abnormalities that have been associated with NIH are diaphragmatic hernia, midgut volvulus, obstruction, jejunal atresia, malrotation of the intestines, and meconium peritonitis [2,12]. Gastrointestinal obstruction may lead to NIH due to decreased colloid osmotic pressure due to protein loss [12]. Intestinal perforation produces variable degrees of ascites (meconium peritonitis) not easy to differentiate from other kinds of intra-abdominal serum effusion. The presence of meconium seen as bright plaques or echo-poor cystic areas would lead to the diagnosis even in the absence of a dilated gut. When meconium peritonitis is not associated with generalized hydrops, the prognosis is good.
uterine death was significantly lower with transfusion than
remits. Uterine fetal transfusions until the pathologic process finally
limited, but the degree of anemia frequently requires intra-
with a significant increase in the middle cerebral artery
of severe anemia or arrhythmias in the setting of myocarditis
causes decrease in venous return and resultant anasarca [1]. Conditions for which NIH has been described
are not limited to, thanatophoric dysplasia, short
ribs polydactily, osteogenesis imperfecta, achondrogenesis,
and hypophosphatasia. The outcome is uniformly poor.

Vascular (<1%)
Vascular tumors or arteriovenous malformations can cause
NIH due to high-output cardiac failure. Placental chorioan-
giomas occur in 1% of pregnancies and are usually clinically
insignificant; however, lesions >5 cm can act as high volume
arteriovenous shunts. Similarly, hemangiomas can lead to
NIH due to severe anemia, hypoproteinemia, or extramedul-
lar erythropoiesis [1]. Aneurysm of the great vein of Galen
is a large cerebral arteriovenous malformation that can cause
right-to-left shunting, causing congestive heart failure and
hydrops.

Congenital Infections (10%–15%) [14,20]
Parvovirus B19 is the most common infective agent leading
to severe anemia and NIH, representing about 5% of all cases
of NIH. When congenital defects are excluded, parvovirus
B19 infection accounts for about 25% to 50% of fetal hydrops.
Approximately 30%–50% of pregnant women are nonim-
mune, and the incidence of acute Parvovirus infection during
pregnancy is 1%–2% although it may be as high as 13% dur-
ing epidemic periods. The risk of vertical transmission is 30%
although in the majority of these cases the fetus is unaffected
[14]. The risk of developing NIH after maternal infection
with parvovirus is dependent on the gestational age at time
of infection. In one study, the overall rate of development of
NIH was 4.2% with a significantly higher rate seen in those
patients infected at 9–20 weeks gestation (10.6%) [21].
Parvovirus is cytotoxic to bone marrow erythroid pro-
genitor cells, and the destruction of these cells by the virus
leads to transient aplastic crises in the fetus [22]. Fetal infec-
tion may lead to severe anemia, congestive heart failure, myo-
carditis, NIH, or death. Cardiac failure may either be the result
of severe anemia or arrhythmias in the setting of myocarditis
[14]. The sonographic landmark of the disease is a NIH fetus
with a significant increase in the middle cerebral artery
peak systolic velocity (MCS PSV). The process is often self-
limited, but the degree of anemia frequently requires intra-
uterine fetal transfusions until the pathologic process finally
remit. Numerous studies have shown improved outcomes
after fetal transfusion [14,23]. In one study, the rate of intra-
uterine death was significantly lower with transfusion than
without treatment (6% vs. 30%) [14,20,24]. Due to improved
outcomes, transfusion is recommended in this setting unless
the pregnancy is at a gestational age at which risks of delivery
seem to be lower than continued pregnancy with transfusion
[1] (Chapter 53).
Syphilis is a rare cause of fetal hydrops, which is the
consequence of anemia and hepatic dysfunction resulting
in hypoproteinemia and portal hypertension. Other infec-
tions such as toxoplasmosis, coxsackie virus, herpes simplex
virus, rubella, and CMV have been shown to be occasion-
ally associated with NIH. The pathophysiologic mechanisms
involved in fetal hydrops because of infection are multiple
and involve anemia (e.g., parvovirus B19, toxoplasmosis, and
CMV), hepatitis with hypoproteinemia (e.g., CMV), and myo-
carditis (e.g., toxoplasmosis, rubella, and CMV). The diagnos-
tic of these infections may be performed by demonstrating
maternal seroconversion or through various specialized tests
(mainly polymerase chain reaction, PCR). The treatment will
vary according to the infectious agent involved. Infections
because of CMV or toxoplasmosis have demonstrated to have
little response to intrauterine treatment and the prognosis
is poor (see Chapters 46 and 47). Sonographic landmarks of
poor prognosis for NIH because of infections include fetal
growth restriction (frequently early and severe), microcys-
ally, cerebral ventriculomegaly, and calcifications of various
organs including the brain and the liver.

Hematological Disorders (5%–15%)
Anemia is the most frequent cause of NIH from hematologic
disorders. Fetuses with anemia develop hydrops because of
the combination of high-output heart failure and endothelial
damage secondary to hypoxia, leakage of proteins, and reduc-
tion in the oncotic pressure. The diagnosis of fetal anemia can
be determined noninvasively through Doppler evaluation of
the cerebral circulation, which has proven to be valuable in
identifying anemia of both immune and nonimmune origins.
The mechanisms leading to fetal anemia can be classified as
follows:

Reduced Red Blood Cell/Hemoglobin Production
α-Thalassemia is a common cause for fetal hydrops in
Southeast Asia and European Mediterranean countries,
where it accounts for 28%–55% of all cases of NIH [25,26].
This disease is characterized by a fetus that is unable to pro-
duce globin chains to form hemoglobin F in utero, leading to
hypoxia and endothelial damage (see Chapter 14). A complete
blood count can be used for screening as the mean cell vol-
ume will be <80 fl in carriers. Other causes are congenital
medullar aplasia secondary to fetal leukemia or parvovirus
B19 infection.

Hemolysis
This has been observed in some cases of glucose 6 phos-
phate dehydrogenase deficiency and infection (CMV and
toxoplasmosis).

Hemorrhage
Fetomaternal hemorrhage may be significant enough to induce
NIH and should be suspected after trauma or placental abrup-
tion. Even without a bleeding history, in one review, NIH was
the presenting sign of fetomaternal hemorrhage greater than
50 mL in 7.5% of cases [27]. A Kleihauer–Betke test or flow
cytometry may be used to aid in diagnosis and to assess the
magnitude of the transfusion. Management with delivery or intrauterine transfusion should be considered, depending on gestational age and results of fetal testing. If left untreated, fetuses subjected to severe anemia may develop cardiac failure, hydrops, hypovolemic shock, fetal or neonatal death, neurologic damage, cerebral palsy or persistent pulmonary hypertension [27].

Twin-to-Twin Transfusion Syndrome (TTTS) (1%–5%)

This complication of monochorionic twins leads to an imbalance in blood flow between the two fetuses. The pathophysiology is not clearly understood though it appears to be linked to disturbances in volume with a subsequent increase in central venous pressure [5]. This leads to hypoxia in the donor twin and vascular overload in the recipient twin. In some cases of twin-to-twin transfusion syndrome (TTTS) and TRAP sequence, invasive therapy with fetoscopy and laser coagulation or umbilical cord ligation have been associated in some studies with improved fetal survival (see Chapter 44).

Fetal Tumors (1%–5%)

Fetal tumors, such as lymphangiomas, hemangiomas, sacrococcygeal, mediastinal, pharyngeal teratomas, and neuroblastomas, have been associated with NIH [12,28,29]. The likely mechanism in these cases is the development of high-output cardiac failure due to their vascular nature. In utero treatment has been offered in cases of sacrococcygeal teratoma and open surgery resulted in survival in 6/11 cases, and minimally invasive approaches resulted in survival in 6/20 cases [30]. Rhabdomyomas, cardiac tumors often associated with tuberous sclerosis, can obstruct outflow or filling and result in NIH. The associated liver fibrosis can also lead to hepatic failure and NIH.

Metabolic Diseases (1%–5%) [31,32]

Metabolic diseases have historically been reported to account for only 1%–2% of NIH. There have been 14 specific lysosomal storage diseases (LSD) identified that cause NIH. The likely mechanism is obstruction of venous return due to vescero-megaly or decreased erythropoiesis leading to anemia [1]. In a recent review of 678 cases of NIH, the overall incidence of LSD was 5.2%. A diagnosis of LSD was made in 17.4% of the idiopathic cases overall and in 29.6% of those idiopathic NIH cases in which a more comprehensive LSD workup was done in a specialized laboratory [33].

Although diagnosis is expensive, investigation for metabolic diseases is justified after the initial workup has been completed and the most frequent causes have been ruled out [34,35]. Prenatal LSD diagnosis can be performed by enzyme analysis of fetal cells from chorionic villus sampling or amniocentesis specimen. This enzyme analysis can be done in specialized national laboratories. Although uncommon, the identification of these disorders is important also due to their recurrence risk. Further, identification of the exact mutation in the proband or in the heterozygous parent can be used to aid in preimplantation and prenatal diagnosis in future pregnancies.

MATERNAL COMPLICATIONS

“Mirror syndrome,” also known as Ballantyne’s syndrome, is a rare complication of NIH in which edema develops in the mother that mirrors the hydropic fetus. The exact underlying pathogenesis is unknown, but this condition is characterized by edema and preeclampsia-like symptoms, such as hypertension (61% of cases), anemia/hemodilution (46.4%), proteinuria (42%), transaminitis (20%), and oliguria (16%) [36]. The incidence of mirror syndrome is so low that distinction between Mirror syndrome and preeclampsia has been difficult to assess. In a review of 56 cases from 1956 to 2009, the average age of diagnosis was 22.5–27.8 weeks. Major maternal morbidity was seen in 21% of all cases with pulmonary edema the most common. Resolution of maternal symptoms was seen an average of 8–9 days after delivery or successful treatment of the fetal hydrops. The average rate of intrauterine fetal demise was 36%. There are currently no management studies on expectant management in the case of Mirror syndrome. In some cases of NIH with a potentially treatable etiology, resolution of maternal symptoms has been seen after fetal treatment. Caution is advised in these situations, and delivery should not be delayed in the case of worsening maternal status. In most cases of Mirror syndrome, delivery is recommended [1].

There are other obstetric complications associated with NIH. Polyhydramnios is seen in 29% of cases, which can lead to maternal respiratory symptoms, preterm delivery, placental abruption or postpartum hemorrhage. The increased rates of postpartum hemorrhage seen in cases of NIH are likely a combination of uterine atony secondary to polyhydramnios and the presence of large edematous placentas, which may have greater uterine adherence [37].

MANAGEMENT Counseling/Prognosis

NIH is the end stage of many severe diseases whose outcome is related to the etiology, the severity, and the time of onset. In general, perinatal mortality in pregnancies complicated by NIH ranges between 50% and 100%, depending on the etiology [38]. Outcomes are best in cases with potentially treatable etiology, such as Parvovirus or fetal cardiac arrhythmias. In those cases of live birth, there is a 64% survival. In those infants born alive, 40% will have associated morbidity [38]. The most significant factors associated with neonatal death are the underlying cause of NIH, gestational age at delivery, and lower serum albumin level at birth [39]. There is limited data regarding long-term follow-up in these children, however, in 2 studies with follow-up at a year, 16% of children were seen to have severe psychomotor developmental delay, and 16% had mild mental retardation.

The worst prognosis is expected in cases diagnosed before 24 weeks gestation, cases in which a cystic hygroma is present, or cases with chromosomal abnormalities. Half of cases diagnosed prior to 24 weeks are associated with aneuploidy and have very poor survival. Even in those cases diagnosed prior to 24 weeks without aneuploidy, survival is less than 50% [40]. Counseling should include the option of termination in regions where this is available. After 24 weeks of gestation, the survival rate in euploid fetuses is nearly 50% when effective treatments are performed. Fetal anemia and fetal arrhythmia are two of the etiologies of NIH associated with >70% to 90% survival rate, if appropriate treatment is instituted [1]. Consideration should also be given to transfer the patient to a tertiary care center for management and delivery where possible.
Workup/Diagnosis (Figures 54.3 and 54.4 and Table 54.1)

After the finding of hydrops by ultrasound, a systematic workup is mandatory. A thorough evaluation of cases with fetal hydrops allows determination of their cause in up to 80% of cases. This is important to determine the therapeutic strategies that should be mounted as well as providing appropriate genetic counseling for future pregnancies.

**Basic Workup**

Demographic and clinical history. Ethnicity and race, consanguinity, work exposure to infections, genetic/metabolic diseases, congenital anomalies, autoimmune diseases, and events of the pregnancy, including previous infection screening and ultrasound findings.

**Laboratory.** Rule out Rh disease or any other cause of immune fetal anemia. Identifications of infectious diseases, such as syphilis, parvovirus B19, toxoplasmosis, cytomegalovirus, rubella, coxsackie, HSV-1 and HSV-2, and Listeria. Perform the Kleihauer–Betke test and SSA and SSB antibody tests if patient has lupus.

**Ultrasound.** Include assessment of the following:

- Abdomen for ascites, thorax for pleural/pericardial effusion, and skin for edema
- Complete anatomy survey to look for anomalies of the fetus, placenta, and umbilical cord
- Assessment of amniotic fluid volume
- Fetal heart: arrhythmias (M-mode), structural anomalies, function (Doppler)
- Doppler analysis of umbilical artery, MCA PSV, ductus venosus, and possibly other arteries and veins
- Liver length, spleen size
- Placental thickness, malformations

Hydrothorax is an easily observable collection of fluid in the pleural space. It can be unilateral or bilateral and, when severe and presenting early in pregnancy, can lead to pulmonary hypoplasia. In the presence of severe-moderate ascites, liquid is evident all around the abdominal circumference, and a thorough observation is necessary to differentiate real ascites from the hypoechochogenic rime produced by dorsal and abdominal musculature just beneath the abdominal wall. Pericardial effusion distends the pericardium without any motion during cardiac activity. Placental edema is diagnosed when its thickness is >6 cm, and polyhydramnios is conventionally defined as an amniotic fluid index above the 95th percentile for gestational age or a maximal pocket of amniotic fluid >8 cm.

A detailed sonographic examination is important to determine anatomical defects associated to fetal hydrops. A systematic analysis should be performed to evaluate cardiac anatomy, fetal heart rate and rhythm, and signs of heart failure that can be secondary to extracardiac anomalies, such as placental or fetal tumors (e.g., chorioangioma and teratoma), as well as arteriovenous shunts, such as those of vein of Galen aneurysm and hepatic hemangioendothelioma. Also, signs of intrauterine infection should be evaluated, including the presence of brain or hepatic calcifications, ventriculomegaly or hydrocephalus, hyperechogenic bowel, and fetal growth restriction. Magnetic resonance imaging can be employed to aid in diagnosis of anomalies.

An accurate fetal echocardiography aims first to examine position, size, function, and rhythm of the heart. The systematic observation of a four-chambers view, outflow tracts, great arteries, and arches can rule out the majority of CHD associated to hydrops. The addition of color and pulse Doppler allows a more complete evaluation of heart function and flow across atrioventricular valves and arterial valves while M-mode allows a more accurate study of heart squeezing, recording of wall thickness and rhythm. Color Doppler investigation can demonstrate atrioventricular valve regurgitation, and insonation of peripheral vessels can show venous abnormal pulsatility in ductus venosus or hepatic veins as signs of cardiac failure or provide information on right atrium pressure and heart function.
Fetal Doppler velocimetry, M-mode, and color mapping can be useful to diagnose and evaluate cases of fetal arrhythmia as well as fetal anemia by evaluating the MCA PSV. MCA PSV is >90% sensitive and specific for fetal anemia, using MoM >1.50 [41,42]. The most likely explanation for the observed increase in MCA PSV is the reduction of blood viscosity, leading to enhanced venous return and preload with consequent increase in cardiac output.

Fetal Doppler studies are useful for the evaluation of the venous circulation (ductus venosus and inferior vena cava) to determine the prognosis of fetal hydrops of cardiovascular origin and to evaluate fetal response to treatment. Along with other modalities to monitor fetal well being, it plays an important role in defining the appropriate moment for a timely delivery.

Amniocentesis. Different analyses in amniotic fluid permit the investigation of fetal karyotype, congenital infections, and metabolic diseases. Fluorescence in situ hybridization (FISH) and quantitative fluorescent polymerase chain reaction (QF-PCR) can provide a rapid assessment of chromosome 13, 18, 21, X and Y, assessing about 70% of chromosomal anomalies. A full karyotype from culture of amniocytes rules out all chromosome anomalies.

For the investigation of infectious etiology, PCR in the amniotic fluid is the most sensitive test although a negative result does not exclude the presence of the disease. Parvovirus B19, CMV, and toxoplasmosis are the most common infectious etiologies of NIH. Biochemical testing of enzymatic activity in cultured amniotic fluid allows the investigation of inborn errors of metabolism. Consider freezing amniotic fluid-extra fetal serum for future tests to study additional conditions when etiology remains unclear.

Cordocentesis and other invasive procedures. Cordocentesis should not be considered a routine procedure in the workup of NIH, but is strongly recommended when fetal anemia is suspected (i.e., MCA PSV >1.5 MoM). The fragile hemodynamic condition of the fetus with NIH suggests exercising caution when the procedure is performed, especially in severely compromised fetuses with functional cardiac involvement. When performed, fetal blood tests should include full blood count, blood group and Coombs test, and serum biochemistry. In special cases, thalassemia screening, total IgM, and G6PD in male fetuses can be investigated. PCR for infectious etiologies and testing for lysosomal storage diseases can also be done with fetal blood sampling. Peritoneal fluid, pleural fluid, and urine can be obtained with diagnostic and sometimes therapeutic purposes. Cytological and biochemical analysis of these fluids may incline toward a final etiology of NIH. Likewise, karyotype and microorganisms can be searched from these fluids.
Therapeutic Approach
Management, including fetal monitoring, treatment, and delivery, should follow the appropriate guidelines for the specific etiology of the NIH.

Fetal Monitoring/Testing
There are no studies on the utility of antenatal fetal testing in the setting of NIH [43]. Testing is reasonable if the etiology of the NIH is nonlethal, the fetus is at a potentially viable gestational age, and if the findings of fetal testing would aid in guiding delivery timing [1]. Doppler studies (especially umbilical artery and MCA Doppler interrogation), NSTs, and BPTs (at ≥28 weeks) can be performed at weekly intervals in the hydropic fetus to assess fetal status and determine the appropriate time for delivery.

Treatment
Therapeutic approach depends on the differential diagnosis of the etiology of NIH. Careful assessment of the risks, benefits, and alternatives to each therapy should be considered and discussed with parents. These cases should be referred to tertiary care centers with physicians experienced with providing the appropriate treatment.

For parvovirus B19 and arrhythmias, treatment is feasible and effective. Intrauterine transfusion of fetuses with severe hydrops because of parvovirus B19 infection reduces the risk of fetal death. When heart failure and hydrops are associated with supraventricular tachycardia, the first-line drug is digoxin. Alternatives are flecainide, amiodarone, verapamil, and adenosine. Difficulties derived from placental enlargement may render maternal administration erratic and direct administration to the umbilical cord is an alternative.

In severe pleural effusions, pulmonary compression may lead to lung hypoplasia and polyhydramnios because of mediastinal compression and obstruction of fetal swallowing, increasing the risk of preterm labor. These conditions as well as low output cardiac failure may explain the poor prognosis of severe hydrothorax. In these cases, thoracoamniotic shunting may be indicated. Several series including the last 20 years suggest that this procedure may improve fetal and neonatal outcome.

In cases of macrocystic CPAM, drainage and maternal corticosteroid administration is recommended. Cases of twin-to-twin transfusion syndrome should be referred to specialized centers for possible fetoscopic laser photoocoagulation <26 weeks [1].

Amniodrainage may be considered in the case of severe polyhydramnios to reduce maternal respiratory dysfunction and provide the patient with comfort as well as potentially decreasing the risk of preterm delivery.

Obstetric Management
There are no studies assessing benefit with a course of corticosteroids prior to delivery in the setting of NIH. In two retrospective studies, there was no improvement in neonatal survival after steroids [44,45]. Based on expert opinion, it is reasonable to administer a course of corticosteroids if an intervention or delivery is planned between 24 and 34 weeks.

Tocolysis for preterm labor may not be advisable in all cases. Preeclampsia may develop in up to 50% of cases, adding another factor to consider when defining the time of delivery. Again, delivery at a tertiary care center is recommended.

Delivery Timing
There are no trials assessing the ideal timing of delivery in the setting of NIH. It has been suggested that prognosis is worse in cases of delivery <34 weeks [39]. Each case needs to be considered individually, given the spectrum of etiologies and severity. Based on expert opinion, delivery is reasonable after 34 weeks if evidence of worsening fetal status and by 37–38 weeks if status has remained stable and delivery was not otherwise indicated earlier [1].

Delivery/Anesthesia
The delivery route will depend on the obstetrical conditions. However, the unique cardiovascular derangements usually present in hydropic fetuses, leading to nonreassuring fetal testing, may necessitate a cesarean section. Hemodynamically stable fetuses may be offered a vaginal delivery. Aspiration of excessive fluid from the pericardium, pleural, and peritoneal cavities may be beneficial to facilitate delivery, minimize trauma, and improve neonatal resuscitative efforts. At all times, the patient should be informed about the diagnosis, prognosis, and management of NIH in general and the specific characteristics of her case. Fetal monitoring results, size of effusions, and need for procedures before delivery should all be taken into consideration. Written consent is mandatory, emphasizing the paucity of information about NIH. In cases where the decision has been made by the mother not to intervene for fetal indications, vaginal delivery is preferred, unless contraindicated [1].

NEONATOLOGY MANAGEMENT
In cases where fetal survival may potentially be improved with neonatal intervention, delivery should occur at a center with a level III neonatal intensive care unit [1]. These neonates require expert, intensive, and multidisciplinary management. In cases of fetal or neonatal death, an autopsy should be performed to determine the cause of NIH and death. Long-term follow-up shows that the majority of hydropic neonates who are born and discharged alive have intact long-term survival [46].

MATERNAL POSTPARTUM
A separate outpatient visit should be set up to discuss a postpartum review of the possible etiology of the NIH, including recurrence risks. Recurrent NIH is very rare and mostly due to inborn errors of metabolism (e.g., lysosomal storage disorders, rare hemoglobinopathies, or other genetic disorders).

REFERENCES


Fetal death
Nahida Chakhtoura and Uma M. Reddy

KEY POINTS
• Ultrasound examination should be performed for confirmation of fetal death.
• Most informative exams to find the etiology of fetal death are autopsy; examination of the placenta, cord, and membranes; and chromosomal analysis.
• Induction of labor in patients with fetal death is recommended unless patient is already in labor.
• For fetal death at about 14 to 28 weeks, misoprostol (200–400 mcg vaginally every 4 hours, 400 mcg orally every 4 hours, 200 mcg buccal, or 600 mcg vaginally every 12 hours) is the most cost-effective method of delivery with acceptable side effects. After 28 weeks of gestation, drugs, such as oxytocin and/or prostaglandins administered for induction of labor, can be usually given according to standard obstetric protocols (see Chapter 21 in Obstetric Evidence Based Guidelines).

DEFINITIONS
Fetal death is defined by the U.S. National Center for Health Statistics (NCHS), a division of the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, as death prior to the complete expulsion or extraction from the mother of a product of human conception, irrespective of the duration of pregnancy and which is not an induced termination of pregnancy. The death is indicated by the fact that after such expulsion or extraction, the fetus does not breathe or show any other evidence of life such as beating of the heart; pulsation of the umbilical cord, or definite movements of voluntary muscles. Heartbeats are to be distinguished from transient cardiac contractions; respirations are to be distinguished from fleeting respiratory efforts or gasps [1].

The WHO definition of fetal death does not exclude spontaneous abortion at <12 weeks, which has different etiologies and management than fetal death occurring in the second or third trimester. There is not complete uniformity even among U.S. states regarding the birth weight and gestational age criteria for reporting fetal deaths. However, NCHS has recommended the reporting of fetal deaths at ≥20 weeks of gestation with known gestational age or weight ≥350 g if the gestational age is unknown [2]. 350 g is the 50th percentile for weight at 20 weeks of gestation. Fetal losses because of terminations of pregnancy for lethal fetal anomalies and inductions of labor for preivable premature rupture of membranes are excluded from these statistics and are classified separately as terminations of pregnancy. Embryonic death is defined as death occurring at ≤12 weeks. Early fetal death is defined as death occurring at 13 to 19 6/7 weeks of gestation. Intermediate fetal death is defined as death occurring at 20 to 27 weeks of gestation. Late fetal death is defined as death occurring at greater than 28 weeks of gestation.

Stillbirth is the term preferred by parent groups and therefore has been increasingly used by the research community and by ACOG for fetal deaths ≥20 weeks of gestation or weight >350 g [3] and can be used as a synonym for fetal death. Fetal demise (often abbreviated IUFD or intrauterine fetal demise) is often also used interchangeably with fetal death. Unexplained fetal death is defined as death before delivery with no identifiable cause after complete evaluation is performed.

DIAGNOSIS
The diagnosis of fetal death should be confirmed by ultrasound with absence of heart movement.

EPIDEMIOLOGY/INCIDENCE
An estimated 3.2 million stillbirths occur annually worldwide; 98% of all stillbirths occur in low- and middle-income countries with two thirds of stillbirths occurring in Southeast Asia and Sub-Saharan Africa [4,5]. In the United States, in 2013, there were 23,595 reported fetal deaths at 20 weeks of gestation or more, resulting in a fetal death rate of 5.96/1000 live births plus fetal deaths [3]. Close to one half of these deaths occur in the third trimester. U.S. fetal mortality rates have been stable since 2006 with some minor fluctuations [1,6].

ASSOCIATIONS/RISK FACTORS/POSSIBLE ETIOLOGIES
There are many maternal and fetal factors that have been associated with fetal death (Table 55.1). About 25% of fetal deaths are not associated with any of these risks and are called “unexplained.” Many classification schemes for assigning cause of stillbirth are currently used throughout the world. There are at least 35 different classification systems reported in the medical literature since 1954, and each system was created with a specific purpose by the investigators. The Stillbirth Collaborative Research Network (SCRN) Initial Causes of Fetal Death was devised for research purposes to provide a structured system so that the definitions used to assign the most likely cause of stillbirth are uniform and those reviewing the potential causes of stillbirth can communicate using a common language. An important goal of this system was to use the best available evidence and rigorous definitions determined before case review when assigning a cause of death [7]. Fetal death rate is an important marker of quality of health care. Other factors associated with fetal death are advanced maternal age, non-Hispanic black race, nulliparity or multiparity (>5), maternal medical disease, unmarried status, low socioeconomic status, low education, multiple gestation, assisted reproductive technology, and past obstetric history (previous stillbirth, preterm delivery, postdates, or growth restriction) [8–18]. Obesity, smoking, and
These settings and include the following:

- Inadequate facilities with option for safe cesarean delivery (CD)
- Improvement in nutrition, prevention and treatment of syphilis, tuberculosis, and malaria are the most feasible and cost-effective interventions in developing countries to decrease the incidence of stillbirth.

As the vast majority of fetal deaths occur in developing countries, interventions should be focused on prevention in these settings and include [21] the following:

- Improving maternal nutritional status, such as micronutrient supplementation
- Periconception folate fortification [22]

**PREGNANCY MANAGEMENT**

**Counseling**

Counseling should include review of possible etiologies (Table 55.1), workup (Table 55.2), and delivery options as well as possible complications. Grief counseling should be included in addition to the option for referral to grieving help groups. Understanding the cause of stillbirth is important to parents and management of future pregnancies. However, obtaining consent for autopsies, surgical investigations, imaging and other investigations is difficult for both parents and health care providers. Investigating the best possible way to support decision-making is important [23]. Review of risk of recurrence, prevention of recurrence, and best management for a future pregnancy (Table 55.3) should be done postpartum.

**Workup**

Evaluation of the etiology of fetal death is essential to counsel regarding recurrence risks, facilitate the grieving process, and improve understanding to facilitate therapeutic measures (Table 55.2) [3, 24, 25]. The evaluation can be emotionally difficult and should be multidisciplinary (obstetrician, maternal-fetal specialist, pathologist, geneticist, radiologist, and neonatologist). Communication between all these providers is important. Investigation should include the following:

- Amniotic fluid for cytogenetics
- Screen for coagulopathy (only if fetal death >4 wk from delivery)
- CBC, antibody screen, urine drug screen
- Kleihauer-Betke testing or flow cytometry
- Lupus anticoagulant, anticardiolipin antibodies (IgM, IgG) and anti-β₂-glycoprotein antibodies (IgM, IgG)
- Parvovirus B19 titers (IgM and IgG)
- Syphilis testing (RPR or VDRL)
- Thyroid-stimulating hormone
- Glucose screening (oral glucose tolerance test, hemoglobin A1c) if glucose screening not done in pregnancy
- Thrombophilia workup only to be considered in cases of severe placental infarcts, fetal growth restriction, or in the setting of a personal history of thrombosis (factor V Leiden mutation; G20210A prothrombin gene mutation; antithrombin III)

**Postdelivery**

- Cord blood for cytogenetics
- Autopsy and placental examination
- Protein C, protein S activity (in selected cases as described above for other thrombophilia workup)
- MRI

### Table 55.1 Associations/Risk Factors/Possible Etiologies of Fetal Death

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Maternal Risk Factors</th>
<th>Fetal Risk Factors</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Chronic hypertension</td>
<td>Congenital malformations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Preeclampsia</td>
<td>(15%−20%)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diabetes mellitus, thyroid disorders</td>
<td>Chromosomal/genetic abnormalities (8%−13%):</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Renal disease</td>
<td>monosomy X, trisomy 21,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Systemic lupus erythematosus</td>
<td>trisomy 18, and trisomy 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Autoimmune disease</td>
<td>Single gene disorders:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Antiphospholipid syndrome</td>
<td>hemoglobinopathies (e.g.,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cholestasis of pregnancy</td>
<td>alpha-thalassemia); metabolic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Obesity</td>
<td>diseases (e.g., Smith–Lemli–Opitz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Substance abuse</td>
<td>syndrome)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Smoking</td>
<td>Missense mutations leading to long</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Viral infections:</td>
<td>QT syndrome</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parvovirus B19</td>
<td>Glycogen storage diseases</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cytomegalovirus</td>
<td>Peroxisomal disorders amino acid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enteroviruses (e.g., coxsackie virus)</td>
<td>disorders</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Echoviruses</td>
<td>Confined placental mosaicism</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HSV-1, HSV-2</td>
<td>(aneuploidy in placenta with a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HIV</td>
<td>euploid fetus)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bacterial infections:</td>
<td>Placental abortion, placenta, and</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Listeria monocytogenes</td>
<td>vasa previa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Escherichia coli</td>
<td>Placental pathology</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Group B streptococci</td>
<td>Chronic villitis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ureaplasma urealyticum</td>
<td>Massive chorial intervillositis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Treponema pallidum</td>
<td>Complications of multifetal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Toxoplasma gondii</td>
<td>gestation (e.g., twin–twin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Uterine malformations</td>
<td>transfusion, twin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abdominal trauma</td>
<td>reversed arterial perfusion</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:** In bold, most common associations.

**Table 55.2 Maternal and Fetal Investigation for Fetal Death**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Predelivery</th>
<th>Postdelivery</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Amnion fluid for cytogenetics</td>
<td>Cord blood for cytogenetics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Screen for coagulopathy (only if fetal death &gt;4 wk from delivery)</td>
<td>Autopsy and placental examination</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CBC, antibody screen, urine drug screen</td>
<td>Protein C, protein S activity (in selected cases as described above for other thrombophilia workup)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kleihauer-Betke testing or flow cytometry</td>
<td>MRI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lupus anticoagulant, anticardiolipin antibodies (IgM, IgG) and anti-β₂-glycoprotein antibodies (IgM, IgG)</td>
<td>Consider workup for parvovirus especially in cases with fetal hydrops or other signs of this viral infection.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parvovirus B19 titers (IgM and IgG)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Preconception or initial prenatal visit
- Detailed medical and obstetrical history
- Evaluation/workup of previous stillbirth
- Determination of recurrence risk
- Discussion of increased risk of other obstetrical complications
- Smoking cessation
- Weight loss (back to normal BMI) in obese women
- Genetic counseling if family genetic condition exists
- Support and reassurance

First trimester
- Dating ultrasound by crown–rump length (first trimester)
- First-trimester screen-PAPP-A, hCG, and nuchal translucency
- Diabetes screen
- Antiphospholipid antibodies
- Thrombophilia workup only if stillbirth associated with severe placental infarcts, fetal growth restriction, or in the setting of a personal history of thrombosis. Support and reassurance

Second trimester
- Fetal anatomic survey at 18 to 20 wk
- Quadruple screen-MSAFP, hCG, estriol, and inhibin-A
- Uterine artery Doppler studies at 22 to 24 wk
- Support and reassurance

Third trimester
- Serial ultrasound about every 4 wk to rule out fetal growth restriction, starting at 28 wk
- Fetal movement counting starting at 28 wk
- Antepartum fetal surveillance (e.g., nonstress tests or biophysical profiles) starting at 32 wk or 1 to 2 wk earlier prior to gestational age of previous stillbirth if occurred prior to 32 wk
- Support and reassurance

Delivery
- Planned induction at 39 wk or before 39 wk if desired by the couple and lung maturity documented by amniocentesis

Before delivery, obtain consent for fetal autopsy. If consent is not given for a full autopsy, ask the parents to consider a limited autopsy, such as external examination by pathologist/clinical geneticist or internal examination limited to brain and/or spinal cord, chest organs, or abdominal organs as appropriate, or an MRI [29].

At delivery, examine baby and placenta carefully. General exam immediately after delivery should include noting any dysmorphology/congenital abnormalities as well as obtaining weight, length, and head circumference. Foot length may be especially useful for earlier stillbirths that may have a few weeks lag between death and delivery to pinpoint gestational age at death. Photographs of the entire body; frontal and profile views of the face, extremities, and palms; and close-up photographs of specific abnormalities should be obtained [3]. The placenta should be weighed and compared to the norms for gestational age. Clinical geneticist evaluation if available is often helpful.

Prior to autopsy, karyotypic analyses should be performed on all stillbirths after parental consent is obtained. Yield for abnormalities is higher if the following is present: fetus with growth restriction, anomalies, or hydrops or the parent is a balanced translocation carrier or has a mosaic karyotype [3]. The most viable tissue for cytogenetic and molecular genetic studies is usually the placenta (1 × 1 cm block) taken from below the cord insertion site on the unfixed placenta or umbilical cord closest to the placenta, followed by fetal cartilage obtained from the costochondral junction or patella [3,30]. Placental tissue can be sent for karyotype to check for confined placental mosaicism. Skin surface should be cleansed with betadine or hibiclens prior to obtaining specimen. Tissue should be placed in Hanks solution (pink) or normal saline if Hanks solution is not available, not in formalin. Cytogenetic form should be completed with pertinent details. Attempts at cell culture, however, fail in half of the cases. If culture is unsuccessful, fluorescent in situ hybridization to detect most common aneuploidy or comparative genomic hybridization (cGH), which detects small deletions or duplications, and termed copy number changes not detectable by karyotype may be useful since both technologies do not require live cells [31]. Testing for rarer causes of stillbirth such as single gene disorders or mutations in Long QT genes should be guided by clinical suspicion or family history [32].

Autopsy is the most useful test in identifying the cause of fetal death. Not only are gross birth defects and morphologic abnormalities identified, but subtle findings of the autopsy may confirm infection, anemia, hypoxia, and metabolic abnormalities as the cause of death. Autopsy reduces the number of unexplained fetal deaths by at least 10% [33]. Autopsy findings altered counseling and recurrence risks autopsy in 26% of all cases at one institution [34]. The addition of autopsy to clinical and laboratory data and placental examination resulted in improved identification of probable cause of death to 74% in a cohort study at a tertiary care center [35]. Autopsy should
include X-rays of the fetus and photographs and follow College of American Pathologists guidelines (http://www.cap.org). Whole-body X-ray with anterior–posterior and lateral views may reveal an unrecognized skeletal abnormality or further define an already visible abnormality. Estimation of the interval between intrauterine death and delivery should be performed. Clinical information, all records including ultrasound reports regarding the case, and any specific requests, should be made available to the pathologist. It is suggested for the obstetrician to call the pathology resident/attending assigned to autopsy for discussion. A perinatal pathologist with experience in fetal death cases should perform the autopsy. Examination by a physician experienced in genetics and dysmorphology may increase the yield of autopsy. If autopsy is declined, it is important to consider a head-sparing autopsy or at least MRI of the stillborn child [36]. If a complete autopsy is not feasible, minimal invasive autopsy, which includes postnatal MRI, blood sampling from the dead fetus at autopsy, clinical history review, and external evaluation can be performed [37]. Ultrasound of the brain may also be considered for confirmation or refining the diagnosis of genetic syndromes and chromosomal abnormalities in addition to autopsy [38].

7. Send placenta, membranes, and umbilical cord for gross and microscopic pathologic examination. Conditions causing or contributing to stillbirth may be diagnosed, such as abruption, placental infarcts, umbilical cord thrombosis, velamentous cord insertion, and vasa previa. Placental evaluation can also yield important information regarding infection, genetic abnormalities, anemia, and thrombophilia. Umbilical cord knots and tangling should be noted but interpreted carefully as cord entanglement occurs in 30% of normal pregnancies [3,39]. Examination of the placenta vasculature and membranes is particularly useful in multifetal gestations by establishing choriioncrosis and vascular anastomoses.

8. If autopsy, placental pathology, or history is suggestive of an infectious etiology, maternal or neonatal serology, special tissue stains, and/or testing for bacterial or viral nucleic acids may be undertaken. If clinical or histologic evidence is lacking, then routine testing for infection is of questionable benefit.

9. Maternal labs [3] (Table 55.2):
   a. Kleihauer–Betke testing or flow cytometry are sent to evaluate for fetal–maternal hemorrhage (prior to delivery is optimal).
   b. Lupus anticoagulant, anticardiolipin antibodies (IgM, IgG), and anti-beta-glycoprotein antibodies (IgM, IgG) can be sent to test for antiphospholipid syndrome. Presence of lupus anticoagulant or anticardiolipin antibodies of moderate to high titer (>40 immunoglobulin M (IgM) binding/immunoglobulin G (IgG) binding or >99th percentile) or anti-beta-glycoprotein antibody titer (>99th percentile) are all considered positive but should be confirmed with repeat testing 12 weeks later [40] (see also Chapter 26).
   c. Parvovirus B19 titers (IgM and IgG) can be considered, especially in cases in which there is suspicion for this infection, such as those with fetal hydrops or fetal anemia [41]. CMV, toxoplasmosis, and other viruses and/or bacteria are not suggested for workup, unless clinical history or other factors (pathology findings) point to these infections.
   d. Syphilis testing can be sent with RPR or VDRL.
   e. Glucose screening (oral glucose tolerance test, hemoglobin A1c) (if glucose screening not done in pregnancy).
   f. Thrombophilia workup should be sent only in cases of severe placentinal pathology, fetal growth restriction, or in the setting of a personal history or history in a first-degree relative (e.g., parent or sibling) of thrombosis (factor V Leiden mutation; G20210A prothrombin gene mutation; deficiencies of antithrombin III, protein C, protein S) (see Chapter 27). Routine testing is controversial and may lead to unnecessary interventions [3].

10. Consider any other workup, depending on risk factor identified in Table 55.1. For fetal demise before 20 weeks, consider individualized workup and refer to chapter on pregnancy loss (Chapter 15 in Obstetric Evidence Based Guidelines).

**DELIVERY/ANESTHESIA**

Once diagnosis is confirmed and counseling and workup initiated, options for delivery should be discussed. Options include expectant management, induction, or dilation and evacuation (D&E).

**Expectant Management**

Between 80% and 90% of women with fetal death will spontaneously enter labor within two weeks of fetal demise [42]. Duration of labor is shorter in patients with spontaneous labor [43]. However, endomyometritis rate is higher in the spontaneous labor group (6% vs. 1%) compared to induction. There is no difference in the frequency of postpartum hemorrhage, retained placenta, or need for blood transfusion. Retention of a dead fetus can cause chronic consumptive coagulopathy because of gradual release of thromboplastin from the placenta into the maternal circulation [30]. This usually occurs after four weeks but may occur earlier. Coagulation abnormalities occur in about 3% to 4% of patients with uncomplicated fetal deaths over the next four to eight weeks, and this number rises in the presence of abruption or uterine perforation [30]. Another disadvantage of expectant management is a long interval between fetal death and spontaneous labor, limiting the amount of information that can be obtained about the cause of death from a postmortem examination or autopsy of the baby. Moreover, women with fetal death find it difficult psychologically to continue a pregnancy with a known fetal death [44]. In patients opting for spontaneous labor (especially with greater than four-week interval between fetal death and time of delivery), a screen for coagulopathy (fibrinogen level, platelet count, prothrombin time, and activated partial thromboplastin measurement) should be obtained prior to administration of neuraxial anesthesia as well as other invasive procedures [30].

**Dilation and Evacuation**

Comparing complication rates of patients who undergo D&E or medical induction between 14 and 24 weeks of gestation, D&E is a safe method in this time frame, especially if done by experienced operators under continuous ultrasound guidance [45]. Surgical termination of pregnancy between 14 and 24 weeks of gestation has a lower overall rate of complications (4%) as compared to 29% in women undergoing labor induction [45]. Patients undergoing D&E are less...
likely to have failure of the initial method for delivery and retained products of conception. However, both groups are similar in the need for blood transfusion, infection, cervical laceration, maternal organ damage, or hospital readmission. Placenta previa is associated with a lower risk of complications from D&E, and misoprostol is associated with a lower complication rate in women undergoing medical termination [45]. A Cochrane review [46] concluded that D&E is superior to instillation of prostaglandin F2a and may be favored over mifepristone and misoprostol although larger randomized studies are needed. Using decision analysis, a cost-effectiveness analysis concluded that D&E is less expensive and more effective than misoprostol induction of labor for second-trimester pregnancy termination [47]. Studies do not show an increased rate of complications in subsequent pregnancies after D&E although data are limited [48,49]. Both methods for delivery are considered reasonably safe. Thus, mode of delivery should usually be based on the patient's wishes. However, patients should be counseled that efficacy of autopsy is very limited with D&E [3]. In addition, the availability of D&E may be limited by provider experience or gestational age.

Induction

Induction of labor in women with fetal death is usually recommended unless the patient is already in labor given the problems mentioned with expectant management. Induction of labor is typically initiated soon after diagnosis of fetal death. Most of the data for management of fetal death is from randomized trials of second-trimester pregnancy termination.

Up to 28 Weeks

Options for induction of labor for fetal death at about 16 to 28 weeks include misoprostol (prostaglandin E1, PGE1), prostaglandins E2 (PGE2), high-dose oxtocin, and hypertonic saline. Misoprostol (preferred) and high-dose oxtocin are the two modalities with the best safety and effectiveness evidence.

Available evidence from randomized trials do support the use of vaginal misoprostol as a medical treatment to terminate nonviable pregnancies before 24 weeks of gestation [50,51]. On the basis of the limited data, the use of misoprostol between 24 to 28 weeks of gestation also appears to be safe and effective [50]. Therefore, for gestations less than 28 weeks, misoprostol is the most efficient method of induction regardless of Bishop score although high-dose oxytocin infusion is an acceptable alternative [3]. Typical dosages for misoprostol use are 200 to 400 mcg vaginally, orally, or 200 mcg buccal every 4 to 12 hours [3]. Examples of regimens for misoprostol dosing are 200 mcg vaginally every 4 hours, 400 mcg orally every 4 hours, 200 mcg buccal, or 600 mcg vaginally every 12 hours. These result in successful expulsion (mostly within 24 hours) in 80% to 100% of cases [3,52–54]. Misoprostol 400 mcg given orally every 4 hours is more effective than misoprostol 200 mcg given vaginally every 12 hours for the induction of second- and third-trimester pregnancy with intrauterine fetal death within 24 hours but is associated with more gastrointestinal side effects [52,55]. Misoprostol 600 mcg administered vaginally at 12-hour intervals is associated with fewer adverse effects and is as effective as dosing at 6-hour intervals [53].

High-dose oxytocin (200 units in 500 mL saline at 50 mL/hour) also may be used for induction of labor remote from term [56]. The mother should be observed for signs of water intoxication, and maternal electrolyte concentrations should be monitored at least every 24 hours. Nausea and malaise are the earliest findings of hyponatremia and may be seen when the plasma sodium concentration falls below 125 to 130 mEq/L. This may be followed by headache, lethargy, obtundation, and eventually seizures, coma, and respiratory arrest. Misoprostol 50 mcg with dose doubled every 6 hours until effective contractions is associated with a success rate within 48 hours of induction of 100% compared to 96.7% to oxytocin infusion titrated on the basis of patient response with mean induction to delivery time significantly longer (almost double) in the oxytocin group compared with the misoprostol group (23.3 vs. 12.4 hours). Misoprostol is also cheaper (1/10th the price of oxytocin) [57].

Historically, PGE2 suppositories with a dose of 20 mg inserted vaginally every four hours were also utilized for labor induction before 28 weeks. Pretreatment with acetaminophen, compazine, and diphenoxylate is useful to minimize fever, nausea, vomiting, and diarrhea, which invariably occur. The PGE2 dose should be reduced to 5 to 10 mg if used at a more advanced gestation (off-label use) as uterine sensitivity and the risk of uterine rupture increase with gestational age [58]. High-dose PGE2 suppositories are contraindicated >28 weeks gestation [59]. Misoprostol is more efficacious and at least as safe and cheaper than PGE2, and so the use of PGE2 for induction of fetal death before 28 weeks is not recommended and of mostly historic importance only.

The efficacy and tolerance of mifepristone (RU 486), a progesterone antagonist, was investigated in a double-blind controlled multicenter study involving 94 patients with an intrauterine fetal death [60]. Success of treatment was defined as the occurrence of fetal expulsion within 72 hours after the first drug intake. Mifepristone treatment (600 mg/day for two days) was considered to be effective in 29 of 46 patients (63%). There were only eight successes in 48 patients (17.4%) in the placebo group (p = .001). Tolerance was good in the mifepristone group. In the placebo group, disseminated intravascular coagulation occurred in one woman for whom the investigator waited several weeks for spontaneous expulsion. Another RCT compared high-concentration oxytocin to misoprostol given 36 hours after initial mifepristone 200 mg in second trimester abortion for either IUFD or voluntary termination. The mifepristone–oxytocin regimen had longer time until expulsion but fewer side effects [61]. Mifepristone is of interest in the management of intrauterine fetal death with more studies needed to compare the above methods, in particular misoprostol with mifepristone.

To date, there are no studies evaluating laminaria for ripening of the cervix in conjunction with other methods of induction for cases of fetal death.

After 28 Weeks

After 28 weeks of gestation, drugs such as oxytocin and/or prostaglandins administered for induction of labor can be given according to standard obstetric protocols [3] (see Chapter 21 in Obstetric Evidence Based Guidelines). Cesarean delivery for stillbirth is reserved for unusual circumstances (maternal indications) because it is associated with maternal morbidity without fetal benefit [3].

Women with Prior Uterine Scar

Women with a prior uterine scar represent a special group and treatment should be individualized. For women with
Fetal death: a previous low transverse incision and a uterus less than 28 weeks size, the usual protocols for misoprostol induction at less than 28 weeks may be used [3,50]. Several studies have evaluated the use of misoprostol at a dosage of 400 mcg every six hours in women with a stillbirth up to 28 weeks of gestation and a prior uterine scar [62,63]. There does not appear to be an increase in complications in those women. The risk of uterine rupture is about 0.4% with one prior low transverse CD, up to 9% with ≥2 prior CD, and up to 50% with prior vertical CD [64]. Further research is required to assess effectiveness and safety, optimal route of administration, and dose [50].

For women with a previous low transverse incision, after 28 weeks of gestation, oxytocin protocols may be utilized and cervical ripening with Foley bulb may be considered [3,50]. Patients may elect for a repeat CD in the setting of a stillbirth, but the risks and benefits should be discussed with the patient. Ideally, a cesarean should be avoided. Therefore, on the basis of limited data in patients with a prior low transverse CD, trial of labor remains a favorable option [3,50]. There are limited data for patients with a prior classical uterine incision or prior myomectomy; therefore, the delivery plan should be individualized [3,50].

POSTPARTUM

Prior to discharge, the family needs to be counseled that results of all investigations may take two or three months for completion and that despite extensive evaluation a cause of death may not be found. Patients should be offered the opportunity to see and hold their infant and be offered keepsake items such as photos, hand/footprints, or special blankets or clothing. Grief counseling should be initiated prior to discharge from hospital. Referral to a bereavement counselor, religious leader, peer support group, or mental health professional is advisable for management of grief and depression.

Fetal death causes “very much” grief also in the majority of obstetricians, who can experience self-doubt, depression, and self-blame in relation to their patient’s loss [65].

PREVENTION OF RECURRENCE AND MANAGEMENT IN A FUTURE PREGNANCY

A special outpatient visit should be set up to review the results of the complete workup and discuss possible etiology and future management (Table 55.3). If a particular medical problem is identified in the mother, it should be addressed prior to next conception (see specific guidelines). For example, tight control of blood glucose prior to conception can substantially reduce the risk of congenital anomalies in the fetus. Preconception counseling is helpful if congenital anomalies or genetic abnormalities are found. In the future, comparative genomic hybridization, FISH, and other novel genetic techniques will provide better ways to workup the myriad genetic causes of fetal death. A woman with a prior fetal loss and either factor V or prothrombin heterozygocity or protein S deficiency might benefit from enoxaparin 40 mg SQ daily starting at eight weeks [53]. Compared with low-dose aspirin, women who had had a previous fetal loss after the 10th week and had a thrombophilic defect (heterozygous factor V Leiden, prothrombin G20210A, or protein S deficiency), enoxaparin 40 mg daily treatment is associated with a tenfold increased live birth rate as compared with low-dose aspirin in only one trial [66]. In some cases, such as cord occlusion, the patient can be assured that recurrence is unlikely [39,67]. Overall, there is an increased incidence of pregnancy complications, such as stillbirth (2.5- to 10-fold increase depending on the study) [17,68], preterm birth (OR 2.8, 95% CI 1.9–4.2), preeclampsia (OR 3.1, 95% CI 1.7–5.7), and placental abruption (OR 9.4, 95% CI 4.5–19.7) [80] in subsequent pregnancies [69]. Most patients find increased fetal surveillance with the next pregnancy reassuring.

Fetal growth ultrasounds and kick counts starting at 28 weeks and antepartum surveillance starting at 32 weeks may be implemented [3]. In a woman with a prior IUFD, planned induction can be discussed with the patient in terms of risks and benefits [3]. If any of the surveillance demonstrates no maternal or fetal issues complicating the pregnancy, consideration for 38 0/7–39 6/7 week induction should be considered [70].

REFERENCES

15. Raymond EG, Cnattingius S, Kiely JL. Effects of maternal age, parity, and smoking on the risk of stillbirth. BJOG 1994; 101: 301–6. [II-2]


59. PROSTIN E2® Vaginal Suppository package insert. [III]


Antepartum testing
Nora Graham and Christopher R. Harman

KEY POINTS
- There are no randomized trial data proving that antepartum testing reduces long-term neurologic deficits.
- Although entrenched in high-risk pregnancy management, most antenatal testing schemes are not supported by high-level evidence. Recommendations regarding which pregnancies to test and at what gestational age testing should start cannot be made given lack of sufficient evidence.
- Multiple parameter testing schemes have better correlation with fetal condition than do single-parameter tests.
- Antenatal NST results appear to have no significant effect on perinatal mortality (PNM) or potentially preventable deaths. The NST used alone is not adequate to exclude several important sources of perinatal injury. Computerized cardiotocography may have benefit over standard NST in high-risk cases.
- Biophysical profile score (BPS) surveillance may be beneficial in reducing cerebral palsy with insufficient trial evidence. Compared to other fetal testing (usually NST), biophysical profile increases the incidence of induction and cesarean delivery but not admission to ICN or perinatal mortality. Individual components have been compared in some trials, but the value of that evidence is limited.
- Umbilical artery (UA) Doppler decreases perinatal mortality in antenatal management of fetal growth restriction (FGR) fetuses and should be routinely used in these pregnancies but not in normal pregnancies. Compared to no Doppler ultrasound, UA Doppler ultrasound in high-risk pregnancy (especially those complicated by hypertension or presumed FGR) is associated with a reduction in perinatal deaths with fewer inductions of labor and fewer admissions to the hospital.
- There are few studies comparing Doppler versus BPS. There are no management trials. BPS may correlate better with perinatal results, but this has not been shown to improve long-term neurologic outcomes. The combination of Doppler and BPS may improve perinatal mortality in severe IUGR, with limited evidence.
- Ancillary tests, such as contraction stress test, oxytocin challenge test, and vibroacoustic stimulation, may have specific uses but limited applicability.
- Formal maternal counting of fetal movement has been associated with differing results in trials and has insufficient data to prove ability in preventing fetal death.
- Testing frequency and complexity should be adjusted to reflect the stability of the clinical situation.

BACKGROUND
The main motive underlying antepartum fetal assessment is to prevent stillbirth. Prevention of neurologic handicap, such as cerebral palsy, is another aim. Preventing these outcomes by prompt intervention for proven fetal compromise is balanced by avoiding impacts of unnecessary intervention for both fetus (iatrogenic prematurity) and mother (surgical complications). Extending the pregnancy to reduce prematurity may increase the risk of unexpected stillbirth but has measurable benefits in reduced long-term neurologic outcomes. Optimizing testing regimens means choosing methods, frequency, and disease-specific components while accounting for gestational-age influences, drug interactions, test variability, and even the interaction of test components. If we want to choose the test that is best at reducing stillbirth, there is some limited high-level evidence to inform us.

PRINCIPLES OF FETAL MONITORING
The ideal antenatal fetal testing regimen should do the following:
- Identify impending fetal injury with near-perfect sensitivity with warning advanced enough to allow effective intervention.
- Distinguish normal variation, benign abnormality, and degrees of significant abnormality, facilitating graded response.
- Identify normal fetal condition with near-perfect predictive value, reliably excluding stillbirth or injury for a clinically relevant interval.
- Exclude grievous fetal abnormality as the source of abnormal testing.
- Be applicable to a variety of common sources of fetal compromise, practicable in common prenatal settings, and reproducible between situations.
- Produce measurable benefits in reduction of perinatal death and long-term neurologic handicap.

FETAL-MONITORING METHODS
Fetal Movement Counting in Low-Risk Pregnancy
The largest randomized trial of maternal monitoring of fetal movement [1] failed to show any benefit over “informal inquiry about movement during standard antenatal care.” This trial produced a noticeable effect on control subjects, whose experience in the trial led to improved perinatal performance compared to nontrial participants in the general population. It did not produce a benefit in treated patients with the same perinatal mortality in both study and control patients. Many women do report reduced fetal activity prior to stillbirth, so why did this trial demonstrate no effect? First, decreased movement was not reported promptly by many subjects. Second, the “rescue” method was simple cardiotocography, where false reassurance of a normal heart rate...
preceded a large proportion of fetal deaths. It may be that maternal awareness of fetal activity can be a useful adjunct in monitoring low-risk situations if reporting is immediate and if the rescue method is full BPS or even more complex assessment. While three additional small studies of movement counting provide some information, there are no apparent benefits in reduced adverse outcomes [2]. The “count to 10” method (count to 10 movements then resume normal activity) versus counting for a specified length of time (e.g., 30 minutes of counting every six to eight hours) was associated with better patient compliance [3]. Overall, data do not support reliance on fetal movement counting between episodes of formal fetal assessment in high-risk pregnancy [3].

Fetal Heart Rate Testing (Nonstress Test, NST, or Cardiotocography, CTG)

In this chapter, we use nonstress test (NST, more used in the United States) and cardiotocography (CTG, more used everywhere else in the world) interchangeably. The NST (or CTG) is defined as “reactive” when there are two or more accelerations of at least 15 beats per minute (bpm) above the baseline that last for at least 15 seconds in a 20-minute period of combined fetal heart rate (FHR) and uterine activity monitoring (Figure 56.1). A CTG (or NST) without these characteristics is called “nonreactive.” These criteria should only be used for fetuses ≥32 weeks.

Up to 50% of NSTs from 24–28 weeks and 15% of NSTs 28–32 weeks are nonreactive. Therefore, criteria were adapted to premature fetuses <32 weeks, assigning reactivity to accelerations of at least 10 bpm for at least 10 seconds [4–7]. These criteria based on accelerations have not been associated with any change in outcomes [8,9], so a fetus <32 weeks should not be delivered for a nonreactive NST but only for bradycardia or other similar nonreassuring fetal heart tracings. These criteria for interpretation <32 weeks have been endorsed in national guidelines [4,10–12].

In fetuses ≥32 weeks, the concordance between fetal movement and accelerations in FHR is good evidence of fetal well-being with a negative predictive value against fetal demise within seven days of 99.5% to 99.8% [13]. However, in specific circumstances, such as FGR with abnormal placental resistance, the NST may give a false-positive reassurance against acidosis as high as 15% [14]. Missed anomalies and missed oligohydramnios are major contributors to fetal complications in patients with reactive tracings when NST is used in isolation.

In practical monitoring terms, the false-alarming nonreactive NST is more problematic, occurring in up to 10% of

Figure 56.1  FHR monitoring. (a) A reactive nonstress test (NST) demonstrates multiple FHR accelerations associated with fetal movements. This external tracing, obtained at 37 weeks gestation, is highly reassuring of fetal health, the absence of hypoxemia, and the presence of a normal umbilical arterial pH. (b) Cyclic fetal behavior demonstrated by FHR tracing. For the first nine minutes, the fetus was virtually inactive with a nonreactive segment. When fetal movements resumed, an increase in variability and repetitive accelerations demonstrates conversion to active sleep (a “state change” from 1F on the left to 2F on the right).
tests at term [6] and up to 50% of the time at 24 to 28 weeks gestational age. Variable decelerations that are less than 30 seconds and nonrepetitive denote an “equivocal” NST and are not associated with fetal compromise [15]. Repetitive variable decelerations are associated with increased cesarean delivery [16] while decelerations lasting longer than one minute are associated with increased risk of cesarean delivery but also fetal demise [17–19]. When the subsequent confirmatory test (BPS, contraction stress test [CST], vibroacoustic stimulation [VAS], as examples) is performed after a nonreactive NST, up to 85% will be normal. If performed, the NST should be done in the semi-Fowler (“sitting”) position—this decreases the need for prolonged monitoring compared to the supine position [20,21].

Modified CTG recording methods utilize fetal stimulation to shorten the time to reach reactivity to convert nonreactive FHR tracings to reactivity as a confirmatory test for nonreactive NST and in highest risk populations as a more precise test of fetal well-being.

A type of stimulation is VAS [22]. The fetus is stimulated by external high-amplitude white noise applied to the maternal abdomen. This is capable of causing state change in most fetuses at term [23]. Occasional side effects include conversion to fixed fetal arrhythmia and serious concerns about delivery of high-pressure sound (up to 130 decibels) and effects on fetal hearing [23]. Since premature fetuses typically require more sound pressure to elicit responses and are more susceptible to hearing injury, use of VAS before 32 weeks should be very cautious. Compared to no such stimulation, fetal VAS has been associated with a reduction in the incidence of nonreactive antenatal CTG test (RR 0.62, 95% CI 0.52–0.74) and reduced the overall mean CTG testing time by about 10 minutes [24]. Applied to modified BPS testing, VAS is associated with a 67% false alarm rate requiring performance of full BPS [25]. More critical, however, is the false negative rate: 55% of fetuses with subsequent FHR abnormalities had reassuring VAS-NST [26]. Sound responsiveness is reduced in many high-risk groups (less than 32 weeks, hypertension, depression, severe IUGR, cocaine exposure, treatment with magnesium sulfate or antenatal steroids) [23]. Specific trials have demonstrated superiority of multivariable testing, including Doppler, NST, and biophysical variables over either CST or VAS in prolonged pregnancy and IUGR. Both trials concluded CST and VAS could be eliminated from fetal testing regimens [27,28]. The proven effect of VAS to provoke fetal neurologic state change seems outweighed by its ability to generate false reassurance. Routine application in high-risk fetal populations is not recommended.

Compared to no administration, antenatal maternal glucose administration (20–50 mg orally, e.g., as orange juice) does not decrease the incidence of nonreactive antenatal CTG tests regardless of prior fasting or nonfasting [29]. Compared to controls, neither orange juice nor chocolate decrease the incidence of nonreactive antenatal CTG tests [30].

Compared to no manipulation or to VAS, manual fetal manipulation does not decrease the incidence of nonreactive antenatal CTG test [31].

Shining a bright halogen light on the mother’s abdomen shortens the time to first acceleration on NST [32].

Strong evidence, including randomized trial data, suggests that the NST should in general not be used as a solitary method of monitoring high-risk fetuses [33–36]. In a meta-analysis of randomized trials, compared to no NST or concealment of information, knowledge of antenatal NST results appears to have no significant effect on perinatal mortality (PNM) or potentially preventable deaths with a worrying trend toward harm (RR 2.46, 95% CI 0.96–6.30). There is no significant impact on cesarean section rate or on the occurrence of various secondary outcomes [35].

Computerized interpretation of FHR monitoring has evolved as a more specific, objective means of maximizing the information obtained from the NST [37]. Computerized CTG (CCTG) analyzes digitized epochs of FHR for numerical criteria, out-putting objective data on short-term variability (mean of 4–8 milliseconds) and overall variability recorded as mean minute variation. Values for short-term variability below three milliseconds show strong correlation with fetal acidois. The CCTG is not as limited by gestational age and does not require vigorous fetal activity to document a normal result, so it might be adopted as a better version of FHR analysis for a broader range of fetal indications. CCTG is superior to simple CTG in performance time, positive and negative predictive accuracies, and fewer equivocal test results [38]. Computerized assessment is associated with lower PNM compared to traditional CTG interpretation (9/1000 vs. 4.2/1000, RR 0.20, 95% CI 0.04–0.88), but the clinical significance of this difference is elusive as there was no difference in potentially preventable deaths [35].

Intrapartum FHR monitoring has advanced significantly because of advanced computerized analysis [39] (see Chapter 10 in Obstetric Evidence Based Guidelines). Access to computerized assessment improves intrapartum prediction of acidosis [40]. ST-segment analysis enhances intrapartum monitoring when fetal EKG is obtained [41] but has not led to a significant decline in neonatal acidosis in a randomized study [42]. Antenatal assessment using CCTG for high-risk premature fetuses may produce more accurate correlation with fetal condition (as compared to traditional NST) but has limited value as a standalone test [43].

Response to Abnormal CTG Test Results
Management depends heavily on gestational age. At ≥32 weeks, a nonreactive NST should be followed immediately by full BPS. In specific circumstances, intervention may be based on FHR testing alone. At term, in a fetus previously documented as having a reactive NST with normal variability, delivery should be considered if the tracing shows minimal or absent variability and/or repetitive late decelerations. In uncommon cases, an NST may detect a fetal arrhythmia, requiring prompt referral for fetal echocardiography and ultrasound examination. In other circumstances, (e.g., fetal growth restriction), umbilical artery Doppler testing is the main criteria that guides management, together with the CTG. Before 32 weeks, a non-reactive CTG is often normal as stated above and may only require outpatient follow-up.

Contraction Stress Test
The CST (contraction stress test) and the OCT (oxytocin challenge test) are fetal tests in which spontaneous and induced contractions, respectively, stress the fetoplacental unit either by placental compression or by cord compression, producing either decelerations in the abnormal test or no decelerations when the test is normal. These tests have higher negative predictive value than NST alone, similar to biophysical and Doppler methods (3–4 per 10,000 tests), but have high rates of equivocal results and a high rate of false alarming.
results. For example, when BPS is used as the backup test for positive (abnormal) CST, at least 50% of pregnancies can safely continue for at least a week [44]. High cost, requirement of hospital facilities, disagreement on fundamental interpretation of the test, and occasional complications resulting from the test methods have marginalized these techniques, which are currently rarely used if at all. The OCT may have a role in determining the route of delivery when the need for intervention has already been determined (e.g., a positive OCT means proceed to cesarean section), but the data available do not justify any firm conclusion.

**Biophysical Profile Scoring**

This ultrasound-based modality uses five parameters of fetal behavior in a protocol-driven format (Table 56.1) to manage high-risk pregnancies [45]. The parameters have different sensitivities for different fetal outcomes, but combining the variables gives a more accurate prediction of fetal status (Figure 56.2) [23,46,47]. Application of BPS has been shown to reduce PNM (historical controls, Table 56.2) [48–50], and long-term neurologic handicap; however, randomized trials of BPS versus no monitoring have not been done. One quasirandomized (odd vs. even numbers) nonblinded trial, done over 35 years ago, of BPS versus NST [51] concludes that BPS has a similar sensitivity of overall abnormal fetal outcomes, including perinatal mortality, compared to NST. Randomized trials comparing Doppler methods to BPS have been very small and unable to evaluate such infrequent outcomes [52–56]. In 315 high-risk pregnancies, BPS, umbilical Doppler, and uterine Doppler were performed in all subjects ≥36 weeks gestation [56]. In predicting nonreassuring fetal status, test sensitivity was 60% for BPS, 50% for UA Doppler, and 30% for uterine artery Doppler. Sensitivity was improved to 70% when BPS and umbilical Doppler were combined, reiterating the multivariable findings at earlier gestation [43].

**Compared to other fetal testing (usually NST), BPS may increase the incidence of cesarean section, but does not affect incidences of low Apgar scores, admission to ICN, or PNM (2 trials) [57].** Further trials are needed to assess the utility of BPS in high-risk pregnancies.

**Table 56.1 Interpretation of BPS Variables**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Fetal Variable</th>
<th>Normal Behavior (Score = 2)</th>
<th>Abnormal Behavior (Score = 0)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Fetal breathing movements</td>
<td>Intermittent, multiple episodes of more than 30-sec duration, within 30-min BPS time frame.</td>
<td>Continuous breathing without cessation. Completely absent breathing or no sustained episodes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hiccups count. Continuous FBM for 30 min = R/O fetal acidosis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Body or limb movements</td>
<td>At least four discrete body movements in 30 min. Includes fine motor movements, rolling movements, and so on, but not REM or mouthing movements</td>
<td>Three or fewer body/limb movements in a 30-min observation period</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fetal tone/posture</td>
<td>Demonstration of active extension with rapid return to flexion of fetal limbs and brisk repositioning/trunk rotation. Opening and closing of hand, mouth, kicking, and so on</td>
<td>Low-velocity movement only. Incomplete flexion, flaccid extremity positions, abnormal fetal posture. Must score = 0 when FM completely absent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cardiotocogram</td>
<td>At least two episodes of fetal acceleration of &gt;15 bpm and of &gt;15 sec duration. Normal mean variation (computerized FHR interpretation), accelerations associated with maternal palpation FM (accelerations graded for gestation), 20-min CTG</td>
<td>Fetal movement and accelerations not coupled. Insufficient accelerations, absent accelerations, or decelerative trace. Mean variation &lt;20 on numerical analysis of CTG</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amniotic fluid evaluation</td>
<td>At least one pocket ≥2 cm with no umbilical cord. Also consider criteria for subjectively reduced fluid</td>
<td>No cord-free pocket ≥2 cm or multiple elements of subjectively reduced amniotic fluid volume definite</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Abbreviations:** BPS, biophysical profile score; CTG, cardiotocogram; FBM, fetal breathing movements; FHR, fetal heart rate; FM, fetal movement; REM, rapid eye movement; R/O, rule-out.

**Figure 56.2** Biophysical profile score (BPS) has an exponential relationship to neonatal outcome. Declining scores strongly predict increasing frequency of fetal distress (FD), cesarean section for fetal distress (LSCS-FD), low five-minute Apgar score, and acidic umbilical vein pH.

**Fetal Breathing Movements**

These are rhythmic contractions of the fetal diaphragms that demonstrate a maturational pattern. They are unrelated to fetal CO₂ levels but related to diurnal rhythms and fetal cortisol levels. Human fetuses are stimulated to breathe by maternal glucose levels; therefore, outpatient BPS can be done most
efficiently following mealtimes. Fetal breathing movements are very sensitive to hypoxemia, first illustrating longer periods of fetal apnea between bursts, then being lost altogether [58]. In BPS, fetal hiccups are treated equivalently.

Fetal Body Movements
Total fetal activity declines when hypoxemia begins, often associated with a gradual drop in amniotic fluid volume [59]. The frequency of fetal movements is a maturational variable—many term fetuses will move during only 10 to 15 minutes in an hour of observation while a 28-week fetus who only did that would frequently prove abnormal.

Fetal Tone
The fetus must move to demonstrate tone—it is not simply a flexed posture. The spasm of fetal activity during startle motions provoked by acoustic stimulation does not constitute normal muscle tone and may give a misleading impression of well being.

Amniotic Fluid Volume
This is discussed in detail in a separate guideline (see Chapter 57). In BPS, the maximum vertical pocket (MVP) is the standard [60,61]. MVP ≥2 cm meets criteria for a BPS score of 2 [23]. Reduced amniotic fluid volume is thought to represent reduced fetal urine production assuming normal fetal swallowing. Hemodynamically mediated redistribution of fetal blood flow, not hypoxic renal ischemia as once suggested, is the probable mechanism.

CTG
The FHR is a sensitive indicator of fetal compromise with serial loss of CTG reactivity, reduced variability, no variability, and appearance of late decelerations. However, fetuses show the first two of these during normal cyclic behavior, so a BPS of 8/8 is just as indicative of normal well being as a score of 10/10. NST, therefore, should only be used in fetuses not demonstrating normal behavior in the ultrasound parameters done first [62]. When done in this order, only 2.7% require an NST. As noted above, BPS applies prematurity criteria to NST interpretation.

BPS Management
If biophysical profile testing is performed, the managing physician should be willing to act on the test results. Management by BPS follows a protocol that relates fetal condition, assumed perinatal risks, gestational age, and recommended action (Table 56.3). When BPS is persistently 8/10 on serial testing with the same variable missing, specific inquiry should be made about cause. In some cases, that is obvious from the clinical context (e.g., oligohydramnios in preterm premature rupture of membranes with normal fetal status). In other cases, it is not so clear. As suggested by Table 56.4, equivocal results in the preterm fetus call for repeated testing, transfer to appropriate neonatal resources, antenatal steroid administration, and so on, before moving to delivery. In high-risk fetuses, delivery can wait for valuable maturation time with normal BPS of 8/8 or 10/10 as proof that the fetus is not acidotic [63]. On the other hand, a BPS of 0–2/10 or 4/10 repeatedly should justify delivery at local thresholds of viability in absence of a transient cause [64]. If very premature gestational age (e.g., <26 weeks) means delivery is not mandated by BPS no matter how low the score, then we advise not to utilize BPS for fetal monitoring.

Table 56.2 Perinatal Mortality Changes with BPS Application

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Program</th>
<th>n</th>
<th>PNM with BPS</th>
<th>PNM without BPS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ireland (44)</td>
<td>3200</td>
<td>4.1</td>
<td>10.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nova Scotia (45)</td>
<td>5000</td>
<td>3.1</td>
<td>6.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manitoba (19)</td>
<td>56,000</td>
<td>1.9</td>
<td>7.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>California (46)</td>
<td>15,000</td>
<td>1.3</td>
<td>8.8</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Abbreviations: BPS, biophysical profile score; n, number tested; PNM, perinatal mortality/1000.

Table 56.3 Systematic Application of Biophysical Profile Scoring

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>BPS</th>
<th>Interpretation</th>
<th>Predicted PNM</th>
<th>Recommended Management</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>10/10</td>
<td>No evidence of fetal asphyxia present</td>
<td>Less than 1/1000</td>
<td>No acute intervention on fetal basis. Serial testing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8/8</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>indicated by disorder-specific protocols</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8/10 (AFV—normal)</td>
<td>Chronic fetal compromise likely</td>
<td>89/1000</td>
<td>For absolute oligohydramnios, prove normal urinary tract</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8/10—OLIGO</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>and disprove asymptomatic rupture of membranes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6/10 (AFV—normal)</td>
<td>Equivocal test, fetal asphyxia is not</td>
<td>Depends on progression (61/1000 on average)</td>
<td>Repeat testing in about 6 hr before assigning final value. If score is 6/10, then 10/10, in two continuous</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>excluded</td>
<td></td>
<td>30-min periods, manage as 10/10. For persistent 6/10, deliver</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>the term fetus, repeat within 24 hr in the preterm fetus,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>then deliver if less than 6/10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4/10</td>
<td>Acute fetal asphyxia likely. If AFV—OLIGO, acute on chronic asphyxia very likely</td>
<td>91/1000</td>
<td>Deliver by obstetrically appropriate method, with continuous</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2/10</td>
<td>Acute fetal asphyxia, most likely with chronic decompensation</td>
<td>125/1000</td>
<td>Monitoring</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0/10</td>
<td>Severe, acute asphyxia virtually certain</td>
<td>600/1000</td>
<td>Deliver for fetal indications (usually needs cesarean section for intolerance to labor)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Abbreviations: AFV, amniotic fluid volume; OLIGO, oligohydramnios; PNM, perinatal mortality.

*Per 1000 live births, within one week of test result shown, without intervention. For scores of 0, 2, or 4, intervention should begin virtually immediately, provided the fetus is viable.*
Modified Biophysical Profile Score

Many modifications have been proposed. The most popular combination suggested has been the amniotic fluid volume (AFV)—NST combination [65], including optional use of VAS [66,67] to shorten observation time. This combination uses AFV to reflect long-term uteroplacental function while the NST serves as an indicator of short-term function. Full BPS (all five variables) was the backup test, required in 15% to 30% of cases. MVP is used for AFV assessment. The simplified test reduced the time and complexity of BPS without altering the false negative rate, which is about 3 to 8 per 10,000 tests [66,68]. However, in assessing differences in the false positive rate, either the data are too few or the full BPS was superior to the restricted tests in avoiding unnecessary intervention.

The exceptions are trials of FGR management in which the modified BPS included Doppler information—in those cases, addition of Doppler assessment of umbilical arterial resistance both improved classification of fetal acidosis and reduced interference for false alarm BPS [65,66]. Shortening the BPS is not validated for high-risk fetuses with abnormal Doppler indices; preterm fetuses; postdate pregnancy; fetal anomalies; multiple gestation; or fetuses with arrhythmia, infection, anemia, or diabetic macrosomia.

Doppler of Fetal Vessels

The umbilical artery (UA) is the vessel most useful to screen by Doppler in clinical care, in particular for FGR fetuses. UA resistance progressively rises from tertiary stem villous deficiency and decreasing placental perfusion area and therefore is used as an indicator of placental function (Figure 56.3). UA Doppler assessment requires careful attention to technical detail and is usually done in the mid-section of the free umbilical cord [69]. Although each mathematical expression of the Doppler arterial flow velocity waveform has some advantages, the pulsatility index (PI) has the advantage of infinite expression (remaining valid even when end-diastolic flow is reversed) and autocorrelation with the volume of the waveform itself. When UA PI reaches an individualized threshold, higher blood pressure leads to cardiac and systemic effects. Initial cardiac effects, including ejection fraction, wall velocity, and transvalvular velocity, are measurable with sophisticated techniques. The systemic effects are also measured as a shift toward more cerebral perfusion using the Doppler waveform of the middle cerebral artery (MCA, Figure 56.4). Initially there is a subtle change in the cerebroplacental ratio (CPR) called centralization. This is thought to be from resistance-mediated diversion of flow away from an ailing placenta. Further deterioration in placental function may lead to a significant decline in the MCA PI as diastolic blood flow rises, which has been called brain sparing and may be mediated by hypoxemia-induced cerebral vasorelaxation [70]. Use of the CPR or MCA PI in monitoring FGR fetuses has an established relation to neurodevelopmental outcome [71], but CPR performs poorly as a screening test for adverse outcomes [72]. As with all Doppler studies, the cerebroplacental ratio should not be used in isolation if used at all. There is much recent enthusiasm, but no management trial data, to support use for the CPR to direct care [73].

As hemodynamic and respiratory declines continue to interact, oxygen-sensitive interfaces between nutrient rich and nonrich streams begin to dictate flow [74]. Diversion through an opening ductus venosus (DV) is readily depicted as progressive changes in waveform pattern (Figure 56.5). Deep reversal of the atrial contraction wave, a-wave, indicates both cardiac impairment (forward volume flow insufficiency forcing the waveform more retrograde) and hypoxemia (dilating the DV itself). DV contains the highest venous velocities in the fetal abdomen, but when the waveform is abnormal, it must be carefully differentiated from adjacent hepatic venous structures.

Functional aspects of the placenta, including placental volume flow, sequential placental flow distribution, and vascular responses to maternal hyperoxgenation are interesting from the physiologic point of view but too operator-dependent for clinical monitoring.

Doppler Application

Routine application of UA and/or uterine artery Doppler in normal pregnancy is of no proven benefit [75,76]. UA Doppler is instead beneficial in some high-risk pregnancies, especially those complicated by FGR. Worsening UA Doppler correlates well with declining placental function and the emergence of hypoxemia and acidosis (70). The UA Doppler will start to increase when the placenta is 60%–70% compromised [77]. Absent end-diastolic velocities denote an increasing risk of stillbirth, preterm delivery, birth weight below 10th percentile, and many neonatal complications (Table 56.5) [78]. UA Doppler is useful in directing care—small fetuses with normal Dopplers probably do not need the same level of surveillance as do those with abnormal umbilical flow [79]. Perinatal outcome is superior when UA Doppler is utilized in decision-making although interventions based on umbilical Doppler alone have a substantial risk of causing unnecessary prematurity [80,81]. Compared with no Doppler ultrasound, Doppler (mostly UA) ultrasound in high-risk pregnancy (especially those complicated by hypertension or presumed FGR) is associated with a reduction in perinatal death (1.2% vs. 1.7%, RR 0.71,95% CI 0.50–0.98). The use of Doppler ultrasound is also associated with fewer inductions of labor (RR 0.89) and fewer cesarean sections (RR 0.90) without reports of adverse effects. No difference is found for FHR abnormalities in labor or low Apgar scores [82] (see Chapter 45). In cases of FGR, fetuses with absent end-diastolic UA Doppler flow should be delivered around 34 weeks, and those with reversed end-diastolic UA Doppler flow should be delivered around 32 weeks [83]. Despite the strong correlations with fetal status, basing delivery decisions on UA Doppler alone, especially before 32 to 34 weeks and without the presence of absent or reversed diastolic flow, may lead to unnecessary mortality and morbidity due to extreme

Table 56.4 Risks of Stillbirth vs. Neonatal Death due to Prematurity

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>BPS</th>
<th>Stillbirth Rate (per 1,000 births)</th>
<th>Equivalent Neonatal Death Rate (wk)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>560</td>
<td>25.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>153</td>
<td>28.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>91</td>
<td>29.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>61</td>
<td>30.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>0.5</td>
<td>Full term</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>0.5</td>
<td>Full term</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

aDeath (per 1,000 births) within one week if the fetus remains undelivered. These figures change with time and differ between centers, including differences between inborn and transported babies.
Figure 56.3 Abnormalities in Doppler velocity waveforms of the umbilical artery depict increasing placental resistance. These Doppler examinations are from the same patient as pregnancy progresses. (a) The umbilical artery resistance is modestly elevated at 18 weeks (PI 1.47). By 24 weeks (b), end-diastolic velocities are absent in most cardiac cycles. By 28 weeks (c), reversal of end-diastolic flow occupies nearly one quarter of the cardiac cycle. Cesarean section was carried out on the basis of oligohydramnios at 29+ weeks with umbilical venous pH 7.18. Abbreviation: PI, pulsatility index.
Antepartum testing

503

Prematurity [84–86]. This was shown also by the GRIT trial (Table 56.6) [87,88].

Evaluation of venous Doppler waveforms may be useful in prediction of morbidity and mortality in FGR. Ductus venosus (DV) abnormality is a strong predictor of adverse perinatal outcome, surpassing all other predictors [89,90]. However, the best outcomes occurred when BPS was used to maximize the safe prolongation of pregnancy [91]. Even in the most compromised pregnancy, gestational age was the most influential factor in determining outcome. These principles have been amplified further in nontrial observations. First, the most severe DV abnormality, absence or reversal of the a-wave (Figure 56.5), is an accurate predictor of stillbirth when it exists >7 days (in fetuses with the most severe UA patterns) [92]. Second, however, when severe DV abnormality is found without abnormal UA Doppler, outcome may well be normal. A large randomized trial, the TRUFFLE trial, suggests that there is no difference in neuroimpairment of surviving infants even at 2 years if they are delivered based on CCTG short term variation, early DV changes (>95th percentile PI) or late DV changes (a-wave reversal) [93]. There is no level-1 evidence that DV Doppler improves perinatal or infant outcomes, and therefore it should not be used routinely for clinical management in unselected patients. Again, the principle is emphasized: Solitary Doppler abnormality, even reverse a-wave in the DV, is not sufficient for intervention [94].

In virtually all Doppler-outcome trials, the single most critical influence on outcome has been gestational
Figure 56.5 Progressive changes in venous return to the heart as depicted in the ductus venosus. (a) There are normally four phases in the waveform, consisting of 1) atrial contraction, 2) ventricular contraction, 3) restitution of the annulus, 4) diastole. Typically, the a-wave (1) shows the only significant downward deflection, a modest reduction in forward flow. (b) Increased afterload from placental resistance causes abnormal forward cardiac output with the a-wave nearly retrograde. (c) Further progression in placental insufficiency is associated with cardiac malfunction with severe retrograde a-waves as well as distorted cardiac function, producing midwave depression as the annulus rises against an overfilled circulation.
especially in the critical gestational ages before 32 and a-wave reversal for days without fetal deterioration persist for months, absent end-diastolic velocity for weeks, with UA Doppler. However, elevated UA resistance may fetuses at risk for placental insufficiency are best assessed integrated fetal testing.

Doppler Surveillance and BPS: Integrated Fetal Testing

Fetuses at risk for placental insufficiency are best assessed with UA Doppler. However, elevated UA resistance may persist for months, absent end-diastolic velocity for weeks, and a-wave reversal for days without fetal deterioration [95]. Especially in the critical gestational ages before 32 weeks, such an interval may be crucial in reducing prematurity impacts. A nonrandomized study of 113 pregnancies managed by combined UA and DV Doppler with delivery triggered by BPS, concluded that gestational age and birth weight were “the predominant factors for poor neurodevelopment” assessed at age 2 [96]. The rationale underlying the multivessel Doppler and BPS approach is the relationship of deterioration in vascular indices to the (later) decline in BPS (Figure 56.6) [97]. A high-level of evidence is now available, showing that waiting until the need for delivery is certain maximizes intraterine time, optimizes reduction of prematurity, and at the same time does not add morbidity or mortality by “delaying” intervention [89–92,95,97–101]. A fetus, even if IUGR, should not be delivered based solely on Doppler flow studies before 32 weeks. Integrated fetal testing has not been studied in randomized trials, and so its real safety and effectiveness are unknown.

Condition-Specific Testing

Many conditions have increased risks of fetal compromise but may not have identical patterns of fetal deterioration; it may be necessary/beneficial to modify testing to fit the disorder. FGR, late-term pregnancy, and PPROM are the only conditions in which there is some evidence from RCTs regarding antenatal fetal testing. Many other conditions have been proposed as necessitating antenatal fetal testing (Table 56.8) [102]. Table 56.9 summarizes our suggested management for antenatal fetal testing based on different conditions.

Preeclampsia

There are no randomized trials to determine type or frequency of fetal monitoring for preeclampsia. We recommend a fetal growth scan and MVP and UA Doppler at the time of diagnosis and twice weekly NSTs to evaluate for placental insufficiency if initial assessments are normal.

Diabetes

The critical issue is glycemic control—when this is good, antenatal testing is less critical. When diabetic control is

Table 56.5 Abnormal Umbilical Artery Doppler Correlates with Neonatal Compromise

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Condition</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
<th>Odds Ratio</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cesarean section for fetal nonreassuring testing</td>
<td>91%</td>
<td>2.7 (CI 1.6–4.5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acidity</td>
<td>10%</td>
<td>1.1 (CI 0.61–1.8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hypoxemia</td>
<td>2%</td>
<td>1.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Low Apgar-5</td>
<td>5%</td>
<td>Not calculated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ventilator required</td>
<td>8%</td>
<td>Not calculated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Long-term oxygen</td>
<td>55/290</td>
<td>1.1 (CI 0.7–1.8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bronchopulmonary dysplasia</td>
<td>19%</td>
<td>15.5%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anemia</td>
<td>19%</td>
<td>15.5%</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 56.6 GRIT Trial

End Point | Immediate Delivery | Delayed Delivery | Odds Ratio
---|---|---|---
C/S rate | 91% | 79% | 2.7 (CI 1.6–4.5)
Early PNM | 10% | 9% | 1.1 (CI 0.61–1.8)
Late PNM | 2% | 2% | 1.0
Cerebral palsy | 5% | 1% | Not calculated
All disabilities | 8% | 4% | Not calculated
Death or disability | 55/290 | 44/283 | 1.1 (CI 0.7–1.8)
at 2 years | 19% | 15.5% |


Abbreviations: C/S, cesarean section; CI, 95% confidence interval; PNM, perinatal mortality.

Table 56.7 Umbilical Artery Doppler Index Abnormality Suggests NST/MVP or BPS Surveillance

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Abnormality</th>
<th>NST/MVP or BPS Frequency</th>
<th>Decision to Deliver</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Decreased but present diastolic flow</td>
<td>Weekly</td>
<td>Abnormal BPS ≥36–37 wk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AEDV</td>
<td>Twice weekly</td>
<td>Abnormal BPS ≥34 wk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>REDV</td>
<td>Daily</td>
<td>Abnormal BPS ≥32 wk</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Abbreviations: BPS, biophysical profile scoring; MVP, maximum vertical pocket; NST, nonstress test.

aUmbilical artery (UA) and precordial venous Doppler. MCA abnormalities confirm the elevated placental resistance, but do not directly alter management according to this scheme.

bMinimum frequency, increased on the basis of severity—maternal condition(s), degree of IUGR, gestational age.

cNeonatology consultation, maternal clinical factors, fetal blood sampling parameters, all will impact this collaborative decision.

dAny BPS ≤4/10.
poor, identification and monitoring of the macrosomic fetus requires individualized care [103,104]. Poor glycemic control as judged by maternal blood sugars or as denoted by fetal macrosomia (estimated fetal weight >90th percentile) and polyhydramnios or both requires increased surveillance. Diabetic women with hypertension, cardiac, renal, and other vascular diabetopathy and fetuses with FGR have pregnancies with the highest risk of adverse outcome from elevated placental resistance. UA Doppler can detect this and is thought to correctly stratify the adverse outcomes better than BPS [105] although prospective randomized evaluation of management has not been reported. In the absence of Doppler abnormalities of placentation, management by BPS protocol using twice-weekly testing achieves the same or better outcome (cord vein pH, mortality, neonatal morbidity) than euglycemic controls [106]. Expert opinion generally recommends weekly NSTs starting at 32 weeks and then twice-weekly NSTs starting around 36 weeks and serial growth ultrasounds for all women requiring medications to achieve glycemic control.

**Fetal Growth Restriction**

This issue is covered in more details in Chapter 45. UA Doppler monitoring of the FRG fetus is associated with improved perinatal outcomes, including less perinatal death [107]. Therefore, weekly UA Dopplers should be performed after FGR is diagnosed. A FGR fetus should be delivered around 32 weeks for reversed UA end-diastolic flow or around 34 weeks if absent UA end-diastolic flow [83] (Table 56.7). Doppler studies of other vessels have not been shown to be associated with perinatal benefits and remain, therefore, investigational [93]. In addition to UA Dopplers, CTG and amniotic fluid assessment should be performed regularly.
Table 56.9  Suggested Antenatal Surveillance for Specific Conditions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Condition</th>
<th>Initiation of Testing</th>
<th>Initiation of Growth Ultrasounds</th>
<th>Delivery (Weeks)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Chronic HTN</td>
<td>32 wk</td>
<td>Weekly NST&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>24 wk (if on meds)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gestational HTN</td>
<td>32 wk</td>
<td>Weekly NST</td>
<td>At diagnosis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Preeclampsia</td>
<td>32 wk</td>
<td>Twice weekly NST</td>
<td>At diagnosis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GDMA1</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>30–32 wks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GDMA2</td>
<td>32 wk</td>
<td>Weekly NST/MVP</td>
<td>At diagnosis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gestational DM</td>
<td>32 wk</td>
<td>Weekly NST</td>
<td>24 wk (if on meds)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Preterm premature rupture of membranes</td>
<td>32 wk</td>
<td>Weekly NST</td>
<td>24 wk (if on meds)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fetal growth restriction</td>
<td>At diagnosis</td>
<td>Weekly NST/MVP and dopplers</td>
<td>At diagnosis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maternal age at delivery ≥35 yrs</td>
<td>36 wk</td>
<td>Weekly NST</td>
<td>30–32 wks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Obesity</td>
<td>32–36 wk</td>
<td>Weekly NST</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Late-term (≥41 weeks)</td>
<td>41 wk</td>
<td>Twice weekly NST</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Concordant, non IUGR di/di twins</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>44 wk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mono/di twins</td>
<td>34–36 wk</td>
<td>Weekly NST, q2 wk dopplers</td>
<td>18–20 wks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mono/mono twins</td>
<td>28 wk</td>
<td>Twice weekly NST, q2 wk dopplers</td>
<td>24 wk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prior unexplained IUFD</td>
<td>32 wk</td>
<td>Weekly NST</td>
<td>28 wk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SLE or renal disease</td>
<td>32 wk</td>
<td>Weekly NST</td>
<td>24 wk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Organ transplant</td>
<td>32 wk</td>
<td>Weekly NST</td>
<td>28 wk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hypothyroidism or hyperthyroidism</td>
<td>32 wk&lt;sup&gt;d&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>Weekly NST&lt;sup&gt;d&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>30–32 wk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maternal cardiac disease</td>
<td>Individualize</td>
<td>Comprehensive cardiovascular</td>
<td>28 wk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oligohydramnios (MVP &lt;2 cm)</td>
<td>32 wk&lt;sup&gt;e&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>Weekly NST/MVP</td>
<td>At diagnosis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Polyhydramnios (MVP &gt;8 cm)</td>
<td>28 wk&lt;sup&gt;e&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>Weekly NST/MVP</td>
<td>At diagnosis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sickle cell disease</td>
<td>32 wk</td>
<td>Weekly NST</td>
<td>24 wk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fetal arrhythmia</td>
<td>Individualize</td>
<td>Comprehensive cardiovascular</td>
<td>At diagnosis</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Abbreviations:** di/di, chorionic diamniotic; DM, diabetes mellitus; GDMA, gestational diabetes mellitus; HTN, hypertension; IUFD, intrauterine fetal demise; IUGR, intrauterine growth restriction; meds, medications; mono/di, monochorionic diamniotic; mono/mono, monochorionic monoamniotic; MVP, maximum vertical pocket; NST, non stress test; q, every; SLE, systemic lupus erythematosus; wk, week; yrs, years; early term, 37 6/7–38 6/7 weeks; late preterm, 34 0/8–36 6/7 weeks.

<sup>a</sup>Instead of NSTs, some practitioners use biophysical profile score (BPS) or modified BPS (NST and MVP). There is no level 1 evidence to compare NST to BPS (or modified BPS) fetal testing.

<sup>b</sup>Some practitioners starts NSTs (or BPS) fetal testing in multiple gestations at 32–36 weeks, with very limited evidence.

<sup>c</sup>For hypothyroidism, only if poorly controlled.

<sup>d</sup>Or at diagnosis if diagnosed later.

<sup>e</sup>Hypothyroidism or hyperthyroidism.

<sup>f</sup>Instead of NSTs, some practitioners use biophysical profile score (BPS) or modified BPS (NST and MVP). There is no level 1 evidence to compare NST to BPS (or modified BPS) fetal testing.

<sup>g</sup>See Chapter 19 in Obstetric Evidence Based Guidelines for more details.
Advanced Maternal Age

The number of women delivering over the age of 35 years is rising. The risk of stillbirth increases with age with women over 40 years old at 39 weeks gestation having similar stillbirth rates to women 25–29 years old at 41 weeks [108]. Many experts, therefore, recommend early delivery. To our knowledge, there are no large randomized controlled trials exploring antepartum testing in this population; however, there is one in progress in the United Kingdom randomizing women over 35 years to either delivery from 39 0/7 to 39 6/7 weeks or expectant management [109]. We recommend weekly NST/MVP starting at 36 weeks, as well as one growth ultrasound around 30 weeks.

Obesity

The exponential rise in obesity and morbid obesity in pregnancy is alarming in many respects, including accelerated fetal risks [110]. These associations include the effects of associated medical disorders, such as hypertension and diabetes, but obesity itself has an independent impact on fetal macrosomia, stillbirth, and intrapartum complications that mandates heightened monitoring [111]. Many experts now recommend at least weekly NSTs or BPS for women with BMI ≥30 (or ≥35), starting at either 32 or 36 weeks, based on the fact that the incidence of fetal death is increased in this population [112]. Early delivery is not recommended.

Preterm Premature Ruptured Membranes

NST or BPS management may be helpful in managing preterm premature ruptured membranes (PPROM), but the evidence for effectiveness is very limited. When the NST was nonreactive and fetal breathing was absent, delivery produced superior neonatal and maternal infectious outcomes in one study [113]. This finding has not been replicated in other studies. Randomized comparison of BPS and NST alone in this setting showed that neither test has good sensitivity (25.0% and 39.1%, respectively) in predicting infectious morbidity, but both had good predictive accuracy when abnormal (66.7% and 52.9%, respectively) [114]. Neither amniocentesis [115] nor endovaginal ultrasounds [116] decrease neonatal death. A recent Cochrane review reports that there is insufficient evidence to draw clear conclusions for antenatal testing in PPROM from the existing evidence [117]. Expert opinion varies greatly between countries; in the United States inpatient antenatal fetal monitoring of women with PPROM between 23 and 33 6/7 weeks is recommended, including CTG two to three times daily. Delivery is indicated usually once 34 weeks is reached, but newest evidence may allow longer expectant management (see Chapter 19 in Obstetric Evidence Based Guidelines).

Postdate Pregnancy

A policy of labor induction at 41 completed weeks (41–41 6/7) or beyond is associated with significantly fewer perinatal deaths (1/2814 vs. 9/2785; RR 0.30, 95% CI 0.09–0.99) compared with expectant management with induction not before 42 weeks [118]. There were fewer cesarean sections in the induction group (RR 0.89, 95% CI 0.81–0.97). Labor induction at 41 weeks also significantly reduces the risk of perinatal meconium aspiration syndrome compared with expectant management (RR 0.50, 95% CI 0.34–0.73).

Admission and delivery outcomes for pregnancies being monitored at 40 and 41 weeks gestation were the same indicating that fetal monitoring may need to start at 40 weeks [119]. At present, the best recommendation is made with moderate confidence: pregnancies at 41 0/7 weeks should receive weekly CTG/MVP and be delivered before 42 0/7 weeks. When delivery before 42 weeks is not selected, twice-weekly monitoring should include amniotic fluid assessment using at least CTG and MVP [120] (see Chapter 27 in Obstetric Evidence Based Guidelines). Fetal Anemia

MCA Doppler velocimetry is effective in determining the need for fetal transfusion, the timing between transfusions, and in differentiating degrees of fetal anemia [121]. However, since there is a 1% to 10% failure rate in detecting severe anemia and a higher rate of missing mild anemia (which may progress rapidly) [122], MCA should form the core of a comprehensive approach that also includes fetal blood sampling by cordocentesis and an experienced team familiar with fetal hematology [123,124] (see Chapter 53).

Nonobstetric Procedure Monitoring

Before the locally accepted viable gestational age (currently about 23 weeks in the United States), fetal heart tones should be obtained before and after the procedure. When the fetus is considered viable, the decision to monitor fetal heart tones continuously throughout the case should be made on a case-by-case basis. If continuous intraoperative CTG is to be performed, there should at least be a skilled obstetrical provider available to perform an emergent cesarean section and the nonobstetrical procedure taking place should be able to be stopped in order for delivery to be performed. Postoperative CTG should be considered in procedures that might increase the risk of preterm labor [125].


Table 56.9 summarizes our recommendations. No trial has conclusively proven that antenatal testing lowers long-term adverse neurologic outcomes, so recommendations might be rated as Level B or even C (i.e., consensus, expert opinion, but no clear evidence). The standard of care, accordingly, can only be a suggestion and probably varies considerably from region to region [126].

Thresholds for viability, knowledge of the disease process, severity of individual cases, past history—all may indicate starting monitoring earlier than recommended by general guidelines (32–34 weeks for most at-risk fetuses, according to ACOG) (Table 56.9). Routine application of testing methods such as NST or UA Doppler alone, pose substantial risk of iatrogenic prematurity in fetuses with abnormal testing—a blanket proposal of “testing early and testing often” is potentially more dangerous than helpful. Testing should be timed in recognition of the characteristics of the test and the fetus.

The choice of test is determined not only by specific condition-related advantages above, but also by available personnel and equipment, cost, availability of effective treatment for abnormal results, and evidence of outcome impact of the management protocol (Table 56.9). Testing interval will depend on severity (e.g., up to three times daily or even continuous in FGR fetuses with the worst UA Doppler pattern).

Last, one should remember that the goal of antenatal fetal testing is to decrease perinatal morbidity and mortality. Many other interventions (e.g., smoking cessation for smokers, euglycemia for diabetics) can help achieve the same goal.
of better perinatal health and should be implemented aggressively to complement antenatal fetal testing.

REFERENCES
25. Kettel KH, Makk J, Kavet AA. Simplified biophysical profile: An antepartum fetal screening test. *Gynecol Obstet Invest* 1999; 47(4): 223–8. [II-2; Although vibroacoustic stimulation shortened the testing time for normal results, 67% of the abnormal results were false-alerts]
27. Arabin B, Becker R, Mohnhaupt A et al. Prediction of fetal distress and poor outcome in prolonged pregnancy using Doppler ultrasound and fetal heart rate monitoring combined with stress tests (II). *Fetal Diagn Ther* 1994; 9(1): 1–6. [II-2; CTG was the only reliable prediction of acidemia in post-term pregnancy. Doppler, CST, and OCT were all irrelevant to predicting acedia, while none were effective in predicting low Apgar scores]
28. Arabin B, Becker R, Mohnhaupt A et al. Prediction of fetal distress and poor outcome in intrauterine-growth retardation—A comparison of fetal heart rate monitoring combined with stress tests and Doppler ultrasound. *Fetal Diag Ther* 1993; 8(4): 234–40. [II-2; IUGR fetuses (n = 103) were studied with NST/CST, VAS, and Doppler. The passive tests—Doppler and NST—were better predictors of adverse outcome. The authors recommended abolishing the stress test]
29. Tan KH, Sabapathy A. Maternal glucose administration for facilitating tests of fetal wellbeing. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2005; 4. [I; Meta-analysis; 3 RCTs, n = 1100]
34. Keane MW, Horger EO. Predictive value of the NST: A comparative study of stressed and nonstressed antepartum fetal heart rate testing. *Obstet Gynecol* 1981; 57(3): 302–4. [II-1; Sequential testing used each high-risk fetus (n = 566) as its own control. Only 24.8% of nonreactive NST had positive CST]
36. Morrison I, Menticoglou S, Manning FA et al. Comparison of antepartum results to perinatal outcome. *J Matern Fetal Med* 1994; 3: 75–83. [II-2; All FGR fetuses underwent all tests: NST, BPS, umbilical artery Doppler and OCT. The best prediction of poor outcome used all tests. NST alone predicted only 32% of compromised fetuses]
38. Bracero LA, Morgan S, Byrne DW. Comparison of visual and computerized interpretation of nonstress test results in a randomized controlled trial. *Am J Obstet Gynecol* 1999; 181 (5 Pt 1): 1254–8. [I; RCT, n = 410; computerized evaluation of fetal heart rate testing is superior to standard visual interpretation]


44. Nageotte MP, Towers CV, Asrat T et al. The value of a negative antepartum test: Contraction stress test and modified biophysical profile. *Obstet Gynecol* 1994; 84(2): 231–4. [II-1; Controlled study, not randomized. New surveillance method, modified BPS was compared in a high-risk population to CST. The authors agreed that CST was no longer first line]


47. Manning FA, Morrison I, Harman CR et al. The abnormal fetal biophysical profile score. V. Predictive accuracy according to score composition. *Am J Obstet Gynecol* 1990; 162(4): 918–24. [II-3; Different adverse outcomes are predicted better by different combinations of variables. This study included only fetuses with abnormal scores 131–6/10, 258–4/10, 113–2/10]


49. Baskett TG, Allen AC, Gray JH et al. Fetal biophysical profile and perinatal death. *Obstet Gynecol* 1987; 70: 357–60. [II-2; Concurrent controls had PNM more than double those managed by BPS]

50. Miller DA, Rabello YA, Paul RH. The modified biophysical profile: Antepartum testing in the 1990s. *Am J Obstet Gynecol* 1996; 174: 812–7. [II-2; Large comparative trial of biophysical methodology demonstrated significant difference in outcome of cases managed or not managed by BPS]


52. Vintzileos AM, Campbell WA, Rodis JF et al. The relationship between fetal biophysical assessment, umbilical artery velocimetry and fetal acidosis. *Obstet Gynecol* 1991; 77: 622–6. [II-3; Clinical study showed BPS was superior and Doppler added nothing, in detection of fetal acidosis, n = 62]

53. Soothill PW, Ajayi RA, Campbell S et al. Prediction of morbidity in small and normally grown fetuses by fetal heart rate variability, biophysical profile score and umbilical artery Doppler studies. *Br J Obstet Gynaecol* 1993; 100: 742–5. [II-3; Prospective longitudinal study of 191 women studied with all three methods. Doppler discriminated small “sick” fetuses from small normal fetuses, while the other tests did not]

54. Shalev E, Zalel Y, Weiner E. A comparison of the nonstress test, oxytocin challenge test, Doppler velocimetry and biophysical profile in predicting umbilical vein pH in growth-retarded fetuses. *Int J Gynaecol Obstet* 1995; 43: 15–9. [II-3; Clinical series of 23 IUGR fetuses studied by all methods. NST, OCT, and BPS all had positive predictive values of 57%, while Doppler was only 14%]


58. Bocking AD, Harding R. Effects of reduced uterine blood flow in electrocortical activity, breathing and skeletal muscle activity in fetal sheep. *Am J Obstet Gynecol* 1986; 154(3): 655–62. [II-1; Controlled study of fetal sheep model showed increased sensitivity to hypoxia in abolishing FBM as gestation progresses]


60. Magann EF, Doherty D, Field K et al. Biophysical profile with amniotic fluid volume assessments. *Obstet Gynecol* 2004; 104(1): 5–10. [I; RCT demonstrates lower false positive cases, fewer iatrogenic interventions, more accurate depiction of fetal status with single pocket method compared to AFI]


64. Manning FA, Harman CR, Morrison I et al. Fetal assessment based on fetal biophysical profile scoring. III. Positive predictive accuracy of the very abnormal test (biophysical profile score = 0). *Am J Obstet Gynecol* 1990; 162(2): 398–402. [II-2; A score of 0/10 is rare (9.2/10,000 tests), but has 100% positive predictive value for death or severe permanent handicap, justifying immediate delivery]

65. Nageotte MP, Towers CV, Asrat T et al. Perinatal outcome with the modified biophysical profile. *Am J Obstet Gynecol* 1994; 170(6): 1672–6. [I; RCT, clinical trial valuating BPS (NST plus AFI) with randomized back-up testing (full BPS or CST) for abnormal values. Multidisciplinary discrimination well between adverse outcome (RR 2.2) and IUGR (RR 2.2) and those without these outcomes. CST was without benefit and led to iatrogenic morbidity compared to BPS]


75. Alfirevic Z, Stampalija T, Gyte GM. Fetal and umbilical Doppler ultrasound in normal pregnancy. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2010; 4(6): CD001450. [I; Meta-analysis; 5 RCTs, n = 14,185]


82. Alfirevic Z, Stampalija T, Gyte GM. Fetal and umbilical Doppler ultrasound in high-risk pregnancies. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2010; 20(1): CD007529. [I; Meta-analysis; 18 RCTs, n > 10,000]


95. Baschat AA, Galan HL, Bhide A et al. Doppler and biophysical assessment in growth restricted fetuses: Distribution of test results. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 2006; 27(1): 41–7. [I-1; Multicenter study of combined Doppler and biophysical profile in IUGR suggests both should be used to maximize gestational age, n = 38]


demonstrating combined Doppler and BPS reduced neonatal morbidity by directing intervention, but did not increase iatrogenic prematurity, \( n = 500 \).

100. Habek D, Hodek B, Herman R et al. Fetal biophysical profile and cerebro-umbilical ratio in assessment of perinatal outcome in growth-restricted fetuses. *Fetal Diagn Ther* 2003; 18(1): 12–6. [II-2; Clinical trial demonstrated the complimentary positive predictive values of biophysical profile and Doppler, \( n = 87 \) FGR fetuses]

101. Williams KP, Farwuharson DF, Bebbington M et al. Screening for fetal well-being in a high-risk pregnant population comparing the nonstress test with umbilical artery Doppler velocimetry: A randomized controlled clinical trial. *Am J Obstet Gynecol* 2003; 188(5): 1366–71. [I; RCT; Randomized “high-risk” patients, beyond 32 weeks, to umbilical artery Doppler or nonstress testing as primary monitoring, amniotic fluid volume as secondary test]


Sonographic assessment of amniotic fluid: oligohydramnios and polyhydramnios

Ibrahim A. Hammad and Suneet P. Chauhan

AMNIOTIC FLUID ASSESSMENT IN SINGLETON PREGNANCIES

Key Points

• Ultrasound estimates of amniotic fluid volume (AFV) correlate poorly with dye-determined or directly measured oligohydramnios and polyhydramnios.

• The single deepest pocket (SDP) is the best ultrasound technique to estimate AFV in both singleton and twin gestations because the amniotic fluid index (AFI) overdiagnoses oligohydramnios.

• AFI should be abandoned, and SDP should be used instead in most situations for clinical decisions because AFI use leads to unnecessary inductions and operative deliveries without concomitant neonatal benefit.

Background

• Urine production: urethra patent at 8 to 9 weeks; 18 weeks: about 50 to 100 cc/day; term: 800 cc/day or 5 cc/kg/hr. The primary component of amniotic fluid (AF) in the second half of pregnancy is fetal urine.

• AF swallowing: half of AF/day (about 0.5 L/day at term).

• Lungs also produce and absorb AF. Other systems involved include skin, saliva/nasal, membranes/placenta/cord.

• The fetus with in utero placental insufficiency will shunt blood flow to the brain, heart, and adrenal glands at the expense of the rest of the organ systems including the kidneys. Inadequate renal perfusion will result in decreased urinary output and oligohydramnios.

Indications

AFV can help in the assessment of the following:

In the second trimester,

○ Evidence of fetal anomalies (e.g., urinary obstruction or dysfunction)

○ Severe fetal growth restriction (FGR; associated with fetal aneuploidy)

○ Assist in the confirmation of preterm premature rupture of the fetal membranes (PPROM)

In the late second and third trimesters of pregnancy, as above, plus

○ Used along with the nonstress test (NST) or with the other components of the biophysical profile (BPP) in the assessment of fetal well being in pregnancies at risk for an adverse outcome.

Techniques

AFV can be precisely measured antepartum by a dye-dilution technique (the dye marker is placed into the uterine cavity by amniocentesis) and directly at the time of cesarean delivery.

These measurement techniques are invasive, time-consuming, require laboratory support, and if measured at cesarean can only be done at the time of delivery. Because of these limitations, the AFV is estimated antepartum by ultrasound.

Following are three ultrasound methods of estimating AFV and identifying abnormalities of fluid:

• The subjective assessment evaluates the AFV without measurements and labels the observed volume as low, normal, or high. It is usually done at the time of the second trimester ultrasound between 16 and 24 weeks [1].

• The AFI, divides the abdomen into four quadrants and measures the SDP in each quadrant without fetal small parts or cord and sums the measurements [2]. AFI ≤5.0 is labeled as oligohydramnios, 5.1 to 20 as normal, and >20–25 as hydramnios [3]. The AFI can also be evaluated more accurately by gestational age (GA)-specific charts that label AFV as oligohydramnios (<5th percentile), normal (5th–95th percentile), and hydramnios (>95th percentile) [4,5].

• The SDP technique (also called maximum vertical pocket, MVP) identifies the deepest vertical pocket of fluid that has a horizontal measurement of at least 1 cm and is without cord or fetal small parts [6]. SDP ≤2 is consistent with oligohydramnios, 2 to 8 cm is normal, and >8 cm is hydramnios.

Originally, the pocket of fluid was measured if it did not have an aggregate of cord or small parts [3]. There is a significantly greater number of low dye-determined AFVs identified using the “to the cord” measurement technique rather than “through the cord” and without any difference for normal and high dye-determined volumes [7]. Therefore, the “to the cord” measurement is recommended.

Accuracy of Ultrasound to Identify Oligohydramnios

By direct measurements at the time of cesarean delivery or dye-determined fluid volumes, all three of the ultrasound techniques used to estimate AFV (subjective evaluation, AFI, SDP) can identify normal volumes but poorly identify oligohydramnios and hydramnios [8]. The cumulative world’s literature shows that the association between ultrasound measurements and normal actual volume is good (sensitivity of 70%–98%), but in the clinically concerning area of oligohydramnios the association between an ultrasound-estimated AFV and the actual volume is poor (sensitivity of 6%–18%) [1,8–16]. A comparison of the third and fifth percentiles of the AFI and SDP adjusted for GA and the fixed cutoffs of
an AFI of ≤5 and the SDP of ≤2, all compared to actual AFVs [17], showed that the percentiles were no better predictors of actual oligohydramnios. Additionally, the normal values and percentiles for one specific patient population do not correlate with different patient populations, and, if percentiles are used, then normative values should be established for each patient population [4,5].

Despite the fact that subjective assessment of fluid is as accurate in identifying abnormalities of AFV as SDP or AFI, we recommend measurement of the deepest pocket (SDP) because it is linked with adverse outcome, and its use in BPP has been shown to decrease the rate of perinatal mortality and cerebral palsy.

Use of Color Doppler to Estimate AFV

Color Doppler has been suggested to increase the detection of oligohydramnios by identifying pockets of fluid containing the umbilical cord that would not be detected by grayscale. Both the measurements of the AFI and the SDP are decreased by approximately 20% with the use of color Doppler compared with grayscale [18,19]. In a study comparing color Doppler versus grayscale to determine if the color Doppler identified more dye-determined oligohydramnios than grayscale, color Doppler not only did not identify any more dye-determined oligohydramnios but labeled a number of normal pregnancies as having oligohydramnios [19]. Because of the overdiagnosis of oligohydramnios and because its use has not been to correlate with peripartum outcomes, the use of color Doppler cannot be recommended in the ultrasound estimate of AFV.

Accuracy of the Ultrasound Estimates of AF to Predict Pregnancy Outcomes

Although the subjective estimation of AFV is as accurate as the AFI and SDP in the identification of dye-determined low, normal, and high AFVs [1], nearly all ultrasound evaluation and studies use either the AFI or the SDP technique.

The role of the AFI in classifying a pregnancy as high risk on antenatal testing remains uncertain. An AFI of ≤5 is associated with an increased risk of nonreassuring fetal heart tracing (NRFHT) in labor, meconium-stained AF, cesarean delivery for NRFHT, and low Apgar scores at one and five minutes [3,20]. Some investigators have found no association with an AFI <5 and adverse pregnancy outcomes [21,22]. Among diabetic patients, AFI ≤5.0 cm is not associated with cesarean delivery for NRFHT [23]. In postdate pregnancies and other high-risk pregnancies screened comparing the SDP with the AFI, the AFI labels more pregnancies as having oligohydramnios (relative risk [RR] 2.39, 95% confidence intervals [CI] 1.73–3.28), resulting in more labor inductions (RR 1.92; 95% CI 1.50–2.46) and subsequent cesarean deliveries for NRFHT (RR 1.46; 95% CI 1.08–1.96) without a concomitant decrease in the likelihood of admission to neonatal intensive care unit (RR 1.04; 95% CI 0.85, 1.26) or in umbilical arterial pH <7.10 (RR 1.10; 95% CI 0.74, 1.65) [24].

Cesarean deliveries for NRFHT and Apgar scores of <7 at five minutes occurs in a significantly greater number of women if the AFI is ≤5 compared to controls [25]. Both the Apgar score <7 at five minutes and cesarean delivery for NRFHT are subjective evaluations and can be influenced by a number of factors. The most objective assessment, umbilical arterial pH, has not been linked with an AFI ≤5.0 [25].

The above findings were confirmed in a meta-analysis that included 43 studies and over 244,490 fetuses [26].

Do We Estimate AFV with the SDP or the AFI?

Both the AFI and the SDP are used in antenatal surveillance to identify those pregnancies that will have a greater risk of intrapartum complications, then the SDP techniques should also be used.

A Cochrane review (5 trials with 3226 pregnancies) comparing AFI to SDP showed that there was no improvement in peripartum outcomes, like operative vaginal or cesarean.
OLIGOHYDRAMNIOS

Key Points

- Oligohydramnios should be defined as an SDP <2 cm. This definition correlates with abnormal neonatal outcome with the least false positive rate. Using the AFI (e.g., <5th percentile for gestational age or <5.0 cm) is not recommended to define oligohydramnios.
- Question the woman concerning (P)PROM.
- Document by ultrasound normal fetal kidneys, bladder, and fetal weight.
- Suggest hydration with 2 L of water orally.

At 16 to 22 weeks

- Consider amniocentesis.
- Consider transabdominal amnioinfusion for better diagnostic visualization. The role of amnioinfusion as therapy for pregnancy prolongation and prevention of pulmonary hypoplasia has not been tested in a trial.

At 23 to 40 weeks

- Consider intervention as for 16 to 22 weeks if severe oligohydramnios and fetal karyotype and anatomy have not been checked before.
- At ≥23 weeks, perform NST and/or BPP to assure fetal well being. If reassuring, continue SDP/NST weekly/biweekly depending on fetal status.
- At ≥36 weeks, consider induction/delivery if SDP <2.0 cm.

At >40 weeks

- Deliver.
- Transcervical amnioinfusion can be discussed and offered to women at or near term with oligohydramnios, but data are limited regarding safety and efficacy.

Diagnosis/Definition

Oligohydramnios should be defined as low AFV that is linked with an adverse pregnancy outcome. Therefore, oligohydramnios can be defined as an SDP of <2 cm measured vertically.

Epidemiology/Incidence

The true incidence of oligohydramnios appears to be approximately 0.2% in the second trimester and 3% to 5% in the third trimester. The incidence depends on definition, being lower when defined as SDP <2 cm.

Etiology

ROM, renal hypofunction, urinary obstruction, placental insufficiency with/without FGR.

Complications

Fetal anomalies (up to 30% in second trimester, up to 50% if severe). Oligohydramnios, in particular SDP <2 cm, has been associated with FGR, NRFHT, CD for NRFHT, endometritis, etc., but the true natural history is not well-known since many intervene for oligohydramnios.

There is a significant association between oligohydramnios, small for gestational age, neonatal death, and perinatal mortality [26]. Isolated oligohydramnios at term by itself is not associated in some studies with increased obstetrical morbidity [36].

Management (Figure 57.1)

Question woman concerning (P)PROM, and perform clinical exam if (P)PROM suspected.

The ultrasound should document normal fetal kidneys, bladder, stomach bubble and fetal weight.

At 16 to 22 weeks: consider amniocentesis, if feasible. Also consider transabdominal amnioinfusion for better diagnostic visualization. The role of amnioinfusion as therapy for pregnancy prolongation and prevention of pulmonary hypoplasia has not been tested in a trial.

At 23 to 40 weeks, consider intervention as for 16 to 24 weeks if severe oligohydramnios and fetal karyotype and anatomy have not been checked before.

At ≥28 to <36 weeks, perform NST and/or BPP to assure fetal well being. If reassuring, continue SDP/NST weekly/biweekly depending on fetal status.

a. If SDP is ≥2, follow with weekly NST/SDP.

b. If SDP <2, manage individually (suggest at least twice weekly NST/AFIs).

Consider delivery only if there are substantial signs of fetal compromise, such as abnormal BPP, UA Doppler flow, NST, etc.

c. If SDP normalizes in the consecutive ultrasounds, these patients can be followed with routine care.

d. For any oligohydramnios, strongly encourage maternal hydration with 2 L water and reassess AFV.

At ≥36 weeks, consider induction/delivery if SDP <2.

If SDP ≥2, follow with NST/SDP.

Maternal Hydration

The effects of maternal hydration on the AFV as estimated by an increase in the AFI or an increase in fetal urine production, have been assessed in four randomized trials [37–40]. The meta-analysis [41] of these four trials with 122 women concluded that hydration (by drinking water or by intravenous route) increases AF as assessed by pre- and post-hydration AFI. For oral hydration, the women were asked to drink 2 L of water before having a repeat ultrasound examination. Maternal hydration in women with and without oligohydramnios was associated with an increase in amniotic volume (mean difference [MD] for women with oligohydramnios 2.01, 95% confidence interval [CI] 1.43 to 2.60; and MD for women with normal AFV 4.50, 95% CI 2.92 to 6.08).

Intravenous hypotonic hydration in women with oligohydramnios was associated with an increase in AFV (MD 1.35, 95% CI 0.61–2.10). Isotonic intravenous hydration had no measurable effect. These findings were confirmed by a fifth randomized trial in which pregnancies complicated by third trimester idiopathic oligohydramnios
found that long-term hydration (six days) of intravenous isotonic infusion (1500 mL/day) increased the mean AFI from 39.7 to 77.7 mm. Patients were then randomized to home oral hydration therapy of 1500 or 2500 mL/day and the higher volume group demonstrated significantly increased amniotic fluid at delivery compared to the lower volume group (112.45 ± 14.92 versus 86.21 ± 16.89 mm, respectively p < .001). However, it is notable that, no clinically important outcomes have been assessed in these four trials [41]. Thus, while oral hydration seems safe and helpful, additional trials assessing clinical benefits are warranted before hydration is recommended in the setting of oligohydramnios [41].

**Amnioinfusion**

If oligohydramnios (without PROM) is detected just before or in labor near or at term:

- **Transabdominal amnioinfusion**: reduces NRFHT (from 42% to 5%) and CD for NRFHT (from 25% to 5%) [43].
- **Transcervical amnioinfusion**: In term women with oligo (usually AFI <5 cm), amnioinfusion of usually about 500 cc normal saline and more as needed decreases CD for NRFHT by 77%, overall CD by 48%, umbilical artery pH <7.20 by 60%, NRFHT by 76%, and low Apgar scores <7 at five minutes by 48%. The rate of endometritis tended to be lower with amnioinfusion [44–46]. There is no difference in outcomes in one RCT between prophylactic vs. therapeutic amnioinfusion (47).

Given better results and a lot more data with this latter technique, prophylactic transcervical amnioinfusion should be offered to women at or near term with oligohydramnios.

**POLYHYDRAMNIOS (AKA HYDRAMNIOS)**

**Key Points**

- Polyhydramnios is defined as an SDP ≥8 or AFI ≥95th percentile (AFI ≥24) or ≥97.5 percentile (AFI >25) for GA. AFI >24 or subjective assessment of increased fluid volume are all labeled as polyhydramnios at any GA. Severe polyhydramnios is a SDP ≥15 cm or AFI ≥35.1 cm.
- Major associations are diabetes and fetal malformation, but up to 50% of mild polyhydramnios is of unknown cause (idiopathic).
- Risk of major anomaly at birth after normal ultrasound is 1% with AFI <30, 2% with AFI 30 to 34.9, 11% with AFI ≥35 cm.
- Polyhydramnios is associated with higher rates of macrosomia, malpresentation, cord prolapse, abruption, primary cesarean delivery, and uterine atony.
- Workup should include (at least) a glucose screening test, antibody screen if not done in last four weeks, RPR,

### Figure 57.1  Management of oligohydramnios.

* Amnioinfusion for labor at ≥34 weeks: cesarean delivery for obstetrical indications; BPP, biophysical profile; GA, gestational age; NST, non-stress test; oligo, oligohydramnios; q, every; SDP, single deepest pocket; UA, umbilical artery; U/S, ultrasound.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Gestational age</th>
<th>≤36 weeks</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SDP &lt;2</td>
<td>Yes → Induce/deliver*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SDP ≥2</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yes, NST/SDP q 2×/week</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No, SDP &lt;2 × 2 times and no other U/S abnormalities</td>
<td>Routine care</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>≥39 weeks</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SDP &lt;2, AFI &lt;5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yes → Induce/deliver*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>≥36 weeks</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SDP &lt;2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yes → Induce/deliver*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>&lt;23 weeks</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Consider amniocentesis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Consider amnioinfusion (Also for severe oligo at any GA if not checked yet)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Table 57.1 Management of oligohydramnios

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Gestational age</th>
<th>≤36 weeks</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SDP ≥2</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SDP &lt;2</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No, U/S abnormality</td>
<td>Routine care</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>≥39 weeks</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SDP &lt;2, AFI &lt;5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yes → Induce/deliver*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>≥36 weeks</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SDP &lt;2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yes → Induce/deliver*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>&lt;23 weeks</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Consider amniocentesis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Consider amnioinfusion (Also for severe oligo at any GA if not checked yet)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>≥39 weeks</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SDP &lt;2, AFI &lt;5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yes → Induce/deliver*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>≥36 weeks</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SDP &lt;2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yes → Induce/deliver*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>&lt;23 weeks</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Consider amniocentesis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Consider amnioinfusion (Also for severe oligo at any GA if not checked yet)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>≥39 weeks</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SDP &lt;2, AFI &lt;5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yes → Induce/deliver*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>≥36 weeks</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SDP &lt;2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yes → Induce/deliver*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>&lt;23 weeks</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Consider amniocentesis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Consider amnioinfusion (Also for severe oligo at any GA if not checked yet)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>≥39 weeks</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SDP &lt;2, AFI &lt;5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yes → Induce/deliver*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>≥36 weeks</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SDP &lt;2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yes → Induce/deliver*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>&lt;23 weeks</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Consider amniocentesis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Consider amnioinfusion (Also for severe oligo at any GA if not checked yet)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>≥39 weeks</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SDP &lt;2, AFI &lt;5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yes → Induce/deliver*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>≥36 weeks</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SDP &lt;2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yes → Induce/deliver*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
and accurate fetal anatomy ultrasound. Parvovirus, toxoplasma, and CMV IgM and IgG can be included. Amniocentesis should be strongly considered if there is severe polyhydramnios, hydramnios with fetal anomaly on ultrasound, polyhydramnios associated with FGR or detected <24 weeks.

**Diagnosis/Definition**
SDP ≥8 or AFI ≥95th percentile (AFI ≥24) or ≥97.5 percentile (AFI ≥25) for GA or subjective assessment of increased AF. Any of these ultrasound measurements or if subjectively the AF is present then the AF would be labeled as polyhydramnios. Mild polyhydramnios AFI ≥25 to 30, moderate AFI 30.1 to 35, severe polyhydramnios AFI ≥35.1 [48,49]. Severe polyhydramnios can also be defined as SDP ≥12.

**Incidence/Epidemiology**
1% to 5% of pregnancies depending on definition, but <1% severe polyhydramnios.

**Etiology**
Increased production (most commonly maternal diabetes) or decreased clearance (obstruction or poor swallowing). Most common causes are 1) maternal diabetes (20%–30%), 2) fetal malformations (10%–15%), 3) multiple gestations (5%), Rh or other isoimmunization, “Mirror syndrome,” others; unknown cause (about 50%, especially for mild polyhydramnios). Severe polyhydramnios is usually pathologic, not idiopathic.

**Complications**
Fetal anomalies may be present (risk of major anomaly on prenatal ultrasound: 8% with AFI <30, 12% with AFI 30 to 34.9, 31% with AFI ≥35. Risk of major anomaly at birth after normal ultrasound: 1% with AFI <30, 2% with AFI 30 to 34.9, 11% with AFI ≥35. Fetus may have chromosomal abnormality (risk of aneuploidy: ≤1% if normal ultrasound, about 10% if major anomaly present). Detailed ultrasound should detect about 60% to 80% of major anomalies associated with polyhydramnios. Perinatal mortality for normal anatomy fetuses is <5%. For anomalous fetuses is 10% to 80% depending on anomaly [50]. There is an association between the frequencies of a variety of adverse pregnancy outcomes and the severity of polyhydramnios as reflected by the maximal AFI [51] Preterm birth (PTB) or PPROM is increased especially with severe polyhydramnios. Polyhydramnios is associated with higher rates of macrosomia, malpresentation, cord prolapse, abruptio, primary cesarean delivery and uterine atony. Idiopathic polyhydramnios is linked with fetal macrosomia, fetal labor intolerance, low five minute Apgar scores, greater risk for newborn intensive care unit admission, and a two- to fivefold increase in perinatal mortality [52,53]. In the Cochrane meta-analysis, there was no evidence of an association between polyhydramnios and birth weight <10th centile or <2500 g. Apgar score at 1 minute <7, fetal distress or neonatal death. There was a strong positive association with polyhydramnios and birthweight >90th centile and this corresponded to low sensitivity with high specificity [26].

**Workup (Differential Diagnosis)**
- **History:** Diabetes mellitus. Rh isoimmunization and diabetes insipidus. Family history of myotonic dystrophy or inborn errors of metabolism. Ask regarding maternal discomfort.
- **Ultrasound:** Multiple gestation (in particular TTTS). CNS/Neuro: Anencephaly, holoprosencephaly, Dandy Walker malformation, lissencephaly, agenesis of corpus callosum, NTD, etc.
- **Neuromuscular:** Arthrogryposis.
- **Cardiac:** Septal defects, truncus arteriosus, aortic coarctation, arch interruption, arrhythmias, etc.
- **Thoracic:** CDH, CCAM, sequestration, chylothorax, tracheal atresia.
- **GI:** Cleft lip/palate, TE fistula, esophageal or intestinal atresia, imperforate anus, abdominal wall defects, annular pancreas.
- **Skeletal:** Achondroplasia, thanatophoric dysplasia, camptomelic dysplasia, OI, hypophosphatasia, etc.
- **Other:** Cystic hygroma, neck masses, goiter, SCT [54]. Rule out hydronephrosis. Perform umbilical and middle cerebral artery (PI and PSV) Doppler.
- **Laboratory:** One hour glucola and antibody screen if not done in last four weeks. Parvovirus IgM and IgG; Toxo IgM and IgG; CMV IgM and IgG; RPR (r/o syphilis).
- **Amniocentesis:** Strively consider if severe polyhydramnios, hydramnios with fetal major or minor anomaly on ultrasound, polyhydramnios associated with IUGR or detected <24 weeks. Some advocate offering amniocentesis to all women with polyhydramnios given the 0.5% to 1% incidence of aneuploidy. If amniocentesis is done:

1. Karyotype (T21, T18, 45X: most common) and/or microarray.
2. PCR for parvovirus, CMV, toxoplasmosis, syphilis.
3. Myotonic dystrophy study if positive family history or ultrasound evidence of hyptonia, for example, clubbed feet or positional abnormalities of the extremities [54].
4. Inborn errors of metabolism: Gaucher, gangliosidoses, mucopolysaccharidoses, etc. (consider especially if positive family history or above workup negative and severe polyhydramnios).

**Labor Precautions**
For appropriate management to decrease complications from polyhydramnios—associated macrosomia, malpresentation, cord prolapse, abruptio, primary cesarean delivery and uterine atony, see appropriate chapters. Consider delaying or avoiding artificial ROM to avoid cord prolapse or at least “needling” the membranes.

**Management**
- Appropriate counseling regarding complications as above.
- Workup as above.
- Manage anomaly/aneuploidy/maternal or fetal disease if detected during workup.
- GA <23 weeks: consider amniocentesis.
- GA 23 to 38 6/7 weeks:
  - AFI <30 cm: AFI/SDP every two to three weeks.
  - AFI ≥30 cm: AFI/SDP and evaluations to rule out fetal hydrops weekly. Consider weekly NSTs or BPP. Consider amniocentesis.
- AFI ≥35 cm, SDP ≥12, and/or maternal symptoms: as per severe polyhydramnios, plus consider the following options:
  - Indomethacin: 75 to 200 mg/day (25–50 mg po q6–8h). Mechanism of action: decreases fetal urine production by increasing proximal tubular resorption of water and sodium. Side effects: Oligohydramnios and ductal closure (see Chapter 16 in Obstetric Evidence Based Guidelines). Only treat for 48 hours and <32 weeks to avoid/minimize side effects.
  - Sulindac: 200 mg q12h. Same mechanism of action and side effects as indomethacin.
- For idiopathic hydramnios, consider antenatal testing beginning at diagnosis or 28 weeks.

**AMNIOTIC FLUID ASSESSMENT IN TWIN PREGNANCIES**

**Background**

In twin pregnancies the AFV of each sac is about the same (slightly exceeds) that for normal singleton pregnancies of similar third-trimester GA [55].

**Technique**

The most consistent method of estimating AFV in twin pregnancies is the SDP technique. The dividing membrane is identified and the SDP of AF in each amniotic sac is measured. Since the AFVs of twin pregnancies are similar to single pregnancies, the same categories of oligohydramnios (SDP <2), normal (2–8 cm) and hydramnios (>8 cm) can be used.

The summed AFI technique [56,57], which measures sums the four SDPs as have been identified in singleton pregnancies and without regard to membrane placement or fetal position, is inaccurate. When correlated to known AFVs in twin pregnancies, it has low sensitivity for intertwin differences in AFV and cannot identify twin pairs with either oligohydramnios or hydramnios [58]. The subjective evaluation of the amount of AF surrounding each fetus, when correlated with dye-determined AFVs in diamniotic twins, has been found to be as accurate as the AFI and SDP in the identification of oligohydramnios (all of the ultrasound techniques poorly identify AFVs) [59].

**Management of Oligohydramnios and/or Hydramnios**

In dichorionic, diamniotic twin pregnancies, workup and management of either oligohydramnios or hydramnios is similar to singleton gestations. If SDP <2 in one sac and SDP >8 in the other sac are found in a monochorionic gestation, the diagnosis of twin–twin transfusion syndrome should be considered with workup and management covered in Chapter 44.

**REFERENCES**


46. Hofmeyr GJ, Justus G. Amnioinfusion for potential or suspected umbilical cord compression in labour. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2010; 8. [Meta-analysis; 14 RCTs, most with <200 women each—See also chapter 10 in Obstetric Evidence Based Guidelines]


Fetal maturity testing
Paniz Heidari and Sarah Poggi

KEY POINTS
- The determination of fetal lung maturity (FLM) in well-dated pregnancies by amniocentesis generally is unnecessary and should not be used to guide the timing of delivery. FLM testing is not necessary if delivery is indicated by accepted maternal and/or fetal obstetrical indications.
- Consideration for FLM testing is rarely indicated, such as in cases of unsure gestational dating.
- If FLM testing is done, the probability for respiratory distress syndrome (RDS) should be calculated as a function of gestational age and the specific FLM test.
- Lamellar body count or surfactant/albumin ratio can be used as the initial and only FLM test given their high negative predictive value, ease, and low cost. Lecithin/sphingomyelin (L/S) ratio can be used as a confirmatory test if necessary.
- For diabetic pregnancies, positive phosphatidylglycerol (PG), surfactant/albumin ratio ≥70 mg/g, L/S >3, or a combination of these tests have a high predictive value for maturity. Some experts, however, use the same threshold values of nondiabetic pregnancies for assessment of FLM in diabetic pregnancies.
- Even with a “mature” fetal lung profile, neonates delivered at less than 39 weeks can demonstrate morbidity associated with prematurity.

HISTORIC NOTES
The L/S ratio for assessment of FLM was first introduced by Gluck and colleagues in 1971, and this test is still the standard to which others are compared [1].

DEFINITIONS
Surfactant is a complex substance containing phospholipids and apoproteins produced by the type II alveolar cells. It reduces surface tension throughout the lung, contributing to its compliance, leading to alveolar stability, and reducing the likelihood of alveolar collapse. Surfactant is “packaged” in lamellar bodies.

Neonatal respiratory distress syndrome (RDS) occurs when the lungs fail to produce an adequate amount of surfactant. RDS is defined in many different ways but, in general, involves mechanical ventilation and oxygen requirement at ≥24 to 48 hours of life and radiographic chest findings (air bronchograms and reticulogranular appearance) without any other explanation for the respiratory insufficiency. The natural (without steroids) incidence of RDS depends on gestational age: about 80% to 90% at 25 to 27 weeks, 55% to 65% at 28 to 30 weeks, 30% to 40% at 31 to 33 weeks, 13% at 34 weeks, 6% at 35 weeks, 3% at 36 weeks, and 1% or less at ≥37 weeks. Therefore, the probability for RDS should be calculated as a function of gestational age. RDS affects approximately 1% of all live births. Complications of its treatment are associated with an increased risk of serious acute and long-term pulmonary and nonpulmonary morbidities. Although the frequency and severity of RDS are worse for delivery remote from term, the pulmonary system is the last organ systems to mature, and RDS can occur even near term.

INDICATIONS FOR ASSESSMENT OF FETAL PULMONARY MATURITY
The determination of FLM in well-dated pregnancies by amniocentesis generally is unnecessary and should not be used to guide the timing of delivery. FLM testing is not necessary if delivery is indicated by accepted maternal and/or fetal obstetrical indications. Therefore, FLM testing is rarely indicated. There are no absolute indications for assessment of FLM. If an evidence-based, clear indication for delivery is present, the use of amniocentesis to assess FLM would not assist in guiding management. For example, FLM testing is not indicated if delivery is indicated by accepted maternal (e.g., severe preeclampsia after 34 weeks) and/or fetal (e.g., category III fetal heart rate monitoring after viability) indications. Because of the risk for HIV infection, uterine rupture with prior uterine surgery with extensive myomectomy or vertical CD, and hemorrhage with placenta previa and/or accreta, proof of lung maturity before delivery is not necessary in these and other selected indications (see Chapter 21 in Obstetric Evidence Based Guidelines). Tests for FLM are not warranted before 33 weeks because they are rarely positive this early in gestation. FLM testing in well-dated (e.g., by first-trimester ultrasound) singleton at ≥39 weeks or twins at ≥37 to 38 weeks is not indicated. As the probability of RDS depends on gestational age, gestational age estimation should be as accurate as possible, preferably based on first-trimester ultrasound (see Chapter 4 in Obstetric Evidence Based Guidelines). Consideration for FLM testing may occur in rare cases, such as in a woman with unsure gestational dating.

The American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (ACOG) recommends that a mature fetal lung test before 39 weeks of gestation, in the absence of appropriate clinical circumstances, is not an indication for delivery [2]. It is also noted that although FLM testing may help identify fetuses at risk of RDS, mature fetal pulmonary test results may not reliably predict adverse outcomes and should not justify a delivery without other indications [3].

TECHNIQUES FOR OBTAINING AMNIOTIC FLUID AMNIOCENTESIS
Third-trimester amniocentesis performed under ultrasonographic guidance in experienced hands is associated with low rates of failure or of bloody fluid collection and a <1%
risk of complication, such as emergent delivery [4]. The risk of complications (e.g., PTL, PROM, abruption, and fetomaternal hemorrhage) associated with amniocentesis for FLM performed under continuous ultrasound guidance has been estimated at about 0.7% [5,6].

Vaginal Pool Collection
The assessment of fetal pulmonary maturity can be obtained from vaginal pool specimens in the presence of premature rupture of membranes. Blood, meconium, and mucous can alter the results. In the absence of these contaminants, vaginally free-flowing collected fluid can be evaluated for determination of L/S ratio, surfactant/albumin ratio, PG, and lamellar body count yielding results similar to those observed with samples obtained with amniocentesis (Table 58.1). As obtaining a specimen via a sterile syringe is not always technically feasible, an alternative collection method using the commonly available “4 x 4” gauze sponge has been validated for both PG and TDx-FLM II analyses (see below). Essentially, the gauze is inserted into the vagina at the posterior fornix and then plunged into a 60-cc syringe to extract the vaginal pool specimen [7].

SPECIFIC TESTS FOR LUNG MATURITY (TABLE 58.1)
Lecithin/Sphingomyelin Ratio
The concentrations of these two substances are approximately equal until the mid-third trimester of gestation when the concentration of pulmonary lecithin (phosphatidylcholine, most common of surfactant compounds) increases significantly while the nonpulmonary sphingomyelin concentration remains unchanged.

Technique
Following amniocentesis, the sample should be kept on ice or refrigerated if transport to a laboratory is required. Thin-layer chromatography after centrifugation to remove the cellular component and organic solvent extraction is used.

Interpretation of Results
An L/S ratio of 2.0 or greater predicts absence of RDS in 98% of neonates. With a ratio of 1.5 to 1.9, approximately 50% of infants will develop RDS. Below 1.5, the risk of subsequent RDS increases to 73%.

Special Considerations
Maternal serum has an L/S ratio ranging from 1.3 to 1.9; thus, blood-tinged samples could falsely lower a mature result. The presence of meconium can interfere with test interpretation, increasing the L/S ratio by 0.1 to 0.5, thus leading to an increase in falsely mature results.

Phosphatidylglycerol
PG is a minor constituent of surfactant that becomes evident in amniotic fluid several weeks after the rise in lecithin [8]. Its presence indicates a more advanced state of fetal lung development and function as PG enhances the spread of phospholipids on the alveoli.

Technique
The original PG testing was performed by thin-layer chromatography and required time and expertise. More recently, enzymatic assay or slide agglutinations have been used successfully to determine the presence of PG. Amniostat-FLM (Irvine Scientific, California) is one such test.

Interpretation
The results are typically reported qualitatively as positive or negative, where positive represents >3% of total phospholipids and an exceedingly low risk of RDS.

Special Considerations
PG determination is not generally affected by blood, meconium, or vaginal secretion.

Surfactant/Albumin Ratio
The fluorescence polarization assay uses polarized light to evaluate the competitive binding of a probe to both albumin and surfactant in amniotic fluid [9].

Technique
The TDx-FLM (Abbott, Illinois) analyzer provides a quantitative and automated measurement of the amniotic fluid surfactant/albumin ratio (SAR). The test is simple, rapid, objective, and reproducible and can be performed with equipment commonly available in clinical laboratories. A recent commercial modification of the assay (TDx-FlxFLM II) allows simple, automated, and rapid results.

Interpretation
An SAR of 55 mg/g has been proposed as the optimal threshold to indicate maturity [9]. Values of 35 to 55 are considered “borderline.” As for other tests, the probability for RDS should be calculated as a function of gestational age and the FLM test results (Table 58.2) [11]. In other words, other pretest probabilities for maturity should be taken into account when interpreting these tests.

Special Considerations
As for L/S ratio, red blood cell phospholipids may falsely lower the TDx-FlxFLM II result, but a mature test can reliably predict pulmonary maturity.

Is a course of steroids indicated in the face of an immature result at >34 weeks? In a small RCT of patients over 34 weeks with “immature” TDx-FlxFLM II, results demonstrated a benefit to a single course of corticosteroids in terms of a progression to “mature” results with repeat amniocentesis one week later (50% vs. 27%, p = .002). However, as no actual neonatal outcomes were presented, this approach must be interpreted with some caution at this time [12].

Lamellar Body Counts
Lamellar bodies (LB) are produced by type II pneumocytes and are a direct measurement of surfactant production because they represent its storage form.

Technique
Lamellar bodies are quantified with a commercial blood cell analyzer, which takes advantage of the similar size between LB and platelets. The results can be obtained quickly with a small fluid volume, and the test is less expensive than traditional phospholipids analysis. Although initial studies employed centrifugation, it is now agreed that the sample should be processed without spinning as centrifugation reduces the number of LB.
Table 58.1 Characteristics of Fetal Lung Maturity Tests

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Test</th>
<th>Technique</th>
<th>Threshold</th>
<th>Predictive Value Mature Test (%)</th>
<th>Predictive Value Immature Test</th>
<th>Accurate with Blood Contamination</th>
<th>Accurate with Meconium Contamination</th>
<th>Accurate in Vaginal Pool</th>
<th>Difficulty</th>
<th>Cost</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>L/S ratio</td>
<td>Thin-layer chromatography</td>
<td>2/1</td>
<td>95–100</td>
<td>33–50</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>High</td>
<td>High</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PG</td>
<td>Thin-layer chromatography</td>
<td>Present (usually means &gt;3% of total phospholipids) Positive (&gt;2%)</td>
<td>95–100</td>
<td>23–53</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>High</td>
<td>High</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Surfactant/ albumin ratio (TDx-FLM)</td>
<td>Slide agglutination Fluorescence polarization</td>
<td>&gt;55 mg (of surfactant)/g (of albumin)</td>
<td>96–100</td>
<td>47–61</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Low</td>
<td>Moderate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LBC</td>
<td>Cell counter Ethanol dilution</td>
<td>&gt;47</td>
<td>97–98</td>
<td>29–35</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Low</td>
<td>Moderate</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Abbreviations: FSI, foam stability index; LBC, lamellar body count; L/S, lecithin/sphingomyelin; PG, phosphatidylglycerol.
Table 58.2 Probability of RDS on the Basis of Gestational Age and Surfactant/Albumin (S/A) Ratio (TDx-FLM)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Gestational Age (wk)</th>
<th>S/A 27</th>
<th>28</th>
<th>29</th>
<th>30</th>
<th>31</th>
<th>32</th>
<th>33</th>
<th>34</th>
<th>35</th>
<th>36</th>
<th>37</th>
<th>38</th>
<th>39</th>
<th>40</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>72%</td>
<td>66%</td>
<td>59%</td>
<td>51%</td>
<td>44%</td>
<td>37%</td>
<td>30%</td>
<td>24%</td>
<td>19%</td>
<td>15%</td>
<td>12%</td>
<td>9%</td>
<td>7%</td>
<td>5.1%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>67%</td>
<td>60%</td>
<td>53%</td>
<td>46%</td>
<td>39%</td>
<td>32%</td>
<td>26%</td>
<td>20%</td>
<td>16%</td>
<td>12%</td>
<td>9.6%</td>
<td>7.3%</td>
<td>5.5%</td>
<td>4.2%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>62%</td>
<td>55%</td>
<td>48%</td>
<td>40%</td>
<td>33%</td>
<td>27%</td>
<td>22%</td>
<td>17%</td>
<td>13%</td>
<td>10%</td>
<td>7.8%</td>
<td>6%</td>
<td>4.5%</td>
<td>3.4%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>57%</td>
<td>50%</td>
<td>42%</td>
<td>35%</td>
<td>29%</td>
<td>23%</td>
<td>18%</td>
<td>14%</td>
<td>11%</td>
<td>8.4%</td>
<td>6.4%</td>
<td>4.8%</td>
<td>3.6%</td>
<td>2.7%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40</td>
<td>51%</td>
<td>44%</td>
<td>37%</td>
<td>30%</td>
<td>24%</td>
<td>19%</td>
<td>15%</td>
<td>12%</td>
<td>9%</td>
<td>6.8%</td>
<td>5.2%</td>
<td>3%</td>
<td>2.2%</td>
<td>1.8%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50</td>
<td>46%</td>
<td>39%</td>
<td>32%</td>
<td>26%</td>
<td>21%</td>
<td>16%</td>
<td>13%</td>
<td>10%</td>
<td>8%</td>
<td>6%</td>
<td>4.5%</td>
<td>3.4%</td>
<td>2.5%</td>
<td>1.4%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60</td>
<td>40%</td>
<td>34%</td>
<td>27%</td>
<td>22%</td>
<td>17%</td>
<td>13%</td>
<td>10%</td>
<td>8%</td>
<td>6%</td>
<td>4.5%</td>
<td>3.4%</td>
<td>2.5%</td>
<td>1.9%</td>
<td>1.4%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>70</td>
<td>35%</td>
<td>29%</td>
<td>23%</td>
<td>18%</td>
<td>14%</td>
<td>11%</td>
<td>8.5%</td>
<td>6.4%</td>
<td>4.9%</td>
<td>3.7%</td>
<td>2.7%</td>
<td>2%</td>
<td>1.5%</td>
<td>1.1%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>80</td>
<td>31%</td>
<td>25%</td>
<td>20%</td>
<td>15%</td>
<td>12%</td>
<td>9.1%</td>
<td>7%</td>
<td>5.2%</td>
<td>4%</td>
<td>3%</td>
<td>2.2%</td>
<td>1.7%</td>
<td>1.2%</td>
<td>0.9%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>90</td>
<td>26%</td>
<td>21%</td>
<td>16%</td>
<td>13%</td>
<td>10%</td>
<td>7.4%</td>
<td>5.6%</td>
<td>4.2%</td>
<td>3.2%</td>
<td>2.4%</td>
<td>1.8%</td>
<td>1.3%</td>
<td>0.7%</td>
<td>0.7%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100</td>
<td>22%</td>
<td>17%</td>
<td>14%</td>
<td>10%</td>
<td>8%</td>
<td>6%</td>
<td>4.6%</td>
<td>3.4%</td>
<td>2.6%</td>
<td>2%</td>
<td>1.4%</td>
<td>0.8%</td>
<td>0.6%</td>
<td>0.5%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>110</td>
<td>19%</td>
<td>14%</td>
<td>11%</td>
<td>9%</td>
<td>6.5%</td>
<td>4.9%</td>
<td>3.7%</td>
<td>2.8%</td>
<td>2.1%</td>
<td>1.5%</td>
<td>1.2%</td>
<td>0.9%</td>
<td>0.6%</td>
<td>0.5%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>120</td>
<td>15%</td>
<td>12%</td>
<td>9%</td>
<td>7%</td>
<td>5.3%</td>
<td>4%</td>
<td>3%</td>
<td>2.2%</td>
<td>1.7%</td>
<td>1.2%</td>
<td>1%</td>
<td>0.7%</td>
<td>0.5%</td>
<td>0.4%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>130</td>
<td>13%</td>
<td>9.8%</td>
<td>7.5%</td>
<td>6%</td>
<td>4.3%</td>
<td>3.2%</td>
<td>2.4%</td>
<td>1.8%</td>
<td>1.3%</td>
<td>1%</td>
<td>0.7%</td>
<td>0.6%</td>
<td>0.4%</td>
<td>0.3%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>140</td>
<td>10%</td>
<td>8%</td>
<td>6.1%</td>
<td>4.6%</td>
<td>3.5%</td>
<td>2.6%</td>
<td>2%</td>
<td>1.4%</td>
<td>1.1%</td>
<td>0.8%</td>
<td>0.6%</td>
<td>0.5%</td>
<td>0.3%</td>
<td>0.25%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>150</td>
<td>9%</td>
<td>6.6%</td>
<td>5%</td>
<td>3.7%</td>
<td>2.8%</td>
<td>2.1%</td>
<td>1.6%</td>
<td>1.2%</td>
<td>0.9%</td>
<td>0.6%</td>
<td>0.5%</td>
<td>0.4%</td>
<td>0.3%</td>
<td>0.2%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>160</td>
<td>7%</td>
<td>5.3%</td>
<td>4%</td>
<td>3%</td>
<td>2.3%</td>
<td>1.7%</td>
<td>1.3%</td>
<td>1%</td>
<td>0.7%</td>
<td>0.5%</td>
<td>0.4%</td>
<td>0.3%</td>
<td>0.2%</td>
<td>0.2%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>170</td>
<td>5.7%</td>
<td>4.3%</td>
<td>3.2%</td>
<td>2.4%</td>
<td>1.8%</td>
<td>1.4%</td>
<td>1%</td>
<td>0.8%</td>
<td>0.6%</td>
<td>0.4%</td>
<td>0.3%</td>
<td>0.2%</td>
<td>0.1%</td>
<td>0.1%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>180</td>
<td>4.7%</td>
<td>3.5%</td>
<td>2.6%</td>
<td>2%</td>
<td>1.5%</td>
<td>1.1%</td>
<td>0.8%</td>
<td>0.6%</td>
<td>0.4%</td>
<td>0.3%</td>
<td>0.2%</td>
<td>0.2%</td>
<td>0.1%</td>
<td>0.1%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>190</td>
<td>3.8%</td>
<td>2.8%</td>
<td>2.1%</td>
<td>1.6%</td>
<td>1.2%</td>
<td>0.9%</td>
<td>0.7%</td>
<td>0.5%</td>
<td>0.4%</td>
<td>0.3%</td>
<td>0.2%</td>
<td>0.1%</td>
<td>0.1%</td>
<td>0.1%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>200</td>
<td>3%</td>
<td>2.3%</td>
<td>1.7%</td>
<td>1.3%</td>
<td>0.9%</td>
<td>0.7%</td>
<td>0.5%</td>
<td>0.4%</td>
<td>0.3%</td>
<td>0.2%</td>
<td>0.1%</td>
<td>0.1%</td>
<td>0.1%</td>
<td>0.1%</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


**Interpretation**

Values of 30,000 to 50,000/mL (least false positives) generally indicate pulmonary maturity [13,14]. Values of <15,000/μL are usually associated with immaturity. The test compares favorably with L/S and PG with a negative predictive value of a mature cutoff of 97.7% versus 96.8% and 94.7%, respectively [15]. A meta-analysis calculated receiver-operating characteristic curves based on data from six studies and showed the lamellar body count performed slightly better than the L/S ratio in predicting RDS [16].

**Special Considerations**

Meconium has a marginal impact on LB counts, increasing the count by 5000/μL. Bloody fluid can initially slightly increase the count because the platelets are counted as LB. Afterward, the procoagulant activity of AF produces an entrapment of both, platelets and LB, causing a decrease in LB counts. Because of variations in hematology analyzers, ideally laboratories should develop their own reference standards [17].

**Foam Stability Index**

The foam stability index (FSI) is a simple and rapid predictor of FLM based on the ability of surfactant to generate stable foam in the presence of ethanol.

**Technique**

After centrifugation, ethanol is added to a sample of amniotic fluid to eliminate the contributions of protein, bile salts, and salts of free fatty acids. The mixture is shaken for 30 seconds and will demonstrate generation of a stable ring of foam if surfactant is present in the amniotic fluid. Amniotic fluid samples should not be collected in silicone tubes as the silicone will produce “false foam.”

**Interpretation**

The FSI is calculated by utilizing serial dilutions of ethanol to quantitate the amount of surfactant present. RDS is very unlikely with an FSI value of 47 or higher. A positive result virtually excludes the risk of RDS; however, a negative test often occurs in the presence of mature lung.

**SINGLE TEST, MULTIPLE TESTS, OR CASCADE?**

Faced with different assays for FLM, some laboratories perform multiple tests simultaneously, leaving the clinician with the possibility of results discordant for pulmonary maturity from the same amniotic fluid specimen. In general, any mature test result is indicative of fetal pulmonary maturity given the high predictive value of any single test (5% or less of false mature rates). Conversely the use of a “cascade” approach has been proposed to minimize the risk of delivery of an infant with immature lungs while avoiding unnecessary delay in delivery and costs. According to this approach, a rapid and inexpensive test is performed first with follow-up tests performed only in the face of immaturity of the initial test (e.g., lamellar body count or surfactant/albumin ratio as the initial and only test and L/S ratio as the confirmatory test as necessary).

**CLINICAL CONDITIONS AFFECTING RISK OF RDS AND PREDICTIVE VALUE OF PULMONARY MATURITY TESTS**

Several maternal/fetal clinical or nonclinical circumstances can affect the risk of RDS and modify the predictive value of pulmonary maturity tests, including the following:

- African-American race is associated with FLM achieved at lower gestational ages and at lower L/S ratios (1.2 or greater) than in Caucasians.
Female gender is associated with acceleration of lung maturation.
Intrauterine growth restriction and preeclampsia are possibly associated with an acceleration of FLM.
Maternal diabetes and Rh-isoimmunization are associated with a delay in fetal lung maturation. Some authors have recommended the use of higher thresholds of L/S ratio (e.g., a cutoff ratio of 3) to establish pulmonary maturity in these conditions. Presence of a lamellar body count $\geq 70 \text{mg/g}$ has similarly been recommended to indicate mature fetal lungs in diabetic women [18]. Presence of PG is commonly considered as gold standard for documentation of FLM with diabetes or Rh-isoimmunization. For diabetes, also a TDx-FLM value of $\geq 70 \text{mg/g}$, or a L/S $\geq 3$, or the combination of the two, have been associated with $>95\%$ predictive value for a mature test. Gestational age-stratified TDx-FLM ratios have been reported in risk tables [18,19].
Hydramnios is associated with lower levels of L/S ratio, lamellar body count, and PG test.
In twin gestations, it is commonly recommended that the sac of the male twin or the larger twin be sampled at amniocentesis. The reasoning is that if the sampled twin has mature pulmonary results, the co-twin is even more likely to be mature.

**FINAL NOTE: FACTORS OTHER THAN LUNG MATURITY IMPACT FETAL OUTCOME**
A retrospective cohort study compared the outcomes of neonates born between 36 and 38 6/7 weeks in the setting of mature fetal lung profile studies to those born at 39 0/7 to 40 6/7 weeks and found an increase in a composite adverse neonatal outcomes (RR = 2.4, 95% CI 1.7–3.5) with common complications including respiratory distress, hyperbilirubinemia, and hypoglycemia [21]. It is important to remember that fetal maturation does not involve “just” the lungs. Given these data and considerations, the decision to proceed with FLM amniocentesis for the purposes of hastening delivery should always be carefully considered, and in the vast majority of cases, this test should not be performed [3,21].

**REFERENCES**
Amniotic fluid volume (AFV)
Amniotic fluid index (AFI)
Amniotic fluid embolism (AFE), 365–371
Amniotic fluid (AF)
Amnionicity, multiple gestations, 398, 399
Amnioinfusion, oligohydramnios and, 516
assessment in twin pregnancies
accuracy of ultrasound, for
oligohydramnios, 513–514
AFV, estimation with SDP/AFI, 514
background, 513
color Doppler for AFV, 514
indications, 513
key points, 513, 515, 516–517
management, 514–515
oligohydramnios, 513–516; see also
Oligohydramnios
postpartum/breast-feeding, 217
risk factors/associations, 216
symptoms, signs, and organ toxicity, 216
therapy, 217
urine drug screening for, 208, 208t
Anchocer B, 155t
Amplimillin, 26–27, 157, 235, 325, 328t, 329
Amphotericin B, 155t
Anemia
Inherited, 132
Acute symmetrical polyneuropathy, 130
Iron deficiency, 133
Hemolytic; see also Hemolytic disease of fetus and neonate, 447, 448, 449, 450, 451, 452, 453, 454, 455, 456, 457, 458, 459, 460, 461, 462, 463, 464, 465, 466, 467, 468, 469, 470, 471, 472, 473, 474, 475, 476, 477, 478, 479, 480, 481, 482, 483, 484, 485, 491, 495, 505, 508
of fetus and neonate, 467–474
hemolytic; see also Hemolytic disease
Anesthesia
defined, 131
fetal, 128, 142, 302, 412, 477, 515, 517
orypharyngeal, 41
oligohydramnios, 513–514
recurrence rates, 369
risk factors, 366
survivors, prognosis, 369
Amniotic fluid index (AFI)
AFV, estimation, 514
background, 518
oligohydramnios and, 513–514
Amniotic fluid volume (AFV)
accuracy of ultrasound, for
oligohydramnios, 513–514
 assessment in twin pregnancies
background, 518
management of oligohydramnios
and/or hydramnios, 518
technique, 518
BPS, assessment, 500, 500t
color Doppler for, 514
estimation
with SDP or AFI, 514
ultrasound, accuracy of, 514
for FGR, 422, 424
NST and, 501
Amoxicillin, 156, 235, 242, 310, 312, 313t
Amphetamines, 216–217
Anesthesia, 217
anterpartum testing, 217
complications
genital anomalies, 216–217
fetal/neonatal morphometrics, 217
long-term neurodevelopmental
outcome, 217
neonatal withdrawal, 217
obstetrical and neonatal, 217
defined, 216
diagnosis, 216
epidemiology/incidence, 216
etiology/basic pathophysiology, 216
historic notes, 216
incidence, 206
postpartum/breast-feeding, 217
risk factors/associations, 216
symptoms, signs, and organ toxicity, 216
therapy, 217
urine drug screening for, 208, 208t
Anchocer B, 155t
Amplimillin, 26–27, 157, 235, 325, 328t, 329
Amphotericin B, 155t
Anaphylactic shock, 366, 367
Analgesics, 164–165, 164t, 454
Ancef, 157
Antepartum testing, 496–509
background, 506, 507t
condition-specific testing, 505, 506–508
NRFHT and, 514
maternal anemia, 137
NIH, management, 486
obesity and, 40–41
pneumonia, 235
prerem labor, 507
pre and perinatal nutrition, 404
selected outcomes, 507
VTE, 278–279
CST, 498–499
expectant management, 491
induction, 492–493
FNALT, 465
GDM, 67
HAV infections, 284
HBV infections, 289
HCV infection, 295
HELLP syndrome, 17
hemolytic disease, 474
marijuana (cannabis), 210
maternal anemia, 137
NIH, management, 486
obesity and, 40–41
pneumonia, 235
pre and perinatal nutrition, 404
selected outcomes, 507
VTE, 278–279
CST, 498–499
expectant management, 491
induction, 492–493
FNALT, 465
GDM, 67
HAV infections, 284
HBV infections, 289
HCV infection, 295
HELLP syndrome, 17
hemolytic disease, 474
marijuana (cannabis), 210
maternal anemia, 137
NIH, management, 486
obesity and, 40–41
pneumonia, 235
pre and perinatal nutrition, 404
selected outcomes, 507
VTE, 278–279
CST, 498–499
Antibiotics

Anthrax vaccine, 335t

Anthracyclines, 375, 377, 380, 381

for sepsis, 359

Anticoagulation

for thromboembolic risk, 27

VTE, 277–278

Antihistamines, 95t, 97, 107, 233, 389

Antiepileptic drugs (AEDs)

Aortic stenosis, 28

Aortic valve, 28

Aortic stenosis, 28

Antithrombin III (ATIII) deficiency, 260, 262, 264, 266, 274, 277

Antithrombin III deficiency, 260, 262, 264, 266, 274, 277

Apixaban, 273

Arrhythmias, 104, 206, 367, 498

Arterial pulmonary vasculature, 366

Arteriovenous malformations, NIH and, 482

Arts, 330

GDM, 67

hallucinogens, exposure, 220

HAV infections, pregnancy with, 284

HBV infections, 289

HCV infection, 294–295

HIV infection, 302

hyperthyroidism, 82–83

ICP, 107

IH (pustular psoriasis of pregnancy), 393

infectious endocarditis, 26–27

metronidazole, 112t, 113, 212, 322, 324

penicillins, see Penicillins

pneumonia, 235

rifampin, 145

for sepsis, 359

sickle cell disease, 142

treatment resistance to, 180

Anti-D immunoglobulin prophylaxis, 467, 469–470

after birth (postpartum), 469

before birth (antenatal), 469–470

special clinical situations, 470

Antiemetics

for headache, 164t, 165

NVP and HG, 98

Antidepressants, 181–184

for GDM, 67

GBS, 330

FGR, 420–424

AF volume, 422, 424

BPS, 422, 424

Doppler velocimetry, 420–421

estriol levels, 424

fetal kick counts, 422–424

venous Doppler (DV) velocimetry, ultrasound, 420–422

MCA Doppler velocimetry, 421

interval of fetal testing, 424

growth assessment, intervals of, 420

tuberculosis, 242

trauma, 346

SLE, 250

pregestational diabetes, 55, 55t

preeclampsia, 13

pregestational diabetes, 55, 55t

prolactinoma, 90

sickle cell disease, 142

SLE, 250

trauma, 346

tuberculosis, 242

UC, 116

VTE, 278

vWD, 148

Anthraclyines, 375, 377, 380, 381

Anthrax vaccine, 335t

Antibiotics

ACS, 143

broad-spectrum, 122

cefazolin, 27, 41, 325, 328t, 329

dosing of, 472

erthyromycin, see Erythromycin

IBD, 112, 113

infective endocarditis, 26–27

metronidazole, 112t, 113, 212, 322, 324

penicillins, see Penicillins

pneumonia, 235

rifampin, 145

for sepsis, 359

sickle cell disease, 142

traumatic brain injury, 344

vancomycin, 155t, 235, 325, 328t, 329

Antibodies

antiphospholipid, 151

antithyroid

thyroglobulin, 73, 75

TPO, 73, 74, 75, 76–77

TRAbs, 80

Anticardiolipin antibodies (ACAs), 254, 255t

Anti-chlamydia IgM, 312

Anticoagulation

postpartum management of, 279

Antidepressants, 181–184

for preeclampsia, 11

selenoproteins as, 74

with vitamin C, for preeclampsia, 7

Antiphospholipid antibodies (APAs)

lupus nephritis and, 151

SLE and, 247

testing, 254, 255t

VTE, risk of, 277–278

Antiphospholipid syndrome (APS), 254–258

anesthesia, 258

antenatal testing, 257–258

APA testing, 254, 255t

classification, 254

complications

fetal, 255

maternal, 254–255

defined, 270

diagnosis, 254, 255t

epidemiology/incidence, 254

etiology/basic pathophysiology, 254

historic notes, 254

management, 255–257

prevention, 256

principles, 255

screening, 255–256

postpartum/breast-feeding, 258

pregnancy considerations, 255

preparations for delivery, 258

SLE and, 246

symptoms, 254

testing, 491

therapy, 256–257

actual therapy, 256–257, 257t

evidence, 256

issues, 257

Antiphospholipid syndrome (APS)

for preeclampsia, 13

Antipsychotics

lactation and, 189–190

during pregnancy, 187–188

Antiretroviral therapy (ART)

combination, 297

HIV infection, 300–301, 301t, 302t

Antithrombin III (ATIII) deficiency, 260, 262, 264, 266, 274, 277

Anti-TNF-alpha agents, 112t

Antiviral drugs, for herpes, 453, 454

Anti-Xa levels, 256, 257, 275, 276

Antifibrinolytic amino acids, 145

Antigens, defined, 460

Antihistamines, 95t, 97, 107, 233, 389

Antihypertensive drugs

trihydropyridines

for preeclampsia, 11

Armenian Thyroid, 76

Arrhythmias, 104, 206, 367, 498

Arterial pulmonary vasculature, 366

Arteriovenous malformations, NIH and, 482

Arfonad, 174

Aripiprazole, 186t, 190

Armour Thyroid, 76

Asthma

in FGR pregnancies, 420

atrophiia of the pituitary, 174

ATRIAL fibrillation

for preeclampsia, 11
INDEX 533

Clinical hypothyroidism, 73–76
ante partum management, 76
complications, 74
defined, 73, 74f
incidence, 73
management
preconception, 74
prevention, 74
neonatal, 76
pathophysiology, 73–74
postpartum, 76
pregnancy considerations, 74–75, 75t
anatomy/radiology, 74
fetal thyroid physiology, 74
maternal physiology, 74, 75t
placenta physiology, 74–75
screening/diagnosis, 75, 75t
dose, 75
goal, 75
iodine supplementation, 76
new diagnosis, 75
preexisting hypothyroidism, 75
thyroxine replacement, 75–76
type, 76
Clinical Laboratory Improvement Amendments (CLIA), 306, 318
Clinical neonatal findings
CMV, 437
CVS, 459
Clinical presentation, AFE, 366
Clinical remission, defined, 112
Clinical scenarios
FNAIT, 465
VTE management, 272, 273, 274–276, 275t
Clofazimine, 242
Clophemine citrates, 124
Clonidine, 99, 201, 213
Clomiphene citrates, 124
Clotrimazole, 262
Clostridium difficile, 112
Clostridium spp., 112, 121
Clozapine, 186t, 187, 190
Clozafine®, 186t
CMV, see Cytomegalovirus (CMV)
Coagulation studies, trauma and, 344–345
Coagulopathy and AFE, management, 369
Coarctation of aorta
clinical presentation, 366
Coagulopathy and AFE, management, 369
Coagulopathy and AFE, management, 369
antepartum testing, 215
anesthesia, 215
mood disorders, 188
Cognitive delay, 416
Cognitive behavioral therapies
headache, 165
Cognitive behavioral therapies
headache, 165
mood disorders, 188
Cognitive behavioral therapies
headache, 165
mood disorders, 188
Color Doppler, for AFV, 514
Color Doppler, for AFV, 514
Color Doppler, for AFV, 514
Communicating and Relating Effectively
systematic review, 4, 5, 97, 107, 181, 188, 212, 213, 228
Cocoa butter lotion, 387
Cocooning, defined, 332
Cocaine abuse, 214–215
anesthesia, 215
ante partum testing, 215
diagnosis/definition, 214
epidemiology/incidence, 214
etiology/basic pathophysiology, 214
notes, 214
maternal and perinatal complications, 214–215
congenital anomalies, 214
fetal/neonatal morphometrics, 215
long-term neonatal outcome, 215
neonatal withdrawal, 215
obstetrical complications, 215
overview, 206
postpartum/breastfeeding, 215
risk factors/associations, 214
symptoms, signs, and cardiopulmonary complications, 214
therapy, 215
Cochrane systematic review, 4, 5, 97, 107, 181, 188, 212, 213, 228
Cocoa butter lotion, 387
Cocooning, defined, 332
Codeine, 162, 164t, 165, 210, 211
Cognitive behavioral therapies
headache, 165
mood disorders, 188
Cognitive behavioral therapies
headache, 165
mood disorders, 188
Color Doppler, for AFV, 514
Color Doppler, for AFV, 514
Color Doppler, for AFV, 514
Communicating and Relating Effectively
systematic review, 4, 5, 97, 107, 181, 188, 212, 213, 228
Cocoa butter lotion, 387
Cocooning, defined, 332
Codeine, 162, 164t, 165, 210, 211
Cognitive behavioral therapies
headache, 165
mood disorders, 188
Cognitive behavioral therapies
headache, 165
mood disorders, 188
Cognitive delay, 416
Cognitive delay, 416
Cognitive behavioral therapies
headache, 165
mood disorders, 188
Cognitive delay, 416
Cognitive delay, 416
Color Doppler, for AFV, 514
Color Doppler, for AFV, 514
Color Doppler, for AFV, 514
Communicating and Relating Effectively
systematic review, 4, 5, 97, 107, 181, 188, 212, 213, 228
Cocoa butter lotion, 387
Cocooning, defined, 332
fetal macrosomia, 432
FGFR, 415–416
FNAl, 462
GBS, 326
GDM, 60–61
GHTN, 5
gonorhea, 306
hallucinogens, exposure
congenital anomalies, 220
long-term neonatal outcome, 220
obstetrical and neonatal, 220
HAV, 283
HBV, 286
HCV, 293
HELLP syndrome, 16, 17t
herpes, 452
HIV
fetal, 299
maternal, 299
HSV infection, 454
hyperthyroidism, 81
ICP, 104, 106
IH (pustular psoriasis of pregnancy), 393
influenza, 236–237
inherited thrombophilies, 262–263
adverse pregnancy outcome, 262–263, 263t
VTE, 262
marijuana, use, 209–210
congenital anomalies, 210
fetal/neonatal morphometrics, 210
long-term neonatal outcome, 210
neonatal withdrawal, 210
obstetrical, 210
maturity
acute cholecystitis, 121
anemia, 134
APS, 254–255
CD, 111
cholethiathiasis, 119
CHTN, 2
cocaine, 214–215
HIV, 299
NIH, 483
NVP and HIV, 93
preeclampsia, 9
prolactinoma, 86
seizures, 168
SLE, 246
smoking, 198
trauma, 340
UC, 114
mood disorders, 178
multiple gestation, 400–402
abruptio placenta, 401
acute fatty liver, 402
anomalous fetus, selective termination, 403–404; see also Anomalous fetus
chromosomal and congenital anomalies, 401
fetal, 400, 401
FGFR and discordant growth, 401
FGFR/discordant twins, 404
gestational diabetes, 402
low-dose aspirin, 402
maternal, 401, 402
monochorionic gestations, 401
peri partum hysterectomy, 402
preeclampsia, 401
pregnancy considerations, 402
pregnancy management, 402
pre natal diagnosis, 402
VZV infection, 457, 458t
Cranberry juice, 156
Craniosynostosis, 181
Creatinine
clearance, calculation, 1, 3
diabetic nephropathy, 51, 52
LTxs, pregnancy after, 124, 125, 127t
preeclampsia, 6, 7, 8, 11, 13, 16
renal diseases, 150, 151
renal transplantation, 155
CRI, see Chronic renal insufficiency (CRI)
Criminalization, of addiction, 209
Critical care, 349–361
background, 349
considerations in transfer (interhospital), 353
ICU, admission to, 349, 350t, 353, 354t
logistics, 353, 354–355
levels of, 356–357, 356t
key points, 349
incidence, 349
ICU, admission to, 349, 350t, 353, 354t
considerations in transfer (interhospital), 353
background, 349
ICE, 278
ICP, 107–108
HIV infection, 303
HBV infections, 289
HAV infections, pregnancy with, 284
GHTN, 6
GDM, 67
GBS, 330
GDx, 67
GHTN, 5
SCI, 175
UC, 116
multiple gestation and, 426, 426t
preparation, steroids and magnesium
sulfate, 424
timing, 412, 423f, 424–426
TRUFFLE study, 424, 425, 426
FNAIT, 465
GBS, 330
GDM, 67
GHTN, 5
HAV infections, pregnancy with, 284
HBV infections, 289
HCV infection, 294–295
HELLP syndrome, 17, 18
hemolytic disease, 474
HIV infection, 303
ICP, 107–108
in ICU, 355
intrapartum glucose management
GDM, 67, 68f
pregestational diabetes, 55, 56f
issues
acute cholecystitis, 122
cholelithiasis, 120
sickle cell disease, 142
LTx, pregnancy after; 129
hemolytic disease, 474
lung maturity, GDM, 67
maternal anemia, 137
mode
CD, 114
CRI, 153
GDM, management, 67
HELLP syndrome, 17, 18
HSV infection, 454
preeclampsia, 13
pregestational diabetes, 55
SCI, 175, 179t
UC, 116
multiple gestation
delayed interval delivery, multiple
gestation, 408
Delivery
APS, 258
asthma, 233
CD, 114
cesarean, see Cesarean delivery
cesarean, obesity and, 41
CT, 250, 251
TB, 242
timing
cancer and, 380

INDEX 535
INDEX

GDM, 67
HELPP syndrome, 17
NIH, 486
preeclampsia, 13
pregestational diabetes, 55
severe preeclampsia, 16
trauma, 346
vaginal, see Vaginal delivery
VTE, 278–279
\(vWD\), 149

Delta sign, defined, 400
Demerol (meperidine), 19, 164t, 165
Depakote (valproic acid), 165, 169, 169t, 185t
Depakote, 169, 185t
Demerol (meperidine), 19, 164t, 165
Delta sign, defined, 400
Demerol (meperidine), 19, 164t, 165
Depakote (valproic acid), 165, 169, 169t, 185t
Depakote, 169, 185t

Depot medroxyprogesterone acetate (DMPA), 143
Depression
amphetamine use, 216, 217
benzodiazepines, use, 219
bipolar, see Bipolar depression
cocaine use, 214
CSD, 163
EPDS, 177, 178, 179f
GDM, 59, 67
HG and, 93
marijuana, use, 210
maternal, 177, 178
maternal respiratory, 19
MDD, 177, 180
migraine and, 165
myocardial, 27
obesity and, 41
opioids, use, 211, 212
PCP, use, 219
postpartum, 134, 177, 178, 179, 188
postpartum thyroiditis, 77
in pregnancy, 177
psychological intervention for, 188
risk factors, 178
SCA and, 175
screening for, 178
smoking relapse, 201
SSRIs for, 181, 182t–183t
symptoms, 177
Dermatology, SCA and, 174
Dermatoses, of pregnancy, 386–395
ADP (eczema)
defined, 389
diagnosis, 389, 390f
epidemiology/incidence, 389
etiology/basic pathology, 389
key points, 389
management, 389
overview, 386, 387t
pregnancy considerations, 390
symptoms, 389
therapy, 389
workup, 389
background, 386, 387t
cutaneous melanoma, 389–395
classification, 394
complications, 394
defined, 394
diagnosis, 394, 395f
epidemiology/incidence, 394
genetics, 394
key points, 394
management, 395
preconception counseling, 395
pregnancy considerations, 394–395
pregnancy management, 395
prevention, 395
risk factors, 394
symptoms, 394
therapy, 395
workup, 395
IH (pustular psoriasis of pregnancy) antepartum testing, 393
complications, 393
defined, 392
diagnosis, 392, 393f
epidemiology/incidence, 392
etiology/basic pathology, 393
 genetics, 392
 historic notes, 392
 key points, 392
 management, 393
 overview, 386, 387t
 preconception counseling, 393
 prevention, 393
 principles, 393
 risk factors/associations, 393
 symptoms, 392
 therapy, 393
 workup, 393
PEP complications, 388
defined, 388
diagnosis, 388, 388f
epidemiology/incidence, 388
etiology/basic pathology, 388
 genetics, 388
 historic notes, 388
 key points, 388
 management, 388–389
 overview, 386, 387t
 preconception counseling, 388–389
 PUBPP, 388–389
 symptoms, 388
 therapy, 389
 workup, 388
PFP defined, 390
diagnosis, 390, 390f
epidemiology/incidence, 390
etiology/basic pathology, 390
 historic notes, 390
 key points, 390
 management, 390
 overview, 386, 387t
 pregnancy considerations, 390
 symptoms, 390
 therapy, 390
 workup, 390
PG (herpes gestationis) complications, 392
defined, 391–392
diagnosis, 391–392, 392f
epidemiology/incidence, 392
etiology/basic pathology, 392
 exclusion of, 398
 genetics, 392
 historic notes, 391
 key points, 391
 management, 392
 overview, 386, 387t
 PEP and, 388
 symptoms, 392
 therapy, 392
 workup, 392
PP complications, 391
defined, 390
diagnosis, 390, 391f
epidemiology/incidence, 391
etiology/basic pathology, 391
 historic notes, 390
 key points, 390
 management, 391
 overview, 386, 387t
 risk factors/associations, 391
 symptoms, 390
 therapy, 391
 workup, 391
SG (stretch marks), 386, 387
cause of, 386
defined, 386
diagnosis, 386
epidemiology/incidence, 386
etiology/basic pathology, 386
 genetics, 386
 key points, 386
 management, 387
 prevention, 387
 risk factors/associations, 386
 symptoms, 386
 therapy, 387

Desatinib, 378
Desensitization, 320
Desogestrel, 279
Detemir, insulin, 53t, 54
Detoxification, illicit opioid use with, 212
Dexamethasone
in FGR pregnancies, 424
FNAlT, 563
headache, 164t, 165
HELLP syndrome, 7, 16, 17
ICP, 107
ICU setting, 356
repeated doses of steroids, 380
septic shock, 360
SLE, 249, 249f, 251
thyroid storm, 80, 83, 83t
Dextran, 136
Dextrose saline, 99
Diabetes
fetal monitoring for, 505, 506
GDM, see Gestational diabetes (GDM)
LTX, pregnancy after, 125
management, 433, 434
mellitus (DM)
defined, 50
diagnosis of, 50, 51t
FGR and, 416
pregestational, see Pregestational diabetes
Rh-is immunization and, 525
screening, 40
Diabetic ketoacidosis, 54, 54t
Diabetic nephropathy, 51
Diabetic retinopathy, 51
Diagnosis
acute cholecystitis, 120, 120f
ADP (eczema), 389, 389f
AFe, 366–369
cardiac arrest, management, 367–369, 368t, 367f
clinical presentation, 366
differential, 366–367
laboratory testing, 367
management of coagulopathy with, 369
amphetamine use, 216
INDEX 537

cancer; see also Cancer
general principles, 381–382
before pregnancy, 381–382
during pregnancy, 373–381
CD, 110, 112
chlamydial infection, 312
CHTN, 1, 2t, 3
clinical hypothyroidism, 75, 75t
CMV, 439
cocaine, use, 214
criteria, severe preeclampsia, 15
cutaneous melanoma, 394, 394f
delay in
acute leukemia, 377
breast cancer, 374
invasive cervical cancer, 379
melanoma, 378
NHL, 377
thyroid cancer, 379
DVT, 269, 270, 271–272, 273f
fetal death, 488
FGR, 413–414, 418
FNALT, 462
GBS, 325, 327–328, 327f
GDM, 59–60, 60t
gonorrhea, 306–307, 307t
hallucinogens, 220
HAV infection, 283
HBV infections
adults, 285, 286t
infants, 285
HCV infection
adults, 291–292
infants, 292
HD, 375
headache, 162–163, 163t
HELLP syndrome, 16, 17t
herpes, 453
HG, 81, 92, 94t
HIV, 297, 298f
HIV, in infant, 303
hyperthyroidism, 81
hypothyroxinemia, 76
ICP, 103, 104t, 105t
IH (pustular psoriasis of pregnancy),
influenza, 236, 236t
inherited thrombophilias, 264, 265t
marijuana (cannabis), 209
maternal anemia, 132f, 133f, 134, 135–136
multiple gestation, 399, 400, 400f, 401f
prenatal, 402
NIH, 478, 478f, 484–485, 484f, 485f
oligohydramnios, 515
opioids, 210
parvovirus, 449, 449f
PCP, 219
PEP, 388, 388f
PFH, 390, 390f
PG, 391–392, 392f
pneumonia, 233
polyhydramnios (hydramnios), 517
postpartum thyroiditis, 77
PP, 390, 390f
preeclampsia, 21, 8
preeclampsia, prevention, 11
pregestational diabetes, 50, 51t
prolactinoma, 86
pyelonephritis, 156
renal disease, 150
SCI, 173
seizures, 167–168
sepsis, 357, 358f, 359
sickle cell disease, 139
SLE, 246
smoking, 196
subclinical hypothyroidism, 76
superimposed preeclampsia, 2, 2t, 7, 8
syphilis, 319
thyroid nodule, 77
thyroid storm, 83
toxoplasmosis, 444
trauma, pregnancy management with, 343–345
admission, 345
blunt abdominal, 343–344
coagulation studies, 344–345
contraction monitoring, 344
CT, 343, 343t
DPL, 343–344
FAST ultrasound, 343, 344
fetal monitoring, 344
fetal ultrasound, 344
KB test, 344
laparotomy, 344
open fractures, 344
penetrating abdominal wound, 344
Rh status, 344
spine trauma, 344
tocodynamometer, 344
traumatic brain injury, 344
trichomoniasis, 323, 323t
TTTS, 405
tuberculosis, 239
UC, 114, 114t, 115
urinary nephrolithiasis, 157
UTI, 156
VTE, 271–272, 272t
wWD, 145, 146t
YIZ infection, 458
Diagnostic peritoneal lavage (DPL),
Dias lysis, 153–154
complications, 154
postpartum care, 154
pregnancy management, 154
principles/counseling, 153
Diatomic (DA) twins, 398, 399t, 400, 401
4t, 404, 405, 406f, 407, 408, 426
Diazepam, 12, 19, 99, 218, 219
Diazoxide, 5
Dichorionic (DC) twins, 398, 399t, 400, 401,
403, 404, 404t, 408, 408t, 426
Diclectin, 97
Diclegis, 97
Dilantin, 155t, 157
Diabetic supplements
FGR, prevention, 416
for GDM, 61
pregestational diabetes, 53, 53t
pregnancy weight reduction, 38
proper, hypertensive disorders, 3
weight loss, 39
Diethylene glycol, 198
Differential diagnosis
with ACR, 128
acute hepatitis, 292
of AFE, 366–367
CD, 112
cholelithiasis, 119
Crohn's disease (CD), 112
HAV, HBV, HCV, 285
HELLP syndrome, 16, 17t
ICP, 103
microscopic hematuria, 158
NIH, 479–483, 480t–481t
cardiovascular disorders, 479–481
chromosomal abnormalities, 481
congenital infections, 482
extracardiac anomalies, 481–482
fetal tumors, 483
hematologic disorders, 482–483
metabolic diseases, 483
NVP, 94t
polycystic ovary syndrome, 517
SLE flare, 248
UC, 115
DiGeorge syndrome, 24
DIGITAT study, 424, 425
Digoxin, 29, 155t, 479, 486
Dihydroergotamine, 165
Dilantin (phenytoins), 12, 19, 75, 155t, 167,
169, 169t, 170, 171
Dilated cardiomyopathy, 29
Dilation and evacuation (D&E), 491–492
Diltiazem, 83t, 155t
Dimenhylidine (Dramamine), 95t, 97
 Diphenhydramine (Benadryl), 95t, 97, 380
 Diphenoxylate, 492
 Dipyridamole, 10
 Direct-acting antiviral agents (DAAs), 291,
294–295
 Direct immunofluorescence (DIF) findings,
in PEP, 389
 Discordant growth, multiple gestation, 401
 Discordant twins, FGR and, 404
 Disseminated intravascular coagulation
(DIC), 366, 369
 Disseminated mycobacterium avium
complex, 301t
 Diuretics, 4, 11, 29
 Divalproex sodium, 185t
 Diabetic (DZ) twins
 defined, 398
etiology, 398, 399t
incidence, 398
Dobutamine, 360, 368, 368t, 369
Docosahexaenoic acid, 419
Domestic violence, 339
Doxycyclin, 294–295
Dopamine agonists
for hyperprolactinemia, 86
pseudotumors, 86, 87, 88, 88t
Dopamine, antagonists, for NVP and HG,
95t, 98
Doppler, color, 514
Doppler evaluation, for FGR
MCA, 413, 414, 415, 418, 420, 422, 423f,
425
limitations, 421
velocimetry, 421
UA, 412, 413, 414, 418, 419, 420, 421,
422, 423f, 424, 425, 426, 426t, 506
antepartum testing, 496, 499, 501,
502f, 503, 505, 506, 506f, 508
limitations, 421
velocimetry, 420–421
uterine artery, 418
venous Doppler (DV) velocimetry,
421–422, 423f
Doppler of fetal vessels, 501–505
venous Doppler (DV) velocimetry,
421–422, 423f
Doppler surveillance, BPS and, 501
antepartum testing, 496, 499, 501,
502f, 503, 505, 506, 506f, 508
Doppler velocimetry, for FGR, 420–421
Doses
amoxicillin, 156, 313t
ampicillin, 156, 313t
antibiotics, 472

...
seizures, 168
SC, 386
SLE, 246
smoking, 196–198
trauma, 339
trichomionas, 322
TTTS, 404
tuberculosis, 238
U/C, 114
VTE, 270, 271f, 271t
vWD, 145, 147
Euglycemia, 66, 67
European Association for Study of Liver (EASL), 289
European Centre for Disease Prevention and Control (ECDC), 308
European Gonococcal Antimicrobial Surveillance Programme (EuroGASP), 307
European prospective cohort on thrombophilia (EPCOT), 264
European Society of Radiology, 164
European Association for Study of Liver (EASL), 289
European prospective cohort on thrombophilia (EPCOT), 264
European Society of Radiology, 164
Euthyroid, 75, 76, 81
Evaluation
headache, 164
ICP
activated charcoal, 107
cholestyramine, 107
dexamethasone, 107
guar gum, 107
hydroxyzine, 107
prevention, 106, 106f
principles, 106
SAMe, 107
ursodeoxycholic acid (Ursodiol), 106
vitamin K, 107
workup, 106
trauma, 343–345
admission, 345
blunt abdominal, 343–344
couagulation studies, 344–345
contraction monitoring, 344
CT, 343, 343t
DPL, 343–344
FAST ultrasound, 343, 344
fetal monitoring, 344
fetal ultrasound, 344
KB test, 344
laparotomy, 344
open fractures, 344
penetrating abdominal wound, 344
Rh status, 344
spine trauma, 344
tocodynamometer, 344
traumatic brain injury, 344
Exercise
GDM, management, 61, 66
preeclampsia, prevention, 11
pregestational diabetes, 53
weight loss, 39
Expectant management
fetal death, 491
severe preeclampsia, 16
Expedited partner therapy (EPT), 306, 311–312, 313
Extracardiac anomalies, NIH and, 481–482
gastrointestinal, 480t, 481, 482
genitourinary, 480t, 481
skeletal dysplasias, 480t, 482
thoracic, 480t, 481
vascular, 480t, 482
Extracorporeal membrane oxygenation (ECMO), 237
Extrahepatic diseases, with HCV infection, 292
Extrapyramidal syndrome, 188
Extreme obesity, defined, 32
F
Factor V Leiden (FVL) mutation, 9, 260, 261–262, 263, 265f, 266, 277, 279
Fallot, tetralogy of, 28
Famciclovir, 454
Familial hemiplegic migraine (FHM), 163
Famotidine (Pepcid), 95t, 97
Familial hemiplegic migraine (FHM), 163
Famciclovir, 454
Fetal factors, for FGR, 415
Fetal growth restriction (FGR), 412–426
Fetal demise, defined, 488
Fetal evaluation, after chemotherapy, 380–381
Fetal-echocardiography, 24, 484
Fetal factors, for FGR, 415
Fetal growth restriction (FGR), 412–426
antepartum testing, 420–424
AF volume, 422, 424
BPS, 422, 424
Doppler velocimetry, 420–421
estriol levels, 424
fetal kick counts, 422
growth assessment, intervals of, 420
interval of fetal testing, 424
MCA Doppler velocimetry, 421
NST/CTG, 422
ultrasound, 420–422
venous Doppler (DV) velocimetry, 421–422, 423f
categorization, 414
cause, 414
classification, 414
complications, 415–416
overview, 412, 413t
defined, 412, 413
delivery, 424–426
DIGITAT study, 424, 425
GRIT study, 424–425, 426
mode of, 426
multiple gestation and, 426, 426t
preparation, steroids and magnesium sulfate, 424
timing, 422, 423f, 424–426
TRUFFLE study, 424, 425, 426
diagnosis, 413–414
epidemiology/incidence, 414
etiology/basic pathophysiology, 414–415
fetal factors, 415
fetal monitoring for, 506
future pregnancy preconception counseling, 426, 426t
genetics/inheritance/recurrence, 414
key points, 412–413
management, 412, 416–420
abdominal decompression, 420
aspirin, 420
aspirin therapy, 416
bed rest, 419
betamimetics, 419
calcium channel blocker, 419–420
control of maternal medical disorders, 416
counseling, 419
diagnosis, 418
fundal height, 417
gestational age determination, 416
heparin, 420
interventions, 419–420
medical conditions, therapy for, 419
nitric oxide donors, 420
nutrient therapy, 419
nutrition, 416
oxygen therapy, 420
plasma volume expansion, 420
pregnancy interval, 416
prevention, 416
screening, 416–418
serum analytes, 416–417
substance cessation, 416
INDEX
acute cholecystitis, 120–122
classification, 120, 121t
complications, 121
defined, 120
diagnosis, 120, 120f
epidemiology/incidence, 121
ERCP, 121–122
etiology/pathogenesis, 121
fetal complications, 121
imaging, 121
labor and delivery considerations, 122
laboratory investigations, 121
laparoscopic vs. open
cystectomy, 122
management, 122
maternal complications, 121
MRCP, 121
pregnancy considerations, 121
principles, 121
risk factors/associations, 121
surgery, 122
symptoms, 121
workup, 121
cholelithiasis, 119–120
complications, 119
defined, 119
diagnosis, 119
differential diagnosis, 119
epidemiology/incidence, 119
etiology/pathophysiology, 119
fetal complications, 119
imaging, 120
labor and delivery issues, 120
laboratory investigations, 120
management, 120
maternal complications, 119
pregnancy considerations, 120
principles, 120
risk factors/associations, 119, 120t
symptoms, 119
therapy, 120
workup, 120
key points, 119
Gallium scanning, 376
Gamma-hydroxybutyrate (GHB), 216
Garlic, prevention of preeclampsia, 11
Gastrointestinal anomalies, NIH and, 480, 481
GBS, see Group B streptococcus (GBS)
GDM, see Gestational diabetes (GDM)
Generalized tonic clonic (GTC) seizure, 168
General management, cardiac disease, 25, 26–27, 27t
Genetic(s)
cardiac disease, 24
cutaneous melanoma, 394
FGR, 414
FNAIT, 460
HAV infections, 283
HBV infections, 285
HCV infection, 293
headache, 163
hemolytic disease, 467
ICP, 103
IH (pustular psoriasis of pregnancy), 392
inherited thrombophilias
ATIII deficiency, 262
FVL, 261–262, 261t
MTHFR/homocysteinemia, 262
protein C, 262
protein S, 262
prothrombin G20210A gene, 262
maternal anemia, 131, 133t, 134t, 135t
NVP and HC, 92
obesity, 33
PEP, 388
PG (herpes gestationis), 392
SG, 386
sickle cell diseases, 139
smoking, 196
vTE, 270, 271t, 272t, 275t
vWD, 145, 146t
Genital herpes, reactivation (recurrent), 452
Genitourinary anomalies, NIH and, 480, 481
Gentamicin, 155t, 157, 329
Geodon, 186t
Gestational age determination, 416
Gestational diabetes (GDM), 59–68
associations, 60
complications, 60–61
defined, 59
incidence, 60
key points, 59
multiple gestation, 402
nephrotic syndrome and, 153
pathophysiology, 60
prevention, 61
risk factors for, 59, 60, 60t
screening/diagnosis, 59–60, 60t
treatment, 61–68, 61t, 62t–65t
anesthesia, 67
antenatal testing, 67
delivery, 67
diet, 61
exercise, 61, 66
glucose monitoring, 66
glucose monitoring, 66
gluburide, 66
insulin, 66–67, 66t, 67f
intrapartum glucose management, 62, 67f
metformin (glucophage), 66
nutritional supplementation, 67
oral hypoglycemic agents, 66
postpartum/breast-feeding, 68, 68f
Gestational hypertension (GHTN)
antenatal management, 5, 6
complications, 5
defined, 5
delivery, 6
incidence, 5
risk factors, 5
Gestational thyrotoxicosis
defined, 80
Graves’ disease from, 81
transient biochemical thyrotoxicosis, 81
Gestodene, 279
Ghrelin, 33
GHTN, see Gestational hypertension (GHTN)
Ginger, 97
Glanzman disease, 149
Glargine, 53t, 54, 55, 66, 67, 67f
Glomerular filtration rate (GFR), 150
Glucagon, for home use, 54
Glucocorticoids, 96t
Glucocorticoids, 96t
Glucocorticoids, 96t
Glucocorticoids, 96t
Glucocorticoids, 96t
Glucocorticoids, 96t
Glucocorticoids, 96t
Glucocorticoids, 96t
Glucocorticoids, 96t
Glucocorticoids, 96t
Glucocorticoids, 96t
Glucocorticoids, 96t
Glucocorticoids, 96t
Glucocorticoids, 96t
Glucocorticoids, 96t
Glucocorticoids, 96t
Glucocorticoids, 96t
Glucocorticoids, 96t
Glucocorticoids, 96t
Glucocorticoids, 96t
Glucocorticoids, 96t
Glueckstoff (metformin), 53, 66, 433
Glucose
challenge test, 60
control, insulin for, 51, 53
equivalents, 50, 51t
intrapartum management, 55
monitoring
GDM, management, 66
pregestational diabetes, 53, 53t
Glyburide, 53, 66, 433
Glycoprotein B vaccine, for CMV, 438
Goldenhar syndrome, in children, 382
Gonadotropin-releasing hormone agonists, 124
Gonococcal Isolate Surveillance Project (GISP), 307
Gonor rhoea, 305–308
complications, 306
epidemiology/incidence, 305
etiology, 305
key points, 305
management, 306–308
diagnosis, 306–307, 307t
prevention, 306
screening, 306, 307t
pathophysiology/transmission, 305
symptoms, 305–306
therapy, 307–308, 308t
G-protein-coupled thyrotropin receptor, 81
Graft rejection, renal, 156
Graves’ disease
defined, 80
with hyperthyroidism, 81
neonatal, 81
overview, 80
recurrence of, 82
TSI with, 81
Gray, radiation dose, 345
Group B streptococcus (GBS), 325–330
classification, 325, 326t
complications, 326
defined, 325
diagnosis, 325
epidemiology/incidence, 325, 326f
etiology/basic pathophysiology, 325
key points, 325
management, 326–330
antenatal testing, 330
collection of screening specimen, 328
delivery, 330
detection, 327, 327f
intrapartum prophylaxis, 328, 328f,
329, 330
intrapartum treatment, 327, 327f
intrapartum treatment, 327, 327f
maternal vaccination, 326
neonatal (screening and) treatment
only, 327
prelabor maternal treatment, 326
prenatal maternal screening, 326, 327,
327f
principles/prevention, 326, 327
screening/diagnosis, 327–328, 327f
universal treatment, 326
neonatal management, 329f, 330
risk factors/associations, 325, 326
symptoms/signs, 325
Growth assessment, intervals of, 420
Growth restriction trial (GRIT) study, FGR, 416, 424–425, 426, 503, 505t
Guamethidine, for thyroid storm, 83t
Guar gum, 107
Guillain–Barre syndrome (GBS), 175
Gunnatous syphilis, 317
Gynecologist, Ob-Gyn, 355–356
Hallucinogens
antepartum testing, 220
complications
congenital anomalies, 220
long-term neonatal outcome, 220
obstetrical and neonatal, 220
INDEX

542
### Herpes
- Classification/pathophysiology
  - Nonprimary first episode, 452
  - Primary first episode, 452
  - Reactivation (recurrent) genital herpes, 452
- Complications, 452
- Gestation, see Pemphigoid gestationis (PG)
- Incidence/epidemiology, 451
- Key points, 451
- Maternal-fetal transmission, 452
- Pathogens, 451
- Pregnancy management, 452–454
- Antiviral drugs, 453, 454
- Complicated HSV infection, 454
  - Considerations, 452
- Counseling/prognosis, 452–453
- History of HSV, 454
- Mode of delivery, 454
- Postpartum/neonate, 454
- Prevention, 453, 453f
- Primary/first episode, 454
- Screening, 453
- Therapy, 453, 454
  - Workup/diagnosis, 453
- Risk factors/associations, 451
- Symptoms, 452

### Herpes simplex virus (HSV)
- 285, 292, 412, 413t, 418, 419, 484; see also Herpes

### Herpes zoster (shingles)
- 451–454

### Herpes simplex virus (HSV)
- 285, 292, 412, 413t, 418, 419, 484; see also Herpes

### Herpes zoster (shingles)
- 456, 459

### Herpes simplex virus (HSV)
- Complications, 452
- Management, 299–300
- Prenatal care
  - Counseling, 300
  - Initial visit history, 300
  - Laboratory investigations, 300
  - Physical examination, 300
- Principles, 300
- Prophylaxis for opportunistic infections, 300–301, 301t
- Risk factors, 299
- Screening, 299
- Trichomonas vaginalis, 323

### Human leukocyte antigens (HLAs)
- 462

### Human papilloma virus (HPV)
- Vaccination, 332, 333t, 336t

### Human platelet antigens (HPAs)
- 460, 462t, 465

### Hydralazine
- 6t, 7, 13, 19, 29, 173, 174, 215

### Hydramnios
- 332, 333t, 336t

### Hypertension (HTN)
- 543, 544

### Hypertensive disorders
- see Hypertensive disorders

### Hyperemesis gravidarum (HG)
- See also Hyperemesis gravidarum (HG)
Hypertensive disorders, 1–20
preeclampsia, 6–20
GHTN, 5, 6
CHTN, 1–5
VTE, 270
therapy, 152
systemic effects, 214
SLE, 246, 247, 248, 249, 250
sign of ADR, 173, 174
sickle cell disease, 141, 142
severe, 5
seizures and, 113, 168
renal dysfunction and, 393
renal disease, 150, 152, 153, 154, 155
pulmonary, 24, 25, 27, 35, 141, 142
pregestational diabetes, 50, 51, 56
PPHN, 181
portal, syphilis and, 482
PCP, use, 219
opioids, use, 211
obesity, 32, 33, 35
nephrotic syndrome, 153
mild-to-moderate, 4–5
see eclampsia,
diuretics, 11
diagnosis, 2t, 8, 11
delivery, 13
definitions, 2, 2t, 6, 8
delivery, 13
diagnosis, 2t, 8, 11
diuretics, 11
eclampsia, see Eclampsia
epidemiology/incidence, 8
etiology/basic pathophysiology, 8–9
fetal complications, 7
fetal/neonatal, 9
fish oil, 11
garlic, 11
HELLP syndrome, see HELLP syndrome
heparin, 10
history, 11
indications for delivery, 7
key points, 6–8
long-term counseling, 20
low-dose aspirin, 7
magnesium, 7, 11
magnesium prophylaxis, 12
management, 9–13, 13t, 14f, 15f
maternal complications, 7, 9
nicotine, 11
physical examination, 11
plasma volume expansion, 12
preconception counseling, 11
prediction, 9
prevalence of, 9
prevention, 10–11
principles, 9–10
progesterone, 11
rest/exercise, 11
risk factors/associations, 9
salt intake, 11
severe, see Severe preeclampsia
superimposed, see Superimposed preeclampsia
symptoms, 8
vitamin C, antioxidant therapy with, 7
workup, 11
Hyperthyroidism, 80–84
antepartum testing, 82–83
complications, 81
definitions, 80
etiology, 81
Graves’ disease, 80
incidence, 80
key points, 80
management, see Management, CHTN
postpartum/breast-feeding, 81
risk factors/associations, 2
CHTN, 5, 6
antenatal management, 5, 6
complications, 5
defined, 5
delivery, 6
incidence, 5
risk factors, 5
preeclampsia, 6–20
abnormal uterine Doppler ultrasound, prevention, 10
admission, 12
anesthesia, 13
antepartum testing, 13
antihypertensive therapy, 12–13
antioxidant therapy, 11
antiplatelet agents, 13
aspirin, 10
calcium, 10–11
calcium supplementation, 7
classification, 9
complications, 9, 14, 15–20
management, 11–12
definitions, 2, 2t, 6, 8
delivery, 13
diagnosis, 2t, 8, 11
diuretics, 11
eclampsia, see Eclampsia
epidemiology/incidence, 8
etiology/basic pathophysiology, 8–9
fetal complications, 7
fetal/neonatal, 9
fish oil, 11
garlic, 11
HELLP syndrome, see HELLP syndrome
heparin, 10
history, 11
glyburide, 66
for pregestational diabetes, 53
Hypomania, 178, 180
Hypotension, 13, 24, 26, 27, 28, 29, 40, 88, 154,
173, 210, 213, 214, 215, 217, 249, 340,
344, 355, 358, 359, 365, 366, 367, 368,
369, 401, 404
Hypothalamic–pituitary–gonadal dysfunction, 124
Hypothyroidism, 73–77
clinical, 73–76; see also Clinical hypothyroidism
anatomy/radiology, 74
antepartum management, 76
complications, 74
defined, 73, 74f
fetal thyroid physiology, 74
incidence, 73
management, 74
maternal physiology, 74, 75t
neonatal, 76
pathophysiology, 73–74
placenta physiology, 74–75
postpartum, 76
preconception, 74
pregnancy considerations, 74–75, 75t
screening/diagnosis, 73, 75t
signs/symptoms, 73
treatment, 75–76
Hashimoto’s thyroiditis and, 73, 75
hypothyroxinemia
diagnosis, 76
incidence, 76
screening and management, 76
key points, 73
physiologic changes, 73, 74t
postpartum thyroiditis
defined, 77
diagnosis, 77
etiology, 77
incidence, 77
management, 77
recurrence risk, 77
risk factors, 77
three clinical presentations, 77
subclinical diagnosis, 76
incidence, 76
screening and management, 76
thyroid nodule
diagnosis, 77
incidence, 77
surgery, 77
TPO-antibodies only, 76–77
Hyperthyroxinemia
defined, 73
diagnosis, 76
incidence, 76
screening and management, 76
Hysterectomy, 340

I
IBD, see Inflammatory bowel disease (IBD)
Ibuprofen, 162, 164t, 165
ICH (intracranial hemorrhage), 93, 340, 460,
461f, 462, 463, 464, 465
ICP, see Intrahepatic cholestasis of pregnancy (ICP)
ICU, see Intensive care unit (ICU)
Idarubicin, 373, 375, 378, 381
Idiopathic hypertrophic subaortic stenosis, 29
Incidences

- Incentive spirometry, 142
- Imapsine (droperidol), 95t
- Imuran, 249, 249t
- Impetigo herpetiformis (IH)
- Immunosuppressive agents, 112t, 113, 125, 125t
- Immunosorbent agglutination assay test
- Immunomodulators, 112t, 113
- Immunoglobulin (Ig)
- Immunizations, HIV infection, 301, 302
- Imipenem, 235
- Imatinib, 378

Imaging

- Iloperidone, 187
- see
- Illicit drugs, use,
- Iliac vein thrombosis, 272
- Ileostomy, 115
- Ileal pouch–anal anastomosis (IPAA), 114, 115
- IgA nephropathy, renal disease, 151
- IVIC, 175, 251, 256, 449, 460, 461, 463–464, 465
- SLE, 249–250, 249t
- Immunomodulators, 112t, 113
- Immunosorbent agglutination assay test (IAAT), 444
- Immunosuppressive agents, 112t, 113, 125, 127, 128, 155, 159, 389
- Impetigo herpetiformis (IH)
- complications, 393
- defined, 392
- diagnosis, 392, 393f
- epidemiology/incidence, 392
- etiology/basic pathology, 393
- genetics, 392
- historic notes, 392
- key points, 392
- management
- antepartum testing, 393
- preconception counseling, 393
- prevention, 393
- principles, 393
- therapy, 393
- workup, 393
- overview, 386, 387t
- risk factors/associations, 393
- symptoms, 392
- Imuran, 249, 249t
- Inapsine (droperidol), 95t
- Incentive spirometry, 142

Incidence

- ACS, 143
- acute cholecystitis, 121
- ADP (eczema), 389
- AFE, 365
- amphetamines, 206, 216
- APS, 254
- asthma, 225
- benzodiazepines, abuse, 218
- cancer, in pregnancy, 373
- cardiac disease, 24
- CD, 110
- chlamydia, 310, 311t
- cholelithiasis, 119
- chromosome abnormalities, 481
- CHTN, 1
- clinical hypothyroidism, 73
- CMV, 436
- cocaine, 214
- critical care, 349
- cutaneous melanoma, 394
- drug abuse, 207
- eclampsia, 12, 18
- fetal death, 488
- fetal macroamia, 432
- FGR, 414
- FNALT, 460
- GBS, 325, 326f
- GDM, 60
- GHTN, 5
- gonorrhea, 305
- hallucinogens, 220
- HAV infections, 283, 284f
- HBV infections, 285
- HCV infection, 293
- hemolytic disease, 467
- herpes, 451
- HG, 92
- hyperthyroidism, 80
- hypothyroxinemia, 76
- ICP, 103, 104
- IH (pustular psoriasis of pregnancy), 392
- impaired psychomotor function, 74
- influenza, 236
- inherited thrombophilias, 260–261, 261t
- MA twins, 407
- marijuana (cannabis), 209
- methamphetamine, 216
- microscopic hematuria, 158
- multiple gestation, 398, 399f
- NIH, 478
- NODM, 125
- NS, 153
- obesity, 32
- obstetrical complications, 212
- oligohydramnios, 515
- opioids, abuse, 211
- parvovirus, 447
- PCB, 219
- PEP, 388
- PFP, 390
- PG (herpes gestationis), 392
- polyhydramnios (hydramnios), 517
- postpartum thyroiditis, 77
- postpartum urinary retention, 157
- PP, 391
- preeclampsia, 3, 8
- pregestational diabetes, 50
- prolactinoma, 86
- pyelonephritis, 156
- renal disease, 150
- SCI, 173
- seizures, 168
- SG, 386
- sickle cell disease, 139
- SLE, 246, 248t
- smoking, 196
- subclinical hypothyroidism, 76
- syphilis, 315
- thyroid nodule, 77, 83
- thyroid storm, 83
- toxoplasmosis, 442
- trauma, 339
- trichomoniasis, 322
- TTTS, 404
- tuberculosis, 238
- UC, 114
- urinary incontinence, 157
- urinary nephrolithiasis, 157
- VTE, 270
- vWD, 145
- VZV infection, 456
- Incubation period, syphilis, 316
- Indications
- AFV, assessment in singleton pregnancies, 513
- antihypertensive drugs, 5
- colectomy, 115
- for delivery, preeclampsia, 7
- liver transplantation, 124
- prolactinoma
- for neurosurgery in patients, 90t
- therapy, 88
- for testing, FNALT, 462
- Indocin, 154
- Indomethacin, 122, 152, 225, 233, 518
- Induction of labor, fetal death, 492–493
- Infants, HIV infection and diagnosis, 303
- follow-up, 303
- Infections
- chlamydia, see Chlamydia
- CMV, see Cytomegalovirus (CMV)
- HAV, see Hepatitis A virus (HAV) infections
- HBV, see Hepatitis B virus (HBV) infections
- HCV, see Hepatitis C virus (HCV) infection
- HDV infection, 289
- HIV, see Human immunodeficiency virus (HIV)
- TB, see also Tuberculosis coinfection with TB and HIV, 242
- control issues, 242
- UUT, see Urinary tract infections (UTI)
- VZV, see Varicella zoster virus (VZV) (chickenpox)
- Infectious Diseases Society of America (IDSA), 234, 235
- Infectious renal disease, 158
- Inferior vena cava (IVC) filters, 277
- Infertility
- CRI and, 152
- ESLD, women with, 124
- in substance-abusing women, 208
- Inflammatory bowel disease (IBD), 110–116
- background, 110
- CD, 110–114
- adalimumab, 112t, 113
- aminosalicylates, 112t, 113
- antepartum testing, 114
- antibiotics, 112t, 113
- certolizumab, 112t, 113
- complications, 111
- corticosteroids, 112t, 113
- cyclosporine, 112t, 113
- defined, 110
- delivery, 114
- diagnosis, 110
- differential diagnosis, 112
- epidemiology/incidence, 110
- etiology/basic pathophysiology, 111
- fetal and neonatal complications, 111
- immunomodulators/
- immunosuppressants, 112t, 113
- infliximab, 112t, 113
- management, 111–114
- maternal complications, 111
- medications in, 112–113, 112t
- methotrexate, 112t, 113
- naltrexone, 112t, 113–114
Laboratory investigations

- **Acute cholecystitis**, 121
  - AFE, 367
  - APS, 256
  - Cholelithiasis, 120
  - CHTN, 3
  - CRI, 152
  - Drug abuse, 209, 209t
  - GHTN, 5, 6
  - HIV infection, 300
  - Influenza, 236, 236t, 238
  - NHI, 484
  - Pneumonia, 234
  - Renal transplantation, 155
  - Substance use, 208

- **Labor management**
  - Acute cholecystitis, 122
  - Cholelithiasis, 120
  - LTX, pregnancy after, 129
  - NS, 153
  - Renal transplantation, 155–156
  - Sickle cell disease, 142

- **Labor precautions, complications from**
  - Polyhydramnios, 517

- **Lactobacillus GG**

- **Lactation, mood disorder management,**
  - Antidepressants
    - Bupropion, 189
    - Duloxetine, 189
    - MAOIs, 189
    - Mirtazapine, 189
    - SSRIs, 188–189
  - Antipsychotics, 189–190
  - Atypical, 190
  - Stabilizers
    - Carbamazepine, 189
    - Lamotrigine, 189
    - Lithium, 189
    - Valproic acid, 189

- **Lactobacillus GG**, 156
  - Lambda sign, defined, 400
  - Lamellar body (LB) counts, for FLM, 522, 523t, 524
  - Lamictal® and Lamictal XR®, 186t
  - Lamivudine, 289, 302t
  - Lamotrigine, 169, 169t, 170, 171, 186t, 187, 189
  - Lansoprazole (Prevacid), 95t, 97
  - Laparoscopy, for acute cholecystitis, 122
  - Laparotomy, 344
  - Large for gestational age (LGA), risk factor for, 35
  - Laser therapy
    - For SG, 387
    - For TTTS, 406
  - Late benign (tortuous) sphenoid, 316–317
  - Late fetal death, defined, 488
  - Latent syphilis, 316
  - Latent tuberculosis infection, 238, 239, 241
  - Late-onset neonatal GBS disease, 325, 326t
  - Lecithin/sphingomyelin (L/S) ratio, for FLM, 522, 523t
  - Ledipasvir, 291, 295
  - Left ventricular dysfunction, 365
  - Leptin, 33
  - Leucovorin, 301t, 445
  - Leukemia
    - Acute, 377–378

- Delay in diagnosis, 377
- Diagnostic tests and safety, 377
- Effects, on pregnancy, 377
- Termination of pregnancy, 377
- Treatment, 377–378
- Chronic, 378
- During pregnancy, 377–378
- Pregnancy after, 382

- **Leukotriene receptor antagonists (LTRA)**
  - 226t, 232

- **Levalbuterol, 227t**

- **Levels, of critical care, 349–350, 350t, 351t**
- **Levetiracetam (Keppra), 169, 169t, 171**
- **Levofloxacin, 235**
- **Levonorgestrel, 279**
- **Lifestyle changes, for CHTN, 3**
- **Light therapy, for hyperbilirubinemia, 474**
- **Limb reduction defects, 227, 233**

- **Liquid ecstasy, defined, 216**

- **Lispurin, 53t, 54, 55, 62t, 65t, 66–67, 67f**

- **Lithium, mood stabilizer, 184, 185t, 189**

- **Lithiod, 185t**

- **Lithotripsy, shock wave, 157**

- **Liver function tests**
  - Isoniazid, use, 241
  - Pregnancy after, 129, 241

- **Liver transplantation (LTx), pregnancy after,**
  - 124–129

- **Loperamide, 129**

- **Long-term counseling, preeclampsia, 20**

- **Long-acting beta-agonist (LABA), 226t, 232**

- **Long-term counseling, preeclampsia, 20**

- **Long-term neonatal outcome amphetamines, use, 217**
benzodiazepines, abuse, 218
cocaine, use, 215
hallucinogens, exposure, 220
heroin, 211–212
marijuana, use, 210
opioids, use, 211–212
PCP, use, 219
Lovastatin, 151
Lovenox, 256, 257
Low birth weight (LBW)
CRI and, 152
defined, 414
IUGR and, 211
pregnancy after LTx, 126t, 127
smoking, complication, 198
Low-molecular weight heparin (LMWH)
adjusted-dose bid, 28, 29
UFH and, 256–257
Luvox
Lupus anticoagulants (LA), 254, 255t, 491
Lupus nephritis, renal disease, 151
Lurasidone, 187
Luvox and Luvox CR® (Fluvoxamine), 182t
Lymphogranuloma venereum (LGV), 310, 311, 312, 313t
Lymphazurin, for sentinel node, 375
in FGR pregnancies, 424
eclampsia, 13, 19
preterm labor, 152
for preeclampsia, 11, 12, 152
vs. phenytoin
vs. diazepam
vs. for eclampsia, 7, 19
vs. for preeclampsia, 27, 112, 113
postpartum, 112, 113
for antepartum testing, 112
for preterm labor, 112
for magnesium sulfate, 112, 113
preconception counseling, 112
screening, 112
pregnancy, 112
preconception counseling, 112
screening, 112
prevention, 112
principles, 112
postpartum, 112
workup, 112
clamamia
diagnosis, 312
prevention, 311–312
screening, 312
choleliathiasis
imaging, 120
labor and delivery issues, 120
laboratory investigations, 120
pregnancy considerations, 120
principles, 120
therapy, 120
workup, 120
CHTN, 3–5
antihypertensive drugs, 4–5
initial evaluation/workup, 3
lifestyle changes and bed rest, 3
preconception counseling, 3
prenatal care, 3
prevention, 3
principles, 3
screening/diagnosis, 3
therapy, 3
clinical hypothyroidism, 74, 75–76
dose, 75
goal, 75
iodine supplementation, 76
new diagnosis, 75
preexisting hypothyroidism, 75
thyroxine replacement, 75–76
type, 76
CMV, 437–440
CMV-specific hyperimmune globulin, 439–440
counseling/prognosis, 437–438, 438f, 438t
ganciclovir and valacyclovir, 440
hygiene, 438
investigations/diagnosis/workup, 439
prevention, 438
screening, 439
serum, 439
therapy, 439–440
ultrasound fetal findings, 439
vaccine, 438
CMI/CBH, 251
coagulopathy with AFE, 369
CRI, 152
cutaneous melanoma
preconception counseling, 395
pregnancy, 395
prevention, 395
therapy, 395
workup, 395
diabetic ketoacidosis, 54, 54t
drug abuse, 208
eclampsia, 18–19
anepartum testing, 19
delivery, 19
magnesium sulfate, 19
postpartum, 19
principles, 18–19
therapy, 19
workup, 19
fetal death, 489–491
counseling, 489, 489t, 490t
workup, 489, 490–491
fetal macrosomia, 432–434
diabetes, 433, 434
prevention, 432–433
prior cesarean delivery, 434
prior shoulder dystocia, 434
screening, 433
suspected, 433, 433f
uncomplicated, 433
FGR, 412, 416–420
abdominal decompression, 420
Mammography, 374, 375
Management, pregnancy
acute cholecystitis, 122
laparoscopic vs. open cholecystectomy, 122
surgery, 122
ADP (eczema)
therapy, 389
workup, 389
AF assessment in singleton pregnancies, 514–515
AFE, 369, 370f
antenatal, GHTN, 5, 6
APS, 255–257
prevention, 256
principles, 255
screening, 253–256
asthma
preconception care, 228
prenatal care, 228
prevention, 228, 228t
principles, 228
workup, 229
BPS, 500, 500t, 501t
cardiac arrest, 367–369, 368t, 370f
cardiac disease, 25, 26–30
aortic stenosis, 28
coronary artery disease, 29–30
dilated cardiomyopathy, 29
general, 25, 26–27, 27t
hypertrophic cardiomyopathy, 29
Marfan syndrome, 29
mechanical heart valves, 28–29
mitral and aortic insufficiency, 28
mitral stenosis, 28
palpitations, 27
peripartum cardiomyopathy, 29
preconception counseling, 25
prenatal care/antepartum testing, 25
pulmonary hypertension, 27
pulmonic stenosis (PS), 28
specific diseases, 27–30
tetralogy of fallot, 28
CD, 111–114
adalimumab, 112t, 113
aminosalicylates, 112t, 113
antepartum testing, 114
antibiotics, 112t, 113
azathioprine/6-mercaptopurine, 112t, 113
corticotestesoids, 112t, 113
cyclosporine, 112t, 113
delivery, 114
differential diagnosis, 112
immunomodulators/
globalulin, 439–440
inflammusuppressants, 112t, 113
infliximab, 112t, 113
mediations in, 112–113, 112t
methotrexate, 112t, 113
naltrexone, 112t, 113–114
natalizumab, 112t, 113
postpartum/breast-feeding, 114
preconception counseling, 112
prenatal care, 112
principles, 111
thalidomide, 112t, 113
workup, 112
index
549
complications, 93
corticosteroids, 99
defined, 92
diagnosis, 81, 92, 94t
EN, 99
epidemiology/incidence, 92
etiology, 92
fetal/neonatal complications, 93
genetics, 92
inpatient assessment and treatment, 98–99
issues, 100
IVF hydration, 99
management, 93–94, 93f
maternal complications, 93
nonpharmacologic interventions, 94, 97
nutritional supplementation, 99–100
pharmacologic interventions, 97–98
PN, 99–100
postpartum management, 100
pregnancy management, 93–94
prevention, 94
risk factors/associations, 92, 93
workup, 94
signs and symptoms
diabetic ketoacidosis, 54
HELLP syndrome, 16, 17t
diabetic nephropathy, 51
Neonates

hypothyroidism, 82
intensive care unit (NICU), 16
long-term follow-up, parvovirus, 450
multiple gestation, 408
preeclampsia, complications, 9
transient bone marrow suppression of, 380
Neonatology management
FGR, 426
FNALI, 465–466
hemolytic disease, 474
NIH, 486
Nephrolithiasis
defined, 157
urinary, see Urinary nephrolithiasis
Nephopathy, diabetic, 51
Nephrotic syndrome (NS)
causes, 153
complications, 153
defined, 153
epidemiology/incidence, 153
fetal monitoring, 153
hemolytic disease, 153
management, 153
prenatal care, 153
specific diseases, 153
workup, 153
Neural tube defects (NTDs)
congenital malformations, 168
obesity and, 33
serum screening for, 402
VPA, 187
Neuraminidase, 236
Neurodevelopmental effects, SSRIs, 181, 184
Neurodevelopmental Effects of Antiepileptic Drugs Study, 189
Neurogenic shock, 173
Neurontin (Gabapentin), 169t, 171
Neuropathy, diabetic, 51
Neurosurgery, in patients with prolactinomas, 90t
Neurosphisis, 317
Neurovegetative symptoms, 177
Neutral protamine Hagedorn (NPH), 53t, 54, 380–381
New-onset diabetes mellitus (NODM), 125
New York Heart Association (NYHA) system, 25, 25t
Nicardipine, 155t
Nicotine
acetycholine receptors, 201
agonists, 201
e-cigarettes, 198
gums, 200, 200t
inhalers, lozenges, and nasal spray, 200t, 201
on multiple transmitter pathways, 197
patches, 200–201, 200t
Nicotine replacement therapies (NRT), 196, 200–201, 200t
Nifedipine, 1, 4, 6t, 7, 13, 16, 19, 15t
NIH, see Nonimmune hydrops fetalis (NIH)
Nimodipine, 5, 12
Nitric oxide
donors, in FGR pregnancies, 420
inhaled, 27, 368t
preeclampsia, prevention, 11
pulmonary vascular resistances, 368
Nitrofurantoin, 156, 174
Nitroglycerin, 174, 215
Nitroimidazoles, 324
Nitroprusside, 173, 174
Nitrosamines, 198
Nizatidine, 97
N-methyl D-aspartate (NMDA) receptor antagonist, 219
Nolotinib, 378
Non–Hodgkin’s lymphoma (NHL), during pregnancy
delay in diagnosis, 377
effects, on pregnancy, 377
treatment, 377
Nonimmune hydrops fetalis (NIH), 477–486
associations/possible etiologies, 479–483
defined, 477, 478
diagnosis, 478, 478f
differential diagnosis, 479–483, 480t–481t
cardiovascular disorders, 479–481
chromosomal abnormalities, 481
genital infections, 482
extracardiac anomalies, 481–482
fetal tumors, 483
hematological disorders, 482–483
metabolic diseases, 483
epidemiology/incidence, 478
etiology/basic pathophysiology, 478, 479, 479f
key points, 477–478
management, 483–486
amnioncentesis, 485
cordocentesis and invasive procedures, 485
counseling/prognosis, 483
delivery/anesthesia, 486
delivery timing, 486
demographic and clinical history, 484
total monitoring/testing, 486
laboratory, 484
neonatology, 486
obstetric, 486
therapeutic approach, 486
treatment, 486
ultrasound, 484
workup/diagnosis, 484–485, 484f, 485f
maternal complications, 483
postpartum, 486
Nonimmune women, VZV infection, 459
Non-nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitor (NNRTI), 302, 303
Nonobstetric procedure monitoring, 508
Nonobstetric sepsis, 358
Nonpharmacologic interventions, NVP and
HG, 94, 97
Nonpharmacologic management
headache, 165
mood disorders, 188
Nonprimary first episode, HSV, 452
Nonproteinuric hypertension, bed rest in hospital for, 3
Nonreassuring fetal heart testing (NRFHT), 104, 425, 514, 516
Nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs), 164, 164t, 165, 233, 249, 249t
Nonstress test (NST), fetal surveillance
APS, 258
drug abuse, 209
FGR, 413, 421, 422, 423t, 424, 425, 426
GDM, 61t, 67
heart rate testing, 497–498, 497f
hyperthyroidism, 82
ICP, 103, 107
multiple gestation, 404, 408
pregestational diabetes, 52, 55
INDEX

Nontreponemal tests, for syphilis, 318
Norepinephrine, 216, 360, 368
Norepinephrine reuptake inhibitors (NRIs), 184
Noresosterone, 279
Norgestimatte, 279
Normocytic anemia, 138, 135
North American AED Pregnancy Registry, 352
North American Antiepileptic Drug Pregnancy Registry, 187
North American AED Pregnancy Registry, (NA-ACCORD), 298
North American Antiepileptic Drug Pregnancy Registry (NAASEP), 169, 170
Nortriptyline, 201
NPH (neutral protamine Hagedorn), 53t, 54, 55, 62t, 64t, 65t, 66, 67
NRT (nicotine replacement therapies), 196, 200–201, 200t
NS, see Nephrotic syndrome (NS)
NSAIDs (nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs), 164, 164t, 165, 233, 249, 249t
NST, see Nonstress test (NST)
Nubain®, 213
Nuchal translucency (NT), 40, 398, 402, 481
Nucleic acid amplification tests (NAATs), 306–307, 307t, 310, 312, 323
Nucleoside analogs, HBV infections, 288–289, 289t
Nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitor (NRTI), 302t
Nucleotide anlogus, HBV infections, 288–289, 289t
Nursing care, in ICU, 352
Nutritional supplementation, 39
FGR interventions, 419
prevention, 416
GDM, management, 67
multiple gestation, 402
NVP and HG, 99–100
EN, 99
PN, 99–100
NVP, see Nausea and vomiting of pregnancy (NVP)

O

Obesity, 32–42
anesthesia, 40–41
antepartum fetal testing, 40
bariatric surgery, 38–39, 38t
cesarean delivery, 41
classification, 32, 33t
complications of, 33–35, 34t–35t
contraception, 42
defined, 32
epidemiology/incidence, 32
etiology/basic pathophysiology, 33
extreme, 32
fetal monitoring and, 508
FGR and, 416
follic acid supplementation and vitamins, 39
future research, 42
genetics, 33
health risks associated with, 35t
intrapartum care, 40
key points, 32
long-term maternal and offspring risks, 42
methamphetamine for, 216
postpartum management, 41
breast-feeding, 41
complications, 41
VTE, 41
preconception evaluation, 35–36, 36t, 37t
preeclampsia and, 33
preterm care, 39–40
fetal ultrasound, 40
general issues, 40
ideal weight gain, 39, 39t
prepregnancy weight reduction
behavior therapy, 38
diet, 38
pharmacotherapy, 38
physical activity, 38
preterm birth and, 35
resources, 42
risk factors, 33
super, 32
Ob-Gyn (obstetrician-gynecologist), role, 355–356
Obstetrical complications
amphetamines, use, 217
benzodiazepines, abuse, 218
cocaine, use, 215
drug withdrawal
opioids, use, 210
opioids, use, 219

Obstetrical ICU, 351–352
Obstetric critical care services, organization, 350, 351, 352–353
Obstetrician-gynecologist (Ob-Gyn), role, 355–356
Obstetric management, NIH, 486
Obstetric sepsis, 358
Ocdamflazine, 186, 187, 190
Oligohydramnios, 122
AFI and, 513
cholecystitis, 122
CHTN, complications, 1, 2, 4
sonographic assessment, of AF, 515
AFI and, 425
selected product, 481
Olanzapine (Zyprexa), 186, 187
Offspring, of cancer survivors, 381
Offspring risks, 42
OK-432, sibransect product, 481
Ondansetron (Zofran), 98, 380
Omphalocele, 181
Omeprazole (Prilosec), 95t, 97
Omeprazole (Prilosec), 95t, 97
Omeprazole, 181
Ondansetron (Zofran), 98, 380
One step screening test, GDM, 59
Open fractures, 344
Opioids, 210–214
anesthesia, 213
antepartum testing, 213
complications
congenital anomalies, 211
fetal/neonatal morphometrics, 211
long-term neonatal outcome, 211–212
neonatal withdrawal, 211
obstetrical, 211
delivery, 213
diagnosis/definition, 210
epidemiology/incidence, 211
headache in pregnancy, 164, 164t, 165
methadone, 212–213
naltrexone, 212–213
postpartum/breast-feeding, 213–214
risk factors/associations, 211
in smoking, 211
symptoms, 210–211
therapy, 212–213
buprenorphine, 212–213
methadone, 212
treatment, 213
Optical glucose control, insulin and, 51
Oral contraceptives, 25, 27, 42, 125, 171, 175, 251
Opiates, 210–214
anesthesia, 213
antepartum testing, 213
complications
congenital anomalies, 211
fetal/neonatal morphometrics, 211
long-term neonatal outcome, 211–212
neonatal withdrawal, 211
obstetrical, 211
delivery, 213
diagnosis/definition, 210
epidemiology/incidence, 211
headache in pregnancy, 164, 164t, 165
historic notes, 210
overview, 206, 208
postpartum/breast-feeding, 213–214
risk factors/associations, 211
in smoking, 211
symptoms, 210–211
therapy, 212–213
buprenorphine, 212–213
methadone, 212
treatment, 213
Optimal glucose control, insulin and, 51
Oral contraceptives, 25, 27, 42, 125, 171, 175, 251
Ovarian follicles, 33
Overdose, opioid, 211
Oxcarbazepine, 169t, 171
Oxcarbazepine, 169t, 171, 185t, 187
Oxycodone, 208, 210, 211, 213
Oxybenzol, 197
Oxymorphone, 210

Omega-3 fatty acids, 402
Omeprazole (Prilosec), 95t, 97
Omphalocoele, 181
Ondansetron (Zofran), 98, 380
One step screening test, GDM, 59
Open fractures, 344
Opioids, 210–214
anesthesia, 213
antepartum testing, 213
complications
congenital anomalies, 211
fetal/neonatal morphometrics, 211
long-term neonatal outcome, 211–212
neonatal withdrawal, 211
obstetrical, 211
delivery, 213
diagnosis/definition, 210
epidemiology/incidence, 211
headache in pregnancy, 164, 164t, 165
historic notes, 210
overview, 206, 208
postpartum/breast-feeding, 213–214
risk factors/associations, 211
in smoking, 211
symptoms, 210–211
therapy, 212–213
buprenorphine, 212–213
methadone, 212
treatment, 213
Optimal glucose control, insulin and, 51
Oral contraceptives, 25, 27, 42, 125, 171, 175, 251
Ovarial follicles, 33
Overdose, opioid, 211
Oxcarbazepine, 169t, 171
Oxcarbazepine, 169t, 171, 185t, 187
Oxycodone, 208, 210, 211, 213
Oxybenzol, 197
Oxymorphone, 210
| Pathogens | Oxytocin, 149, 188, 366, 408, 488, 492, 493 |
| Parvovirus, 447–450 |
| Paroxetine, 177, 181, 182t |
| Parlodel (bromocriptine), 86, 87, 88, 89, 155t |
| Parenteral nutrition (PN), NVP and HG, 99–100 |
| Paracetamol, 249t, 250 |
| Pap smear, 141, 300, 323 |
| Paliperidone, 187 |
| Pain Medicine Guidelines, 278 |
| Oxytocin contraction test (OCT), 426, 498–499 |
| Oxytocin, 149, 188, 366, 408, 488, 492, 493 |
| Parental nutrition (PN), NVP and HG, 99–100 |
| Paroxetine, 177, 181, 182t |
| Parvovirus, 447–450 |
| complications, 448 |
| incidence/epidemiology, 447 |
| key points, 447 |
| maternal-fetal transmission, 448, 448f |
| NIH and, 482 |
| pathogen, 447 |
| pathophysiology, 447, 448f |
| pregnancy management, 448–449 |
| counseling/prognosis, 448 |
| neonate and long-term follow-up, 450 |
| prevention, 448–449 |
| screening, 449 |
| therapy, 449 |
| workup/diagnosis, 449, 449f |
| risk factors/associations, 447 |
| symptoms, 447 |
| ultrasound fetal findings, 448 |
| Patellar reflexes, monitoring of, 12 |
| Pathophysiology | 
| ACS, 143 |
| acute cholecystitis, 121 |
| ADP, 389 |
| AFE, 365–366 |
| amphetamines, 216 |
| APS, 254 |
| asthma, 225 |
| benzodiazepines, abuse, 218 |
| cardiac disease, 24–25 |
| CD, 111 |
| chlamydia, 311 |
| cholelithiasis, 119 |
| CHTN, 1 |
| clinical hypothyroidism, 73–74 |
| CMV, 436–437 |
| clinical neonatal findings and complications, 437 |
| general, 436–437, 437f, 437t |
| primary infection, 437 |
| recurrent infections, 437 |
| cocaine, 214 |
| FGR, 414–415 |
| FNAIT, 460 |
| GBS, 325 |
| GDM, 60 |
| gonorrhea, 305 |
| halicinocin, 220 |
| HAY infections, 283 |
| HBV infections, 286, 287f |
| HCV infection, 293 |
| headache, 163 |
| hemolytic disease, 468 |
| herpes |
| nonprimary first episode, 452 |
| primary first episode, 452 |
| reactivation (recurrent) genital herpes, 452 |
| HIV infection, 299 |
| hyperthyroidism, 81 |
| ICP, 103, 104 |
| IH (pustular psoriasis of pregnancy), 393 |
| influenza, 236 |
| inherited thrombophilies, 261 |
| LTx, pregnancy after, 124 |
| marijuana (cannabis), 209 |
| maternal anemia, 131, 132, 133, 135t |
| NIH, 478, 479, 479f |
| obesity, 33 |
| parvovirus, 447, 448f |
| PCP, 219 |
| PFP, 390 |
| PG (herpes gestationis), 392 |
| pneumonia, 233, 234t |
| PP, 391 |
| preeclampsia, 8–9 |
| pregestational diabetes, 50 |
| prolactinoma, 86 |
| seizures, 168 |
| SG, 386 |
| sickle cell disease, 140 |
| SLE, 246 |
| smoking, 196–198 |
| syphilis, 315–316 |
| toxoplasmosis, 442 |
| trauma, 339 |
| trichomoniasis, 322 |
| tuberculosis, 238 |
| UC, 114 |
| VTE, 270, 271f, 271t |
| vWD, 145, 147f |
| VZV infection, 456, 457f |
| Patient education, pregnancy with CRI, 152 |
| Patients, “5 As” for, 197t |
| Pauling, Linus, 139 |
| Paxil® and Paxil CR® (Paroxetine), 182t |
| PCP, see Phencyclidine (PCP) |
| PCR (polymerase chain reaction), 442, 443, 444, 445, 453, 458, 485 |
| Peak expiratory flow (PEF), 227, 229 |
| Peak expiratory flow rate (PEFR) measurements, 225 |
| treatment, 232 |
| Peak systolic velocity (PSV), MCA-PSV, 447, 449, 467, 470, 471, 472, 474, 482, 485 |
| Pelvic inflammatory disease (PID), 305 |
| Pemphigoid gestationis (PG) |
| Prolonged use, 363 |
| treatment, 375 |
| Pernicious anemia, 207 |
| Pervenon, 263 |
| Penicilloyl, 454 |
| Penetrating abdominal wound, 344 |
| Penicillamine, 249t, 250 |
| Penicillins |
| CHD, 27 |
| GBS, 325, 328, 328t, 329–330 |
| gonorrhea, 307, 308 |
| syphilis, 315, 319, 319f, 320 |
| PEP, see Polymorphic eruption of pregnancy (PEP) |
| Pecid (famotidine), 95t, 97 |
| Peramivir, 237 |
| Percutaneous balloon valvuloplasty, 28 |
| Percutaneous coronary intervention (PCI), 29 |
| Percutaneous nephrostomy, 157 |
| Percutaneous pulmonary valvuloplasty, 28 |
| Pecuraneous umbilical blood sampling (PUBS), 439, 449 |
| Pergolide (quinagolide), 88 |
| Percardial fibrosis, 381 |
| Perinatal complications |
| cocaine, 214–215 |
| congenital anomalies, 214 |
| fetal/neonatal morphometrics, 215 |
| long-term neonatal outcome, 215 |
| neonatal withdrawal, 215 |
| obstetrical complications, 215 |
| Perinatal mortality (PNM) |
| with BPS, 498, 499, 500t |
| CRI and, 152 |
| Peripartum cardiomyopathy, 29, 367 |
| Peripartum dilated cardiomyopathy, 367 |
| Peripartum heterectomy, 402 |
| Peritoneal dialysis (PD), 154 |
| Persistent pulmonary hypertension of newborn (PPHN), 181 |
| Pertussis vaccination, 332 |
| Pexeva® (Pexeva), 182t |
| Peyote, 220 |
| PFP, see Pruritic folliculitis of pregnancy of pregnancy (PPF) |
| PG, see Pemphigoid gestationis (PG) |
| PG2 suppositories, 492 |
| P-glycoprotein, 374 |
| PGM (prothrombin G20210A gene mutation), 9, 261, 262, 265t, 279 |
| Pharmacological therapy, UC, 115 |
| Pharmacologic interventions, NVP and HG, 97–98 |
| Pharmacologic management, mood disorders, 180–188 |
| antidepressants, 180, 181–184; see also Antidepressants |
| antipsychotics, 187–188 |
| mood stabilizers, 184–187; see also Stabilizers, mood |
| Pharmacotherapies |
| prepregnancy weight reduction, 38 |
| smoking, 200–201 |
| bupropion HCl (Zyban®, Wellbutrin®), 201 |
| combination therapies, 201 |
| NOT recommended, 201 |
| NRT, 200–201, 200t |
| varenicline (Chantix®), 201 |
| Phencyclidine (PCP) |
| antepartum testing, 219 |
| defined, 219 |
hypertensive disorders, see Hypertensive disorders
hyperthyroidism, see Hyperthyroidism
hypothyroidism, see Hypothyroidism
IBD, see Inflammatory bowel disease (IBD)
ICP, see Intrahepatic cholestasis of pregnancy (ICP)
inherited thrombophilias, see Inherited thrombophilias
interval, 416
loss, smoking and, 198
LTx, see Liver transplantation (LTx), pregnancy after
management, see Management
maternal anemia, see Maternal anemia
mood disorders, see Mood disorders
multiple gestation, see Multiple gestation
NIH, see Nonimmune hydrops fetalis (NIH)
obesity, see Obesity
parvovirus, see Parvovirus
pregestational diabetes, see
Pregestational diabetes
prolactinoma, see Prolactinoma
renal disease, see Renal disease
respiratory diseases, see Respiratory diseases
SCI, see Spinal cord injury (SCI)
sickle cell disease, see Sickle cell disease
SLE, see Systemic lupus erythematosus (SLE)
smoking, see Smoking
syphilis, see Syphilis
transplantations, 128t, 129
trauma, see Trauma
trichomoniasis, see Trichomoniasis
vaccination, 332, 333; see also Vaccination
VZV, see Varicella zoster virus (VZV) (chickenpox)
Pregnancy-associated plasma protein-A (PAP-A), 9, 417
Pregnancy-induced hypertension, defined, 5
Pregnancy-uniform quantification of emesis/
a nausea (PUQE) index, 92
Prelabor maternal treatment, GBS, 326
Premature rupture of membranes (PRM)
drug abuse, 215
oligohydramnios, 515, 516, 517, 518
PPROM, 7, 11, 12, 112t, 113, 215, 249, 302, 404, 406, 408, 425, 505, 508, 513, 517, 518
preeclampsia, 7, 11, 12, 16
PTL and, 404
SLE, 246, 249
smoking, complication, 198
vaginal pool specimens in, 522
Prenatal care
after bariatric surgery, 38t
asthma, 228
cardiac disease, 25
CD, 112
CHTN, 3
CRI, 152
drug abuse, 208–209, 209t
evaluation, CHB/CNL, 251
HAV infections, pregnancy with, 283, 284
HBV infections, 288
HIV infection, 300
NS, 153
obesity, 39–40
fetal ultrasound, 40
general issues, 40
ideal weight gain, 39, 39t
pregestational diabetes, 52, 53–54
diet, 53, 53t
exercise, 53
glucose monitoring, 53, 53t
insulin, 53–54, 53t, 54t
oral hypoglycemic agents, 53
prolactinoma, 89–90
microadenoma, 89, 90t
renal transplantation, 155, 155t
SCI, 173–174
seizures, 170
sickle cell disease, 140, 141–142
SLE, 248, 249
trauma, 346
UC, 113
vWD, 146
Prenatal counseling, seizures, 170
Prenatal diagnosis, multiple gestation and, 402
Prenatal education, toxoplasmosis, 443
Prenatal exercise, prevention of fetal macrosomia, 433
Prenatal maternal screening, GBS, 326, 327, 327f
Prenatal visits
CRI, pregnancy with, 152
HIV infection, pregnancy with, 300
Prepregnancy weight reduction behavior therapy, 38
diet, 38
pharmacotherapy, 38
physical activity, 38
Prescription opioid analgesics, see Opioids
Preterm birth (PTB), risks anomalous fetus, selective termination, 403–404
APS, 254, 255, 256, 257, 258
asthma, 225, 228, 232
cancer and, 380
chlamydia, 310, 311
FGR, 415
GBS, 326
gonorhea, 305, 306
HBV infections, 288
HIV infection, 299
influenza, 237
in multiple gestation, 401, 402t, 403–404
bed rest, 403
cerclage, 403
home uterine activity monitoring, 403
multifetal pregnancy reduction, 403
PPROM, 404
prevention, 403
progesterone, 403
prophylactic tocolysis, 403
PTL, 404
subsequent pregnancy outcomes, 403
after delivery of twins, 404
weight gain, 403
obesity and, 35
pneumonia, 234
prediction, multiple gestation, 402
pregestation after LTx, 126t, 127
rate, 211
SLE, 246
smoking, complication, 198
syphilis, 317
TB, 239
TG infection, 443
trauma, 340, 346
trichomoniasis, 322, 323, 324
Preterm labor (PTL)
avertin, and, 174–175
CRI and, 152
multiple gestations and, 404
therapy, 152
Preterm premature rupture of membranes (PPROM), 7, 11, 12, 112t, 113, 215, 249, 299, 304, 404, 406, 408, 425, 505, 508, 513, 517, 518
Prevacid (lansoprazole), 93t, 97
Prevention
APS, 256
asthma, 228, 228t
chlamydia, 311–312
CHTN, 3
clinical hypothyroidism, 74
CMV, hygiene, 438
CNL/CHB, 251
CRI, 152
cutaneous melanoma, 395
drug abuse, 208
fetal death, 489, 489t
fetal macrosomia, 432–433
FGR, 416
aspirin therapy, 416
control of maternal medical disorders, 416
gestational age determination, 416
nutrition, 416
pregnancy interval, 416
substance cessation, 416
FNAlT, 462–463
GBS, 326, 327
GDM, 61
gonorhea, 306
HAV infections, pregnancy with, 283
HBV infections, 288
HCV infection, 294
hemolytic disease, 469–470
herpes, 453, 453f
ICP, 106, 106f
IH (pustular psoriasis of pregnancy), 393
influenza, 237
maternal anemia, 136, 136t
multiple gestation, complications, 403–407
anomalous fetus, selective termination, 403–404; see also Anomalous fetus
FGR/dissociant twins, 404
single fetal death, 404, 404t
TTTS, 405, 405–407; see also Twin-twin transfusion syndrome (TTTS)
NVP and HG, 94
obstetrical complications, inherited thrombophilias, 266
parvovirus, 448–449
pneumonia, 234
preeclampsia, 10–11
abnormal uterine Doppler ultrasound, 10
antioxidant therapy, 11
aspirin, 10
calcium, 10–11
diuretics, 11
fish oil, 11
garlic, 11
heparin, 10
magnesium, 11
nitric oxide, 11
progesterone, 11
rest/exercise, 11
salt intake, 11
INDEX 561

Pustular psoriasis of pregnancy, see Impetigo herpetiformis (IH)

Pyelonephritis, 156–157
defined, 156
diagnosis, 156
incidence, 156
management, 156–157

Pyrazinamide, 238, 241, 241t, 242

Pyridoxine, 94, 95t, 98, 241, 242, 301t

Pyelonephritis, 156–157

Quinolones, 112t, 113

Quetiapine, 186t, 187, 190

Quitline, 200

Radiation
fear, 345
induced cardiac toxicity due to fibrosis, 381

Radiology
clinical hypothyroidism, in pregnancy, 74
NVP and HG, 94

Radiotherapy, during pregnancy
acute leukemia, 377–378

Radioiodine therapy, for hyperthyroidism,

Radiographic findings, tuberculosis, 240

Radioiodine therapy, for hyperthyroidism,

Randomized controlled trials (RCTs)
ambulatory BP monitoring, 3
antiemetics and, 98
of BPS, 499
corticosteroids, use of, 99
dextrose vs. normal saline, 99
dimenhydrinate, as ginger, 97
doxylamine/vitamin B6, 94
of euthyroid pregnant women, 76–77
FGR pregnancies, 424
ginger, examining, 97
hyperthyroidism, management, 81
insulin requirement in, 61
levothyroxine supplementation, 76
meta-analysis of, 10
mode of delivery in IBD, 110
necropin, 360
for NVP or HG, 97–98
ondansetron and metoclopramide, 98
P6 acupressure vs. vitamin B6, 97
preconception adjustment, 74
reduction in heroin use, 212
SGA, 16
TTSs, 406
VTE, prevention, 277

Ranitidine (Zantac), 95t, 97, 155t

Rapid testing assays, 297

RCTs, see Randomized controlled trials
(RCTs)

Reactivation
genital herpes, 452

Reactivation

hepatitis virus, pregnancy after LTx, 125
Recombivax HB, 288

Recurrence
risks
cancer, 381
CMV infections, 437
fetal death, prevention, 493
FGP, 414, 416
postpartum thyroiditis, 77

Red blood cell (RBC) alloimmunization;
see also Hemolytic disease
defined, 467
pregnancies, management of, 470–474
anesthesia, 474
counseling, 470
delivery, 474
fetal intervention, 472–473, 472t, 473t
fetal monitoring/testing, 473–474
long-term outcomes, 474

Neonatology, 474
workup/investigations, 470–472, 471t

Reduced red blood cell, NIH and, 482

Reglan (metoclopramide), 95t, 97, 98

Regenerative medicine
neural stem cells, 10

Recurrent pregnancy loss, 155

Relapse
smoking, 201–202

Remeron

Relaxation training, for headache, 165

Relapse

pregnancy management, 154
graft rejection, 156
lab work, 155
postpartum/breast-feeding, 156
preconception counseling, 154–155
prenatal care, 155, 155t
principles, 154
resources, 156

Urinary incontinence
incidence, 157
prevention, 157

Renal insufficiency
comparisons, 157
diagnosis, 157
incidence, 157
management, 157
risk factors, 157

UTI
comparisons, 156
diagnosis, 156
follow-up, 156
prevention, 156
screening, 156
treatment, 156

Renal insufficiency
CRI, see Chronic renal insufficiency (CRI)

LTX, pregnancy after, 125
mild, 151
moderate and severe, 151

Renal transplantation, 154–156
antenatal visits, 155
carcinoma, 151
complications, 154
fetal surveillance, 155
graft rejection, 156
postpartum/breast-feeding, 156
preconception counseling, 154–155
prenatal care, 155, 155t
principles, 154
resources, 156

Urinary incontinence
incidence, 157
prevention, 157
epidemiology/incidence, 168
etiology/basic pathophysiology, 168
history, 167
key points, 167
management, 169–170
preconception counseling, 169, 170
prenatal care, 170
prenatal counseling, 170
principles, 169, 169t
postpartum/breast-feeding, 171
risk factors/associations, 168
secondarily generalized, 168
symptoms, 168
therapy, 170–171
Selective fetocide, for TTTS, 406
Selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors (SSRIs), 165, 177, 180, 181–184, 182–183, 188–189
Selective termination, of anomalous fetus, 403–404; see also Anomalous fetus
Selenoproteins, as antioxidants, 74
Semi-Fowler (sitting) position, 498
Sentinel node biopsy
bipolar, 180
bipolar depression, 180
diagnosis, 167–168
delivery, 171
pregnancy management, 140, 141–142
postpartum, 143
Sepsis, 139–144
ACS, 143
complications, 143
defined, 143
diagnosis, 139
epidemiology/incidence, 139
genetics/inheritance, 139
HBS–/HIV–, 131, 134t, 139, 141, 143–144
HBSC disease, 139, 141t, 143
hemoglobin E, 144
historic notes, 139
key points, 139
pathophysiology, 140
principles, 140
preventive care, 140
postpartum, 143
pregnancy management, 140, 141–142
therapy, 143
Sickle cell disease, 139–144
ACS, 143
defined, 143
diagnosis, 139
drug therapy, 143
infant mortality, 143
management, 143
malaria, 143
Sickle cell trait, 143
symptoms, 140
transfusion, 143
workup, 140
Sickle cell trait, 143
symptoms, 140
therapy
antibiotics, 142
hydroxyurea (hydroxycarbamide), 142
incentive spirometry, 142
intravenous fluids, 142
iron, folic acid, and multivitamins, 142
labor and delivery, 142
narcotics, 142
transfusions, 142
Sickle cell trait, 143
Side effects
azathioprine, 155t
bromocriptine (Parlodel), 88
cabergoline (Dostinex), 88
colesteryramine, 107
cyclosporine, 155t
dopamine agonists, 88t
immunosuppressive agents, 127t, 128, 155t
IVIG, 463
Sibutramine, 155t
Sodium–glucose transport protein, 346, 347
Sodium valproate, 165, 177, 180, 181–184
Sodium, 200
Sodium valproate, 165, 177, 180, 181–184
Sodium valproate, 165, 177, 180, 181–184
Sodium valproate, 165, 177, 180, 181–184
Sodium valproate, 165, 177, 180, 181–184
infection, 333
vaccination, 237
inherited thrombophilias, 260, 263, 264
karyotypic analysis on, 490
marijuana use, 210
multiple gestation, 408
MVAs, 341
obesity, 32, 33, 39
opioids use, 211, 212
by parent groups, 488
prevention, antepartum fetal assessment, see Antepartum testing
prior uterine scar, 492–493
radiotherapy, 381
SGA-associated, 415
smokeless tobacco complication, 198
syphilis, 315, 317
TG infection, 443
UC, 110, 115
STIs (sexually transmitted infections), 299, 306, 310, 312, 313, 322, 323
Stones, see Urinary nephrolithiasis
Streptococcus agalactiae, 121
Streptococcus pneumoniae, 140, 233, 235, 334t, 335, 336, 337
Streptococcus pyogenes, 481
Streptomycin, 242
Stretches, screen, 452
Striae gravidarum (SG), 386, 387
cause of, 386
defined, 386
diagnosis, 386
epidemiology/incidence, 386
etiology/basic pathology, 386
etiopathogenesis, 386
key points, 386
management, 387
prevention, 387
risk factors/associations, 386
symptoms, 386
treatment, 387
Subclinical hyperthyroidism defined, 80
treatment, 81
Subclinical hypothyroidism defined, 73
diagnosis, 73
incidence, 76
screening and management, 76
Subcutaneous insulin pump therapy, 54
Suboxone, 213
Substance abuse, see Drug abuse
Substance abuse disorder, defined, 207
Subutex, 213
Sucralfate, 188
Sucrose, 53
Sudden infant death syndrome (SIDS), 198, 206, 210
Sudden unexpected death in epilepsy (SUDEP), 170
Sulfadiazine, 445
Sulfamethoxazole, 155t, 156, 157
Sulfasalazine, 110, 112, 112t, 113
Sulindac, 518
Sulphonamides, 156
Sulfasalazine, 110, 112, 112t, 113
Sulindac, 518
Sulfonamides, 156
Sulprofen, 165
Sunscreens, 395
Superimposed preeclampsia diagnoses/definitions, 2, 7, 8
management, 14
overview, 14, 14f, 15f
with severe features, 8
Super obesity, defined, 32
Suppression, TSH, 81
Surfactant, defined, 521
Surfactant/albumin ratio (SAR) tests, for FLM, 522, 523t
Surgery, acute cholecystitis, 122
bacterial, 38–39, 38t
cesarean delivery, see Cesarean delivery
hyperthyroidism, management, 82
during pregnancy
breast cancer, 375
cervical cancer, 379
HD, 376
melanoma, 378
thyroid cancer, 379
thyroid nodule, 77
UC, 115
Surviving Sepsis Campaign (SSC), 359–361, 359t
Survivors
AFE, prognosis, 369
breast cancer, on endocrine therapy, 382
cancer, offspring of, 381
Suspected macrosomia, management, 433, 433f
Sustained virologic response (SVR), 295
Swabs
alcohol, 294
decubital, 306, 312
rapid, for trichomoniasis, 323
cervical, 306, 312
endocervical, 306, 312
alcohol, 294
toxo, 322
toxoplasmosis, 442
Swabs, rapid, for trichomoniasis, 323
Swabs, vaginal-rectal, 306, 312, 327, 328
Swan–Ganz catheters, 13
Swedish Medical Birth Registry, 198
Symmetric FGR, 414
Sympathectomy, 217
Symptoms/signs
ACS, 143
acute cholecystitis, 121
ADP (eczema), 389
ADR, 173, 174
amphetamines, 216
APS, 254
asthma, 225
benzodiazepines, 218
cardiodepressive, 24
CD, 110, 111t
chlamydia, 310–311
cervicitis/urethritis, 311
chlamydial conjunctivitis, 311
LGV, 311
maternal genital infection, 311
proctitis/proctocolitis, 311
cholelitiasis, 119
clinical hypothyroidism, 73
CMV, 436
cocaine, 214
cutaneous melanoma, 394
depression, 177
drug abuse, 207, 207t
ESLD, 124
GBS, 325
gonorrhea, 305–306
hallucinogens, 220
HAV infections, 283
HBV infections, 285
HCV infection, 292
HELLP syndrome, 16, 17t
herpes, 452
hyperthyroidism, 80, 81
ICP, 103
IH (pustular psoriasis of pregnancy), 392
influenza, 236
marijuana (cannabis), 209
maternal anemia, 131
MDD, 177
opioids, 210–211
parvovirus, 447
PCP, 219
PEP, 388
PFP, 390
FG (herpes gestationis), 392
pneumonia, 234
postpartum depression, 177
PF, 590
preeclampsia, 8
pregestational diabetes, 50
prolactinoma, 86
renal disease, 150
seizures, 168
SG, 386
sickle cell disease, 140
SLE, 246, 247t
syphilis, 316–317
incubation period, 316
late benign (tertiary) syphilis, 316–317
latent, 316
neurosyphilis, 317
primary, 316
secondary, 316
throid storm, 83
toxoplasmosis, 442
trichomoniasis, 322
tuberculosis, 238
UC, 114
VTE, 269–270
vWD, 145
VZV infection, 456
Synthetic cannabinoids, see Marijuana (cannabis)
Synthetic cathinones, 216–217; see also Amphetamines
Syphilis, 315–320
complications, 317
defined, 315
fetal hydrops, cause of, 482
incidence/epidemiology, 315
key points, 315
management, 317–320
diagnosis, 319
follow-up, 320
prevention, 317
screening, 317–318, 318t
workup, 319
neonatal congenital, 320
pathophysiology and transmission, 315–316
risk factors, 317
symptoms and classification, 316–317
incubation period, 316
late benign (tertiary) syphilis, 316–317
latent, 316
neurosyphilis, 317
primary, 316
secondary, 316
testing, 491
treatment, 319–320, 319t
Syphilis Elimination Effort (SEE), 315
SYROCOT study group, 442
Systemic lupus erythematosus (SLE), 246–251
antepartum testing, 250
Valproic acid (VPA), 165, 169, 171, 189
Valproic acid (VPA), 165, 169, 169t, 171, 177, 185t, 187, 189
Valtecoxib (Merck), 283
Vancomycin, 155t, 235, 325, 328t, 329
Varenicline (Chantix®), 201
Varicella zoster virus (VZV) (chickenpox), 456–459
clinical scenarios and anticoagulation, 272, 273, 274–276, 275t
diagnosis, 271–272, 272t
LMWH, 274, 275
principles, 271
pulmonary angiography, 272
pulmonary embolism, 272, 274f
UFH, 273, 274
warfarin (Coumadin), 275–276
mechanical heart valves, women with, 278
obesity and, 41
overview, 260, 262
preconception counseling, 277
prevention, 264, 266, 277–278
risk of, 260–261, 270, 272t
screening, 264, 265t
symptoms, 269–270
treatment, 264, 265t
treatment of new onset DVT and PE, 276–277, 276f
Ventilation, mechanical, 356–357, 356t
Ventilation/perfusion (V/Q) scan, 269, 272
Ventricular dysfunction, 369
Ventricular septal defects (VSDs) decreased SVR, 24
pregnancy management, 27
Verapamil, 155t, 165, 479, 486
Type IIa, 148
Type IIb, 148
Type I, 146, 148
Vitamin K antagonists (VKAs), 275–276
Vitamin K, 28, 29, 103, 107, 168, 187, 275–276
Vitamin E, 202
Vitamin C, 7, 202
Vitamin B6, 94, 95, 97, 98
Visual impairment, prolactinoma and, 86
Violence
domestic, 339
intimate-partner, 341
domestic, 339
Von Willebrand disease (vWD), 145–149
Von Willebrand, Erik, 145
Von Hippel–Lindau syndrome, 173
Vomiting/nausea,
Vomeronasal organ, 290
Voriconazole, 360, 365, 367, 368, 369
VPA (valproic acid), 165, 169, 169t, 171, 177, 185t, 187, 189
VTE, see Venous thromboembolism (VTE)
VWD, see von Willebrand disease (vWD)
VZV, see Varicella zoster virus (VZV) (chickenpox)
Warfarin (Coumadin), 29, 275–276, 277, 279
Weight gain in prepartum care and, 39, 39t
PTB, in multiple gestation, 403
Weight loss
Drugs, 38
Marijuana, use, 209
Wellbutrin XL®, 183t, 201
Wernicke’s encephalopathy, development of, 99
Western blot, 297, 299
Wet mount preparation, of vaginal secretions, 323
Withdrawal neonatal
Benzodiazepines, abuse, 218
Cocaine, use, 215
Marijuana (cannabis), use, 210
Opioids, use, 211, 212
Symptoms
Amphetamine, 216
Benzodiazepines, 218
Cocaine, 214, 215
Opioids, 210–211, 213
PCP, 219
Women’s Interagency HIV Study (WIHS), 298
Workup
ACS, 143
Acute cholecystitis, 121
ADP (eczema), 389
Asthma control, 229
CD, 112
Cholelithiasis, 120
CHTN, 3
CMV, 439
CRI, 132
Cutaneous melanoma, 395
Drug abuse, 207, 208, 208f
Eclampsia, 19
Fetal death, 489, 490–491
FGF, 412, 413t, 418–419
HAV infections, 283
HBV infections, 288
HCV infection, 294
HELLP syndrome, 16
Hemolytic disease, 407–472, 471t
Herpes, 453

INDEX

HG and NVP, 94
ICP, 106
IH (pustular psoriasis of pregnancy), 393
LTx, pregnancy after, 127t, 128
maternal anemia, 131, 132f, 133f, 134, 135–136
NIH, 484–485, 484f, 485f
NS, 153
parvovirus, 449, 449f
PEP, 388
PF, 390
PG (herpes gestationis), 392
pneumonia, 234
polyhydramnios (hydramnios), 517
PP, 391
preeclampsia, 11
pregestational diabetes, 52
prolactinoma, 87–88, 87f
sickle cell disease, 140
SLE, management, 248, 248t
syphilis, 319
thrombophilia, 491
toxoplasmosis, 444
trauma, 342, 342f
tuberculosis, 240, 241
UC, 115
vWD, 146, 146t
VZV infection, 458
Wrist bands
acupressure, 94, 97
acustimulation, 97

X

XeCl excimer ultraviolet B (UVB) laser, 387
Xenical (Orlistat), 38

Y

Yaws, transmission, 318
Yellow fever, 335t

Z

Zafirlukast, 226t, 232
Zanamivir, 237
Zidovudine, 297, 298, 300, 302t, 303
Zileuton, 232
Zinc, supplementation, 402
Ziprasidone, 186t, 190
Zoloft® (Sertraline), 182t
Zonegran (Zonisamide), 169t
Zonisamide (Zonegran), 169t
Zyban®, 183t, 201
Zyproxa® and Zyproxa Zydis®, 186t